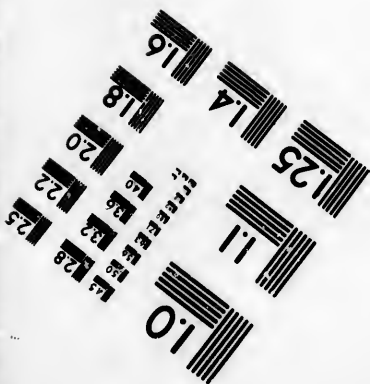
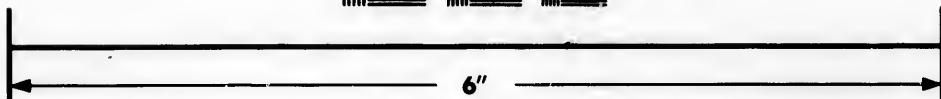
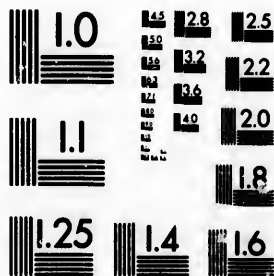


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
16 18 20 22 25  
16 18 20 22 25

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

10  
16 18 20 22 25  
16 18 20 22 25

**© 1984**



Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/<br>Couverture de couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/<br>Pages de couleur   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/<br>Couverture endommagée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/<br>Pages endommagées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/<br>Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/<br>Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/<br>Le titre de couverture manque   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/<br>Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/<br>Cartes géographiques en couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/<br>Pages détachées  |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/<br>Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/<br>Transparence   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates and/or illustrations/<br>Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/<br>Qualité inégale de l'impression  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/<br>Relié avec d'autres documents   | <input type="checkbox"/> Includes supplementary material/<br>Comprend du matériel supplémentaire   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion<br>along interior margin/<br>La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la<br>distortion le long de la marge intérieure  | <input type="checkbox"/> Only edition available/<br>Seule édition disponible   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may<br>appear within the text. Whenever possible, these<br>have been omitted from filming/<br>Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées<br>lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,<br>mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont<br>pas été filmées. | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata<br>slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to<br>ensure the best possible image/<br>Les pages totalement ou partiellement<br>obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,<br>etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à<br>obtenir la meilleure image possible. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Additional comments:<br>Commentaires supplémentaires:  | Irregular pagination. Wrinkled pages may film slightly out of focus.   |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

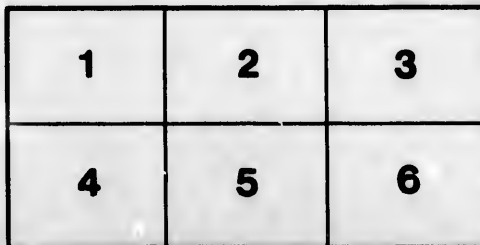
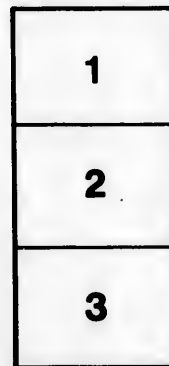
Douglas Library  
Queen's University

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Douglas Library  
Queen's University

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

GE  
ES

W

NO

M

NOGRAPH  
TR

which are  
of the Chic  
tho

TRE

The Wh

By

A WORK  
to those  
Co

Also very ne

med by T.N.  
and for conv  
Edw. I

GEOGRAPHICAL  
DESCRIPTION

Of the FOUR PARTS of the

WORLD

Taken from the  
NOTES & WORKES

Of the FAMOUS

Monsieur Sanſon,

GEOGRAPHER to the French KING, and other Eminent  
TRAVELLERS and AUTHORS.

which are Added the Commodities, Coyns, Weights, and Measures  
of the Chief Places of Traffick in the WORLD; Compared with  
those of England, (or London) as to the Trade thereof.

*George* ALSO, *Baillie's*  
TREATISE of Travel, and another of Traffick, wherein  
The Matter of TRADE is briefly handled:

The WHOLE Illustrated with Variety of Useful and Delightful  
MAPPS and FIGURES.

By RICHARD BLOME Gent.

A WORK Beneficial and Acceptable to all Men, especially  
to those that intend to Spend some part of their Time in other  
Countrys, or desire to be Informed of them here at Home.

Also very necessary for Merchants, Factors, and Mariners, and which  
hitherto hath been Undertaken by none.

L O N D O N,

Printed by T.N. for R. Blome, dwelling in the Savoy near the Kings Wardrobe,  
and for convenience are also sold by Nath. Brooks at the Angel in Cornhill.

Edw. Brenſter at the Crane in St Pauls Church-yard, and

Tho. Baſſet at the George in Fleetstreet, near

Cliffords Inn. 1670.

p.9

*Handwritten note:*  
The original of this work was printed in  
Paris by Monsieur Sanſon  
1670.

STC B321A

f1670  
B6


H  
M  
O

By the G  
I

DREAD 30

sciences her  
did not Ack  
Protection,  
on I have  
I should  
ble: Have  
ommands,  
s also the  
ossible spe  
should w  
s You do g  
aigne Gra


070  
36



TO THE  
HIGH and MIGHTY  
MONARCH,  
CHARLES II.

*By the Grace of God of ENGLAND, SCOTLAND, FRANCE and  
IRELAND KING; Defender of the Faith, &c.*

DREAD SOVERAIGN,



*N*a Concern of this Nature there can be no greater Apology than Your Sacred Majesties undoubted Right to this WORKE, whose Dominions, though larger than from Lybia to the utmost Gades, can never out-reach Your Majesties Knowledge and Experience in those Arts and Sciences herein only toucht at. And I could never blush enough, if I did not Acknowledge my Endeavours only such, as may Receive Your Protection, without which they are nothing, and only express the Ambition I have to shew my Affection to Serve Your Majesty; In which, if I should doubt Your Invincible Goodness, I might become unpardonable: Having had the undeserved Incouragement of Your Majesties Commands, especially to the Vollume of the BRITISH ISLES; which is also the First Vollume, are now in hand, and will be finished with all possible speed: And to which this, (though a Fore-runner) is a Design should wrong by any other Patronage than Your Own; whereby as You do give Life and Vigour to all Arts and Sciences by Your Benigne Grace and Favour, Your Majesty may Miraculously bless

YOUR MAJESTIES

*Most Humble, and Zealously Devoted  
Subject and Servant,*

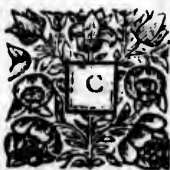
77937

Richard Blome





CHARLES R.



CHARLES the Second by the Grace of God, KING of England, Scotland, France and Ireland, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all Dukes, Arch-Bishops, Marquesses, Earls, Viscounts, Bishops, Barons, Judges, Knights-Baronets, Knights of the Bath, Knights Batchelours, Esquires, Gentlemen, and to all Societies, Fellowships and Companies, as well those for the advancement of Arts and Learning, as those for Traffique and Commerce, sends Greeting. Whereas we are informed, that Richard Blome of St. Clements Dunes, in the County of Middlesex Gent. hath by the perswasions and assistance of divers eminent and Learned Men, undertaken to set forth in four Volumes in Folio, a BOOK of GEOGRAPHY, wherein are handled all such Arts, &c. as are necessary to be understood for the true knowledge thereof, and illustrated with variety of useful and delightful Copper Plates, as MAPPS, SEA-CHARTS, SCHEMES and FIGURES: One of which said Volumes, at no small Cost and Trouble, unto him, is now already Printed, and the others in full hopes of being speedily finished, if Encouragement be not wanting. And being well satisfied (as well by the Certificate of several judicious and able Men, as upon a particular perusal and inspection thereof made by our Order and Direction) as to the Publick Concernment and Benefit of this Design, and the necessary use thereof, which hereto hath not fully been undertaken by any, especially in our native Tongue: We have thought fit at the humble Request of the said Richard Blome, and out of our Princely desire to promote and give Encouragement to all such worthy Underakings; And in regard that this cannot so well be brought to perfection (by reason of the great Expences in and about the same) without the favourable Aid and Assistance of such as are willing to concur with us in so laudable and beneficial a Work, hereby to Recommend his said endeavours to the encouragement of all persons of Honour, and Patrons and Lovers of the Arts of COSMOGRAPHY and GEOGRAPHY, to the end they may by Subscribing for one, or more of his said Books, encourage and enable him to finish this his Commendable Design.

And whereas the said Richard Blome hath in obedience to our particular Commands prepared one of the Volumes of the said Work to be a large Description of our Kingdomes of ENGLAND, SCOTLAND and IRELAND, and the ISLES thereunto belonging, wherein several necessary things are Created or, not hitherto undertaken by any, and the said Richard Blome being desirous to rectifie those great and many Errors committed in all Books and Mappa yet extant; for the better effecting whereof, it being a Work of such general good, We have likewise thought fit hereby earnestly to desire all our Justices of the Peace, Sheriffs, Mayors, High-Constables, Ministers, and Church-warcens, as also all other our Loving Subjects within our Dominions of England, Scotland and Ireland, to give their ready aid and assistance unto the said Richard Blome in such particulars as shall be proposed to them, and every of them by him the said Richard Blome, as by him thought necessary for the Rectifying the said Errours, and Perfecting his said Work, wherein they will do an acceptable Service to us and our Nation. Given at our Court at Whitehall the 10th. Day of July, 1669.

By His Majesties Command.

Arlington.

T  
S  
Notes  
ies, C  
GRAN  
are add  
of TR  
Illustr  
are to  
the fan  
ten ha  
be PR  
D  
B  
K  
J

T H E  
**Testimony & Approbation**  
 OF THE  
**LEARNED and EXPERIENC'D**  
**SUPERVISORS**  
 OF THIS  
**W O R K E.**



Whereas Mr. Richard Blome hath at no small Costs and Trouble  
 unto him, made ready for the Press a Treatise or **GEOGRA-  
 PHICAL, HYDROGRAPHICAL, and CHOROGRA-  
 PHICAL Description of the Four Parts of the World, being a  
 Translation from the Works of the Famous Monsieur SANSON,**  
 Geographer to the French King; to which are added se-  
 veral Remarkable things worthy of Observation, taken from the  
 Notes and Workes of several eminent Travellers and Authors, as to the **Commodi-  
 ties, Coyns, Weights, Measures, &c.** As also **GEOGRAPHICAL and HYDRO-  
 GRAPHICAL TABLES** of most of the chief Places of the World: To which  
 are added the Arts of **COSMOGRAPHY and GEOGRAPHY**; as also a Treatise  
 of **TRAVEL**, and another of **TRAFIQUE**. And for the better Explanation and  
 Illustration of the said Work, several Copper Plates, Maps, Sea-Charts, Seabees, &c.  
 are to be added. And upon the Request of the said **RICHARD BLOME**, to supervise  
 the same, and to give our Opinions therein; We whose Names are here under-writ-  
 ten have done the same, and do accordingly find it to be a Laborious WORK, fit to  
 be **PRINTED**, and worthy of Encouragement. Signed by us

Dorchester.	Tho. Herbert.	Christopher Merret.
Brounker.	Sam. Barnardiston.	James Howell.
Kenelm Digby.	Andrew Riccard.	Jo. Leake.
Jo. Berkenhead.	Jo. Evelyn.	Nicholas Mercator.
		Jo. Megalin.

England, Scot-  
 to all Dukes,  
 Judges, Knights-  
 gentlemen, and to  
 the advance-  
 mence, send  
 d Blome of St.  
 the periwast-  
 n, undertaken  
 APHY, where-  
 knowledge there-  
 MAPPS, SEA-  
 all God and  
 ing speedily a-  
 well by the Cer-  
 and imbration  
 Benefic of this  
 taken by any  
 uck of the said  
 arrangement to  
 be brought to  
 t the favoura-  
 ble and benefi-  
 of all Persons of  
 Y; to the end  
 e him to finish

Commands prepa-  
 domes of ENG-  
 ern federal ne-  
 the said Richard  
 in all Books and  
 general good,  
 the Peace, She-  
 Lobing Subjects  
 aid and assist-  
 to them, and  
 the Restoring  
 acceptable Ser-  
 of July, 1669.



**A GEOGRAPHICAL TABLE of all the Chief Kingdoms, Countries, Isles, &c. in the Four Parts of the World, as they are treated of in the Work it self, and under several general heads, which doth comprehend divers other small Estates, Provinces, Isles, &c. as Related therunto; and may be found in each of the Parts, and according to the Folio's here set down, to wit,**

**1. ASIA, whose Chief Parts are**

**TURKEY in ASIA**, being those Parts which the Grand Seignior possideth, in whole or in part, as

The Country of **ARABIA**, with its parts of

The Empire of **PERZIA**, with its several Provinces

The Empire of the Great **MOGOL**

**INDIA**, or the **EAST-INDIES**, comprehending

The Kingdom of **CHINA**, with its Provinces

The Kingdom of **TARTARIA**, with its parts of

The **ORIENTAL-ISLES of ASIA**, the chief amongst which are the Isles of

The Isles of **ARABIA**, being those Parts which the Grand Seignior possideth, in whole or in part, as

**Arabia the Happy**

**Arabia the Desert**

**Arabia the Hebray**

**Decan**

**Coloconda**

**Natingue**

**Malabar**

**Pegu**

**Siam**

**Amboyna**

**Cochinchina**

**Tanquin**

**Yugonia Dodeca**

**Madag**

**Timourian**

**Tota Tartaria**

**Japan**

**Sulu**

**Philippine**

**Larvus**

**Moluccesey**

**Sonda**

**Ceylon**

**Maldivas**

**2. AFRICA, as it is divided into**

**AFRICA, or LIBIA**, whose chief parts are

**BARBARY**, where are the Kingdoms of

**EGYPT**, with its Parts of

**ETHIOPIA**, where are

**INDIA**, or the **EAST-INDIES**, comprehending

The Kingdom or Country of **NUBIA**

The Empire of the **ABYSSINIANS**, or **ETHIOPIANS**

The Kingdom of **ETHIOPIA**, where are

The Kingdom of **CONGO**

The Kingdom of **MOZAMBIQUE**

The Kingdom of **CAFRICA**

**ISLES of AFRICA**, amongst which are the

The Kingdom of **SPAIN**, with its Principalities and Parts, as

The Kingdom of **ITALY**, where are the Estates of

The Estates of **TURKEY** in Europe, as

The Kingdom of **FRANCE**, with its Governments

The Kingdom and Principality of **GERMANY**

**NETHERLANDS**, amongst which are those of

The Kingdom of **POLAND**

The Estates of **LITHUANIA**

**SCANDINAVIA**, where are the Estates of

The Estates of the Empire of **MOSCOWIA**

The **BRITISH ISLES**, the Chief amongst which are the Kingdoms of

**Barbary**

**Algeria and Tolema**

**Tunis**

**Tripol**

**Spain**

**EGYPT**

**ETHIOPIA**

**INDIA**

**NUBIA**

**ABYSSINIANS**

**ETHIOPIANS**

**CONGO**

**MOZAMBIQUE**

**CAFRICA**

**ISLES of AFRICA**

**Spain**

**Italy**

**TURKEY**

**FRANCE**

**GERMANY**

**NETHERLANDS**

**POLAND**

**LITHUANIA**

**SCANDINAVIA**

**MOSCOWIA**

**BRITISH ISLES**

**3. EUROPE, whose Chief Parts are**

The Kingdom of **SPAIN**, with its Principalities and Parts, as

The Kingdom of **ITALY**, where are the Estates of

The Estates of **TURKEY** in Europe, as

The Kingdom of **FRANCE**, with its Governments

The Kingdom and Principality of **GERMANY**

**NETHERLANDS**, amongst which are those of

The Kingdom of **POLAND**

The Estates of **LITHUANIA**

**SCANDINAVIA**, where are the Estates of

The Estates of the Empire of **MOSCOWIA**

The **BRITISH ISLES**, the Chief amongst which are the Kingdoms of

**Spain**

**Italy**

**TURKEY**

**FRANCE**

**GERMANY**

**NETHERLANDS**

**POLAND**

**LITHUANIA**

**SCANDINAVIA**

**MOSCOWIA**

**BRITISH ISLES**

**4. AMERICA, as it is divided into**

**AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS**, where are

**AMERICA MERIDIONALIS**, where are

**AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS**

**AMERICA MERIDIONALIS**

Tom  
Jag  
fo c  
the  
for  
acco  
whic  
whic  
fatis  
ro b  
purp  
Wom  
Mou  
dies  
dies  
Past  
the  
then  
twen  
vent  
Mish  
of h  
Lac  
whic  
entra  
whic  
by c  
as a  
parts  
In  
Gree  
on th  
mou  
Ame  
here  
cuse  
conf  
whic  
ro v  
live  
and  
parts  
comi  
King  
great  
habic  
roun  
were  
griev  
and  
upon  
of L  
over  
the l  
for a  
repa  
the A  
Pfe,  
with  
the s  
the l



The Chief  
Towns of  
Pontus, or  
Micia, are  
thus.

nia, and borders on *Bithynia*, whose chief Places were, 1. *Flavioopolis*, so called in honour to *Flavius Vespasianus*. 2. *Claudioopolis*, in honour to *Claudius Emperour of Rome*. 3. *Julioopolis*, in honour of the *Julian Family*, all which are mid-land Towns. 4. *Disopolis* of great resort, on the *Euxine sea*, so named from a Temple consecrated to *Jupiter*. 5. *Heractia*, a Colony of the *Thracians*, remarkable for being the Seat of a Branch of *Imperial Family* of the *Comneni*. 6. *Amastria*, on the *Sea-side* farthest towards the East, one of great strength, but taken by *Lucullus* with several other Towns, in the wars against *Mithridates*.

The Province  
of  
*Bithynia*  
bounded.

The Province of *BITHYNIA* hath for its bounds on the East *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*, on the South, *Mysia*, and *Phrygia Minor*, on the West part of the *Euxine*, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*, and on the North, the *Euxine sea*. This Place is famous for the Victory of *Alexander* against the *Persians*, of whom he slew 1000; then for *Mount Stilla*, where *Pompey* overthrew *Mithridates*, and *Tamberlain* with 800000, *Tartars*, encountered *Bajazet* with 500000 where 30000 lost their lives, and *Bajazet* in the pride of his heart being taken, and penn'd up in an *Iron-cage*, beat out his own Brains against the bars. *Nice*, where the first *General Council* was held by the appointment of *Constantine the Great*, Anno 314. for the expelling of the *Arian Heretic*. *Chalcedon*, where the 4th. *General Council* was, to repel the *Nestorian Heretic*, where yet the *Inhabitants* do shew to Strangers the place of this Assembly, which was built in form of an Oval Circle only for this occasion; Also *Sentari*, opposite to the Haven of *Constantinople*, in which place the *Persians* received their tribute from the other Cities of these Parts; and lastly, *Bursa*, or *Prusa*, which was the Seat of the *Ottoman Kings* in *Asia*, till they gained *Adrianople* in *Europe* by *Mahomet* the first; this City is now inhabited by *Turks*, *Jews*, and *Greeks*: it affordeth quantity of *Persian Commodities*, as also those of *Constantinople*, as *Damasks*, *Taffeta's*, *Srip's Stuffs*, and such like *Manufactures of Silk*, also *Sugars*, *Galls*, *Amisceds*, &c. This City by some is accounted as rich and as populous as *Constantinople*. It is seated on the foot of *Mount Olympus*, divided into the higher and lower City, the higher is fair, strong, and hath a *Castle*. Both within and without the City are fair

Chief Pla-  
ces in Bi-  
thynia.

*Mosques*, and many *Tombs* of the *Ottoman Princes*.

The Province of *LYCIA* hath for its Eastern bounds, *Pamphylia*, for its Southern, the *Mediterranean sea*, for its Western, *Caria*, and for its Northern, part of *Lydia* and *Phrygia Major*, environed on 3. sides with the *Mountain Taurus*, which makes it very strong: It was formerly exceeding populous, containing about 60. Cities, the greatest part whereof remained in *Saint Paul's* time, but now are reduced to ruins. The chiefest of which were, 1. *Mira*, the chief City of this Province: 2. *Pasara*, or *Patras*, adorned with a fair Haven, and Temples, one of which was dedicated to *Apollo*, having therein an Oracle, and for Wealth and Credit suitable to that at *Delphos*: 3. *Telmessus*, whose *Inhabitants* are famous for interpreting of *Dreams*, being accounted South-sayers: 4. *Phaselis* also on the *Sea side*, in the time of the *Roman* greatness a nest of *Pirates*, by whom then hanted and enriched, as *Algier* is now, but after taken by *Servilius* a *Roman Captain*, when *Pompey* scowred the *Sea*: 5. *Cragus*, having a *Mountain* of the same name, also *Rhodia*, *Caridaka*, *Podalia*, &c. are of little note; These People formerly were very powerful, and especially on the *Seas* as far as *Italy*, but at last subdued with great difficulty by the *Persians*.

The Province of  
*Lycia*  
bounded, and its  
chief places  
are.

The Province of *GALATIA* is bounded on the East with *Cappadocia*, on the South with *Lycania*, on the West with the River *Sangarius*, and part of *Pontus*, and on the North with *Paphlagonia*. Towns of note, viz. *Anoyra* on the River *Sangarius*, being the *Metropolis*, famous for a *Synod* here held in the Primitive times, Anno 299. called *Synodus Anoyranus*, now called *Angours*, which is 16. days journey from *Constantinople*, near the River *Sangar*, and is one of the greatest and richest places of this quarter, furnishing *Turky* with a great number of *Chamlets*, and *Mo-hairs*. 2. *Tavium*, or *Tanium*, the Capital City of the *Trogmi*, or *Trocmi*, where there was a *Bronze Statue* of *Jupiter*, in whose Temple there was a privileged Sanctuary. Also *Androsia*, *Therma*, *Phabarena*, *Agrinama*, *Oleuus*, &c. of some note. This Country is very plentiful in all manner of *Fruits*, to this Province *Saint Paul* did dedicate one of his Epistles.

The Province of  
*Galatia*  
bounded, and its  
chief places  
are.

The Province of *PAMPHYLIA* hath

The Province of  
*Pamphylia*  
and its  
chief places

hath  
I have  
diver  
and h  
print  
(sou  
Egyp  
Tras  
ring  
colle  
Orie  
mous  
made  
the G  
renow  
Diam  
held  
mous  
4. U  
scitua  
vince  
5. Ol  
7. Col  
mede  
other  
were  
posse  
most  
and S  
Scrip  
is very  
Mount  
Country  
of wh  
Grega  
neis a  
which  
chief  
it is  
and p  
fant.

The Province of  
*Cappadocia*  
bounded.

Places of  
note.

The  
is bou  
for, and  
South  
nia N  
and on  
Pontus  
Places  
after  
Roman  
fied by  
nour  
Gafar  
Cappad  
Saint  
fimam  
3. No  
See of

The Province of Pamphilia, and its chief places

hath for its Northern bounds, *Cilicia* and *Isauria*; for its Eastern bounds, the *Mediterranean Sea*; for its Western, *Lycia*, and for its Northern bounds, *Pisidia*. The principal *Cities* are, 1. *Satalia* or *Attalia* (founded by *Ptolemy Philadelphus* King of *Egypt*.) is the strongest, and best for *Traffique* of all its Coasts, communicating its name to the neighbouring Gulf, called *Golfo di Satalia*, and to the most Oriental part of the *Mediterranean Sea*, famous for the rich *Tapestries* that are here made. 2. *Side*, famous in the time of the *Gemiles* for a *Temple of Pallas*. 3. *Perge*, renowned in old time for the *Temple of Diana*, and for the annual *Feasts* there held in honour of her, and yet more famous for *Saint Paul's* preaching here. 4. *Aspendus*, an inland Town, strongly situate, once the *Metropolis* of the *Province*, famous of old for its *Musicians*. 5. *Olbia*. 6. *Megydus*, on the *Sea-side*. 7. *Colobrassus*. 8. *Caracassum*. 9. *Memedium*. And 10. *Cretopolis*, with some other of no great note. These *Provinces* were converted to *Christianity* by the *Apostles*, *Saint Paul*, (who journeyed through most *Cities* in these quarters.) *Saint Peter*, and *Saint John*, as doth appear by *holy Scripture*. The *Country* for the most part is very mountainous, which proceed from *Mount Taurus* branches thereof, in this *Country* there is great quantities of *Goats*, of whose *hair* are made great quantities of *Wool*, and *Chamlets*, which for fineness are not much inferior to *Silk*, with which it serves other *Countrys* being its chief *Commodity*: but nearer the *Sea* it is more fruitful, being well-watered, and planted, more populous and pleasant.

The Province of Cappadocia bounded.

Places of note.

The Province of *CAPPADOCIA* is bounded on the East with *Armenia Major*, and with some part of the *Minor*, on the South with *Lycania*, and the rest of *Armenia Minor*, on the West with *Galatia*, and on the North with *Capadocia*, and *Pontus Polemoniacus*. The remarkable Places in this *Country* are, 1. *Mazaca*, after the uniting of this *Province* to the *Roman Empire*, was enlarged and beautified by *Tiberius* the *Emperor*, and in honour to *Augustus Caesar*, by him called *Caesarea*, being the *Metropolitan City* of *Cappadocia*, as also the *Episcopal See* of *Saint Basil*. 2. *Nyssa*, the *See* of *Gregory*, surnamed *Nyssenus*, and Brother to *Basil*. 3. *Nazianzum*, being also the *Episcopal See* of another *Gregory*, surnamed *Nazi-*

*anzenus*, which 3. (as *Hylin* observeth) for their admirable abilities in all kind of learning, and for their piety, are not to be paralleled. 4. *Comana*, but not the same aforementioned, remarkable in old time for having a *Temple* consecrated to *Bellona*, whose *Priests*, and other inferior *Officers* of both sexes, in the time of *Strabo* amounted to about 6000. 5. *Erzurum*, situate in the *Confines* of *Armenia Major*, which is the *Rendezvous* for the *Turkish Army* when they have any design against *Persia*, at which place they are likewise disbanded and sent home. 6. *Pterium*, memorable for the great *Battel* fought between *Craesus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Persia*, in which *Craesus* lost not only the *Field*, but also his *Kingdom*. 7. *Faustropolis*. 8. *Tyana*. 9. *Andraca*. 10. *Phigara*. 11. *Salambria*. 12. *Campa*, with others not worthy of note.

The *Country* is very rich in *Mines* of *Silver*, *Iron*, *Brass*, and *Alom*, great plenty of *Wine*, and several sorts of *Fruits*, also *Crystal*, *Jasper*, and the *Oryxstone*: But the greatest *Wealth* which they have is in their *Horses*, which in great number are here bred, and very good and serviceable. The *People* of this *Country* were antiently very vicious, and prone to all kinds of *Wickedness*, but since *Christianity* was received amongst them, their former *Vices* are now changed to *Virtues*.

The Province of *CYLCIA* is bounded on the East with *Syria*, on the South with part of *Syria*, and the *Mediterranean Sea*, on the West with *Pamphylia*, and on the North with *Armenia Minor*, and *Isauria*. Places of note here found, are, viz. 1. *Tarsus*, the *Metropolis* of *Cylicia*, pleasantly seated, famous for the birth-place of *Saint Paul*. 2. *Anchiala* on the *Sea-side*, these 2. *Cities* were with some others built in one day by *Sardanapalus* King of *Assyria*. 3. *Epiphania*, the birth-place of *George* the *Arian*, *Bishop* of *Alexandria*. 4. *Adna*, seated in a fruitful Soile, abounding in *Corn* and *Wine*, defended by a strong *Castle* instead of a *Wall*. 5. *Alexandria*, built by *Alexander* the *Great*, and distinguished it from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, was named *Ataxandretta*, but now *Scanderone*, a famous *Haven-town*, serving for the *Scale* to *Aleppo*, which is distant from it about 100. *English miles*, to which all *Shipping*, either out of the *Ocean*, or *Mediterranean*, come to lade and unlade their *Goods*, which are hence transported by *Cammels*

The Commodities Fustians, and Peziz of this Province.

The Province of Cilicia, or its chief Places.

oman  
h for  
or its  
for its  
them,  
viron-  
aurum,  
is for-  
aining  
where-  
it now  
fest of  
of this  
dorned  
one of  
having  
th and  
3. Tel-  
ous for  
ounted  
on the  
a great-  
ness then  
is now,  
an Cap-  
e Seas  
the same  
lia, &c.  
formerly  
cially on  
last sub-  
the Per-  
LIA is  
ocia, on  
e West  
of Pam-  
logonia,  
he River  
famous  
imitive  
Ancyra-  
16 days  
the Ri-  
rest and  
rushing  
hamlets,  
Tanium,  
Trocmi,  
of Fapi-  
a privi-  
Ther-  
us, &c.  
y plen-  
his Pro-  
his E-

L I A  
hath



Camels to *Aleppo*, here the *English*, *French*, and *Venetians*, have their *Vice-Consuls*, to protect their *Goods* and *Ships*. 6. *Amavanza*, a *City* in the time of *Strabo* of great antiquity. 7. *Nicopolis*, founded by *Alexander* in memory of his great *Victory*. And 8. *Hissus*, seated on a large *Bay*, famous for the *Battel* here fought between *Alexander* with an inconsiderable Army of *Macedonians*, and *Darius*, and his vast Army which consisted of about 60000 *Asians*; whereof about 160000 of the *Persians* were slain, and about 40000 taken Prisoners; in which *Battel*, the *Wives* and *Daughters* of *Darius* were taken, *Alexander* not losing above 200 of his men.

On the right hand of *Cilicia* is *Isauria*, which may bear the name of a *Province*; It is fruitful in *Vines*, and several sorts of *Fruits*, having a rich *Soil*: The chief *Cities* are, 1. *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the *Emperour* brought a *Roman Colonie*: And 2. *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*.

The *Province* of *CARIA* hath for its *Eastern* bounds, *Lycia*; for its *Southern* bounds, the *Carpachian Sea*; for its *Western*, the *Icarian* or *Aegean Seas*; and for its *Northern* bounds, *Ionis* and *Lydia*. Its chief *Places* are, 1. *Miletus*, not far from the *Hill Latmus*, the birth-place of *Thales*, one of the 7 *Wise-men* of *Greece*; to this place, *Saint Paul* called together the *Bishops* of *Ephesus*, and other of the adjoining *Cities*. 2. *Primasus*, noted for the *Stratagem* by which it was taken by *Philip* of *Macedon*. 3. *Mindus*, which being but a small *City*, and its *Gates* so bigg, made *Diogenes* the *Cynick* to cry out to have them shut their *Gates*, lest the *City* should run out at them. 4. *Milasa*, famous in old times for 2 *Temples* dedicated to *Jupiter*. And, 5. *Borglia*, where *Diana* also had a *Temple*.

In this *Country* (as *Heylin* observeth) is the *Hill Latmus*, which was the retiring place of *Endymion*, who by the study of *Astronomy* did there finde out the changes and courses of the *Moon*, by the *Poets* feigned to be her *Favourite*, others there be who would have it, that in a *Cave* under this *Hill Jupiter* hid him, and casting him in a deep sleep, descended sometimes to kiss him.

The *Province* of *IONIA* is bounded on the *East* with *Lydia*, on the *South* with *Caria*, on the *West* with the *Aegean Seas*, and on the *North* with *Mysia*. *Places* of

note in this *Country* are, 1. *Ephesus*, famous for many things, as 1. for being the *Burial-place* of *Saint John* the *Evangelist*, who, as some say, went here alive into the *grave*; 2ly. for the *Temple* of *Diana*, which, for its *Greatness*, *Furniture*, and *stately Workmanship*, was accounted one of the *Wonders* of the *World*. 3ly. for *Saint Paul's* directing an *Epistle* to the *Inhabitants* thereof. 4ly. for being the *Episcopal See* of *Timothy* the *Evangelist*, first *Bishop* hereof; and, 5ly. for its *Ecclesiastical Council* here: But now much ruined from its *antient beauty*; it being now reduced to a small *Village*. 2. *Smyrna*, which is now the *only City* of *Trade* in these parts, famous for being one of the 7 *Churches* of *Asia*, to which *Saint John* dedicated his *Revelation*, being one of those 7 *Cities* that strove for the birth of *Homer*, where in a *Cave* hard by he is said to have writ his *Poems*: But now violated by the *Mahometans*; her *Beauty* is turned into *Deformity*, her *Religion* into *Impiety*, and her *Knowledge* into *Barbarism*. This *City* is seated on the bottom of a *Bay* or *Gulf*, called the *Gulf* of *Smyrna*, where the *English*, *French*, and *Venetians* keep *Consuls* to protect their *Merchants*, and keep up the *Trade*; it being under the *Jurisdiction* of the *Grand Seigneur*.

The *Commodities* that are here found, are *Raw Silk*, *Cotton Wools*, *Cotton* and *Grograin Yarn*, *Mo-hairs*, *Grograins*, *Chamlets*, *Carpets*, *Galls*, *Box-wood*, *Cordovans*, *Wax*, *Aniseeds*, also some *Druggs* and *Fruits*, together with such things as are found in *Turkey*.

*Commodities* here vended from *England* are, *Cloaths* of *Suffolk*, *Worcester*, and *Gloster*, *Perpetuana's*, red and white *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Callicoes*, *Braxile-wood*, *Conchaneile*, *Indico*, *Pepper*, with several other *Spices*, *Druggs*, and other *Indian Commodities*.

The *Customs* here paid, as generally throughout all *Turky* by the *English*, is 3 per cent.

The *Coynes* here currant, are *Spanish Riols* of 1, and *Aspers*, 150 of which makes a *Rial* of 3; also the *Dollar* of *Germany* passeth for 150 *Aspers*. And the *Chequine* and *Sheriff* of *Barbary* for 300. *Aspers*: so that two *Riols* of 3 is a *Chequine* of *Gold*; likewise the *Lyon Dollar* 135. *Aspers*. But the *Dollars* rise and fall according to the plenty and scarcity of weighty money.

They

The Province of Caria bounded, and its chief Cities are, as follows.

The Province of Ionia bounded, and its chief Cities are, as follows.

They and Aspers which is called Oaks; a which is lish. T sisting of ticular C are by th several of 400 man com

Their bout? 3. Colo strove f people a that wh were fur the hab whence remark Amigun chief C lost both of note here ye

7. Frie the seve some shore, ted to a Province on the

The chief p of this firmam mouth

Pergam Angust on a ri the an art above Isle of called same

Th on the part o on the Citie lis of Chur the r of L

Commodities and Tracts of Smyrna.

The Province of Ionia bounded, and its chief Cities are, as follows.

The Province of Ionia bounded, and its chief Cities are, as follows.

They keep their *Accounts* in *Dollars* and *Alpers*. Their *Weights* is a *Dram*, of which 180 makes a *Rottello*, and 100 *Rottellos* makes a *Quintal*, which is 45 *Oaks*; and 400 *Drams* make an *Oake*, which is 2 l. 11 s. *ounces* *Haverdupois* *English*. There is also another *Quintal* consisting of 44 *Oaks*, by which, several particular *Commodities* are vendd, as others are by the *Quintal* of 45 *Oakes*; likewise several *Commodities* are sold by the *Oake* of 400 *Drams*. *Silke* is sold by the *Balman* consisting of 2400 *Drams*.

Their Measure is the *Pico*, which is about 7 of a *yard* *English*.

3. *Colephen*, another of those Cities which strove for the *Birth* of *Homer*: here the people are so well skill'd in *Horsemanship*, that whose side soever they took in *War*, were sure to gain the victory. 4. *Erythra*, the habitation of one of the *Sibyls*, from whence called *Sibylla Erythraa*. 5. *Ipsus* remarkable for the great battle betwixt *Antigonus* and *Selencus*, two of *Alexanders* chief *Companers*, wherein *Antigonus* lost both the day, and his life. 6. *Lebedus*, of note in ancient times, for those *plays* here yearly held in honour to *Bacchus*. 7. *Friene*, the birth-place of *Biar*, one of the seven wise men of *Greece*. And 8. *Clazomenae*, seated on a small *Isle* near the shore, beautified with a *Temple* dedicated to *Apollo*. To this *Country*, *Æolis* as a *Province* thereof may be added, lying on the North towards *Myfa*.

The *Province* of *MO LIS* hath for its chief places, 1. *Comae* the principal City of this *Province*, the habitation of *Sibylla* firnamed *Comana*. 2. *Alas*, on the mouth of *Caicus*, being the *Port-Town* to *Pergamus*. 3. *Myrina*, which in honor to *Augustus* is called *Sabaopolis*. 4. *Pitane* on a river of the same name, not far from the *Ægean Sea*. In this town they had an art in making *bricks* that would swim above water. 5. *Acarna*, over against the *Isle* of *Leibus*. And 6. *Cene*, by *Strabo* called *Cane* nigh to a *Promontory* of the same name.

The *Province* of *LYDIA* is bounded 50 on the east with *Phrygia major*, and some part of *Pisidia*, on the South with *Capad*, on the West with *Æolis* and *Ionia*; and on the North with *Myfa*. The principal Cities in it are, 1. *Sardis*, the *Metropolis* of *Lydia*, in which was one of the seven *Churches* in *Asia* aforementioned, being the royal seat of *Cresus*, and the *King* of *Lydia*, until it was subdued by the

*Persians*. 2. *Philadelphia*, on the Banks of the river *Caystrus* next of note to *Sardis*. 3. *Thiatyra*. 4. *Londicea*, 5. *Magnesia*, 6. *Alabanda*, and 7. *Trallis* on the banks of *Caystrus*. The people of this *Country* are said to be the first inventers of *Dice*, *Chests*, and other such *Games*, as also the first *Hucksters*, *Pedlers*, and the first *Coyners* of *money*. The *Country* by reason of the great plenty of gallant rivers renders it very fruitful and pleasant, being enriched with *Mines* of *Gold* and *Silver*, as also *precious stones*.

The *Province* of *PHRYGIA* *MAJOR* is bounded on the East with *Galatia*, on the South with *Lydia*; on the West with *Myfa*; and on the North with *Metapontus* or *Pontus* especially so called. The chief places here, are, 1. *Gordian*, the seat of *Gordian* which from the *Plough-tail* was taken, and chosen *King* of this *Kingdome*, who tied such a knot, (called the *Gordian-knot*) which *Alexander* the great cut in peeces, when he could not untie it. 2. *Midiam* the seat of *Midas*, son to this *Gordian*; who covetously petitioned *Bacchus* that whatsoever he touched should be turned into *Gold*; and was granted, but soon was forced to lose the benefit of it, else he would have been starved, his *vittuals* turning into *Gold*; and falling into a second over-sight in judgement, in preferring *Pans-pipe* before *Apollo's harp*, he for his small judgment in *Musick*, was rewarded with a comely pair of *Asses eares*.

3. *Colossi*, to whom *St. Paul* writ one of his *Epistles*. 4. *Pefinus*, where the goddess *Cybele* was worshipped, being called *Dea Pefinnensis*: this City is placed in the borders of *Galatia*. Also 5. *Synnada*, 6. *Apamca*. 7. *Hierapolis*, 8. *Fulsiopolis*, 9. *Tiberopolis*, 10. *Dorylaum*, and several others of small note.

The *Country* is very rich, pleasant, and well watered with *Rivers*, the people being antiently more superstitious then in any other place of *Asia*, as is manifest by the rites used in their *sacrifices* of *Cybele*, and other of their goddesses, being accounted such as use *divination*. They are a people which much delight in *effeminacy*. In this *Country* reigned *Tantalus*, who wanting wisdom to make use of his great riches, is by the *Poets* feigned to stand in *hell* up to the chin in water, under a Tree whose *fruit* doth touch his lips, but yet cannot reach them.

The *Province* of *PHRYGIA* *MINOR* is bounded on the East with *Myfa*;

The Province of Phrygia major bounded in chief places.

The Province of Colossis and its chief places.

The Province of Lydia bounded in chief places.

The Province of Phrygia minor bounded in chief places.

The Province of Phrygia minor bounded in chief places.

*Ephesus*, famous for being the *Evangelist*, alive in the *Isle* of *Diana*, *furniture*, and accounted one of the *Seven*. 3ly. for *ble* to the *In* the *Epi* *angelist*, first *is Ecclesiasti* much ruined being now re-  
2. *Smyrna*, of *Trade* in *ng* one of the *h Saint John* being one of *r* the birth of *l* by he is said *ow* violated *uty* is turned *o* into *Im* into *Barba* the bottom *ulf* of *Smyr* *nd*, and *Vene* *it* their *Mer* *de*; it being *Grand Seig*

Commodities and Trade of Smyrna.

from *Eng* *Worcester*, and white *wood*, *Cow* several other *Indian*

generally *English*, is 3

are *Spanish* of which *lar* of *Ger*

And the *y* for 300. *is a Che* *en Dollar* *rife* and *nd* scarcity

They

on the South with the *Agæan Sea*, on the West with the *Hællæspus*, and on the North with the *Propontis*. Places of most note, *viz.* 1. *Dardanium* or *Deidamia*, being the *Town* and *Patrimony* of *Æneas*. 2. *Troy* seated on the banks of the River *Scamander*, famous for having sustained a ten years siege against the *Greeks*, in which time the *Trojans* lost 860000 men, and the *Grecians* 666000 men, being then so famous a *City* that it might be counted the glory of the East, from whence all Nations desire to derive their beginning, but now remaining nothing but ruins: four miles from which there was another *City* built by *Lysimachus* one of *Alexanders Captains*, which from other *Cities* there adjoining was peopled; by him called *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandria*, or *New Troy* in honor of *Alexander* the great, who began the work, which though not so great rich and famous as the first, yet was the metropolis of the *Province*, but now by the *Turks* quite ruined, by their carrying the *stones* and *pillars* to *Constantinople*, for the beautifying of their *Baths* and *houses*. 3. *Sigeum* the *Port-town* to *Troy*. 4. *Assus*, called by *Pliny*, *Apollonia*, in which place the earth will consume the bodies of the dead in forty daies. 5. *Lyrnessus*, opposite to the *Ile* of *Lesbos*, destroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the beginning of the *Trojan war*.

The Province of Paphlagonia, and its chief place.

The *Province* of *PAPHLAGONIA* is bounded on the East with the river *Haly*, which separates it from *Capadocia*; on the South, with *Galatia* and *Phrygia major*; on the West by the river *Partheminus*, which separates it from *Bithynia* and *Pontus*, on the North with part of *Pontus*. This Country hath for its chief *Cities*: 1. *Gangra* remarkable for a *Council* there led in the *Primitive* times, called *Synodus Gangrensis*. 2. *Pompeopolis*, so called by *Pompey* the great. 3. *Coniata* or *Conica*, fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was Master of this Country. 4. *Keana*. 5. *Germanopolis*.

The Province of Lycaonia and its chief place.

The *Province* of *LYCAONIA* is bounded on the East with *Armenia minor*; on the South with *Pisidia*, on the West with *Phrygia major*; and on the North with *Capadocia*. The most eminent places in this Country, are 1. *Icenum* (now *Cogni*) being now the *regal* Seat, of the *Aladin Kings*; a place of great strength, whose situation is in the *Mountains* advantageous for defence and safety. 2. *Lystra* famous for the *birth place* of *Timothy*, and

where *Paul* and *Barnabas* having healed a *Cripple*, were adored for *Mercury* and *Jupiter*. 3. *Derbe* where the said *Apostle* preached. 4. *Paralæi*. 5. *Laranda*. 6. *Caratha*. 7. *Adopissus*. 8. *Canna*, with some others of small note.

The *Province* of *PISIDIA* is bounded on the East, with *Armenia minor*; on the South with *Pamphylia*, and part of *Cilicia*; on the West with part of *Lycia* and *Phrygia major*; and on the North, with *Lyconia*. Places of note, 1. *Seleucia* built by *Selenus*. 2. *Sagalassa* situate in the most fruitful part of this Country. 3. *Sele*, a Colony of the *Lacedæmonians*. 4. *Lysinia*. 5. *Cremina*, once a *Roman Colony*. 6. *Termessus* strongly seated. 7. *Platanessus* with others of small account.

This Country was famous for the *battail* which was fought betwixt *Cyrus* and *Artaxerxes*, where *Cyrus* lost his life, and the *victory*, out of which *Xenophon* made that notable retreat with his *Grecians*, in the despite of twenty thousand men which pursued him.

*ARMENIA MINOR* is bounded on the East with the *Euphrates*, which separates it from *Armenia major*; on the South with *Mount Taurus*, which parts it from *Silicia*, and on the West and North with the *Anti-Taurus* being as it were a chain of hills, which divides it from *Capadocia*. *Cities* of note, *viz.* 1. *Melitene* the *Metropolitan City* of this Country, now called *Sour*, abounding in great quantities of *Wine* and *Oyle*. 2. *Nicopolis* built by *Pompey* in remembrance of a *victory* he there obtained against the forces of *Tyranes*, King of *Syria*. 3. *Garnosa* a strong *Town*. 4. *Oromandus*, and 5. *Arabyssus* remarkable for the exile of *St. Chrysostram*, *Patriarch* of *Constantinople*, confined here by the malice of the *Empress Eudocia*. This Country is as to its fertility, pleasantness, &c. is the same as *Capadocia* afore mentioned.

The *Province* of *MYTIA* is bounded on the East with *Phrygia major*, on the South with part of *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and the *Agæan Sea*, on the West with the *Agæan*, and *Phrygia major*, and on the North with *Bithynia Propontis*, and the *Hællæspus*. The chief places whereof are, 1. *Cyzicus*, seated in the *Propontis*, in an *Island* of the same name, but so near the continent that it is joynd to it by two bridges. The metropolis of the *Consular Hællæspus* a place of great strength and beauty, whose *Walls*, *Bulwarks*, *Towers*, and *Haven*

The Province of Pisidia.

Mountains in Armenia, worthy of note.

Armenia minor, its Coast.

The Province of Mytia, and its chief place.

were  
4. Pa  
took  
drus.  
9. Pe  
the b  
of gre  
of abe  
all wri  
costly  
here w  
to wh  
and la  
Galen  
the A  
sides w  
may h  
of the  
Lystra  
length  
of hills  
to East  
the bra  
the ot  
Mount  
the T  
Funs,  
Golden  
felt, a  
other  
in Lyd  
pipe to  
of Apo  
ears, n  
hard a  
him, s  
This A  
in Vin  
seigne  
Bellev  
Caria  
dymion  
An  
roule  
since  
of Cr  
shenc  
victor  
the S  
within  
now  
Aobel  
raclis  
Hell  
up th  
Lali  
twice  
Emp  
to C

ng healed a  
derewy and  
said Apostle  
Laranda,  
8. Canna,

A is bound  
minor; on  
ind part of  
art of Lycia  
the North,  
1. Seleucia  
scituate in  
Country.  
udemoniens.  
ce a Roman  
gly seated,  
small account,  
the battail  
ras and Ar-  
life, and the  
in made that  
ians, in the  
men which

The In-  
source of  
fidia, and  
rich of  
place.

is bounded  
which fe-  
or; on the  
rich parts it  
and North  
as it were a  
from Capa-  
t. Melitene  
Country,  
great quan-  
Nicopolis  
rance of a  
st the for-  
3. Gar-  
andus, and  
xile of St.  
Antinople,  
the Emperess  
its fertility,  
Capadocia

Armenia  
minor, and  
the Great

is bounded  
r, on the  
is, and the  
E. AGAAN,  
orth with  
Hellepont.  
Cyprus,  
nd of the  
nent that  
The me-  
t a place  
whose  
d Haven  
were

The Pop-  
ware of  
Mylia, and  
the Gulf  
Nicom.

were made of all Marble; 3. Lampfacus.  
4. Parium; 5. Adramyttium where Paul  
took shipping to go to Rome. 6. Antan-  
drus. 7. Praxemissus. 8. Trojanopolis; and  
9. Pergamus seated in a goodly Plain, on  
the banks of the river Caicus; a place  
of great strength, beautified with a library  
of about 20000 volumes or manuscripts  
all writ in parchment, famous also for those  
costly hangings known to us by tapestry;  
here was one of the seven Churches of Asia,  
to which St. John writ his Revelation,  
and lastly famous for the birth-place of  
Galen the eminent Physician, who lived to  
the Age of 140 years in good health. Be-  
sides which the Mountains, Rivers and Isles,  
may have some what in particular observed  
of them: Mount Taurus begins between  
Lydia and Caria, and extends it self all  
the length of Asia, being a continual ridge  
of hills, running through Asia from West  
to East: which for its length, height, and  
the branches it casts forth on one side and  
the other, the greatest, and most famous  
Mountain in the World. On Mount Ida  
the Trojan Paris judged of the beauty of  
Juno, Pallas, and Venus, and giving the  
Golden Apple to the last, drew on him-  
self, and his Friends the enmity of the  
other two. On the Mountain Tmolus  
in Lydia, Mydas, having esteemed Pan-  
pipe to be more pleasant than the Harp  
of Apollo, was by him pulled by the  
ears, not to make them greater, but so  
hard as gave occasion to the Poets to jeer  
him, and say that he had Asses ears.  
This Mountain is very fruitful, especially  
in Vines and Saffron. On Cragus was  
seigned to be the Monster Chimera which  
Bellerophon made tractable. On Latmus in  
Caria passed the loves of the Moon, and En-  
dymion, &c.

Mountains  
in Asia  
Minor,  
worthy  
of note.

1

Amongst the Rivers, Paphlagon hath  
rouled down so much Gold in its Streams,  
since Midas walked there, that the riches  
of Cræsus, and others, are come from  
thence. The Græwick was witness of the  
victory of Alexander the Great, against  
the Satrap of Darius; but Alexander  
washing himself in the cold waters of Cith-  
ron, had near lost his life. The River  
Acheron, and the Lake Acherusia, near He-  
ræclia in Bithynia, are esteemed to reach to  
Hell; and that this way Hercules brought  
up the Villain Carberus, Halys (at present  
Eali) setved for the bounds, and limits be-  
tween the Kingdom of Cræsus, and the  
Empire of the Persians; but it proved fatal  
to Cræsus, &c.

There are many other things observable  
about, and within the lesser Asia; The  
Bosphorus of Thrace, or Channel of the  
Black Sea, or Streight of Constantinople, is  
so narrow, that Darius Hystaspes built a  
Bridge over it, and passed with his Troops  
over it from Asia into Europe, to make  
War against the Scythians. Xerxes, the  
son of Darius, did as much over the Helle-  
pont, or Streight of Gallipoli, or the Dar-  
daneller; which we call the Castles of  
Sestos and Abidos, which are seated three  
Leagues above the entrance, and at the  
narrowest place of the Hellepont, oppo-  
site each to other: Formerly famous for  
the unfortunate loves of Hero and Lean-  
der, drowned in the merciles Suges. Here  
also Xerxes, whose populous Army drank  
Rivers dry, and made Mountains circum-  
navigable, is said to have passed over into  
Greece on a Bridg of Boats. Sestos is strongly  
seated on the side of a Mountain descend-  
ing to the Sea on the European shore, Abidos  
on a low level on the Asian shore. The  
Amaniden Streights, or Passes of Mount  
Aman, between Cilicia and Syria, are easie  
to keep; the Way for about 2500 paces,  
being between Rocks and Crages; the  
Feet of which, are washed with many  
streams which fall off from the Mountains.  
Here it was that Alexander the Great, van-  
quished Darius.

Things  
worthy of  
note in A-  
sia Minor.

The ISLANDS about  
ASIA Minor.

THE ISLANDS likewise which are  
about Asia Minor, have been very re-  
markable to Antiquity, though not so at  
present: They are almost all in the Archi-  
pelago, some in the Mediterranean Sea, al-  
most none in the Black Sea; yet at the en-  
trance into that Sea, and near the Bospho-  
rus of Thrace, are, 1. The two Islands called  
CYANEES, so near the one to the other,  
that the Ancients would make us believe  
they joyned. 2. LESBOS, famous for the  
City Meteline, which for its greatness and  
excellency of its Wines, gives name to the  
Island: In this place was born Sappho,  
the Inventress of the Sapphique Verse.  
Pittacus one of the Sages of Greece, and  
Arion the Dolphin Harper. 3. SCIO or  
CHIOS distant from the Ionian shore four  
Leagues, being in compass about 126 Miles;  
remarkable for the Church of its Convent  
of Niomene, one

126 m.

Cyanees.

Lesbos.

Scia.



The Islands of Asia Minor.

one of the fairest in the World. It affordeth excellent Fruits in great plenty, but of most note for its *Mastique*, not found else where; it is now under the power of the *Grand Signior*. 4. *ICARIA*, now called *Nicoria*, in compass twelve Leagues: Here *Icarus* suffered *Shipwrack*. Abounding in *Corn* and *Passurage*. 5. *PATHMOS*, in compass about ten Leagues, Mountainous, but reasonable fruitful, especially in *Grain*. Here it was that *St. John* being banished by *Domitian*, writ his *Revelation* to the Churches of *Asia* 6. *PARMACUSA*, near *Miletum* where *Caesar* was taken by them. 7. *CLAROS* or *CASAMO*, about thirteen Leagues in compass, very Mountainous, but hath good Harbors; in former times sacred to *Apollo*; abounding in great plenty of *Aloes*, where they are gathered and transported to other Countreys. 8. *LERO*, noted also for *Aloes*. 9. *COOS*, seated in the bottom of the *Agæan Sea*, furnished with sweet and pleasant streams, which refresh this Island, and makes it very fruitful; it is in compass 23 Leagues, having its chief place so called, fortified with a strong Tower, now a *Garrison* of the *Turks*. This Island is remarkable for being the *Birth-place* of so many famous men, especially *Hippocrates* the Reviver of *Physick*, when almost decayed, unto the ancient practice of *Esculapinus*, unto whom this Island was consecrated, having therein a *Temple* made rich with the offerings of those that had been sick, whose cures were there registered, and *Apelles* the famous *Painter*. 10. *SCARPANTE*, stored with the best *Coral* in the World. 11. *NICOSIA*, which was the seat of the Kings of the Family of *Lusigna*, and the See of an *Archbishop*, and peopled with 40000 Families. 12. *FARMACUSA* is situate on the Sea, much stronger then *Nicosia*. 13. *BAPHO*, of old *Paphos*, famous for its *Temple*, dedicated to *Venus*. *Mount Olympus*, now *St. Michaels Mount*, stands in the middle of this Island. 14. *NEGRO-PONTE*, where the *Sea* ebbs and flows seven times a day; which because *Aristotle* could not unriddle, he here drowned himself; the chief City is *Calchin*. 15. *SAMOS*, about 30 Leagues in compass, strongly seated almost on all sides with Rocks, having a fair Haven, fertile in *Fruits*, especially in *Oyl* and *Olives*, the Island much infested with *Pirates*. This is the only place in

the World for *Sponges*, under whose Rocks they grow in the Sea; for the getting of which, they have people which from their infancy, are bred up with *dry Bisket*, and other extenuating dyer, to make them lean, then taking a *Sponge* wet in *Oyl*, they hold it, part in their mouths, and part without, and so they dive down into the Sea to get it; those that have been used to this trade, can abide under Water almost an hour together. 16. *TENEDOS*, situate at the mouth of the *Hellespous*, opposite to *Troy*, remarkable for the concealing the *Grecian Navy*, which proved the final destruction of *Troy*. 17. *RHODES*, situate in the *Carpethian* or *Rhodian Sea*, being in compass 46 Leagues, a place of great strength, its soil fertile, its air temperate, plentiful in all things, as well for delight as profit, full of excellent *Pastures*, adorned with pleasant Trees, whose Leaves are all the year long in their verdure. In this Island the Sun is so powerful and constant, as it was anciently dedicated to *Phœbus*. This Island, as *Sandys* in his Book of Travels noeth, was held Sacred to the *Sun*, to whom they erected that vast *Colossus* of *Brass*, which may well be accounted one of the Seven Wonders of the World: He saith, this *Colossus* was in height 70 Cubits; every Finger as big as an ordinary *Statue*; and the Thumb too great to be fathomed. It was twelve years a making, the bigness was such, that being erected at the entrance of the *Port*, *Ships* past between its Legs; but in 66 years, by an Earthquake it was thrown down and broken in pieces: And besides the mass of Stones contained therein, 900 *Camels* were laden with the *Grass* which was used about it. This City bearing the name of the Island, is seated four Miles from the ancient City, famous of old for their Government, their expert *Navigation*, and since for the abode of the *Knights* of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*; now in the hands of the *Turk*. This City and Island of *Rhodes*, as indeed *Tenedos*, *Samos*, and the rest of the Isles in this *Sea*, are of little or no Trade, yet they are found to produce several good *Commodities*. And 18. *CTPRUS*, which amongst all, is the greatest, being in circuit about 183 Leagues distant from the *Cilician shore* about 10 Leagues, it stretcheth it self from East to West, in form of a *Fleete*, and thrusting forth a great many *Promontories*. This Island hath formerly been known by several other names, as

2. *Calbin*

4. *Asia*.  
5. *Pathmos*.  
6. *Parmacusa*.  
7. *Claros*.  
8. *Lero*.  
9. *Coos*.  
10. *Scarpante*.  
11. *Nicosia*.  
12. *Farmacusa*.  
13. *Bapho*.  
14. *Negro-ponte*.  
15. *Samos*.

10  
20  
30  
40  
50

16. *Tenedos*.  
17. *Rhodes*.  
18. *Cyprus*.

1. *Cel*  
of *Pa*  
it; 2.  
*toris*  
*Lamin*  
from i  
the fe  
rough  
the M  
either  
Trees  
ancien  
600 y  
ring th  
denial  
doms  
their  
vided  
Province  
in *Cyprus*.  
1. *L*  
and 4  
Pl  
1. *Ni*  
ing a  
five M  
ly bu  
*Flores*  
fant  
people  
antian  
could  
who  
Island  
Sea.  
*Spiri*  
times  
Pl  
seate  
to the  
*phos*;  
and C  
tue;  
powe  
when  
*ple*.  
in the  
her S  
and  
Tow  
T  
its cl  
trapp  
to  
*Tem*  
*phos*  
had  
ing  
thou  
in  
5.  
*Fup*

whose Rocks  
getting of  
from their  
Bishes, and  
make them  
wet in Oyl,  
mouths, and  
down into  
have been  
nder Water  
TENE-  
of the Hel-  
markable for  
vey, which  
a of Troy,  
the Carpa-  
compass 46  
length, its  
plentiful in  
profit, full  
with plea-  
all the year  
Island the  
nt, as it was  
now. This  
of Travels  
the Sea, to  
the Colossus of  
counted one  
the World:  
height 70  
an ordinary  
great to be  
ers a making,  
ing erected  
hips past be-  
ons, by an  
vn and bro-  
the masts of  
Cannels were  
used about  
ame of the  
on the anti-  
Govern-  
r, and since  
f St. John  
nds of the  
Rhodes, as  
rest of the  
no Trade,  
veral good  
M S, which  
ring in cir-  
t from the  
it stretch-  
in form of  
great many  
h formerly  
names, as  
1. *Cetbin*

1. *Cetbin* or *Cetbinia*, from *Ketim* the son of *Savan*, which was the first Planter of it; 2. *Cerastis*, from the many *Promontories*; 3. *Amathusia*; 4. *Paphia*; 5. *Salamina*: Which three last were focalled from its principal *Towns*; 6. *Macaria*, from the fertility of it; 7. *Asperis*, from the roughness of the soyl; 8. *Xrosia*, from the Mines of *Brass*; 9. And lastly, *Cyprus*, either from the great quantity of *Cypress* Trees, or from *Cyrus*, who built in it the ancient City of *Aphrodisia*, who lived here 600 years after *Homer*. This *Island*, during the Empire of the *Persians* and *Macedonians*, was accounted for Nine Kingdoms, most of them bearing the names of their principal *Towns*; but by *Ptolomy* divided into these four *Provinces*, viz. 1. *Lapethia*, 2. *Paphia*, 3. *Salamine*, and 4. *Amathusia*.

Places of most note in *Lapethia* are, 1. *Nicosia*, the *Metropolis* of the *Island*, being a walled City, in form round, being five Miles in compass, adorned with stately buildings, resembling some Cities in *Florence*, as well for its beauty, and pleasant situation, as for its plentifulness in people: Formerly in the possession of the *Venetians*, and by them strongly fortified, yet could not withstand the fury of the *Turks*, who are now master of it, and the whole *Island*. 2. *Cerines* strongly seated near the Sea. And 3. *Tremitus*, the Birth-place of *Spiridon*, a famous Bishop of the *Primitive* times.

Places of note in *Paphia* are, 1. *Paphos*, seated near the Sea. This City according to the opinion of some, was built by *Paphos*, son of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phenicia* and *Cyprus*, where stands *Pygmalions* statue, which, as the *Poets* feign, was by the power of *Venus* turned into a *Woman*; where she had her so much celebrated *Temple*, and where her *Votaries* of both Sexes in their natural nakedness, did perform her sacrifices. 2. *Connellis*, rich in *Sugars* and *Cotton Wool*: And 3. *Drepanum*, a *Town* of good Trade.

The next is *Salamine*, which hath for its chief places, 1. *Salamis*, once the *Metropolitan* City in the *Island*, but now turned to ruins, in which there was a famous *Temple* consecrated unto *Jupiter*. 2. *Aphrodisium*, so named from *Venus*, where she had another *Temple*. 3. *Tamassus*, abounding in rich Mines of *Brass*. 4. *Famagusta*, though but small, yet one of the chiefest in this *Island*, strongly seated. And 5. *Artime*, famous for the Groves of *Jupiter*.

The next and last of the Four *Provinces* is, *Amethusia*, whose chiefest places are, 1. *Amathus*, renowned for the Annual Sacrifices made unto *Adonis*, the darling of *Venus*, where she had another *Temple*. 2. *Episcopia*, where *Apollo* had both a *Temple* and a *Grove*. This *Temple* was held so sacred, that those which touched it, were thrown into the Sea. And 3. *Cetium*, the Birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*.

This *Island* is seated under the Fourth *Climate*, which makes the longest day to be but fourteen hours and a half. It is exceeding rich and fertile, abounding in *Corn*, *Wine*, *Oyl*, *Silks*, *Cotton*, *Turpentine*, *Wool*, *Honey*, *Salt*, *Verdigreace*, *Allom*, *Storax*, *Colloquintida*, *Lazdanum*: All sorts of *Metals*, &c. And Mr. *Lewis Roberts* in his Book called *The Merchants Map of Commerce*, observeth, This *Island* is able to build a *Ship* from the *Keel* to the *Top-sail*, and to fit it out to Sea, either for a *Man of War*, or *Merchants Voyage*, with all things necessary. And all sorts of *English* Commodities in small quantities do finde vent; but the chief Trade is managed by *Ryals* of *Spain*.

*Coyns* here currant, are the same with those of *Constantinople*, *Aleppo*, and other parts of *Turkey*: And they keep their *Accounts* after the same manner.

Their *Weights* here used throughout this *Isle*, are *Oaks* and *Rottollos*; one 100 *Rottollos* makes a *Cantar*, which is 500 *l*. *Haberdupois*; and a *Rottollo* is 5 *l*, of the same weight, which is 720 *Drams*. The *Oak* contains 400 *Drams*, and 60 *Drams* makes 1 *Ounce*, and 6 *Ounces* makes an *Oak*.

Their *Measures* of length are of two sorts, viz. The *Pico* of 26 *Inches*, by which all *Silks* and *Woollen Cloth* is sold; and the *Brace* which is larger than the *Pico*, by which all *Linneis* is vended.

Their dry *Measures* are many and different according to the Commodities; as for example, all *Grains* are sold by a *Measure* called the *Moose*, which weigheth 80 *Oaks*; yet some *Grains* are sold by the *Coffise*, which is 10 *Oaks*, being  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a *Bushel* *English*, so that a *Moose* is 4 *Bushels* *English*. *Salt* is likewise sold by the *Moose*. *Oyl* is sold by the *Rottollo* of 1000 *Drams*, which weigheth 2 *Oaks*; and *Wine* is sold by the *Casse*, which is 2 *Gallons* *English*.

To this *Isle*, as to all other parts of *Turky*, no *English* are suffered to Trade, except those of the Company of *Levants Merchants*; where they have a *Factory*, and

Province of Amethusia described.

The Province of Lapethia, Nicosia, Cerines, and Tremitus of Cyprus.

Cyru.

Weight.

Measure.

16 Towns.

47 Rhods.

Province of Cyprus.

Province of Lapethia with its chief place.

Calcedonia.

Province of Paphos described.

40

50

11 Cyprus.

Province of Salamine described.

and a *Consul*, who is generally elected by the said *Levant Company*, and established by the *Ambassador*.

The people  
of Cyprus.

The *People* here are very civil to strangers, delighting in *Hospitality*, also addicting themselves to *War*, being *strong* and *active*; and the *Women* (as *Heylin* noteth) were in former times given to *unchastity*, by reason of their so great adoration of their *Goddess Venus*, it being (as he saith) the custom of these *Women*, to prostitute themselves on the shores to passers by; where their *Virgins* would do the same, as well to please their *Goddes*, as to encrease their *Persians*. But upon their receiving of *Christianity* by the *Preachings* of *St. Paul* and *Barnabas*, being the *Birth-place* of the latter. This with other of their uncivil and barbarous customs, were laid aside.

This *ANATOLIA* or *ASIA Minor* which I have hitherto treated of, is seated (for the most part) all in a temperate and healthful *air*, the *soyl* being generally fruitful, once very *populous*, and replenished with many fair and goodly *Cities*, now lamenting the loss of about 4000, some of which by *Earthquakes*, but most by the *Wars* the *Turks* brought against them. The *Commodities* or *Marchandizes* which it abounds with, and communicates to other Nations, are chiefly, excellent *Wines*, *Goats Hair*, *Camels Hair*, *Gro-grain Tarn*, *Silk*, *Cotton Wool*, *Cotton Tarn*, *Cloth* of a coarse make, *Coral*, *Gauls*, though not so good as those of *Syria*, *Grograins*, *Chamblets*, *Mohairs*, *Turky Carpets*, *Sponges*, *Turpentine* the best in the *World*; *Mastick*, which some other *Commodities* of less note with the *English*, *French*, *Venetians*, and *Dutch*, fetch from hence; but chiefly from *Smyrna*, it being the chief *Town* of *Trade*, being a flourishing *Factory*, where those Nations, as hath been said before, keep their *Consuls*.

Commodi-  
ties to Asia  
Minor.

## SOURIA and DIAR- BECK.

Souria and  
Diarbeck  
divided,  
and their  
Wars.

**SOURIA** and **DIARBECK** together, have been known formerly under the name onely of *Syria* or *Assyria*; which *Assyria*, or *Syria*, was first divided into two great parts; of which, the most *Eastern* held the name of *Assyria*; the *Western*, that of *Syria*. This last name

more known to the *Occidental people*, the first to the *Oriental*; the first likewise having been more famous in the first ages, the last in latter times.

Both the one and the other part, were after subdivided each into three *Partitions*. *Assyria*, into *Assyria Mesopotamia* and *Chaldea* or *Babylonia*; *Syria*, into *Syria Phoenicia* and *Judea* or *Palesine*. The three last together, have at present retook their ancient general name of *Syria* or *Souria*; the other three pass commonly under the general name of *Diarbeck*, though neither *Souria*, nor *Diarbeck*, have left to subdivide themselves into three parts according to the ancients; but *Souria* keeps its ancient name, both for the general, and for the three parts, at least, among us. *Diarbeck* quite contrary, changes all its names, as well for the general, as for the three parts. *Terack* answering to *Chaldea* or *Babylonia*, *Diarbeck* particularly to *Mesopotamia*, and *Churdistan* to the particular *Assyria*.

And it is to be observed that of these three *Parts*, *Assyria* hath been the chief in the vogue of *History*; *Chaldea*, or *Babylonia* the second; but *Mesopotamia*, or *Diarbeck* is accounted so now; be it because it remains in the best condition, the wars between the *Turks* and the *Persians* having much ruined the other two *Parts*; or be it because the *Turks* possessing this part more absolutely, and entirely than the others, they have given the name of that *Part* they possess to the other *Parts*, of which they hold but little, and sometimes nothing. Now, the knowledge of the modern Names of all these *Parts* being come to us rather by the *Turks*, than the *Persians*, we will make use of those we have learned, though possibly in *Persia* we may finde others, but such as are more known to those *Eastern people* than us. Let us proceed then to *Syria* which is the nearest to us, and on this side the *Euphrates*; which done, we will pass beyond the *Euphrates*, and treat of *Diarbeck*.

## 50 SOURIA or SYRIA.

**SOURIA**, formerly **SYRIA** the Great, and at present *Sorisan* with the *Eastern people*, is near hand that which the *Romans* called their *Dioness* of the East, as may seem by our now calling it the *Levant*. It extends from the *Mediterranean sea*, which washes its *Western coast* to the *Euphrates*, which

It bounds.

which on  
and from  
which b  
parates  
and Egy  
Parts.

The principal  
*Syria* prop  
best, he  
more to  
the North  
middle;  
an sea,  
particula  
res, the  
*Turks* di  
lies, Al  
a third o  
last five  
majors,  
are 16,  
and Sci  
knows, v  
something  
been; of  
these Q  
*Syria*.

## SYR

in Pro-  
the  
ind. fr  
and  
in.

**SYRIA**  
Specie  
East wi  
South w  
the Me  
with Gi  
This  
plenty  
Sheep w  
pounds  
moditie  
The P  
ly very  
ed to  
often a  
subtilly  
Superst  
Goddess  
Pastim  
language  
The  
are fo  
och, t  
*Syria*  
shird

chief  
acc.

which on the East divides it from *Diarbeck*; and from Mount *Aman*, or *Monte-Negro*, which bounds it on the North, and separates it from *Cilicia*, unto *Arabia* and *Egypt* which border on its Southern Parts.

The Antients have divided it into three principal Parts: the particular *Syria*, called *Syriapropria*, which, as the greatest, and best, held the name of all *Phœnicia*, and *Judea* or *Palestine*: This last stretcheth more towards the South, *Syria* towards the North, and *Phœnicia* remaineth in the middle; and all are along the *Mediterranean sea*, from *Anatolia* into *Egypt*; the particular *Syria* alone touches the *Euphrates*, therest upon *Arabia*. At present the *Turks* divide all *Syria* into two *Eglerbeglics*, *Aleppo*, and *Damascus*; some make a third of *Tripoli* of *Syria*: and give to this last five *Sangiaccats*, nine or ten to *Damascus*, and seven to *Aleppo*; which in all are 16, or 20, *Sangiaccats*, whose Names and Scituations are for the most part unknown, we will content our selves to speak something of the *Cities*, which have been, or which yet are, the principal of all these *Quarters*, beginning with those of *Syria*.

SYRIA PROPRIA.

**SYRIA PROPRIA**, or **SYRIA** especially so called, is bounded on the East with the River *Euphrates*; on the South with *Phœnicia*; on the West with the *Mediterranean sea*; and on the North with *Cilicia*.

This Countrey is very fertile, affording plenty of excellent *Fruits*, *Cotton-wool*, *Sheep* which have tails that weigh about 30 pounds, with several other good *Commodities* which I shall observe anon.

The People in this Country were formerly very industrious, but very much addicted to *gluttony*, as did appear by their often and great *feasting*; People of great *subtily* in their dealings; much given to *Superstition*, being *Worshippers* of the Goddess *Fortune*, and other of their *Syrian Goddesses*; much addicted to *Plays* and *Pastimes*; and People given to *scoffing* and *laughture*.

The chief Places which (have been, or) are found in this Country, are, 1. *Antioch*, or *Antiochia*; once the *Metropolis* of *Syria*; so fair formerly, that it held the third, or fourth degree amongst the best

*Cities of the Roman Empire*: Its Walls are yet standing, and the most beautiful that eye ever beheld; within it, is nothing but ruins. Its situation is on the River *Orontes* so called, at present *Asi*, or *Hafes*, four Leagues from the *Mediterranean shores*; a Place of great strength, having for its *fortification*, an enclosure of two strong Walls, on which for their further defence were erected about 460, *Towers*, together with a strong *Castle*. The City before its ruins being adorned with stately *Palaces*, *Temples*, &c. fit for so great a *City*, being formerly the Seat of some of the *Roman Emperours*, and of the chief *Officers* of their Empire in the *Orient*; It was the first Seat of a *Patriarch* that *Saint Peter* established, and which held, in the infancy of the Church, 1. the *Diocesses* of *Thrace*, *Asia*, *Pontus*, and the East, 2. *Daphne*, about five Miles from *Antioch*, so named from *Daphne*, one of the *Mistresses* of *Apollo*, who was here worshipped, famous for having here his *Oracle* and *Grove*, which was about ten Miles in compass, all encompassed with *Cypresses* and other *Trees*, so tall and close together, that the beams of the Sun could not dart through, though in his greatest power; watered with pleasant *Streams*, beautified with *Fountains*, and enriched with abundance of *Trees*, which yield variety of excellent *Fruits*, as well for taste as tincture, for its *Temples* dedicated to *Apollo*, for its *Sanctuary* or *Asyle*, and for the place where *Daphne* was changed into a *Laurel*, that it hath been compared with the *Valley of Tempe* in *Thessaly*. 3. *Aleppo*, which at present is the greatest and principal town of all *Syria*, and one of the most famous of the whole East, being the ancient *Hierapolis*; It is seated between the *Euphrates*, and the *Mediterranean sea*, and in that place where that *Sea* and the *Euphrates* make the nearest conjunction, which makes it capable of best and greatest commerce of the World, to wit, of all the *Levant*, with the West, by the passage of the *Gulf of Ormus* and *Balsora*, which brings *Commodities* up the *Euphrates*, just against the *City* of *Aleppo*; from whence the *Carravans* bring them by Land to *Aleppo*, and carry them from thence to *Alexandretta* or *Scanderoon*, situate on the *Mediterranean sea*: and thence into the Parts of *Asia*, *Africa*, and *Europe*, which border upon the *Mediterranean*, and farther into that *Ocean*. This *City* is the ordinary residence of a *Turkish Bassa*. Commo.

people, the knowle ha- firstages,

part, were Partitions, and Chal-Syria Pha- The three took their or Souria; y under the gh neither t to subdivi according eps its an- l, and for s. Diar- its names, r the three haldea or y to Meso-particular

at of these the chief sea, or Ba- otania, or be it be- lition, the e Persians wo Parts, ebbing this rely than e name of her Parts, and some- knowledge these Parts rks, than of those in Persia are more than us, hich is the Euphra- yond the

RIA.

the Great, in bound. Eastern the Ro- as may ant. It which phrates, which

Parti- of Syria

a Pro- the indif- 2. and th.

chief

The Com-  
modities  
of Aleppo.

Commodities that this City of Aleppo produceth, are *Grains, Grain yarn, Cotton, Cotton yarn, Me-bairs, Chamlets, Galls*, also quantities of white *Silk* brought from *Tripoli, Beirut, Biaz, Acdena*, and several other adjacent places: Besides which, *Perfians, Armenians, Arabes*, and other Eastern people, bring to this City, *Silk, Drugs, Spices, Precious-stones, &c.* Commodities most vendible here, are, *Silks, Velvets, Sattins, Wollen-cloth* of divers colours, especially *Scarlets, Coral, Furrs, Tinn, Latin, Steel, Lead, Iron, Quick-silver, Looking-glasses, Couchaneil, pieces of Eight in specie*, which they much esteem, &c. And before the *Portugals* had found out the way to the *East-Indies*, by the *Cape of good hope*, there was no Commerce between the West and East, except by way of *Aleppo*, or by the *Red-sea*, and *Egypt*, where the English Merchants (as also those of other Nations) have their Houses for the stowage, and disposing of their Goods, and where they keep a *Consul* for the better negotiating of their affairs.

The Custom of this City is also 3. per cent.

The  
Coyns.

Coyns here currant are, the *Sultain*, which is two Dollars, or Pieces of 1.

The *Lion Dollar*, which is; of a Dollar, and is 70. Aspers.

The *Dollar*, which is 80. Aspers. Besides which, they have others, as being the currant Coyns of the Country, as *She-bees*, of which 16. make a piece of; and 14. a *Lyon Dollar*.

The Pieces of; of *Sevil* and *Merica*, by reason of the quantities carried into *Persia*, are from two to ten per cent. dearer, as they have occasion for them.

The Weights here used, is the *Dram*, and the *Rotolo*, as in most part of *Turkey*; but the *Rotolo* is in many Commodities found to differ in Drams, according to the Commodity and weight of the place.

The *Wesno* is 30. *Nethers*, and one *Nether* is 120. *Drams*, so that a *Wesno* is 3600 *Drams*.

Their  
Weights.

But the common Weight, and that which is better known, is the *Rotolo*, which of *Aradeste* and *Lage-Silk* is 680 *Drams*, of *Beltaine* or white 700 *Drams*, and so forth.

The *Rotolo* is also divided into 12 *Ounces*, and every *Ounce* into 60. *Drams*; so their *Rotolo* is 720 *Drams*.

A *Castar* is 100 *Rotolo's*, which is about 481 l. *haberdupois*.

A *Wesno* of Silver is 100. *Drams*.

Their *Rotolo* is about 4 l. 13. *ounces haberdupois*.

*Gold, Silver, Precious stones, &c.* are sold by the *Mitigall*, which 1: *Dram*, and a *Dram* is 60 *Caratts*, and every *Caratt* is four *Grains*.

All Commodities have the allowance of tare; some more, and some less; as *Galls* have two per cent. allowed for Dust, *Opium* 10 *Drams* in every 110 *Drams*. Musk is bought by the *Mitigall*, and in the *Cod*, and gives 20 per cent. allowance, but out of the *Cadnone*.

Their Measure for *Linnen, Wollen*, and *Silk*, is but one, to wit the *Pico* which is 27 Inches, or  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a *yard English*.

They keep their Accounts in *Dollars* and *Aspers*. 4. *Aman*, or *Ama*, formerly *Apanie*, in the way between *Tripoli* and *Aleppo*, is somewhat distant from the descent of a small *Hill*, in the midst of a great *Plain*, encompassed on all sides with very pleasant *Hills*, abounding in *Grains, Wines*, with abundance of *Orchards* stored with varieties of *Fruits* and *Palm-trees*. The City is almost encompassed with the *River Orontes*, and with a great *Lake*, the *Gardens* are watered with many *Channels* drawn from the *Rivers*, there are very excellent *Pastures*, so that *Seleucus Nicanor* fedd there 100 *Elephants*, 30000 *Horses*, and a great part of his *Militia* was ordinarily there; And to this day this City is the best peopled of all *Syria*, next to *Aleppo* and *Damascus*.

5. *Emsa*, or *Heme*, seated in the spacious and fruitful *Plain* of *Apaneno*, watered with many pleasant *Streams*, which, for its Scituation, is almost the same with that of *Aman*; and because the *Arabes* call it *Hamsf*, and that Name comes somewhat near to *Hus*, some Authors will have it to be the *Country* of the *patient Foo*. 6. *Aradus*, seated in a rocky *Island* of a *Mill* in compass, just opposite to the mouth of the *River Elnutherns*, which from the *Continent* is distant not above a *League*. 7. *Seleucus*, (as *Heylin* noteth) was so called from him, as being the *Founder* of it, who was also esteemed the greatest *Builder* in the *World*, founding nine *Cities* of this Name, 16 in memory of his *Father Antiochus*, six bearing the Name of his *Mother Laodice*, and three in remembrance of his first Wife *Apamia*, besides several others worthy of note in *Greece*, and *Asia*, either repaired, beautified, or built by him. 8. *Laodicea*, built by *Seleucus* as aforesaid, abounding in excellent *Wine*, and

and ch  
by Sel  
from A  
who ei  
rissa, m  
wards  
stories  
a City  
their I  
ing the  
built b  
the mi  
a doub  
the R  
built v  
Cloath  
as it w  
ple we  
Oxen,  
ficc, a  
in dep  
cred F  
subser  
ed, we  
ma, fe  
Here i  
his Ar  
14. H  
a Temp  
once a  
wards  
fata, fe  
overw  
ved fo  
City  
triarch  
that c  
was,  
of He  
seated  
built  
one of  
Zenob  
victor  
Parth  
the E  
Town  
And  
ry th  
near u  
Fewr

Persia  
danted,  
and in Ci  
mer etc.  
of the bed.

PH  
an  
West  
its N



and choise fruits. 9. *Apamea* built also by *Seleucus*. 10. *Epiphania*, so called from *Antiochus Epiphanes*, King of *Syria*, who either rebuilt or repaired it. 11. *Larissa*, now *Laris*, seated four Leagues Southwards of *Laodicea*, much noted in the stories of the *Holy Wars*. 12. *Hierapolis*, a City of great note in ancient times for their Idolatry, in adoring and worshipping the *Syrian Goddess*. The Temple was built by *Stratonice*, wife to *Seleucus*, in the midst of the City, encompassed with a double Wall about 300 fathom in height, the Roof thereof in-laid with Gold, and built with such sweet Wood, that the Cloaths of those which came thither, were as it were perfumed. Without the Temple were places for the keeping of their Oxen, and other of their Beasts for Sacrifice, as also a Lake of about 200 fathom in depth, for the preservation of their sacred Fishes. The Priests, besides other subservient Ministers, which here attended, were about 300 in number. 13. *Zeuema*, seated on the Banks of the *Euphrates*. Here it was that *Alexander the Great* with his Army, passed over on a Bridge of Boats. 14. *Heraclea*, nigh to which *Minerva* had a Temple, where, for a Sacrifice, they used once a year to offer a Virgin, which afterwards was changed to a *Hart*. 15. *Samosata*, seated near the Banks of the *Euphrates*, over which, there was a Bridge which served for a passage to *Mesopotamia*. In this City was born *Paulus Samosatenus*, Patriarch of *Antioch*, who, for his teaching that our *Saviour* was not the Son of God, was, in a Council here held, condemned of Heresie. 16. *Palmyre*, at present *Faid*, seated in a desert and sandy Plain, was built by *Solomon* in the *Wilderness*, where one of their Kings, *Odenat*, and his wife *Zenobia*, have been well known for their victories divers times gained against the *Parthians*, and for endeavoring to gain the Empire of the East. 17. *Resapha*, a Town of great note in the *holy Scriptures*. And 18. *Adida*, memorable for the victory that *Arctas*, King of *Arabia*, obtained near unto it, against *Alexander*, King of *Syria*.

## PHOENICIA.

PHOENICIA hath for its Eastern and Southern Bounds, *Palestine*; for its Western, the *Mediterranean Sea*; and for its Northern, *Syria Propria*. This Country

was adorned with several great and beautiful Cities, though of no great extent: For the most part seated on the Sea shore, which makes it much frequented by Merchants, there being several good Commodities found therein, as *Corn*, *Oyl*, *Honey*, excellent *Balm*, &c. The People were here held to be very ingenious and active.

Places of most note in this Country, are, 1. *Tyre*, at present *Sor* or *Sour*, seated in a Plain so advantrageous (that is, on a Rock almost quite encompassed with the Sea) that it oft disputed the Priority with *Sidon*, and in the end gained it. *Nebuchadonozor* ruined it after a siege of 14 years; then *Alexander the Great* after a siege of seven or eight moneths. It was many times restored to its power and splendor, by means of its Purple, and of its Trade: And when it was in its glory, it might be said, That if onely its situation were considered, it was a Fortress; if its Traffick, a Mart; if its Magnificence, a Royal Court; and if its Riches, the Treasure of the Universe. The Cities of *Carthage*, *Utica*, *Leptis*, and others in *Africa*, and of *Cadix* in *Spain*, without the Streights were its Colonies. And some have adventured to say, *America* was peopled by them. The *Emir Fone*, Brother to *Emir Facardin*, not long since made his abode among its ruins. Its Haven is likewise the best of all *Phenicia*, and the *Levant*. 2. *Sidon*, at present *Sayd*, and sometimes *Sayette*, hath been much esteemed in the ancientest of times: It was built, or at least took its name from *Sidon*, the eldest son of the Children of *Canaan*, scituate upon a Rock along the Coast of the Sea; and with a fair Port: The Neighboring *Champaign* is very fertile, and watered with divers streams which descend from *Libanus*, with which they watered and enriched their pleasant Orchards. It hath been very famous for Arts and Sciences, and particularly for being the first Authors of *Arithmetick* and *Astronomy*. The first Inventors of Letters, the first Navigators and Builders of Ships, the first Inventors of Glasses, and the first that Exercised Arms. From hence it was, that *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their principal Workmen, both for Stone and Timber, which were employed in the building of the Temple. It hath peopled divers Colonies, among the others, *Thebes* in *Beotia*. The *Persians* were the first that ruined it, after them others, and at last the *Turks*, who at present are Masters of it, as also of *Tyre*. Here *Emir*

*Allee*, son of *Emir Facardin*, made sometimes his abode among its ruins. The present *Sidon* is built somewhat West of the Old, but of small note, in respect to the splendor of the *Old Sidon*, yet still hath some Trade. The chief Commodities being *Corn, Galls, Wools, Cottons, Cotton Tarn, White Silk, and Wax.*

The Commodities and Trade of Sidon.

Commodities most vendible here, are, *Paper*, and other *French Wares*, by reason of the sole Trade which the *French* here drive.

Their Coyns

Their *Coyns* are chiefly *Ryals* of  $\frac{3}{4}$ , *Chicquins* in *Gold*; and *Lion Dollars*, which pass generally, as in other parts of *Turky*: Of which, the *Lion Dollar* is the chief, and most current amongst them.

Their Weights.

Their *Weights* is the *Dram*, and the *Rotolo*, being the current *Weights* of these parts of *Asia*, 650 *Drams* making the *Rotolo*  $4\frac{1}{2}$  *Ounce English*.

Their Measures.

Their *Measures* is the *Pico* as aforesaid.

3. *Damascus*, called by those of the Country *Scham*; it hath been a long time, and is at present most famous. It is situate in a very fruitful Plain, and girt about with curious and odoriferous *Gardens* and *Orchards*, which abound in all sorts of pleasant and delightful *Fruits*. Watered with the River *Chryssorbow*, which sendeth forth many *Rivulets*; by which, the whole *City* is so well furnished, that not onely most *Houses* have there *Fountains*; but also their *Gardens* and *Orchards* receive the benefit of the cool streams which gently glide through them: The whole Country round about, being enriched with plenty of excellent *Vines*, which beareth *Grapes* all the year long; as also great plenty of *Wheat*. A place so surfeiting of delights, that the vile *Impostor Mahomet* would never enter into it, lest by the ravishing pleasures of this place, he should forget the business he was sent about, and make this his *Paradise*.

The fertility of the Country.

This *City* is famous, first, for her *Founders*, who were *Abrahams* Servants, next for the *Temple of Zacharius*, which was garnished with 40 stately *Porches*, and adorned with about 9000 *Lanterns of Gold* and *Silver*. And last of all, for the Conversion of *Paul*, who here first Preached the *Gospel*; for which, he was forced to make his escape out of the *House*, being let down the *Walls* in a *Basket*. *Josephus* believeth, that it was built by *Us*, the son of *Abraham*, Grandchild to *Noah*: However it were, after *Tyre* and *Sidon* began

to decay, this began to be in some repute, and hath been esteemed the chief *City* of *Phoenicia*, and sometimes of all *Syria*. It is beyond *Mount Libanus*, in respect to *Tyre* and *Sydon*; seated in a *Soyl* so fertile and delightful, by reason of the *Rivers* and *Fountains*, that in *holy Scripture* it is called a *Famous City*, a *City of Joy*, a *House of Delight and Pleasure*, and some Authors call it the *Paradise of the World*.

The *Commodities* that this *City* affordeth, are excellent *Wines*, and *Fruits*, as *Dates, Prunells, Almonds, &c.* Also sweet *Waters* made of *Roses*, which here grow in very great plenty. *Knives* and *Sword-blades*, which are esteemed the best in the *World*. *Oyl, Honey, Wax, Balsom, Saffron, Steel, Rice*, some *Drugs, Cotton Wool* and *Silks*, of which, they make curious and rich *Manufactures*; also *Fine Linnen*, which we call *Damasks*; together with several other *Commodities* which are here found.

The Commodities and Trade of Damascus.

*Commodities* most vendible here, are, *Wollen Cloaths, Lead, Tin, Latten-Wire, and Plates, Sugar, Allom, Almonds, Brimstone, Crystal Looking-Glasses, Flemish Beads and Bracelets, Coral, Saffron, Paper, &c.*

To most *Commodities*, but especially to *Drugs* and *Spices*, there is 5 *Per cent.* allowed for *Tare*, besides the weight of the *Boxes, Bags, or the like.*

Here they pay 3 *Per cent.* for *Custom* upon all *Goods* imported and exported, which goes to the *Grand Seigneur*. And this *Custom* is paid in *Money*, and not in *Species*.

Their *Coyns* are the same with those of *Aleppo*.

Their Coyns

Their *Weights* is the *Canter*, or *Quintal*, and is 408 *l. Havardupois English*; and in some *Commodities* it makes 416 *l. English*.

Their Weights.

The *Rotolo* is 648, and often 650 *Drams English*.

The *Metalchi* is *English*.

Their *Measure* is the *Pico* of 27 *Inches*. Yet hath it felt very great changes, as well as *Tyre* and *Sidon*. It hath been taken, retaken, ruined, and re-established divers times, by the *Assyrians, Babylonians, Persians, Macedonians, Romans, Parthians, Saracens, Tartars*, by the *Soldans of Egypt*; and in fine, by the *Turks*, in whose hands it is at present, very flourishing and rich. The *Houses* of private persons, are not so fair without as within, the publick

Their Measure.

Their Weights.

Buildings

Building the mi

4. twist t  
Scriptu  
from de  
found  
as tho

5. is bou  
the chi  
tinent,  
walled  
through  
and B  
City,  
which  
which  
Port, w  
for Tra  
waterc  
the Ne

The  
this pla  
War in  
more f  
Edward  
The fa  
Soldans  
built i  
hands o

6. T  
Tripoli  
is at th  
polis o  
times r  
and fea  
but not  
which  
but fin  
Scander  
Trade,  
Tarn,  
other c

The  
here, a  
The  
those o  
among  
Dollar

The  
Damas  
Rotolo  
is abou

52  
Rotolo  
dupois  
the Sil  
Rotolo

The Trade of Tripoli.

Their Coyns

Their Weights.

*Buildings* are very beautiful, the *Castle* is in the middle of the *City*, built by a *Florentine*.

4. *Serepta*, seated on the *Sea-coast* betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*, memorable in *holy Scripture* for the Prophet *Elijah*, in raising from death the poor *Widow's* son. Here is found excellent *Wines*, accounted as good as those of *Greece*.

5. *Acre*, of old *Acon*, and *Ptolemais*, is bounded with the *Sea* on two sides, the third is joynd to a *Plain* of the *Continent*. The *City* is very strong, being walled with a double *Wall*, fortified throughout on the out-side with *Towers* and *Bulwarks*, and in the middle of the *City*, being a strong *Castle*, on the top of which, there was every night set *Lights*, which served to direct *Ships* at *Sea* to their *Ports*, which is very good, and of some use for *Traffick*. The *Plain* is fertile and well watered with streams which descend from the *Neighbouring Mountains*.

The *Christians* took, lost, and retook this place divers times, when they made *War* into the *Holy Land*; in which, none more famous then *Richard* the First, and *Edward* the First, both Kings of *England*. The same did likewise the *Saracens*, the *Soldans* of *Egypt* ruined it, and after rebuilt it, and at present, it remains in the hands of the *Turks*.

6. *Tripoli* of *Syria*, (for distinction from *Tripoli* of *Barbary*) seated in a rich *Plain*, is at this day by some esteemed the *Metropolis* of *Phœnicia*, though it hath three times more ruins, then whole *Houses*; and seated about two miles from the *Sea*, but not above half a mile from its *Harbour*, which formerly served for a *Port* to *Aleppo*, but since removed to *Alexandria* or *Scanderone*. But yet a place of some small *Trade*, affording *Corn*, *Cotton Wool*, and *Tarn*, *Silk*, some *Drugs*, *Pea-shes*, and other *Commodities*.

The *Commodities* that are most vendible here, are the same with those of *Sidon*.

Their *Corns* are generally the same with those of *Aleppo*, and other places of *Turky*, among which, the piece of *Wool*, and the *Lion Dollar*, pass most current.

Their *Weights* doth agree with that of *Damascus*, which is a *Rattolo*; and 100 *Rattolo's* is a *Canter* of *Damascus*, which is about 416 *lb*, *Haverdupois*, *Englsh*.

52 *Drams* is an *Ounce*, 12 *Ounces* is a *Rattolo*, which is 4 *lb*, 2 *Ounces*; *Haverdupois Englsh*, and 8 *Ounces* is an *Oak*, but the *Silk Rattolo* often holds out at *Aleppo* 1; *Rattolo*.

Their *Measure* is the *Pico*, which is about 27 *Inches*, or 3 of a *Tard*, *Englsh*.

The *Buildings* are generally low, and the *Streets* narrow, excepting those which lead towards *Aleppo*, which are fair and broad: Having many pleasant *Gardens* which are watered with delightful streams; in which *Caraens*, they keep great quantities of *Silk Worms*. The *soyl* is excellent good, if it were well tilled; but the *Air* is unhealthful. This place also is now in the hands of the *Turks*.

7. *Biblus*, now *Gibbeleth*, was the *Habitacion* of *Cinira*, the *Father* of *Myrrha*, *Mother* to the fair *Adonis*; from whence, the *Neighbouring River* took its name, remarkable in the infancy of *Christianity*, for being the *See* of a *Bishop*; but now by the *Turks* made desolate.

And 8. *Barast* or *Beryte*, a place formerly of great *Trade*, but now of great concourse, and much frequented by *Merchants*, and others; it being the road for all those *Caravans* that travel from *Aleppo*, *Damascus*, and *Ferusalem*; to *Cairo*, and *Mecca*. It is subject to the *Grand Seigneur*: Near to this *Town* is that noted *Valley*, where, as some Authors say, *St. George* by killing the *Dragon*, which had his abode in a *Cave* here, redeemed the *King's Daughter*, which was to be delivered to his fury.

## PALESTINE.

PALESTINE, formerly called *Judea*, *Canaan*, or the *Holy Land*, is bounded on the East with *Mount Hermon*, so much spoken of in *holy Scripture*. On the South, with part of *Arabia Petraa*: On the West, with the *Mediterranean Sea*, and part of *Phœnicia*; and on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus*, which separates it from *Syria*, and the rest of *Phœnicia*. Its situation is between the Third and Fourth *Climates*, which makes the longest day to be 14 hours and a quarter. The whole Country being accounted to be in length 50 but 66 *Leagues*, and in breadth 26; yet so populous, that, before the coming in of the *Israelites*, they had 30 *Kings*; and afterwards, *David* numbered 130000 *fighting men*, besides those of the *Tribe* of *Benjamin* and *Levi*.

This last and most Meridional part of *Syria*, which we call *Palestine*, first receiv'd the name of the Land of *Canaan*, because the Children of *Canaan* first seized it, and parted

repute.  
City of  
Syria. It  
respect to  
yl for fer-  
ne Rivers  
ture it is  
f Joy, a  
and some  
of the

afford-  
The Com-  
modities  
and Trade  
of Damas-  
cus.  
fruits, as  
also sweet  
e grow in  
d Sward-  
est in the  
som, Saf-  
s, Cotton  
make cu-  
also Fine  
together  
which are

ere, are,  
stim-Wire,  
Almonds,  
s, Flemish  
on, Paper,

pecially to  
er com, al-  
light of the  
or Customs  
exported,  
er. And  
and not in

those of  
Their Coy-  
Quintal,  
s, and in  
61. Eng-

50 Drams  
lsh.

7 Inches,  
ages, as  
en taken,  
ed divers  
ans, Per-  
artians,  
ns of B-  
in whose  
thing and  
sons, are  
publick  
Buildings

The Trade  
of Tripoli.

Their Coy-  
s

Their Weigh-  
ts

Palestine  
bound.

Its length,  
breadth,  
situation,  
&c.

Its Name.



parted it amongst them, when God had promised it to *Abraham* and his Posterity, it was called the *Land of Promise*, but when it fell into the hands of the *Hebrews*, after their return from *Egypt*, and that they had divided it by Tribes, it took the name of the *Land of the Hebrews*, under which it was governed by *Prophets*, *Judges*, and *Kings*; but under these *Kings* it was soon divided into two *Realms*, which they called *Juda*, and *Israel*. Under the *Romans* it was onely known by the name of *Judea* or *Palestine*: of *Judea*, because that the Tribe of *Juda* was always the most powerful of the Twelve, and the Kingdom of *Juda* the most noble, and preserved it self longer than that of *Israel*: of *Palestina*, because the *Philistines*, which possessed a part of the *Maritime Coast* of *Judea*, were powerful, and very well known to Strangers. After the death of our *Saviour Jesus Christ*, all this Countrey was called the *Holy Land*. The People which antiently possesst this Countrey, were the *Jews*, being of a middle stature, strong of body, of a Black complexion, goggle-ey'd, a subtle and ingenious people, and such as will live in any place, much given to *Traffick*, *Usury* and *Brokage*, not lending without *Pledges*, and taking the forfeitures of them. Their *Law* or *Religion* was given them by *God* the Father, which, with the several Ceremonies and Rites, &c. prescribed to them, may be found in the five first Books of *Moses*; their *Synagogues* are neither fair within nor without, save only adorned with a *Curtain* at the upper end, together with several *Lamps*, and in the midst is placed a *Scaffold* in form of a *Reading-desk*, for their *Priest* which readeth their *Law*, and sings their *Liturgie*, they read in a strange tone, and sing as bad: during the time of their service, their heads are veiled with *Linnen*, fringed with *Knotts*, answerable to the number of their *Laws*, and observing a continual motion of their body to and fro, and often jumping up, which they account for great zeal in their devotion, they observe much reverence to all the Names of *God*, but especially to *Jehovah*, inasmuch that they do never use it in vain talk. Their ancient Language was *Hebrew*, they keep their Sabbath on *Saturday*, in which they are very strict; they marry their *Daughters* at the age of 12. years, as not affecting a single life.

This Countrey is so fertile in all things, that it was termed a Land flowing with

milk and honey, adorned with pleafant *Mountains*, and luxurious *Valleys*, enriched with pleafant *Streams*; and where the *Inhabitants* are neither scorched with heats, nor pinched with colds. To speak of all the memorable transactions that hath happen'd in this Countrey would require a Volume by it self, I shall onely run over some of the chief, and then proceed to the description of some of the *Cities* and *Places* of most note that are found therein.

This Countrey is famous for bringing our *Saviour Jesus Christ* into the World, where he wrought so many Miracles: but infamous for their horrid action of crucifying him, the Lord of Life. Here it was, that the Lord appeared to *Jacob*, here, out of the Plains of *Moab*, the *Ark* was built of *Sittim* wood, here, on *Mount Tabor*, *Christ* was transfigured. On *Mount Moriah*, *Isaac* was to be sacrificed. On *Mount Zion*, was the *Tower of David*, on *Mount Calvary*, as some averr, was the *Burial-place* of *Adam*, our Forefather. Here, over the *Brook Cedron*, *David* passed in his flight from *Abfalon*, over which our *Saviour*, when he went to his Passion, passed: Here runneth the River of *Jordan*, sufficiently famous, nigh to which stood the *Cities* of *Sodom* and *Gomorrab*: Here, at a Place called *Endor*, *Saul* consulted with a *Witch*: Near to *Sichem*, *Jacob* had his *Wells*: Here, at *Ajhdod*, in the Temple of *Dagon*, the *Ark of the Lord* was brought, when taken, upon the entrance of which, their *Idol* fell down: Here, at *Hebron*, is the Plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham*, sitting in his Tent, was visited by *God* from *Heaven* in the likeness of a *Man*, and this City he bought for a *Burial-place* for him; and his Posterity, where *Sarah* his wife was first interred: and on *Mount Seir* was the Habitation of *Esau*, after his departure from *Canaan*. I shall cease to trouble the Reader with the mentioning of any more remarkable Passages which were here transacted, but onely refer them to the Books of the Old and New Testament, where they shall find them recorded, Also great satisfaction may be received from *Josephus*, a Book of good repute.

This Countrey is at present possessed by the *Turks*, as Masters of it, but inhabited by *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Turks*, *Jews*; nay, I may say with people of all *Nations* and *Religions*, But setting aside matters of History, let us proceed to say something of the principal Places found herein, and first with *Jerusalem*,

*Jerusalem*

A City of  
the Jews  
the Jews  
the Jews  
the Jews

The Jews  
the Jews  
the Jews

Memorable  
transactions  
in this  
Countrey.

the Jews  
the Jews  
the Jews  
the Jews

*Jerusalem*  
Scripture  
not only  
fairest  
the City  
Priests,  
have ma  
remotest  
Furlong  
trical p  
two Lea  
it was c  
Familien  
ally tho  
the grea  
which d  
its Wall  
of the  
Mounta  
This C  
lected b  
the mic  
crowning  
Theater  
once th  
Pride ar  
lost it d  
the first  
himself  
fill up t  
Casar ut  
place t  
bled to  
wife se  
been let  
after cas  
on its :  
them.  
since fa  
science  
lost, b  
remain  
several  
Mount  
the Wo  
magnif  
ventuo  
British  
the Gr  
Mount  
where  
there  
where  
Crucif  
ed to  
Crucif  
was,  
Altar  
Appar

*Jerusalem* is so well known in the *Holy Scriptures*, that we must confess it hath bin not only one of the greatest, but one of the fairest *Cities* in the *World*, being called the *City of the Lord*. Its *Kings*, its *High-Priests*, and its *Temple*, and *Royal Palaces* have made it famous even amongst the remotest people; Its *Circuit* was once 50 *Furlongs*, which are only 6250 *Geometrical paces*, which is something above 10 two *Leagues*, but so well builded, that it was capable of the receiving of 150000 *Families*. Its *Temple*, and *Palaces*, especially those of *Solomon*, were the fairest, the greatest, and the most magnificent which ever eye beheld: Its *Gates*, its its *Walls*, its *Towers*, its *Ditches*, cut out of the *Rock*, and its *Situation* in the *Mountains* made it seem impregnable. This *City*, once sacred and glorious, elected by God for his *Seat*, placing it in the midst of *Nations*, like a *Diadem*, crowning the head of the *Mountains*, the *Theater of Mysteries and Miracles*, was once the glory of the *World*: But its *Pride* and other horrid *Sinnes* in the end lost it divers times: *Nebuchadonozor* was the first that ruined it, *Pompey* contented himself to dismantle it of its *Walls*, and to fill up the *Ditches*, *Vespasian*, and *Titus* 30 *Cesar* utterly razed it, and destroyed in the place 1100000 people, that were assembled to the *Pass-over*; *Adrian* ruined likewise some *Towers* and *Walls* which had been left to lodge the *Roman Garrison*, and after caused a new *City* to be built, partly on its ancient *Ruines*, and partly without them. But with the divers changes it hath since fallen under, its beauty and magnificence is quite decayed: Yet is it not so 40 lost, but that there are several *Places* yet remaining worthy of note, together with several others that were since built: as on *Mount Calvary* where *Christ the Saviour of the World* was *Crucified*, there is a rich, magnificent, and large *Temple* built by the virtuous *Helena*, Daughter to *Coilus*, a *British King*, and Mother to *Constantine the Great*, which not onely possesseth the *Mount*, but also all the *Garden* below, 50 where his *Sepulchre* was, and in this *Temple* there are several rich *Structures*, as one where *Christ* was imprisoned before his *Crucifixion*, another where *Christ* was nailed to the *Cross*, another where he was *Crucified*, also one where the *Sepulchre* was, the *Altar of the Holy Cross*, the *Altar of the Scourging*, the *Chapel of the Apparition*, the *Chapel of the Angels*, the

*Chapel of the division of his Garments*, the *Chapel of Saint Helena*, who built this *Temple*, the *Chapel of Saint Johns*, the *Sepulchre of Joseph of Arimathea* under ground, together with several others too long to recite.

To this place there is a great resort, as well of *Protestants* as *Papists*, though for fundry ends, which brings a great revenue, none being permitted to enter without paying some money, which the *Jews* here inhabiting do farm of the *Grand Seigneur* at a large yearly Revenue, and so become *Masters* thereof, making a great profit by shewing them to *Strangers*, which come hither from all *Nations*. Several other *Places* are yet remaining, as the *Castle of the Pilans*, the *Monastery of the Franciscans*, the *Church of Saint James*, the *Church of St. Mark*, where once stood his House, a *Mosque*, where stood the House of *Zebedaus*, a *Chapel*, where stood the House of *Saint Thomas*, the *Church of the Angels*, where the *Palace of Annas* the *High-Priest* stood, the *Church of St. Saviour*, where the *Palace of Caiphas* stood, the *Court of Solomon's Temple*, yet remaining, but in the room of the *Temple a Mosque*.

Near about *Jerusalem* there are several 30 *Places* of note yet remaining, as in the way between *Jerusalem* and the *City of Bethlem* there are the *ruines of David's Tower*, the *Tower of Simcon*, *Bathsheba's Fountain*, the *Cistern of Sages*, the *Monastery of Elias*, *Jacob's Houfe*, the *Sepulchre of Rachel*, the *Cistern of David*, the House of *Joseph*, the *Monastery of Bethlem*, the *Monastery of the Holy Cross*.

And at *Bethlehem*, over the place where *Christ* was born, the virtuous *Helena* erected also another fair and goodly *Temple*, which is possess'd by the *Franciscans of Jerusalem*, being called by the Name of *St. Maries of Bethlehem*.

Nigh to *Jerusalem* is the desert of *Saint John Baptist* where is yet the *ruines of a Monastery* over his *Cave*, and the *Fountain*, as also the *Mountains of Juda*, where is the *Church of Saint John Baptist*, the *Fountain*, and the *House of Elizabeth*, also the *Sepulchre of Zachary*, a part of the *Pillar of Absalon*, and the *Cave of S. James*.

At *Bethania*, two Miles from *Jerusalem*, is the House of *Simon the Leper*, the House of *Lazarus*, as also his *Sepulchre*, where is the *Mount of Olives*, where is the *Sepulchre of the Virgin Mary*, where *Christ* was often, and from whence he ascended up into heaven.

F

Foppa,

*Foppa*, or *Fassa*, serves for a Port to *Ferusalem*, from which it is 10 Miles distant, and it was thither that the *Wood and Stones*, taken from *Mount Libanus*, and destined to the building of the *Temple of Solomon*, were brought by water, and from thence by land to *Ferusalem*. This is the Port where *Fonah* embarked to fly from the face of the *Lord*, who had commanded him to go preach Repentance to *Niniveh*, and here in all appearance the *Whale* vomited him, and he took hence the Journey he was commanded. From this History the Heathens made the Fable of *Andromeda*, and pretended to shew in the Rock, which is before the Port, the marks of the Irons, to which *Andromeda* was chained, and exposed to the *Sea-monster*.

After *Ferusalem* there rests yet *Gaza*, now *Gazere*, greater and better inhabited than *Ferusalem*. *Fericho* seated on the River *Jordan*, about 30 Miles distant from *Ferusalem*, a City once of great fame, being in the time of *Christianity* an *Episcopal See*, also noted for her beautiful *Palms*, but especially for her *Balsamum*; but now turned to ruins; in the place whereof stands a few poor Cottages inhabited by the *Arabians*. *Samaria*, once the Seat of the *Kings of Israel*, hath now nothing left but the ruins of some proud Buildings. *Sichem*, now *Naploufe*, hath some *Samaritans*, and remains the Capital of that Quarter, and the best inhabited, but with many ruins; And to speak truth, there is now scarce any place of Mark in all the *Holy Land*; whereas under the *Cananites*, under the *Hebrews*, under the *Jews*, there were so many *People*, so many *Kings*, so many *Cities*, so rich, and so powerful, that throughout the whole Continent of the Earth, there was no Country might compare with it. *Ferusalem* is at present governed by a *Bassa*, and *Naploufe* by another, which obey the *Beglerby of Damascus*.

## DIARBECK.

Diarbeck,  
and its  
Falls.

**D**IARBECK, taken particularly answers onely to *Mesopotamia*, which is but a part of the ancient *Assyria*; taken in general, it answers to the three parts of that *Assyria*, of which the particular *Assyria* is now called *Arzerum* or *Aderbigan*, *Mesopotamia*, *Diarbeck*, and *Chaldea* or *Babylonia*, or *Terack*. The first is the most *Oriental*, and almost all beyond the *Ty-*

*gris*; The second the most *Occidental*, and is between the *Euphrates* and the *Tygris*; The third the most *Meridional*, and lyes on both sides the *Tygris*; the name of *Assyria* came from *Assur* the Son of *Shem*; that of *Mesopotamia* is taken from its situation, between the two Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*; Those of *Chaldea* or *Babylonia* are taken, the one from the name of the ancient *People*, the other from the chief City of that *People*, which hath been so famous throughout all the East.

This *CHALDEA*, or *Babylonia*, now *Terack* is bounded on the East with part of *Persia*, on the South with the *Persian bay*, and part of *Arabia Deserta*; on the West with *Arabia Deserta*, and on the North with *Mesopotamia*.

This Country is for the most part exceeding fruitful, yielding ordinarily 200 fold, the blades of their *Wheat* and *Barly* being about four fingers broad, having yearly two Harvests. The *People* anciently were much given to *Divinations*, *South-sayings*, and *Idolatry*.

Places of most note in this Country, are, 1. *Babylon*, formerly *Babel*, the ancientest City in the World, seated on the Bank of the *Euphrates*, first built by *Nimrod*, afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Semiramis* the wife of *Ninus* one of his Successors; and lastly, much enlarged and beautified by *Nebuchadnezzar*, so that it was accounted one of the nine Wonders of the World. This City was so vast that its Walls stretch in circumference 365 Furlongs, in height 66 Yards, and in breadth 25. situate on both sides of the *Euphrates*, which also ran through the City emptying it self into divers *Rivolets*; over this River *Euphrates* there was a stately *Bridge*, at each end of which there was a sumptuous *Palace*, beautified also with the *Temple* of the *Idol Bel*; the whole City being adorned with fair Buildings, stately *Palaces*, and *Temples*, with a number of fair and large Streets, famous for its Tower of *Babel*, which exalted it self 5164. paces in height, which is something above five 50 Miles, having its basis, or circumference equal to its height; The passage to ascend this great Building, (as *Heylin* noteth) went winding about the out-side; which was of so great a breadth, that there was not onely room for *Horses*, *Carts*, and other *Carriages* which were employed in the Building, to meet and turn; but also Lodging for *Man* and *Beast*, nay, as some say, *Grass*, and *Corn-fields* for the nourishment

Chaldea,  
Terack.

Tr. fr. fr.  
and 1794.

Tr. ch.  
1710.

City of B.  
Tygris or  
Euphrates.

rishm  
of whi  
fustion  
but on  
it to h  
esteen  
forich  
taking  
lents c  
esteen  
but th  
of Go  
invasi  
Maca  
ned,  
and m  
ines;  
called  
Garden  
compa  
largen  
seven  
to  
tw n  
Carav  
Camel  
ties br  
abound  
Aleppo  
use also  
direct  
stead  
servet  
ravans  
geons,  
they w  
their P  
the P  
up, at  
ther P  
gives n  
The  
worthy  
and ri  
stone,  
cular,  
to the  
arich  
Bridge  
are cha  
sion n  
blance  
lastly,  
of Go  
of Co  
Place  
sort o  
which

Babylon  
now called  
Bagdad.

rishment of their *Castels*, at the building of which, God sent amongst them a confusion of Tongues, which before was but one, which hindered them from finishing it so high as they intended: A City once esteemed the Mistress of the World, and so rich, that it is said, that *Alexander* at his taking it found treasured up 200000 talents of Gold (a talent of our Money being esteemed at 4500 pounds) a vast Treasure; but the sins of the People drew the wrath of God upon it, and by reason of its invasions by the *Medes*, *Persians*, and *Macedonians*, who subdued it, so ruined, that it soon lost its pristine glory and magnificence, being reduced to ruins; out of which was raised a new City called *Bagdad*, so named from its many *Gardens* therein contained, but not to compare to the old *Babylon*, neither in largeness, nor glory, being not above seven Miles in compass, but yet remains to this day a Place of great Trade, between which and *Aleppo* are found many *Caravans* to travel with many thousand *Camels* laden with divers rich Commodities brought from *India*, and elsewhere, abounding with the same Commodities as *Aleppo* doth. At this Place they make use also of *Pigeons* as they do at *Alexandretta* and *Alleppo*, which serve instead of *Posts*, which, when occasion serveth, as upon the arrival of *Ships*, *Caravans*, or the like, they take these *Pigeons*, and tye an advertisement (which they write in a little piece of Paper) about their Necks, which done, they carry the *Pigeon* to a high place, and toss it up, and immediately it flyeth to the other Place to which it is designed, which gives notice to them.

The Places in this City that are most worthy of note, are, the *Mosque*, a large and rich Structure, built of white Free-stone, resembling Marble, in form orbicular; then the *Sultan's Palace* adjoining to the *Buzzar*, or great Market-place, is a rich, large, but low *Fabrick*; next the *Bridge*, whose passage is over Boats, which are chained together, which, upon occasion may be separated, having resemblance to that of *Roan* in *Normandy*; and lastly, its *Cahou-houses*, which are Houses of Good-fellowship, being in the nature of *Coffee houses* with us, which in this Place are many, to which a great resort of People commeth, to sip *Coffee*, which by them is highly esteemed, as

indeed by most people in these Regions.

The *Coynes*, *Weights*, and *Measures* of this City of *Bagdad*, and generally throughout the *Turks* Dominions, as in *Anatalia*, or *Asiaminors*; in the *Anatalian Isles*; in *Souria*, or *Syria*; in *Assyria*, *Turcomania*, *Gorgia*, and *Comania*; together with most places throughout the *Grand Seignior's* Empire, doth correspond with those of *Constantinople* in *Europe*, as being his *Metropolitan City*, and place of residence, to which I refer the Reader, as having there largely treated of them, and omitting them in the aforesaid Places, by reason of their being either *In-land* places, or else of little or no Trade.

The Coyne, Weights, and Measures.

3. *Balsora*, the *Port-town* to *Bagdad*, seated near the place where *Tygris* loes it self in the *Persian Gulf*, which is likewise called the *Gulf of Balsora* and *Ormuz*. This City is said to have 10000 *Houses*, and answers to the ancient *Teredon*; 4. *Cousa*, was sometime the Seat of the *Califfs*, and near it was *Ali entered*; whence it hath likewise been called *Masud-Ali*, or *Merat-Ali*, the House of *Ali*, and there is always a Horse kept ready to mount *Mahomet Mahadin*, the Son of *Almanzor*, the Son of *Ocem*, the Son of *Ali*, when he shall come to convert the whole World to the Law of *Mahomet*; for this Conversion is to begin at *Cousa*: but they hitherto have had, and may for the future have time enough to curry their Horse, expecting the coming of their *Cavalier*. 5. *Orchoe*, now so called, is the *Urchoa* of *Ptolemy*, and *Ur* the place of *Abraham's* nativity. 6. *Borsippa*, by *Ptolemy* called *Barsista*, famous for the great Victory which *Cyrus*, the first *Persian Monarch*, here obtained against *Nabonius King of Babylon*. 7. *Ctesiphon*, seated on the *Tygris*; and 8. *Sippurum*, noted for the great Trench made near it, which was made to receive the overflowings of the *Stretes* which was in compass 160 Miles, and in depth 20 Fathoms, which was made to preserve the City of *Babylon* from overflowings.

*Bagdad* and *Balsora* have each their *Beglerbeys*, and many *Sangiac's* but to speak truth, sometime the *Turk*, sometime the *Persian* possesses these *Quarters*; The last took *Bagdad* in the year 1624, which the *Turks* regained in 1638. Fame now speaks it the *Persians*.

ntal, and  
e *Tygris*;  
and lyes  
e of *Assy-*  
*riens*; that  
ituation,  
and *Eu-*  
*rylonia* are  
of the an-  
chief City  
o famous

onia, now  
ith part of  
erbian bay,  
the West  
the North

t part ex-  
arily 200  
and Barly  
d, having  
ople anci-  
ivinations,

country, are,  
e ancientest  
the Bank of  
*Euphrat*, after-  
by *Semira-*  
Successors;  
beautified  
as account-  
the World.  
alls stretcht  
in height  
scituate on  
ich also ran  
self into di-  
*Euphrates*  
each end of  
s Palace,  
ple of the  
ng adorn-  
y Palaces,  
of fair and  
ower of *Ba-*  
4. paces in  
above five  
umference  
e to ascend  
n noteth)  
te; which  
e there was  
*Parts*, and  
mployed in  
; but also  
y, as some  
the nour-  
ishment

Chaldei  
Babylonia

Babylon  
now called  
Bagdad.

In front  
and rear.

The chief  
Place.

City of B.  
Babylon  
is called

## MESOPOTAMIA.

Mesopotamia  
is bounded  
to the West  
by the  
Euphrates.

**MESOPOTAMIA**, or the particular *Diarbeck*, is bounded on the East with the River *Tygris*, on the South with *Chaldea*, and *Arabia deserta*; on the West with the *Euphrates*; and on the North with *Mount Taurus*. The Southern part of this Country is very barren and full of *Desarts*, scarce affording any *herbage*, nor hardly so much as *Trees*. But as this part is so much deficient, that towards the North hath as great *plenty*, which makes amends, abounding with great store of *Corn*, and *Wine*, together with all such necessaries as are required for the life of *man*.

In brief  
Description.

Places of most note here found, are, 20  
1. *Rohai*, or *Orrhoai*, and more commonly *Orpha*, which is the ancient *Edesse*, and hath yet 10000 paces, which is 10 Miles, in Circuit; situate on the River *Scirtus*, which passes through the midst of it, not far from the *Euphrates* into which it falls.  
2. *Caraemid*, or *Caramitt*, antiently *Amida*, seated near the *Tygris*, encompassed with a strong Wall, a Frontire Town of great strength, having for its further security 30 *Towers*, being much desired by the *Persians*; now the chief Seat of the *Bassa*, which governs this Country for the *Turk*, where the *Patriarch* of the *Jacobite Christians* also had his residence; this City is in compass about 10 Miles.  
3. *Merdin*, not above four or five Miles in circuit, but is very strongly seated on a high *Mountain*, and having a *Castle* of about a Mile in circumference; not far from which in the *Monastery* of *Saphran*, is the *Patriarchal See* of the *Jacobite Sectaries*.  
4. *Asanchif*, esteemed the *Metropolis* of the Country, yet not being of above four or five Miles compass, but hath four great Suburbs well filled with *Inhabitants*.  
5. *Carra*, where *Crassus* and the *Romans* were defeated, is now called *Herren*, or *Harran*, the City to which *Abraham* did remove when he went towards *Canaan*, remarkable in former times for its famous *Temple*, dedicated to the *Moon*, which was here worshipped under both sexes.  
6. *Sumiscasick*, not far from *Edesse*, hath its *Castle* seated very advantageously. The *Castle* of *Corna* that is pointed, is one of the most important Places the *Turks* possess in all these *Quarters*, being built above the place where the *Tygris* and *Euphrates* meet,

to keep in awe both these Rivers. 7. *Phalga*, or *Phalida*, which was the Seat of *Phaleg*, one of *Abrahams* Ancestors. 8. *Bezabbe*, seated on a high Hill, bending towards the Banks of *Tygris*. And, 9. *Virta*, by some Authors supposed to have been built by *Alexander* the Great, encompassed with Walls, and fortified with Towers and Bulwarks, that it was in a manner impregnable.

The *Beyleybeg* of *Diarbeck*, or *Mesopotamia*, resides ordinarily at *Asanchif*, sometimes at *Caramitt*. The *Arabian Geographer* of *Nubia* calls *Mesopotamia*, *Al Gezira* the *Island*, because it is a *Peninsula*; the *Euphrates* bounds it on the West and South; the *Tygris* on the East; on the North are the *Mountains* which separate it from *Armenia*, or *Turcomania*.

The residence  
of the Beyley  
beg of Diarbeck.

## ASSYRIA.

**ASSYRIA**, particularly so called, hath for its Eastern limits, *Media*; for its Southern, *Susiana*; for its Western, *Mesopotamia*; and for its Northern limits, part of *Chaldea*, and *Turcomania*, seated beyond the *Tygris*; and is called at this day, *Arzerum*, or *Aderbigian* (the *Arab* reads it *Adbrabigion*).

Assyria  
bounded.

This Country is very fruitful, seated in a Plain, and watered with several good Rivers; the People were antiently much addicted to *Marshal* affairs, yet very demure in their *Habit* and *Behaviour*, not going out of their *Doors* without first being perfumed, adorned with *Rings* on their Fingers, and a *Scepter* in their Hands; They were much given to *Bathing*, and especially after *Copulation*. In their *Nuptial Ceremonies* they never see the *Woman* until they are married; but when they hear a good report of a *Maiden*, being such as liketh them, they go to her Parents, and with them agree; which done on an appointed time, they meet in the Church, in such a part of it as is designed for that use, where there is a partition, with a hole in it: on one side, the *Bridegroom* and his Friends stand; and on the other, the *Bride* and her Friends; then the *Cassise*, or *Priest* bids the *Bridegroom* put his hand through the hole, and take his *Bride* by the hand, which no sooner done, but her Mother, or some other of her Friends, being prepared with a sharp Instrument, pricks his hand all over; and if he doth not pull away his hand

In Troph  
and the  
Captives,  
&c.

when



7. Phal-  
eat of Pha-  
8. Be-  
ending to-  
nd, 9. Vir-  
to have  
Great, en-  
rified with  
s in a man-

r Mesopota-  
bis, some-  
ian Geogra-  
Al Gezi-  
Peninsula,  
e West and  
st, on the  
h separate  
ania.

A.

so called, Assyria  
Media, for  
Western  
thern limits,  
nia, seated  
lled at this  
(the Arab

l, seated in  
al good Ri-  
richly much  
t very de-  
viour, not  
t first being  
s on their  
eir Hands,  
ing, and e-  
their Nap-  
the Woman  
u they hear  
ing such as  
rents, and  
on an ap-  
pe Church,  
ed for that  
with a hole  
om and his  
, the Bride  
, or Priest  
nd through  
y the hand,  
Mother, or  
g prepared  
is hand all  
y his hand  
when

when he is so pain'd, but still holds her fo fast that she cries, they hold it a sign that he will love her; and if he lets her go, a sign o' no great love.

Places of most note: 1. *Nimve* first built by *Nimrod*, and afterwards so enlarged by several succeeding *Kings*, that it became at last to exceed *Babylon* as well in largeness, as otherwise; its *Walls* being in Circuit 60 miles, being about 33 yards in height, and 24 in breadth; and on whose *Walls* there was for further strength 1500 *Turrets* or *Towers*, which made it to be thought impregnable. To this *City* the Lord sent *Jonah* the Prophet to Preach Repentance to them; but afterwards for their sins, it was destroyed by *Astyages* King of the *Medes*, out of whose ruins the *City*, 2. *Mosul* was raised, which at this present is the chief *City* of *Assyria* seated on the *Tygris*, most eminent for being the residence of the *Nestorian Patriarch*, where are found 15 *Christian Churches* as also about 40000 *Christians* here inhabiting. 3. *Scherhezadell* or *Schiabrazar* is very near to *Persia*, and is the seat of a *Turkish Beglerbey* or *Bass*, who hath 10000 *Timariots* under his command for the defence, and security of this Country. It is near to, if not the same as *Arbela*, renowned for the Victory of *Alexander* the Great, against *Darius*, and is said to retain its ancient name, and to be an *Archbishoprick* of the *Jacobites*. 4. *Gegumela* noted for the last and greatest *Battel* betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, King of *Persia*, in which *Alexander* gained the Victory. 5. *Calach*, built by *Nimrod*, being one of the *Cities* to which *Salmanassar* transplanted the ten *Tribes*. 6. *Arbela* seated on the banks of the *River Caprus*, by some supposed to be the place where *Noahs Arke* was framed; and 7. *Sittace* pleasantly seated in a fruitful soil.

All these quarters of *Assyria*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Chaldea*, have been very famous among the *Antients*, for the building of the *Tower of Babel*, for the confusion of tongues, and division of Nations; for the erecting the first *Monarchies*, for the greatness and beauty of their *Cities*, for the richness of their people, for the goodness, and fruitfulness of their Country; And the *Terrestrial Paradise* seems either to have been here, or not far distant from hence, as we shall declare anon.

## TURCOMANIA.

TURCOMANIA or ARMENIA

*MAFRO*, is on the South of *Georgia*, on the North of *Diarbeck*; on the East of *Anatolia*, and on the West of *Servan*; it touches the *Caspian sea*, between *Georgia* and *Servan*; and on the black Sea between *Anatolia* and *Georgia*; it extends from East to West little less than 200 Leagues, and from South to North, 150, answering to the great *Armenia*, of the *Antients*.

Some divide it only into two sorts of people; The *Turcomans*, and the *Curdes*: I would add at least the *Armenians*, and the *Georgians*; these possessing a great part of the Country, as well as the *Turcomans* and *Curdes*: and the others being the natural, and most ancient *Inhabitants*: for the *Turcomans* are esteemed to descend from *Turquesian* in *Tartary*, from whence come the *Turks*, and to whom they are most resembling; the *Curdes* esteemed to descend from the ancient people of *Assyria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Chaldea* or *Babylonia*; the most Easterly of these three parts being yet called by the *Turks*, and by the *Persians*, *Curdistan*, or the Country of the *Curdes*: and the *Georgians* descend from *Georgia* which is above, and contiguous to, our *Turcomania*.

Of these four sorts of People, the *Armenians* are the most industrious and civil, adding themselves to Merchandize, as appears by their *Manufactures* especially in their rich *Tapestries*, *Grograins*, *watered Chamlets*, &c. with which they drive a trade, being also proper personages, and good Archers. The *Turcomans* apply themselves to the *Field*, and to the guard of their flocks: The *Curdes* are almost ever on horse-back having much of the *Arabick Nature*: The *Georgians* are the most docile, and the most peaceable. The *Turcomans* and the *Curdes* are *Mahometans*: The *Georgians*, and *Armenians* the greatest part *Christians*: And the *Armenian tongue* is one of the most general in all *ASIA*; extending it self likewise otherwise, and having *Armenian Patriarchs* and *Bishops*, not only in *Armenia*, but likewise in *Anatolia*, *Persia*, the *Holy Land*, *Egypt*, *Russia*, and *Polonia*.

The *Aire* of *Turcomania* or *Armenia* is healthful, though its temperament be cold, because of the *Mountains* and *Hills* which over-spread the Country, but intermixt with fertile and delightful valleys;

G

Turcomania bounded.

In people;

Assyria bounded.

The People and their Customs.

In Aire, good fertility and trade.

the *soile* producing more *grain* and *fruits* then *vines* ; It yields *bole-Armenick*, *Honey*, and, towards *Servans*, *silk* ; together with some *Mines of Silver*. The *Pastures* are every where excellent, and particularly for *horses*, of which they make great account, for when *Armenia* was subject to the *Ancient Kings of Persia*, it furnished them yearly with 20000 *horses*. At present the *Turk* possesses the greatest part of the *Country*, and keeps still, or did not long since keep, *Beglerbegs* at *Erzerum*, *Cars*, *Revan*, *Van*, *Schilder*, *Tefflis*, and *Derbent* : besides which there are many *Cities* of considerable note, some of which the *Persians* hold.

1. *Erzerum* is on the *Euphrates*, and there where this *River* approaches the nearest to the *black sea*, on which and not far from *Erzerum* is *Trebisonde* : which facilitates a great trade between the *East*, *West*, and *North* ; for, coming from the *Oriental Indian Ocean*, by the *Gulf of Ormus* or *Balsora*, and so up the *Euphrates*, they may receive passing by what comes from the *West* to *Aleppo*, and carry it unto *Erzerum* ; from whence to *Trebisonde* by land is not above 25 or 30 Leagues : and thus *Erzerum* carries to *Trebisonde* all that comes from the *East* and *West*, to communicate it to the *North* by the *black sea* : and *Trebisonde* brings to *Erzerum* all that is good of the *North*, to communicate it to the *West* by *Aleppo*, and the *Mediterranean-sea*, to the *East* by the *Gulf of Ormus* and the *Indian Ocean*. 2. *Cars*, *Chars*, or likewise *Chiffery*, is four or five days journey from *Erzerum* towards the *East*, in the way to *Revan*. This place is on the *River Euphrates*, it hath been taken and retaken divers times by the *Turks*, and *Persians* ; who have had there, and thereabouts, many *Battails* and *Encounters* ; sometimes favourable to the one, and sometimes to the other. The same may be said of *Revan*, *Schilder*, and *Van* : this last is not great, but well walled, and with greater *ditches*, and hath a *Castle* whose situation is such, as renders it almost inaccessible. 3. *Tefflis* is likewise in some esteem at present, but much more formerly under the name of *Artaxata*, which *Artaxias*, father of *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, caused to be builded, and fortified at the persuasion of *Hannibal* ; and the place was found so strong, that *Lucullus* after having over-run, and pillaged all *Armenia*, having laid siege to this place,

wherein was the *Wife* and *Children* of *Tigranes*, he was, after long time spent in vain, forced to raise the siege. 4. *Derbent* of great antiquity, being supposed to have its foundation laid by *Alexander the Great* ; who also erected that no less great, then strong *Castle* which is called *Kastow*, adjoining to the said *City* which is the greatest, and most ordinary passage between *Turcomania*, *Persia*, and other Southern Provinces of *Asia*, to *Zuire*, the Kingdom of *Astracan*, and other more Northern Estates of *Europe* and *ASIA*. Its situation is upon the utmost Mountains, which regard the *Tabarestan* or *Caspian sea* : two walls serve to inclose the 300 and odd, which remain between the *City* and the *Port* : and all is so well fortified, that the *Turks* have took occasion to call the place *Demir*, or *Temir Capi*, or the *Port of Iron* : and the name of *Derbent* signifies a *Streight Port*, and in all likelihood these are the *Caspia Ports*, so famous among the *Ancients* : because that in the *black sea*, and the *sea of Tabarestan*, which is about three or 400 thousand paces : it is all high, *Mountainous*, and hard to be passed ; and if there be any passages, they are infamous for *Robberies* and *incursions*, which the *inhabitants* of the *Countrys*, or the *Princes* which possess them, make. This *City* is a place of great strength, being invironed with two strong walls, and fortified with *Towers* and *Iron-gates*, being accounted the *Key* or inlet to *Persia*, now in the hands of the *Grand Signior*. 5. *Bitlis* and *Mansscute* belong to the *Curdys*, who have here many and divers *Lords*, better affected to the *Persians*, then the *Turks*, and yet when the *Turks* have established *Governours* in these quarters, they have chosen them out of the principal of the *Country* ; who have not ceased to take part in all occasions rather with the *Persians* then the *Turks*. *Bitlis* is between two Mountains, watered with a *River*, which receives many fair *Fountains* : The houses are built with *stones*, which is rare in that *Country* ; others being of nothing but *Wood* and *Earth*. The *Castle* is seated advantageously, but I believe this place is not now in the hands of the *Turks*, and to speak truth, we have at present little knowledge of any thing concerning these quarters.

*ARMENIA* was much better known and more famous in *Ancient* time, then at present, under the name of *Turcomania*.

The

The ac  
of its se  
of its M  
vernum  
to its re

The Lewis  
of Armin  
is.

Its A  
ing qu  
tains,  
Seas.  
Mofchi  
Cyrus  
and A  
neral: C  
and the  
soma a  
On th  
from A  
East th  
Media  
mains  
one fid  
sea, be  
other t  
the left  
Autho  
which

The Moun  
tains of  
Armenia.

Wit  
well re  
Rivers  
ti-Tau  
most t  
whose  
from v  
Araxe  
Gordia  
supplie  
crease

Bitlis  
is in  
Armenia.

Araxe  
Far  
North  
and pu  
falls in  
toward  
and ri  
into t  
Alban  
phrate  
appro  
toward  
Chan  
rus,  
and A  
and A  
it wa  
self in  
Moun  
falls  
rises

The advantage of its bounds, the nature of its situation, the magnificence of some of its Kings, as likewise its greatness, government, and riches much contributed to its renown.

Its bounds are very advantagious, being quite encompassed with high Mountains, large Rivers, and washed by divers Seas. On the North the Mountains, Moschiques or Moscontes, and the River <sup>10</sup> Cyrus separate it from Colchide, Iberia and Albania which we call Georgia in general: On the South the Mountains Taurus, and the Niphates, separate it from Mesopotamia and Assyria, which we call Diarbeck: On the West the Euphrates separates it from Asia minor now Anatolia: On the East the Caspian Mountains divide it from Media which we call Scyvan. There remains some parts of Armenia, which on one side touch the Caspian or Tabarestan sea, between Albania and Media; on the other the Euxine or black-sea, between the lesser Asia, and Colchida: for divers Authors extend Armenia unto this sea, which others shut up with the Moschique Mountains.

With this advantage the Country is well replenished with Mountains, Valleys, Rivers, and Lakes. The Mountain Anti-Taurus divides it East and West, almost from one extremity to the other; whose most Easternly point is call'd Abus; from whence the Euphrates, Tigris, and Araxes take some of their streams: The Gordian Mountains pour forth the greatest supplies to Tigris; and the Paryades increase most the streams of Euphrates, Araxes, and Farza.

Farza turns his course towards the <sup>40</sup> North, and after having passed Colchida, and pressed through 100 or 120 Bridges, falls into the Euxine Sea. Araxes turns towards the East, watering the fairest and richest Plains of Armenia; and falls into the Caspian Sea, between Media and Albania: Both the one, and the other Euphrates descend towards the West; but approaching the Euxine Sea, it turns again towards the South, and reunites its two <sup>50</sup> Channels into one, traverses the Antitaurus, and the Taurus; divide Armenia and Mesopotamia, from Asia Minor, Syria and Arabia: Descends into Chaldea, where it waters the ancient Babylon, and loses it self in the Tigris. This last descends from Mount Abus, and the Georgian Mountains, falls into divers Lakes, loses it self, and rises divers times out of the Earth; cuts

the Mountain Niphates, separates Mesopotamia from Assyria, washes Ninive, Selucia, Ctesiphon; receives all the branches of the Euphrates, and discharges it self in the Persian Gulf.

The greatest Lakes of Armenia are three, Thospitis, Areessa, and Lychintes: This last is towards the Araxes, and the Caspian sea: Areessa is the same that Pliny, and Solinus, call Aretbusa; Strabon, Arzene (with which he confounds Thonitis;) Amianus, Marcellinus, Sosingtie. This is the first which the Tygris crosses, after which it loses it self first under ground, near to Mount Taurus; Thospitis, according to Ptolemy, and Thospites according to Pliny, and Thonitis according to Strabon; if I be not mistaken, is another Lake the Tygris likewise crosses: after which it loses it self the second time. The first hath its water so as it will take Spots out of Cloaths; but is not good to drink.

Among the Kings of Armenia, which made themselves most known to the Romans, or Parthians; Tigranes Son-in-law to Mithridates, King of Pontus, hath been the most famous. This Tigranes, after having been an hostage in the hands of the Parthians, regained his Estates by their means, in recompence of which he gave them 70 Valleys, on the Confines of Media and Assyria: but after he knew, and had gathered together his Powers, he retook all those Valleys, beat the Parthians out of them, pillaged Assyria, as far as Ninive, and Arbela, subjected to himself a part of Media; and afterwards all Mesopotamia, Syria, Phoenicia, and Cilicia: but, whilst he believed himself above Fortune, Mithridates his Father-in-law was divers times defeated, and driven from his Realm of Pontus by Lucullus, and the Romans; and retiring himself into Armenia to his Son-in-law: his refusal to abandon or deliver him into the hands of Lucullus, drew the Romans into Armenia, where Lucullus several times defeated Tigranes, took Tigranocerta, where was his Regal Diadem, and likewise in a great Set-battail, where Tigranes had 150 thousand foot, and 1000 or 1200 Horse, slew 100000 Foot, and the greatest part of his Cavalry, constraining him to yield to the Romans the Provinces of Cilicia, Syria, Phoenicia, and Mesopotamia, and content himself with Armenia onely: but for the present let us lay aside History.

Ptolemy divided Armenia into 4. principal

The bounds of Armenia.

The Mountains of Armenia.

Distinction of Armenia.

Lakes of Armenia.

Kings of Armenia.



The divi-  
on of Ar-  
menia ac-  
cording to  
Astrucy.

cipal Parts : and allotted to the first seven *Regions*, or *Provinces*, six to the second ; three to the third ; and four to the fourth : placing in the first part 30 *Cities*, 27 in the second, 12 in the third, and 18 in the fourth ; which are in all 4 *Parts*, 20 *Regions*, or *Provinces*, and 87 *Cities*. *Pliny* accounts 120 *Strategies* in *Armenia*, which are the *Governments*, or particular *Jurisdictions* of every *Province*, six for each, and one as much as the other. *Armenia* is not onely known in *Prophane History*, but likewise in *Holy Writ* : After the *Deluge*, the *Holy Scripture* makes mention, that the *Ark of Noah* rested upon the *Mountains of Armenia* : to say precisely at present which they were, (there being so many in *Armenia*) Authors cannot agree; We only conjecture, that they must be either *Abus*, which ends the *Anti-taurus*, or the *Pariades*, or the *Gordons*, which are the highest in all *Armenias* and from whence the *Euphrates*, the *Tygris*, the *Phazza* or *Phasis*, and *Araxes* descend.

Now *Euphrates* is called *Frat*, or *Forat*; the *Tygris*, *Diglah*, or *Digelath*; these two names, *Frat* and *Diglah*, are found among the four Rivers, which *Moses* saith came forth from the *terrestrial Paradise*; We must therefore seek this *Paradise*, not far from hence; the difficulty is to finde the other two Rivers, *Phison*, and *Gihon*.

Almost all Authors conclude the *Nile* for *Gehon*, and the *Ganges* for *Phison*: but, as the *Bible* describes these Rivers to us, they must descend from the same place, which the *Tygris*, the *Euphrates*, the *Nile*, and the *Ganges* cannot do. The *Tygris*, and the *Euphrates* have some Springs, which are not far distant the one from the other; but those of *Ganges* are more than 200 Leagues, and those of the *Nile* more than 1500 Leagues from those of the *Tygris*, or *Euphrates*; and moreover those of *Nile* and of *Ganges* are more than 2000 Leagues one from the other.

*Phasis* hath its heads in the same Mountain with the *Euphrates*; and may therefore better answer to *Phison*, then can the *Ganges*. The *Araxes* hath its Springs in the same Mountains, with the *Phasis*, and *Euphrates*; and so may better answer to the *Gehon* than the *Nile*; for as for the *Gehon*, or *Fehun*, which we now know, it answers to the *Oxus* of the Antients, which runs between *Bactriana*, and *Sog-*

*diana*, and discharges it self into the *Caspian sea*; but it hath its Springs in *Mount Caucasus* in *India*, a little on this side the Springs of the *Indus*, which are likewise 8 or 900 Leagues from those of *Tygris*; and *Euphrates*.

Since then the *Tygris*, *Euphrates*, *Phazza* and *Araxes*, have here their Springs, we may judge that the *Terrestrial Paradise* was in these Mountains. The holy Scripture saith, that it had in the midst of it a Fountain; from whence issued a River alone, which divides it self into four others, which it names *Phison*, *Gehon*, *Diglah*, and *Frat*. It is to be believed that this Fountain was in the midst of the World, to the end the Rivers might have a course almost equal to water all parts of the World. It must likewise be concluded, that this Fountain must be in some high part of the World, to the end that Rivers might have an equal fall. The Mountains of *Armenia* are directly in the middle of our Continent; which may easily be proved by casting the eye upon the whole Continent: they are likewise the highest in the World, since they were first discovered after the *Deluge*, and those on which the *Ark of Noah* rested, and the modern names of the Rivers, not being very different from the antients, at least the three or four; I am bold to say, that if there yet remains any marks by which we may discover the place where the *Terrestrial Paradise* hath been, it is rather in these quarters than any other.

GEORGIA.

Above *Turcomania*, and between the *Black sea*, and the *Caspian*, is far as *Mount Caucasus* lyes *GEORGIA*, which is divided into three or four parts, *Mingrelia*, *Avogasia*, *Gurgison* and *Zuirias*; *Avogasia* is sometimes comprehended under the name of *Mingrelia*: and on the other side a part of the ancient *Armenia* passeth likewise under the general name of *Georgia*; *Mingrelia*, and *Avogasia* together are the same with *Colchis* of the Antients, or little more; *Gurgison* to the antient *Iberia*, and sometimes likewise to that part of *Armenia*, which falls under the general name of *Georgia*; *Zuirias* answers to the antient *Albania*. This is the most Eastern of all, and lyes on the *Caspian sea*; *Mingrelia* is the most Western part, and on the *Black sea*; *Gurgison* is betwixt both,

and

The Ter-  
restrial  
Paradise  
in Arme-  
nia.

Georgis  
and its  
Tenu.

Georgis  
and its  
Tenu.

Country of  
Mingrelia, its  
Provinces  
and the  
Chief Pla-  
ces.

and tou-  
ther Sea  
been Ar-

The  
*Savatope-  
grelia*,  
*poli*, on  
*Dioscur*  
*ferent* M  
which o-  
way of  
*Phasis*,  
was the  
*Golden*  
away,  
difficult  
their hi-

I bel-  
other th-  
and *Fu*  
brough  
*Greeks*  
were th-  
there w-  
and dan-  
seigned  
that it  
well an-  
*Drago*  
with th-  
him, v-  
sures in  
ving in  
*Greeks*  
and tr-

Cor-  
of *Gu*  
est of  
under  
answe-  
*Harm*  
*ata*;  
*chinc*  
*Gurg*  
there  
is mo-  
*sachs*  
*Tess*  
of r-  
*man*

part  
and  
bou-  
Sea  
limi-  
oth-  
chie-  
*Ch*

and touches neither the one, nor the other Sea, if it be not that part which hath been Armenia.

The Cities of *Phans*, or *Phazza*, and *Savatopoli*, are the most famous of *Minogrelia*, and formerly of *Colchis*. *Savatopoli*, once *Sebastopolis*, and before that *Diofenrias* had the confluence of 300 different Nations, and different Tongues, which came hither from the North, in way of *Traffique*. *Phazza*, antiently *Phasis*, on the River of the same name, was the abode of *Aetes*, who kept the *Golden fleece*, which the *Argonautes* took away, after having vanquished all those difficulties which presented themselves to their hinderance.

I believe that this *Golden fleece* was no other thing, than a Trade of *Wool*, *Skins*, and *Furs*, which all the Northern people brought to *Phasis*, which *Fason*, and the *Greeks*, among all the people of *Europe*, were the first discoverers of: And because there was great profit, and many hazards and dangers in the first Navigations, it was feigned that the *fleece* was of *Gold*, and that it was guarded by furious *Bulls*, men well armed, and a horrible and affrightful *Dragon*. It may be added, that *Fason* with the *Golden Fleece* brought *Medea* with him, which after caused so many displeasures in his Family, that is, that Riches having introduced some *Luxury* among the *Greeks*, their *Women* became more proud and troublesome.

*Cori* and *Bassachinc* are the best Cities of *Gurgistan*: *Tesslis* and *Derbent* the fairest of that part of *Armenia*, which passes under the name of *Georgia*; *Bassachinc* may answer to the antient *Ariamissa*; *Cori* to *Harmastis*, or *Armaetia*; *Tesslis* to *Artaxata*; and *Derbent* to *Caspia Porta*; *Bassachinc* and *Cori* with some other places of *Gurgistan*, have their *Princes*, of which there are many throughout *Georgia*; *Cori* is most advanced towards the Sea, and *Bassachinc* more engaged with the *Mountains*. *Tesslis* and *Derbent*, are in the hands of the *Turks* as we have said in *Turcomania*.

*QUIRIA* extends it self from the particular *Georgia*, which lies on the West and South of it unto *Mount Caucasus*, which bounds it on the North side, and to the Sea of *Tabarestan* which washes its Eastern limits: Some Authors divide it into two, others into three *Provinces*; of which the chief Cities are *Strann*, *Zitrach*, and *Chipicha*, instead of *Strann*, others put

*Zambanach*, and instead of *Zitrach*, *Gorgora*; possibly these names are not different but to divers People; though they be the same places. However it be, *Strann*, or *Zambanach*, answer to the antient *Albana*, Metropolis of *Albania*; *Zitrach*, or *Gorgora* answers to the antient *Getaxa*; which the *Greek Text* in *Prology* writes *Gagara*, and both the places are on the Sea; they have been, and may possibly yet be rich, and Merchandizing. *Chipicha* is farther up in the Land, and was the antient *Chabala*.

COMMANIA

Above *Georgia* lies *COMMANIA*; little known by the Antients, and less at present; *Mount Cocas*, or *Caucasus*, bounds it on the South, and separates it from *Georgia*; The River *Don* or *Tana* is its Northern limits, and parts it from *Muscovia*; the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and the Sea of *Zabaque* or *Tana*, doth wash it on the West, and divides it from the petty *Tartars*: The *Caspian Sea*, or the Sea of *Tabarestan* lies to the Eastward of it, and gives it Traffick and Communication with *Persia* and *Tartaria*.

This *Region* may have 300 Leagues of length from the streight of *Vespero*, unto the River *Volga*; which are its extrem bounds from East to West: and about 100 Leagues broad from North to South: The People passe all under the general name of *Circasses*, which the *Polonians* call *Peint Zeorski*, that is, the Inhabitants of the five *Mountains*. They are free, having some Chiefs, or Governours, and living very near after the manner of *Zwizzers* in *Europe*, hiring themselves to *Warr*, sometimes to the *Turks* their Neighbour on the *Black Sea*, sometimes to the *Tartars* or *Muscovites*, which are next them on the Sea of *Zabaque* and River *Don*; and sometimes likewise to the *Soldan* of *Persia* who is their Neighbour on the *Caspian Sea*; They have been *Christians* of the *Greek Church*, but with many *Superstitions*; at present, for want of *Teachers*, many let themselves fall to *Mahometism*, others to *Idolatory*: They are warlike, nor care they for fortifying their Towns; confiding in their *Arms*, and in the Situation of their *Countrey*.

But the People of these Quarters have been much more famous formerly under the name of *Amazons*; for this was their

H true,

into the *Ca-*  
*ngs* in *Mount*  
this side the  
e likewise 8  
*Tygris*; and

*rates*, *Phaz-*  
*ier Springs*,  
*ial Paradise*  
holy *Scryp-*  
midst of it a  
d a River a-  
four others,  
*n*, *Diglat*,  
ved that this  
e *World*,  
to give a course  
parts of the  
concluded,  
some high  
that Rivers  
e *Mountains*  
e middle of  
e easily be  
on the whole  
e highest  
e first disco-  
ose on which  
the modern  
g very diffi-  
at if there  
ich we may  
ressful Pa-  
these quar-

A.

between the  
as far as  
I A, which  
arts, *Min-*  
and *Zurias*,  
hended un-  
d on the o-  
rmenia pas-  
al name of  
ia together  
e Antients,  
the antient  
se to that  
under the  
i; answers  
is the most  
*Caspian sea*;  
art, and on  
wixt both,  
and

*Georgia*,  
and the  
*Ferus*.

country of  
Georgia,  
and the  
Chief *Pla-*  
ces.

*Comma-*  
*nia*, and  
its bound.

its length  
and bred

its People.

its antient  
People the  
*Amazons*.

ARABIA, Arabia the Stony.

true and natural Countrey, from whence they came, and made their incursions into divers parts of *Europe* and *Asia*. They had Sovereignty, in *Colchida*, in *Albania*, in *Capadocia*, in *Asia* the Lesser, in *Cilicia*, in *Syria*, and did in divers places build many fair Cities, as *Themiscyra* in *Capadocia*, and on the *Euxine Sea*, *Mirlea* in *Bithinia*, and on the *Propontick*: *Pytané*, *Myrina*, and *Cuma* on the Coast of *Aolia*; likewise *Ephesus*, *Smyrna*, and *Pyrene*: On the Coast of *Ionis* (these two Quarters *Aolia* and *Ionis*, being on the *Aegean Sea*.) *Mytelene* in the Isle of *Lesbos*, and *Paphos* in the Isle of *Cyprus*, who made themselves known in those Wars they sustained against *Hercules*, near *Themiscyra*; against *Thebans*, near *Athens*, whither they carried the War against the *Greeks* before *Troy*; whither they went in favor of *Hector*; against the *Persians*, and other People in divers occasions. Some of them made their abode at *Themiscyra*, others at *Alope*, which was afterwards called *Ephesus*, and others at *Zeleja*, not far from *Troy*.

In fine, the *Ancients* have spoken so many wonders of them, that the least of them have passed for Fables. It may be believed, that some Estates in these Quarters being fallen under the Government of *Women*, their *Husbands* being deceased, and their *Children* young, or for some other reason: These *Women* administrated the publick affairs which so much conduct, and generosity, both in *Policy* and *War*, that they excelled the greatest part of *Men*; from whence, the *Greeks* according to their ordinary custom, took occasion to speak things not onely beyond the truth, but all that came nigh to truth. And so much for *Turkey* in *Asia*.

ARABIA.

ARABIA hath for its Eastern Limits, the Persian Gulf and *Chaldea*; for its Southern, the Ocean, for its Western, the Red Sea, and some part of *Egypt*; and for its Northern Limits, the River *Euphrates*, together with some part of *Palestine*. Arabia, Arabistan, among the Eastern people, hath been well known both to the *Ancients*, and at present. They commonly divided it into three parts: *Barrab*, or *A-*

rabia the Stony, which lies near the *Holy Land*, *Berjara* or *Arabia* the Desert, near to *Chaldea*, and the *Euphrates*; *Hyaman* or *Gemen*, or *Arabia* the Happy, which advances it self between the Red Sea, which separates it from *Affrica*, and the Gulf of *Ormus*, which divides it from *Persia*, into the *Indian Ocean*. And this last part of *Arabia* is the greatest, the richest, and best inhabited of all, containing four or five times as much Continent, as the other two together.

ARABIA the Stony.

ARABIA the Stony, hath for its chief places, 1. *Petra*, now called *Herat* or *Arat*, which signifies a *Rock*, whereupon it took its name from the *Stony place*, or *Rock* whereon it was built, with an advantagious situation, and communicating its name to its *Province*; a place of great strength, and much noted as well in *prophane History*, as *holy Writ*. 2. *Bostra*, now called *Busefereth*, rebuilt after its former ruins by *Augustus Caesar*, a City of great antiquity, and memorable for being the birth-place of *Philip*, one of *Alexanders* Successors, who was the first of the *Romans* Emperors which embraced Christianity, and who the fourth year of his Empire, celebrated the Thousandth of *Romes* Foundation. 3. *Medava*, now *Moab*, according to the Translation of the *Septuagint*, and being so, the name may be taken from *Moab*, son of *Lot*s eldest Daughter, from whence the *Moabites* descended; of whom mention is made in the *Old Testament*. 4. *Berenice*, so named from an *Egyptian Queen*, but better known by the name of *Ezion-Geber*, here it was that the Children of *Israel* did incamp; where also those Ships employed by *Solomon* to *Ophir*, did make their ordinary Harbor. 5. *Sur*, one of the chief Cities of the *Amalekites*, giving name to a *Wilderness* there adjacent, remarkable for the great victory which *Saul* gave the *Amalekites*, where also the Children of *Israel* first encamped, after their passage through the Red Sea. 6. *Thara*, where *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, were punished. And 7. *Madian*, seated towards the Red Sea, being the City of *Jethro*, whose Daughter, *Zipporah*, *Moses* took to Wife.

Besides these Cities there are some others; nevertheless the Country is for the greatest part Desert, and is the same where the

Arabia the Stony, and its chief places.

Arabia the Stony.

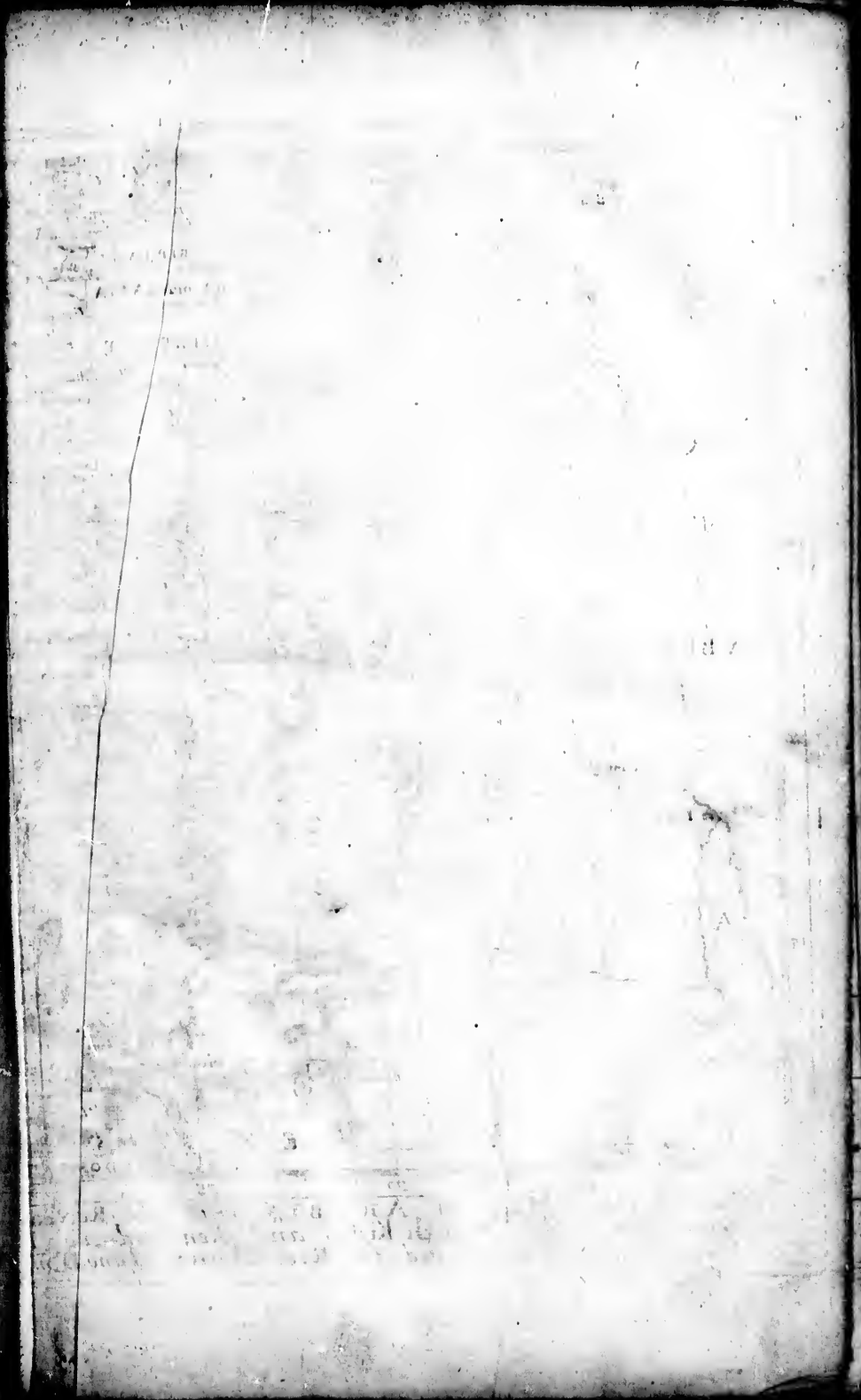
etc.

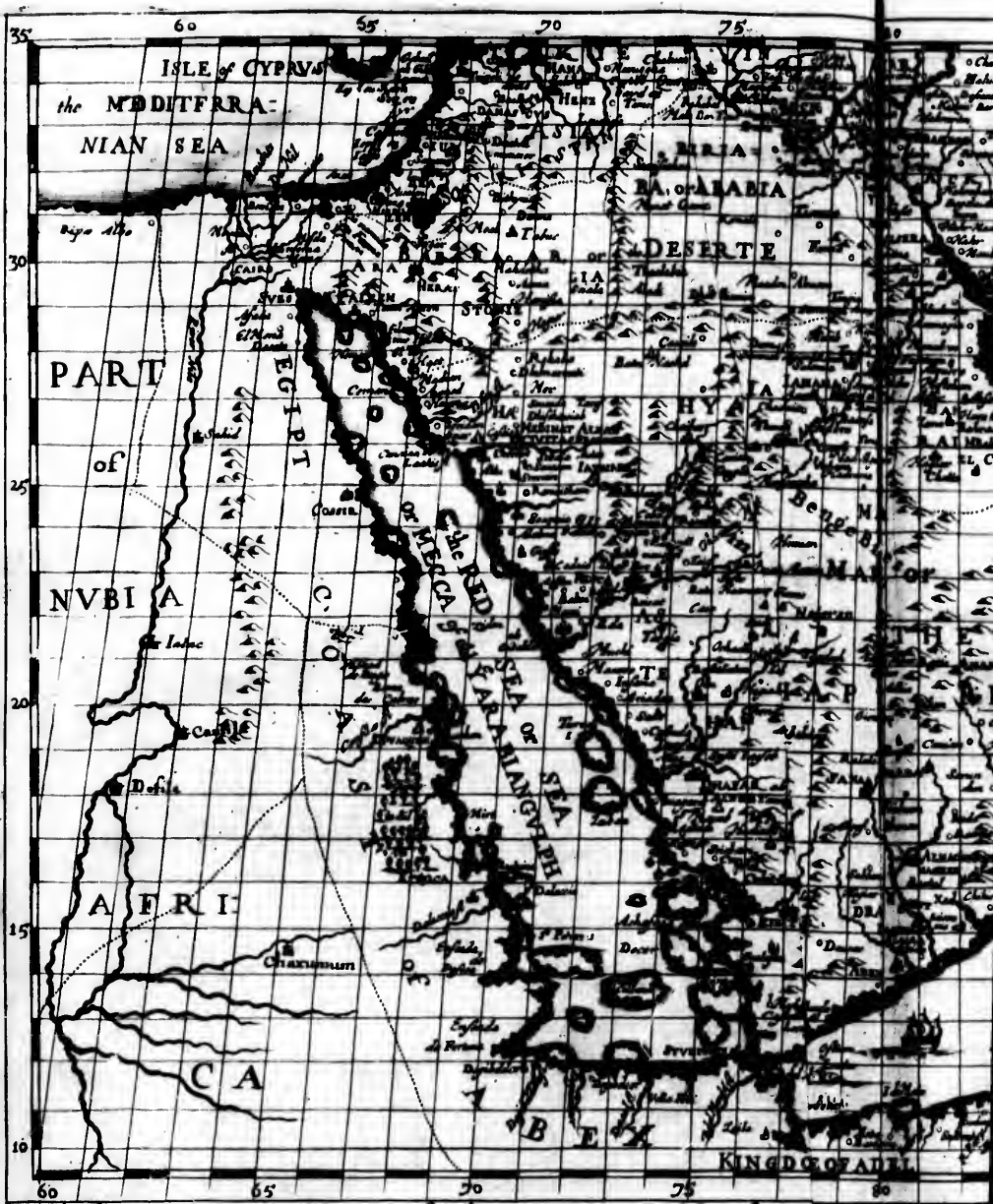
the Holy  
ert, near  
Hyaman  
, which  
ed Sea,  
and the  
from Per-  
this last  
e richest,  
ning four  
, as the

ony.

uth for its  
now called  
s a *Rock*,  
the *Stony*  
uilt, with  
communi-  
a place of  
as well in  
2. *Bofra*,  
ter its for-  
a City of  
e for being  
of *Alexan-*  
first of the  
ced Chri-  
of his Em-  
of *Romes*  
*Moab*, ac-  
the *Septua-*  
y be taken  
Daughter,  
ended, of  
*Old Testa-*  
d from an  
own by the  
as that the  
where al-  
*Solomon* to  
ry Harbor,  
of the *A-*  
*Wildernes*  
the great  
*Amalekites*,  
ael first en-  
rough the  
*ah, Dathan*,  
And 7. *Ma-*  
being the  
*Zipporah*,  
ere some o-  
ry is for the  
ame where  
the

Arabia the  
Stony, and  
the chief  
places.



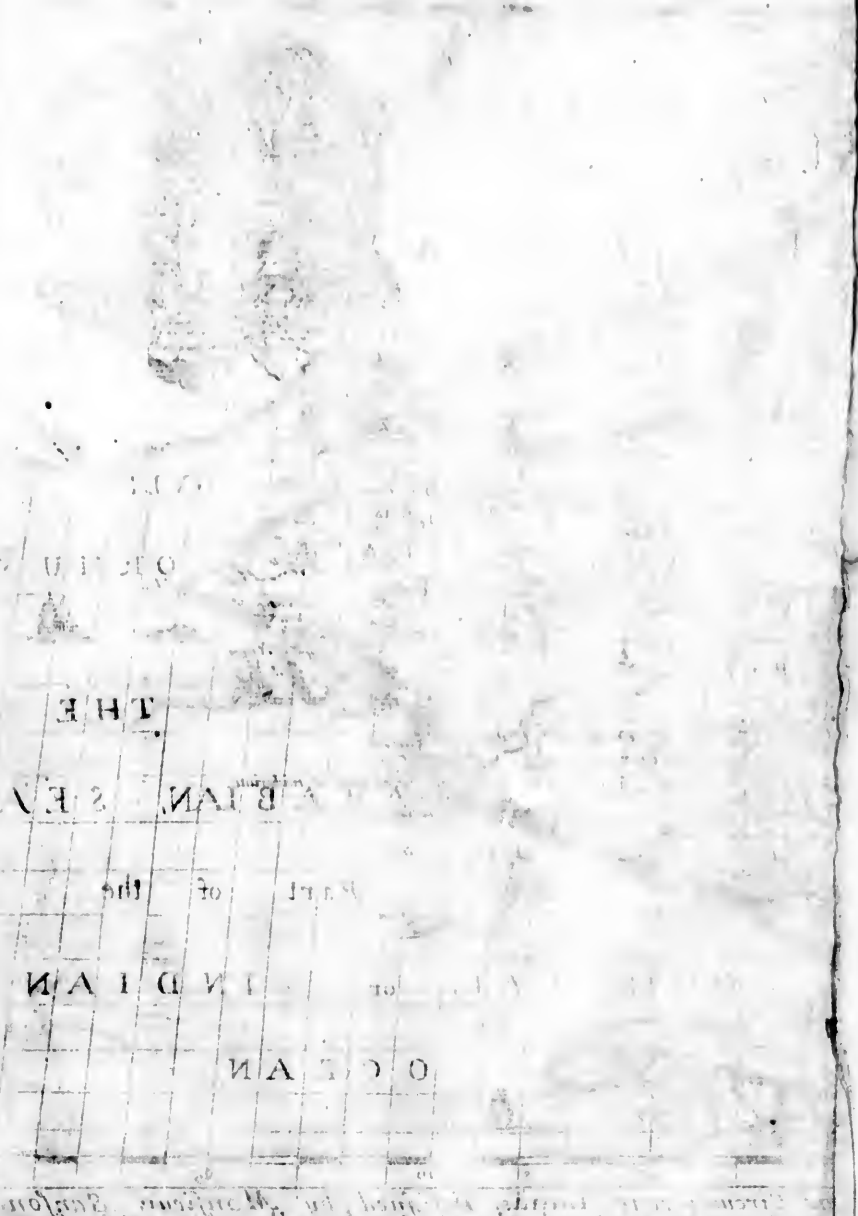


AGENERALL Mapp of ARABIA, with the R. Sea. and Circ. Geographer to the French King, and Rendred to English Command, London Printed for Ric: Blome, Anno Dom: 1766





*the R<sup>e</sup> Sea and Circumjacent Lands, Designed by Monsiour Sanson  
 adred to English: by Richard Blome, by his Majesties Especiall  
 er Ann. Dom: 1669*



Printed by W. Clowes and Sons, London.

the Child  
there, w  
*Amalchi*  
others,  
*Sinai* an  
and that  
highest,  
*Israelites*  
whole y  
ring that  
*Decalog*  
dained a  
and esta  
*Laws*,  
of St. M  
all forts  
*Caloyers*  
inhabit  
Mount  
God app  
*Horeb*,  
have W  
wife on  
befough  
*Amalchi*  
*Tanmea*  
On t  
Castle  
and a F  
lieved,  
the Re  
And it  
the C  
*Mecca*  
blaster  
Coral.

A

Arabia the  
Felix, etc.  
frank

A  
and th  
afford  
that t  
force  
and p  
by th  
and a  
*Cava*  
rified  
habit  
casic  
for t  
muc  
into  
Aut  
thei  
thei

the Children of Israel wandred forty years; there, where then inhabited the *Noabites*, *Amalekites*, *Midianites*, *Idumeans*, and others, there, where are the Mountains of *Sinai* and *Horeb*: This towards the West, and that towards the East; but *Sinai* the highest, and of more difficult access. The *Israelites* being in these Deserts, lay a whole year near this Mountain, and during that time *Moses* received from God the *Decalogue*, dedicated the *Tabernacle*, ordained a *High Priest*, *Priests* and *Levites*, and established *Ecclesiastical*, and *Political Laws*. There is at present a *Monastery* of *St. Katherine*, built by *Justinians*, and all sorts of *Pilgrims* are received by the *Caloyers*, that is, *Religious Greeks* which inhabit there. *Horeb* is contiguous to Mount *Sinai*: The *Burning Bush*, in which God appeared to *Moses*, was near Mount *Horeb*. The *Rack* which *Moses* struck to have Water, was of this Mount; and likewise on this Mountain it was, that *Moses* besought God for the *Israelites* against the *Amalekites*; also Mount *Hor* bordering on *Idumea*, where *Aaron* died.

On the Coast of the Red Sea, is the *Castle Tor*, a Borough, or Walled Town, and a Port very famous, where it is believed, that the *Israelites*, having passed the Red Sea, entred the Deserts this way: And it is likewise a great Passage where the *Caravans* stop at their return from *Mecca*: There is near to this place *Alabaster* perfectly white, and the Sea affords *Coral*.

ARABIA the Desert.

Arabia the Desert, described.

ARABIA the Desert, so called by reason of the vast Sandy Deserts, and the uninhabitableness thereof, scarce affording either food for Man or Beast, so that those which travel this Countrey, are forced to carry with them their Provision, and guide themselves to the place design'd by the help of Stars, as they do at Sea, and are forced to go in great Companies or Caravans, for fear of being robbed, and 50 rifed by the *Wilde Arabs* (who here inhabit in Tents, which they remove as occasion serveth from place to place, either for fresh Pasture, or otherwise) and yet much travelled by *Merchants* who Trade into *Babylonia*, *Egypt*, and elsewhere. Some Authors have observed in the course of their Trade, That the *Sandy Deserts* are their *Segs*, the *Wilde Arabs*, their *Pirats*;

and their *Camels*, their *Ships*, each *Camel* carrying 600 or 1000 pound weight.

The People in this part of Arabia, as also in the aforementioned, which agree much at one, are much addicted to *Thieft*, by which they get their chief living; being stout and warlike men, and not Tilling the Earth, and Planting *Fruits*, *Plants*, or the like; their chief Food being *Panison*, *Milk*, *Fowls* which they catch, and *Herbs* which they finde upon the Ground. They go half naked; their *Wives* they hire for what time they please, who in way of a Portion, bring a *Tent* and a *Spear* to their *Husbands*. Both *Sexes* are much given to carnal lusts, and when the Women are delivered of a childe, they leave it without troubling themselves with it.

Arabia the Desert, by the *Hebrews* called *Kedar*, extends it self from *Syria*, and Arabia the Stony, unto *Chaldea*, now *Terrack*, and to the Gulf of *Persia*, or *Balsora*; between the *Euphrates*, and the Mountains of Arabia the Happy. It is more united then the Stony, but is fuller of Sands and Deserts; fewer inhabited places; its People being almost all *Nomades*; if there be any fertile places, they are towards the *Euphrates*.

There are found in Arabia the Desert, two Cities of the name of *Anna* or *Anna*, one on the *Euphrates*, and the other on the River *Assan*, not far from the Gulf of *Balsora*: This last is least famous; the other is the most considerable of the Province, seated both on the one, and the other Bank of the *Euphrates*: But the greatest part, and the richest, is on the Arabian side. There is in all about 4000 houses, which have been much ruined in the late Wars, between the *Turks* and *Persians*. The City contains divers *Istes*, on one of which is a Castle. At *Suskanna*, a Borough upon the great Road between *Anna* and *Aleppo*, *Texora* saith, That the Women are as fair as *Angels*; if he had likewise said as wise, and had spoken truth, all Men from the four corners of the World had been obliged to go to seek them.

3. *Mexat Ali*, that is, the *Oratory* of *Ali*, had once 6 or 7000 houses; when the Sect of *Ali* bore sway in those quarters: There remains at present not above 500 Inhabitants. 4. *Mexat Ocem*, that is, the *Oratory* of *Ocem*, is not walled, nor hath above 4000 houses. *Saba*, now *Simsisac*, according to the opinion of *Gaillandin*, is the place from whence the *Three Wisemen* departed to go to *Bethlem*, to a-  
dore

more the *Saviour of the World*; and for this reason says, That the *Magi* being come from *Arabia*, and from the *East*; *Arabia the Desert* is onely *East*, from the *Holy Land*. The other two *Stony* and *Happy*, being *South*, or between *East* and *South*.

This *Arabia the Desert*, according to some, hath divers *Lords* which cominand it, and which for the most part are *Vassals* or *Tributaries* to the *Great Turk*; who holds likewise a part: But these People being more inclined to the *Mahometan Sect* of *Ali*, which is that of the *Persians*, then to that of *Omaz*, which is that of the *Turks*, are more affectionate to the *Persians* then to the *Turks*; and some of these *Lords*, likewise hold of the *Persians*.

Others give all *Arabia the Desert*, to one *King*, and will have the *City*, or rather the *Court* of that *Prince*, to have a wonderful disposition and situation; and that the *Prince*, can make it all a march or walk, when and as often as he pleases, which is still by going thither where they may best finde food for their *Horses* and *Camels*; and they say, that the place being chosen, they dispose the *Quarters* and *Streets*, after the ordinary manner: And at the same time pitch all the *Tents*; that of the *Prince* in the midst, and the others about it, always in the same fashion; that part which is towards the *North*, *South*, *East*, or *West*, never changing. And the *Quarters* and *Streets*, have their *Names* and their *Tents* in the same form; infomuch, that who once knows the order, may easily find any which inhabit therein.

This moving *City*, or rather this *Court* Errant, contains not onely the *Militia* of the *Prince*, which are above 2000 Men, but likewise a great number of their *Nobility*, *Merchants*, *Artisans*, and divers strangers which follow this *Court*.

### ARABIA the Happy.

Arabia the Happy, bounded

**A** R A B I A the Happy, is a great *Peninsula*, which stretches it self from the *Mountains*, which divide it from the other two parts of *Arabia*, to the *Ocean*; being 3, and in some places 500 Leagues long and broad. The *Gulf of Bassora*, and *Ormuz*, otherwise the *Persian Gulf*, washes it on the left side; the *Red Sea*, or *Sea of Mecca*, otherwise the *Arabian Gulf* on the right; and the *Oriental* or *Indian Ocean*, which is there called the *Sea of Arabia* on the Front.

*Arabia the Happy*, may aptly be so called, by reason of the *fruitfulness* and *richness* of the soyl, which produceth plenty of *Corn*, *Wine*, *Fruits*, *Odoriferous Spices*, great encrease of *Cattel*: Also abounding in *Gold*, *Pearls*, *Balsom*, *Myrrhe*, *Frankincense*, several sorts of *Drugs*, together which divers useful and beneficial *Commodities*: Also seated in an exceeding healthful and temperate *Climate*, and enriched with many pure and pleasant *Streams* and *Fountains*, whose *Waters* are *Medicinal*.

These People are very faithful and punctual in their promises, boasting of their *Nobility*, as being descended from *Jupiter*, having any base or mechanical *Art*, but applying themselves some to *Grasing* of *Cattel*, and others to *Merchandize*. Here it is held *Adultery* for a Man to enjoy any *Woman*; save those of his own *Kin*, as his *Sisters*, *Mother*; *Cosins*, and the like, whom also they take as *Wives*. Here in this County are great quantities of *Ostriches*, which for the most part abide in the *Deserts*.

The *Ancients* mentioned a great number of different *People*, *Cities*, and *Kingdoms*, and we at this day finde the same. The *Turks* possess one part, the *Persians* another, but much less then the *Turks*. The *Sultan*, or *Xecque* of *Mecca*, another; and divers *Princes*, *People*, and some *Republicks*, therest.

Its chief *Cities* towards the *Red Sea*, are, *Medina*, or *Medina-Elnabi*, or *Talnabi*, that is, the *City of the Prophet*, and *Mecca*: This last the *Birth-place*, that the *Burying-place* of *Mahomet*. *Medina*, though scituated in a barren and desolate place, adjoining on *Arabia the Stony*; yet by reason of its being the *Sepulchre* of that vile *Impostor Mahomet*, is become a fair *City* (though not containing above 6000 *Houses*) being a place of great *Trade* and resort, by reason of the *Pilgrims* which hither flock to pay their blinde devotion.

This *Sepulchre* or *Tomb* wherein their *Prophet* lieth, is not in such an *Iron Chest* or *Coffin*, which is drawn up to the top of the *Temple*, by vertue of a *Lead-stone* there placed, but is a *Tomb* (though of no great beauty) inclosed within an *Iron-grate*, and covered with *Green Velvet*; having the supply of a new one every year from the *Grand Seigneur*; and the old one being the *Fees* of the *Priests*, they cut into little *Shreds* and pieces, which they sell for great

Relicks

The Turkish and Commodities

10 1000

1st chief Places.

A story of the life and death of the true prophet Mahomet.

Mahomet's Tomb

Relicks  
Reven  
about  
where  
oyntme  
kept b  
now a  
He  
distant  
seated  
resort  
moditi  
hence  
Palest  
Turks  
filled  
houses  
the pl  
betwe  
which  
City.  
the gr  
is kept  
found  
the lik  
it is n  
proach  
The  
dolati  
verse  
he w  
who  
16 ye  
and t  
who i  
rich A  
about  
chant  
wit,  
from  
ing h  
chan  
othe  
that  
toget  
him  
com  
muc  
Fus  
and  
muc  
whic  
whic  
Gab  
whic  
kept  
Bar  
ed y  
him

Relicks to the *Pilgrims*, which brings a great Revenue to them. In this *Temple* there are about 3000 *Lamps of Gold and Silver*, wherein is *Balſom*, and other ſuch rich *odours ointments*, and *oils* which are continually kept burning. This much for his *Tomb*: now a word or two concerning his *Life*.

He was, as I ſaid before, born at *Mecca* diſtant from *Medina* about 60 Leagues ſeated alſo in a barren ſoil, but of great reſort and *Traffick*, abounding in the commodities of *Persia* and *India*, which hence are transported on *Camells* to *Egypt*, *Paleſtine*, *Syria*, and other parts of the *Turks dominions*. The *City* is very fair, filled with about 6 or 7000 well built houſes, having a very ſumptuous *Temple*, the place not walled except by *Mountains*, between which there are four paſſages, which give entrance, and iſſues to the *City*. About the end of *May*, which is the great *Fubile* of the *Mahometans*, there is kept here a *Fair*, at which there is often found more then 50000 *ſtrangers*, with the like number of *Camels*. To this *City* it is made death for any *Chriſtian* to approach within five miles. But to proceed: The *father* of this impoſture was an *Idolatrour Pagan*, and his *Mother* as perverſe a *Jeweſs*, at the age of two years he was left to the tuition of his *Uncle*, who after he had kept him to the age of 16 years, to quit himſelf of further charge and trouble, fold him to the *Iſmaelites*, who in their *Markets* ſold him again to a rich *Merchant*: who, at firſt was employed about ſervile work, till at laſt the *Merchant* perceiving him to be of ſo ripe a wit, and ſolid judgement, advanced him from his *Kitchin*, to be his *Factor*, ſending him with his *Camels* laden with *Merchandize*, into *Egypt*, *Persia*, *Syria* and other places, in which he was ſo fortunate that he gained his *Maſter* a great *Eſtate*, together with no ſmall fame and credit to himſelf: he was of perſonage low, but comely, with which his *Miſtreſs* was ſo much taken that upon the death of her *Husband* his *Maſter*, the ſoon married him, and endowed him with her wealth. He was much troubled with the falling ſickneſs, which he ſaid were *heavenly raptures* in which he had converſion with the *Angel Gabriel*, he was well ſkill'd in *Magick*, by which he taught a *White Pigeon* which he kept to feed at his *ears*, where he put *Barls Corns*; and this *Pigeon* he reported was the *Holy Ghoſt*, which inſtructed him in the *Law* he afterwards publiſhed:

which was a new *Religion* whereby he might bring the *Jews*, *Gentiles*, and *Chriſtians* into one form of *Religion*, where in a *Cave* not far from *Mecca*, with the help of *Sergius* a *Neflorian-Monk*, and the ayd of a certain *Jew*, he made the *Alcoran*; a book ſo highly adored by them that on the cover is written, *Let none that are unclean touch this book*. 3. *Ziden* ſeated on the *read ſea*, and in the middleſt of all the *Coaſt of Arabia*, ſeives for a *Port* to *Mecca*, from which it is diſtant 40 miles; well built, rich, and of great reſort, which hath been walled, and fortified ſince the *Portugalls* have made themſelves known, and are become powerful in the  *Eaſt*. 4. *Egra*, by the *Arabians* called *Algier*; ſeated on the *red ſea*, ſerving for a *Port-Town* to *Medina*, from which it is diſtant about three dayes journey.

*Mecca Medina*, and a good part of *Arabia* the happy, doth belong to a *Xeriffe*, deſcended from *Haſcem*, great *Grandfather* to *Mahomet*, and for this reaſon both the *Turks*, & *Persians* do much reſpect him ſuffering him freely to enjoy his *eſtates*, without his paying tribute to either: for, on the contrary, the *Turk* cauſeth to be given him a third part of the *Revenues* of *Egypt*; that the *Pilgrims*, which goe to *Mecca* may be protected againſt the *Arabs Beduins*, who by their incurſions much trouble thoſe quarters; and not onely *Pilgrims*, but likewiſe *Emperors*, *Kings*, and *Mahometan Monarchs* often make him great *Preſents*.

5. *Zibit* near the mouth of the *Red ſea*, is fair, rich, well built, and of a good trade, in *Drugs*, *Spices*, *Perfumes*, &c. It was once the ſeat of a *Kingdom*, till the *Turk* ſeized it when he did *Aden*, cauſing the *King* of this place to be hanged at the yards-arm of his *Ship*; and the other's head to be ſtrucken off. Seated nigh the *Red ſea*, in a large Plain, being the reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*.

6. *Aden* is the ſtrongeſt faireſt and moſt pleaſant *City* of all *Arabia*; incloſed with *Walls* towards the *Sea*, and *Mountains* towards the *Land*. On the top of theſe *Mountains* are many *Caſtles* of a curious proſpect: it hath about 6000 well built houſes, and inhabited by a miſcellany of people, as *Arabians*, *Turks*, *Indians*, *Persians* and *Ethiopiens* which here reſide for the benefit of that great *Trade*, which is here driven from ſeveral parts of the world. It is ſituate without the *red ſea*, at the beginning of the great *Ocean*, and by the induſtry of

be ſo cal-  
and rich-  
ceeth plenty  
ſtrous Spi-  
Alſo a-  
om; Myrre,  
Drugs, toid  
beneficial  
an exceed-  
climate, and  
nd pleaſant  
Waters are

faithful and  
boasting of  
ended from  
mechanical  
ves ſome to  
ers to Mer-  
dultery for  
a ſave thoſe of  
s, Mother;  
m alſo they  
Country are  
which for the

great num-  
r, and King-  
ade the fame.  
the *Persians*  
n the *Turks*,  
cca, another;  
ſome *Repub-*

the *Red ſea*,  
bi, or *Talna*-  
Prophet; and  
-place, that  
net. *Medina*,  
and deſolate  
the *Stony*;  
e *Sepulchre* of  
is become a  
aining above  
ace of great  
f the *Pilgrims*  
eir blinde de-

wherein their  
an *Iron Cheſt*  
to the top of  
had ſtone there  
gh of no great  
an *Iron-grate*,  
Net, having  
ery year from  
old one being  
cut into little  
y ſell for great  
Relicks

A ſtory of  
the life and  
death of  
the im-  
pious  
Mahomet.

See other  
Places.

Mahomet  
Tomb.

Zibit the  
reſidence  
of a *Turk*-  
iſh *Begler-  
beg*.

Aden and  
its great  
Trade.



the Inhabitants is made an *Island*, fortified with a strong *Castle*, which commands the road. This *City* or *Island* is now become the *Magazine* for the commodities of *India*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*. It is said to be here so hot, that the *Inhabitants* and *Merchants* are forced to negotiate their affairs in the season.

Their  
Coins.

The *Coyns* here, and throughout all *Arabia*, especially *Arabia the Happy*, by reason of their subjection to the *Grand Signior*, are the same; or at least do correspond with those in other places of his Dominions, viz. the *Asper*, and *600 Aspers* are esteemed to be a *Rial* of *Spanish*; also 100 *Aspers* are accounted for a *Sultanic*, *Chequine*, or *Sheriff*, which are the common and current *Gold Coyns*, and held to be about 8 shillings sterling.

Their  
Weights.

Their *Weights* are likewise much the same with those of *Turkey*, to wit, the *Dram*, of which 10 makes an *ounce*, and 14 *ounces* a *Rotolo*: 24 *Rotols* is a *Fracello*, which is 25 lb. 12 ounces *English*, 15 *Fracellos* is a *Canar*, or, as they term it, a *Bahar*, making *English* circa 386. li.

Their Mea-  
sures.

Their *Measures* are also *Turkish*, and which is the *Pico*, esteemed to be 26; *Inches English*.

Other Ci-  
ties in Ara-  
bia.

Above *Aden*, and farther in the main *Land*, are many faire *Cities*, as *Laghi*, *Agiaz*, *Almachazane*, *Sanaa*, and others; subject to the *Xecque* of *Mecca*, *Laghi* is not far from the *Sea*, *Agiaz* or *Hagias* sometime gave its name to these quarters. *Almachazane* is seated on the top of a very high *Mountain*, and of a difficult access: it hath a *Cisterne* capable to hold water to furnish 100 thousand men, the *Xecque* oftentimes keeps *Court* here. *Sanaa* or *Sanaa* stands at the foot of a *Mountain*, and is one of the greatest, fairest, and strongest of *Arabia*, having many *Vineyards*, *Meadows*, and *Gardens* within its *Circuit*. Its *Houses* are well built, its *Vineyards* and *Gardens* well cultivated: its *Walls* 10 Cubits high, and its *Ramparts* 20 Cubits thick. Its *Territory* is watered with many *Fountains*, produceth excellent *Fruits*, and feeds the best *horses* of *Arabia*. The *Arabian* of *Nubia* makes it to be the greatest, richest, best peopled, and most temperate of all *Arabia*.

Kingdom  
and City of  
Fartach,  
its people  
and trade.

Towards the *East*, and almost 150 Leagues from *Aden*, is *Fartach*, a *Kingdom* and *City* Near the *Sea*, and having a *Cape* of the same name. The *Tartar* *Quines* are valiant, and their *King* defends himself courageously against the

*Turks*, having seen their treatment of his Neighbours of *Aden*, and *Zibit*. The Ports of *Dofsar* (which is the *Turks*) and *Pescher*, are the most Renowned of this Coast, and send forth the best *Frankincense* of *Arabia* in great quantity: higher on the Coast, and farther on the Land, are the *Cities* and *Kingdoms*, or, as they call, them the *Sultanics* of *Gabel haman*, *Alimbabi*, *Amazirifden*, and others.

The rest of the Coast unto *Cape de Raz-al-gate* is very barren; from *Cape de Raz-al-gate* unto that of *Moccendon*, the soil is the best of all *Arabia*; and some would here alone confine the name of *Hyaman*, which signifies *Happy*. There are here many faire *Cities*, both on the *Sea-Coast*, and higher in the Land. One of chief *traffique* between the *East*, and *Arabia the happy*, was formerly called *Sohar*, as the *Arabian* of *Nubia* saith; but this trade was after transported to *Ormuz* on the *Persian* side. In our time it was restored to the *Arabian* side, to wit, at *Mascates*, held by the *Portugalls*. *Sohar*, and *Mascates*, are between the *Capes* of *Raz-all-gate* and *Moccendon*, and are not above 50000 paces as that *Arabian* says, which is about 20 Leagues distant from each other, and not 450 thousand paces. Within the *Land* are *Masfa* a *City* and *Kingdom*, *Mirabat*, *Sour* or *Lyr*, and others.

Beyond the *Cape Moccendon*, and advancing towards the mouths of the *Tygris*, and *Euphrates*; among many other places, we have *El-atif* or *El-Casif* a famous Port; and which communicates its name to the adjacent *Gulf*, which the ancients called *Sinus Persicus*, and we at present the *Gulf* of *Balsora*, and *Ormuz*: This last name being taken more commonly for that part of this *Gulf*, which lies nearest the *Ocean*, at the bottom of which is *Ormuz*; and the first for that part which flows farthest into the Continent, towards the mouth of the *Tygris*, at the bottom of which is *Balsora*.

Near *Elcasif* is *Bahar*, whose Territory is called *Baharim* or *Baharems*, and the *Isle*, and *City* before *Banarem*, farther in the Land is *Mascalat*, a *City* and *Kingdom*; *Femen* likewise a *Kingdom*, and *City* according to some; *Laxach* or *Lassach* likewise a *Kingdom*, and *City*; where are of the best *Horses* of *Arabia*, as at *Sanaa*, *Lassach*, *Elcasif*, and some other are the *Turks*, *Elcasif* is the ancient *Gerra*, and that

that par-  
called G-  
Barem is  
There  
some ha-  
and trib-  
rare in  
Arabia  
people,  
and trib-  
bours,  
Leagues  
part in  
wards M-

Roun-  
ber or I-  
are disp-  
Red-Sea  
In the  
Isles, w-  
NATI,  
and two  
THOCC  
MURIA  
Tortoise-  
ties.

In the  
NARA  
LAQU  
125 mi-  
having  
they g-  
Samarit-

In the  
found,  
because  
best in  
tween  
120 Le-  
Ormuz  
bia, at  
of Ele-  
Isle of  
sians,  
of Orn  
all salt  
City of  
fresh w-  
which  
ing it  
with  
forth-  
The  
estern  
round  
500 t-  
of 100  
ted:  
of no

The Gulf  
of Bahara  
and Ormuz

that part of the Gulf nearest the City, called *Gerrarius Sinus*, and the *Ile of Barem* is the ancient *Tylos*.

There yet remains some *Cities* of which some have their *Kings* or *Sultans*; others live in *republicque*, which is very rare in *Asia*. Towards the middle of *Arabia* are the *Arabs Bengebres*, a free people, and which live only of the prey, and tribute they force from their neighbours, yet possess they 200 or 250 Leagues of *Country*, and are for the most part in the *Mountains*. The *Beduins* towards *Mecca* are of the same nature.

Round about *Arabia* are a great number of *Iles* which belong unto it, which are dispersed either in the *Southern Ocean*, *Red-Sea*, or the *Persian Gulf*.

In the *Southern Ocean* are found three *Iles*, which bear the name of *COCCO-NATI*, seven by the name of *ZENOBI* and two by the name of *Insule AGATHOGLIS*, and lastly *CURIA*, and *MURIA*, where there is found white *Torioises*, whose shells are great curiosities.

In the *Red Sea* these *Islands*, 1. *CANARAN* very hot, but fruitful. 2. *DALAQITA* being the largest of all, in length 125 miles, and not above 12 broad, having a *City* of the same name, where they gather *Pearls*, and 3. and lastly the *Samaritan Islands*.

In the *Persian Gulf* these *Islands* are found, *BAHAREM* the most famous, because it hath the *Pearl-Fishing*, the best in the *Oriental* parts. This *Ile* is between *Balsora*, and *Ormuz*, about 100 or 120 Leagues from *Balsora*, and 150 from *Ormuz*; it is neer the *Coast* of *Arabia*, and directly opposite to the *Coast* of *Elcatif* which is the *Turks*, but the *Ile* of *Baharem* which is still the *Persians*, once belonged to the *Kingdom* of *Ormuz*. The waters here are almost all salt, but neer *Manama* the *Capital City* of the *Island*, there are *Springs* of fresh water, at the bottom of the *Sea*, which the *Divers* goe and fetch, gathering it into *Borrachos*, or *Goats-skins*, with much cunning; and bringing it forth of the *Sea*, doe afterwards sell it. The *Pearls* of this *Ile* are very much esteemed, both for their largeness and roundness, and this fishing is yearly worth 500 thousand *Ducats*, besides the value of 100 thousand and more, which is diverted: Those of the *Ile* of *GIONFA* are of no great value; those of the other

neighbouring *Iles* are less, except it be at *MASCATES* 60 Leagues from *Ormuz*. They fish here all *June*, *July*, and *August*; if they begin sooner, the *Pearls* are unripe, and not hard enough.

The Air of all *Arabia*, and its bounds, is very healthful, but hot; nor rains it in some places above twice or thrice in three or four years; but the abundance of the dew makes their *Fruits* excellent. Those *Commodities* which they communicate to other Parts are, *Myrrhe*, *Incense*, *Cassia*, *Manna*, *Balm*, *Dates*; *Gums* of several sorts; then their *Horses*, *Camels*, &c. as also their *Druggs*, and *Pearl*; they fish likewise in their Seas *Cornelians*, better than those of *Cambaja*.

The *Country* is great (being about 4000 Miles in circuit,) the temperature, and the soyl of the different Parts, are very different: and though it contains, and borders upon different People, and of distinct manners; yet there are *Arabians* which may be reduced into two sorts: The one inhabits the *Cities*, and the other continually ranges the *Countreys*; these lead with them their Families, and all that they possess, reposing under their *Tents*, nor doe they stay or incamp in any place but where they finde food for their *Cartel*.

The People, for the most part, are of a mean stature, lean, swartly complexioned, effeminate voyces, very swift of foot, and expert in the *Bow* and *Dart*. They first exercise themselves in *Manufactures*, using all sort of *Trade* and *Traffick* far off; and some addict themselves to *Learning*, particularly to *Philosophy*, *Physick*, the *Mathematicks*, and to *Astronomy*; there have been amongst them many *Grammarians*, *Rhetoricians*, *Historians*, and *Interpreters* of the *Alcoran*, which is in their *Tongue*; and which hath made the *Arabick* language spread it self through all the *East*, at least in the most *Southerly* parts of *Asia*, and part of *Africa*, but little in *Europe*.

Those which range the *Country* are great *Wanderers*, and greater *Theeves*; they are divided into many *Families*, which know each other, and how to distinguish the one from the other. Every *Family*, how numerous soever it be, hath a principal *Xecque* that is a *Chief*, which conducts, and commands them, they living almost in the same manner as the 12 Tribes of *Israel* did in the *Deserts*; they preserve a good *Intelligence* amongst them-

The Air, in the parts of Arabia.

The People of Arabia, their manners, &c.

Older Kings and Kingdoms.

The Arabs, in the Arabian Gulf.

The Arabian Gulf, in the Arabian Sea.

The Red Sea.

The Persian Gulf, in the Arabian Sea.

The Gulf of Baharem and Ormuz.

themselves, their chief Design being only upon Strangers: They assault likewise the *Caravans*, if they think themselves able enough to master them, or snatch any thing from them: They have sometimes taken the Rights, Revenues, and Customs which are carried towards *Constantinople*; They have this good Custom, not to kill any, except forced to it.

Their Horses commonly are little, lean, and sparing Feeders, yet courageous, swift, and of great labour; They are so skillful in managing them, that they command them as they please; and themselves are so active, that, at full speed, they will shoot an Arrow within the breadth of a Shilling, take from the ground those Arrows they have shot, and avoid an Arrow flying directly towards them; nor do they manage leis skillfully the Sling, either in charging, retiring, or flying.

These advantages being very familiar to them, and the greatest part of the Country, where they inhabit, being dry and barren, makes them not care for tilling the earth, though they sometimes find a good soyl; they are almost continually on horse-back, and in their Arms, with which they shew themselves capable of Commanding, and giving Laws to others.

*Mahomet* came not into the World till about the year 570 after Christ, and began not to publish, and shew abroad his Doctrine, till a little after the year 600, A Doctrine intermixed with *Christianity*, *Judaism*, and *Paganism*, that he might draw both the one and the other, and which established its principal end in delights, carnal and sensual pleasures, where to the Oriental people were very much inclined; and with all he found the means to make use of Arms for the establishment of this Doctrine; his *Califs* or Successors in a short time carried their Government and Religion into the best parts of *Asia*, and *Africa*, and into some places of *Europe*: And notwithstanding the *Schisms*, *Civil Wars*, and *Misfactions* of these *Califs* one against the other, (for there hath been often found two or three, and sometimes four or five at the same time, which have established their Seats there where they found themselves strongest, as at *Damascus* in *Phœnicia*, at *Bagdad* and *Cusa* in *Chaldea*, at *Cairo* in *Egypt*, and at *Chai-raon* in *Africa*; and elsewhere) yet they

ceased not to great make progresses under the names of divers People, which some have call'd in one manner, others in another; and most commonly *Arabs*, *Saracens*, *Moors*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*; and that which much favoured their design, was, that they then found all their Neighbours, and particularly the *Princes of Christendom*, in divisions as great as their own.

10 Amongst these *Califs*, *Ulid* or *Walid* the *eleventh* or *twelfth*, and who reigned a little after the year 700, was the most powerful Prince that ever reigned in the Universe: his *Kingdom* extended from the great Western Ocean, on which he held almost all *Spain* in *Europe*, and the Kingdom of *Fez* and *Morocco* in *Africa*, unto the River *Indus* in the East, containing more than ever *Alexander* the Great could conquer in the *Levant*, and almost all that the *Romans* possessed of our Continent in the West.

But in the end God permitted, for the good of *Christendom*, that that great *Colossus*, which aspired at nothing less than commanding over all the rest of the world; was divided in it self, and reduced to several pieces, which are yet but too considerable, as the Empires, or Kingdoms of the *Sultan* of the *Turks*, of the *Sophy* of the *Persians*, of the great Lord of the *Mogols*, of divers *Chams* of the *Tartars*; of the *Xeriffs* of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, likewise of the *Xeriff* of *Mecca*, &c. But let us at present leave History, and finish our *Arabia*.

Its People are almost all *Mahometans*. There are some *Greek Christians* towards the *Mounts* of *Sinai* and *Horeb*; likewise towards the *red Sea*, and in the Desarts of *Arabia* the *Stony*, and *Arabia* the *Desart*. *Arabia* the happy is unhappy in having the fewest: Yet the *Portugals* hold *Mascates*, *Calafates*, and some places about it, which are *Catholiques*.

Before we pass into *Persia*, let us speak a word of the name of the *red Sea*. It could neither be taken from the redness of its Waters, nor from its having on its Coast a Fountain of red Waters, or which made red the Wool of those Flocks which drunk of it; nor from the *Sand* or *Corrall*, which is at the bottom; nor from the redness of the circumadjacent Mountains, or that that the Sun rising, or being above their *Zenith*, makes the face of that Sea appear redder than *Common*. All these reasons are false: And moreover the antient and wisest men understand under the name

They are very active.

They had a desire to conquer and to conquer.

The first effect of Mahomet's doctrine.

Ulid, Walid, the eleventh or twelfth.

The P. of Arabia, Mahometans.

gresses under  
which some  
is in another,  
, *Saracens*,  
and that which  
as, that they  
ers, and par-  
*dom*, in divi-

*lid* or *Walid* Ulid, & C.  
lites, & C.  
p. 107. & C.  
who reigned  
was the most  
igned in the  
ended from  
on which he  
*ope*, and the  
o in *Africa*,  
aft, contain-  
er the Great  
, and almost  
of our Con-

ated, for the  
that great *Co*-  
ing less than  
rest of the  
and reduced  
e yet but too  
or Kingdoms  
of the *Sophy*  
t Lord of the  
the *Tartars*;  
*orocco*; like-  
xc. But let  
and finish our

*Mahometans*. The P. p. 107.  
of Arabia,  
Mahometans.  
ians towards  
*eb*; likewise  
the Desarts of  
*ia* the *Desart*.  
n having the  
old *Mascates*,  
out it, which

let us speak  
*Sea*. It could  
edness of its  
on its Coast  
which made  
which drunk  
*orral*, which  
he redness of  
ins, or that  
g above their  
that Sea ap-  
ll these rea-  
the ancient-  
nd under the  
name

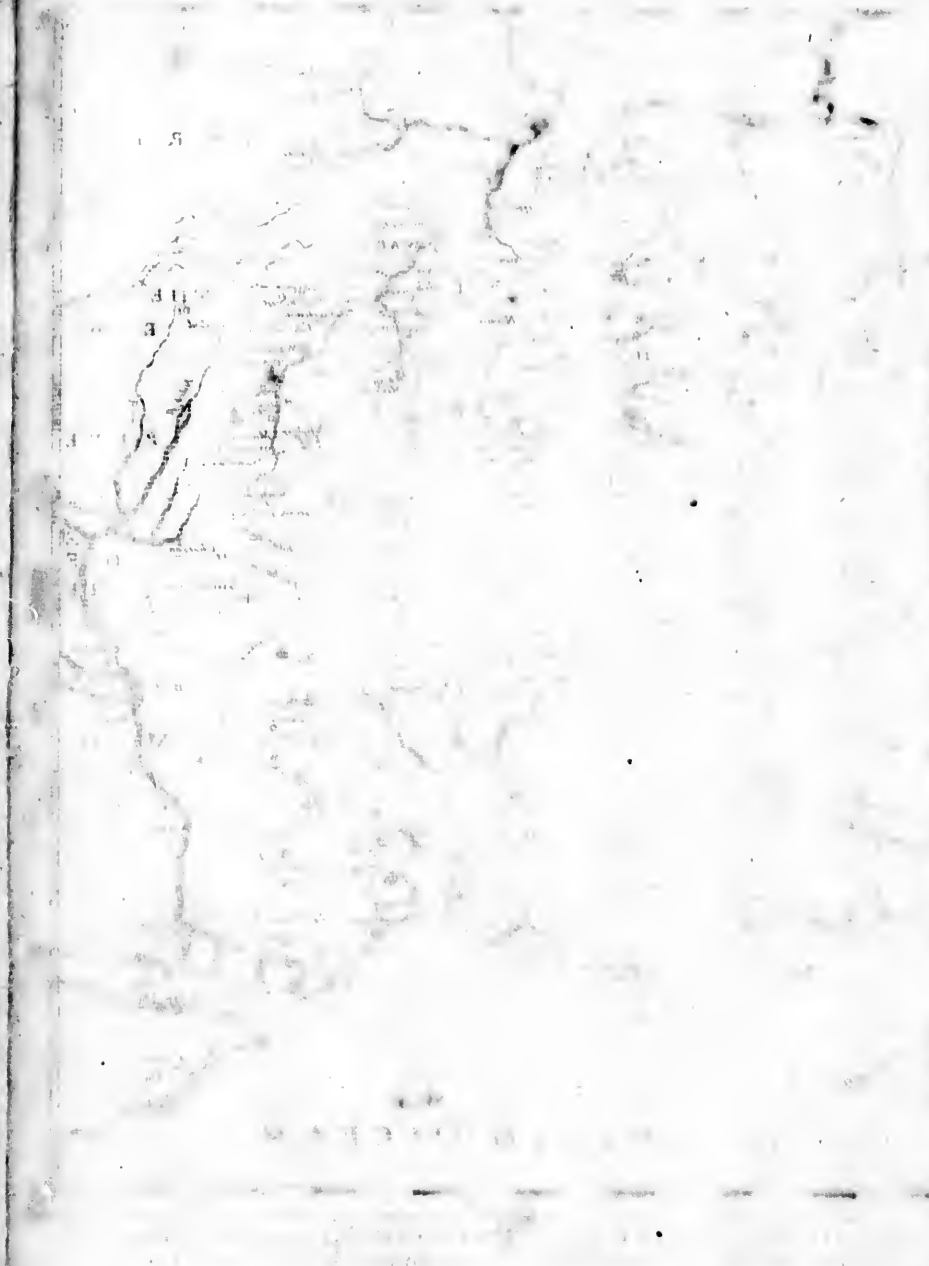


A MAP OF THE EMPIRE OF THE SOPHIE OF PERIA, WITH  
 Sanfon Geographer to y French King, and Rendred into English by Richa lome, by h





OF PERIA, WITH ITS SEUERALL PROVINCES, Designed by Monc  
 with by Richard Blome, by his Majesties Command. London Printed for Richard Blome, A. 1669.



name of  
 is betwe  
 is most  
 the Gu  
 Persia y  
 South  
 these S  
 the Or  
 washes  
 Cape of  
 which  
 the Re  
 the Gr  
 Marc  
 ving b  
 said, in  
 the La  
 Erythr  
 which  
 have c  
 of the  
 which  
 comes  
 Red-

**T**  
 most  
 exten  
 phrat  
 Indu  
 Persi  
 whic  
 Rive  
 the s  
 its N  
 600  
 brea  
 four  
 thel  
 Em  
 hav  
 whi  
 poss  
 und  
 odd  
 Sar  
 the  
 ed i  
 the  
 it :  
 wh  
 par  
 hac  
 hav  
 on

The extent  
 towards the  
 northern part  
 of Persia.

name of the *Red sea*, both the *Gulf* which is between *Affrica* and *Arabia*, (that which is most vulgarly called the *Red sea*) and the *Gulf* which is between *Arabia*, and *Persia*; and the *sea* which washes the South side of *Arabia*; and not only all these *Seas* about *Arabia*, but likewise the *Oriental*, or *Indian Ocean*, which washes both *Affrica* and *Asia*. from the *Cape of good hope* even beyond the *Ganges*; 10 which may make us judge that the name of the *Red Sea*, comes rather from what the *Greeks* called this great *Oriental Sea*, *Mare Erythraum*, the *King Erythras* having been Lord of it; and being as it is said, interred in one of these *Islands*: but the *Latins* instead of retaining the name *Erythraum*, have given it that of *Rubrum*, which signifies the same thing; and we have done the same. And the restraining 20 of the name of *Red-sea*, to the *Gulf* alone, which is between *Affrica* and *Arabia*, comes from its being the first part of the *Red-sea* known unto us.

PERSIA.

THE Kingdom, or Empire of the *Sophy* of the *PERSIANS* is one of the 30 most famous, and greatest of all *Asia*; it extends it self from the *Tygris*, and *Euphrates* on the West, almost to the River *Indus*, on the East; and from the *Gulf of Persia*, and the *Arabian* and *Indian sea*, which bounds it on the South, unto the River *Gehon*, and to the *Caspian sea*, now the *sea of Bacus*, or *Tabaresan*, which are its Northern limits; so containing about 40 600 Leagues of length, and 500 of breadth, being seated under the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth *Climats*. Nevertheless this is but a part of the ancient Empire of the *Persians*: for the *Assyrians* having ordinarily held in *Asia* all that which both *Turk* and *Persian* at present possess; and that *Monarchy* having begun under *Ninus*, and lasted under thirty and odd Kings 13 or 1400 years, ending in *Sardanapalus*; divided it self into that of 50 the *Medes* and *Babylonians*, who continued it little less than 300 years, afterwards the *Persians* made themselves Masters of it: and these during 200 and odd years which they reigned, remitted to it the best part of what the *Medes* and *Babylonians* had possessed. But when they would have passed into *Europe*, and have seized on *Greece*; the *Macedonians* and *Greeks*

leagued themselves together, and naming *Alexander King of Macedon* their chief, descended into *Asia*, several times defeated *Darius*, ruined the Empire of the *Persians*; and gave a beginning to that of the *Macedonians*.

*Alexander* the great held this Empire but few years, and dying it was divided among many of his *Captains*; who took in the end the title of *Kings*, and waged War against each other; till the *Romans* seized the Western, and the *Parthians* the Oriental part of that Monarchy, these *Parthians* freed themselves from the Rule of the *Macedonians* 250 years, before the Birth of *Jesus Christ*, an Reigned near Five hundred years. *Artaxerxes* restored the *Persians* 228 years after *Christ's* Nativity. The *Caliphs* of *Bagdat* became Masters about the year 650. The *Tartars* in 1257. or 58. The *Turcomans* in 1478. *Xa*, or *Xecque Ismael Sophy* re-established the *Persians*, a little after the year 1500. and though they possess onely the Oriental part of the ancient Empire of the *Persians*, yet it is still very great and powerful.

And we find at present under it, all that the *Antients* knew under the names of *Media*, *Hircania*, *Margiana*, *Assyria*, in part, *Parthia*, *Aria*, *Parapontis*, *Chaldea*, or *Babylonia* in part, *Susiana*, *Persia*, *Caramania*, *Drangiana*, *Arachosia*, and *Gedrosia*, all these Regions taken a part being great, faire, rich, and populous.

The present names of these Provinces differ from the antients: we call *Servan*, *Gilan*, *Dilemon*, *Tabaresan*, *Gorgian*, and *Rhoemus*; those which are towards the *Sea of Bacus*, or *Sala*, which is likewise called of *Tabaresan*; and they compass the most Northernly part of the *Persians* Estates. *Churdistan*, *Ayrack* or *Yerack-Agemi*, and *Chorazan* make the middle. *Yerack*, *Chuffistan*, *Fars*, *Kermon*, *Sablestan*, *Sigistan*, *Candabar*, and *Mackeran* are towards the South; the greatest part washed by the *Gulf of Ballera* and *Ormus*; and by the *Ocean*, and the *Sea of Arabia*, or *India*.

*Servan* or *Xerwan*, *Gilan*, with a part of *Gerack Agemi* and *Dilemon*, answer to the ancient *Media*. Which having been divided into three parts, *Antropatine*, *Tropotane*, and *Chromithrene*; *Servan* answers to the first, *Gilan* to the second, and the rest to the last. *Tabaresan* and *Gorgian* answer to *Hircania*; *Rhoemus* in part, and part of *Chorasan* or *Margiana*, *K* *Churdistan*,

The Part  
in Empire  
formerly  
much larger  
than now is

The several  
parts of  
Antients of  
Persia.

Their an-  
swers and  
Modern  
names.

Several  
of  
the  
Sea

The name,  
words, &c.  
position of  
of Persia.

*Chordistan*, and part of *Terack-Agemi*, compas the most Easterly part of the Ancient *Assyria*, ( the rest of *Assyria* is possessed by the *Turks* ) *Rhoemus* in part, and part of *Chorasas* make the Ancient *Parthia* : The rest of *Chorasas* the Ancient *Aria*, and *Parapanisa*, *Terack* is the Ancient *Chaldea*, or *Babylonia*, *Chusistan* the Ancient *Susiana*, *Fars* the Ancient *Persis*, *Rherman* and *Sablestan* the Ancient *Caramania*, which being divided into two, *Caramania*, and *Caramania* the desert, *Sablestan* answers to this, and *Rherman* to that, *Sagistan*, *Candabar*, and *Macheran* answer to the *Drangiana*, *Arachosia*, and *Gedrosia*, of the Ancients.

I will not say that all these *Regions* answer to precisely one to the other, but there may be some contradiction, but only that they correspond in the greatest part.

The Province of *Servan*.

*SERVAN* hath for its Principal City, 1. *Tauris*, being the Summer-seats of the *Persian Sophies*, containing in Circuit about 16 Miles, and including above 150000 Inhabitants, before its being so often taken, and retaken by the *Turks*, and *Persians*.

Revenues of *Servan*, its chief pt. &c.

*Selimus* took it the first time in 1514. *Solyman* in 1536. *Amurab* 30 in 1578, and 1585, and every time it returned into the hands of the *Persians*. *Xa Abbas* regained it from the *Turks* in 1603, and the *Persians* have kept it ever since. It is strongly fortified, seated about six daies journey from the *Caspian sea*, in a cool and wholsom Country, and encompassed with several great Towns of note, famous for their Manufactories, The People in this part being more addicted 40 thereunto, then unto the Sword. The Commodities that are here found, are *Silk*, raw, and in several Manufactures, *Cutons*, *Wool*, *Galls*, *Allom*. some *Spices* and *Druggs* with several other Commodities. 2. *Sammachi*, and 3. *Servan* once both the Metropolis of this Province, abounding in *Silk* and excellent *Carpets*, to which the people are wholly addicted.

In Commerce.

4. *Ardevil* was the signory, and birth-place of *Xequ Aidaz*, Father *Ismael-sophy* who restored this Empire to the *Persians*, about the year 1500. Here are many Tombs of the last Kings of *Persia*. 5. *Bacca* is a place of so great trade, that the *Caspian Sea* oft takes its name: Neer the City there is a Spring of *Black Oyle*, which serves to burn throughout all *PERSIA*.

The Province of *GILAN* or *GUET-LAN*, contains 5. Governments, of which the chief Cities are *Rast*, *Gaxhar*, *Lajen*, *Gilan*, *Mofan*, *Cadiour*, and *Rabbara*, besides which there are 30 and odd fair and rich Cities; *Mazandaran* which some separate from, others joyn to *Gilan*, hath in its Government 25. Cities, and in the City of *Mazandaran* about 50000 souls, All these quarters would have revolted in 1594, but *Xa Abbas* soon brought them to their duty, and chastised them for their offence.

Province of *Gilan*, and its chief cities.

The Province of *DILEMON* hath its Metropolis of the same name; then *Allamoed Gowar*, and *Thalekan*. In the description that those of the Country give us of these places, *Allamoed* seems to answer to *Dilemon*.

Province of *Dilemon*.

The Province or *TABARESTAN* is on the East of *GILAN*, and of *Mazandaran*: It extends more then 60 Leagues on the Coast of the *Caspian sea*, which is often called *TABARESTAN* from the name of this Province: It stretches 100 Leagues up the Land, containing in its Territory 12 fair Cities, of which *Asterabad*, or *Starabas*, which hath something of common, with the name of the Province, is the principal; then *Amoul*, *Zariach*, and others: this Country affords quantity of *Silk*.

Province of *Tabarestan*.

How the *Persians* were distressed by the *Saracens*, as also by the *Turks*.

The Province of *GORGIA* touches not the *Sea*, the chief City is of the same name; then *Obsocon*, *Damegan*, and *Senna*. *Gorgia* answers to the Ancient *Hircania Metropolis*.

Province of *Gorgia*.

The Province of *RHOEMUS*, is in the East of *TABARESTAN* and *GORGIAN*: its chief City is, 1. *Befan*, then 2. *Bayad*, 3. *Zabzawer*, and 4. *Thous* higher in the Land; 5. *Ferawa*. 6. *Mafison*, and others toward the *Sea*, and mouth of the *Rizer Gehun*. *Nasir Eddin* that excellent *Mathematician* was a native of *Thous*, who drove *Musfalzin* from his *Caliph* or dignity of *Babylon*, because *Musfalzin* had demanded of him, *Where* were his *Horns*: so dangerous it is to mock a man of Spirit, and Courage.

Province of *Rhoemus*.

The City of *Thous* is esteemed very considerable, being large and encompassed with a noble Wall, adorned with stately structures, and among others with about 100 or 300 *Towers*, distant from one another a *Muskets* shot. This City is made famous for the stately Sepulchre of *Iman Rifa* of the Family of *Ali*, one of the *Twelve Persian Saints*; where great Devotions

Province of *Ayrack* its Commodities, &c.

volo  
rien  
this C  
T  
S T  
F A  
B E  
It is d  
of wh  
the f  
Corm  
there  
1. N  
maba  
mar is  
which  
the y  
distic  
yet is  
which  
three  
five  
the  
ZENS,  
Mona  
liff.  
and n  
habic  
good  
nothi  
N  
ains  
betw  
and  
this  
been  
Batt  
Wif  
whil  
retir  
a C  
like  
Caic  
faire  
SIA  
the  
defe  
caul  
Hie  
Pro  
hav  
refu  
pre  
gre  
5.  
9.  
za.  
wil

votions and Ceremonies are performed by them, which brings in a great Revenue on this City.

The Province of **CHURDISTAN**, is to the Southward of **SERAFAN**, to the Eastward of **DIARBECK**, which is in **TURKEY**: It is divided into three Parts or Provinces, of which, **Salmas** is the chief City of the first; **Maraga** of the second; and **Cormaba** of the third: Besides which, there are a great number of fair Cities; as, 1. **Nahziouan**, 2. **Choy**, 3. **Maraga**, 4. **Cormaba**, 5. **Salmas**, 6. **Gaienche**, &c. **Salmas** is near the Salt-Lake of **Kannudban**, which yields **Fish** only at a certain time of the year. This City hath under its jurisdiction twenty other strong and fair ones; yet is not without those wandering People which live under their Tents. **Maraga** is three or four days journey from **Tauris**; five or six from **Salmas**. Near **Maraga** the **Persians** were defeated by the **Saracens**, about the year **Anno 650**. and their Monarchy fell into the hands of the **Califfs**. **Cormaba** is on the East of **Tigris**, and not far from **Bagdad** and **Mosul**. Its Inhabitants are esteemed the true **Curdes**, as good at incursions as the **Arabs**, who lose nothing they can catch.

Near **Choy**, are the **Calderonian Champions** (of **Chelder**) renowned for the Battel between **Selim**, Emperor of the **Turks**, and **Ismael Sophy** of the **Persians**; where this last, who had till then, almost always been Victor, was defeated, and lost a great Battel, and after it **Tauris**, where was his Wife **Tallucannum** and his Treasures: But whilst he prepared new forces, the **Turks** retired to **Amasia**. At **Gaienche**, formerly a City and a Kingdom, which contains likewise seven or eight fair Cities, the **Can Caidogli** caused to be builded one of the fairest and strongest **Towers** that is in **PERSIA**; besides the Stone, making use of the Heads of 50000 **Turks**, which he had defeated in those quarters, and which he caused to be bruised among the Morter.

The Province of **ATRACK** (or **Hierack-Agemi**) is the fairest and richest Province of **PERSIA**. The **Sophyes** have for sometime past, made here their residence; Formerly, at 1. **Casbin**, at present at 2. **Hispaphan**, which are two great Cities, 3. **Casbin**, 4. **Hamadan**, 5. **Dankana**, 6. **Sauwa**, 7. **Com**, 8. **Yesd**, 9. **Soltania**, 10. **Hrey**, 11. **Chochira**, 12. **Kargh**, with several others, are likewise very fair. Near **Hrey**, is gathered very

pure and excellent **Manna**. **Soltan** hath great quantity of the fairest Fountains, and takes its name from the fairest Fountains, which sometimes resided here. **Yesd** yields the richest and fairest **Tapestries** in the World. Near this City, and on the Mountain **Albors**, there are yet some worshippers of **Fire**, which have used it above 3000 years. In **Hamadan**, **Benjamin** the **Few**, of **Tede-la**, saith, That in his time there were 50000 **Israelites**, that is, **Fews**, who believed there to be the Sepulchres of **Esther** and **Mordecai**: But this Author is one of the most notorious Impostors that ever wir. **Hamadan** hath borne the title of a Kingdom, and had fifteen Cities under it. **Casbin** producerh many **Silk** and **Cotton Manufactures**, and hath drawn to it all the **Trafick** that was at **Com**, nor suffering any **Vagabonds** or **Beggars**. **Com** hath been as great as **Constantinople**; but **Tamerlaine** having ruined it, it could never regain its splendor. The Inhabitants addict themselves to labor in their **Vineyards** and **Gardens**. Its **Bridge** is of stone, and the fairest in all **PERSIA**. **Casbin** was the residence of **Xa Thamas**, when the **Turks** had taken **Tauris**: Some esteem it the Ancient **Arfacia**, others **Ecbatana**. It is not well built, but great, and filled with no less then One hundred thousand souls; its fair **Palace**, its many **Bazars**, and its **Atmaiden**, are remarkable. **Bazars** are places or great streets, where there are but one sort of **Merchants**; the **Atmaiden** or greater **Market**, which is about a Mile in Circuit.

**Hispaphan**, now the Metropolitan City of the **Persian** Monarchy: Seated in the **Parthian** Territory, and as umbelick to that spacious Body, which at this day is awed by the **Persian** Scepter. This City in its situation, is pleasant and delightful; in its soyl, fruitful, and well watered by the River **Sindery**; in its air, serene and healthful; and for bigness, is now become the greatest City in all **PERSIA**, whose **Walls** are in circumference, a reasonable days journey. Its buildings, which are many, (scarce containing less then Seventy five thousand Houses) are proud and elegant, and was said to be once so populous, that it gave entertainment to Five hundred thousand Inhabitants. But after a certain Revolt (for which they were severely chastised by the command of the **Prince**) it hath not had so great a quantity of people; yet it is exceeding populous, and much frequented by strangers; rich

GMET- of which

r. **Layon**, **bara**, be- fair and some **fe-lan**, hath in the so sculs, volted in e them to for their

hath its then **Al-** in the de- ntry give ns 20 an-

**TAN** is on **andaran**: es on the h is often the name o Leagues Territory **arabat**, or g of com- vince, is **Zariack**, eds quan-

ouches not the fame and **Sem- tiant Hir-**

s, is in the **RGIAN**: en 2. **Be-** now higher **Mafsuon**, mouth of w that ex- native of from his , because , Where is to mock

med very compassed th flately rich about m one an- ty is made e of **Iman** one of the great De- votions

Province of Churdi- Stan.

Province of Dileman.

Province of Tabaristan.

Here the Persians were de- feated by the Saracens, in the year 650.

Province of Georgia.

Province of Alborz.

Province of Atrach, or Hierack-Agemi.

Hispaphan the chief City of Persia.



rich in *Trade*, eminent for all sorts of exercise, and more magnificent, as being the residence of the *Emperor*, or *Sophy* of the *Persians*, who have here built divers *Palaces*, which are inhabited by his *Nobles*, so rich and stately, with *Gardens* so delightful and magnificent, that not the industry of man, nay, scarce his thought can comprehend, or imagine any thing more beautiful.

This City besides its *Walls* is fenced about with a *Ditch*, and defended by a strong *Castle*. The chief buildings in this City, are the *Palaces*, the *Mosques*, the *Hummings*, or *Hot-houses*, and the *Mydan*, or *Market-place*, which without dispute is the fairest, richest, and noblest building in the World, being about 1000 paces in length, and 200 in breadth: The inside resembles our *Exchange*, being filled with shops, 20 where all sorts of rich Commodities are vended and sustained by *Arches*; and below, furnished with such things, both for *Food* and *Rayment*, as the *Country* affordeth,

In Palaces  
and Temples  
the most  
magnificent  
and delightful  
are.

On the West side are seated two stately *Palaces* or *Seraglio's*, for the *King* and his *Ladies*, far exceeding in state and magnificence, all other the proud buildings in this City; the *Walls* being of *Red Marble*, 30 and purgetted with diverse colours; and the whole *Palace* paved with fretted and checkered work; over which, it is spread with stately *Carpets*; the *Windows* are made of *Alabastrer*, and *white* and *spotted Marble*; and the *Posts*, and *Wickets* of *Mossy Ivory*, checkered with glittering *E-lony*; so curiously wrought in winding knots, that it may sooner slay, then satisfy the eyes of the beholder. To which 40 stately structure, there is joynd no less pleasant and delightful a *Garden*, wherein are no less then 1000 several *Fountains*, *Brooks*, and *Rivulets*, furnished with store, and variety of curious *fruits*, together with what else may make a place delightful. The great place of the City is before the *Palace*, where the *Sophy* ordinarily resides.

The *Fruits* about (and in) this City, 50 are the best in the World; their *Vines* yield in nothing to those of the *Canaries*: Their *Horses* and *Mules* are fair and good; their *Camels* so strong, that they carry almost twice as much as those of other places. They have permitted in this City some *Monasteries* of *Christians*, as of *Carmelites*, *Augustine Fryers*, *Capuchins*, and others.

The *Inhabitants* of this City do all their affairs on *Hors-back*, as well publick as private, going from place to place, and conferring with one another on *Hors-back*; the like also do the *Merchants*, in the buying and vending of their Commodities. But here the *Slaves* never ride, whereas the others never go a foot, which makes the difference betwixt them.

The Inhabitants of this City never ride on Hors-back.

10 This City being the residence of the *Sophy*, and being inhabited by so many eminent persons, which always attend this *Monarch*, makes it to have a great *Trade*, and be much frequented by *Merchants* almost from all places; as *English*, *Dutch*, *Portugals*, *Arabians*, *Indians*, *Turks*, *Jews*, *Armenians*, &c. whereby it is furnished, not only with all the Native Commodities of *PERSIA*, as *Gold* and *Silver*, *Raw Silk*, in such great quantity, that they furnish most part of the East; as also other places, some *Drugs* and *Spices*, *Wine*, *Fruits*, &c. Also sundry curious *Manufactures*, as, *Carpets*, *Arras-work*, *Hangings*, &c. *Cloth of Gold* and *Silver*, *Fine Cotton Clothes*, with several other Commodities which are here made; but also with those of *ARABIA*, *INDIA*, *CHINA*, and *TURKEY*, which hither are brought in exchange for theirs, by *Caravans* of *Camels*, *Dromedaries*, and *Mules*, by reason they want the benefit of the *Sea*. They had formerly the benefit of several good *Ports*, as, *Tauris* and *Balsora*, but now in the custody of the *Grand Seigneur*, together with some others: The *Ports* that they now enjoy, and make use of, are *Ormus* and *Fasques*.

Mughal and its Commodities.

In this City is erected a *Column* or *Pillar*, composed of the *Heads* or *Skulls* of *Men* and *Beasts*, being about twenty foot in circumference at the *Base*, and exalting it self near sixty foot in height. Now the reason of erecting of this terrible and horrid *Column* and *Monument*, was this, The *People* surfeiting with *Luxury*, through their *Pride* and *Impudence*, denied their duty to their *Sovereign*, nor only in refusing to contribute a small sum of money (being towards the extirpation of the *Turks* and *Tartars*, who did much annoy the *Kingdom*) but also audaciously opposed his entrance; whereupon he vowed revenge: And having made a forceable entrance, in his rage streth a great part of the *City*, pillageth each *House*, and in two days he put to the *Sword* near 30000; and to terrifie others, erected a *Column* or *Pillar* of their *Heads*,

The

Province of Chulistan, its cities, places, &c.

ity do all  
ill publick  
place, and  
Hors-back  
s, in the  
anodities,  
; whereas  
ich makes

nce of the  
y for many  
attend this  
reat Trade,  
rchants al-  
sh, Dutch,  
ys, Jews,  
furnished,  
Commodi-  
and Silver,  
y, that they  
is also other  
er, Wine,  
ous Mann-  
ork, Hang-  
ilver, Fine  
ther Com-  
; but also  
INDIA,  
hich hither  
urs, by Ca-  
and Mules,  
efit of the  
benefit of  
and Balsora,  
grand Seig-  
ers: The  
d make use

Column or  
s or Skulls  
but twenty  
r, and ex-  
ght. Now  
errible and  
was this.  
Luxury,  
ence, de-  
aign, not  
small sum  
expiration  
did much  
adaciously  
on he vow-  
a forceable  
ear part of  
e, and in  
ar 30000;  
a Column

The

Province of  
Chorazan,  
is the chief  
City, and  
the most  
fertile, &c.

The Province of **CHORAZAN** is the greatest of all **PERSIA**; some divide it into **Cobazan**, **Chorazan**, and **Chowarazan**, which others esteem to be the same. It stretcheth it self from East to West, from **Terack-Agent**, unto the E-  
state of the **Mogoll**, above the **Indies**; and from South to North, from the Mountains of **Caibocaran**, unto the River **Gehun**. Those which divide it in three parts, make **Cobazan** the most Westerly, **Chowarazan** the most Easterly, and place **Chorazan** in the midst.

It hath every where a great number of brave Cities, as, **Kahen** or **Kayem**, which yields great store of **Saffron**.

1. **Thou** abounds in **Silk Manufactures**.

2. **Mesched** or **Mexat**, is the chief of **Chorazan**, and shews the Tombs of many **Persian Kings**. **John** of **PERSIA** saith, That this Tomb is a **Tower** of massive **Gold**, of a Pike and a half in height, and that the **Arch** of this **Mausoleum** is covered with all sorts of **precious stones**: On the top of which, is a **Diamond** as big as a **Chestnut**, and that by night, when it is darkest, it gives light for a league about; and he assures you he hath seen it, yet have not I the credit to believe him. The **City** is of twelve miles compass, and hath about one hundred thousand Inhabitants. Its Territory is fertile, its Inhabitants well made, strong, and warlike.

3. **Herat** or **Harat** is likewise called **Sargulzar**, that is, The **City of Roses**; it producing greater quantities than any **City** in the **World** besides. It yields likewise **Rhubarbe** and **Vines**, which last a long time; and so much **Silk**, that there are sometimes 3 or 4000 **Camels** laden in one day.

4. **Nichabour** is so near to **Khoemur**, that some conceive it belonging to it; others make it a particular Province: The **City** hath been much better peopled then now it is. **Tamerlane** here, and hereabouts, put to death Four hundred thousand persons in one day.

5. **Bouregian** Or **Buregian**, is near a great **Lake** of the same name: This **Lake** receives many **Rivers**; but like the **Caspian Sea**, sends not one to the **Ocean**. But let us return to the more Southerly part of **PERSIA**; we will say nothing here of **Terack**, since the **Turk** at present holds it.

6. **Caph**, 7. **Furan**, 8. **Zaribar**, 9. **Talcatan**, 10. **Balch**, and 11. **Thabs Gilak**.

The Province of **CHUSISTAN** answers to the **Ancient Susiana**, the **Soyl**

Province of  
Chusistan,  
is the chief  
City, &c.

is so fruitful, that it often yields 100 or 200 for one. Its Cities are **Souster**, **Ardegan**, **Hawecc**, **Aska-Moukeran**, and others.

1. **Souster** is the **Ancient Susa**. Here the **Prophet Daniel** had the **Piscon** concerning the determination of the **Persian** Monarchy, and the beginning of the **Grecian**; and where **Abasuerus** kept his great **Feast**, which continued 183 days together, for his **Princes** and **Lords**, invited to this day by the **Sultans** of **PERSIA**, who do annually entertain their **Nobles**, where **Abasuerus** kept his **Court**, when **Esther** demanded grace, in favor of the **Jews**; and there where **Mordecai** was exalted to the place and charge of **Haman**, and who was hanged on the same **Gibbet** which he prepared for **Mordecai**. It stands upon the River **Tiripari** or **Tiritiri**, which they call likewise **Zeymare**, formerly **Elam** or **Chaspes**; whose **Water** is esteemed to excel-  
lent, that the ancient **Kings** of **PERSIA** drank no other. It is held, that the ancient **Palace** was built by **Memnon** (Son of **Tibonur**, who in the **Trojan** Wars was slain by the **Thessalians**;) of the spoils of the **Great Thebes** in **EGYPT**; and that with such expence and magnificency, that the stones were bound together with **Gold**; But whether this be true or false, without doubt, it was very rich; for it is said, that **Alexander** found here 50000 Talents of uncoyned **Gold**, besides **Silver** **Wedges** and **Jewels** of an inestimable value. This **City** is of about 25000 paces in circumference, and is the residence of the **Soply** in the **Winter** season.

2. **Ardegan**, a fair **City** on the borders of this Province, and not far from **Hispahan**.

3. **Hawecc** is called by the **Arabian** of **Nubia**, **Abmaz**, and made chief of the **Cities** of **Chusistan**, which he calls **Churdistan**. He places next to it **Askar-Mecran** alias **Askar-Moukeran**, on the River **Mesarcan**, where there was a **Bridge** supported by twenty **Boats**.

4. **Tosfar**, with a **River** of the same name.

5. **Hawecc**.

6. **Giondi Sabur**, which the others call **Siapour**.

And 7. **SANRAC** with several others. The **Rivers** in these parts, in the **Summer** season, are so great, especially towards the **South** part of the **Mountain**; that the **Inhabitants** are forced to forsake the **Cities**, and retire themselves into the **Mountain** for coolness.

The Wells  
of the  
River

Province of  
Fars, its  
chief pla-  
ces, &c.

The Province of *FARS* or *FARC*, formerly *PERSIA*, now a particular Province of the Estates of the *Persians*; but which hath long since communicated its name to all the rest. *Bendimir*, which is the swiftest River of this Coast, traverses it; and it hath a great number of large, rich, and beautiful Cities. As 1. *Chirac*, which is said to be 20000 paces in circumference; where sometimes the *Sophy* hath made his residence, situate in a large and pleasant Plain, well built, and beautified with fair *Gardens*, and magnificent *Mosques*: Two of which are larger than the rest, and beautified with two Spires or Steeples, covered with a painting of *Gold* and *Azure*: These *Mosques*, by reason of 1000 Lamps which are kept burning, are as light by night, as by day. This City for its good *Wine*, pleasant *Fruits*, 20 gallant *People*, and above all, for its pritty *Women*, may compare with the best in all *PERSIA*. The *Ladies* here are so fair and pleasant, that *Mahomet* passing through these quarters, would not enter this City for fear least he should lose himself in its delights. The *Soyl* is very good, and *Mastick* is gathered in its Forests. The *Arms* they make here, are excellent.

2. *Astaker* was one of the greatest of these quarters, as likewise in the time of the *Arabian* of *Nubia*. The ruins of its Castle *Chilminare*, that is, 40 Pillars, show the remains of the Ancient Palace that *Alexander* the Great burned, at the solicitation of the *Curtisan* *Thais*. At the taking of which City, *Alexander* for his share found 120000 Talens of ready money, besides the *Plate*, Images of *Gold* and *Silver*, and *Jewels* of a vast value: But its beauty did surpass its riches, having its *Royal Palace* built on a Hill, environed with a treble Wall; the first in height 16 cubits; the second, 30; and the third, 60 cubits high: All of them of Black polished *Marble*, with stately Battlements, on which were 100 *Turrets*. Nor was the outside more stately than the inside, which was built with *Cyprus Wood*, and beautified with *Gold*, *Silver*, *Ivory*, *Amber*, and such like.

3. *Lar* or *Laar*, hath been the chief of a *Kingdom*, and giveth name to the *Larins*, Pieces of very good *Silver* which they coyn.

4. Near *Stababanon*, a pritty Town, the *Momnaki-Koni*, that is, the precious *Momy* is drawn out of a *Rock*; but it is onely gathered for the *Sophy*, who careful

ly keeps it: It is a most assured counter Poyson or Antidote, and an excellent salve against all *Cuts* or *Ruptures*, even within the Body. *Bezar* comes likewise from this quarter.

5. *Chabonkara*, 6. *Darabegerd*, and 7. *Bacsa*, are on the confines of *Fars* and *Kerman*. Some esteem them under the Province of *Fars*, others under that of *Kerman*; others make that a particular Province, which takes its name from the first of them; and which certainly is the greatest and the fairest. *Darabegerd*, as I believe, is the *Valasegerd* of the *Arab*, and the ancient *Palagardae*; there, where sometime resided, and where the Tomb was that *Cyrus*, who here by this place defeated *Astages*, the last King of the *Medes*.

And 8. *Gombrone*, seated on the *Gulf* of *PERSIA*, a fair Town, well frequented; and where the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Portugals*, keep their *Factories* for the benefit and support of the *Traffick*; this place being now the Scale of Trade for all *PERSIA* (as was formerly *Ormus* and *Fasques*, being at present of little use.) And this place being the Scale of *Traffick* for this Kingdom, I shall here include the trade thereof, as to the *Commodities*, *Coyns*, *Weights*, and *Measures*, as they are known at this day by *Merchants*, viz.

The *Commodities* of this place are the product of all *PERSIA*, and the *Commodities* most vendable here, which from hence are by *Caravans* dispersed throughout all *PERSIA*, are,

The *Coyns* here used, as at *Hispahan* and other parts of the *Sophies* Dominions, are *Real*, and according to our *Standard*, and *Nominal*, as is our *Noble* and *Mark*, which are as followeth.

*Real Coyns*, are, *Bestees*, *Shabees*, *Momodies*, *Abassees*, and *Cosbeages*. A *Bestee* is the least piece of *Silver* that is coyned by them, and is  $\frac{1}{10}$  of an *Abassee*. A *Shabee*, which is the frequentest reckoning, and in which denomination, together with *Cosbeages*, the *English* *East-India* Companies *Factors* keep their *Accompts*; and is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an *Abassee*. A *Mamady* is the  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an *Abassee*. An *Abassee* which is the generallest *Coyn*, as the *Shillings* with us in *England*, is valued worth according to the nearest computation 16<sup>s</sup> *Sterling*, and is the finest of *Silver*, much about the *English* *Standard*. A *Cosbeage*, which is a *Copper Coyn*, is the  $\frac{1}{10}$  of an *Abassee*. Some *Gold* there is coyned; but not much, and not being

The Trade  
of Com-  
moditys, in  
Commodi-  
ties.

Their  
Coyns

Their  
Weights.

being ordinarily paid upon any Accompt.

*Nominal Coyns*, are, *Larrees*, *Haffars*, and *Tomonds*. A *Larree*, which in some parts of *India* is a coyn or piece of Silver; and in the time of Commerce to *Ormus*, did these pass currant, and is accounted to be 2 *Shabees*; and under this denomination, much goods are sold here at *Gombrone*, but in no other places of *PERSIA*. A *Haffar*, which we in *England* usually call a piece of *Gold*, is accounted five *Abassees*. A *Tomond*, which is very frequent amongst them, is accounted for 10 *Haffars* or 50 *Abassees*, and is of value 5 *Marks English*; and is commonly spoken there, as a *Pound Sterling* with us.

*Rixdollars* and *Pieces* of 8 of all three sorts, viz. *Sivill*, *Mexico*, and *Peru*, pass without distinction here for 14 *Shabees*, or 3 *Abassees*; per piece. A *Sherriffine* or *Ducket* of the several *German* &c. *Princes*, together with the *Grand Seigniors*, are here commonly worth 27 *Shabees*, or 6 *Abassees*, one with another. And although these *Coyns* are prohibited the transporting out of the *Emperors Dominions*, without paying a considerable *Custom*, yet through the negligence of the *Officers*, much of their *Coyn* is exported, especially *Abassees*.

Their *Weights* are also different, and of sundry denominations, that most in use is called the *Mawnd Shaw*, and contains about 13 li. *Haberdupoiz*, with which they weigh *Silk* and several other *Commodities*; another is called the *Mawnd Tabrees*, and is half of the former, and with it, is likewise weighed several *Commodities*. Another is the *Mawnd Surat*, and contains five of the latter, or 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the former, and is generally used for weighing of gross *Goods*, and especially here at *Gombrone*; by which, we dispose of *Pepper*, *Tynn*, *Cardimin*, *Coffee*, *Sugar*, &c. This great *Mawnd* which the *Dutch* sell by here, is about half a pound greater then that used by the *English*. There is also another weight which they call a *Load*, and is the weight for the selling their *silk*, and doth contain 36 *Mawnd Shaws*; at 468 li. *Haberdupoiz*. The weight with which is weighed, what's more precious, as *Gold*, *Silver*, *Amber-greece*, and the like, is called a *Mitsigal*, whereof about 6  $\frac{1}{2}$  makes an ounce *Venice*. Their *Diamonds*, *Pearls*, &c. are weighed by a small weight, called a *Rabee*, wherein are twenty *Vals*, and twenty three of these *Vals* makes our *English Carack*.

Their *Measures* are two, and both called *Covedo's*; the greater is an *Inch* longer then our *English Yard*, and the lesser is three quarters of the other, and most commonly used in measuring of *Carpets*.

The Province of *KHERMAN*, or *KERMAN* of old *Caramania*, is one of the greatest, but not one of the best Provinces of the *Estates* of *PERSIA*; yet they send forth several *Commodities*, as *Steel*, *Turquesses*, *Rose-water*, *Tutty*, *Bourbatan*, *Hebe*, or *Kilworm*, of which, they make the *Confection Alkerns*, *Sarmuck*, which are black and shining *Stones*, which cures sore eyes, and paints black *Carpets* the best in *PERSIA*, after those *Tefed* (those of *Chorazan* hold the third degree.) *Arms* which the *Turks* buy at any rates, and *Scimitars*, which will cut a *Head-peece* without blunting the edge.

The *Countrey* is somewhat uneven and mountainous, which causeth barrenness; but the *Valleys* are very fertile and delightful, every where adorned with *Flowers*, and especially *Roses*, of which they make a great *Revenue*.

Amongst its *Cities*, which are in great number, 1. *Cberman*, which is the chief, and which communicates its name to the Province, makes a great quantity of *Cloth of Gold and Silver*. As also those *Scimitars* aforementioned, 2. *Zirgian* or *Sirgian*, 3. *Nahyan*, and others, are likewise in some reputation; but the Coast of *Ormus* is of great esteem, after it *Mochestan*.

4. The *City* of *Ormus* is seated in an *Iste* at the Mouth of the *Gulf of PERSIA*, being in compass about twenty miles; the *City* well built, and strongly fortified, seated at one end of the *Iste*, being in compass about two miles, adorned with a fair *Market place*, and some *Churches*, famous throughout the *World* for the great *Trade*, there negotiated; but of it self, exceeding barren, and onely composed of *Salt Rocks*, of which, their *Houses* and *Walls* are made; and in the *Summer*, is found so excessive hot, that the *Inhabitants* are forced to lie and sleep in *Wooden Cesterns* made for the purpose, and filled with *Water*, where both the *Men* and *Women* lie naked up to their *Chins*. In this *Iland* there is no fresh water, but what they fetch from other places there adjoining, which they keep in *Cesterns*; from whence they likewise get other *Provision* for their food, being seated not above 12 miles from the *Continent*. The *Commodities* that are here found,

Their Measures.

Province of Kherman, its Commodities, chief places, &c.

The City and Bay of Ormus, with its Trade and Commodities.

The Trade of Coyns, in Commodities.

Their Coyns

fured counter excellent salve, even within wife from this

abegerd, and of Fars and em under the under that of t a particular name from the certainly is the arabegerd, as I the Arab, and where some- the Tomb was this place de- King of the

ed on the Gulf down, well fre- inglish, Dutch, allories for the T. e; this of Trade for all rly Ormus and of little use.) eale of Traffick ere include the modities, Coyns, they are known

is place are the and the Com- e, which from erferd through-

as at Hispania his Dominions, our Standard, ble and Marks

Shabees, Ma- ges. A Bessie at is coyned by ee. A Shabee, koning, and in her with Corbe- lia Companies es; and is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an A- the generallest us in England, to the nearest and is the finest English Stan- ch is a Copper y. Some Gold uch, and not being

found, are the rich *Fems* and *Spices* of *India*. The *Tapistries*, *Carpets*, &c. of *PERSIA*; the *Grams*, *Mobairs*, and *Chamblets* of *TURKEY*; the *Drugs* of *ARABIA*, &c. The *People* hereof, in their *Religion*, in their *Persons* and *habits*, have something of the *Arabians* in them, but more of the *Persians*. 5. *Mochestan* is the ordinary residence of the Kings of *Ormus*, because it is cool, its Waters excellent to drink, and its Land fruitful in *Corn* and *Fruits*, which is not found in the *Island*, 6. *Guadell*, and 7. *Patanis*, are the most famous Ports of the Coast.

The Province of *SABLESTAN* is inclosed with Mountains, between *Chorazan* and *Khermon*, it answers to *Caramania Deserta*, yet it hath many Cities, and inhabited places, amongst others, *Zarans* towards *Khermon*; 2. *Bost*. 3. *Necbesaet*, and 4. *Gisna-Cassaby*, towards *Chorazan*. Some place here *Balasan*, from whence come the *Balain Rubies*.

The Provinces of *SIGISTAN*, *SISTAN*, or *SAGESTAN*; *PATANES*, *CANDAHAR*, and *MACKERAN*, are the most Easterly Provinces of all *PERSIA*, and nearest the mouth of the *Indus*. *Sistan* is the chief City of *Sigistan*; *Mackeran* of *Mackeran*, which is seated on the *Sea*; and also *Basir*, which seems to keep its ancient name *Parfis*. The River *Ilmenel*, waters all these Provinces, and falls into the *Indian Ocean*, not far from the *Gulf of India*. Also *Grees* is the chief of *Patanes*, and *Candahar* of *Candahar*.

These are the Estates of the *Sophy* of the *Persians* at present, and we are to observe, that his principal neighbors are, the *Turks* on the West; the *Tartars* on the North; the *Mogols* on the East; and the *Portugals* on the South, in, and about the *Gulf of Ormus*. These last cannot deprive him of any great part, their design being onely to maintain their commerce in the *Indies*, yet they cease not to perplex him on the *Sea*; and have divers times taken and retaken *Ormus* from him. The *Mogols*, the *Tartars*, and the *Turks*, are troublesome neighbors unto him, and oftentimes his enemies, because they are powerful and capable to seize on whole Provinces; which he recovers rather by strength, then otherwise: For it must be confessed, that the *Persians* are more active in their Arms, then all their Neighbors, except the *Portugals*: And they are likewise esteemed more courteous to strangers, more

civil in their conversation, and more exact in their Policy and Government, then all the *Mahometans*.

And if we would compare the manners of the *Turks*, with those of the *Persians*, we should finde a great difference, and often much contrariety: For the *Persians* are courteous to strangers, the *Turks* abusive: The *Persians* esteem study, the *Turks* neglect it: The *Sophies* of the *Persians* hold in great honor, their Brothers and Kinsmen, the *Turks* oft put them to death: The *Persians* have amongst them great quantity of *Nobles*, the *Turks* make account of none but the *Officers* sent them from the *Port*: The *Persians* have the *Cavalry*, the *Turks* the better *Infantry*: Both the one, and the other, are *Mahometans*, but they explain their *Alcoran* so diversly, that that alone is capable to carry them to the ruine of one or the other *Empire*, if they could effect it; and it seems, that the disposition of the one, and the other estate is very different, caused by their contrary manners, which makes them follow *Maxims* quite different from one another.

The *Empire* of the *TURKS* is divided into many parts, cut asunder by several *Seas*, one upon the neck of another, and by great navigable *Rivers*; as the *Danube* in *EUROPE*; the *Nile* in *AFFRICA*; and the *Euphrates* in *ASIA*; which gives it great advantages, both for *Trade*, and the transport of its *Forces*: Whilest the *Empire* of *PERSIA*, consisting of an entire and solid *Mass*, full of Mountains in the middle of the Countrey; few navigable *Rivers*, and those which are distant one from the other, and falling into divers *Seas*, that they can have no communication one with the other. *Trade* cannot be commodious, but abroad; and if they have occasion to transport any Troops from one Coast to another, it cannot be done without the expence of much time and pains: And it is for this reason, the *Persians* serve themselves more of *Cavalry*, who at a need, are able to put into the field One hundred thousand *Horse*, and they have for the most part ready, 30, 40, or 50000: They entertain little *Infantry*, and those for the most part are strangers.

The *Kingdom* or *Empire* of *PERSIA*, is of a large, and of so different a nature, as one would not take it to be the same, being in some places very barren, cold, and comfortless, scarce affording either Food for *Man* or *Beast*, as are the North parts which

The People of Ormus.

The People of Ormus.

The People of Ormus.

Province of Sablestan.

Provinces of Sigistan, Sistan, Candahar, and Mackeran.

The Neighbors of the Persians.

The Persians are more courteous to strangers.

The Kingdom of Persia is of a different nature.



more exact  
ent, then all

the manners  
the Persians,  
ence, and of  
the Persians  
the Turks an  
n study, the  
s of the Per  
their Brothers  
put them to  
mongst them  
e Turks make  
Officers sent  
Persians have  
the better In  
the other, are  
tain their Al  
one is capable  
of one or the  
effect it; and  
on of the one,  
fferent, caused  
which makes  
different front

The Persians  
are more  
than the  
Turks.

The Persians  
are more  
than the  
Turks.

K S is divided  
order by several  
another, and  
as the Danube  
AFRICA;  
which gives  
for Trade, and  
Whilest the  
sisting of an  
Mountains in  
few naviga  
which are distant  
ing into divers  
o communica  
ade cannot be  
and if they  
t any Troops  
it cannot be  
of much time  
his reason, the  
ore of Cavalry,  
at into the field  
se, and they  
y, 30, 40, or  
ttle Infantry,  
e strangers.  
of PERSIA,  
rent a nature,  
be the same,  
ren, cold, and  
g either Food  
e North parts  
which

The Persians  
are more  
than the  
Turks.

The Persians  
are more  
than the  
Turks.

which lye betwixt Mount *Taurus*, and the *Hircanian-sea*, whereas southerly it is very fruitful, the soil rich, affording plenty of *Corn*, *Wine*, and all things necessary for the use of *Man*, being pleasant, full of rich *Pastures* which are stored with abundance of *Cattel*, the Country watered with fresh streams.

The *Persians* are of a low *Stature*, yet have great limbs, and are *strong*, they are of an *Olive colour complexion*, hawked *nos'd*, and black *hair'd*, which they shave every eight dayes; and those which have not black *haire* naturally, by *Art* make it so, as being in great esteem amongst them, they paint their *hands* and *nails* of a reddish colour. In their *habits*, their *clothes* have no proportion to their *bodies*, hanging loose and large, much in the fashion of the *womens*; their *Mendits*, by the *Turks* called *Turbants*, are made of *Cotton*, *Cloth*, or *Silk*, *Stuff* which is fine and of several colours, which they wear on their heads, as we do *hatts*, many of them wear them of *Red*, but the *Priests*, as also his other *Garments* are white, their *Garments* they girt about their waists with a *skarf*, under these *Garments* they were *breeches* like our *drawers*; their *sockings* are for the most part made of *Cloth* without any shape in them; their *shoes* are picked toed, and like *slippers*, by reason of their often putting them off and on, not wearing them in *houses*. The *women* wear much finer *stuff* than the *men*, and have nothing to tye about their waists, their *drawers*, *sockings*, and *shirts* are like those of the *men*; they wear their hair loose about their shoulders in several *gresses*, having no other Ornament except it be two or three rows of *Pearls*, which they fasten to their *fore head*, and so hangs down on each side of their *face* to be fastned to their chin; the young *Maid*s wear *rings*, and *brasslets* about their *hands* and *armes*, as also *rings* with *precious stones* in their right *nostrills*, as the *Tartarian women* do. The *women* in the *streets* goe with white *vail*s over their *faces*, down to their *knees*. The *people* in this Nation as well *men* as *women*, according to their degrees in honour, or riches doe exceed in costly *habits*, in which they are exceeding neat and curious, not admitting so much as a spot upon their *clothes*, which neatness they likewise observe in their houses, which are for the most part well furnished; as also in their meats and drinks, which are excellent, delightful, and curious. They

are of a good nature, and very sensible of kindness done to them, but where they hate, are mortal enemies: They are courageous and good soldiers, great haters of cowards, very ingenious, of a ready witt, and sound judgement, much addicted to reading several Authors, which tend to the knowledge of *Poetry*, *Physiophy*, the *Law*, *Medicine*, several of the *Mathematicks*, as *Arithmetick*, *Geometry*, *Astronomy*, and its influences as *Astrology*, which they give much credit unto. These and the like *Arts* and *Sciences* are studied and taught, young Students at several *Colleges* and *Universities* by experienced persons in the fame, who there reside. They are very ingenious in *fire* and *water-works*, are great lovers of their pleasure, in several recreations, as *Hawking*, *Hunting*, *Riding a tilt*, &c. they are very compliant, complementary, obliging, and courteous, especially to strangers, not addicted to covetousness, usury being forbidden amongst them; they are generally much given to *Luxury*, not contenting themselves with several *wives*, but must also have the use of *Concubines*, which is allowed them, they are also given to *Sodomy*; but *Adultery* they severely punish, when a young *man* desires to marry, and hath heard of a *maid*, as he thinks he can love, he hath some of his friends to treat with her *parents* or friends about it, for the *maid* is not to be seen, and if they agree, then they proceed to *Articles*, which is to be performed by the friend of the *Bridegroom*, it not being there the custom for the *man* to receive a portion with her, as it is here with us, but contrarily, the *Dower* which by both of their friends is agreed on, he either sends unto her two or three dayes before the consumation of the *Marriage*, which is either in *money* or *goods*, as a recompence to her *Parents* or *Kindred*, for their care in her Education; or else engages to pay her if in case a *Divorce* should happen, which is usual amongst them, as being allowed of by their law this done, their *Agents*, in the name of the betrothed couple, goe to their *Priests* or *Ecclesiastical Judge*, who being satisfied that it is done by the mutual consent of their friends, *marries* them: by the said *Agents*, but very privately, the *Marriage* day being agreed upon, the *Bridegroom* sends his *Bride* several toys, as *Pendants*, *Brasslets*, *Rings* or the like *Ornaments*; also several dishes of *meate*, for the entertainment of her friends and relations;

The Persians  
are more  
than the  
Turks.

The Persians  
are more  
than the  
Turks.

who about the evening brings the *Bride* to the *Bridegroom*, being mounted on a *Horse*, *Mule*, or *Camell*, being covered with a veil of *Crimson Taffety*, over her face down to her *knees*, and accompanied all the way with *Musick*, and being entred the *Mosque*, the *Mulay* demands their liking; then the *Bride* requireth three things, *viz.* *Bed-right*, *Food*, and *Rayment*; and the *Parents* having declared their consent, the *Priest* encircles them with a cord, conjoyns their hands takes a reciprocal Oath, and calls *Mahomes* to witness, which ended, the *Caddi* enrolls their names, with the day of the month, year, and hour of the day of their *Nuptial*, and so dismisses them, and being come to the *Bridegrooms* house, they take her off, and lead her into a room where she and her friends sup, the *Bridegroom* and his friends being in another room, and after supper is ended, they conduct her to another room where she is to lie, to which the *Bridegroom* is soon brought, where he receiveth his first sight of her, the company with-drawing themselves out of the room, he falls to his embracing her, and after the first enjoyment of her, he leaves her, and goeth to his friends, to spend some hours in their company, if he finds that she hath lost her virginity before, he hath power to cut off her *Ears* and *Nose*, and to turn her, and her relations and friends out of doors, which is a great disgrace unto her and them; but if she be a pure *Virgin*, then he sends the tokens of it, by an ancient *woman*, to her relations, and then for joy they continue their entertainments three or four daies together, having several divertisements as *Musick*, *Singing*, *Dancing* or the like, the next day after their *Marriage*, they both wash and bathe themselves, they are allowed by the *Law* four *wives*, so they can keep them, but they must be of their own *Religion*; and for *Concubines*, they may be of any *Religion*, and have the liberty of taking as many as they please, paying them a certain stipend or salary, as they shall agree by the week, month, or longer as they shall agree, at the end of which term, they are quit from their *Obligation*, and may leave each other without another agreement made betwixt them, the *men* are exceeding jealous of their *wives*, inso-much as they are forbidden the liberty of society with any *man*, which custom is used among the *Italians*.

Men allow  
ed many  
wives.

In their *Feasts* they are very stately, having not only all varieties of *Meats*, as *Flesh*, *Fowles*, *Fish*, *Baked-meats*, with excellent *Wine*, and great attendance, but also pleasant *fruits*, stately *Banquets* of *sweetmeats*, and to make their entertainments compleat, they are furnished with curious *Musick*, as well *Vocal* as *Instrumental*, their *Rooms*, or *Halls* where they make these entertainments, are very spacious, and curiously adorned with stately *Hangings* of *Tapestry*, and beautified with varieties of *Paintings*, but most of them being naked figures which amongst us would be accounted unseemly, their *Rooms* being perfumed with sweet *Odors* and *Waters*, so that nothing is wanting for the pleasing of the *Senses*, their way is to fet upon the ground on *Carpets*, being the Custom of the *Turks* and other Eastern *Countrys* so to do, being also used to *Collations* in afternoons and nights, wherein they have excellent *fruits*, *Sweetmeats*, *Wine*, *Musick*, and *Dancing*.

They are great lovers of *Women*, inso-much that at their *Feasts* they are always furnished with them, being such as they call *Dancing-women*, who being brought up in *Dancing*, *Singing*, and *Playing* on *Instruments*, make it their employment so to doe at *Feasts*; these *Women* for the most part are very handfome, and richly attired, having about them costly *Jewels*, *Pendants*, *Rings*, having about their legs *Bells*, like *Morris-dancers*; and he who hath a desire to enjoy a *Woman*, useth from his seat, and taketh which of these *Dancing-women* he most fancies, and goes into a private *Room*, and after he hath enjoyed her to his content, he comes to his place, and the *Woman* goes to *Dancing*, without any shame to the one, or notice taken of the other.

They are much given to drink *Wine*, *Tea*, and *Coffe*.

The *Persians* are very strict, superstitious, and ceremonious in their *Religion*, (as the *Turks*, but differ much from them in the exposition of their *Alcoran*) as in their *Pilgrimages* to *Messa*, in their *Sacrificings*, in their observing of daies, on some of which they will not do any business, either tending to profit or pleasure, refraining from all Acts of Sin as nigh as they can, and one of these daies they hold to be the next *Wednesday* before the *Ver-nal Equinox*; by which they begin their new year, in their *Processions*, and celebrated *Festivals* in commemoration of their

Their Feasts  
are many  
sorts.

They are  
much given  
to Wine.

Their Re-  
ligion.

Ceremonies  
in their  
Religion.

The Persi-  
ans are very su-  
perstitious.

stately, ha-  
of Meats, as  
ts, with ex-  
andance, but  
Banquets of  
entertain-  
with  
as Instru-  
where they  
e very spaci-  
autified with  
ost of them  
amongst us  
their Rooms  
ors and Wa-  
ting for to set  
way is to set  
being the  
ther Eastern  
uited to Colla-  
wherein they  
meats, Wine,

Women, in-  
are always  
such as their  
ing brought  
d Playing on  
employment so  
for the most  
richly attired,  
els, Pendants,  
ags Bells, like  
th a desire to  
his feat, and  
eg-women he  
ivate Rooms,  
t to his con-  
e, and the  
without any  
aken of the  
drink Wine,

superstici-  
Religion,  
from them  
oran) as in  
n their Sa-  
of daies, on  
o any busi-  
or pleasure,  
as nigh as  
s they hold  
re the Ver-  
begin their  
and cele-  
oration of  
their

their several *Saints*, which they perform with great devotion, mixt with no less state in their several *Sepulchres*, where their *Saints* are interr'd, which are very large, and magnificent *structures*, so rich in *Gold* and *Silver*, with which it is adorned, as well in *Lamps* and *Candlesticks*, as otherwise, that it can hardly be express'd, in which places they have their *Priests* which attend, and offer up their devotions and explains the *Alcoran*, which they read out of *Books*, which they have in their *Library* being *Manuscripts* either upon paper or *Parchment* being curiously bound, neatly painted within, and covered with plates of *Silver* or *Gold*, carved or imbossed, or with *paintings*, also the *Persians* have not the same *Miracles*, the same *Saints*, the same *Mosqueys*, and the same *Ceremonies* as the *Turks* have, they use *Circumcision*, but not till the Children are seven, eight, or nine years old, they are very devout, especially in their *Prayers*, which they use five times a day, as being obliged by their *Religion* so to do, also in their *Prayers* for the *Dead*, over their *Graves*, which devotion is used during the time of their *Lent*, which they keep for a month, in which time they neither eat nor drink betwixt sun rising and sun setting, but in the nights they eat and drink what they please, yet for a sum of money they may have a dispensation, they interr their dead within three hours after the life is departed, unless it be in the night, so that then they let the corps alone untill the morning, they wash or bathe the *Lodges* of their *dead*, before they are interr'd, in a great *Cestern*, which they have for the same purpose near the *Church*, to which place they are carried on a *Bier* in their *Clothes*, and after they are stript and wash'd, they put them in clean *linnen*, anoynt them, and so bear them to the *Grave*, being accompanied with his *Friends*, *Relations*, *Servants*, &c. in this order; first goeth those of his *blood*, next his *Varlets*, who goe naked to the *Waist*, the rest in *roozes*, who to express their love, scratch, and barn their *Breasts*, *Arms*, and other parts, so that the blood oft issueth forth: then follow many *youths* on whose *shoulders* are affixed some *texts* taken out of the *Alcoran*, together with *Elegies* of the deceased, in the next place follow several *persons* of the best rank, each holding a cord that is affixed to the *Hearse*, and on every side abundance of *people* bearing in their hands, *Garlands* of *Flowers*, *Lawrells*,

and such things as befit the season, then follow some *Horse-men* half naked, who oft times massacre their carcasses, and in the last place follow *Weeping-women*; that is such as are hired to *Weepe* and *Howle*, the better to provoke others to passion, and being brought to the *Grave*. The *Priest* after he hath performed several *Ceremonies* which he readeth out of the *Alcoran*, the *Corps* is interr'd with his head towards *Mecca*, his face towards *Heaven*, and his armes expanded, (as they say) to embrace their *Prophet Mahomet*, placing two *Stones*, one at the head, and the other at the foot, of the *Grave*, on which are engraven in *Arabicke Characters*, the persons *name*, *quality*, and time of *buriall*, and so take their leave, but for a good while cease not to visit the *Grave* twice a day, beseeching *Mahomet* to succour him against his two bad *Angels*, of whom they have this opinion, so soon as the *Corps* is interr'd, there are two hiddeous *Devils* afaire him, the one they call *Muegar*, which is armed with an *Iron Club*, and the other *Quareguar*, armed with a *Hook* of *Flaming brass*, and in this horrid posture, they view the carcass, and in an insolent manner, command him to raise his head, to fall prostrate upon his *knees*, and beg his *soul*, which then reenters the body, and gives an account unto them of all the actions of his life, and upon examination and confession, if it appear that his life was good, they vanish away like *Spirits*, and two good *Angels* come (apparelled in white) to be a comfort unto him, and protect him untill the day of doom, not stirring from him, but sitting one at his *head*, and the other at his *feet*. But on the contrary, if it happen that his life is found bad, then these *Infernal Imps* are his tormentors, the one knocking him on the *head* (such blows with his *Iron Club*, as beates him (as they say) ten yards into the earth, and the other drags him up with his *Flaming book*, and thus is he knockt down by one, and dragged up by the other, untill *Mahomet*, sends him a deliverance; and this (as *Sir Tho. Herbert* relateth in his book of *Travells*) is their belief, which if it be true, I doubt they will have many a sound knock and torne place before their delivery. To persons of quality, they observe more *Ceremonies*, than to those of the ordinary degree, making feasts on the third, seventh, and fortieth day after the *Corps* is laid in the *Grave*, at which feasts

This Re-  
dign.

Ceremonies  
of the  
Turks

The Persi-  
ans very su-  
perstitious.

feasts they are charitable to the poor in their Almes Deeds.

The King  
of Persia  
his power.

The King of Persia governs by an absolute power, disposing of the *lives* and *estates* of his subjects, as best pleaseth him, making his will his law, not any one daring so much as to murmur, though his actions are never so much unjust. Their *Kings* come to the Government by succession, and not by election, inasmuch that if the King hath no *Children*, which are lawfully begotten as by his *Wives*, for want of such, those of his *Concubines* shall succeed him.

The Coronation  
of their King.

Upon the *Coronation* of their *Kings*, amongst other Ceremonies, he is presented with a *Crown*, by one of their chiefest Lords, which he takes putting it to his forehead, and after kissing it thrice in the name of *Mahomet*, and of *Aaly*, he delivers it to the grand *Master* of the *Kingdom*, who puts it on his head, the people making great shouts, and acclamations, kissing his feet, and presenting him with great presents, which done, the rest of the day they spend in *Feasting*, and other *joivialities*, but in all their Ceremonies there is not so much as an Oath imposed upon him, as for his well governing them, and keeping and preserving their fundamental *Laws*, and other of their rites, as amongst us is done, but all being left to his sole power, as being absolute.

There are belonging to the *Courts*, several *Officers*, as *Chancellor*, *Secretary of State*, *Controller*, *Master of the Horse*, *Master of the Ceremonies*, together with several other *Officers*, as amongst our *Courts* are found.

Their  
Courts of  
Judicature,  
and their  
Justice.

The Administration of *Justice* is decided by the *King*, but first tried by the secular *Judges*: who examin the same, and deliver up their opinion to the *King*.

They have several strict and severe punishments, which they inflict upon the offenders according to the hainousness of their crimes, for some offences they cut off the *ears* or *nose*, sometimes the *feet* or *hands*, for others to be beheaded, for some again, they are eyed between two boards and so sawed assunder, with several other cruel deaths which are too tedious to name.

Their  
Military  
Affairs.

In their *Military affairs* they are very experienced, their *Army* consisting only of *Horse*, who have for their  *Armour Davis* and *Fauvelins*, yet have they some in the nature of our *Dragoons*, which are

mounted on *Horses*, who have *Muskets* for their *Arms*, as for an *Army of Foot*, together with the assistance of great guns by them, is not so much set by, as being troublesome, and a retarder of them from their speedy and great marches, they are very expert in all stratagems of *Warr*, which gives them a great advantage over their enemies.

Thus much concerning their *Stature*, *Habit*, what they are most addicted unto, their *Mariages*, *Feasts*, *Superstitions*, *Ceremonies*, their *Government*, *Military affairs*, &c. I shall close my discourse of *PERSIA* with a word or two about the fertility of the Country and particularly with a small discourse of *Silkworms*.

They have great quantity of *Cattel*, as *Cows*, *Oxen*, *Goats*, *Buffis*, *Sheep*, also *Horses*, *Camels*, *Mules*, and *Asses*; their ground producing by their *Tilling* and *Manuring* it, *Wheat*, *Barly*, *Rice*, *Millet*, *Pease*, *Beans*, &c. they have the best, and most varieties of *fruits*, of any place in the world, there being none in *EUROPE* but what are found in *PERSIA*, with varieties of others not known elsewhere, amongst their *fruit trees*, they have great quantities of white and black *Mulberry trees*, which are planted so close together, that a man can scarce pass betwixt them, and not suffering them to grow above five or six foot high, so that one may easily reach up to the branches, and in the Spring time, when these trees begin to shoot forth their leaves, they begin to hatch their *Silk-worms*, which they do by carrying the fed under their *Arms*

A discourse  
of Silk-  
worms, and  
making of  
SILK.

40 pits in little baggs, which in seven or eight daies will receive life, then they put them into a wooden dish, upon the *Mulberry-leaves*, which they or'e a day change, and take a great care that they be not wet, at the end of five daies they sleep three, after which they dispose of them into *Rooms* or *Barns*, prepared for the same purpose, upon the beams of these buildings they fasten laths, or such like pieces of wood, upon which they lay *Mulberry-branches*, which hath the leaves on, whereon they put the *Silk-worms* shifting them every day, and as they grow in bigness, so oftner to twice or thrice a day, before they begin to spin, they sleep about eight daies more, after which they begin, and in 12 daies they have finished their *Cod*, the biggest they make choise of for seed; all the rest they cast

ave Muskets  
ny of Foot,  
f great guns  
y, as being  
f them from  
es, they are  
of Warr ,  
antage over

their Stature,  
differ unto,  
positions, Ce-  
Military af-  
discourle of  
two about  
and particu-  
of Silke-

of Castell,  
Sheep, also  
Asses, their  
Tilling and  
Rice, Millet,  
e the best,  
of any place  
one in E M-  
d in P E R-  
s not known  
s trees, they  
re and black  
ted so close  
nce pass be-  
hem to grow  
so that one  
anches, and  
e trees be-

s, they be-  
which they  
their Arme-  
n seven or  
en they put  
on the Mal-  
orce 'a day  
e that they  
daies they  
dispose of  
orepared for  
e beams of  
hs, or such  
which they  
h hath the  
t the Silk-  
ay, and as  
er to twice  
gin to spin,  
more, after  
daies they  
piggest they  
the rest they  
cast

*A description  
of Silk,  
worms, and  
making of  
Silk.*



105 110 115 120 125 130 135 140 145 150 155 160

**A General Mapp of the East Indies Comprehending the States or Kingdoms of the Great Mogol, the Kingdoms & States of Decan, Golconda, Bistagar, Malabar & in the Peninsula of India with out the Ganges, & the Kingdoms of Pegu, Siam, Malacca, Cochinchina & in the Peninsula of India within the Ganges with the Isles of Maldives.**

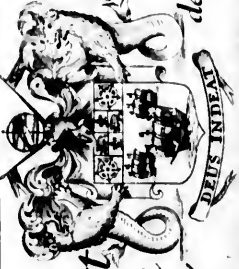
*By W. Blaeuw, Surveyor of the Admiralty of the Netherlands.*  
*Printed by J. Blaeuw, in the Strand near St. Dunstons Church.*



CHINA  
 CANCER  
 NA  
 GULPH OF CHINA  
 PENINSULA  
 INDIA  
 O R I  
 THE



To the Honorable the Governour Deputy  
 and Court of Comitties of the Company of  
 Marchants trading in the East Indies  
 This Mapp is humbly dedicated by Ric: Blome.



cast in  
which  
purpo  
they  
which  
Table  
teen o  
afterw  
which  
Eggs  
from  
for th  
eating  
thus

*In Name.*  
**I**  
G  
k  
*India*  
*Asia*  
wife  
impr  
Wel  
unde  
thor  
part  
is ab  
wher  
and  
whic  
the

*In Words.*  
**I**  
apar  
with  
the  
with  
this  
call  
*Ind*  
*ges*  
pre  
*Ina*

*Disj-*  
*Par*  
its  
stat  
the  
on  
Pe  
anc  
Ga  
di

cast into a Kettle of boyling Water; into which they often put a *Whisk* made for the purpose, to which the *Silk* sticks, which they immediately winde up; and that which they keep for *Seed*, they lay upon a Table, out of which, in the space of fifteen days comes forth great *Bugs*, which afterwards turns to things like *Butter-flies*, which in a few days they gender and lay *Eggs*, and then die, not eating any thing <sup>10</sup> from their first *Spinning*; which is much, for things to live so great a while without eating any thing: And of these *Silk Worms* thus ordered they make a great Revenue.

riental, and beyond the *Ganges*, shall be called *The Peninsula of India within the Ganges*.

We will esteem in the first part, that which the Great *Mogoll* at present possesses, and what is engaged in his *Empire*. In the *Two Peninsulas* we shall have a great number of *Kingdoms* and *Principalities*; neither the one, nor the other, having less than fifty; which by little and little are reduced into a less number, the strongest becoming Masters of the weakest. Thus the Great *Mogoll* made himself Master of 35 or 40 *Kingdoms*, of which, some had before ruined many others.

I N D I A,  
OR THE  
East Indies.

The Empire of the  
GREAT MOGOLL.

<sup>th Name.</sup> **I**NDIA, of which we treat at present, is, That which the Antients have known under the name of *India* or the *Indies*, and which the Moderns call the *Asiatick* or *East Indies*; because they likewise call *AMERICA*, though very improperly, the *West Indies*; therefore lying <sup>30</sup> West, those East from our *Meridian*. But under the name of *East Indies*, divers Authors comprehend all the most Oriental parts of *ASIA*, that is to say, All that is above, and beyond the River *Indus*, from whence the Country takes its name; and likewise *China*, and the Isles of *Asia*, which are in the Oriental *Ocean*, pass under the name of these *Indies*.

<sup>th Bound.</sup> But leaving *China*, and the Isles of *Asia* <sup>40</sup> apart, we will bound our *Asiatick India* with *Persia* on the West; with *China* on the East, with *Tartary* on the North, and with the *Indian Sea* on the South; and this will be the same which the Ancients called *India*, and which they divided into *India* without, and *India* within the *Ganges*; and which, the people of the East at present call *Indostan*, that is, the Region of *India*.

<sup>th Divi-</sup> <sup>th Part.</sup> We may divide it both because of <sup>50</sup> its Form, and the Disposition of its Estates, into three several parts: Of which the first shall comprehend that which is upon the main Earth, the rest shall be in two *Peninsulas*; of which, the most Western, and between the Mouths of *Indus* and *Ganges*, shall be called *The Peninsula of India without the Ganges*; and the most O-

**O**F the 35, 39 or 40 *Kingdoms* under the *Empire* of the Great *Mogoll*, which are Westward and towards *Persia*, are, *Cabul*, *Attock*, *Candahar*, *Hajacan*, *Multan*, *Bucker*, *Tatta*, and *Soret*; all above, and from the first streams of *Indus* unto its falling into the Sea. On the North, and between the Mountains which divide this *Empire* from *Tartary*, *Cassimere* or *Querimur*, *Bankish*, *Kaxares*, and *Naugracut*, are between the Springs of *Indus*, and those of *Ganges*. On this side, or rather without the *Ganges*, are *Sibs*, *Samba*, *Bakar*, and *Sambal*; and within it, *Pitar*, *Gor*, *Kanduan*, *Patna*, *Udessa*, *Fesual*, and *Mevat*. The *Kingdoms* more Southerly, are *Guzuratta* or *Cambaya*, *Chitor*, *Malway*, *Candiu*, *Berar*, *Gualoor*, *Narvar*, and *Bengala*; in the midst are *Pengab* or *Lahor*, *Fengapar* or *Fenupar*, the *Hendowns*, *Fesseimere*, *Bando*, *Delli*, *Agra*, and *Ranas*.

A part of these *Realms* or *Provinces* have their names common with those of their chief *Cities*; and all are rich: Since being separated the one from the other, they composed fair and powerful estates,

<sup>50</sup> **C A B U L**, whose chief *City* bears the same name, is the most advanced towards *Persia*, with *Usbeck* or *Zagatha*. The Springs of *Nilab* and *Behat*, which fall into the *Indus*, possibly likewise of *Indus*, are in this *Kingdom* or *Province*. The *City* of *Cabul* is great, but the Houses low; its strength lying in the two *Fortresses*; and in the great Road of *Lahor* to *Samarcand* in *Usbeck*; and to *Tarchan*, the

chief City of *Caspar*, from whence they bring *Silk*, *Musk*, and *Rhubarbo*, which comes from *China* and *Cathay*.

**ATTOCK** is on the *Indus*, in the midway, and 75 Leagues from *Labor*, and from *Agra*; likewise 75 from *Sirinaker*, the chief City of *Cassimere*, and onely 50 from *Multan*. The City is fair, the Fortrefs good; and when the Limits of the Estates of the Kings of *India* lay between *Labor* and *Attock*, it was of greater consideration, then possibly it is at present.

**MULTAN** is rich by reason of the fruitfulness of its Soyl and Traffick which the Rivers of *Indus*, of *Babus*, of *Nilab*, and of *Rawey*, which fall into the *Indus*, do much enrich it. The City of *Multan* is great, antient, and not above two or three Leagues distant from the *Indus*, and 100 or 120 from *Labor* towards the East, from *Candahar* towards the West, from *Buchor* towards the South, and from *Cabul* towards the North. Its principal Commodities, are *Sugar*, *Galls*, *Opium*, *Brimstone*; several Manufactures of *Silk* and *Wool*, &c.

**CANDAHAR** is far engaged towards *Persia*, its chief City being so called, which is great, and of some Trade.

**BUCKOR** hath for its chief City *Buchor-Suckor*, which lies along the River *Indus* which runs through the Province which makes it very fertile: The City is of an indifferent extent, and of some Trade.

**TATTA**, whose chief City bears the same name, is divided by the River *Indus* into several Isles. In this City and Province, are held to be the most industrious Tradesmen of the whole Kingdom, by reason of which, here is found a good Trade drove by *Merchants* of several Countreys.

*Buchor*, there where the Rivers of *Rawey* and *Caul* fall into the *Indus*; and between *Multan* and *Tatta*; and *Tatta* where *Sinde* goes, between *Buchor* and the Sea: *Lourebander* and *Dial* serve for Ports to *Tatta*. *Lourebander*, there where the *Indus* begins to divide it self into several Branches; *Dial* on the great Sea. Moreover *Diu* and *Dial* are two different places, being distant 150 Leagues from each other. *Diu* in the Kingdom of *Guzarate* or *Cambaye*, belongs to the *Portugals*: *Dial* in that of *Tatta*, is the Great *Mogolls*, who keeps there a Governor.

The Province of **HAFACAN** lieth Westwards of the River *Indus*, but of very small account, having no places worthy of note.

**SORET** is seated between the Kingdoms of *Tatta* on the West, of *Guzarate* on the East, of *Jesselmere* on the North, and the Gulf of *India* on the South. It hath for its chief City *Fanagar*; the Province is but of little extent, but very fruitful, rich, and well peopled.

**CASSIMERE** or **QUERIMUR**, **BANKISH**, **KAKARES**, and **NAUGRACUT**, are between the River *Indus* and *Ganges*; all encompassed with the Mountains of *Bimber* towards the *Indus*, of *Naugracut* towards the *Ganges*, of *Causasus* towards *Tartaria*, of *Dalanguer* which crosses them, and separates the one from the other; and they, the Forests of these Mountains which yielded so much Wood for the Vessels which *Alexander* the Great caused to be builded, to defend the *Indus*. And these are at present those Forests which give so much diversionment of chase to the Great *Mogoll*. *Sizinaker* or *Sirinaker*, though unwall'd, is the chief City of *Cassimere*; *Beishar* of *Bankish*; *Dankalar* and *Purbols* of *Kakares*; and *Naugracut* of *Naugracut*. In this last, the Temple of the Idol *Marta* is Paved, Wancotted, and Seiled with Plates of *Gold*: And in *Callamarka*, there are Mountains very cold, and near to Rocks, from whence seem to flash out flames of fire.

The Province of **SIBA** hath for its chief City *Hardware*, which gives its rise to the River *Ganges*; and *Serenegar* on the River *Mansa*.

The Province of **FAMBA** gives name to its chief City.

The Province of **BAKAR** lieth on the West of the *Ganges*, and hath for its chief City *Bikaner*.

The Province of **SAMBALL** takes its name from its chief City so called. This Province is likewise called *Doab*, that is, two Waters: Its situation being between the *Ganges* and *Semena*. Which together with the three Provinces last mentioned, are without, or on this side the *Ganges*, reaching almost from its Spring-head unto the River *Semena* or *Gemeni*.

The Province of **GOR** takes its name from its chief City, and gives its rise to the River *Perselus*, which falls into the *Ganges*; the Province being very Mountainous.

The Province of **KANDUANA** hath for its chief City *Karakamaka*. This Province, and that of *Gor*, which is beyond the *Ganges*, doth end the Estates of the *Mogoll* towards the North, meeting with the *Tartars* of *Turquesjan*.

Mivall.

Ustella.

Pitoo.

Fata.

Cassimere, or Querimur, Bankish, Kakares, Naugracut.

Siba.

Janba.

Bakar.

40

Samball.

50

Gor.

Kandwana.

By Commerce, and Trade.

By Inhabitants.

By Inhabitants.



n the King-  
of *Guzerate*  
the North,  
South. It  
the Pro-  
ve very fruit-

*ERIMUR*,  
*RES*, and  
in the River  
passed with  
wards the *In-*  
*Ganges*, of  
*Dalangur*  
ates the one  
Forests of  
d to much  
*Alexander*  
to descend  
refent those  
vertifement  
*Sizinaker*  
is the chief  
of *Bankish*  
*ares*; and  
his last, the  
ved, *Wanf-*  
*es of Gold*  
*Pountrains*  
om whence

nath for its  
ives its rife  
*ere negar* bn

*B A* gives

er lieth on  
ath for its

*L L* takes  
illed. This  
*s*, that is,  
g between  
together  
mentioned,  
the *Ganges*,  
head unto

s its name  
its rife to  
s into the  
ry Moun-

*NA* hath  
This Pro-  
is beyond  
ites of the  
eting with  
The

*Morat.* The Province of *MEVAT* is very barren, whose chief City is *Narvah*, which ends it towards the people called *Mang*; and others which we esteem to be in the *Peninsula of India*, which is in the *Ganges*.

*Uleda.* The Province of *UDESSA*, is the utmost of the *Mogolls* Territories towards the East, which is also within the *Ganges*, its chief place is *Febanac*.

*Piso.* The Province of *PITAN* is on the West of *Famba*, being very Mountainous, whose chief City gives name to the Province. The River *Kanda* runs through the City and Province, and falls into the *Ganges*.

*Eura.* The Province of *PATNA* is fruitful, whose chief City is so called, seated on the River *Perfely*, but we have a very feeble, and incertain knowledge of all these parts, or Kingdoms, but those which are towards the South, and particularly *Guzerate* or *Cambaya*, and *Bengala*, are better known.

*Engrate, Cambay, and other rich provinces.*  
The Province of *GUZURATE*, by the *Portuguels* called the Kingdom of *CANBATA*, hath more then 30 great trading Cities, and is without doubt, the noblest, greatest, richest, and most powerful Province of all the *Mogolls* Country, yielding a yearly revenue of 15 or 20 Millions of *Gold*, and its King hath brought into the field 15000 *Horse*, and 30000 *Foot*, 1000 *Camels*, &c. The Country likewise is esteemed the most fertile of all *Indie*; producing all sorts of *Graines*, *Fruits*, and living creatures, quantity of *Druggs*, *Spices*, *Precious stones*, not having any *Mines of Gold* or *Silver*, but three plants which bring it an inestimable quantity, as well from the *Golfe of Persia*, and the *Red-sea*, as from all the *Coasts of India* and *China*. These Plants, are *Cotton*, *Anniseed*, and *Opium*: besides which there are varieties of other rich commodities, as *Oyle*, *Sugar*, *Indico*, *Ambegreete*, *Soape*, *Comfits*, *Medicinal Druggs*, *Paper*, *Wax*, *Honey*, *Butter*, *Salt-Peter*, *Manufactures of Cotton*, *Linens-Cloth*, *Carpets*, *Cabinets*, *Coffers*, *Cases*, with a thousand other curiosities, whiches *Inhabitants* know how to make, and sell, being the ablest Merchants of *India*.

*In Indiatens.*  
They are likewise of a good *spirit*, and addicted to *letters*, serve themselves of all sorts of *Arms*, yet know nothing of *Nobility*, but by abundance of *riches*, they are all *Pagans*, or *Mahometans*. The *Pagans* for the most part are *Pythagoreans*, holding the immortality of the *soul*, and that it

passes from one body to another: for which reason they so much honour *Beasts*, that they eat them not: but keep *Hospitals* to receive such as are sick and lame. The *Cowes* here are in such esteem with them, that a Merchant, *Banian*, (according to the report of *Texera*) spent 10 or 12 thousand Ducats at a Nuptial, marrying his *Cow* with his friends *Bull*. This Kingdom is in part *Peninsula*, between the *Gulfs* of the *Indies*, and *Cambaya*, and in part on the main, which stretches it self towards *Decan*. This Province though of a large extent, yet hath above 120 Leagues of *Sea Coast*, on which it hath several faire and rich Cities, and of a good trade. As also great quantities of *Inland Towns* and *Cities*, the chiefest whereof are, *viz.*

*Surat*, or *Swatta*, seated on the river *Surat*, which falls into the *Sea*, 12 miles below the City, its a City at this day no less great, and rich, then populous, and famous, and enjoyeth as great a trade as any City in *India*; it is much frequented by the *English* and *Dutch*, where they have their *Presidents*, and *Factories*, and where they have their *houses* for the negotiation of their affairs, which are spacious, and well built, this City is built four square, its *houses* flat after the *Persian* mode, and reasonable beautiful, having the benefit of pleasant gardens; it hath several *Mosques*, but none deserves commendation; it is defended by a strong *Castle*, and hath a strong wall on all sides, except on that which is seated on the River, and for its entrance hath three *Gates*, its *Port* is six miles from the City, where the *Ships* are unladen, and the *Commodities* brought to the City by Land. The *Inhabitants* of this City are either *Benjans*, *Bramans*, or *Mogolls*; but there are several other Nations which here reside, as *Persians*, *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Armenians*, *Jews*, &c. driving a trade, but none comparable to the *English* or *Dutch*.

The *Commodities*, *Coynes*, *Weights*, and *Measures* of this City being found to correspond with those of *Cambaya*, which is the Metropolitan City of the *Mogolls* Country, I shall omit them here, having comprehended them under the said City of *Cambaya*: to which I refer the Reader.

The City of *Bradra* is seated on a sandy Plain upon a small River, well fortified with walls and forts, the *Inhabitants* being for the most part *Dyers*, *Weavers*, and other workers of *Cottons*, for which it is

Traded by Sea.

The chief place of trade.

The Commodities, Coynes, Weights, and Measures, the same with those of Cambaya.

Bradra, and its trade.

*Pytharotens.*

the chiefest place in the whole Province. The Governour of this City hath also under its jurisdiction about 210 Towns and Villages.

**Baroche.** The City of *Baroche* is 12 Leagues from *Surat*, and 8 from the Sea, seated strongly on a Mountain with walls of free stone; this City is well peopled, most of which follow the *dying, weaving,* and making of *Cottons*, as they doe at *Brodra*; about this City are very fertile fields which bring forth *Wheate, Barly, Rice,* and *Cotton*, in great abundance; and out of the Mountains they find the *Agats*.

**Cambaya.** The City of *Cambaya*, situate on a River on a sandy place, is encompassed with a wall of free stone, being about 10 Leagues in compass; its *Streets* are strait, and broad, its *Houses* fair and large, having 12 *Gates* for entrance, 3 large *Market places*, and 4 stately *Cisterns*, large enough to keep water for the Inhabitants all the year long. They have also about this City 15 or 16 publick *Gardens*, for the recreation of the Inhabitants, being places of great pleasure and delight. The *Inhabitants* are for the most part *Pagans, Benjans,* or *Rasboutes*. This City is at the bottom of its *Gulfe*; and so famous, and of so great *Traffique*, that the Kingdome sometimes bears its name, being frequented by most Nations, where the *English* and *Dutch* keep a factory. The *Commodities* that are here found, are, *Corne, Rice,* and other *Graines, Butter, Oyle, Callicoes* of all sorts, *Carpets, Coverlets,* several manufactures of wood carved and imbellisht, also *Precious stones, Amber, Agats, Fusper,* several *Drugges, Sugar-Candy, Indico, Lake Myrobolans, Salt-peter, Mother of Pearle,* &c.

The *Coynes* here currant, as at *Surat*, and generally throughout the *Mogolls Country*, are the *Ruppies*, of which there are several sorts.

The *Machmudy* is an antient *Coyne*, and now very scarce, by the *English* it is esteemed worth 12 *d. Sterling*.

The *Casanna Ruppie*, which is the most common, is worth in *India*; of a *Mahmudy*, and is esteemed in *Circasias*. 3 *d. Sterling*.

The *Jacquerree Ruppie* is something bigger, 5 of which makes 6 *Casanna Ruppies*. And the *Soway Ruppie* bigger, 4 of which makes 5 of those of *Casanna*, besides which they have small *Coynes* currant, as the *Pice*, accounting 34 to the *Mahmudy*, which is 10 *d. Sterling*. The *Shabee* is

esteemed to be 10 *Pices*, or 10 *Cosbeegs*.

Their *Weights* are two, the one for *Silke*, and the other for all other *Commodities*; both of which have their foundation upon a copper called the *Pice*.

A *Pice* in *Silk* is esteemed 5; *Mintgalls*, A *Mintgall* is ( ). A *Pice* of *Silk* is held to be 2 *Tolls*. 1 *Toll* is 12 *Masses*. A *Seare*, of which there is a small and a great, the small *Seare* is ordinarily used in *Silk*, and esteemed 30 *Tolls*.

The *Common Weight* used for other *Commodities*, is the *Seare*, which much varies in several parts in the *Mogolls Country*; for example,

A *Seare* of *AGRA* called the *Seare Fanquery*, and is 36 *Pices*, being the common *Seare* of all *INDIA*: and is 26; *ounces*, also the *Seare* of *AGRA* called the *Seare Acoberg*, is 30 *Pices*, which is 22 *ounces haberdepois*.

A *Seare* of *PUTTANA* and *GANGES* is 37 *Pices*, which is 29; *ounces haberdepois*.

A *Seare* of *SERRAT* is 18 *Pices* weight of *Cepper money*, which is 13; *oun. haberdepois*.

They have also two *Maurds*; 40 *Seares* makes a small *Mand* of 32 *li. English*, and 40 *Seares* makes a great *Mand* of 54; *li. English*.

For *Gold, Silver, Civet, Musk, Besarstone,* and the like, they have another *Weight* called the *Toll*, which is 12 *Masses*, and is 7 *d. 16 grains Troy weight* of *England*.

They have two common *Measures*, and both of them called the *Covado*; one being shorter then the other. The shorter *Covado* used for *Silk*, and *Linnen*, is 27 *Inches English*.

The *Covado* used for *Wollen-cloth, &c.* is 35 *Inches*; and this is the measure in *Surat, Cambaya, &c.* but in *Dilky, Agra, Bramport, Labor, &c.* the common *Covado* is 32 *Inches*. At *Patana* it is 38 *Inches*.

Note that here, and throughout the *Mogolls Country*, they use no concave measure, either for *Graines*, or liquid *Commodities*, but sell them by *weights*, as they doe other *Commodities*.

The City of *Amadebad*, or *Amadebad*, is the Metropolis of *Guzerate*, being about 7 leagues in compass, a place of good strength; the *buildings* are very stately, and faire, especially the *Mosqueyes*, the *Governours* house and other publick places; the *Streets* are large and many.

This

In Comm  
duty and  
Trade.

The Surr,  
Korwar,  
etc. with  
Governor  
Lac-Bay  
of Guze-  
rate.

For ordi-  
nary Com-  
dities.

For Silk.

Their  
Weig. &c.

For Gold,  
Silver,  
Musk, &c.

Their Mea-  
sures.

Amade-  
bad the  
Metropolis  
of Guze-  
rate.

The City of  
Dilky, its  
Fort and  
General  
Magazine.

The

great  
dities  
Taffie  
Carpe  
Cand  
rabol  
with  
Peter

T  
which  
Leag  
comp  
pay n  
ty is  
fiver  
Great  
then  
and st  
stirrin  
stare,  
orhers  
in his  
gethe  
stun  
ceedin  
ed to  
ly: O  
in the  
dom,  
Twelv  
phant

In a  
quanti  
flored

The  
same  
from  
from  
the Po  
it, T  
and ha  
place  
course  
reason  
the K  
modit  
which  
Pitch,  
forts  
dishes  
carves  
and v  
excell  
wroug  
with  
and e  
Cover

The

begets. one for Their Commodi- undation For Silk. ditzalls, silk is held fesses. A d a greaty Silk, and her Com- ch varies tery; for the Seare : and is Ri a Cal- which is GAN- nances ha- 18 Pices 13 own. 40 Seares English, and 54 li. k, Besar- another 2 Masses, of Eng- ures, and one be- shorter n, is 27 loth, &c. nature in y, Agra, mon Co- it is 38 out the concave id Com- as they debarb, Amada- had the Me. repolis of Guza. a. te. being a- of good stately, es, the places; This

In Com- modities and Trade.

The State, Revenue, etc. of the Governour of the City of Agra.

The City of Din, its Trade and Revenue.

This City is very populous, and of a great Trade, abounding in divers Commodities, as all sorts of *Sattins, Velvets, and Taffeties*; all sorts of *Cottons, Callicoes, Carpets, Amber-greece, Musk, Sugar, Sugar-Candy, Lacque, Honey, Borax, Opium, Myrabolans, and Ginger*, both dry and wet; with several other sorts of *Preserves, Salt-Peter, Sal-armoniac, Indico, &c.*

This City is seated on a small River which falls into the *Indus*, about 45 Leagues from *Surat*, and is by the English compared to *London*. Here the *Merchants* pay no *Custom*; the *Governor* of this City is *Vice-Roy* of all *Guzurate*, being answerable for what he doth to none but the *Great Mogoll*; he liveth in greater state than any King in *Europe*; his *Court* large and stately; his attendance great, not stirring abroad without great pomp and state, as in his attendance of *Nobles* and others, in his *Guards* of *Horse* and *Foot*, in his *Elephants* with brave furniture, together with several playing on certain Instruments of *Musick*. His *Revenue* is exceeding great, which by some is accounted to be about *Ten Millions* of *Gold* yearly: Out of which he is at great expences, as in the maintaining the charge of the *Kingdom*, his own expences, and the keeping *Twelve thousand Horse* and *Fifty Elephants* for the *Mogoll's* service.

In and about this City, there is great quantities of pleasant *Gardens*, plentifully stored with variety of *Fruit-trees*.

The City of *Din* is in an *Island* of the same name, and lieth about 20 Leagues from the River *Indus*, and not far distant from the main Land: It is now subject to the *Portugals*, who have strongly fortified it. The City is well built, indifferent big, and hath a great and good *Haven*, being a place of great Trade, and having a concourse of *Merchants* of divers Nations, by reason of which, it brings a great profit to the King of *Portugal*, whose chief Commodities are *Cotton-Linnen* of sundry sorts, which we call *Callicoes, Cocos-Oyl, Butter, Pitch, Tar, Sugar-Candy, Iron*; several sorts of curious *Desks, Chests, Boxes, Stands, dishes*, which they make of *Wood* neatly carved, gilded, and variously coloured, and wrought with *Mother of Pearl*; also excellent fair *Leather*, which is artificially wrought with *Silks* of all colours, both with *Flowers* and *Figures*, which is there and elsewhere used instead of *Carpets* and *Coverlids*.

The City of *Bisantagan*, by reason of

the Fertility of the Country there adjacent, is of good repute, well peopled, having in it about 20000 Houses.

The City *Cheytepour* is seated on a small River, the Inhabitants being *Benjans*, who by Profession are *Weavers*, who make great quantities of *Cotton-Linnen*.

Here are also several other Cities of less note, as *Nassary, Gaudni, and Balsara*, which are under the jurisdiction of *Surat*, from which they are not far distant.

The City of *Agra* is seated on the River *Gemini*, which falls into the *Ganges*: Above the Kingdom of *Bangala*, it is of a very large extent, and strongly fortified with a strong Wall, and a great Ditch: Its Houses are fair, its Streets spacious; several being inhabited by those of one Trade, each Trade having its Street allotted it. It hath a fair Market-place, and hath for the accommodation of *Merchants* and *Foreigners*, about Eighty *Caravanseraes* or *Inns*, which are large Houses, wherein are good Lodgings, and Ware-houses for their Goods. In this City there is about Seventy great *Mosqueys* or *Churches*, besides divers little ones, in the greatest of which are several *Tombs* of their *Saints*. Here are also a great quantity of *Baths* or *Hot-houses*, which are much used amongst them.

The *Great Mogoll* doth often change his dwelling; so that there is scarce any City of note, but what he hath abode in, and where he hath not his *Palaces*, but there is none which hath his preference so much as this, it being the most delightful of all others, where he hath a sumptuous *Palace*, as several *Gardens* and *Houses* for his retirement without the City.

His *Palace* is seated upon the River *Gemini*, and if some Authors may be credited, is about two Leagues in compass; it is very strong, being encompassed with a strong Wall, and a great Ditch, or Moat, having at every Gate a *Draw-bridge* which are strongly guarded. For the description of this *Palace*, I must be beholding to *J. Albert de Mandelsto*, in his Book of *Travels*, where he saith, That being entred in at the Gate, there is a spacious Street with *Shops*, which leads to the *Mogoll's Palace*; to which there is several Gates which are called by several names. Under the Gate called *Cistery*, is the place of *Judicature*, to which is adjoynd a place where all *Ordinances* and other *Writts* are sealed, and where the *Records* are kept: At the entrance of this Gate is the spacious Street aforesaid. The Gate called *Achobarke Der-*

Agra, a pleasant City, and much frequented by the Mogoll.

The Palace of the Great Mogoll, is large, and magnificent.

*wage* is a place of great respect with them, and it is the place that the *Singing* and *Dancing Women* are lodged at, who are kept for the diversion of the Great *Mogoll*, and his Family; these *Women* dance before him naked. There is another *Gate* which they call *Desfame* which leads to a *River*, to which he comes every morning to worship the *Sun* at his rising: Near this place it is, that his *Nobles* and *Officers* about his Court, come every day to do their submission to him; to which place he comes every day, except *Fridays* (which is set apart for their Devotions, (as *Sunday* is with us) to see the fighting of *Lions*, *Elephants*, *Bulls*, and the like fierce *Beasts*, which is here used for his recreation. He speaketh of another *Gate* which leadeth into the *Guard-Hall*, through which, at the farther end of a *Paved Court*, under a *Portal*, there is a row of *Silver Pillars*, where there is a continual Guard also kept to hinder all people, except great *Lords*, to enter any farther, it leading to the *Mogolls* Lodgings, which are exceeding rich and magnificent; but above all is his *Throne*, which is made of massie *Gold*, and enriched with *Diamonds*, *Pearls*, and other *Precious Stones*: Above the place where this *Throne* standeth, is a *Gallery* where he sheweth himself every day, and receiveth the complaints of those who have received any injury; but they must be sure to prove it, else he runs a great hazard of his life, to trouble him vainly. But in his inner Lodgings there is no person to enter, save the *Eunuchs*, who wait upon the *Ladies* in his *Seraglia*, which is about One thousand. Among the several fair structures which are within this great inclosure, there is one great *Tower*, rich without (being covered with *Gold*) but not to compare to the wealth within; in which, are eight spacious *Vaults*, which are filled with *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Precious Stones* of an inestimable value.

Province of *Agra*.

This City of *Agra* gives name to a Province or Kingdom which is of a fertile soyl, and well peopled and frequented, and owes its beauty and enlargement to *Ehebar*, Emperor of the *Mogolls*: The *Palace* of the Great *Mogoll*, as I said before, is of two Leagues circuit; the other *Palaces* of *Princes* and *Lords*, which are also seated along the *River*, stretching towards the North, are all proudly built, but not of so large an extent; that of the Great *Mogoll* being the fairest, richest, and most magnificent of all the East. On the other side is the City of *Secandra*, about two Leagues

long, almost all inhabited by *Merchants*, *Fetipore*, that is, *Desire accomplished*, twelve Leagues from *Agra*, and towards the West is likewise one of the works of *Ehebar*, who having obtained Children to succeed his estates, caused this place to be built for pleasure, with a very stately *Palace* and *Musqueito* or *Temple*; but its ill Waters have caused it to be abandoned. *Biana* to the West of *Fetipore*, hath the best Wood of all *India*. *Scanderbad* on the West of *Bayana*, hath been the Residence of some *Kings*, and the *Castle* above it is very advantageously situated, where *Xa Selim* kept himself, till such time as *Ehebar* had strictly besieged him, and forced him to retire into the Mountains. The name of this place, and likewise this of *Secandra*, directly opposite to *Agra*, retain something of the name of *Alexander*.

The Province of *LAHOR* or *PENG-Ab* is large, very fertile in all sorts of *Fruits* and *Grains*, which makes it very considerable; whose chief City bears the name of the Province; and I believe this City to be the same with *Alexandria Bucephalus*, which *Alexander* the Great built, and named of his name, and that of his horse *Bucephalus*. The Ancients place it by the *River Hydaspes*, which may at present be *Rowey*. The City hath been so much enlarged by *Xa Selim*, that it contains 24 Leagues of circuit. It is very pleasantly seated, especially towards the *River*, on which it hath many delightful *Gardens*: Its *Fortress* is good, it is adorned with many stately *Palaces*, and great *Houses* where their *Nobles* and persons of quality do reside, among others, that of the *Kings* which is (though seated within the City, yet) separated from it with a high *Wall*, being magnificent, and adorned with great quantities of fair *Pictures*. Here is also by reason the Inhabitants are *Mahometans*, abundance of *Mosques* and *Bathing places* for their ordinary purifications, which is a ceremony much used amongst them. Here it is by many thought, that *Neah* seated himself after his coming out of the *Ark*; and likewise, that from hence *Ophir* and *Havilah*, Sons of *Foktan*, removed towards the *Ganges* and *Malacca*. This Province of *Labor* is esteemed one of the most pleasant Countreys in all *India*, being so well shaded with *Mulberry* and other *Trees*, whose verdure is no less delightful to the eye of the beholder, then refreshing to the wearied Traveller, under whose Boughs he may rest, and shade himself

Province of *Lahor*.

Province of *Labor*.

Province of *Lahor*.

Province of *Lahor*.

self from the shallure of the *Sun*. At *Fetipore*, not far from *Labor*, the *Sultan Gonfron*, the Son of *Selim*, but a *Rebel*, was by his Father defeated; from whence the place had its name, which signifies *Desire accomplished*; As the other *Fetipore* near *Agra* was built by *Ekebar*, after having obtained Children to succeed to his Estates. This Countrey bears the name of *Peng-ab*, that is, Five Waters, by reason it is watered with five different Rivers.

The Province of *DELLT* gives name to its capital City, which is in the Road from *Labor* to *Agra*; almost 50 Leagues from this, and 100 and odd from that, watered by the River *Gemini* or *Semena*. Before the *Mogolls* descended into all these quarters, the Kings of *India* made it their Residence, were here Crowned, and here had their Tombs: There are yet found some very fair *Obeliskes*, believed to have been erected in the time of *Alexander* the Great, and the *Greeks*.

The Kingdom of *BENGALA* occupies all the lower part of the *Ganges*, and may be divided into three parts. *Prurup* on this side the *Ganges*, *Patan* beyond it. The particular name of *Bengala* may be given to that which lies between the Branches of the *Ganges*, and along the Coast. This Kingdom hath been divided into Twelve Provinces, which have been so many Kingdoms, and which took their names from their principal Cities; but we have no certain knowledge either of their names, or situations. *Bengala* likewise is placed by some between the Branches of the *Ganges*, by others beyond it: Some esteem *Chatigan* its chief City, when as others will have it to be *Gouro* on the *Ganges*, higher in the Land, and more than 100 Leagues from the *Sea*. However it be, *Bengala* is of so great *Traffick*, and so rich, that the Kingdom and Gulf of *Ganges*, on which it is at present, is called The Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. The City of *Chatigan* is pleasantly seated on a fair and large River, whose imbosure is not far distant from that of the *Ganges*. This River hath so fierce a Current, that *Boats* and *Vessels*, without the help of *Sails* or *Oars*, are driven in 24 hours about 100 Miles; so that those who have no occasion to pass up and down this River, are forced to fasten their *Vessels* to certain *Trees* or other things which are for the same purpose fixed along the shore. By which means they are sheltered from the violence of the Tides, which else would spoil them,

At the entrance of this River, as *Mr. Lewis Roberts* in his Book of *Commerce* noteth, is a place which the *Inhabitants* and *Merchants* do yearly build in form of a *Village*, which they make of *Reeds*, *Straw*, *Branches of Trees*, or the like; which though a *Village*, yet is of a great largeness, to which place they bring all manner of *Merchandizes* to meet the *Ships*, which at a certain set time, with the *Monsoons*, come hither for *Trade*, who for want of *Water* are not able to go higher: And when the *Ships* are gone with the change of the *Monsoon*, and that years trading past, they carry up their *Goods* and *Merchandizes* to the City of *Chatigan* in *Boats* and *Barks*, and burn their said *Town*, leaving it until the next year; at which time and season aforesaid, they build it again. There are several other Cities in this Kingdom, as *Ragmehell*, *Dekaka* or *Daca*, *Banara*, *Tanda*, *Patana*; *Holobasse* or *Halebasse* on the joining of *Gemini* and *Ganges*, is one of the fairest and greatest Cities of *India*; and I esteem it in the place of the Ancient *Palibothra*, where the streams of the *Fomanes* and the *Ganges* do meet, with other Cities of less note.

This Kingdom of *Bengala* extends it self 300 Leagues from East to West, and sometimes 100 from North to South, having no less than a 150 Leagues of Coast, which is much frequented by *Merchants* of several Countreys, which hither come for their *Commodities*, which by reason of the tempereness of the *Air*, and the fertility of the *Countrey*, it abounds in several rich *Commodities*, as store of *Fruits*, *Sugars*, *Spices*, *Comfits*, *Cotton*, and *Cotton-wool* of divers sorts, which are here made in great quantities. *Long-Pepper*, *Oyl of Zerstine*, quantity of *Lacque*, *Silks*, as well those made by *Worms*, as those drawn from *Herbs*, *Canes*, plyable, though massie, which Nature seems in pleasure to diversifie. So great quantity of *Rice*, that it is able to furnish all its Neighbors; loading yearly divers *Ships* with it alone, which with these other *Commodities*, do commonly finde loading for about Forty Sail of good *Ships* every year. They have all sorts of *Animals*, *Vensison*, being with them as common as *Beef* and *Mutton* with us. The *Inhabitants* are courteous, but deceivers: Their *Kings* have been esteemed as rich and as powerful as any in *India*.

Between the Kingdoms of *Cambaya* and *Bengala*, are those of *CANDIS*, *CHITOR*, *MALWAT*, *BERAR*, *GUALIOR*,

by Merchants. plished, twelve ards the West is of Ekebar, ren to succeed to be built for ly Palace and its ill Waters ed. Biana to the best Wood n the West of dence of some e it is very ad- here Ka Selim as Ekebar had nd forced him s. The name this of Secan- Agra, retain Alexander.

Province of  
Delly.

Province of  
Labor.

Province of  
Bengala.

Province of  
Bengala.

The extent  
of Bengala.

The Commo-  
dities and  
Trade.

The Inhabi-  
tants.

Province of  
Candis.



**LEOR, NARYAR, RANAS,** and **BERAR.** *Breampore* is the chief City of *Candis*, seated on the River *Tapta*, which descends into the Gulf of *Cambaya*; below *Surat*. The City is great, but ill built, unhealthful, and a place which hath been unfortunate to many Children of the Great *Mogoll*. *Chan Morad*, and *Chan Daniel*, both Sons to *Ekebar*, died here through their debaucheries, and left the Inheritance to *Xa Selim*, who had a long time been in Rebellion against his Father. In the old City of *Mandow*, are the *Sepulchres* and *Remains* of the *Palace* of its Ancient *Kings*; the new City is better built, but less.

Province of  
Chitor.

The Province of **CHITOR**, with its City of the same name, is quite engaged in the Mountains which meet in the way of *Amedebat* and *Cambaya* to *Agra*. The City was of five Leagues circuit, before *Ekebar* took it from *Raja Cana*, and ruined it. It hath now little more than the *Remains* of One hundred and odd *Temples*, and of a great number of buildings which have been stately and magnificent. The *Castle* was in a place so advantagious and strong, that the *Kings* of *Delli*: could never take it; and *Sultan Alandin* was constrained to raise the siege, after having been 12 years before it.

Province of  
Malway.

The Province of **MALWAY** hath its Territory fruitful, and for its principal place *Rantipore*, others put *Ugen* or *Ongell*. Its chief Fortrefs is *Narvar*, whose City is near the Spring Head of a *River*, and at the Foot of Mountains of the same name, and which stretch themselves from the Kingdom of *Guzerate*, unto that of *Agra* and *Narvar*; and in these Mountains abide some Princes which obey not the *Mogoll*.

Province of  
Gualcor.

The Province of **CHALEOR** takes its name from its chief City, where there is one of the best *Citadels* or *Fortresses* of the Estate, wherein the *Mogoll* confines such as are prisoners of *State*, and those *Lords* of which he hath any jealousy; where he also keeps a great part of his *Treasure*. In 1550. the *Zeer Cham*, King of *Patane*, died at *Gualcor*; after having several times vanquished and driven *Haymason* out of all the *Indies*: But leaving a Successor but of Twelve years old, his Estates were divided. *Haymason* re-entred the *Indies* by the means of the *Persians*, and his Son *Ekebar*, in the end, became to powerful, that he ruined the *Kings* of *Patane*, and almost all the *Kings* of *India*, seizing their Estates.

The Province of **RANAS** hath for its chief place, *Gurchitto*, seated on a high Hill.

The Province of **NARYAR** hath for its chief City *Gehud*, seated on a *River* which falls into the *Ganges*, and touches on the Mountains of *Narvar*.

The Province of **BERAR** hath for its capital place *Shapor* or *Shapour*, which reaches Southward, and touches that of *Guzerate*, and the Mountain of *Rana*.

In the midst of all the *Mogoll* Estates, are the Provinces of **FENUPAR** or **FENGAPAR**, **HENDOWNES**, **FESSELMERE**, and **BANDO**. The Province of *Fenpar* takes its name from its chief City, *Hendowns* of *Hendowns*, which is towards the *Indies*. *Fesselmere*, whose chief City is so called, in whose *Castle Ammer* in 1548. *Zimlebege*, Wife of *Haymason*, flying into *Persia*, Lay-in of *Ekebar*, who restored the *Mogoll*, and made their Estates so great and powerful in the *Indies*. And lastly, the Province of **BANDO**, whose chief City bears the same name, is between the Cities of *Fesselmere*, *Delli*, and *Agra*; at 70 or 80 Leagues from the one and the other, besides its City of the same name. *Afmer* is famous for the *Sepulchre* of *Hogi Mondec*, a *Mahumetan*, whom the *Mogoll* esteem a *Saint*, and there where *Ekebar* made his devotions, to the end he might obtain a Son to succeed in his Estate; and afterwards caused to be set up at every Leagues end, a *Pillar* of *Stone*, and several *Lodgings* to be built on the way to receive *Passengers* and *Pilgrims*.

These are the Provinces or Kingdoms which the Great *Mogoll* possesses; whose *Empire* stretches from South to North 500 Leagues, and from West to East 6 or 700, is bounded either with *Mountains* or the *Sea*. Its Neighbors are the *Usbeck*, the *Cascar*, the *Thibet*, and the *Turquestan* parts of *Tariary* towards the North; the People of *Maug*, and others which have been of *Pegu* towards the East; the *Persians* towards the West; and the Kingdom of *Decan* and *Golconda* towards the South. The *Indian Ocean*, where are the Gulfs of *Indus* and *Cambaya* on one side, and that of *Bengalia* on the other side, wash the rest.

Of all his Neighbors, the *Tartars* and *Persians* are the most powerful: The *Tartars*, nevertheless, being divided into many Estates, where they border on him, are more likely to damage him by *Inroads*, then

Province of  
Ranas.

Province of  
Naryar.

Province of  
Berar.

Province of  
Berar.

Province of  
Berar.

The  
bound  
of the  
Great  
Mogoll's  
Empire.

The  
Tartars  
and  
Persians  
are  
the  
most  
powerful  
to  
the  
Mogoll.

AS hath for  
ated on a high

R hath for  
ed on a River  
, and touches  
r.

AR hath for  
aspour, which  
ouches that of  
n of Rana.

Mogolls Estates,  
NUPAR or  
DOWNES,  
BANDO.  
takes its name  
as of Hendowns,  
ss, Fesselmere,  
led, in whose  
nlebbe, Wife of  
rsia, Lay-in of  
e Mogolls, and  
and powerful in  
the Province of  
City bears the  
the Cities of  
Agra, at 70 or  
and the other,  
me name. Af-  
nlechr of Hogi  
nd the Mogolls  
e where Ekbar  
end he might  
his Estate, and  
et up at every  
Stone, and fe-  
on the way to  
ims.

s of Kingdoms  
ssesses, whose  
h to North 500  
o East 6 or 700,  
ountains or the  
he Usbeck, the  
the Turquesan  
the North, the  
ers which have  
East, the Per-  
and the King-  
ada towards the  
w, where are the  
aya on one side,  
other side, wath

The Tar-  
tars are  
Pertham  
seep are  
Bipour  
Nagoun  
to the  
Mogolls

the Tartars and  
the Tar-  
vided into many  
let on him, are  
am by Inroads,  
then

then by open War. The Persians regain-  
ed from him Candahar some years past :  
which he lost not again, till he had at the  
same time to deal with the Mogolls, and  
Turkes. The others have much adoe to  
defend themselves against him : as the  
Kings of Golconda, and Decan, this last  
having lost some part of his Estates, and  
the other giving him some present in the  
way of Tribute.

But the great Mogoll would make no-  
thing to seize both these Kingdoms, if he  
were not often perplexed with intestine  
war; and if there remained not in his Es-  
tates divers Princes, which they call  
Rahias or Kings; and many people of whom  
he cannot absolutely dispoise, neither the  
one nor the other obeying him, or paying  
any Tribute to him, but by constraint; and  
the greatest part paying it only when and  
how they please, and sometimes not at all.

Amongst these little Kings and People are  
the *Rahia Bosson*, who resides at *Temery*,  
50 Leagues from *Labor*. The *Rahia*  
*Tulluck Chan*, who resides at *Neграcut*  
80 Leagues from *Labor*. The *Rahia De-*  
*camperga* is a 150 Leagues from *Agra*, re-  
siding at *Calsery*; the *Rahia Mansa* is 200  
Leagues from *Agra*, residing at *Sorinigar*.  
The *Rahia Redorum* is beyond the *Ganges*, 30  
residing at *Camayo*. The *Muggi* likewise  
beyond the *Ganges* to the South of *Rahia*  
*Redorum* is very powerful as well as the two  
last; between the Armes of the *Ganges*,  
is a Prince of the antient family of the  
Kings of *Delli*, who likewise maintains  
himself. Above *Cassimere* the *Rahia*  
*Tibbon* acknowledges neither *Mogoll*, nor  
*Tartar*; descending often, and making  
incurfions both on the one and the other.  
The People called *Balloches* or *Balloques*,  
doe unpunished live like vagabonds in  
the Province of *Hiacam*: likewise the  
*Aguvanes*, and the *Patanes* in *Candahar*,  
likewise the *Quilles*, or *Colles*, and the *Re-*  
*sbutes* in the Mountains between *Cambaya*  
and *Decan*, and sometimes the *Colles* of  
*Decan*, and the *Rebustes* of *Cambaya*, and the  
*Patanes* of *Candahar* have raised tribute.

These Kings and People are almost all  
*Pagans*, descending from divers Kings and  
People which possessed divers parts of the  
*Indies* before the *Mogolls*. There is one  
*Rahia* of the *Colles* above *Amadebat*, 2-  
nother the *Rahia Partaspha* near *Breampure*,  
who hath sometime taken and pillaged  
*Cambaya*. The *Rahia Rana* resides at *Gor-*  
*chitto*: and after having well detended  
himself against the antient Kings of *In-*

dia, yields now some Tribute to the *Mo-*  
*goll*.

Yet is the Great *Mogoll* one of the  
greatest, and most powerful Princes of *Afia*:  
he can bring into the field 200000 horse,  
500000 foot, and 2 or 3000 Elephants :  
he gives pensions to the greatest part of  
the Princes, Lords, Nobles, and Gentry of  
the Country on condition that they keep  
for his service, some 1, some 2, 3, 4, 5,  
some 10, some 100, some 1000 and up-  
wards of horses, which are to be alwaies in  
readiness: his armies nevertheless consist  
for the most part of 100000 horse, and  
200000 foot; and this besides his ordina-  
ry Garrisons. His Subjects are strong  
and robustous; use all sorts of Armes,  
goe freely to all occasions, wanting nothing  
but order and policy. They have no con-  
siderable forces at Sea, since the *Portugalls*  
hold from them in the Kingdome of *Cam-*  
*baya*, the City and Fortreils of *Diu*, *Da-*  
*man*, *Rafaim* of the Isle of *Salteste* neer  
*Bensaim*, the Fort of *Manora*, and the  
Rock of *Afferim*.

The whole Country is stored with fe-  
veral forts of tame and wild creatures as  
*Buffes*, *Oxen*, *Cowes*, *Sheep*, *Deere*, *Wild Asses*,  
*Bores*, *Hares*, &c. variety of Fowl and Fish;  
here are also found *Crocodiles*, some of  
which are 30 foot long; *Cormorants*, and  
*Batts* as big as *Crows*.

The great *Mogolls* ordinary guard con-  
sists of about 12000 men, besides 600 of  
his life guard; he never sturs abroad to  
hunt, take the aire or the like, without  
the attendance of about 10000 men of all  
degrees, besides to make his state the greater,  
there are 100 Elephants richly trapt,  
and covered with *Scarlet*, *Velvet*, or the  
like; on these Elephants there are seated  
two men, the one to guide him, and the  
other which supports a large banner of *Silk*,  
richly embroydered with *Gold* and *Silver*;  
but on some of the Elephants which goe  
formost, instead of carrying Banners, they  
play upon *Simbretts* and other such like  
Instruments; after these 100 Elephants comes  
the *Mogoll*, either mounted on an excellent  
*Persian horse*, or else in a *Coach*, or *Sedan*,  
attended by his Nobles and other Courtiers,  
after whom come about 500 Elephants,  
*Camels*, and *Wagons* which are to carry  
the Baggage; for commonly he encamps  
in the field, in which he takes great de-  
light by reason of the cooleness, as also by  
reason few Cities are able to give entertain-  
ment to so great a retinue; and besides his  
going thus to hunt or take the aire, he

often changes the place of his abode according to the seasons of the year.

The *Mogoll* celebrates with great pomp and state the first day of the year.

*He observes several Festival days.*

They have several *Festival days* which they keep in great triumph, wherein they have several divertisements of sports and recreations, and especially the birth day of the *Mogoll*.

The language which the great *Mogoll*, and most people of quality speak, is the *Persian* tongue.

The Inhabitants are very expert at the Bow.

The diseases which are common amongst them, are *Feavers*, and the *Bloody Flux*.

Their *Horses* are not good, but their *Oxen* are excellent, being here used instead of *Horses*, which are very mettlesome.

*Religions in the Mogoll Country.*

As in this great extent of ground (which we call the *Mogolls* Country) there are several sorts of *People*, so likewise are there divers sorts of *Religions*. Some of which I shall speak a word or two of.

*The Benjans.*

The *Benjans* are *Pagans*, they use neither *Circumcision* nor *Baptisme*, they believe there is a God who created them, and made the universe, but they worship the *Devil*, believing that God created him to governe the world, and doe mischief to mankind, to which end in all their *Mosques* they have the figure of him in Statues of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Ebony*, *Ivory*, *Marble Stone*, and *Wood*; this figure in shape is ugly and horrid to look on; it is placed on a Table of stone, which serves for an *Altar*, and receives the offerings which are made to the *Pagods*, on the right side of this Table is placed a trough, in which those who intend to do their devotions wash and purifie themselves; & on the other side there is a Chest in which is put their Offerings, nigh to which in the wall is a vessel out of which the *Braman* or *Priest* takes out a kind of yellow Stuff, with which he makes the foreheads of them; this *Braman* sits at the foot of the *Altar*, from whence he riseth often to say Prayers. In their *Mosques* they alwaies burn lamps, and about the walls of them are abundance of Figures, as *Beasts*, *Devils*, &c. which they adore.

They make use as a part of their Religion corporal purification, bathing themselves every day.

The *Benjans* are very ingenious, subtle, and civil, there being no trade but what

they apply themselves unto, and are very expert in the adulteration of all *Commodities*.

They are civil in their *Apparel*, but their *Children* goe naked until the age of 5 or 6 years, and at 7 8 9, or 10 years of age they marry them, seldom staying until the age of 12, especially the female sex, as thinking it a great shame to live so long unmarried, and in their marriages they observe several ceremonies. The *Men* are not onely permitted to marry twice, or thrice in case of mortality, but also if their *Wife* proves barren, but the first hath a preheminece as being mother of the family; their *Sons* are heirs of their *Fathers* estates, but withall they must maintain the *Mother*, and take to *Wife* their *Sisters*.

The *Bramans* or *Priests* are of great authority, and highly respected amongst them, insomuch that the *Benjans* will hardly engage themselves in any matter of concernment, without the advice and approbation of them. These *Priests* besides their expounding the mysteries of their Religion according to their fancies (which soon take impresson in the mindes of these superstitious people) have an oversight of *Schools* where *Children* have their education. When the men are to goe a journey they desire the *Braman* to have the care of their *Wives*, until they return, and to supply their places, another custom they have, that when any are married, the *Bride* is brought to the *Braman*, and is earnestly requested to enjoy the first fruits of her, without which they think the marriage is not blest, and for so doing he hath gifts presented him according to the qualities of the persons.

The *Benjans* believe the transmigration and immortality of the *Soul*, thinking that the *Soul* of a good man is departed into the body of a *Chicken* or a *Pigeon*, that of a wicked or cruell man into a *Lion*, *Tigre* or *Crocodile*, that of a glutton into a *Swine*, that of a crafty man into a *Fox*, &c. for which reason they neither eat nor kill any thing that hath life; nay they are so far from destroying them, that on the contrary they will purchase them of the *Mahometans*, and set them at liberty, and for those that be lame, or sick, they have hospitals for them as in *Persia*.

*F. Albert de Mandello* in his book of Travells saith that the *Benjans* are divided among themselves, into 83 principal sects; besides an infinite number of others, those

of

*The same with other briefs.*

*The Count.*

*The Miv.*

of mo  
other  
*Bisnon*  
The  
of kill  
life;  
strang  
other  
hath  
him;  
the di  
point  
bodies  
call *B*  
after  
their  
four b  
*Mais*,  
being  
accou  
deceaf  
port u  
Body,  
nance  
hath d  
on the  
felves  
other  
the de  
dren o  
The  
neither  
life, n  
gard h  
killing  
conter  
which  
hangs  
other  
deeds  
transf  
their g  
in the  
for th  
take h  
devot  
times  
The  
abstain  
that h  
*queys*  
ons m  
cheift  
to th  
as alfo  
*weans*  
like, d  
during  
thing

and are very  
of all Commu-

Apparel, but  
ill the age of  
or to years of  
some staying  
ally the female  
ame to live so  
marriages they  
s. The Men  
ary twice, or  
ut also if their  
e first hath a  
ther of the fa-  
their Fathers  
must maintain  
ife their Sift-

are of great  
cted amongst  
Benjans will  
any matter of  
advice and ap-  
Priests besides  
es of their Re-  
ancies (which  
e mindes of  
have an over-  
Children have  
men are to goe  
aman to have  
d they return,  
mother custom  
are married,  
Braman, and  
enjoy the first  
h they think  
d for do doing  
according to

transmigration  
thinking that  
depered into  
een, that of a  
lion, Tigre or  
into a Swine,  
Fox, &c. for  
t nor kill any  
ey are so farr  
n the contrary  
Mahometans,  
for those that  
hospitals for

his book of  
ns are divided  
principal sects,  
others, those  
of

The Sama-  
rath and  
their behof,  
are,

The Coun-  
rith-

The Bil-  
new.

of most note as comprehending all the  
others, are those of *Samarath*, *Ceurawath*,  
*Bisnow*, and *Goughy*.

The Sect of *Samarath*, admits not  
of killing, nor eating any thing that hath  
life; in their religion they hold severall  
strange opinions or rather fancies; among  
other things, they say there is a *God* who  
hath three substitutes who govern under  
him; the first they call *Brama*, who hath  
the disposal of *Seales*, which by the ap-  
pointment of their *God*, he sends into the  
bodies of men or beasts. The second they  
call *Buffuina* which teaches them to live  
after *Gods Commandements*, which being  
their Religion, they have ordered it into  
four books; and the third which they call  
*Mais*, exercises his power over the dead,  
being as it were *Secretary to God*, taking an  
account of the good and bad actions of the  
deceased, and accordingly making his re-  
port unto him, doth send the Soul into a  
Body, where the doth more or less pen-  
nance answerable to the good or evil she  
hath done; he saith that the Women up-  
on the death of their Husbands burn them-  
selves more cheerfully then those of any  
other Sect; also they burn the bodies of  
the deceased, except those of young chil-  
dren of about two years old.

Those of *Ceurawath* (he saith) also  
neither kill, nor eat any thing that hath  
life, no not so much as vermine, and re-  
gard how they goe, or sit down for fear of  
killing flies, they have no costly apparel,  
contenting themselves only with a cloth  
which they tie about their middle, and  
hangs down to their knees, they esteem no  
other good works then *Fasting* and *Almes-  
deeds*; the believe the immortality and  
transmigration of the *Soul*; they performe  
their greatest devotions in their *Mosqueys*  
in the moneth of *August*, at which time  
for the space of 2, 3 and 4 weeks, they  
take hardly any sustenance, observing their  
devotions more stricter then at other  
times.

The Sect of *Bisnow* (he saith) also doth  
abstain from eating or hurting any thing  
that hath life, they perform in their *Mos-  
queys* in the moneth of *August* their devoti-  
ons more strict then at other times, which  
chiefly consisteth in singing of Hymes  
to the honour of their *God* in dancing,  
as also in several sorts of *Musical Instru-  
ments* as pipes, drums, Copper basins or the  
like, on which they play before their *Idols*  
during which they adorne with many costly  
things as chaines of *Gold*, and *Pearle*, and

all sorts of *precious stones*, and burning  
abundance of wax lights, during which  
time they use great abstinence.

They wash themselves every morning,  
holding it a part of their Religion, at which  
times the *Braman* who sits on the river side,  
prays to their *God* that they may be as clean  
from sin, as their bodies are from filth,  
and gives them his benediction; they suffer  
not the *Women* to burn themselves with  
their Husbands, but command them to  
perpetual *Widowhood*; they are much  
given to *Merchandise*, in which they are  
very expert, so that they are much em-  
ployed by *Christians* and *Mahometans* as  
their *Factors*, *Agents*, and *Interpre-  
ters*.

Those of the Sect of *Goughy* are of a very  
solitary life, inhabiting in obscure villages  
and desolate places and deserts, like *Her-  
mits*, not adding themselves to *Trade* or  
*Commerce*, but shun the society of *Men*,  
not changing a word with any but their  
own Sect, though asked a question, for  
fear of defiling themselves; they have no  
other cloathing, but a piece of linnen-cloth  
to cover their nakedness.

They hold not the transmigration of  
the soule as the other Sects or Casts doe,  
but say that at its departure out of the  
body it is transferred to their *God*, who  
they name *Bruin*, to live with him to e-  
ternity, this *God Bruin* as they believe,  
created all things, and by his infinite pow-  
er continues them in being, having pow-  
er to reduce them to nothing. They hold  
that their *God Bruin* is a light, and there-  
fore cannot be represented by any forme,  
or figure of any thing; they have neither  
*Mosqueys* nor any place of publick devo-  
tion.

Besides the *Benjans* (he saith) there is  
another sort of *Pagans* whom they call the  
*Parisi*, who for the most part reside by  
the Sea-coast, adding themselves to  
*Trades* and *Commerce*; they believe that  
there is one *God*, preserver of the universe,  
who acts alone and immediately in all  
things; but he hath as they fancy about  
several servants, to whom he giveth an  
absolute power over the things which he  
hath entrusted them with, but withall they  
are obliged to give an account unto him;  
and for these servants they have a great ve-  
neration, who have each their particular  
charge, as one having the Government of  
the Earth, another of *Fruits*, another of  
*Beasts*, another of *Military* affairs. Others  
who have influences on men, some giving  
under-

The Sect  
by

The Parisi  
and their  
Religion

understanding, others wealth, &c. Another who takes the possession of the *Souls* departed; which conducts them to the *Judges* where they are examined, and according to their good or evil deeds, receive their *Sentence*, and are carried by the good or bad *Angels*, who attend the *Judges*, to *Paradise* or *Hell*, where they think they shall abide until the end of the *World*, which will be 1000 years; after which time, they shall enter into other *Bodies*, and lead a better life than they did before.

Another hath the Government of *Waters*, another of *Winds*, another for *Fire*, which they have *several* &c.

They have no *Worship* or *publick places* for their *Devotion*; they have a very great esteem of their *Teachers* and *Doctors*, allowing them a plentiful estate.

Their *Widows* are suffered to marry a second time.

*Adultery* and *Fornication* they severely punish.

They are forbidden the eating of any thing that hath life.

*Drunkennes* they likewise strictly punish.

These *People* are much given to *Avarice*, and *circumventing* those they deal withal.

The Mahometans  
who here inhabit  
hold the same Tenents in their Religion,  
and observing in their Marriages, Interments  
of their dead, &c. much of the like  
Ceremonies with those of the Persians a-  
fore treated of, onely some few excepted.  
I shall forbear to mention them, but refer  
to them in my description of Persia.

These *Mahometans* who here inhabit, holding the same *Tenents* in their *Religion*, and observing in their *Marriages*, *Interments* of their *dead*, &c. much of the like *Ceremonies* with those of the *Persians* afore treated of, onely some few excepted. I shall forbear to mention them, but refer to them in my description of *Persia*.

These *Mahometans* or *Mogolies*, are of a good stature, have their *Hair* black and flagg; but are of a clearer *Complexion* than the other sorts of people aforementioned.

They habit themselves something like the Persians; their Garments about their waists, are close to their bodies, but downwards wide; they use girdles; and their shoes, and the covering of their head, is much the same with those of the Turks. And they are likewise distinguished by their cloaths, which according to the degree and quality, and the person, doth exceed in richness.

They *habit* themselves something like the *Persians*; their *Garments* about their *waists*, are close to their *bodies*, but downwards wide; they use *girdles*; and their *shoes*, and the covering of their *head*, is much the same with those of the *Turks*. And they are likewise distinguished by their *cloaths*, which according to the degree and quality, and the *person*, doth exceed in richness.

They are very *civil*, *ingenious*, and *revered*, yet are expensive in their *Apparel*, *Feasting*, and great lovers of *Women*. And so much for the *Mogol's* Country.

## The Peninsula of INDIA without the GANGES.

THE Peninsula without the *GANGES*, is between the Mouths of *Indus* and *Ganges*, and advances from the Estate of the Great *Mogoll*, unto the eighth degree of *Latitude*, on this side the *Aequator*. The *Ocean* or *Indian-Sea* washes it on three sides; to wit, the Gulf of *Bengals*, once *Gangeticus Sinus*, on the East; the Gulf of *Cambay* anciently *Barigazenus Sinus*, and the *Sea* which regards *Arabia* on the West; towards the South, that which regards *Ceylan* on one side, and the *Maldives* on the other.

We will divide this *Peninsula* into four principal parts, which shall be *Decan*, *Golconda*, *Narsingue* or *Visnagar*, and *Malabar*. The three first, and the greatest, have each their *King*; or if there be more, they depend and hold of one alone: The fourth and last part, hath likewise formerly been a *Kingdom* alone; at present is many; but which hold one of another.

## DECAN.

THE Kingdom of *DECAN* hath on the North, the Kingdom of *Cambaya*; on the East, that of *Golconda*; on the South, that of *Bisnagar*, where is *Canara*; and on the West, by the *Indian Ocean*, the Gulf of *Cambaya*. And this Kingdom is divided into three others, which they call *Decan*, *Cunkan*, and *Balaguante*; the two first on the Coast, *Decan* more towards the North, and stretching to the River *Bates*, which separates it from *Cambaya*; *Cunkan* more towards the South, and reaching towards the River *Aliga*, which separates it from *Camara*: *Balaguante* is Eastward of the other two up in the Land, and composed of *Valleys* which are below, and between the Mountains of *Gate*; beyond which, are the Kingdoms of *Golconda*, and *Narsingue*, or *Bisnagar*.

In the particular *Decan*, are the Cities of *Hamedanager* olim *Omenogora*, *Chauli* olim *Symilla*, *Emporium* and *Promontorium*. In *Cunkan* are the Cities of *Visapor*, of old *Musopalle*, *Solapor*, of old *Carura*, *Goa*, of old *Chefonsesus* of the people, *Pirata* of *Ptolemy*;



INDIA  
GANGES.

the GANGES, is of Indus and in the Estate of eighth degree Equator. The is it on three Bengala, once last; the Gulf of Bengal, once Arabia on the, that which and the Maldives

insula into four the Decan, Golconda, and Malabar, the greatest, have be more, they me: The fourth formerly been at is many; but

N.

CAN hath on Kingdom of Cambray, on the Coast, Decan, and stretching separates it from towards the River A- in Camara: B- other two up in of Valleys which the Mountains of the Kingdoms, or Bijnagar, are the Cities, Chaul, and Promontorium, of old Carura, Goa, of people, Pirata of Ptolomy;

Ptolomy; likewise in Balaguete, Lisbon oughte to answer to Hippocura, Bedor to Boctana, Doltabad to Tabaso, Hamedanagar, Visapor, and Bedor, are the principal Cities, and those where the Dealcian or Idalcian makes his Residence; but none more considerable then Goa, though they are fair, well built, large, and populous.

Goa is a City as fair, rich, and of as great Traffick as any place in the East, being situated in an Island of the same name, which the Rivers of Mandova and Guari make at their falling into the Sea. Alfonso Albuquerque took it in the year 1510. and since the Portugals have established themselves so powerfully, that their Vice-Roy, a Bishop, and their Council for the East Indies have here their Residence.

The Commodities found in this City (being the Staple of the Commodities of this part of the Indies, as also of Persia, Arabia, China, Armenia, &c.) are Precious Stones, Gold, Silver, Pearls, Silk raw and wrought, Cotton of which they make several Manufactures; also Spices, Druggs, Fruits, Corn, Iron, Steel, with divers others which the best Countreys afford, but the Natural commodities of Goa are not considerable.

Their Coyns are of two sorts, of which, one is good, and the other bad. The common Money here currant, is called the Pardaus Xeraphin, coyned here, and worth 300 Res of Portugal, which is about three Testons, which of English money is about four shillings six pence.

One Pardaus is five Tangas in bad money, and four in good money.

Four Tangas is worth five bad Ventins, and four good Ventins, and is worth also 75 Basarucos.

A Ventin is worth 15 bad Basarucos and 18 good ones; and this is the lowest Coyn here used.

Three Basarucos is worth two Res of Portugal money.

The Persia Larins is a Coyn of very fine Silver, and is worth 110 Basarucos.

The Venetianer of Gold, is worth two Pardaus Xeraphin.

The Pagode of Gold is worth 10 Tangas, which is Eight shillings sterling.

The St. Thomas of Gold is worth eight Tangas.

The Ryal of 8 called Pardaus de Reales, is worth commonly about 440 Res of Portugal, but these and the Larins of Persia, rise and fall in price, as Commodities do

according to the scarcity or plenty of them,

And for the avoiding of abuses, all money is received and paid by the hands of certain men appointed for the same purpose, by them called Sheraffs, and by the Portugals Cernidors. And these men for some small consideration, do undertake to make good what loss or damage shall happen, either through bad money, or shortness in tale; and this custom is used in many places of Turkey.

The Weights common in Goa, and along the Coasts of India, which are subject to the Crown of Portugal, are divers; those most known, and used for European Goods, are the Quintal which is ( ) English, and the Rove which is ( ) English.

They have another Weight proper for Spices, which they call the Behar, which is 3 Quintals of Portugal Weight, they have another Weight onely for Sugar, Honey, and Butter, which is called a Maund, which is 12 lb.

Their Measures of length are the same with those of Lisbon in Portugal.

Their Measures for Grains, Rice, and such like Goods, is called a Medina, being about a span high, and half a finger broad; 24 whereof is a Maund, 20 Maunds is one Candil, which is about 14 Bushels English; and by this Measure they account their Tonnage for Shipping.

The chief Trade of this City is managed by the Portugals, who are Masters of it, the English having nothing to do here.

Besides their great Traffick they drive with several Nations, their Riches and Policy which they observe, Vincent Blanc makes account that its Hospital is the fairest, the best accommodated and served, and the richest of any, making it exceed that of the Holy Spirit at Rome, and the Infermeria at Malia, which are the best of all Christendom. Their Streets large, their Houses fair, especially their Palaces and Publick Buildings which are very magnificent: Their Churches are stately and richly adorned; their Windows are beautified with Mather of Pearl, and Shells of Tortoises of divers colours, which are ingeniously cut in neat Works. This City is in compass above fifteen miles, and though it is without Gates or Walls, yet by reason of its Castle, Forts, and the strength it receiveth from the Island, is a piece of great strength and force: It hath a great and good

Coast of  
Goa is a  
City as  
fair, rich,  
and of as  
great  
Traffick  
as any  
place in  
the East,  
being  
situated  
in an  
Island  
of the  
same  
name,

The  
Commodities  
found in  
this City  
(being  
the  
Staple  
of the  
Commodities  
of this  
part of  
the  
Indies,  
as also  
of  
Persia,  
Arabia,  
China,  
Armenia,  
&c.) are  
Precious  
Stones,  
Gold,  
Silver,  
Pearls,  
Silk raw  
and  
wrought,  
Cotton  
of which  
they make  
several  
Manufactures;  
also  
Spices,  
Druggs,  
Fruits,  
Corn,  
Iron,  
Steel,  
with  
divers  
others  
which  
the best  
Countreys  
afford,  
but the  
Natural  
commodities  
of Goa  
are not  
considerable.

Their  
Coyns  
are of  
two  
sorts,  
of which,  
one is  
good,  
and the  
other  
bad.

One  
Pardaus  
is five  
Tangas  
in bad  
money,  
and four  
in good  
money.

Four  
Tangas  
is worth  
five bad  
Ventins,  
and four  
good  
Ventins,  
and is  
worth  
also  
75  
Basarucos.

The  
Pagode  
of Gold  
is worth  
10  
Tangas,  
which is  
Eight  
shillings  
sterling.

Certain  
men are  
appointed  
for the  
same  
purpose,  
by them  
called  
Sheraffs,  
and by  
the  
Portugals  
Cernidors.

The  
Weights  
common  
in Goa,  
and along  
the  
Coasts  
of India,  
which  
are  
subject  
to the  
Crown  
of  
Portugal,  
are  
divers;

Their  
Measures  
of length  
are the  
same  
with  
those  
of  
Lisbon  
in  
Portugal.

Vincent  
Blanc  
makes  
account  
that its  
Hospital  
is the  
fairest,  
the best  
accommodated  
and  
served,

It is  
without  
Gates  
or  
Walls,  
yet by  
reason  
of its  
Castle,  
Forts,  
and the  
strength  
it  
receiveth  
from  
the  
Island,  
is a  
piece  
of  
great  
strength  
and  
force:

good Haven, which they make their Harbor for their Indian Fleet, by which they command the Seas thereabouts.

The Portugals live in all manner of delight and pleasure; and with a pride and presumption so great, that the least, and most beggerly among them, take to themselves the titles of Gentlemen of the House and Chamber of the King, Knights, Esquires, &c.

being very highly conceited of themselves, and exceeding proud and stately, but withal very civil and courteous; no person of quality walks the streets afoot, but are carried by their Slaves in a Palanquin, or ride on Horses, and the Women seldom go abroad publicly.

Both Sexes are extremely given to Venery, by reason of which, the Pox is very frequent among them, of which abundance dies: Their Women have an excessive love to white Men, and will use their uttermost endeavors to enjoy them. The Men are so jealous of their Wives, that they will scarce suffer their nearest Relations to see them, by reason they are so much desirous of the enjoyment of Men, and they so much of them.

In their apparel, as also in the furniture of their Houses, they are very costly. The Women are here delivered without pain, and not having the use of a Midwife, or any one but her self, and no sooner is she delivered, but she is about her occasions, not observing the custom among us, in keeping their Chamber a Month together. Most of them live to the age of a hundred years, and that in perfect health; but these are not the Portugals, but are the Natives which are Pagans and Benjans.

The Portuguez in their Marriages and Christenings, are very costly and ceremonious.

To this City do resort Merchants from Arabia, Persia, Armenia, Cambaya, Bengala, Siam, Pegu, China, Fava, Malacca, and from several other Countreys, it being the Staple of all India Commodities. In the heart of the City, is a Street where every morning, from seven to nine, not onely the Merchants meet for the vending and buying of Commodities, which are here set forth for sale, like our Fairs; but also the Gentry of the City meet as well to hear news, as to satisfie their fancies in the sight of the Commodities: And besides this Street, every Trade hath its particular Street, one Trade not intermixing with another. Here they, on this Coast, much use the Fishing

trade for Pearls, by which they make a great profit; and amongst their Commodities, they sell and truck for Slaves, both of the one and the other Sex; neither more nor less then as they do here for Horses or Sheep, and dispose of them as they think fit.

Besides Goa, the Land of the Bardes, the Isles of Salfette, of Coran, of Drwar, and some other Lands about Goa, are the Portugals: As likewise, the City of Chaul on the Coast, where they have a great Trade of Silk; and from these places they have their Provision brought them, and that at very easie rates; for the Island of it self is so barren, that it will scarce produce any thing.

Up the Land Doltabad of Balagate is of great Trade, whither use all the Merchants of Cambaya, Bengala, and Golconda. At Lispor is a Fair for the sale of Diamonds, Amethystes, Hamathies, and all other Stones which are found in divers places of Balagate. In the Mines of the Old Rock, are found Diamonds cut naturally; they call them Nayffes, and those people do very much esteem them, especially if the cut be fair and proportionable.

Decan taken altogether, hath one King alone, which they call Adolcar or Dialcan. The Great Mogoll hath taken from him some places in the particular Decan, and the Portugals, Goa, Chaul, and some other places on the Coast. This Prince is yet powerful, at least in regard of the Indians: He hath taken Dabul from the Portugals, and ruined it. He once besieged Chaul, and divers times Goa, leading in his Armies near Two hundred thousand men. In fine, he made Peace with the Portugals; the Vice-Roy of the East-Indies for the Crown of Portugal, having always an Ambassador at the Adoleans Court, and the Adolean having one at Goa with the Vice-Roy. And though this Prince is so powerful in men, and so well provided with Ammunition, and his Artillery greater and better then any Prince about him, yet is he become Tributary to the Great Mogoll.

All the Countrey is good, fruitful, watered with several Rivers, hath store of Precious Stones, of Cotton and Silk, of which they make divers Manufactures; of Pepper, of Fruits, and other Commodities.

The Inhabitants or Natives of the Country are Pagans, and for the most part Benjans. They eat any kinde of Flesh, except

except Wild- a great as to Marria other in the mean, and wi but wi so hig chiefe Mats they Drink leaves ther, and C aforesm which Jews their King the E

The King of the Decan is called Adolcar.

The King of the Decan is called Adolcar.

The King of the Decan is called Adolcar.

The King of the Decan is called Adolcar.

The King of the Decan is called Adolcar.

they make a  
their *Commodi-  
ties*, both of  
neither more  
for *Horses* or  
as they think

the *Bardes*,  
of *Divar*,  
*Goa*, are the  
City of *Chaul*  
have a great  
places they  
them, and  
the *Island* of  
all scarce pro-

f *Balagete* is  
ie all the *Mer-  
and Golconda*,  
of *Diamonds*,  
and all other  
ivers places of  
the *Old Rock*,  
urally; they  
eople do very  
ally if the *cue*

hath one *King*  
ar: or *Dialcan*,  
en from him  
ar *Decan*, and  
and some other  
Prince is yet  
of the *Indi-  
from the Por-  
nce besieged*  
e, leading in  
red thousand  
ace with the  
the *East-Indi-  
ngal*, having  
the *Idoleans*  
aving one at  
though this  
n, and so well  
and his *Ar-  
ny any Prince*  
Tributary to

fruitful, wa-  
hath store of  
and *Silk*, of  
ufactures; of  
et *Commodi-*

ives of the  
for the most  
nde of *Flesh*,  
except

except that of an *Ox*, *Cow*, *Buff*, *Swine*, or  
*Wild-Bore*. A *Swine* they abhor, but have  
a great veneration for a *Cow* or an *Ox*. But  
as to the manner of their life, as in their  
*Marriages*, *Enterments*, *Purifications*, and  
other *Ceremonies* in their *Religion*; as also  
in their *habits* and *houses*, which are very  
mean, their *houses* being made of *Straw*,  
and withal, small and low; having no *lights*  
but what enters in at the *door*, which is not  
so high as a mans waste: In which, their  
chiefest furniture and household-stuffs, are  
*Mats* to lie upon in the night, on which  
they also eat their *Meat*; their *Dishes*,  
*Drinking-cups*, &c. are made of *Fig-  
leaves*, which they daub and plaster toge-  
ther. In these, and the like *Ceremonies*  
and *Customs*, they imitate the *Benjans*  
aforementioned: The rest of the people  
which here inhabit, are *Mahomerans* and  
*Jews*, which here enjoy the freedom of  
their *Religion*, but the Subjects of the  
King of *Portugal* are *Catholicks*, those of  
the *English Protestants*.

GOLCONDA.

The name of *GOLCONDA* hath  
been known but for few years; ne-  
vertheless, this is a powerful and rich King-  
dom; but which hath been confounded  
with the name of *Orisa*. It is upon the  
Gulf of *Bengala*, which it regards towards  
the East and South, neighboring on the  
*Mogolls*, and the Kingdom of *Bengala*, to-  
wards the North; that of *Bisnagar*, to-  
wards the South, touches *Decan*, or rather  
*Balagete*, which is a part of *Decan*, to-  
wards the West. It stretches 200 Leagues  
on the Coast in length, and near 100 up  
the Land in breadth: It yields Twenty  
Millions of yearly Revenue, is very well  
peopled, and its people addicted to all  
sorts of *Manufactures*: They make *Cot-  
ton Pintado's* so artificially, and with such  
lively colours, that it is esteemed better  
then *Silk*: They build great *Ships*, trade  
to *Mecca*, *Aquem*, *Bengala*, *Pegu*, and  
throughout all the *Indies*.

There are in this Estate 66 *Castles* and  
*Fortresses*, where the ordinary *Garisons* are  
kept; and these *Castles* are on inaccessible  
Rocks which they call *Conda*. *Golconda*  
which the *Persians* call *Hidrabrand*, is the  
chief and residence of the *King*; it is  
distant from the Port of *Musilipatan* or  
*Masulepatan*, about 60 Leagues; which is

a fair City seated on an arm of the Sea,  
adjoyning to the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*,  
and not far from *Cape Guadavari*. Hath its  
*air* pleasant, its *soyl* fruitful, of about 5 or  
6 Leagues circuit; nor doth its *King* yield  
much to the Great *Mogoll* in riches, *Preci-  
ous Stones*, in store of *Elephants*, or all  
sorts of magnificence: But his Estates be-  
ing much less, and his people less warlike,  
constraineth him to send him every year  
Four hundred thousand *Pagodes* in form of  
Tribute.

This Countrey moreover hath no  
of *Gold*, *Silver*, or *Copper*, some it hath of  
*Iron* and *Steel*, but many of *Diamonds*  
and other *Precious Stones*. It hath one of  
*Diamonds* about 50 or 60 Leagues from  
*Masulepatan*, and near the River *Christina*,  
so rich and abundant, that in 1622, the  
King caused it to be shut up, and the labor  
to cease, fearing lest the too great quan-  
tity should make them neglected: Others  
say, for fear lest it should draw the Great  
*Mogoll* into his Estates.

*Condapoli*, its chief *Fortress* is so great,  
that in its circumference it contains six o-  
thers; and these six are one above the  
other, each having *Wood*, *Fruits*, and  
*Land*, sufficient to maintain the *Garisons*  
destined for their defence, which amount  
to 12000 Men.

*Candavara* is another *Fortress* 15 or 16  
Leagues from *Condapoli*; and thence at  
certain intervals there are *Towers*, on  
which, with certain *lights* they give signal  
of all that passes in the Countrey.

On the Sea Coast or Gulf of *Bengala*,  
are seated several Towns, some of which  
are well known by *Merchants*; as *Guada-  
vari*, which gives name to a *Cape* on which  
it is seated, *Vixaoapatan*, *Narsingapatan*,  
*Pulacate*, *Palhor*, *Manicapatan*, *Calecote*,  
*Caregara*; on the *Cape Segogora*, or *Das*  
*Palmas*, *Polarin*, *Comiripatan*, and  
others.

The King of *Golconda* in 1618, was cal-  
led *Sultan Mahomet Casaba-sha* or *Comu-  
sha*; a name which they retain from their  
Predecessors, whom they believe to de-  
scend from the *Persians*, whose *Seet* they  
follow. Yet there are amongst them abun-  
dance of *Pagans*.

The *Portugals* have a *Fortress* at *Masule-  
patan*, which is one of the best Ports of the  
Countrey; the City is not walled, and be-  
longs to the Prince.

The *air* is every where healthful, the  
*soyl* fertile, producing twice or thrice a year  
*Grains*, *Fruits*, &c. almost all different

from

the King  
of the  
Indies

The King  
of the  
Indies

The King  
of the  
Indies

The King  
of the  
Indies

The King  
of the  
Indies

The King  
of the  
Indies

The King  
of the  
Indies

The Com-  
modities  
of the  
Indies

The air  
and fertility  
of the  
Countrey.

from ours. Their seasons are distinguished in three manners, they have very great heats in *March, April, May, and June*, and that is their Summer. Much Rain in *July, August, September, and October*, and that is, their *Autumn*. Fresh Weather, or little heat in *November, December, January, and February*, which is their *Spring*: For *Winter* they have none. One of their principal Revenues comes from *Salt*, which alone yields 180000 *Pagados*, or so many Crowns. Their other Revenues are drawn from several *Commodities*, amongst the rest *Diamonds*, of which, all above five *Carats* belong to the Prince, nor dare any keep them on pain of death.

## NARSINGUE OR BISNAGAR.

The whole  
of this  
island  
is  
divided  
into  
three  
quarters.

**S**OUTH of *Decan* and *Golconda* are the Estates of *BISNAGAR*, otherwise *NARSINGUE*, these two places being the principal ones of the Realm, *Narsingue* not far from the Port of *Paleacate*, about the midst of the Coast of *Choromandell*: *Bisnagar*, towards the Mountains of *Gate*, and near *Canara*.

The whole Estate is divided into three principal quarters, and these three quarters into Seven Kingdoms, and extends it self on two different parts of the *Indian Sea*, on the Gulf of *Ganges* or *Bengala*, towards the East, and on the Gulf of *India* or *Cambaya*, towards the West: On this side, the Coast is 65 Leagues long, in the other 250.

The three principal quarters are called *CANARA*, *BISNAGAR*, and *CHOROMANDELL*. *Canara* occupies all the Western Coast, between the Estates of *Decan* and *Malabar*, *Bisnagar* and *Choromandell* hold all the Eastern Coast: The last towards the Coast of the *Peschery*, and Isle of *Ceylan*, and the first towards *Golconda*. *Canara* hath the Kingdoms of *Onor* and *Baticala* on the Sea, and that of *Borsopa* farther in the Land, which stretches to the Mountains of *Gate*: *Bisnagar* hath the Kingdoms of *Tienlique* and *Bisnagar*, *Choromandell* those of *Choromandell* and *Tamul*.

The chief  
Cities, and  
strongholds.

*Onor*, *Baticala*, and *Gorcopa*, are the capital Cities, each of their Kingdoms, the two first to one, the last subject to a parti-

cular King, but all Tributaries to *Bisnagar*. Those four on the East, and Coast of *Bengala*, are immediately subject to the King of *Bisnagar*, except that the *Portugals* hold *Maliapur* and *Negapatan*. But moreover the Estates of the *Naiques*, of *Tanjaor*, of *Gingi*, and of *Madure*, are esteemed to be of *Bisnagar*, because they make part of it, and are likewise at present Vassals and Tributaries of the King of *Bisnagar*.

Formerly these *Naiques* were onely Governours of the Quarters they at present possessed, these Governours revolting, and each seizing his Government: The Kings of *Bisnagar* having long made War upon them, to reduce them to their duty: They in the end remained *Naiques*, that is, Hereditary Lords, and absolute over those Quarters, paying some tribute to the Kings of *Bisnagar*.

The City of *Gingi* is esteemed one of the greatest and fairest of *India*, in the midst of which, is a Fortrefs, and in that Fortrefs, a Rock almost inaccessible, they give likewise to this *Naique*, the City of *Cindambaran*, after it *Chistapatama*, and on the Coast of *Choromandell*, *Coloran*, the Princes of *Trinidi* and *Salavacca* are subject to him.

The *Naique* of *Tanjaor* hath his Estate between those of *Gingi* and *Madure*, and near the Port of *Negapatan*, which belongs to the *Portugals*. Besides *Tanjaor* and *Cassan* in the Upland, the Cities of *Triminapatana*, of *Trangabar*, and of *Triminavez*, belong unto him.

The *Naique* of *Madure*, besides *Madure* his capital City, and a very fair one, holds almost all the Coast of the *Peschery*, and the little Isle of *Manar* near *Ceylan*. This Coast extends from the *Cape* of *Comori*, unto the *Cape* of *Negapatan*, viewing in the *Ocean*, the not far distant Isle of *Ceylan*: And the name of the *Peschery* hath been given it, by reason of the *Pearls* which they yearly Fish there for, about the end of *March*, and the beginning of *April*, and this Fishing endures onely 15 or 21 days, there being then about 50 or 60000 persons employed, either to Fish, or to keep the Fishermens Vessels from trouble. These *Pearls* are exposed to sale in *July, August, and September*.

*Tianacori* or *Tutuori*, and *Manacor*, are the best Cities of this Coast, which is of 75 Leagues length, where there is about 25 Cities. The people of *Paravar* are mixed along the Coast, and live in some form

form  
to the  
they  
being  
of it  
dry a

The King  
of the  
island  
is  
divided  
into  
three  
quarters.

Y  
ful, f  
it has  
Ann  
700  
degr  
City  
aire,  
Coun  
find  
their  
rants  
cially  
they  
wove  
flowe  
Sik  
hath  
as an  
thou  
have  
vidin  
of th  
comm  
neis  
nor p  
ill bu  
those  
but a  
by rea  
here  
from  
and n  
that  
Nov  
Y  
of B  
horid  
of a li  
far fr  
is fan  
Ciran  
Man  
ra: 7  
degr  
in 14  
rich,  
ing-  
are t  
Chan  
Amo  
have

The whole  
of this  
island  
is  
divided  
into  
three  
quarters.

Y  
ful, f  
it has  
Ann  
700  
degr  
City  
aire,  
Coun  
find  
their  
rants  
cially  
they  
wove  
flowe  
Sik  
hath  
as an  
thou  
have  
vidin  
of th  
comm  
neis  
nor p  
ill bu  
those  
but a  
by rea  
here  
from  
and n  
that  
Nov  
Y  
of B  
horid  
of a li  
far fr  
is fan  
Ciran  
Man  
ra: 7  
degr  
in 14  
rich,  
ing-  
are t  
Chan  
Amo  
have

The whole  
of this  
island  
is  
divided  
into  
three  
quarters.

Y  
ful, f  
it has  
Ann  
700  
degr  
City  
aire,  
Coun  
find  
their  
rants  
cially  
they  
wove  
flowe  
Sik  
hath  
as an  
thou  
have  
vidin  
of th  
comm  
neis  
nor p  
ill bu  
those  
but a  
by rea  
here  
from  
and n  
that  
Nov  
Y  
of B  
horid  
of a li  
far fr  
is fan  
Ciran  
Man  
ra: 7  
degr  
in 14  
rich,  
ing-  
are t  
Chan  
Amo  
have

form of a Republick, paying some rights to the *Naique* of *Madure*; and these are they that fish for the *Pearles*: this fishing being all the riches of the Country, which of it self, is neither fertile nor pleasant, but dry and scorched.

Yet is the King of *Bisnagar* very powerful, formerly marching against the *Idalkan*, it hath been accounted that he had in his Army 40000 *Horse*, 700000 *Foot*; and 700 *Elephants*. His chief City is *Chandegry*, otherwise *Bisnagar* or *Visnagar*; a City very beautiful, seated in a temperate aire, and by reason of the fertility of the Country about it, which brings forth sundry Commodities naturally, besides the industry and ingenuity of the Inhabitants in several *Manufactures*, but especially in their fine *Cotton linnen*, which they make of divers colours; and interwoven with several sorts of *loome-works* and *flowers*, which are esteemed better than *Silk*. Also the goodness of its *Haven*, hath made it a place of as great Commerce as any City on the Coast of *Choromandell*, though at *MUSULIPATAN* the *English* have settled a *Factory* (both for the providing and lading hence the *Commodities* of the Country) more by reason of its commodious situation, then for the goodness of the place, it being of no beauty nor grandure, its *houses* being low, and ill built, and its *streets* not many, and those that are narrow and ill contrived, but above all, it is seated in a barren soil, by reason of the extraordinary heat which here rages from *March* to *July*, then from *July* to *November*, the great raines and winds, which raine continually, so that their temperate weather is but from *November* to *March*.

*Vincenc le Blanc* saith, that the City of *Bisnagar* is able to set forth 100000 *horse*, next to *Norsingue*, on the side of a little hill towards the sea; *Triputy* not far from *Chandegry*, and *Cangevaran* not far from *Maliapor*, or *St. Thomas Trivalur*, is famous for the great number of its *Idolls*. *Cirangapatan* is between *Chandegry* and *Mangalar*, which is on the Coast of *Canara*: The Fortres of *Vellur*, between *Chandegry* and *Narsingue*, was the Kings Court in 1609. All the Country is healthfull, rich, and fertile in *Corn*, and *Fruits*, breeding store of *Cattel* and *Fowl*, and *Diamonds* are found in the Mountains of *Gate* near *Chandegry*; and in other places quantity of *Amethistes*, and white *Saphires*. They have all sorts of *Beasts* both tame and wild:

their *Elephants* are docile, their people healthfull, and well disposed, but not courageous. The *Pepper* of *Onor* is esteemed the most weighty, and the best of all these quarters: The *Portugalls* lade from thence 7 or 8000 *Quintals* a year, *Batticala* a Port of *Rice* of several sorts, different both in price and goodness; the black *Rice* is esteemed more healthfull, and better then the white.

Between *Paleagate* and *Narsingue* there is an obscure and deep valley, full of *Trees* which still drop water, like those in the *Isle of Ferr* in the *Canaries*: near this Valley there is abundance of *Sugars*, whose *Canes* prest, serve to feed *Beasts*, among which, *Hoggs* most delight in them, which makes them contract a favour rather of *Sugar*, then *Salt*, yet are they worth little.

Some give the King of *Narsingue* but 10 or 1200 *l. Sterling*, of yearly Revenue, whereas others report him to have 10 or 12 Millions of *Gold* yearly, which is most likely. He entertains ordinarily 40000 *Naires*, 20000 *Horses*, and for the service of his house 12 or 13000 persons, 1000 *Horses*, and 800 *Elephants*.

Almost all the people are *Idolaters*, some *Mahumetans*, and other *Catholiques*. The *Fesultes* have two residences, one at *Chandegry*, and the other at *Veslur*, to no small benefit. Amongst the *Customes* of these *Barbarians*, they have the inhumane custome for the *Women* to burn themselves with the *Corps* of their deceased *Husbands*, *Texera* saith, that the *Naique* of *Madure* deceasing in his time, his 400 *Wives* and *Concubines*, cast themselves into the same fire, and burnt themselves with the Kings body. There was 375 burnt with the *Naique* of *Taujaor* in the year 1602, and as many or more with the last *Naique* of *Gingi*.

As for the *Forme* and *Castome* which are observed in the burning of these silly wretches, I shall borrow from *Sir Thomas Herbert*, as he hath it in his *Book of Travells*, page 362. where he saith, that the *Husbands* being dead, the *Wife* prepares her self for her *Funeral*, habiting her self in transparent *Lawn*, her *Nose*, *Eares*, and *Fingers* she adorns with *Precious stones*, &c. But her *Legs*, *Thighs* and *Armes* she fettereth with *Chaines*, which they hold as expressions of *Love*; in one *Hand* she holds a *Ball*, and in the other a *Nosegay* of *Flowers*, both as Emblems of *Paradise*; and being thus habited, she accom-

R accom-

series to *Bisna-*  
D. are Cult of  
subject to the  
that the *fortu-*  
*negapatan*. But  
the *Naiques*, of  
*Madure*, are e-  
because they  
wife at present  
of the King of

were onely  
they at present  
revolting, and  
The Kings  
made War upon  
duty: They  
that is, Here-  
ate over those  
to the Kings

seemed one of  
*India*, in the  
s, and in that  
cessible, they  
e, the City of  
*Capatama*; and  
*idell*, *Coloran*,  
*Salavacca* are

hath his Estate  
of *Madure*, and  
which belongs  
*Tanjaor* and *Ca-*  
*nes* of *Trimina-*  
*Triminaveez*,

, besides *Ma-*  
a very fair one,  
of the *Pesche-*  
*Manar* near *Cey-*  
from the *Cape*  
of *Negapatan*,  
not far distant  
me of the *Pes-*  
by reason of the  
fish there for,  
and the beginning  
endures onely  
then about 50  
either to *Fish*,  
s *Vessels* from  
exped to *sale*  
*ber*.

*Manancoor*, are  
st, which is of  
there is about  
of *Paravas* are  
and live in some  
form

The King  
of the  
country

The King  
of the  
country

The King  
of the  
country

The King  
of the  
country

The King  
of the  
country

Here the  
Women  
burn them-  
selves with  
the Corp. of  
their de-  
ceased Hus-  
bands.



accompanied to the place by all her *Relations*, *Friends*, and *Acquaintance*; and all the way going, the *Branchman*, or *Priest* denotes the joyes she is to possess, together with the assurance of enjoying her *Husband* in the *Elizium*: which words do much excite her to valor, so that when she cometh to the place, seeth the flame, and the carcass of her dead *Husband*, whom she longeth to bewith in *Elizium*, being as it were, like a hot-headed Lover, transported with joy, she takes leave of her *Friends* and *Relations*, and jumps into the flame, in which the Corps of her *Husband* was first put, which soon unites in ashes; during which time, they have severall sorts of *Musick*; and to make the Ceremony the better, their *Branchman* exhorts them not to quit their *Husbands*, casting store of sweet *Wood* and *Oyle* into the fire, to take away the unflavoy smell; and this *Law* was made, because the *Women* did frequently Poyson their *Husbands* upon any discontent, and so took others; but as *Linscot* says, this is only a Custome for their *Nobles* and *Priests*, it being prohibited to the meaner *People*; a Custom I think not greatly to be desired by any; and besides this heathenish Custome, they have severall others as bad and Idolatrous. *Satan* having here displayed his Banner of impiety, being a *People* for the most part averse to *Law*, and *Morality*; likewise the Custome which they observe in their *Marriages* is as strange; for the *Branchman*, with a *Cow*, and the *Man* and *Woman* goe together to the water-side, where the *Priest* after he hath muttered a short *Prayer*, joyas their *Hands* to the *Cow*'s taile, and having poured upon them hallowed *Oyle*, he forceth the *Cow* into the River, where she continueth a good while, and being come out, they untie them; and this they hold for a solemn marriage, and sacred for ever, the *Cow* being a creature which by them is highly esteemed and revered.

The Coast  
of Choromandel,  
and its  
trade.

Among the places which are on the Coast of *Choromandel*, *Negapatan* and *Maliapur* belong to the *Portugals*, and formerly they alone of the *Europeans* had all the traffique, now the *Hollanders* hold *Guedria*, the *Englisb* the Fort *St. George*, called by the *Inaians* *Sadrapatan*, and both have their *Factories* throughout the Coast. *Megapatan* is great of trade, though seated in an unhealthful climate, uttering many valuable *Merchandizes*; they gather *Rice* in quantity sufficient to serve their neigh-

bours. *Maliapur* a small, but well known town on this Coast, is the place where those of the Country believe that *St. Thomas* was martyred, and interred; and there were many *Christians* who called it *St. Thomas*, when the *Portugals* entred the *Indies*; they are still a considerable body, and may easily be made return to true *Christianity*. The old City is ruined, the new was rebuilt by the *Portugals*, where there is a Chappel dedicated to *St. Thomas*; and it is erected into a *Bishoprick* under the *Archbishop* of *Goa*.

The Commodities of *Negapatan*, *Sadrapatan*, and the rest of the Coast of *Choromandel*, are *Sugars*, fine *Cotton Linnen*, called *Pintadoes*, *Fruits*, *Druggs*, *Precious Stones*, *Cryfall*, &c.

The *Coynes* here and along this Coast, is the *Pagode* of *Gold*, and the *Mahomady*; and the *Fanan* of *Silver*.

A *Pagode* is valued worth 15 *Fanans*, which is 8 *lb. Sterling*. A *Fanan* is 9 *Casbees*, or *Cupans*, which is about 6  $\frac{1}{2}$  *d. Sterling*.

A *Mahomady* is 32 *Pices* or *Doeres*, 5. *Mahomades* or 9 *Fanans*, (which is either of them 5 *lb. Sterling*) is a *Rial* of  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Spanisb*. And 10 *Rials* of  $\frac{1}{2}$  is here current for 6 or 6  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Pagods*. And 10 *Rials* of  $\frac{1}{4}$  are here called a *Seare* in *Circa*, which is 50 *lb. Sterling*.

Their Common weight is the *Candil*, used for gross goods, and is held for 20 *Maunds*. A *Maund* is 40 *Seares*, or 22 *Masses*, or 26 *li. 14 ounces English*. A *Seare* is 17 *Casbees*, and a *Casbee* is ( ) *Englisb*.

One *Fisco* or *Fisco* is held to be 8 *Seares*, which is 10  $\frac{1}{2}$  *ounces Haberdupois* in *Circa*.

## MALABAR.

**MALABAR** is the last of the four parts we have proposed in the *Peninsula* of *Indus* without the *Ganges*; the least in Continent, but not in goodness. All the Country is healthful, fruitful, and rich; It hath little *Wheat*, but instead of it, it hath great plenty of *Rice*, *Mayz*, and other *Graines*, *Fruits*, quantity of *Druggs*, and *Spices*, *Precious Stones*, *Silk*, *Ginger*, *Cassia*, and abundance of all sorts of *Beast*; yields *Wood*, and such faire trees for the *Masts* of great *Ships*, that *Norway* boasts not better: yet its greatest riches consist in its *Pepper* and *Precious Stones*.

Some

but well known  
the place where  
we that *St. Tho-*  
*mas* arrived; and there  
called it *St. Tho-*  
*mas* after the *Indies*;  
body, and may  
true *Christianity*.  
the new was re-  
where there is a  
*Thomas*; and it  
under the *Arch-*

*Negapanan*, Sa-  
the Coast of *Cho-*  
*ston* Linnen,  
*Fruits*, *Druggs*,  
&c.

along this Coast, is  
the *Mahomody*;

worth 15 *Fanans*,  
*Canan* is 9 *Sheees*,  
at 6 *d.* *Sterling*.  
*ices* or *Doers*, 5.  
(which is either  
a *Rial* of *Spa-*  
is here currant  
10 *Rialls* of *are*  
*a*, which is 50 *sh.*

the is the *Candil*,  
and is held for 20  
10 *Seares*, or 22  
English. A *Seare*  
the is ( ) Eng-  
ld to be 8 *Seares*,  
*dupois* in *Circa*.

**A R.**

the last of the four  
opposed in the *Pe-*  
the *Ganges*; the  
not in goodness,  
ful, fruitful, and  
of, but instead of  
of *Rice*, *Mays*,  
*is*, quantity of  
*ous Stones*, *Silk*,  
undance of all forts  
and such faire trees  
*ps*, that *Norway*  
its greatest riches  
*reious Stones*.

Some

*in limits*  
Some extend *Malabar* from the River of  
*Aliga*, or from the *Cape* of *Ramos* unto that  
of *Comorin*, but all that is between the  
River of *Alaga*, and *Cangerecora*, having  
already passed under the name of *Canara*,  
where the Kings are tributaries to him of  
*Bisnagar*; we will follow the others who  
limit *Malabar* between the River of *Can-*  
*gerecora*, and the *Cape* of *Comorin*; where  
there are many Kings, all once subject  
to the *Samorin* of *Calicut*: at present those  
of *Calicut*, *Cochin*, *Cananor*, and *Coulan*,  
are the most powerful.

The Coast of *MALABAR* is about  
125 Leagues in length, and is divided  
into several Kingdoms, of which the  
Kings of *Cananor* holds 20 Leagues, he of  
*Calicut* 25, he of *Cochin* 15, and he of  
*Coulan* with *Travancor* 40 and odd; the  
rest is possessed by many. Those of *Cham-*  
*bais*, *Montigue* and *Badira*, are very near  
one another; and between *Cananor*, and  
*Calicut*: Those of *Tanor*, and *Cranganor*,  
are between *Calicut*, and *Cochin*:  
Those of *Porca* and *Calcoulan* are between  
*Cochin* and *Coulan*; and he of *Travancor*,  
between *Coulan* and *Cape Comorin*, near  
which the Country is not so good as the  
rest of *Malabar*.

In the Highlands are those of *Cota* near  
*Cananor*, of *Auriola*, of *Cottagan*, of *Bi-*  
*pur*, of *Concuran*, of *Panur*, and of *Cu-*  
*riga*; above *Calicut*, *Tanor* and *Cranganor*;  
Those of *Muterte*, of *Marta*, and *Batime-*  
*na*, towards *Cochin*: In the Mountains  
are those of *Mangait*, of *Paru*, of *Pimi-*  
*enta*, of *Changanara*, of *Trivular*, of *Pa-*  
*napelli*, of *Angamale* (where there was an  
*Archbishop* of *Christians* of *St. Thomas*,  
reduced to a *Bishoprick*; and transferred to  
*Cranganor*: ) two of the *Ticantutes*, of  
*Punhah*, of *Curanaretto*, and others. The  
people called *Malledus*, and those of the  
Mountains *Pande* live in the form of a Re-  
publick, *Cotate*, near *Cape de Comori*, is of  
the Kingdom of *Travanco*, and hath good  
trading, *Calicut* is esteemed able to bring  
more then 100000 men into the field;  
*Cananor* few leis, *Cochin* and *Coulan* each  
50000. They use little Cavalry, because  
the Country is low, moist, and divided  
by many streams. *Calicut* pretends to  
have some authority over all the Kings of  
*Malabar*, for which those of *Cananor*, *Co-*  
*chin*, and *Coulan*, to which *Travancor* is  
sometime past united, seem to care little  
at present, a good part of the rest still  
hold for him,

*Cananor*, besides what it possesses in the

firm land, holds likewise some *Islands* a-  
mong the *Maldives*, for having assisted  
one of their Kings against his Rebels; he  
possesses for the same reason the Isle of *Ma-*  
*licut*, 35 or 40 Leagues to the Northward  
of the *Maldives*: and the five Isles of *Di-*  
*avandorou*, likewise 30 Leagues North  
from *Malicut*. All these Isles are small,  
*Malicut* of only 4 Leagues circumference,  
the others each 6 or 7: they are more  
healthful then the *Maldives*, their inhabi-  
tants rich, and trade to the Continent, to  
*Malabar*, and to the *Maldives*, and else-  
where.

*Cochin* hath gained some reputation  
since it allied it self with the *Portugalls*, by  
whose means it is freed from the tribute it  
ought to the King of *Calicut*, and hath  
drawn to its estates the greatest trade of all  
*Malabar*; and the City is so increased,  
that it is not now inferior to *Calicut*.

And in all these Kingdoms aforementioned,  
contained in (and along the Coasts of)  
*Malabar*, there are several good, large,  
and well built Cities, being well inhabi-  
ted, rich, and of a considerable trade;  
but those of most note in the said King-  
doms are called by the same names, as  
that in *Calicut*, *Calicut* that in *Cananor*,  
*Cananor*, &c.

The Original Inhabitants of *Malabar*,  
are divided into *Bramenis*, *Nayres*, and  
*People*. The *Bramenis* are the *Priests*,  
*Sacrificers* to *Idolls*, some addict themselves  
to *Arms* with the *Nayres*, others to trade;  
but to whatsoever vocation they apply  
themselves, they have a particular manner  
of living. The *Nayres* addicted them-  
selves wholly to *Arms*. The *People* med-  
dle only with labour, manufactures, fish-  
ing, &c. and are like slaves.

Besides the *Natives*, there are many  
strangers, who live only on the Coast,  
and these are called *Malabares*, whence the  
name is communicated to the Country.  
These *Malabares* are *Mahumetans*, where-  
as the others are *Pagans*, and very super-  
stitious, worshipping an *Idoll* seated on a  
Brazen Throne, and Crowned, but of a  
horrid form, enough to fright one; and  
unto this *Idoll*, besides their *Religious Cer-*  
*emonies*, they offer up the Virginity of all  
their daughters before they are married,  
or else to their *Priests*. This *Idoll* having  
in the place of his Privy parts, a sharp bod-  
kin of Gold or Silver fastned, on which the  
Bride is forcibly set, which by reason of  
the sharpness forceth great store of blood  
to come; and if, though by her Husband,  
the

The Coast  
of Malabar

The Coast  
of Malabar

The Coast  
of Malabar

The Nations  
and Inhabi-  
tants of  
Malabar

They are  
Idolaters

A Strange  
Custom  
from  
Malabar

she proves with child the first year, they believe this *Idoll* got it: which they highly esteem, but by reason of the pain; the *Priests* by enjoying them first, doth quit them from the other, out of which two, all are served: they commonly marry at 10 or 12 years of age, they are very black, and well limbed; they wear their hair long, and curl'd about their shoulders; they goe naked, having only a cloth about their middle to hide their nakedness, which hangs down to their knees; they are treacherous, cruel and bloody-minded; there are likewise some *Jews*, and since the *Portugalls* have set footing, many *Christians*, besides those which they call of *St. Thomas*; these being of the Mountains, and those of the Coast.

Their ha-  
bils, Jew's  
etc.

### The PENINSULA of INDIA, within the GANGES.

**THE PENINSULA** of **INDIA**, which is beyond or within the **GANGES**, is our third and last part of the *Asiaticque*, or *East-Indies*. We will give unto it all that rests of *India* unto *China*; and bound it on the East by *China*, and by the Sea of the *Philippine Islands*; on the South with that *Sea*, which flows amongst the Islands of *Sonde*; On the West by the *Sea* or *Gulfe* of *Bengal*; and by the Estates of the *Mogoll*; and on the North we will stretch it as far as the *Tartars*: so that it will take up all *India* beyond the *Ganges*, what is possessed by the *Mogoll* excepted.

In King-  
domes and  
parts.

We have in this *Peninsula* a great number of Kingdoms, which we will consider under the three Principal ones; *viz.* *Pegu*, *Sian*, and *Cochinchina*. Under the name of *Pegu* we will range all those Estates and Kingdoms which lye upon the River, which descend from the Lake of *Chiamay* unto *Pegu*; under the name of *Sian*, all the Estates and Kingdoms which are about *Sian*; and under that of *Cochinchina*, all that is nearest to and on the West of *China*. This last part is most Easterly of the three, the second most Southerly, and the first more to the West; and this hath almost all been subject to the King of *Pegu*; the other to the King of *Sian*, and the last was part of *China*.

### PEGU.

**T**He Kingdome of *PEGU* when its splendor was so rich and powerful, that some would equal it to *China*, *Vincent Blanc* saith, that it contained two *Empires*, and 26 Kingdoms or Crowned Estates; I believe that the two *Empires* were *Pegu* and *Siam*, or possibly *Sian*, this having been subject or tributary to *Pegu*; and the Kingdoms, are *Martavan*, *Manar*, *Tangu*, *Marfin*, *Fangoma*, and *Brama*, whose chief Cities are *Pegu*, *Brama*, *Canarana*, *Pandior*, *Cassubi*, *Ava*, *Boldia*, *Mandranelle*, *Tinco*, *Prom*, *Dunbacaon*, *Tolema*, *Maon*, *Arracon*, *Largaray*, *Cassubi*, *Ledo*, *Tipoura*, *Xara*, and *Chacomas*. The greatest part of these Estates taken apart, are rich, and powerful, being able to set forth to War, some 2, some 3, some 400000 men. They have in many places Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, and *Precious stones*, besides *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Herbes*, *Fowle* and *Beasts*, which are here found excellent. The Kingdoms of *Tanew* and of *Brama* are the most powerful, since this hath sometime seized, and the other with that of *Arracon* ruined the Estate of *Pegu*.

The King-  
dome of  
Pegu, etc.  
see part.

In chief  
Count.

Pegu is  
rich in  
Gold, Sil-  
ver, and  
Precious  
stones.

*Brama* besides its Mines of *precious stones*, hath *Benjamin*, *India*, *Lake*, and certain *Herbs*, from which they take *Silk*; they make divers *Manufactures*, particularly caps much esteemed. *Ava* abounds in all sorts of *Vitrualls*, hath divers *Metals*, *Musk*, and *Rubies*. *Canelan* hath of the finest *Rubies*, *Saphires* and other *Stones*. *Prom* hath *Lacque* and *Lead*. *Tinco* fetches many Merchandizes from *China*. *Vincent Blanc* esteemes the City of *Canarana* as rich and magnificent as any in *India*; he places it between the Rivers of *Siam*, and of *Caypumo* or *Pegu*; giving it 4 Leagues Circuit; and making it Metropolis of the Kingdome of *Caypumo*, which is likewise called *Canarana*. This Country hath *Turquesses*, and *Emeralds* the fairest of all the East. *Cassubi* is in a plain, bounded with high hills, from whence descend many *Streams*, which water the plain, where there are excellent *Fruits*, among the rest *Pomegranates* the largest and best of *India*, excellent *Raisins* and *Manna*, which must be gathered before sun-rise, which else dispatches it. Their Mountains are filled with savage

Pegu is  
rich in  
Gold, Sil-  
ver, and  
Precious  
stones.

In trading  
and com-  
modities.

Beasts;

Beasts, where they get the *Skins* and *Furs* of *Ermines* and *Sables* of divers sorts, all very exquisite. The people of *Transiana* are fair, and white; the *Women* exceeding beautiful, and the *Men* as proud: They have *Mines* of *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Diamonds*; their King keeps ordinarily 50000 Horse, 1000 Elephants, and pays his tribute to the King of *Pegu* in *Horses*, which are very excellent. Their *Forests* have many 10 *Wilde Beasts*; among the rest, that which gives the *Bezoar*.

The *Inhabitants* of *Boldia* or *Siami* are esteemed the most honest and civil of all these quarters: So that they cannot but be people of Trade; and indeed all these Kingdoms have divers *Commodities* which make them rich.

The Kingdom of *Pegu*, which hath commanded, and had for *Subjects* or *Tributaries* almost all these *Estates*; and likewise others towards *Siam*; and *Siam* itself cannot but be extremely rich and powerful. And truly, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Pearls*, and *Precious Stones*, have been as common in the *Courts* of the Kings of *Pegu*, as if all the *Orient* had brought all its riches thither. In *Statues* of *Gold*, and in *Cambalengas*, there hath been more then sixty Millions of *Gold*, without having regard to the 30 *Pearls* and *Precious Stones*, which served for *Crowns* and *Ornaments* to these *Statues*; and which were worth more then the *Gold*, though they were massive. The *Floors* of *Buildings*, the *Moveables*, and the *Vessels*, with which they served themselves for divertisement, were so enriched within and without, with *Gold* and *Azure*, that it is not imaginable, if we did not know this to be the *Aurea Regio*, and like- 40 wise the *Argemæa Regio* of *Ptolemy*: Yet this must be believed to have been long since; but however, that it is at present the richest Countrey of all the *Indies*: And for the same reason, one of the best people, and most powerful.

This Countrey, by reason of the overflowing of the River *Pegu*, which runs through the Kingdom, makes it become exceeding fruitful, and of a fat and rich 50 soyl; so that it produceth great abundance of *Grains*, *Fruits*, and other products of the Earth in great plenty. Also *Beasts*, *Fowl*, and *Fish*, great plenty of *Civet-Cats*, from whom they take *Civet*, *Lacque*, which is made by *Ants* (as *Bees* make *Wax* with us) *Gold*, *Silver*, *Precious Stones*, *Drugs*, *Spices*, *Lead*, *Sugar*, &c.

This Kingdom hath plenty of good Towns and Cities, its *Metropolis* bearing the name of the Kingdom. This City of *Pegu* is divided into the *Old* and the *New*; the one and the other together make a Square; being encompassed with a strong Wall, and a great Ditch well fortified, having on each side five *Gates*, besides many *Turrets* richly beautified.

This City is large, strong, rich, and stately; the King, and his Nobility, and Courtiers takes up the *New City*, which is separated from the *Old* by a Wall and Ditch well watered; in which are kept many *Crocodils* for the watching the place by night: The *Wall* hath several *Gates* on all sides, for the convenience of the people to pass in and out. The *Streets* are very fair, straight, and so broad, that fifteen men may ride a brest on both sides. The *Houses* well built, having before every door *Palm-trees*, which are set, not onely to make a pleasant shew, but also to keep the Passengers from the heat of the *Sun*, which is very great; which by the shade of these *Trees*, in some measure they prevent.

The *Palace Royal* is seated in the midst of the City, having its particular Wall, Moat, and other Fortifications; the *Palace* being very stately and large, the greatest part of the *Buildings* being sustained by *Pillars* of *Jes*, and all the *Stones* so shining, that those which are without, represent the neighboring *Gardens* and *Forests*; and those which are within the *Paved Chambers*, other *Rooms*, and the *Ceilings* above, so well, that one seemeth to walk on *Gold* and *Azure*. Nor doth this his stately *Palace* exceed his *Magnificence* and *Pomp*, without which he is never so much as seen. The *Old City* is inhabited onely by *Merchants*, *Artificers*, and *Sea-men*, where there is great store of *Ware-houses* strongly built of *Brick* to prevent fire (which the City is much subject unto,) in which, the *Merchants* keep their *Goods*.

Besides the *Commodities* already spoken of, this City aboundeth in several others, as brought from other places, as *Damasks*, *Velvets*, *Woolen-Cloth*, and *Chickens*, from *Mecca*; *Pintado's*, and *Cotton-cloaths*, from the Coast of *Choromandel*; *Camphora*, *Porcelan* of *China*, *Sanders*, *Pepper*, &c. from *Mallacca*: And from several other places, they are furnished with their *Commodities*, with which together with their own, they drive a great *Trade* to several other Countreys, as well in *Europe*, as elsewhere.

The City of Pegu, the chief of the Kingdom described.

The Palace Royal.

The Commodities and Trade of this City.

GU when its powerful, that China. Vin- contained two es or Crowned the two Em- or possibly Sian, or tributary to ate Martavan, Fangoma, and are Pegu, Bre- Cassubi, Ava, o, Prom, Dun- Arracon, Lar- pouva, Xara, and part of these ch, and power- to War, some men. They s of Gold and besides Grains, Beasts, which The Kingdoms the most pow- time seized, and acan ruined the

es of precious s, Lake, and cer- they take Silk; tures, particu- Ava abounds ith divers Met- Canelan hath vines and other que and Lead. andizes from mes the City of ficient as any een the Rivers humo or Pegu : e, and making dome of Cay- called Canarana, fesses, and Eme- aft. Cassubi is gh hills, from streams, which ere are excellent megranates the excellent Rai- est be gathered e dispatches it, ed with savage Beasts;

The King- dome of Pegu, and its parts.

Its chief Cities.

Pegu con- sisting with in Gold, Sil- ver, and Precious Stones.

Pearls are the chief and chief stones.

Its fertility and com- modities.

their  
Coyne.

The currant *Coyne* here, and throughout this Coast, is made of *Lead* and *Copper*, and is called *Gansa*, which is not the *Coyne* of the *King*, but is stamped by any that will; and is of no more value, then just the weight of that of which it is made of, And for this money *Gansa*, one may buy any *Commodity* whatsoever; no other money being currant amongst them.

This *Gansa* goeth by a weight which is called a *Biso*: A *Biso* is 100 *Gansa's* of weight.

This name of *Biso* goeth for the account of the weight; and therefore a *Biso* of a *Gansa* is esteemed by strangers to be: a *Ryal* of 8, or 2 *Shillings sixpence Sterling*.

As for their *Weights* and *Measures*, I have no knowledge thereof.

To this City there is a good Port for the lading and unlading of their *Commodities*; and for the better encrease of *Trade*, the *King* doth constitute Eight *Brookers*, whose offices are to look after, and sell the Goods which come to this City, as well those of *Strangers*, as the *Inhabitants*; for which they give the owners a very just account, which otherwise (especially *Strangers*) would be cheated: For which, these *Brookers* are allowed two pence per cent. the like is observed in the buying of *Commodities*.

These *Brookers* are by their places, obliged to provide such *Strangers* or *Merchants* as come to this City with a *House*, which being taken, the *Governor* sends to him to know the time of his abode, and withal, orders certain *Maid*s of the City to go to him, that out of them he may make his choice, which done, he contracts with her friends to pay them a certain sum for the use of her, as they can agree, which is not great; and this *Maid* serveth him as his *Servant* by day, doing what he commandeth; and as his *Wife* by night: And at the expiration of the term agreed upon, he leaveth her, and she goeth to her friends without any disgrace at all. After which time he may take another, but it is very dangerous to meddle with any other during the time of contract with another.

The People  
are of a mean  
stature.

The *People* are of a mean stature, nimble, and strong, great lovers of *Women*, which takes them from warlike affairs, in which they are not very expert. Their *habit* is but mean, contenting themselves for the most part, with a piece of *Linnen* to cover their nakedness; they all black their *Teeth*, because they say *Dogs* teeth are white.

They are generally all *Pagans*, and believe that *God* hath under him several other *Gods*; that he is the *Author* of all good which arriveth to mankind: But he leaveth all evils which belong to man, to the *Devil*; by reason of which, they so much adore and fear him, least he should hurt them; which *God*, being good, they say, will not. Their *Devotion* they perform on *Mundays*, their *Priests* going about with *Tin-basons*, making a noise to waken the *People*, and inviting them to their *devotions*, in which they chiefly exhort them to *Morality*, as to avoid *Theft*, *Adultery*, *Murder*, &c. and to love *Vertue*. They have a great esteem for their *Priests*, who live a very solitary and exemplary life.

They have Five principal *Festivals* which they observe very strictly, ceremoniously, and with great state and pomp.

They that marry buy their *Wives* of their *Parents*; and when he is weary of her, he may send her home, but must lose the money he paid for her: But if she leave him, as she may do, then he may receive the money paid for her.

It is about One hundred years past, that the *King* of *Pegu*, making war against him of *Siam*, had in his Army more then a Million of Footmen, 200000 Horse, 5000 Elephants, and 3000 Camels; and was at this expence, one or two white Elephants, which were in the hands of that *King* of *Siam*. But these Elephants were as unfortunate to the *King* of *Pegu*, as they had been to him of *Siam*; the *Kings* of *Aracan* and *Tingou*, making war and ruining him of *Pegu* onely for the same cause.

## SIAN or SIAM.

THE Kingdom of *SIAN*, and those Estates, which we will comprehend under the name of *Siam*, are to the North of *Pegu*. We may consider them in two principal parts; of which, one shall retain the name of *Siam*, and the other that of *Malacca*. This latter is a *Peninsula*, which extends it self from the first degree of *Latitude*, unto the 11 or 12; from whence the first advances it self into the Main Land, unto the 19 or 20 degree on this side the *Equator*. They reach then each 250. and together 4 or 500 Leagues from South to North. But the *Peninsula* of *Malacca* is very straight, not being above 10 or 12 Leagues

The chief  
is of  
the parts  
of Siam.

The chief  
is of  
the parts  
of Siam.

Marrige  
not yet  
done.

The River  
Siem  
compleish  
near the  
Sea.

of Siam  
part.

The  
river  
is  
wide  
and  
deep.

is com-

Le  
pa  
30  
of  
  
the  
the  
Fa  
un  
nac  
Per  
oth  
  
call  
I  
Siam  
larg  
that  
selv  
ing  
aga  
ther  
adv  
Trea  
in th  
with  
not v  
toget  
have  
City  
mer  
by re  
the R  
Trad  
here  
gers  
treys  
The  
of th  
abou  
cove  
comp  
very  
rang  
to th  
to ev  
Vesse  
nego  
turns  
cour  
strong  
Th  
or in  
Linne  
of wh  
Allo  
call P  
weigh  
Perfu



Leagues broad in the *Isthmus*, which separates it from *Sian*; in other places 20, 30, 40, and sometimes 80. *Sian* is almost of an equal length and breadth.

Under the name of *Sian*, separated from the *Peninsula of Malacca*, we comprehend the Kingdoms of *Sian*, of *Martaban*, of *Fangama*, of *Lanjan*, and of *Camboja*; under the name of *Malacca*, those of *Tanacerin*, *Funcalaon*, *Singora*, *Queda*, *Pera*, *Patane*, *Pan*, *Malacca*, *Thor*, and others.

The Kingdom of *Sian*, especially so called, hath several Cities of note, *viz.*

First, *Odiaa* or *Ajohia*, which some call *Sian*; the *Metropolis* being a City of a large extent, a place of so great strength, that in 1567. they stoutly defended themselves against an Army of 140000 fighting Men, which the King of *Pegu* brought against them, for twenty months together: During which time, they gained no advantages from them, but in the end, by Treachery, one of the *Gates* being set open in the middle of the night, they entred in with to great a violence, that they could not withstand them: By reason of which, together with several other mutations that have since hapned amongst them, the City hath been much eclipsed of its former beauty, splendor, and riches; yet by reason of its commodious situation on the River *Menam*, is still a place of great Trade and Commerce, is rich, and populous, here inhabiting besides the *Natives*, *Strangers*, and *Merchants*, from several Countreys, about 30000 Families of *Arabians*. The Houses are built very high, by reason of the annual overflowing of this River about the Month of *March*: So that it covereth the *Earth* for about 120 Miles in compass, which renders these Countreys very fruitful, as the *Nile* doth *Egypt*. During this Inundation, its *Inhabitants* retire to the upper Rooms of their Houses, and to every House there is a Boat, or other Vessel belonging; by which means, they negotiate their affairs, until the River returns to her usual bounds. The stream and course of this River, is very swift and strong.

The principal *Commodities* of this City, or indeed of the Kingdom, are *Cotton-Linens* of several sorts, *Benjamin*, *Lacque*, of which they make excellent *Hard Wax*. Also that costly wood which the *Portugals* call *Palo Dangula*, and *Calamba*, which is weighed against *Silver* and *Gold*; for rich *Perfumes*; and the *Wood Sapon*, used by

*Dyers*; also *Spices*, some *Drugs*, *Diamonds*, *Gold*, *Camphora*, *Bezar-Stones*, *Musk*, *Porcelaine*; and lastly, that excellent *Wine*, or *Distilled Liquor*, which they call *Nipe*, which they make of *Cocos* or *Indian Nuts*, being of great esteem over all *India*, and elsewhere.

The *Coyns* here currant, are several, *viz.* a *Taile* which is valued at four *Ticals*; or about 18 *shil. Sterling*. A *Tical* is worth four *Masses*, or 4 *shil. 4 d. Incaica Sterling*. A *Mas* is worth four *Copans*, which is about 13 *d. Sterling*. A *Copan* is worth 750 *Cashees*, or 3 *d. Sterling*. A *Taile* is 16 *Masses*, and held worth 14 *Ryals* of  $\frac{3}{4}$  *Spanish*. 20 *Taile* is a *Catee*, and is worth 48 *Ryals* of  $\frac{3}{4}$  *Spanish*.

Their *Weights* here used, is the *Catee*, *Babar*, and *Pecull*. The *Babar* is of two sorts, the great and the small; the great *Babar* is 200 *Cattees*, or 3 *Pices*; one *Pice* is 66  $\frac{2}{3}$  *Cattees*; a *Catee* is 26 *Tailes*. A *Taile* is 1  $\frac{1}{2}$  ounce of *Lisborn* weight; and by this weight all *Spices*, *Drugs*, and some other *Commodities* are weighed.

The small *Babar* is also 200 *Cattees*, a *Catee* is 22 *Tailes*, a *Taile* is almost an ounce;  $\frac{3}{4}$  *Portugal* weight. And by this is weighed *Quick-silver*, *Silk*, *Mink*, *Aloes*, *Copper*, *Lead*, *Tin*, *Ivory*, *Amber*, *Vermilion*, &c.

The other *Weight* is the *Pecull*, which is 100 *Cattees* of *China*, and makes 132 *lb. English*.

The Second City is *Calnan*, *Metropolis* of a small Kingdom, but subject to the King of *Sian*.

The Third *Banckock*, noted for excellent *Pepper*.

The Fourth *Zugor*, on the Sea.

And the Fifth *Socotay*, famous for having a *Temple* onely made of *Metal*, which is Eighty Spans high, and an incredible length and breadth; being adorned with abundance of *Idols*. It was built by one of their Kings, at his coming to the Crown, which according to their Custom, every King is to build one, though not of *Metal*.

The Kingdom of *MARTABAN* on the *Indian Ocean*, and towards the Gulf of *Bengala*, is contiguous to *Pegu*, to which it hath been subject, at present is to *Sian*. This Kingdom hath many *Ports* frequented for Trade; for besides its *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Oyls*, and *Medicinal Herbs*, it is rich in *Mines* of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, *Lead*, *Steel*, and *Copper*. It hath *Rubies*, *Lacques* and *Benjamin*, &c. And they make

The chief  
parts of  
the peninsula  
are these.

The River  
Menam  
overflows  
part of the  
Nile.

The com-  
modities  
of this  
city.

of Sian,  
part.

See column

Three  
Copans

Three  
Pices

## I A M.

N, and those  
comprehend  
to the North  
them in two  
one shall retain  
other that of  
*insula*, which  
degree of *Latitudo*  
whence the  
Main Land,  
in this side the  
each 250. and  
from South to  
of *Malacca* is  
above 100 or 12  
Leagues

make *Vessels of Earth* which they call *Martabaness*, of which, some are so great, that they hold a *Bushel*, and some of them more. This is a kinde of *Porcelain* varnished with *Black*, and wherein they keep *Water, Wine, Oyl*, and all sorts of *Liquors*; and for this reason they are esteemed in all the East.

*FANGOMA* on the confines of *Pegu, Siam*, and *Brams*, hath been subject, or tributary, sometimes to one, and sometimes to another. It hath *Gold, Silver, Copper, Musk, Cotton*, of which they make *Manufactures, Pepper, &c.* Its people are more addicted to *Horse* then *Foot* service.

The Kingdom of *LANIAN* is but little known; its Position must be towards the people called *Laves* (if they be not the same thing) if not above *Camboja*.

The Kingdom of *CAMBOJA* is the last, and most Southerly part of the *Peninsula*, which is between the Gulfs of *Siam* and *Cochinchina*. The principal Cities are *Pavecca* and *Camboja*, of which the Kingdom takes its name, which is under the Tenth or eleventh degree of *Latitude*, and on the principal, and most Easterly Branch of the River *Menam*, which as it is believed comes from *China*; but it should be said from some Regions formerly subject to, or which were part of *China*.

The People in their *Manners and Customs* resemble those of *Siam*, whose subjects they have been, and whose tributaries but lately they were.

## MALACCA.

IN the *Peninsula* of *MALACCA* there are divers Kingdoms; which all (except the City of *Malacca*) are likewise tributary to that of *Siam, Tanasserri, Funcalaon, Zueda, Pera*, and *Malacca*, are on the Western part of the *Peninsula*, and regard the Gulf of *Bengala*, and the Isle of *Sumatra, Ibor, Pan, or Patang, Patane, Singora, Bardlong*, and *Ligor*, are on the Eastern Coast, and towards the Gulf of *Siam, Tanasserri* or *Tarnacerim* is a Country of *Trade*, by reason of its *Archipelago*, which contains several *Islands*; and of its *Isthmus*, which facilitates the transportation of *Merchants* from one Sea to another; and of its *Ports*, which easily utter its *Grains, Wines*, and *Fruits*, very like to ours; as are likewise its *Fowls* and *Beasts* it

breeds, besides those which are particular to the *Indies*. Their *Nipe* hath almost the same strength with our *Aqua Vita*, and is transported also over all *India* in the *Martavaness*.

*Funcalaon, Zueda, Pera*, and *Malacca*, have likewise these *Nipes* or burning *Wines*, but not so excellent as those of *Tanasserri*.

*Funcalaon* and *Pera* have *Calaem* or *Calaim*, which is a kinde of *Tinn*.

*IIOR* is beyond *Cape de Sincapura*, and on the utmost point of the *Peninsula*: Its chief City was taken and ruined by the *Portugals* in 1603, who took from thence 1500 *Brass Cannons*. The King of *Thor* for revenge, besieged *Malacca* in 1606, with 60000 men, but was constrained to raise his siege; there are some petty Kings which are his tributaries. *Pan* or *Pahan* hath *Lignum Aquila* and *Calamba*, near to that of *Cochinchina*; of *Camphire*, like to that of *Borneo*. *Gold* but of a lower alloy then ours, *Petra Porea*, of near as much vertue as the *Bezoar* against *poyson, Diamonds, Nutmegs, Mace, &c.*

*PATANE* within few years is grown famous, the Kingdom being frequented by divers Nations, particularly by the *Chinois*, who bring thither *Porcelaine*, divers *Manufactures*, and *Instruments of Husbandry*, instead of which they carry back *Timber* for building, *Cordage* made of *Cocos, Rice*, and divers *Skins, &c.* The *Pepper* is excellent, but dearer then at *Bantam*: Their *Saroy-Boura*, that is the matter of *Swallows Nests*, which we shall speak of in *Cochinchina*, is much sought after. The soyl is good, producing *Fruits* every Month in the Year. Their *Hens, Ducks*, and *Geese*, often lay *Eggs* twice a day. Amongst an infinite number of *Fowl*, they have white *Hérons* and *Turtles* of various colours like *Parroquetoes*.

*Patane, Singora, Bordlong*, and *Ligor*, are on the same Gulf, which may be called also by *Patana*, and makes part of that of *Siam*: *Patane* and *Ligor* towards the two ends; *Singora* and *Bordlong* in the midst, and at the bottom of this Gulf; and these two last are head Cities of Provinces (others call them Kingdoms) under *Siam*; the two first are Kingdoms tributary to *Siam*: They have nothing particular above *Patane*, to which they are all united.

The chief City of *Patane* takes its name from its Kingdom so called, seated on the Sea-side, betwixt *Malacca* and *Siam*. Its houses well and handsomely built,

either

Langona,  
and its  
Council-  
sit.

Lanian

Camboja

Patane  
and the  
Trade.

Peninsula  
of Malacca  
is a  
part, Com-  
munities,  
&c.

Patane  
and the  
Trade.

Patane  
and the  
Trade.

The City  
of Patane,  
and its  
Trade.

either  
Royal is  
its *Mofa*  
This  
is very  
Trade.  
thy *Broad*  
ed, inge  
vigation  
Women  
the *Ind*  
it hath  
Mal  
sent th  
of the  
under th  
subject  
King ha  
that th  
1511, a  
in the n  
gal, w  
Neighb  
Holland  
the *Com*  
of *Siam*  
great, r  
be unhe  
is the a  
seated c  
three L  
the firm  
the *Eas*  
which  
ple of  
ties; b  
great T  
taining  
Strange  
over cu  
row  
length,  
place o  
a strong  
the Riv  
pleasur  
Befo  
Islands  
Naos,  
divers  
oned t  
best an  
Am  
ther a  
may be  
Tree,  
set, a  
rises,  
out th

either of *Timber* or *Canes*; the *Palace Royal* is encompassed with a *Pallisado*, and its *Mosques* are made of *Brick*.

This City, as also the whole Kingdom is very populous, and enjoying a good Trade. Its people are inclining to a Swarthy Brown Complexion, well proportioned, ingenious, using *Arts*; especially *Navigation*; but above all, great lovers of *Women*. The Country affordeth most of the *Indian Commodities*, by reason of which it hath a good Trade.

*Malacca*, a City and Kingdom, is at present the most famous of all those which of the *Peninsula* we have comprehended under the name of *Malacca*: It hath been subject to the King of *Sian*. A particular King had made himself master of it, before that the *Portugals* entered the *Indies*. In 1511. *Alonso Albuquerque* took the City in the name of *Emanuel*, King of *Portugal*, who kept it in despite of all the Neighboring Kings, until such time as the *Hollanders* took it from them in 1641. the Country remaining still to the Kings of *Sian*. That which hath made this City great, rich, and powerful, (though the *Air* be unhealthful, and the soyl almost barren) is the advantage of its situation, being seated on the River *Gasa*, which is about three Leagues broad, and in the center of the firm Land, and of all the Islands of the *East Indies*, commanding a *Streight*, which is the *Key* which makes it the Staple of all the *India* and *China Commodities*; by reason of which, it is a place of great *Traffick*, and very populous, containing about 12000 Families, besides Strangers. Its Houses are low, and not over curiously built, and the Streets narrow; the City is about two Miles in length, and of half the breadth, being a place of good strength, being defended by a strong Wall and Castle, it is watered by the River *Gasa*, and the chiefest place of pleasure, is the *Buzzar*.

Before and nigh to this City, are the Islands, by the *Portugals* called *Ilha de Naos*, and *Ilha de Pedra*. The usance of divers Nations of the *Indies*, hath so fashio-  
ned the *Malayois* Language, that it is the best and most elegant of all others.

Among the rarities of *Malacca*, or rather among the wonders of the World, may be counted *Arbor tristis*, or the *Sad Tree*, which bears *Flowers* onely after Sun set, and sheds them so soon as the Sun rises, and this it doth every night throughout the whole year. These *Flowers* are al-

most like to (but fairer and more odoriferous then) *Orange Flowers*. Some of these *Trees* have been transported and brought as far as *Goa*, and some other places of the *Indies*, but no care could ever preserve them unto *Europe*.

The Provinces of this Kingdom of *SIAN*, are very populous, especially those which have the benefit of the Sea, or Navigable Rivers; but inhabited by different people, but for the most part well proportioned, of a Swarthy Complexion, more addicted to *Venus* then *Mars*; ingenious, but lazy, unconstant, and deceivers. Their habit is a painted Cloth, which they wear about their middle, and hangeth down to their knees; besides which, the Men wear short Shirts, and the Women cover their Breests with a piece of Linnen, which they tye about their Necks, all observing one fashion; the perions of quality being onely known by their attendance. Their *Marriages*, *Burials*, and other *Ceremonies*, are much the same as those aforesaid; they bring up their *Children* very well, instructing them in *Arts*: By which, according to their abilities, they are advanced to preferment. In their punishments they are severe and different according to the nature of the crime.

His Army doth consist of his own Subjects, in the nature of our *Trained Bands*, which are to be ready upon all occasions, and not of a standing Army: Their *Arms* are *Bows* and *Arrows*, *Swords*, *Pikes*, and *Bucklers*; they have no *Fire-arms*; their *Horse* is not good, their chief strength consisting in their *Elephants*.

The Kings of *Sian* are esteemed absolute Monarchs in their Dominions, making and breaking Laws as they please; imposing Taxes on their Subjects; punishing, condemning, and seizing the Estates of those who speak, or act contrary to their mindes; make War and Peace as often as they please. These and the like actions he doth of himself, without consent of any; yet he hath a *Council*, which are his *Nobles*, of whom he will hear their *opinions* and *advice*, but act as best pleaseth him. He hath but one *Wife*, who bears the title of a *Queen*, but hath many *Concubines*. In his *Apparel* and *Attendance* he is very magnificent and stately, not stirring abroad without great pomp; by reason of which, as also through his austeritie, he hath great veneration shewed him. His Revenue is very great, he bestoweth his Honor or Pre-

T erment

particular almost the *Vita*, and is the *Marta*

and *Malacca*, or burning it as those of

*alsem* or *Ca*

*le Sincapra*, *the Peninsula*: ruined by the King of *Thor* *cca* in 1606. constrained to petty Kings *an* or *Pahan* *alamba*, near *amphire*, like of a lower *al* near as much *poysen*. *Dis*

years is grown being frequented ularly by the *Porcelaine*, *di* *Instruments* of which they carry *Cordage* made *kins*, &c. The er then at *Ban* *at* is the matter he shall speak of ht after. The it every Month *ucks*, and *Geese*. Amongst an ey have white us colours like

ng, and *Ligor*, h may be called part of that of wards the two ng in the midst, ulf; and these ovinces (others der *Sian*; the outary to *Sian*: ular above *Pa* nited.

ame takes its called. seated *Malacca* and *Si* ndomely built, either

There is distinction and commerce.

Part of the Trade.

The People of Sian are ingenious, but lazy, unconstant, and deceivers.

Their Arms.

The Kings of Sian are absolute Monarchs, making and breaking Laws as they please; punishing, condemning, and seizing the Estates of those who speak, or act contrary to their mindes; make War and Peace as often as they please.

Part of the Trade.

The City of Malacca and Sincapra are both situated on the coast.

ferment on those who best please him, not regarding *Birth* and *Education*, it being not *Hereditary*.

For the *Administration of Justice*, most *Cities* have their *Jurisdictions* and *Judges*.

This great Kingdom is not in all places alike, for in some parts it is covered with *Wood*, in others *Mountainous*, and to the *Sea side Marshy, Flat, and Fertile*, affording divers and rich *Commodities* as aforementioned; and being plentifully furnished with *Rivers, Bays, and Harbors*, for the conveniency of *Shipping*.

## COCHINCHINA, TUNQUIN, &c.

I Esteem, under the name of *COCHINCHINA* taken in general, all that lies to the Eastward of the Kingdoms of *Camboja, Stan, Pego, and Ava, &c.* to the Westward of *China*, and the Gulf of *Cochinchina*; and which is washed on the South with the *Oriental or Indian Ocean*, and bounded on the North by those high *Mountains* which limit *Tartary*; extending itself from the ninth degree of *Latitude* on this side the *Equator*, unto the thirty fourth or thirty fifth towards the North, which make more than 6000 Leagues; the breadth not being above the eighth or tenth part of its length.

The name of *Cochinchina*, according to some, signifies *West China*; so the *Natives* of the Country call it *Onam* or *Anam*, that is the *Occidental Quarter*; and this extends to the view of *China*, of which, it was once part, and whose *Language, Manners, Customs, Government, Religion*, and other *Ceremonies* they yet retain, (which having occasion to treat of in *China*, as more convenient, for brevity sake I omit them here, referring the *Reader* to my Description of *China*.) But these *Quarters* being returned from the subjection of the *Chinois* above 800 years ago, were a little altered as easily divided into divers *Estates*. The name of *Cochinchina* being kept in the most Southern parts; that of *Tunquin* having taken the middle, and more Northernly parts, passing under the name of the people called *Lays*, the Kingdom of *Cocangue*, the people *Gueyes, Timocoves, &c.* who have in part taken, and received the

manners, and barbarousness of the *Tartars*, their Neighbors.

*Cochinchina* likewise is divided into *Chiampaa* and *Cochinchina*: *Chiampaa* between *Camboja* and *Cochinchina*, regards the Isles of *Sonde* towards the South; the *Philippines* towards the East; and touches on *Tunquin* to the North. Its principal City bears the same name, according to most Authors; but according to others, *Pulacaccin*. It hath nothing which is not common to *Cochinchina*, and therefore we shall say no more.

*Cochinchina* particularly taken, is better known than all the neighboring Countries, because it is wholly upon the Sea, having 150 Leagues of Coast, and not above 40 or 50 in breadth between the *Mountains of Kemois*, a barbarous People, and the Sea. Its Provinces are descending from North to South: *Sinwa, Cacciam, Quangwa, Quingin* or *Pulacambis*, and *Ranran*: The two first touch upon *Tunquin*; the last touch on the Kingdom of *Chiampaa*. The King makes his ordinary Residence in the Province of *Sinwa*, or at *Cacciam*, Cities of the same name with their Provinces.

All the Country is fertile, abounding in *Rice, Fruits, and Herbs*, breeding many *Fowls* and *Beasts*, and the *Sea* excellent *Fishes*: It produces *Cinnamon, Pepper, Lignum Aquile, Calamba, and Benjamin*. Its temperature is pleasant, though under the *Torrid Zone*; the *Air* healthful, and the *Soil* so abundant in all things, that the *Inhabitants* have no knowledge either of *Contagion* or *Famine*. They have *Gold, Silver, Silk, Porcelain*, and divers other valuable *Commodities*. All sorts of *Nations* frequent its *Coast*, by reason of the goodness of its *Ports*; and because its *Inhabitants* are courteous, liberal, kind to *Strangers*, and faithful in their dealings. They are courageous, and more warlike than those of *Tunquin* or *China*; handling all sorts of *Arms*, with no small activity: They are *Idolaters*; *Christianity* was introduced in 1620, and began to flourish; but their Kings have of late very much persecuted them.

Amongst the particularities and rarities of the Country, we must place the *Luti*, an Inundation, which in *Autumn* covers with its *Waters* almost all the Country. It renews from 15 to 15 days, remaining onely three days at a time, making the Earth so fruitful, that it brings forth its increase twice or thrice a year. Their *Saroy-Boura*,

affairs of the Tar-

is divided into  
na: *Chiampaa* be-  
hinchina, regards  
is the South; the  
East; and touches  
th. Its principal  
me, according to  
ording to others,  
thing which is not  
, and therefore we

ly taken, is better  
eighboring Coun-  
olly upon the Sea,  
f Coast, and not  
eath between the  
barbarous People,  
nces are descending  
*Sinawa*, *Cacciam*,  
or *Pulacambis*, and  
ft touch upon *Tun-*  
to the Kingdom of  
makes his ordinary  
ince of *Sinawa*, or  
of the same name with

fertile, abounding  
bs, breeding many  
of the Sea excellent  
*Cinnamon*, *Pepper*,  
*Alia*, and *Benjamin*,  
ant, though under  
*Air* healthful, and  
n all things, that  
nowledge either  
They have *Gold*,  
and divers other

All sorts of Na-  
by reason of the  
and because its *In-*  
liberal, kinde to  
in their dealings,  
and more walkie  
or *China*; handling  
no small activity:  
ssiantly was intro-  
tion to flourish; but  
e very much perfe-

rarities and rarities  
ust place the *Lutt*,  
in *Autumn* covers  
all the Country.  
5 days, remaining  
time, making the  
brings forth its in-  
car. Their *Saroy-*  
*Bona*.

*Bours*, or matter wherewith certain  
*Swallows* make their *Nests*, which after  
those *Birds* leave dry, and hardened, they  
gather in great quantities; which being  
steeped and moistned in Water, serves for  
*Sauce* to all sorts of *Meat*; and as formerly  
*Manna*, communicating such a variety of  
taste, that it seems to be composed of  
*Cinnamon*, *Gloves*, *Pepper*, and other *Spices*.  
Their *Lignum Aquile* and *Calumba* come  
from the same Tree: The first from the  
Trunk of a young Tree, the last from the  
Trunk of an old Tree: But this last is  
much more esteemed than the other, both  
for its odor and vertue. A pound of it on  
the place where it is beaten down, is worth  
five *Ducats*, being brought to the Port 15  
or 16, and if transported to *Japan* 200.  
If some piece be found to make a whole  
Pillar, it is worth 3 or 400 *Ducats* the  
pound. The *Lignum Aquile* amongst o-  
ther things, serves to burn the dead bodies  
of their *Kings*, *Princes*, and *Priests*.

Among the *Wood* they use for buildings,  
there are two sorts which they call incor-  
ruptible, whether in *Water* or *Earth*; their  
Trees they call *Thins*: The *Wood* of the  
one is near as black as *Ebony*, the other  
near the colour of *Yew*. Both the one and  
the other taken out of the Bark, is smooth  
and glib; so solid and weighty, that it  
sinks to the bottom of the *Water*, and  
serves also for *Anchors* for *Ships*. They  
make *Pillars*, on which they erect their  
Buildings; and before the time of the *Lutt*,  
they drive *Joists* and *Planks* between these  
*Columns*; and with *Canes* and *Reeds* accom-  
modate divers *Apartments*, which they  
take away in the time of those *Inundati-*  
*ons*, that the *Water* may run the freer.

## TUNQUIN.

The Kingdom of *TUNQUIN* is  
part on the Sea, and part on the Main  
Land; it bounds on the Sea at the bottom  
of the Gulf of *Cochinchina*, there where it  
divides *China* from *Cochinchina*, and hath  
about 150 Leagues of Coast. On the  
Land it extends it self from the seventeenth  
degree of *Latitude*, on this side the *Equator*  
unto the twenty third, which are likewise  
150 Leagues from North to South: Its  
breadth being onely about 100 Leagues  
from East to West.

This Kingdom contains Seven Provin-  
ces, of which, the three most Southerly,

are *Bochin*, *Ghean*, and *Timboa*; the four  
most Northerly, are *Beramar*, *Kedom*,  
*Kenam*, and *Ketbay*. *Bochin* touches on  
*Cochinchina*, and the two other advance  
along the Gulf towards the North; a-  
mongst the four last, *Beramar* and *Kedom*  
are towards *China*, *Kenam* and *Ketbay* to-  
wards the people *Laves*. The King of  
*Tunquin* ordinarily enretains a *Militia* of  
50000 men, taken from the three South-  
erly Provinces, and paid by the four  
Northerly, because these last lately revol-  
ted, and the other remained in obedience.  
Likewise the *Inhabitants* of these three  
Provinces pay much less customs than the  
other four; these customs are taken by  
heads, and men onely.

*Kee* or *Keecho* under the twentieth de-  
gree of *Latitude*, is the chief City of the  
Kingdom, where the King ordinarily re-  
sides. It is not above twenty miles in cir-  
cuit, but hath a Million of *Inhabitants*.  
Some *Authors* will have it called *Tanquin*,  
that is, the Court of the West, and that  
the Kingdom took its name from it. The  
Land hath beautiful *Plains*, and watered  
with many great *Rivers*; which with the  
*Rains*, and melting of the *Snow*, which  
descends from the *Mountains*, that sepa-  
rates it from the *Laves*, the Kingdom of  
*Ciocangue*, *China*, and *Cochinchina*, make  
it fruitful by their *Inundations*; rendering it  
better and more abundant than *Cochin-*  
*china*.

Yet hath it neither *Corn*, *Wheat*, nor  
*Olive Trees*, but they gather *Rice* twice a  
year, of which they make *Bread*; they  
fetch in *Hone*, and instead of *Oyl*, make  
use of the matter taken from *Swallows*  
*Nests*; of which, they have no less quan-  
tity than *Cochinchina*. They have neither  
*Asses* nor *Sheep*, many *Horses*, *Elephants*,  
and *Rhinoceroses*, whose *Flesh*, *Skins*,  
*Bones*, *Teeth*, *Nails*, and *Horns*, serve for  
*Antidotes* against *Poison*; they have so  
much *Pullaine*, *Pigeons*, *Turtles*, and other  
fowl, that they give them almost for no-  
thing.

Amongst their *Fruits*, they have fair  
*Pomegranates*; which beyond the ordinary  
excellency of that *Fruit*, hath here a par-  
ticular and delightful Juice.

For *Fish* they make account that in the  
seasons, there daily goes 10000 *Barques*  
out of their *Ports* to *Fish*.

The *Catholic Religion* was so introduced  
here some years past, that there was esteem-  
ed to be more then 200000 *Christned*  
*Souls*, 200 great *Churches*, and a great  
quantity



quantity of *Chappels*, and *Oratories*: there hath since happened divers changes. In these *Kingdoms* the *Portugalls* have several *Townes* and *Cities*, by which they have a great *Revenue*.

*Isles found in the Gulf of Sian.*

In the *Gulf of Sian* are seated several *Isles*, some of which are well known, as the *Isle of Goeteinficos* about 27 *Leagues* long; and 15 broad, seated about 3 or 4 *Leagues* from *Ligor* and *Bordalong*, in the *Peninsula* of *Malacca*; and between this *Isle* and the *Land of Malacca* lieth several small *Isles*. The next of note are the *Isles of Macara* and *Panian*; then the *Isles of Cara*, which are four in number; and the *Isles of Cofyn* which are three in number, with several others of no account.

*Isles found in the Sea called the Gulf of BENA.*

In the *Gulf* called the *Gulf of BENA* are likewise seated several *Isles*, the chief of which are the *Isles of Chubedu*, *Cudube* and *Ledoa*, of *dos Alewantados*, *Aligada* and *Durondruva*, whose chief place is *Siriaon*, the *Isles of Andemson* which are 10 in number, two of which are indifferent large; likewise the *Isles dos Cocos*, *dos Cabofes*, *Tanasser*, *Tavay*, *Alta* and *Craro* which said *Isles* are not far distant from the *Sea* thore of the *Land of Sian*, two of which are each about 20 *Leagues* in length; and the one 10, and the other about 7 in breadth. Also in this *Gulf* are the *Isles of Caremubar*, of *Raza*, *dos Sombreros de Palm*; *Siano*, *Sambilano*, *Batun*, *Pera*, *Pinson*, *Canal de St. Forgo*, *Nicubar* and others many of which are well known and frequented by *Merchants*, affording several of the *Indian Commodities*.

not any thing of that name; and that when this great *Empire* falls from one family to another, he that begins the family, gives such a new name, as he pleases to the *Kingdome*: and these names are very specious; as formerly it hath had the name of *Than*, that is, boundless; *Tu*, that is, repose; *Hin* which signifies, great; *Sciam* which is, an Ornament; *Chen*, that is, perfect, and so others: the family that reigns at present, gave it the name of *Min*, that is, brightness; and the last *Kings* of the same family have added *Ta*, which is, *Kingdome*, so that *Ta-Min* signifies the *Kingdome* of brightness. The *People* neighbouring upon *China* take little heed of the changing of these names: but on the contrary, some name it in one manner, and some in another; Those of *Cochinchina* and *Siam* call it *Cin*, from whence we have formed the name of *China*; those of *Faphan* *Than*: The *Tartares Han*, The *Sarazens* and *Mahometans* of the *West* call it *Cathay*; under which name is likewise comprehended the *Eastern* part of *Tartary*.

Its greatness extends from the 18, or 19, unto the 43 or 44th degree of *Latitude*: and from 147 to 166 degrees of *Longitude*, and in some places from 145, to 172: that is about 24 degrees of *Latitude*, which amount to 600 *Leagues*, from North to South; and 18 or 20, and sometimes 25 degrees of *Longitude*, which amount to 4,5, or 600 *Leagues* from *West* to *East*: some *Authors* have esteemed this *Kingdome* greater, but the *Fathers Jesuits* have observed the height of *Pequin*, and it's most Northern parts.

It contains 16 *Provinces*, all rich, plentiful, and which might well merit the name, and title of *Kingdoms*; they are subdivided into 28 *Regions*, or less *Provinces*; of which some have 12, some 15 faire *Cities*: amongst which are 180 great *Cities*, 319 great *Towns*, and 1212 lesser, in all 1771 *Cities*, and faire *Townes*. *Mendocce* accounts about 600 *Cities*; and 1600 great *Townes* which will then be 2200 *Cities* and *Townes*.

However it be a great number, there is the same likewise of lesser places: inasmuch that in Anno 1557, there was found in *China* more then 40 Millions of men, which payed tribute or tax: in 1616 there was near 60 Millions. Among which the *Women*, *Young men* under 20 years, *Eunuchs*, *Soldiers*, *Officers*, *Sick people*, and those of the *Kings* kindred were not com-

## CHINA.

*The Kingdom of China.*

*CHINA* is on the East of *Asia*, and of all our *Continent*, where it composes one of its fairest *Kingdoms*, for its greatness, for its fruitfulness, for its riches, for the great number, and politeness of its *Inhabitants*, for the beauty of its *Cities*, for its *Manufactures*, and for having had the inventions of *Silk*, *Printing*, *Paper*, *Artillery*, &c. before us, makes it worthy of note.

*In several names.*

*Ptolomy* knew this *Country* under the name of *Sinarum Regio*; but it hath been observable by us that the *Chinois* knew

*The number of its Provinces, Towns, Cities, Townes.*

*China was peopled.*

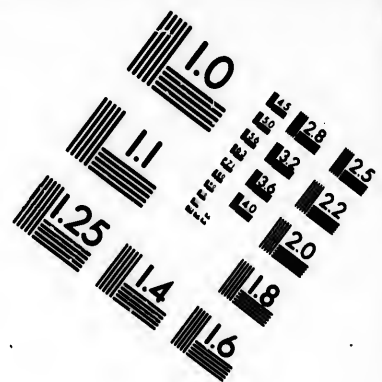
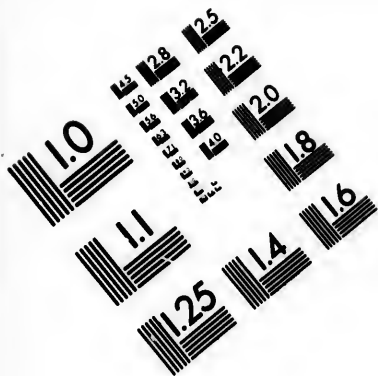
and that when  
one family to  
family, gives  
pleases to the  
are very spe-  
had the name  
Tu, that is,  
Great; *Sciama*  
u, that is, per-  
ity that reigns  
e of *Min*, that  
Kings of the  
which is, King-  
ifies the King-  
People neigh-  
tle heed of the  
out on the con-  
e manner, and  
of *Cochinchina*  
whence we have  
those of *Fa-*  
*Han*, The *Sa-*  
the West call it  
me is likewise  
n part of *Tar-*

from the 18, or latitude  
degree of *Lati-*  
66 degrees of  
aces from 145,  
degrees of *La-*  
600 Leagues,  
18 or 20, and  
*longitude*, which  
ues from West  
have esteemed  
ut the Fathers  
height of *Pe-*  
n parts,

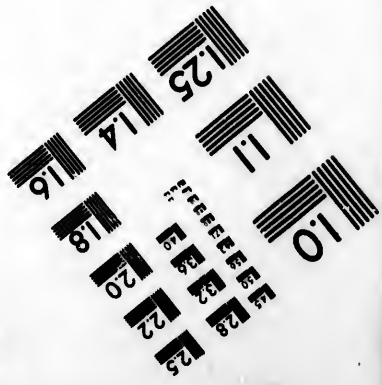
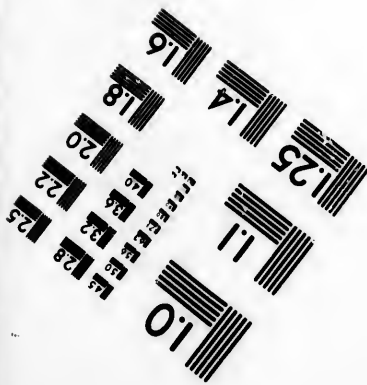
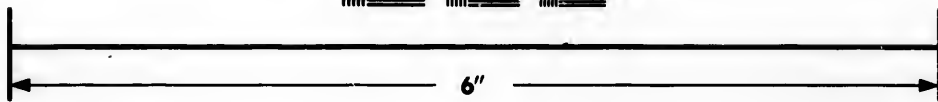
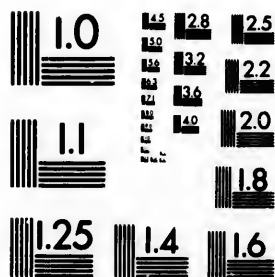
, all rich, plenti- The num-  
ber of its  
Provinces,  
Cities, &  
Villages.  
merit the name,  
ey are subdivi-  
s *Provinces*, of  
15 faire Cities:  
at Cities, 319  
ffer, in all 1771  
Mendoce ac-  
and 1600 great  
be 2200 Cities

number, there China con-  
population.  
places : info-  
here was found  
illions of men,  
: in 1616 there  
Among which  
nder 20 years,  
ers, Sick people,  
ndred were not  
com-





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0

10  
11  
12  
15  
18  
20  
22  
25





TARTARIA

PART OF

TARTARIA

TIBET

SICHUAN

SICHUAN

HONAN

SIAH

SIAH

SIAH

TUQUEN

CAMBODIA

TUNQUIN

INDIA

PEGU

SIAH

Cochinchina

SIAH DIA

R. Oyang

SIAH DIA

OCEAN

Tonchin

W. & A. S. 1780



**T H E**

The Isles of IAPON or Niphon

**C H I N A N** or

Tropick of

Cancer

The Philippina

Isles

**CHINA**

with its severall Provinces or Kingdomes,  
 Together with the adjacent Isles of Iapon or Niphon,  
 Formosa, Hainan, etc. Rendered into English, & enlarged  
 with the Isles of Iapon, by Rich: Blome; by his Assistant Comand:  
 London, Printed and sold for Richard Blome. 1669.

comp  
amou  
The  
to the  
the E  
wards  
Nort  
assure  
per an  
The  
very  
the S  
vers l  
Coast  
Leag  
and g  
with  
unto  
defen  
vaidin  
of 33  
least  
clud  
to pay  
defray  
they  
Town  
tinued  
incur  
at a ge  
their fi  
build  
raither  
Balwa  
where  
Silver,  
amoun  
entert  
work,  
Overs  
space  
circum  
Fans,  
which  
high,  
with li  
side,  
it is C  
it hat  
flanke  
a hog  
expen  
was d  
Common  
of 17  
the ou  
are b  
King  
fons :

Shir,  
the, f  
of the  
King of  
Glouc

Chris  
A. 1202.

4022-  
the Clans

comprehended, which together would amount to a very great number.

They are accounted likewise tributaries to the King of *China*, three Kings towards the East, 53 towards the West, 55 towards the South, and 3 towards the North, which are 124, and many have assured his Revenue to 150 Millions of Gold per annum.

The bounds of this great Monarchy are very advantageous, the Sea washing it on the South, and East, where there are divers little *Islands* and *Rocks* along the Coast: A Mountaine of above 500 Leagues long, being its Northern bounds, and great sandy deserts and forests, mixt with Mountaines, limit it on the West, unto the South sea: these were its natural defence, but upon the *Tartars* often invading them, and being at once Master of 33 important Townes, and fearing least they should be quite subdued, concluded a Peace with the *Tartars* agreeing to pay them 2000 *Pieces* of Silver for the defraying the charges of their Army, and they to return home and render up the 33 Townes to the *Chinifes*. This Peace continued a good while, but they fearing the incursion of the *Tartars* again, the King at a general Councell with his Peeres, for their further Peace and safety did agree to build a wall about their Kingdome, or rather Empire, which might serve for a Bulwark against all invaders, in pursuance whereof there was raised 10000 *Pieces* of Silver, which at 1500 *Duckets*, each *Rico* amounts to 15 Millions of Gold; and entertained 25000 men to carry on this work, whereof 3000 were appointed as Overseers of the rest; and thus in the space of 27 years, they quite finished the circumference of the wall, which is 70 *Foss*, in length each *Fao* being 3 Leagues which is 650 miles. This Wall is 30 foot high, and 10 foot broad, being made with lime, sand, and plaistered on the outside, by meanes whereof it is so hard, that it is Cannon proof. Instead of *Bulwarks* it hath *Watch-Towers* two Stages high, flanked with high *Butteresses* as thick as a hogs-head, and exceeding strong; the expences for the performing of this work was divided into three parts, of which the *Commonalty* paid one, the *Priests*, and *Illes* of *Aynan* another; and the *King* and *Peeres* the other; and in this great inclosure there are but five entries, in which both the King of *China*, and *Tartary* keep garrisons: in each of which the *Chinise* con-

tinually keep at great expences about 6000 horse, and 1000 foot, which for the most part are all strangers of different Nations bordering upon this Empire, which are kept for defence thereof when occasion shall serve, in all this length of wall, there is 320 Companies, each of them containing 500 souldiers, which in all are 160000, besides Officers, &c. which will make up the number 200000, and are all maintained at the Kings charge, but most of these are Malefactors, which doth much lessen the pay, they working for nothing. But for all this strong wall, and their great care in keeping it, the *Tartars* of late have almost over-run all *China*. Beside its extent, the great number of its people, and the forces of this Kingdome, the soil is generally exceeding rich and fertile; and abounding in all things, and so divided by rivers and navigable *Channels*, that some have affirmed that there are as many River-boats in *China*, as in all the world besides.

They have all sorts of *graines* and *fruits*, except the *Olive*, and the *Almond*, instead of which they have many others not found elsewhere; and moreover their *graines*, *fruits*, as also their *plants* and *herbes* are far beyond ours in excellency and goodnes; and their *flowers* more beautiful and various then ours. This Country produceth all sorts of living creatures as *Beasts* and *Fowle*, both tame and wild; and so excellent, that the flesh of their *Camels*, *Mules*, *Asses*, *Dogs*, &c. are sweet, and good to eat; all provision is here found so plentiful that a fat *Cow* is not worth above ten shillings; a *Bufter* 2 Crown, a *Hogg* Two shillings; all sorts of *Fowle*, they sell by the pound, the common rate after their feathers are off, being not above Two pence; and *Fish* they have in such great plenty, as well in their Rivers as in the Sea, that they are not worth the selling. The like may be said of their *Graines* and *Fruits*, which are found in as great abundance; they have also as great plenty in divers rich Commodities, as in excellent *Sugar*, *Wax*, *Hony*, all sorts of *Spices*, several *Druggs*, *Rice*, *Wooll*, *Wines*; great quantities of *Silk* and *Cotton*, of which they make a great number of different *Manufactures*. They have all sorts of *Metalls*, but their *Gold* and *Silver* is of a lower Alloy then ours; and therefore it is that they so much esteem *English Gold*, and *Prisbills* and *Rialls* of *Spaine*: they have much *Rubarb* and *Amber*, quantity

They  
are  
the  
King  
of  
China

China  
land

In  
Fertility  
and  
Fruit.

Abundance  
of  
Cattle,  
Hony,  
and  
Figs.

Abund-  
ance  
in  
China

In  
Com-  
modities.

of *Musk, Civet*, which would be the best in the world, if they did not falsify it, their *Campfire* is not near so good as that of *Borneo*, and their *Pearles* are all *Barraques*: They have much *Saltpeter* with which they make, besides *Gunpowder*, a thousand devices and artificial fires. They have to great plenty of *Salt*, that the Custom only in the Town of *Canton* (as *Mr. Lewis Roberts* reports) doth bring in to the King 180 thousand *Ducats* yearly.

And though this Kingdome or Empire hath such great advantages for the support of a good trade, yet by reason of their shyness in dealing with strangers, scarce admitting them in, and their strict orders they observe to them, doth much lessen it.

They have abundance of very fine inventions, of which some are common with us, but which they had before us: as the disposition of their *Posts*, their *Paper* which they make of the bark of *Bambus* or *Canees*, but so thin, that it will bear Inke on both sides. In their writing they make use of *Pencils*, and not *Pens*, which by reason of the Smoothing of the Paper, they cut their *Characters* exceeding neat, their writing consisteth onely of *Characters*, which make so many *Syllables*, and the *Syllables* so many different names, whose significations are various, of these *Monosyllables* they have near 60 or 80000, they write from top to bottom, advancing their lines from the left hand to the right, and almost all their knowledge consists only in reading well. In their *Printing*, they are so expert, that they can take away, augment, or change as much or as little as they please in a moment. Their *Artillery* which they disdain by peices, and their *Chariots* which they make run with 2 *Saile*, &c. Their *Manufactures* of *Silk*, which they say they have had 3 or 4000 years. They make use of *Tables* and *Seates* when they ease, and of *Beds* when they repose, which their neighbours doe not. Their *Highways* are straight, paved, and cut sometimes out of the Mountains. They have *Salt*, which they extract from the Sea-water and from *Mines*. They make and substract their *Sugar*, *Honey* and *Wax*, from things, to wit, from *Bees*, from the fruite of certain *Trees*, and from certain little *wormes* they keep in those *Trees*, and this foris is the best, the whitest, and its *Candle* burnes the clearest of all.

Those things which they have most

particularly, are their *Drinks*, which they make with the leaves of certain *Shrubs*, *A Gumme*, and an excellent *Fernish*, which they get from the Barkes of *Trees*. Also their *Porcelaine*, which they make of Earth in the Province of *Quiamsi*, of which they make excellent *Cups*, *Dishes*, &c. far exceeding *Glass-Mettal*.

The *Chinoises* are for the most part well shaped, of a good Stature; they have commonly broad faces, flat noses, little eyes; they never cut the haire of their heads, but on the contrary they wear little or no *Beards*, and as to their complexion they differ according to the Climate under which they abide, as those in the Province of *Pequin* lying in the most Northern part of *China*, are of a faire complexion like the *English*, when as those towards the South, as in the Province of *Canton*, &c. are like the *Neres* of *Barbary*; their women are handsome, yet make use of Paint; they seldome are seen abroad.

They wear their *Garments* very long, with long loose sleeves, those of the Northern Provinces make use of *Furs*, and those of the Southern wear *Silk*, but persons of quality are tichly habited, and adorned with many *Pearles* and *Precious Stones*. They are great lovers of *Women*, as also of their bellies, commonly eating thrice a day, their dyet being good and cleanly dress, and they as neat in eating it, making use of *knives* and *forks*.

They are very ingenious, and much more industrious and Polite then their Neighbours, having the use and understanding of *Arts* and *Sciences*, both liberal and Mechanical, as *Philosophy*, *Physick*, *Astronomy*, concerning the *Heavens* and *Stars*, the *Eclipses* of the *Sun* and *Moon*, &c. in the which they have abundance of vain fancies. Also they are expert in *Musick*, and making of *Musical Instruments*, *Navigation*, *Architecture*, *Painting*, *Sculpture*, making of *Clocks*, casting of *Mettals* in *Images*, *Medalls* or the like, these with several other inventions too tedious to name, they had the benefit of before us; yet are they not in this perfection as they are with us. And as for *Armes*, they have their courage so low, that both the *Souldiers* and the *Commanders* submit themselves to the whip, when they have been wanting in their duty, so that it was said, that when the *Tartars* assaulted them, it justified them only to have shewed them the whip, to have

The Chinoises very ingenious.

Their way of writing.

Their skin and furs.

Their habit.

They are add to the Arts and Sciences.

Not good Examiners.

have put  
ans their  
slaves, c  
married  
ported t  
the wei  
and the  
same hu  
run then

More  
nious, c  
rors, fo  
Books w  
not pass  
without  
pen to e  
the Cou  
his first  
ther he  
hath not  
and give  
and Fish  
of *Fruit*

They  
and ente  
*Fruits*,  
other de  
cing, P  
for per  
state, f  
dayes.

They  
make g  
menym  
New ye  
also the  
joycing  
day fac  
Gods.

In th  
expens  
groome  
friends,  
certain  
gives h  
her frie  
her edu

The  
*Idolater*  
but wo  
*Devill*,  
*Soul*, a  
bliss, o  
*Purgat*  
tions up  
may ha  
they ha  
ing of t  
ders of



, which they  
ertain *Shrubs*,  
*Fernish*, which  
*Trees*. Also  
ey make of  
ams, of which  
*Dishes*, &c.

most part well  
; they have  
t noses, little  
haire of their  
y they weare  
to their crow-  
g to the Cli-  
e, as those in  
g in the most  
re of a faire  
when as those  
e Province of  
*Mores of Bar-*  
*and some*, yet  
ldome are seen

ts very long,  
those of the  
use of *Furs*,  
are *Silk*, but  
habited, and  
and *Precious*  
ers of *Women*,  
omonly eating  
ing good and  
atin eating it,  
ts.

, and much  
e then their  
e and under-  
sses, both li-  
*Philosophy*,  
cerning the  
clipses of the  
ich they have  
Also they are  
g of *Musical*  
*Architecture*,  
g of *Clocks*,  
*Medalls* or  
ther inventiv-  
y had the be-  
y not in that  
us. And as  
eir courage  
dierr and the  
elves to the  
m wanting in  
d, that when  
sufficed them  
the whip, to  
have

have put them to flight, as the *Scythians* their predecessors once served their slaves, who during their long absence had married their *Mistresses*. It is likewise reported that the *China horses* could not suffer the weighing of the *Tartarian Couriers*; and the *Chinese Cavaliers* being of the same humour, they were more likely to run then fight.

Moreover the *Chinese* are very ceremonious, courteous, and great complementors, for which they have several printed Books which they teach their children, not passing by any one that they know without kind salutations; and if they happen to spy any friend which comes out of the Country, besides their kind greeting, his first question will be to ask him whether he hath dined or supped; which if he hath not, he will carry him to a Tavern, and give him a treatment of *Flesh, Fowls, and Fish*, and if he hath din'd, a collation of *Fruits and Conserve*s.

They are also very costly in their Feasts and entertainments, as in variety of *Meats, Fruits, Preserves*, to which may be added other delights: as *Musick, Singing, Dancing, Plays*, and other pastimes. And for persons of quality they observe more state, some Feasts lasting about 15 or 20 dayes.

They have several dayes which they make great account of in Feasting and merriment, but above all others, their *New years day*, which is in *March*, where also their *Priests* are present at their rejoycings, adding to the solemnity of the day sacrifices which they make to their Gods.

In their *Marriages* they are also very expensive in their Feasts; for the *Bridegroom* receives no other portion from her friends, then what they bestow in their entertainments; but on the contrary, he gives her a portion, which she gives to her friends in thankfulness for their care in her education.

The *Chinese* may be held as *Pagans*, and *Idolaters*, not knowing the true Religion, but worshipping *Idols*; they invoke the *Devil*, they hold the immortality of the *Soul*, and after this life it goeth to eternal bliss, or torment, they also hold a kind of *Purgatory*, and that their friends and relations upon their prayers and supplications, may have some ease, for which purpose they have a day set apart for the performing of this ceremony. They have four orders of *Religions* men, they observe all

one fashion, but are distinguished by their colour; they all shave their beards and heads, they make use of *Beads*, and say their *Mattens*, &c. as the *European Monks* doe. *Mandelsloes* saith that they are much addicted to incantations and charms, not doing any thing of concernment, without they have first consulted it by their charms; and if they prove not according to their desire, they will rail and abuse their *Gods* with scurrilous language, sing them down, beat them, whip them, and tread upon them; but when their choler is asswayed, they will cogg with them, give them good words, and pretend sorrow: and if the charme favour them, then they offer to them *Geese, Ducks, boild Rice*, &c. These charms are commonly two small peices of wood, one side being flat, and the other being hollow, which they sing upon the ground; and if it happen that the round side of both, or of one is downwards, they take it for an ill omen, if uppermost, for good.

They believe that all things visible and invisible were created by Heaven, who by a *vicegerent* governs the universe, another who governs all *sublunary* things; they also add three principal Ministers, one looks to the production of *Fruits*, and the generation of *Men and Animals*, another governs the *Aire*, and causeth *Raine* &c. and the other governeth the *Waters and Sea*.

*Mandelsloes* saith also, that at their *Funerals* they have several ceremonies; as soon as any person is deceased, they wash his body, put on his best clothes, and set him in a chaire, where his *Wife, Children*, and other Relations kneeling down about him, take their leave of him, which done, they put him into the Coffin, set it upon a table, covering him with a winding sheet, which reaches to the ground, on which they draw the Picture of the deceased, where they leave him 15 dayes, during which time, in some other room they set on a Table *Wine, Fruit, and Lights*, for the *Frest* who watcheth, after which time, they carry the Corps to the Buriall place, his Relations commonly mourning for a yeare.

The Government of the Kingdome or Empire of *China*, is wholly at the power of the King, either to change, take away, or augment laws, when and as oft as he pleases; yet doth he not execute any rigorous lawes upon them, scarce acting or imposing any thing upon his subjects without

the

the Advice of his Council of State; besides this Council of State, he appoints others, as well for the Administration of Justice, as for the oversight of other affaires in the Kingdome; but they neither inflict any punishment to Criminals, or determine any thing of themselves, but make their report to the King, who decides the same.

They are very circumspect how they condemn any person, not passing their sentence, till the offence is found so clear, and evident, that the offender is not able to justify himself, they use fair means first for the finding out of the truth; and if that will not doe, they then inflict several tortures upon them; their executions are various and more cruel according to the offence committed, some being hanged, some they impale, some they burne, their greatest punishment is inflicted on theeves, which they much abhor. Debtors they imprison, for which purpose there being so many, there is in every great City several Prisons, in which they are strictly kept, and lookt unto, by reason of which that their lives may not be burthenome unto them, they have in their Prisons, Gardens, Courts, Walks, Fish-ponds, Drinking-houses, and Shops, which furnish the Prisoners with such things as they have occasion for.

The Dignity of the Crown of China is hereditary, falling to the eldest son of the King after his decease; the King they highly reverence, calling him the Son of Heaven, the Son of God, or the like, not that they think him so, but being the chiefest of men, they esteem him deare to the Gods, and as a gift of Heaven.

Kings of China, be admirers.

The Chinnis have many Books, and descriptions of their Kingdome: observing exactly all that their Provinces particularly possess: what is the extent, quality, and force of each, how many Cities they have, how many Officers, how many Men which Study, how many which bear Armes, who pay Tribute, and a thousand particularities, of which however writers have recounted to us but few things, scarce can we gather the Names of the 16 Provinces, and of some Cities and Rivers: these names being so diverse in severall Authors, that it is a difficulty to reconcile them; we will say something of them, giving them those names which seems to us best received.

They are your High priests of these new Countries.

CHINA is divided into two principal parts, Northerne, and Southerne:

The divi- on of Chi- na into these two parts.

there are six Provinces in the Northerne part, and ten in the Southerne: The River *Famchucquian* traverses these; and the River *Caramoran* those. Of the six Northerne parts, three are washed by the Sea, as *Leanton*, *Pequin*, and *Scianton*; and of these three, the two first touch the great Wall, or Mountraine; the three other Provinces are on the firme land; as *Sciantsi*, *Sciensi*, and *Honan*; likewise of these three, the two first touch the great Wall; amongst the ten Southerne ones, there are six on the Sea; three towards the East as *Nanquin*, *Checquian*, or *Ansheo* and *Fuquien*, and three towards the South, as *Canton*, *Quancy*, and *Tunnan*: the other four Provinces are up in the Land, and are called *Chamsi*, *Huquan*, *Suehuen*, and *Quichen*. And of these Provinces in order.

The Province of LEAOTON is almost quite separated from the rest of China: Its chief City bears the same name; this City, as also most of the Cities in China, is well built, and of one form, being square, and with good Walls made of Brick, and plastered over with *Porcelaine*, which renders it exceeding hard and strong; they are commonly broad, and having the benefit of several Towers, as well for beauty as defence. Its soile amongst other things produces the roote *Ginsen*, which preserves the well in health and strength, strengthens and restores health to the sick; they sell it commonly at double its weight of *Silver*. Its *Inhabitants* are less civilized then the rest of China, but more robustous, and proper for War. Its other places of most note are *Riches*, and *Chinbee*, and both seated on the Sea.

Province of Leanton describes

The Province of PEQUIN, though very fertile, yet by reason of the populousness of it, its chief City *Xumbienfu* by us called *Pequin*, being the abode of the King of China, for the Northerne Provinces, as *Nanquin* is for the Southerne, makes it that it can scarce furnish *Moyz*, *Wheat*, and *Rice*, necessary for the Kings House, for the Court, and for the *Militia*, which guards the Kings person, which are in an exceeding great quantity of persons, besides above 120000 families, which inhabit in the Cities, Towns, &c. in the said Province, it containing about 130 Cities, besides Townes and places of less note. A part of its Provisions are therefore brought from other Provinces; Its chief City as I said before, by us, bears the same name with the Province, of which, waving the

Province of Pequin, and its chief City.

the other following Mendez Travels That it Northw its Wall and 5 br made of quantity ther dete

This may ma another its breac to this a small with its every G ters wit give an out; to in a Boc Ordinar of the cording that ev of the each G much f

The (said) a rified w high, s lifters o into the these g very St Gates, on the Bells, tain, at walk t days t of all Here. 3300 times! Beas- Pagod the O and T four S mas, or Pa a Fair fold a ech, Ho

The City of Pequin, the

Northerne  
me: The  
hese, and  
Of the six  
hed by the  
Scianton;  
It touch the  
the three  
me land;  
likewise  
touch the  
Southerne  
three to  
Checianian,  
three to  
Quany, and  
Provinces are  
d Chamf,  
. And of

ON is al-  
est of China:  
name, this  
in China, is  
eing square,  
Brick, and  
which ren-  
rong; they  
ing the be-  
for beary  
other things  
h preserves  
strength-  
sick; they  
weight of  
s civilized  
re robust  
other pla-  
Chinches,

N, though  
the popu-  
mbienfa by  
ode of the  
herne Pro-  
Southerne,  
nith Maye,  
the Kings  
the Militia,  
which are  
of persons,  
which in-  
in the said  
30 Cities,  
is note. A  
re brought  
chief City as  
same name  
waving  
the

the others) I shall describe unto you, following the Description which *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto* hath observed in his Book of *Travels* into these parts, wherein he saith, That it is situated in the 41 degrees of the Northern Latitude; the circumference of its Walls being 30 Leagues, viz. 10 long and 5 broad, environed with a double Wall made of *Fras-stone*, where there are a great quantity of *Bulwarks* and *Towers* for sur-  
10 ther defence.

The City of  
Peking  
is  
situated  
in  
the  
41<sup>st</sup>  
degree  
of  
the  
North  
Latitude.

This Wall is so broad, that 12 *Horses* may march a breast, without touching one another, having its height answerable to its breadth, having 360 *Gates* for entrance to this City; to each *Gate* there is joynd a small *Fort*, composed of two high *Towers*, with its *Ditches* and *Draw-bridges*; and at every *Gate* there is a *Register* and four *Porters* with *Halberds*, who are obliged to give an account of all that pass in and out; to which end, they enter their names in a Book. These *Gates* (he saith) by the Ordinance of the *Tutan* or *Lord Steward* of the *Kings* household, are divided according to the 360 days of the year; so that every day in his turn, hath the Feast of the *Innovation* of the *Idol*, whereof each *Gate* bears the name celebrated with much solemnity.

The principal *Streets* in this *City* (he saith) are very long and broad, being beautified with fair *Houses* of two or three stories high, and inclosed at both ends with *Balusters* of *Iron* and *Lain*; the entrances into them, are through *Lanes* which cross these great *Streets*; and at the end of every *Street*, are great *Arches* with strong *Gates*, which are shut up every night; and on the top of these *Arches*, there are *Watch*  
40 *Bells*. Each of these *Streets* hath its *Captain*, and other *Officers*, who in their turns walk the *Round*, being obliged every ten days to make report into the *Town-house*, of all those that pass in their *Quarters*. Here are also (he saith) within this *City* 3300 *Pagodas* or *Temples*, wherein are continually sacrificed a great number of *Wilde Beasts* and *Birds*; the structures of these *Pagodas* are sumptuous, especially those of 50 the *Order* of the *Menegropas*, *Comquians*, and *Talagropas*, who are the *Priests* of the *Sour Sects* of *Xaca*, *Amida*, *Gizcan*, and *Camau*. Here are also about 120 *Piazones* or *Publick Places*, in each of which there is a *Fair* kept every *Moneth*; in which is sold all such things as the *Kingdom* afford-  
10 eth.

Here are in this *City* 360 *Butchers Shamb-*

bles, and in each of them about 100 *Stalls* or *Shops*, which are not onely furnished with all kinde of *Flesh* eaten amongst us, but also that of *Horses*, *Dogs*, *Tigers*, *Rhinocerets*, *Mules*, *Camels*, *Otters*, *Badgers*, &c. which they hold good and wholesom food: And besides these *Shambles*, there is scarce a *Street* without *Butchers-shops*, and in these places the choicest *Meat* is sold. He saith, there is also about 120 *Canals* or *Aqueducts*, which are about 12 fathom broad, and three deep, crossing through the whole length and breadth of the *City*, upon which there are about 1800 fair and rich *Bridges*, sustained on *Arches*.

There are some that hold this *City* to be 50 Leagues in circuit, and then they make account of another, which is without this *City*, which in length and breadth is answerable to the former, which anciently was all inhabited, but at present onely some *Boroughs* and *Villages*; as also many fair *Houses* and *Castles*, amongst which, there are 1600 which have great advantages over the rest, and are the *Houses* of the *Proctors* of the 1600 most remarkable *Cities* and *Towns* in this great *Empire*, who at the *General Assembly* of the *Estates*, which is here held every three years for the  
30 publick good, repair to this *City*.

Without this great *Inclosure*, which is not comprehended in the *City*, there is a distance of seven Leagues long, and three broad, 80000 *Tombs* of the *Mandarins*, which are small *Chappels*, which are exceeding rich edifices, being compassed about with *Balusters* of *Lain* and *Iron*, and enriched with *Gold* within, and their entries being through costly *Arches*. Nigh to these *Tombs* or *Chappels*, there are several large *Houses* beautified with pleasant *Gardens*, and high *Woods*, in which are several *Aqueducts*, *Fountains*, *Ponds*, &c. He saith also, that there are 500 very great *Palaces* which they call *The Houses of the Son of the Sun*; and in these *Palaces* all those that are no longer able to bear *Arms* for the *Emperor of China*, either by reason of old age, sickness, or any other infirmity; as also those that receive any hurt in his *Wars* retire, where they receive constant monethly pay for their subsistence: The usual number of these *Soldiers* are 100000. Within this *Inclosure*, he saith, there are 1300 stately *Houses* which are inhabited by *Religious Men* and *Women*, who make profession of the four principal *Laws* of the *Provinces* of the *Empire of China*, and these *Houses* are very populous, most  
X of

of them containing about 1000 persons. There are several other *Streets* of a large extent, as one about a League in length, in which do reside about 14000 *Taverners* that follow the *Court*; also another long *Street* of low *Houses*, inhabited by about 14000 *Car-men* which belong to the *Kings Panours*; as also a third, much like the two former, in which there are a great number of *Curtizans* abide, who are all under the Protection of the *Tutan* of the *Court*.

In this Inclosure, he saith, there are 32 great *Colledges*, in which, such as addict themselves to the Study of the *Laws* of the Empire of *China* do reside; and nigh to these *Colledges*, there is also, he saith, another building greater then the former, being about a League in circuit, where all those live that have taken degrees is well in their *Laws*, as in their *Theology*, &c. Here are also, he saith, a great number of fair and very large *Houses*, with spacious Inclosures, wherein there are pleasant *Gardens*, and very thick *Woods* which are full of all kinds of *Game*, as *Hawking*, *Hunting*, or the like. These *Houses* may be termed as *Inns*, whither continually do resort a great number of people of all *Sexes*, *Ages*, and *Conditions*, as to see *Plays*, *Combats*, *Bulbaitings*, *Wrestlings*, &c. Where there is also magnificent *Feasts* made by the *Tutans*, *Cherms*, *Conchays*, *Aytas*, *Bracalens*, *Chambins*, *Moutens*, *Lords*, *Gentlemen*, *Captains*, *Merchants*, and other rich men, for the entertainment of their *Friends* and *Kinred*. Some of these *Feasts* do last about ten days together, abounding in all sorts of excellent *Meats*, *Fruits*, and all varieties imaginable, together with *Musick*, and what else may seem pleasing to the fancies of the *Guests*.

These *Inns* are stately furnished with rich *Hangings*, *Cap-boards* of *Plate*, &c. and the attendance that wait at *Table*, are *Maids* ready to be married, being richly attired, and for the most part very handsome, by which means they gain *Husbands*. These *Inns*, he saith, do stand in about a Million of *Gold*, and are maintained by a *Company* of rich *Merchants*, who in way of *Traffick* do employ their *Money* therein, gaining far more then if they should employ it at *Sea*.

The *Walls* to this great Inclosure, are on the inside covered with *Fine Porcelain*, and on the *Fans* above, are many *Lions* Pourtrayed in *Gold*, as also in the *Squares*

of the *Sceptles*, *Erbellis* & with *Pillures*.

In this *City* the *Emper* hath his *Palace*, not inferior to any in the *East*, for richness, fairness, and largeness, being about a League in compass, strongly fortified with three good *Walls*, and as many *Ditches*: It hath four *Gates* which open upon two fair *Streets*; within the first *Wall*, Persons of quality are permitted to enter; within the second, the *Lords* of his *Council*; but within the third, none but *Women* and *Eunuchs* who attend about the *Kings* Person. In this great structure there are among other rich *Apartments*, about 80 *Halls*, four of which are esteemed the richest in the *World*.

Near to this *City* there is a *Prison* by them called *Kimanguibalen*, which (he saith) is about two Leagues square, it is encompassed with a very high *Wall* without *Battlements*, as also on the out-side a great *Ditch* full of *Water*, over which are several *Draw-Bridges*, which are in the night drawn up for security of the *Prison*. In this *Prison* are commonly 300000 *Prisoners*, which are for the most part condemned and banished persons, who for six years are to work about the repairing the great *Wall* of *China*.

And thus much for the *City* of *Pequin*; its other chief places are, first, *Tianchevay*; secondly, *Himpin*; and thirdly, *Chebio*, seated on a fair *River* about 70 Miles from the *Sea*.

The Province of *SCIANTON* or *XANTON* is between that of *Pequin* and *Nanquin*; it is well watered with *Rivers*, which makes it very fertile, abounding in so great plenty in all sorts of *Flesh*, *Fowl*, *Fish*, *Grains*, *Fruits*, &c. that the *Inhabitants* of the Province, which are esteemed about Seven Millions of Persons, cannot devour the increase, but are forced to furnish other Provinces, they have also great store of *Silk*, and other rich *Commodities*. It hath several great *Cities*, the chief of which are, first, *Xanton*, not far from the *Sea*; secondly, *Panmish*; thirdly, *Cinoyan*; and fourthly, *Linow*, seated in an Isle so called: Besides which, here are found in this *Sea*, nine other *Isles*, most of which do belong to this Province, and are well known, affording many of the *China* *Commodities*.

The Province of *SCIANSI* or *XANSI*, which *Purchas* calls *Cansu*, hath many *Mountains*, by reason of which it is not so fertile, as that of *Pequin*; neither

The Royal Palace.

A Prison full of Prisoners.

The Province of Scianton, its fertility, &c.

The Province of Sciansi, its fertility, &c.

ther is  
fane  
bitans  
but in  
of Cal  
it furn  
led Gr  
two so  
the oc  
be cal  
they n  
enough  
Mines  
sing fr  
well pr  
withou

In th  
great T  
able no  
2. Qui  
5. Cui  
well bu

The  
XEM  
Mendes  
of all t  
the grea  
fo is eff  
Nouns  
Tartars  
store of  
tle Rice  
Sheep  
Summer  
is the b  
Navel  
Hinde.

They  
among  
Mines,  
not open  
and Rhu  
fia, and  
this Pro  
from th

This  
well sto  
having  
Metropo  
3. Caus  
6. Quia  
note.

The  
Purchas  
the clis  
from M  
Sea, I  
World,  
rops, as

with  
hath his Pa-  
the East, for  
eneis, being  
strongly for-  
and as many  
which open  
the first Wall,  
cted to enter,  
of his Coun-  
none but Wo-  
nd about the  
structure there  
ments, about  
e esteemed the

The River  
of the  
1642.

is a Prison by  
which (he  
square, it is  
high Wall with-  
on the out-side  
over which  
which are in the  
of the Prison.  
y 300000 Pri-  
most part con-  
us, who for six  
re repairing the

A Prison  
of the  
1642.

City of Pequin,  
st, Tianschow,  
thiridly, Cichio,  
70 Miles from

ANTON or  
that of Pequin  
entered with Ri-  
tertile, abund-  
all sorts of Flesh,  
Es. that the  
ce, which are  
pas of Persons,  
but are forced  
they have also  
rich Commer-  
at Cities, the  
nton, not far  
mibus, thiridly,  
Lincon, feared  
s which, here  
ber Isles, most  
Province, and  
many of the

The Pro-  
vince of  
Anton,  
in former  
times.

IANSI or  
calls Cauca,  
ason of which  
Pequin, nei-  
ther

The Pro-  
vince of  
Iansi, in  
former times  
was called  
Cauca.

ther is it so large, so populous, nor so pleafant  
yet with the industry of the Inha-  
bitants it produceth *Corn, Rice, and Mays*;  
but in recompence it breeds great quantity  
of *Cattle*, and hath so many *Vines*, that  
it furnishes the whole Kingdom with *Pick-  
led Grapes*, and *Raisins*. It hath likewise  
two sorts of *Mines*, the one of *Brimstone*,  
the other of *Stones* which burn, and may  
be called *Coals*. In the *Sulphure Mines*  
they make little holes, to draw out heat  
enough to boyl any thing they need. The  
*Mines of Coals* are inexhaustible, increas-  
ing from time to time: And these *Coals*  
well prepared, will keep fire day and night  
without being touched.

In this Province are about 90 Cities and  
great Towns, six of which are of consider-  
able note, as, 1. *Sciensi*, its *Metropolis*;  
2. *Quinchio*; 3. *Hoquan*; 4. *Tiancen*;  
5. *Cenchio*; and 6. *Suchio*; all which are  
well built, and very populous.

The Province of *SCIENSI* or  
*XEMSI*, which *Purchas* calls *Soyohin*,  
*Menduca Sinsy*, is the most Westward  
of all the Six Northern Provinces, and  
the greatest of all the 16 Provinces; *Sigan-  
fo* is esteemed its chief City; the great  
*Mountain and Wall* doth bound it from the  
*Tartars*; the *Soyl* is dry, yet yields good  
store of *Wheat, Mays, and Barley*, but lit-  
tle *Rice*; it feeds much *Cattle*, and the  
*Sheep* are sheared thrice a year, in *Spring*,  
*Summer*, and *Autum*; their first shearing  
is the best: It yields *Musk*, which is the  
*Navel of a Beast* of the bigness of a  
*Hinde*.

They have *Gold*, which they gather  
amongst the *Sand* of the *Rivers*; for the  
*Mines*, though it hath some, yet they are  
not open. It produceth divers *Perfumes*  
and *Rhubarbe*, which they carry into *Per-  
sia*, and other places: And it is through  
this Province, that the *Caravans* come  
from the West.

This Province is very populous, and is  
well stored with great Towns and Cities,  
having Eight great Cities, as, *Siganfo*, its  
*Metropolis*, more spoken of; 2. *Tatsofo*;  
3. *Canchen*; 4. *Suchen*; 5. *Quitu*; and  
6. *Quiachio*; with a great many of less  
note.

The Province of *HONAN* which  
*Purchas* calls *Oymen*, is very fertile, and  
the climate very temperate; the freest  
from *Mountains*, and the farthest from the  
*Sea*. It produceth the best *Fruits* in the  
World, as well those known to us in *Eu-  
rope*, as others; and that in so great quan-

tity, that they are scarce valued. The  
River of *Caramoran* after having divided  
the Provinces of *Sciensi* and *Sciensi*, takes  
its course through the middle of *Honan*,  
and discharges it self in the Sea by the  
Province of *Nanquin*. It comprehendeth  
Seven great Cities the chief of which  
bears the name of the Province; its other  
chief places, are 1. *Temechio*, 2. *Sunichu*,  
3. *Caisun*, and 4. *Chinchio*, besides about  
One hundred less ones, all well inhabited,  
Hitherto we have surveyed the six North-  
ern Provinces of *China*; those ten that  
lie more to the South, are *Nanquin*, *Chen-  
quian*, *Puquian*, *Canton*, *Quancy*, *Tan-  
nan* on the Sea, *Chiansi*, *Huquan*, *Such-  
en*, and *Quichen* in the Land.

The Province of *NANQUIN* is the  
fairest and richest, and its Inhabitants the  
most civilized of all the Kingdom; and  
the Kings of *China* did always make their  
residence at *Nanquin*, till of late they have  
made it at *Pequin*. It comprehends 14  
great and fair Cities, viz. 1. *Umbsienfen*  
or *Nanquin*, which is the *Metropolis* of  
the Province *Niuki*, 2. *Sincen*, 3. *Kia-  
tin*, 4. *Xamhoj*, and 5. *Kamichi*, all which  
are very populous; some of which have  
about 300000 people, which onely work  
in making of *Calicoes*: All which are com-  
modiously seated on arms of the Sea,  
which make several Isles. And besides  
these 14 Cities, there are about 100 small  
ones, and of less note, which I shall for-  
bear to name: I shall onely speak some-  
thing as to the description of the City  
*Nanquin*, the *Metropolis* of this Province,  
and conclude it.

The Pro-  
vince of  
Nanquin  
is the  
Grim.

*Umbsienfen* or *Nanquin*, as we call it,  
yet ceases not to be the greatest, fairest,  
and richest City of the whole Kingdom,  
next to *Pequin*. The Form and Symmetry  
of its *Buildings* in its *Palace*, in its *Temples*,  
in its *Gates*, in its *Towers*, and in its *Bridges*,  
as likewise in its publick and particular  
*Mausies*, and their ornaments, are wonder-  
ful.

The City of  
Nanquin  
described.

This City is situate upon the River of  
*Batampina*, that is, *The power of Fish*, and  
upon an indifferenc high Hill; so that it  
commands all the Plains there adjacent.  
The circumference of the City is eight  
Leagues, that is, three long and one broad,  
all encompassed with a strong *Wall* of hew-  
ed *Stones*; about which; there are 130  
*Gates*; at each of which; there is kept a  
*Porter* with two *Halberdiers*, whose office  
is to take the names of every one that passeth  
every day in and out; and besides the  
strong



strong *Wall*, there are for further defence 12 *Fort*s or *Citadels*.

In this *City* there are accounted above 80000 *Houses*, besides 80000 *Mandarin-Houses*, 60 great *Market places*, 130 *Butchers Shambles*, each containing about 80 *Shops*, 8000 *Streets*, whereof 600 are fairer and larger than the rest, all which are broad, straight, and well-disposed, and are compassed about with *Balisters of Copper*: The *Houses* are about two stories high, and built of *Wood*, except those of the *Mandarins*, which are composed of *Hewed Stone*, and encompassed with *Walls and Ditches*, over which they have *Stone Bridges*, with rich *Gates and Arches*. The *Houses* or rather *Palaces of the Chacms, Achacys, Aytans, Tutons, and Chumbims*, which are *Governors of the Kingdoms or Provinces of the Empire of China*, under the Emperor, are stately structures of about 6 or 7 stories high, and richly adorned with *Gold*, in which are kept their *Magazines for Arms, Ammunition*; as also their *Treasuries*, their *Warehouses*, and their *Fine Porcelains*, which by them is so highly esteemed.

Here are about 1300 *Pagodes*, a thousand of which were *Monasteries* for Religious persons, which are exceeding rich. Here are also about 30 great *Prisons* which will contain about 2 or 3000 *Prisoners a-piece*: Also a great *Hospital* for the relief of the poor.

At the entrance of every principal *Street*, for the security of the *Inhabitants*, there are *Arches and Gates*, which are kept shut every night; and in most of the chief *Streets* there are pleasant *Fountains*.

In this *City* there is accounted about 10000 *Trades* for the working of *Silks*, which from thence are sent all over the Kingdom; which is every *New and Full Moon*, amongst divers other *Commodities*, are vendid at *Fairs* in several places of the *City*.

The *Traffic and Commerce* bring thither so great a multitude of people, that its *Streets* are scarce able to be pass'd for the throng. Its *Commodities* and *Manufactures* are in so great esteem, that they utter better than others; and all the Neighboring *Countreys* make a great number of *Manufactures*.

The *Revenue* which the *King* receives from this *Province* is exceeding vast; the *Inhabitants* paying in to his *Exchequer* Sixty Millions of *Croons* yearly; besides great *Exports* upon all *Commodities*; if *Mandates* may be believed; and if he re-

ceiveth so much out of one *Province*, judge what a vast *Revenue* he hath from all the *Provinces*, many of which are no ways inferior to this.

The *Province of CHEQUIAN* or *CEKIAN*, which *Purchas* calls *Chisiam*, passes likewise for one of the best *Provinces of China*. The pleasant *Rivers* which run through it, and the many good *Ports*, with its *Isles* it hath on the *Coast*, doth facilitate the utterance of its *Merchandizes*, and particularly, both *Raw Silk*, and prepared in *Thread*, and in *Stuffs*, which it distributes to the other *Provinces of China*, and throughout all the *World*; the other *Provinces of China*, not having enough for their use. Of this *Silk* there is one sort which is reserved to be employed in divers works mixed with *Gold*, with great art and curiosity, and those are only for the *Kings Palace*.

This *Province* hath about 70 *Cities*, of which, six are of considerable note, as *Quinsay*, now called *Hamcen*, once the *Metropolis of China*; 2. *Liampo*, a fair *City* seated on the *Sea*; 3. *Aucho* also commodiously seated on the *Sea*; 4. *Scanatan* an *In-land City*; 5. *Chequian* also an *In-land City*, but fair, well built, and frequented; and 6. *Suen*, seated on the *Sea*, and about 25 *Leagues* from the *City of Nanquin*.

All which, are fair, strong, well built, and very populous *Cities*, but not comparable to *Quinsay*, of which, a word or two.

*Quinsay* or *Hamcen*, as I said before, was once the *Metropolis of China*, being (if we may give credit to *Authors*) 100 *Miles* in circuit, and having in the midst thereof, a *Lake* of about 30 *Miles* in compass, in which are two fair *Islands*, and in them two stately *Palaces* adorned with all necessaries, either for *majesty* or *convenience*. This *Lake* is nourish'd with abundance of pleasant *Rivers* which run through the *City*, on which are said to be above 12000 *Bridges*; the *City* having variety of stately *Palaces*. Its *Houses* as well private as publick, are fair and well built, having abundance of *Pagodes*; the *Streets* large, well ordered and paved with *Flint-stone*: To this *City* are said to belong about 10000 *Sail* of great and small *Ships*, which are inhabited by *People*, who there negotiate their affairs, and remove from one place and *City* to another, as their occasions serve them. There are said to be in this *City* about 15000 *Priests*, and besides

beside  
there  
are  
in  
this  
C  
come  
hath  
n

The  
great  
built,  
stately  
the  
A pla  
the gr  
pafs h  
goods.  
The  
Forests  
which  
Silk, c  
they su  
in Euro  
Alo

seated  
very co  
am, wh  
as many  
lie sever  
Its oth  
3. A  
which a

The

CHIN  
quin an  
tuated.

pair thi  
gers, a  
Philipp  
is direc  
Earth p  
Calamb  
cious St  
Silk and  
Manufa  
of Pape

The  
of note  
ed on a  
from th  
diously  
Sea, fr  
League  
5. Chi  
far with

The  
all Sava  
Forests  
ers and  
the Co  
The A

Province, Judge  
math from all the  
h are no ways in-

EQUIAN or  
as calls *Esiram*,  
the best Provin-  
*Rivers* which  
many good *Ports*,  
the *Coast*, doth  
is *Merchandizes*,  
Silk, and pre-  
Staffs, which it  
vinces of *China*,  
World, the other  
t having enough  
t there is one fort  
employed in divers  
with great art  
are only for the

out 70 Cities, of  
derable note, as  
*Lampo*, a fair  
3. *Aucheo* also  
the Sea; 4. *Seo*;  
5. *Chequian* also  
well built, and  
ru, seated on the  
es from the City

strong, well built,  
s, but not com-  
which, a word or

as I said before,  
of *China*, being  
to *Authors*) 100  
aving in the midst  
30 Miles in com-  
ir *Islands*, and in  
adorned with all  
ajesty or conveni-  
pounded with a-  
*Rivers* which run  
hich are said to be  
the City having  
s, Its *Houses* as  
are fair and well  
of *Pagodes*, the  
and paved with  
y are said to be  
of great and small  
ed by *People*, who  
irs, and remove  
to another, as  
There are said  
000 *Priests*, and  
besides

besides the vast number of *Inhabitants* there, are about 60000 persons, which are employed in working of *Silk*: But this City, since *Pequin* and *Nanquin* are become the Residence of the *King* and *Court*, hath much lost its former splendor.

This Province is observed to have a great number of *Temples* magnificently built, and the *Lake Sihw* bordered with stately *Palaces*, and encompassed with little *Hills* covered with *Trees* and rare *Plants*. A place so pleasant and delightful, that the greatest and richest of the Province pass here their time, and expend their goods.

There are also in this Province whole *Forests* of *Mulberry-trees*, by reason of which they have the greatest product of *Silk*, of any Province in *China*; which they furnish several Kingdoms with, as well in *Europe*, as in *Asia*.

Along the Coast of this Province are seated several *Isles*, some of which are very considerable, as *Moebofa* and *Sunkiow*, which is about 25 Leagues broad, and as many long, nigh to the shore of which, lie several others, but of a lesser bigness. Its other *Isles*, are 1. *Swan*, 2. *Olepie*, 3. *Avarella*, and 4. the *Isles of Chapefi*, which are a Body of several small *Isles*.

The Province of *FUQUIEN* or *CHINCHBO* is not so fertile as *Chequin* and *Canton*, between which it is situated. Its *Inhabitants* endeavor to repair this default by their *Trade* with *Strangers*, and principally with *Japan*, the *Philippines*, *Fermosa* or *Fair Island*, which is directly opposite to their *Coast*. The *Earth* produceth *Gold*, *Iron*, *Steel*, *Sugar*, *Calamba*, *Spices*, *Drugs*, *Quick-silver*, *Precious Stones*, *Fruits*, *Grains*, and *Cattle*; also *Silk* and *Cotton*, of which they make divers *Manufactures*; as also they make all sorts of *Paper*.

There are in this Province several *Cities* of note, but its chief are 1. *Fuchen*, seated on a fair *River* not above 17 Leagues from the *Sea*; 2. *Chincheo*, also commodiously seated on a fair *River* or *Arm* of the *Sea*, from which it is distant about 10 Leagues; 3. *Tacheo*, 4. *Huquo*, and 5. *Chiamchin*, which two last are seated far within *Land*.

The *Inhabitants* of *Fermosa* are almost all *Savages*; the *Spaniards* have built one *Fortress* on the East side, and the *Hollanders* another on the West side, and towards the *Continent*, which they call *Zealand*. The *Air* is temperate, and healthful, which

makes the Province become very populous; and also the *Coast* are seated several *Isles*, as *Lanquin*, *Babonin*, &c.

The Province of *CANTON* or *QUANTUNG*, though one of the least Provinces of *China* in extent, yet by reason of the goodness of its *Soyl*, and the conveniency of its situation, being the first that presents it self to those of *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*, which come to *China*. It a bounds in *Wheat*, *Rice*, and other *Grains*, *Sugar*, *Gold*, *Precious Stones*, *Pearls*, *Steel*, *Quick-silver*, *Silk*, *Salt-peter*, *Calambacwood* and *Copper*, *Iron* and *Tinn*, of which they make curious *Vessels*, which they varnish with *Charam*, and which are brought to *Europe*. They make also the *Barrels* of their *Guns* in that nature, that though they are never so much laden, yet they do not break.

The *Inhabitants* are very civil, industrious, and ingenious, but they are better in imitation than invention; being in the first to great masters, that there is no rarity or manufacture whatsoever that comes to their sight, but they will exactly pattern as well as the *Europeans*; and in all manner of *Goldsmiths* work they far exceed them.

In this Province are observed to be three things which are not in the other Provinces, that is, *Men* which Spit *Blood* continually; *Mountains* without *Snow*; and *Trees* always *Green*.

In this Province are about 80 *Cities* both small and great, the chief whereof are 1. *Quangcheu* or *Canton*, under which I shall include the *Trade* of *China* as being the chiefest place of *Traffick*. It is well built, of great *Traffick*, rich, and very populous; to which the *Portugals* have a great *Trade*, being commodiously seated on an *Arm* of the *Sea*.

The *Commodities* here found, are *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Spices*, *Drugs*, *Wines*, *Silk*, and *Cotton*, of which they make abundance of *Manufactures*; all sorts of *Metals*, *Sugar*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Rice*, *Wool*, *Rubarb*, *Amber*, *Musk*, *Civet*, *Camphire*, *Porcelaine*, *Paper*, &c.

Their *Raw Silk* is of three sorts, and known by so many names; among which the best is the *Lankin*, the next is the *Fucan*, and the worst is the *Lankam*; and these do alter in prices according to the goodness; the best sort being dearest, and the worst cheapest.

*Commodities* most vendible here, are *Rials* of *Spanish*, *Wines* of *Spain* and *India*, *Olive Oyl*, *Fine Woollen Cloth*, among which,

which, *Scarlet* is esteemed the best, by reason they have none: *Velvets, Elephants, Teeth, Looking Glasses, Drinking Glasses, Ivory, Chrystal, &c.*

The *Money* here, and throughout all *China*, is a *Ticall* of *Gold*, which is valued at 12 *Rials* of *Spanish*, but their more common *Money*, and of which they make payments for their buying and selling of *Commodities*, is *Gold* or *Silver* without either *Stamp* or *character*, and is not the peculiar *Coin* of any *Prince*; but being brought to the assay of the *Country*, passes at a valuable rate amongst them: Which *Money*, be it either *Gold* or *Silver* (which considering the difference, is all one as with us; 22 *Shil.* in *Silver* is as good as a 20 *Shil.* piece in *Gold*) they cut in pieces: For which purpose, every *Man* carrieth about him a pair of *Sheers* to cut and divide the *Money*; as also *Scales* and *Weights* to weigh it, and so proportion his *Money* according to the value of the *Commodities* he buyeth.

The *Common Weight* here used is the *Bahar*, and this *Weight* doth much differ in several places; as the common *Bahar* of *China* is 300 *Catties*, which is the same as 200 *Catties* small weight in *Mallacca*, which is held to be 386 *li. English*, but by some is to be 400 *li. English*.

A *Cattie* of *China* is 16 *Taels*, which at *Mallacca* is but 14 *Taels*, which is esteemed to be 20 *ounces Haberdepou*; and according to this rate, the said *Bahar* is about 390 *li. Haberdepou English*.

A *Hand* is 12 *Catties*, small weight. A *Cattie* is 22 *Taels*, and a *Tael* is 1 *ounce Haberdepou English*, and being this way reduced, it is 42 *li. Haberdepou*. 16 *Hands* and 8 *Catties* makes 200 *Catties*, which is the *Bahar* in small weight.

As for their *Measures* I have no certain knowledge of; wherefore I willingly omit it.

2. The Island and City of *AMACAO* is seated opposite to the City of *Canton*, on the North side of a *Bay*, which is at the mouth of the great River of *Canton*, which issueth out of the Lake of *Quancy*. This place is inhabited by the *Portugals*, intermixed with the Natural *Chinois*; their particular *Trade* is with the City of *Canton*, which may be counted the *Staple* of all the *China Commodities*, whether they are permitted to come twice a year, at which times there are *Fairs* kept for the vending of their *Commodities*, which they carry to *Mallacca, Goa*, and so into several

parts of *Europe*. But though they are admitted the liberty of *Trade*, yet are they denied the freedom of lying in the City at nights, neither to enter the *Walls* without setting down their names in *Books*, which are kept by persons at each *Gate* for the same purpose, which when they depart at night, they cross out.

Its other chief places are 1. *Xanquin*, a *Maritime City*, 2. *Luichen*, also seated on the Sea, very commodious for *Traffick*, and opposite to the Isle of *Agnan*, from which it is distant about 5 Leagues; 3. *Lampaca* also seated on the Sea; and 4. *Nanbium* seated far within Land, and among the Mountains which parts this Province from *Chiamsi*.

The Isle of *ATNAN* is also comprehended under this Province, and is the greatest of all the Islands that belong to *China*. It is distant from *Amacao*, on the South 50 or 60 Leagues; it is almost as long as broad, having 50 Leagues from South to North, where it almost joyns upon the Southern Coast of *China*; and on the other side regards *Cochinchina*. It abounds in *Grains, Fruits, Tame and Wilde Beasts*: The Sea hath *Pearls, Lignum Aquila* and *Calamba*. Their *Craw-fish* taken out of the Water, die, and grow hard like a *Stone*, which being reduced to *Powder*, serves for a remedy against many diseases. The Earth hath *Mines of Gold and Silver*, for which the *Inhabitants* care little. In the midst of the Island, the People are likewise half *Savages*. The chief City is *Kincensen*, seated on the *Sea-shore*, and regarding the Province of *Canton*.

The Province of *QUANCY*, which *Purchas* calls *Guanfa*, enjoys the same temperament with *Canton*, yields the same *Commodities*, and with the same plenty; but is not so much frequented by *Merchants*, nor hath scarce any confluence of *Strangers*, the reason is, because its *Rivers* loose and discharge themselves all in the Province, and at the City of *Canton*, which forces them to pass through the hands of those of *Canton*, to utter their *Merchandizes*, and receive those of others.

In this Province there are Ten large Cities, of which, *Quancy* is chief, all well built and very populous, besides about 100 small ones.

The Province of *ZUNNAN*, which *Purchas* calls *Yanaw*, is the last on the South Coast, where it is washed by the *Gulf of Cochinchina*; and on the West, where it touches on the Kingdom of *Tu-*

quin,  
Mount  
China,  
to go  
those c  
hath M  
redder.  
hath se  
Beside  
into oc

This  
of sm  
which  
and Hi  
is in fo  
The  
are sto  
Silk,  
excell

The  
A M S  
to the  
Chequi  
Mount  
to the  
cularly  
Mount  
course  
which

quin,  
wer of  
tain:  
taken  
borne  
the M  
other  
Provin  
mous  
quin, a

Mon  
that a  
ed to  
other  
fortune  
Provin  
Water  
The E  
beaten  
the tin  
Azur  
Yellow

Int  
sides a  
being  
is Qui  
places  
3. Nan  
The  
abunda

The  
Coun.

The  
Weight.

The Grand  
City of  
Canton  
and  
its Trade.

The  
Appo  
struction  
d. m.

The  
of  
fish,  
fish  
fish

The  
of  
Quancy  
and  
the  
fish

The  
of  
Zunnan  
and  
the  
chief  
part  
of  
it

gh they are ad-  
e, yet are they  
ing in the City  
the Walls with-  
ames in Books,  
at each Gate for  
when they de-  
t.

re 1. *Xanquin*  
ben, also seated  
odious for *Tras-*  
: Isle of *Aynan*,  
out 5 Leagues,  
n the Sea; and  
ielin Land, and  
which parts this

is also compre-  
nce, and is the  
that belong to  
*Amacao*, on the  
; it is almost as  
o Leagues from  
almost joyns up  
China, and on  
*chinchina*. It a-  
*Tame* and *Wilde*  
*urils*, *Lignum A-*  
*Craw-fish* taken  
and grow hard like  
duced to *Powder*,  
ast many diseases.  
*Gold* and *Silver*,  
is care little. In  
e People are like-  
e chief City is  
*Sea-bore*, and re-  
Canton.

*ANCT*, which  
ys the same rem-  
yields the same  
the same plenty,  
ueated by *Mer-*  
ny confluence of  
because its *Rivers*  
nselfes all in the  
of *Canton*, which  
ugh the hands of  
e their *Merchan-*  
of others.  
e are Ten large  
y is cheif, all  
us, besides about

*YNAN*, which  
the last on the  
d washed by the  
d on the West,  
ngdom of *Tan-*  
*quin*;

*quin*; and on divers People beyond those  
Mountains which inclose the West of  
*China*. The *Women* have here the liberty  
to go in publick to buy and sell, which  
those of other parts of *China* do not. It  
hath *Mines* which yield a kinde of *Amber*  
redder, and less pure then ours; but which  
hath some particular vertue against *Fluxes*.  
Besides this, it transports few *Merchandizes*  
into other parts.

This Province hath likewise good store  
of small and great Cities, the cheif of  
which bears the name of the Province,  
and *Hilan*, seated on a *Lake* so called, which  
is in form of a *Crescent*.

The *Commodities* that are here found,  
are store of *Gold*, *Yellow Amber*, *Agats*,  
*Silk*, *Musk*, *Rubies*, *Sapphires*, *Benjamin*,  
excellent *Horses*, *Elephants*, &c.

The Province of *CHIAMS I* or *KI-*  
*AMSI*, which *Purchas* calls *Lansay*, is  
to the North of *Canton*; to the West of  
*Chequian* and *Fuquien*; it is inclosed with  
*Mountains*, which have their passages open  
to the Neighboring Provinces, and particu-  
larly on the Coast of *Canton*. On the  
*Mountain* of *Mulin* there is a great con-  
course for the carriages of *Merchandizes*,  
which are transported from *Canton* to *Nan-*  
*quin*; which is done by mounting the *Ri-*  
*ver* of *Canton*, unto the foot of the *Mount-*  
*ain*: From whence the carriages being  
taken out of the *Vessels*, are loaden, and  
borne upon *Mens* backs to the other side of  
the *Mountain*, where there is found an  
other navigable *River*, which crosses the  
Province *Kiamsi*, till it falls into the fa-  
mous *Famchuquiam*, which leads to *Nan-*  
*quin*, and the *Sea*.

Moreover, this Province is so peopled,  
that a part of its *Inhabitants* are constrain-  
ed to spread themselves through all the  
other Provinces of *China*, to seek their  
fortune. It is in one of the Cities of this  
Province that they make *Porcelaine*; the  
Water here being fit to give it perfection:  
The Earth is fetched from other places,  
beaten and fashioned at the same time;  
the tincture they most commonly apply, is  
*Azure*; some lay on *Vermilion*, others  
*Yellow*.

In this Province are 12 great Cities, be-  
sides about 60 small ones, its cheif City  
being called *Nanciam*, seated on a *Lake*, as  
is *Quianbanfu* and others. Its other cheif  
places, are 1. *Chilon*, 2. *Quinchin*, and  
3. *Nangam*.

The Province of *HUQUAM* is so  
abundant in *Rice*, that it is able to furnish

a good part of *China*: It is likewise rich  
in *Oyls* and *Fish*. The *Famchuquian*, and  
many other *Rivers* and *Lakes* cross it on all  
sides, and carry its *Commodities* towards  
*Nanquin*, and to *Quinchen*.

It is very populous, containing 15 great  
Cities, and about 100 small ones, the  
cheif of which are, 1. *Ambian*, 2. *Qu-*  
*techio*, 3. *Miamu*, and 4. *Pasciu*.

10 The Province of *SUCHUEN*, which  
*Mendoza* calls *Susuan*, *Purchas*, *Soin*, is  
one of the lesser Provinces of the King-  
dom; it is high situated, and pours down  
its *Rivers* into the Neighboring Provinces.  
Here is found good store of *Yellow Amber*,  
and excellent *Rhubarb*.

Its cheif Cities are in number 8, toge-  
ther with about 120 lesser ones; all which  
are exceeding populous, the cheif bearing  
the name of the Province,

The last of the Provinces I have to  
treat of, is *QUICHEU* or *QU I-*  
*CHEO*, or likewise *Cutchen*, according  
to *Purchas*. It borders on the people *Ti-*  
*macoves*, *Guyes*, the Kingdom of *Ciocan-*  
*gue*, and the people called *Layes*: Here is  
that famous *Lake Cincui-Hai*, from whence  
come divers *Rivers* which water *China*.  
They make here quantity of *Arms* of all  
sorts, to serve against those people which  
border upon them, which once belonged  
to *China*; but which now, for the most  
part, are enemies to it.

This Province is Hilly and uneven,  
which makes it not very fertile in *Corn*,  
*Fruits*, &c. but it hath abundance of *Quick-*  
*silver*; and also it breeds the best *Horses* of  
any Province in all *China*.

Cities in this Province are very few,  
there being not above 15, both small and  
great; the cheif of which, are 1. *Qui-*  
*chuo*, seated on the *River Tanchuquian*;  
2. *Toziobh*, seated also on the said *River*;  
3. *Liamu*; 4. *Cipan*; 5. *Panbun*; and  
6. *Hianchoan*.

All these Provinces, or rather all these  
Kingdoms of *China* are governed by di-  
vers *Magistrates*, which those of *Europe*  
call in general *Manderins*. These are per-  
sons that have *Patents*, whom the King or  
cheif Officer of *State* doth chuse; after  
*knowledge* of their capacity and honesty,  
the degrees given to *Students*, the general  
and particular *Governments*, the charges of  
the *Militia*, the receipts of, and managem-  
ent of *Revenues*, the building and repairing of  
*Publick Buildings*, the *Civil* and *Criminal*  
*Justice*, are in their hands. And there are  
*Appeals* from one to the other, according

The Pro-  
vince of  
Suchuen  
& forbid.

The Pro-  
vince of  
Quicheu,  
and its  
cheif pla-  
ces.

The Pro-  
vince of  
Aynan

The Pro-  
vince of  
Mulin

The Pro-  
vince of  
Kiamsi

The Pro-  
vince of  
Huquam

to the order and nature of *Affairs*. The *Council of Estate* always resides near the Person of the *King*, and hath a general eye over the Kingdom.

But it shall suffice; what we have said of *China*, let us finish by saying, That we have described it as it was before the *Tartars* made an irruption in 1618. These *Tartars* kept it wholly for some years, since which the *Chinois* have repulsed them, and have established their former estate, receiving likewise *Christianity*, with hopes of great fruits and progress; but of late they have broke into *China* again, and have committed great spoils.

The Isles about China.

Besides the Isles already spoken of, here are about the Coast of *China*, several others, as the Isle of *Corey*, in the Gulf of *Nanquin*, of good account, and well frequented, affording many of the *China* Commodities. It is of a large extent, being 100 Leagues in length, and about 50 in breadth: Its chief places, are, *Tauxem*, seated on the Northern part of the Isle, regarding the Province of *Leaton*; from which it is parted by a Streight or Gulf, not above two Leagues broad. 2. *Corey*, seated on the Gulf of *Nanquin*, Southernly. 3. *Taswan*, also seated on the Sea Eastwards; and on the South of this Isle are seated a Body of several Isles, called the Isles of *Larros*. Likewise the Isles of *Fuego*, *Lequin Grande*, *Les Roys Magges*, the Isles of *Peschours* or *Fishers*; of *Pakan* or *Formosa*; of *Tabaco Miguel*, and *Tabaco Xima*.

## TARTARY.

Tartary, its siting.

**T**ARTARY or TARTARIA is seated in the most Northern part of all *Asia*, and extends it self from East to West, from the River *Volga* and *Obj*, which separates it from *Europe*, unto the Streight of *Fesso*, which separates it from *America*; and from South to North, from the *Caspian Sea*, the River *Gehon*, and the Mountains of *Caucasus* and *Ussute*, &c. which divides it from the more Southernly part of *Asia*, unto the Northern, Frozen, or *Scythian* Ocean.

In length and breadth.

It reaches in length from the Ninetieth unto the One hundred and eightieth degree

of *Longitude*, which is the half of our *Hemisphere*; and in breadth, from the Thirty fifth or Fortieth, unto the Seventieth or Seventy two degree of *Latitude*; which is half the breadth of all *Asia*. So that it may contain 1500 Leagues from West to East, and 7 or 800 from North to South.

Its Position is almost entirely in the *Temperate Zone*; nevertheless, its more Southern parts being in the midst of this *Temperate Zone*, and the rest advancing to the Cold or Frozen; and its Southern parts being almost all bounded with very high *Mountains*, which keeps off the heat of the mid-day Sun, and renders it more cold towards the North: We may say, that *Tartary* in general, hath its temperature much more cold then temperate.

Its Neighbors are the *Moscovites*, on the West; the *Persians*, the *Indians*, or the *Mogolls*, and the *Chinois*, on the South; the rest is washed by that *Sea*, of which we have little knowledge; some place towards the East, the Streight of *Anian*, which should separate it from *America*; others the Streight of *Fesso*, which divides it from the Land or Isle of *Fesso*, which is between *Asia* and *America*, as we shall declare after *Japan*: Some esteeming the Northern Ocean in one manner, and some in another.

The name of *Tartaria* is apparently taken from the River, *Quarter*, or *Hord* of *Tartar*; from whence these people being issued, have over-run and made themselves known in all parts of *Asia*: Others take it from the word *Tatar* or *Totar*, which in the *Syriack* signifies Remnant or *Forsaken*, because they esteem them the Remnant of the *Fews*, of which, *Ten Tribes* were transported into *Media* by *Salmanzer*. They must then adde, that these *Ten Tribes* passed from *Media* into *Scythia*, which is not observed by the *Ancients*. However it be, the *Persians* yet call this Country *Tartar*, and its people *Tatarons*, the *Chinois*, *Taquin*.

The People which possess this Country, differ something from one another, as well in *Personage*, as in *Religion* and *Manners*; but for the most part they are of an indifferent *Stature*, ugly *Countenances*, thick *Lips*, hollow *Eyed*, flat *Noses*, broad *Faced*, very strong, stout, valiant, and good *Warriers*, very active, vigilant, and exceeding quick of *Foot*, patient in all *Afflictions*; they are very rude, barbarous, and revengeful, not sparing their *enemies*, who in revenge,



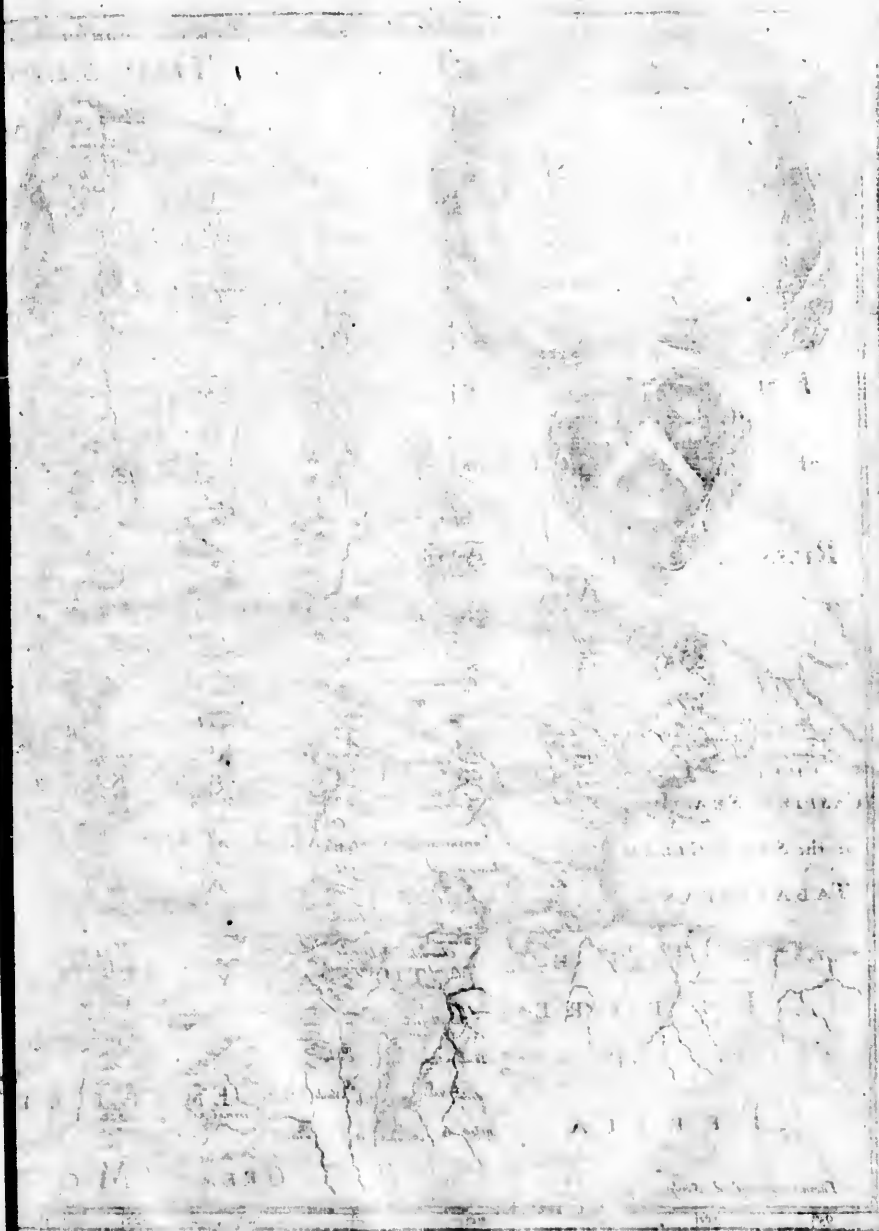
the half of our  
breadth, from the  
North unto the Seven-  
tee of Latitude,  
of all Asia. So  
about Leagues from  
the North

entirely in the  
Northern hemispheres, its more  
the midst of this  
West advancing to  
and its Southern  
bounded with very  
steeps off the heat  
it renders it more  
temperate. We may say,  
that its tempera-  
ture is temperate.

*Moscovites*, on the  
North, the *Indians*, or the  
on the South;  
at Sea, of which  
some place to  
the North of *Anian*,  
from *America*,  
the *Sea*, which divides  
the *Sea*, which is  
the *Sea*, as we shall  
define esteeming the  
manner, and some

*Siberia* is apparently  
the *Quarter*, or *Horde* of  
these people being  
made themselves  
the *Tatars*: Others take it  
the *Tatars*, which in the  
or *Forsaken*, be-  
the *Remnant* of the  
*Tribes* were trans-  
ferred to *Manzer*. They  
the *Ten Tribes* passed  
which is not ob-  
However it be,  
Country *Tatar*,  
the *Chinese*, *Ta-*

lets this Country,  
the *Tatars*, as well  
the *Manners*,  
they are of an indiffe-  
rent, thick Lips,  
broad Face,  
and good War-  
rior, and exceeding  
in all Afflictions,  
cruel, and revenge-  
ful, who in re-  
venge,





To y<sup>e</sup> Worshipfull  
 Roger Vaughan of Brewardin and Maccles in  
 the County of Hereford Esq<sup>r</sup>  
 This Map is humbly Dedicated  
 by Rich: Blome

EMPIRE  
 of  
 RUSSIA

EMPIRE  
 of  
 PERSIA

GREAT MOGOL

Thomas Blomeford Sculp

97 100 105 110 115 120 125 130 135 140

THE SEPTENTRION

SOOTHICK

ART

S

CAVON

CK

TI

CAVON

TI

CAVON

TI

CAVON

TI

CAVON

TI

CAVON

TI

CAVON

TI

CAVON

TI

CAVON

TI

THE SEPTENTRIONAL GLACICK and

SOUTHERN OCEAN or the

TARTARIAN

SEA

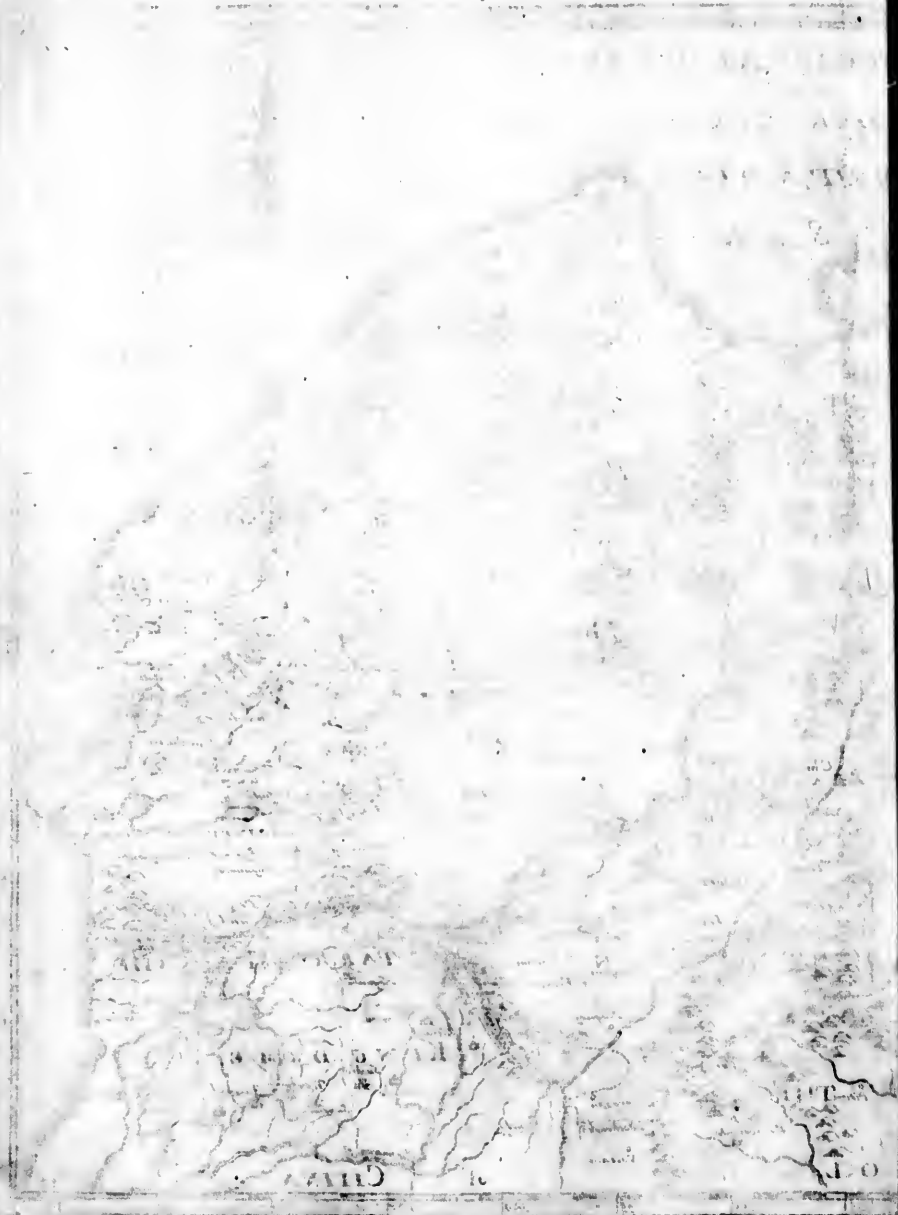
*A General Map of the Kingdoms of TARTARIA Designed by Monsieur Savelle Geographer to the French King and translated into English by Rich. Blome by his Ma<sup>ty</sup>s Special Command London printed for Rich. Blome*

THE

TARTARIAN

SEA





ven  
Bl  
at t  
the  
read  
ver  
and  
Pri  
ly F  
the  
fluc  
che  
I  
rally  
abou  
then  
their  
nism  
as to  
plan  
were  
the  
St.  
late  
oneh  
feet  
the  
Chr  
T  
ly d  
are n  
sport  
sure  
with  
T  
is Ty  
being  
their  
away  
much  
shade  
God,  
who  
Just  
ever  
His  
great  
fish  
dare  
by h  
is e  
King  
as a  
Cou  
he t  
Lon  
A  
Cha

venge, they eat, first letting out their *Blood*, which they keep using it as *Wine* at their *Feasts*.

Their *Habit* is very mean, which is for the most part made of coarse *stuff*, which reaches but to their *knees*; yet are they very proud, despising all other *Nations*, and thinking their *Cham* to be the greatest *Prince* in the world; Whom they greatly *Fear* and *Reverence*, being no better than his *slaves*. They are very nasty and flutish, much given to *drinke*, of a treacherous and thevish nature.

In matters of *Religion*, they are generally *Pagans*, and *Mahometans*, which about the year 1246. crept in amongst them, which since hath spread it self over their *Country*, and intermixing with *Paganisme*; yet hath it not so much prevailed as to extinguish *Christianity* which was first planted amongst the *Scythians* (which were the ancient people of *Tartary*) by the preaching of two of the Apostles, *St. Philip*, and *St. Andrew*, which of latter years hath much lost it self, and not onely by the prevailing of the *Nestorian* sect, but chiefly for want of instructing the *People* in the true *Orthodoxal* points of *Christian Religion*.

Their *Food* is meane, and very flutishly drest, yet use they entertainments; they are much given to *Hawking*, and other sports; But not much to *Arts* or *Littrature*; the *Women* are much of the nature with the *Men*.

The *Government* as *Heylin* observeth, is *Tyrannical*, their great *Cham* or *King* being *Lord* of all, in whose brest lyeth their *Laws*, taking the *Estates* and *Lives* away of whom he pleaseth, whom they so much *Reverence* that they call him the *Shadow of Spirits*, and *Son of the Immortal God*, and esteem him the *Monarch* of the whole *World*. In their execution of *Justice* they are very severe, punishing every small offence with *suddaine death*. His *Revenue* without doubt must be very great, for besides the sole trade of *Pearl-fishing*, which upon pain of death, none dares to *Fish* for besides those employed by him, also all the *Gold* and *Silver* that is either found in, or brought into the *Kingdome*, he doth assume to himself, as also the tenth of all things that the *Country* doth produce, and also what els he thinketh fit, as being as I said before, *Lord* over them all.

As concerning the forces that the great *Cham* is able to raise, they may be supposed

to be very great, by that which may appear by *Tamerlanes Army*, which consisted of a *Million* and two hundred thousand horse and foot; besides if we consider what a disturber he hath been, and how he hath enlarged his *Territories* of his *Neighbours*, as the *Chinois*, the *Moscovites*, &c. we may judge him powerful; but as his power is great on *Land*, it is as weake by *Sea*, scarce being *Master* of any *Ships*, and as little doth he regard them, though other *Princes* esteem them as a great security to their *Kingdoms*.

I shall divide all *Tartary* into five principal parts; which are, *Tartaria* the *Desart*; *Usbeck* or *Ragathay*; *Turquesan*, *Cathay*, and the true *Tartaria*; the first and last are the most Northern, barbarous, and unknown. The others more Southerly, are better civilized, and known, having abundance of faire *Cities*, and driving a good trade.

### Tartaria Deserta.

**T**ARTARIA the *Desart*, answers to the ancient *Scythia intra Imaum*; *Usbeck* or *Zagathay* to the ancient *Bactriana*, and *Sogdiana*; both the one, and the other new name, retaining in my opinion something of the ancient; *Sogdiana* of *Zagathay*, and *Bactrians* of *Usbeck*. *Turquesan* to the ancient *Scythia extra Imaum*; *Cathay* is the *Serico Regia*. As for the true *Tartary*, it is unknown unto the antients, or at least it holds the most Northern part of the one and the other *Scythia*.

*Tartaria Deserta*, is bounded on the West with the *Rivers Volga*, and *Oby*, which divides it from *Moscovy* on the East, by *Mount Imaum*, which separates it from the true *Tartaria*, and from *Turquesan*; on the North by the *Septentrional Ocean*, on the South by the *Caspian* or *Tabaresan* Sea, by the *River Chesell*, and by certain *Mountains* which joyne themselves with *Imaum*, and divide it from *Usbeck*, or *Zagathay*. All the *Country* is inhabited by *Peoples*, or *Tribes*, which are *Troopes* or *Bands* which they call *Hordes*, having very few walled places, whether they onely retire themselves when forced, for they have no settled stay or abode, but wandering perpetually, carrying and driving with them their *Tents*, *Chariots*, *Families*, and all they possess, stopping only there



there where they find the best food for their *Cattel*, to which as also in *Hunting* and *War* they most addict themselves: They Till not the Earth, though it be good and fertile, and hence it is, that this is called *Tartary the Desert*. The chief places in this part of *Tartaria*, are, *Cumbalich*, seated on a lake, 2. *Girfina*, seated between the two other lakes, which are conjoynd together by a River: 3. *Ferom* on a branch of the River *Oby*, 4. *Rissan* seated on the River *Faich*, 5. *Fru-tach*. 6. *Gentan*, 7. *Caracum*, 8. *Organci*, and 9. *Davasi*. The People that inhabit in this part of *Tartary*, have their rise from three several Originals, which are disposed into many several parts, as 1. The *Circassians*, which are for the most part *Christians*, and border upon the *Euxine* Sea. 2. The *Samoyeds* who are altogether *Idolaters*, inhabiting towards the Northern Ocean, and 3. *Tartars* which are *Mahometans*, and seated betwixt both the other. And those againe are subdivided into divers *Tribes* or *Hordes*, the chiefest of which are, 1. The *Nagajan Tartars*, which are held to be more fierce and cruel and better warriors than the other *Tartars*, but void of all *Arts*, despising *Money*, or the use of *Corn*, accounting *Mares-milk*, and *Horse-flesh* their best dyet, which they are not over curious in dressing, it sufficing if it is onely heated, though with the sun: and this *Horde* payes yet some tribute to the great Duke of *Moscovy*: to whom likewise part of this *Tartaria deserta* belongs. 2. The *Thamensens* who are also a warlike People, and much addicted to *Divinations* and *Sejories*. 3. The *Zavolhensens* are very powerful. The *Kirgelsis* are also very strong and warlike, they are partly *Gen-tiles*, and partly *Mahometans*, they care not to buy their dead, because of their so after removing, thinking never to see them more, and so leaving them hanging upon Trees. The Country is very fertile, if tilled, being fit to produce several good *Commodities*, and is also very fit for *Traffique*, having commodious *Havens*; and if they would addict themselves to it, would soon gain a good trade with several other Nations.

The Nagajan Tartars.

The Thamenens Tartars.

The Zavolhensens Tartars.

## USBECK.

USBECK or ZAGATHAY extends itself from the *Caspian* Sea, unto *Turquestan*, and from *Persia* and *India*, unto *Tartaria Deserta*: possessing all that is upon the Rivers of *Chesel*, *olim Faxartes*, and of *Gchan*, or *Alabama*, *olim Oxus*.

Its People are the most civil and ingenious of all the Western *Tartars*, fierce in War, being strong and active, patient in labour, not much addicted to vices, These they punish severely; they have a great trade with the *Persians*, to whom they have sometimes been subject, sometimes enemies, and sometimes in good intelligence, and with the *Indians* where they have likewise something to doe, and with *Cathay* where they utter their much prized *Manna*, bringing back *Silk*, which they make into *Manufactures*, and sell in *Moscovy*.

This part of *Tartary* which we call *Usbeck* or *Zagathay*, did contain several Provinces, 1. *Zagathay* especially so called. 2. *Saca*. 3. *Sogdiana* with some others of less note, in all which are not many considerable Cities, the most famous of which are *Samarcand*, which was both the *Cradle* and *Grave* to *Tamberlan* the great, from whom the great *Mogolls* boast themselves to be lineally descended, who enriched it with the fairest spoiles of *Asia*, and adorned it with an *Academy*, yet in some repute among the *Mahometans*. Also *Bachara*, and *Budafchan*, and also *Balich* according to some, but which I esteem in *Chorasana*, which hath divers times been in the hands of the *Chams* of *Usbeck*. *Budafchan* is likewise on the frontiers of *Chorasana*, *Bochara* or *Bachara*, where lived *Avicenna* one of the most famous *Philosophers* and *Physicians* of all the East. The Country is of a different soyle, that of *Zagathay* is indifferent fertile, which is much augmented by the industry of the *Inhabitants*, who are likewise held the most ingenious, being lovers of *Arts*, and well skild in *Manufactures*, by reason of which they have a good trade with *Merschams*, which come from several places. *Saca* is very barren, and ill manured, and full of wild *Desarts*, *Ferrests*, and uninhabited places, by reason of which the *Inhabitants* remove their Herds of *Cattel* from

place

place  
food f  
Pastur  
River  
tility,  
veral  
2. Sa  
Bachar  
seated

T

T  
Cathay  
from t  
some K  
are Cas  
bet, C  
chief C  
name

Turon  
chief C  
Cascar  
cultiva  
steemed  
in reco

doines:  
excellen  
Thofe  
Wine,  
is more  
India,  
rains of  
It hath  
mon 4

of Mon  
been gi  
this E  
would  
those o  
and alv  
its King  
ful the

Rabia i  
so little  
of the  
note in  
Emil,  
Cotain  
zechin  
the La  
in leng

by pers  
cheat ple  
and jmn

# TARTARY.

91

place to place, where they can find best food for them. *Sogdiana* hath very rich *Pastures*, and watered with many good *Rivers*, which much conduces to its fertility, in which as also in *Zagathay* are several Towns and Cities, as 1. *Farchan*, 2. *Sachi*, 3. *Istigia*, 4. *Budschan*, 5. *Bachara*, and 6. *Pegansa*, which last is seated on the Sea.

# CATHAY.

**CATHAY** is the most Easterne part of all *Tartaria*, and esteemed the richest, and most powerful Estate. It is contiguous to *Turquestan*, on the West, to *China* on the South, to true *Tartary* on the North, and on the East is watered by the stright of *Jessa*.

*Cathay is bound.*

# TURQUESTAN.

**TURQUESTAN** lies East from *Uzbek*, or *Zagathay*, West from *Cathay*, North from *India*, and South from true *Tartary*. It is subdivided into some Kingdomes, of which the best known are *Cascar*, *Cotam*, *Chialis*, *Ciartiam*, *Thibet*, *Chinchimalis*, &c. A part of their chief Cities being of the same name. Some name *Hiarshan* instead of *Cascar*, and *Turon* or *Turphan* instead of *Chialis*, for the chief Cities of the Kingdom. That of *Cascar* is the richest, most fertile, and best cultivated of all; That of *Ciartiam* is esteemed the least, and all sandy, having in recompence many *Faspars*, and *Casadoines*: but that of *Cascar* hath likewise excellent *Rhubarbe* and in great quantity. Those of *Cotam* and *Chialis* have *Corn*, *Wine*, *Flax*, *Hempe*, *Cotton*, &c. *Thibet* is more advanced towards the *Mogalls* of *India*, and the most engaged in the Mountains of *Imaus*, *Caucasus*, and *Ussontes*. It hath many wild *Beasts*, *Musk* and *Cinnamon*, and they make use of *Corral* instead of *Money*. The Relations which have been given in 1624, and 1626, have made this Estate so great and rich, that they would confound it with *Cathay*. But those of 1651 make the Region very cold, and always covered with *Snow*, esteeming its King wholly *Barbarous*, and less powerful then him of *Serenegar*, who is onely a *Rabia* in the Estates of the great *Mogoll*, so little assurance is there in the most part of these Relations. The other places of note in *Turquestan* are, *Camul*, *Turfan*, *Emil*, *Sark*, *Cassia*, *Andegen*, *Rasfa*, *Cotain*, *Peim*, *Fingele*, *Lop*, *Ciartiam*, *Saxzeebiam*, and *Votiam*, and in this part is the Lake of *Kithay*, which is 65 Leagues in length, and 40 in breadth.

Some esteem all *Cathay* under one onely Monarch or Emperor, whom they call *Chan* or *Ulacan*, that is great *Cham*, and speak him one of the greatest, richest Princes in the world. Others account divers Kings, but all Subjects to the great *Cham*. The Country is much frequented, well tilled, and in most places very fertile, abounding in *Wheate*, *Rice*, *Wool*, *Hempe*, *Silk*, *Musk*, *Rhubarbe*, great Heards of *Camells*, of whose haire they make *Chamlets*, and abundance of *Horses* with which they furnish other Countries, and especially *China*, with what other things can be desired. *Cambalu* is esteemed its Metropolitan City, in which the great *Cham* resides, pleasantly seated in a fertile soile, and on the River *Pahfanga*, which hath its course through the City, which is seated in the middle of the Countrey, being as it were the center to others; this City, besides its suburbs, is esteemed to be 28 miles in Circuit, being as it were foure square, each Angle being 7 miles in length, all encompassed with a strong Wall 10 paces thick, to which for entrance into the City, there is at each Angle 3 Gates, to every one of which there is a *Palace*, besides in every Angle a more sumptuous *Palace*, in which the Armour of the Garrison Souldiers are kept, which are accounted 1000 of each Gate. The buildings are (for the most part) of Free stone, and very proportionably built, the chief streets large, and so straight, that one may see from one Gate to the other, which gives it a gallant prospect.

*Is fertile and common.*

*Is chief place of Cambalu.*

In the middle of this City is a stately *Palace*, where the great *Cham* resides, together with his *Queens* and *Children*. This *Koyal Palace* is four square, and of a vast bigness, having besides its out-walls, several other structures, adorned with stately structures, beautified with pleasant *Walkes*, *Gardens*, *Orchards*, *Fishponds*, with several other places for recreation.

*The great Chans Palace.*

His

K.

**CATHAY** extends to the Caspian Sea, Persia and India; possessing all the best, olivifera, Albiama, olim

civil and ingenious Tartars, fierce active, patient subjected to vices, they have a sense, to whom subject, sometimes in good Indians where they do, and after their much lack Silk, which they sell in

which we call contain several especially for caldiana with some which are not, the most famous, which was due to Tamberlan the great Mogalls really descended, fairest spoiles of an Academy, the Mahomet-Budschan, and some, but which which hath divers of the Chams of likewise on the Chara or Bachara, of the most famous of all the different soiles, not fertile, which industry of the wise held the ers of Arts, and by reason of trade with several places, manured, and and uninhabited the Ishabi- of Cattel from place

*Is bound.*

*Is fertile.*

*Is fertile.*

*Is fertile.*

*Is fertile.*

His Attendance, State, and Riches, is great.

*In made  
and com-  
modities.*

Without this Cities Walls are 12 Subburbs, each 3 or 4 miles in length, adjoining to each of the 12 Gates, and in these Subburbs the Merchants and Strangers doe reside, each Nation having a several Cane or Store-house, where they both lodge and exercise their Trade, bartering their Commodities for one anothers. This City is of a great Trade, being frequented by Merchants and Strangers of several Countreys, but more especially by the Persians, Chinois, Indians, and the Tartars themselves, which renders it very populous, it being the chief place for Trade in all Tartary, abounding not onely in those Commodities aforesaid, but also in the Spices of India, the Gems of Pegu and Bengala, the Druggs of Arabia, also the Carpets, Tapestries, Silkes and Manufactures of Persia, &c.

*Their  
Money.*

The Money current here and throughout this large Territory is very different, neither is it made of Gold, Silver, or Copper, as with us; but it is made of the middle bark of the Mulberry Tree, which being made smooth, and firme, they cut round into great and smal peices, on which they imprint the Kings Marke, as we do on our Money; and these peices according to the bigness and thickness, they are valued at a certaine rate, and are passable for the buying of all Commodities; and it is deemed death for any one to counterfeit, or make any of this Money.

But in some places under the Great Chans jurisdiction, they use Polished Coral instead of Money: and in other places they use twigggs of Gold, which is distinguished into several parcels by Weight, but without Stamps or Characters, and this is held in case of great Importance: they also use in some places Porcelain instead of Money; likewise they make a kind of Money of Salt, which they boyle untill it be congealed hard, and then make it up into round lumps, on which is put the Princes stamps, and these are the several sorts of Money, which passeth amongst them; yet by reason of the Trade that this place hath with other Countreys there adjacent, their Coynes are here found current, as are those of the Grand Signiour, as also those of Moscow.

They have also a Coyne which they call a Somma, in which their Accounts are kept, and to which other Coynes current are reduced, which they divide into a

lesser, accounting 45 Saggis to a Somma, and 4 Sammas to a Checquin, or Sul-tany.

Their Weight is a Rotolo, a 100 whereof maketh a Cantar, which is 70 li. haberdupois English, and this Cantar according to the Commodities bought, or sold thereby, is divided into several divisions, as sometimes reckoning 7; Batinas to a Camar, and 12 Rotolo's to a Batma; and then the Cantar is 90 Rotolo's. And sometimes 124 Saggies makes a Somma, and 10 Somma's a Camar of 100 Rotolo's, as aforesaid; and Silk is sold by this Somma, 20 Somma's to a draught, which is a Cantars, and is about 140 li. English.

Their Common Measure is the Pico, which is ( ) English, and this Pico is divided into 8 Rups; as at Constantinople. Wine, and all liquid Commodities are sold by the Butte, which is 46 Missates, which in Venetia is 3; Bigonso, which is ( ) English.

Corn, and all other such like Commodities, are sold by a Measure, called a Chiffetto, which at Venetia makes 8; Staid's, which is ( ) English.

Besides this Palace aforesmentioned, he hath another which is esteemed the principal of his abode, which is not far from this City, which Merchants are not permitted to enter; the Palace is called Zaindu being foresquare, and if Authors may be believed every square is 8 miles in length, and within this Quadrant is another whose sides are 6 miles in length, and within that another of 4 miles square, and this is esteemed the very Palace it self, and between these several walls are stately Walks, Gardens, Orchards, Fish-ponds, Parks, Forrests, Chases, for all manner of pleasures and game, as also several other places for all manner of Courly and Military exercises. This Palace is exceeding richly built, having many sumptuous edifices; his attendance great, 12000 horse, being his dayly guard, besides an exceeding great number of other attendance, and servitures.

The greatest and most Potent Parts or Kingdomes of Cathay, are TANGUTH, whose chief City is Campion; where the Caravans of Forreign Merchants stop, it not being permitted them to goe farther, a City well built, and where the Christians in the time of Paulus Venetus, had three faire Churches; but of latter time have much lest themselves, through the great encrease of the Gentiles, who have here several

seve  
wort  
seve  
to th  
muc  
Dile  
nishe  
Chan  
Pres  
the  
Chri  
and

T  
great  
lency

Arms  
rest,  
vaile  
nifice

of th  
subje  
alway

respe  
numb  
so far  
believ

in 16  
Passa  
which

castin  
the gr  
its fai  
vinces

himse  
cessio  
but th  
of Ch

of his  
whose  
also  
led;

Erain  
place

The  
gener  
and  
dang

in an  
usful  
stran  
lovin  
delic  
of;  
but  
ent

In  
Gent  
latte  
and

aggis to a *Somma*,  
*Chequin*, or *Sul-*  
*olo*, a 100 whereof  
 ch is 70 *li*, *haber*  
*Cantar* according  
 bought, or sold  
 several divisions,  
 7; *Batmas* to 2  
 to a *Batma*, and  
*Sold's*. And some-  
 es a *Somma*, and  
 f 100 *Rotols*, as  
 old by this *Somma*,  
 , which is a *Can-*  
 : *English*,  
 sure is the *Pico*,  
 and this *Pico* is di-  
*Constantinople*.  
 Commodities are  
 h is 46 *Miskates*,  
*Bigonse*, which is  
 uch like Commo-  
 ure, called a *Chif-*  
 makes 8; *Statio*,  
 rementioned, he  
 eemed the prin-  
 h is not far from  
 ants are not per-  
 e is called *Zaindu*  
 Authors may be  
 miles in length,  
 is another whole  
 and within that  
 e, and this is e-  
 ic self, and be-  
 are stately *Walks*,  
*Parks*,  
 ner of pleasures  
 other places for  
*Military* exer-  
 ceeding richly  
 tuous edifices;  
 000 horse, be-  
 s an exceeding  
 attendance, and  
 ocent Parts or  
*TANGMTH*,  
 s, and where the  
 chants stop, it  
 to goe farther,  
 the *Christians*  
 s, had three  
 er time have  
 ough the great  
 ho have here  
 several

several *Monasteries*, where they keep, and worship their *Idols*, where they have also several religious persons only dedicated to their service; and this Kingdom hath much *Rhubarb*. The Kingdom of *TENDUC* within City of the same name, furnishes *Cloth of Gold*, and *Silver*, *Silks*, *Chamlets*, &c. and it is thought that *Prister Fohn* resided in these quarters, there being yet a particular King who is a *Christian*, but of the Sect of *Nestorians*, and subject to the great *Cham*.

*THAINFUR* is known for the great number of its *people*, for the excellency of its *Pines*, for the goodness of its *Armes*, and of its *Cannon*, &c. for the rest, all great Travellers count mer- vails of the greatness, power, and mag- nificence, and riches of this great *Cham*, of the extent of his Estates, of the Kings subject to him, of so many Ambassadors alwaies in his Court, of the reverence and respect bore him, of the power and infinite number of his men of *Armes*; but it is so far from *Europe*, that we could scarce believe them, till he made seen his power in 1618, having possessed the Ports and Passages of that great *Mountain and Wall*, which separates *Tartaria* from *China*, casting an infinite number of men into the great Kingdome, taking, and pillaging its fairest Cities, and almost all its Pro- vinces, forced the King of *China* to retire himself into *Canton*, leaving him in pos- session of not above 1 or 2 of its Provinces: but the relations of 1650, gives the King of *China* re-entrance into the greatest part of his Estates; its other parts are *Egrigaja*, whose chief places are *Serra*, and *Mulen*: also *Berginal*, whose chief place is so called, then *Serguth* whose chief place is *Brauna*, and lastly *Belgian*, whose chief place is so called.

The *People* in this part of *Tartaria* are generally strong of body, stout, warlick, and couragious, though in the greatest dangers, also very active, and patient in afflictions, ingenious, and given to *Manusallures*, more civil and courteous to strangers then the rest of the *Tartars*, loving to wear good Apparell, and feed deliciously, which the others are negligent of, in stature they are but of a mean size, but well proportioned, and of an indiffer- ent good complexion.

In matter of *Religion* they are either *Gentiles*, *Christians*, or *Mahometans*, which latter is most used, it being publicly and generally allowed amongst them, in

which *Religions* they observe several ce- remonies, not much different from those of other Countreyes, especially in *Christi- anity* and *Mahometisme*.

The true TARTARIA.

THE true and Antient TARTARIE is the most Northern of all the parts of *Tartarie* taken together, and likewise the coldest, the most untilled, and most barbarous of all: nevertheless it is from hence that the *Tartars* issued in the year 1200, and having made themselves masters of six *Hordes*, most adjacent to theirs, have since made themselves known, and have carried their *Armes*, and their Govern- ment into the greatest and fairest parts of *Asia*: This is the place where the Ten Tribes are supposed to have rested, which were transported into *Media*, and some say that the name of *Dan*, *Nephthim*, and *Zebulon* are yet found amongst them, but it is easy to forge what names men please in parts wholly unknown. The *Kingdoms*, *Provinces*, or *Hordes* of the great *Mogoll*, of *Barga*, *Tartar*, *Nayman*, *Annibi*, &c. are the most known: Some Authors place here *Gog* and *Magog*, which others will have to be in the Estates of the *Mogoll*, and of *China*, and towards *Mang*, above the lake of *Chiamay*.

The Principal Riches of the true *Tar- tary* consists in their *Cattel* and *Furrs*, among which most esteem is had of their *White-Bears*, *Black-Foxes*, *Sables*, &c. they live on *Milke* and *Flesh*, of which they have great plenty, neither caring for *Fruits*, nor *Graines*, and in a word have still something of the antient *Scythian*. Some amongst them have their *Kings*, o- thers live by *Hordes*, or *Communalities*, al- most all are *Shepherds*, and the greatest part subject to the *Grand Cham* of *Ca- thay*.

The chief places in this part of *Tartaria* do commonly take their names from their *Kingdoms*, *Provinces*, or *Hordes*, in which they lye.

In the *Province* or part of *Annibi*, is a Lake so called, which is about 40 Leagues long, and 30 broad, high unto which are the *Mountains* of *Annibi*.

Tenduc

Thainfur

the four  
 years  
 of the great  
 Dan.

the high  
 of Cathay.

Tartar  
 and its  
 chief place

The  
 Religion.

The true  
 Tartarie  
 described.

the Comm-  
 dities.

## The Oriental Isles of ASIA.

The Isles of Asia.

**T**He Isles of ASIA are as many in number, and as great, rich, and populous, as those of all the rest of the World. They are spread here and there, in the *Great Oriental or Indian Ocean*, and for the most part about the *Indies*. I shall divide them into five Parts or *Bodies*, and call the Isles of *JAPAN*, those which are on the East of *China*; the *PHILIPPIN* Isles, those which are likewise on the South-East of *China*; the Isles of the *MOLUCCOES*, those which are to the South of the *Philippines*; the Isles of the *SOUND*, those which are to the West of the *Molucces*; and I put for the fifth, *CAYLAN*, and the *MALDIVES*, which are East, and South-East from *Cape Comor*, the utmost point of *Malabar*. There are moreover many Isles which belong to *Asia*, but not to compare with these; of which we shall also speak a word as occasion offers.

The Isles of *Japan*, are on this side the *Tropic of Cancer*; the *Philippines* between the *Tropic* and the *Equinoctial Line*; the *Molucces*, the Isles of the *Sound*, and the *Maldives*, are about this Line, returning from East to West.

### The Isles of JAPAN or JAPON.

The Isles of Japan, their extent and situation.

**W**E call the Isle or Isles of *JAPAN*, a certain multitude of Isles, and of different bigness, which are on the East of *China*, distant from it about 100 Leagues; and so are seated in the most Oriental part of our Continent: They stretch together in length about 300 Leagues from West to East; and from South to North 40, 50, 60, and sometimes 100 Leagues in breadth.

Amongst these Isles, there are three very considerable; first, very great; and secondly, of a lesser sort; all the other are very little in comparison of them, and are ranged with some of these three. The first, and which is much greater than the two others, is called by us *Japan* or *Fapan*,

Viz. Japan, Ximo, and Tokochi.

by its Inhabitantes, *Hippon* or *Nippon*, which signifies *The Spring of Light*, or of the *Sun*: A name proper for it, since it lies to the East, and Sun-rising of all *Asia*, and of all our Continent. The second is called *Ximo*; that is, a *Low Country* or *Sayook*; that is, *Nine Kingdoms*: The last *Tokochi* or *Xicoco*, that is, *Four Kingdoms*.

We must likewise make account that these three great Isles are cut asunder by several Channels, which divide them into several Isles; but because these Channels are very narrow, these parts are esteemed pieces contiguous in regard of the others, where the Channels, or rather the Arms of the Sea which divide them, are much larger.

Among these three Isles, the first alone hath 150 Leagues in length, from East to West, and 30, 40, 50, and sometimes about 100 in breadth. The second hath 75 Leagues from North to South: The third 50 or 60 Leagues from East to West; and the breadth of these two last is not at most above half their length.

The Temperament of these Isles, must be without question, rather hot than cold, and like to that of *Andalasia*, *Granada*, and *Murcia* in *Spain*; of *Sicily* near *Italy*; and of *Cyros* or *Candia*, near *Greece*, which is very good; and nevertheless, they are observed to have exceeding great heats and colds in each season. The *Air* is healthful, the soyl indifferent fruitful, though Mountainous; producing *Wheat*, *Millet*, *Rice*, and excellent *Barley* in great plenty, which they transport to all the Eastern parts as they do their *Rice*.

They have all those *Fruits*, *Trees*, *Herbs*, and *Beasts*, which we have in *Europe*, with several others not known amongst us; as also abundance of several *Fowls*, both tame and wilde; the surface of the Earth is well clothed with Woods and Forests; in which are found very lofty *Crocoders*; and the Bowels of the Earth stored with divers *Metals*; as *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, *Tin*, *Lead*, *Iron*, &c. though not so good as in the *Indies*, except it be their *Silver*, which is excellent, and abundant. Their *Pearls* are great, red, and of no less esteem than the white ones. These with several *Manufactures* which are here made, are the chief *Commodities* of this Island.

In this Island are several Cities of some note; as first *Nawo*, which is seated in the midst of the great Isle of *Japan*, a fair and large City, formerly a 21 miles in compass; but

The length and breadth.

The air, fruitful, moderate, &c.

The Mountains.

The Mountains.

The Mountains.

but now reduced to which to have to have there.

This the *Trinistran* these *M* tuisd, *e* *ror*, wh the *secu* who is affairs of *Zano* or *Sacred*

The and low ther, w and 8 of of the *D* stately, may add *Palaces* the chei that of almost of for a *For*

The *Gold* the different which is *Mar* of 20 34 *St* at *Isob* *Mar*.

For *Mar*, at *Ryal* of *Taylor* *Mar* is *Sterling* *The*

*Cattee*, is held *Onnes*

The or an *English*

The is three *English* *Isle* is 1000 *English*

The Islands the nig



but now, by reason of their Wars, it is reduced to the third part of what it was, in which the *Jesuits* did formerly esteem it to have 180000 Houses, and judged it to have near 100000 when they were there.

This City is the ordinary residence of the *Triumviri*, or the three *Principal Magistrates*, which rule or sway the affairs of these Islands, of whom, the first is entitled, the *Dayri* or *Yoo*, that is, the *Emperor*, who hath the care of *Civil Affairs*; the second is the *Cubi*, or King of *Tenna*, who is chief of the *Militia*, managing the affairs of *Peace* or *War*; and thirdly, the *Zabo* or *Xaca*, who is chief in *Religion* and *Sacred Matters*.

The City is divided into the higher and lower; the one and the other together, were not above 20000 paces long, and 8 or 10000 paces large. The *Palace* of the *Dayri* was in the higher City, great, stately, and adorned with all things which may add to its lustre; and the *Houses* or *Palaces* of his *Conges*, with the *House* of the chief *Lords* of all *Japan*, were about that of the *Emperor*. The lower City was almost contiguous to *Fanami*, which serves for a *Fortress* to *Miaco*.

The current *Coins* of *Japan*: For their *Gold* they coin into two small *Bars* of two different sorts; the one is called a *Coban*, which is esteemed worth from 60 to 68 *Mas* of *Silver*, which is worth, from 30 to 34 *Shil*, *Sterling*. The other is called an *Ichubo*, being worth about 15 or 16 *Mas*.

For their *Silver* they have a *Tayl*, a *Mar*, and a *Candoria*: A *Tayl* is worth a *Ryal* of  $\frac{1}{2}$ , or 5 *Shil*, *Sterling*, or half a *Tayl* of *Siam*. A *Tayl* is 10 *Mas*, and a *Mar* is 10 *Candoria*, which is Six pence *Sterling*.

Their *Weights* are the *Peenah*, or the *Catee*. A *Pecullis* is 10 *Catees*, and a *Catee* is held to be 20 *Ounces*, but by others 21 *Ounces* *Mahomedan*.

Their *Measure* for length is a *Tastany* or an *Inakhen*, which is about 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Tards* *English*.

Their *Dry Measures* are a *Cow*, which is three *Cocac*, which is three *Alc Pints* *English*. An *Ichogga* is 100 *Candac*: An *Ichmaga* is 1000 *Ichoggas*; and a *Mangaga* is 10000 *Ichmagas*, which is ( ) *English*.

This City, as most of all those in these Islands, are unwall'd; but its *Streets* in the night are chained up, and a *Watch* of

two Men at each end of every *Street*, who are to give account of the transactions that happen in the night. Its *Streets* are large and well composed, its *Houses* well built, and most of Wood; all their *Pagods* are made of Wood, they are neither large nor high; and in these *Pagods* they have several ill-shapen *Figures*, to which they address their *Prayers*, and bestow on them great gifts in way of *Alms*, which their *Priests* make use of. *Nobunanga* was the first that lessened this City, when he did by burning a part of it in 1557, and since it hath received divers *joists* of *Fortune*. 2. *Amanguchi*, a City, and the fairest of the *Isles* of *Nangato*, hath been formerly well known for its *Trade*, containing few less than 10000 *Families*. It was burned in 1555, during some revolt; it was builded again, and again burnt, and afterwards rebuilt. These fires happen often in *Japan*, the greatest part of their building being of Wood; but the Wood is very neat and curious, marbled, &c. *Nangasaki* was the most famous of the *Isles* of *Sayock*, and there are a great number of fair Cities through all *Japan*.

Amongst these Cities, that of *Sacay*, on the South of *Miaco*, which *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto* (provided that he doth not lie) says, he hath known not to have depended upon any King, or Lord, but was governed of it self, in form of a *Republick*; created all its *Magistrates* and *Officers*, and he assures us, That all the *Masters* of *Families*, rich or poor, make themselves be called *Kings* and *Queens*; and their *Children* *Princes* and *Princesses*. This *liberty*, and *vanity*, is observable, if it be true.

*Mandello's* in his *Book of Travels*, makes mention of a City called *Tendo*, which he makes to be a fair, large, and well built City; in which, he saith, there is a *Castle* about two *Leagues* in compass, being strongly fortified with three *Walls*, and as many *Towers*: The building is very irregular but fair, having to the *Walls* abundance of *Gates*: Within the last *Gate*, he saith, there is a *Magazin* of *Arms* for 3 or 4000 *Men*, on which all the *Streets* that are fair and broad take their rise; in which said *Streets*, on both sides, are many magnificent *Palaces* for the *Nobles*. In the middle of this *Castle*, is seated the *Emperors Palace*, having belonging to it many stately edifices and apartments, as *Halls*, *Chambers*, *Galleries*, *Gardens*, *Orchards*, *Groves*, *Fish*.

... or *Nippon*, of *Eight*, or of *is*, since it lies of all *Asia*. The second is *Low Countries* or *Kingdoms*: The is, *Four King*.

... account that cut asunder by divide them into these Channels are esteemed of the others, rather the Arms them, are much

... es, the first length, from 50, and some- The second north to South: is from East to these two last their length.

... these Isles, must hot then cold, is, *Granada*, and near *Italy*, and *streets*, which is is, they are ob- great heat and Air is health- ful, though Wheat, *Silber*, in great plenty, till the Eastern

... Trees, Herbs, are in Europe, known amongst several *Fowls*, surface of the Woods and very lofty *Creeper* Earth stored with *Silver*, *Copper*, though not so apt it be their and abundant, and of no less These with are here made, this Island,

... Cities of some is seated in the *par*, a fair and is in compass; but

The length of track.

The air, Firmity, roughness, etc.

The Meas.

Chief place, Miaco or Jirada.

The City of Tendo.

*Fish-ponds, Fountains, Courts, &c.* as also several *Select Houses* for his *Wives* and *Concubines*. And here is his ordinary Residence, being in the Province of *Quanto*, about 120000 paces from *Meaco*, between which are abundance of stately and magnificent *Palaces* and *Houses*, for the entertainment of the *Emperor* in his journey between *Fedo* and *Meaco*: But the most beautiful *Palace* next to *Tendo*, is that of *O Facá* on the Sea, and South of *Meaco*; the Buildings of *Tendo*, are so beautified with *Gold*, as well without as within; that at a distance it seems to be rather a Mountain of *Gold* than a Building.

Amongst the Mountains of *Japan*, there are two very well known, *Figenojama*, four Leagues from *Meaco*, renowned for its height, which stretches it self above the Clouds; and *Fuy* or *Fuyean* in the Kingdom of *Hietcheu*, which vomits fire in great abundance, as sometime did *Atna* in *Sicilia*, *Vesuvius* at *Naples*, and the Isles of *Volcan* and *Strangoli* among those of *Liparia*: And on the top of this Mountain, the *Devil*, in a white and shining Cloud, shews himself in divers Forms, but onely to such of his *Volaries* as live about this Mountain an abstemious life, like the ancient *Hermits*, as in Fasting, undergoing many austerities, and completing the Vow they made for this purpose.

The *Country* hath hot and medicinal *Waters* in several places; the common *Waters* are healthful; the *Inhabitants* of a good stature, strong, and active; in *Complexion* they are inclining to an *Olive colour*, well-disposed, judicious, apt to learn; of sound memories, subtil in their dealings, more inclined to *Arms* than *Letters*; though they become perfect in both, having many *Academies* and *Universities*: They are ambitious of *glory*, patient in *affliction*, having *idleness*, *gaming*, or all *ill-husbandry*; as also *slandering*, *swearing*, *lying*, *theft*, and generally all *Vices*, which they severely punish, and oftentimes to death.

Their *Arms* are esteemed the most excellent of all the *Indies*, they being more valiant and warlike than the *Chinous*; and more patient of labor; one of their *Kings* conceived no less than that he could conquer *China*, and to this purpose levied there 2 or 300000 Men, which went against it, and brought back good booty. They have long used the *Art of Printing*, they are very civil, and much given to visits and entertainments; they delight in rich and

costly furniture in their *Houses*, with the adornment of *Pictures*, *Cabinets*, *Arms*, &c. They are very punctual in performing their promises.

In Matters of *Religion* they are for the most part *Gentiles*, adoring anciently the *Sun*, *Moon*, and *Stars*, giving adoration to *Wilde Beasts*; but they chiefly worship the *Devil*, and that partly for fear of hurting them: To which purpose, they have in all their *Pagodés*, which are numerous, several ill-shapen *Figures* which they pray to. And to these *Pagodés*, there belongeth a great many *Priests*, to whom they shew a great respect, and allow a good subsistence, who by their habit are known from other persons, and live a very strict life, abstaining from *Flesh*, even to the use of *Women*.

Amongst them they have several *Señs*, which possibly are so many different ways, in performing their *Devotions*, in which they are not over strict, nor over devout. Some of them believe the Immortality of the Soul; that the Body is reduced to its first principle, and becomes dust and ashes; and that the Soul is either raised to joy, or condemned to eternal sorrow, believing the *Resurrection*; and that at its return into the World, it shall finde good or evil, according to its actions: Whereas others make no account of the dissolution of the World, nor put any difference between the Souls of *Men* and *Beasts*.

They are very jealous of their *Wives* and *Concubines*, not admitting them the liberty of walking abroad, or society with men at home, they are very modest, and not given to meddle with any kinde of business that appertains to their *Husbands*. *Adultery* they severely punish, but *Fornication* is permitted amongst them: They are very indulgent to their Children, and give them good education: They are very tender of their honor, being shie of doing any thing which may eclipse it; and as they will give no injuries to others, so they will take none.

Their *Emperor* dwells in great state and pomp, having great attendance of *Nobles* and others: He is highly esteemed and reverence of his Subjects, even to adoration. In his Government he is in a manner tyrannical, having in his power, the Lives and Estates of his Subjects, though he doth not often shew it, his Revenue is exceeding great, and his Power, as hath been spoken of before, very strong.

The Mountains of Japan.

The People of Japan, their disposition.

All live excruciate to die, or 30 of themselves their death be a great charge of them,

But their God living, and their make to and Rebel subject principal for almost they have at home them often

And many more often call Neighbor house, they put whereas put it on friend, the Shoe, as uncover give the

notable, be: Reclaim he who Birth cov Table, at selves on they eat) from the They ef we Fair mount of from left their Fa we our p mly, they take Riches, most: S they have here more of joy, mountains Tapestry vers color

All his Nobles (which are very many) live exceeding stately, and have great Revenues: And when any of them happen to die, they have a custom, that about 20 or 30 of their Slaves do voluntarily kill themselves to wait upon the Souls of their deceased Lords, which they hold to be a great Honor to them, and a discharge of their fidelity and love they bear them.

But there are many defaults observed in their Government, and in their manner of living. The great number of their *Kings* and their *Princes*, which still endeavor to make themselves great; the *Revolts* and *Rebellions*, to which these people are subject on the least occasion. The principal form of the Government, which is almost wholly tyrannical. The little care they have of *Tillage*, and of keeping *Fowl* at home, or *Flocks* in the Field, makes them often want needful Food.

And it is observed, That they have many Manners and Customs different, and often contrary to ours, or those of their Neighbors; As, when they go out of the house, they leave off their *Coat*, which they put not on again, till they come in; whereas we leave it off in the house, and put it on abroad. When they meet a friend, they salute him by putting off their *Shoes*, and shaking their *Feet*, we salute by uncovering the *Head*. In walking they give the *Left-hand*, esteeming it most honorable, whilst we believe the *Right* so to be: Receiving a Friend at home, they remain seated on the *Ground*; we stand till he who comes to see us, is *Seated*. The *Earth* covered with *Moss*, serves for *Bed*, *Table*, and *Seat*, (for they uphold themselves on their *Knees*, on that *Mat* when they eat) our *Bed*, *Table*, and *Seat*, are raised from the *Ground*, for our repose or eating. They esteem *Black Hair*, and *Black Teeth*, we *Fair Hair*, and *White Teeth*. They mount on *Hors-back* from right to left, we from left to right. They set the name of their *Family*, before their proper name; we our proper name before that of our *Family*. They will not, that those *Women* they take in Marriage, should bring any *Riches*; here we seek after those who have most: So soon as their *Women* are married, they have no longer liberty to go abroad; here more then before, *Black* is their sign of joy, and *white* of mourning: *Black* our mourning, and *white* our joy. Their richest *Tapestries* are *Moss*, thin, close, and of divers colours; ours of *Wool*, *Silk*, and oft-

times of *Gold* and *Silver*. Their *Stone Buildings* have neither *Mortar* nor *Plaster*, here they build not without both. They despise all *Precious Stones*, and esteem more their *Vessels* of *Earth* which serve to keep their *Drink*, which we make little esteem of, but much value *Precious Stones*. They drink nothing but what is hot, those most delicate with us is cool. Their *Physick* is sweet, and odoriferous, ours bitter and unpleasant. They never let their sick *Blood*, which with us is very common upon the least occasion. These with several other Customs, contrary to ours, do they observe amongst them, which are too long to set down.

Nor want they fine *Reasons* to sustain their *Customs* better then ours; they say, we must conserve our *Blood*, as one of the principal sustainers of our *Life*; that we must not give a sick person that which is displeasent, troublesome, and sometimes affrights him to see, much more to drink or eat; that hot water augments the natural heat, opens the conduits, and quenches thirst; that cold closes the Pores, begets the Cough, weakens the Stomach, and quenches natural heat; that their *Vessels*, of which they make such esteem, are necessary for many things in a *Family*, which *Precious Stones* are not; that their *Buildings* may easily be taken down, carried other where, and erected in another manner, when they will, which ours cannot, &c.

In fine, they esteem our *Fashions* as ridiculous, as we do theirs; and if at any time we dispute with them on this subject, they know how to answer, and give us the charge.

Amongst their *Manners*, there are some very good; they hate *Games* of *Hazard*; they are very patient in bad *Fortune*; they maintain themselves honestly in their *Poverty*; suffer not themselves to be transported with *Passions*; speak not ill of the absent; know not what it is to *swear*, *lie*, or *steal*; suffer easily all incommodities of heat, cold, famine, or thirst; yet all this rather, to get the honor of being esteemed constant and virtuous, then being so truly; for they are subject to *Vices*, as well as their Neighbors. But let us leave their *Manners*, and speak a word of their *Government*, which of late hath encountered a diversity, and deserves to be known.

The general Estate of all these Isles, was not long since divided into 66 Kingdoms;

domes, of which the Isle of *Japan* alone had 47, which with some little neighbouring Isles was made up 53, that of *Ximo*, or *Saycock* had 9 according to its name, and *Chicock* the other four.

The *Islands*  
of *Japan*

At present the Order is much changed, the whole Estates are fallen into the hands of one alone, as it hath been formerly, and is divided into 7 *Provinces*, or principal parts; and those 7 parts subdivided into many others; which ought to pass under the name of Lordships, some of which yet retain the name of *Kingdomes*, others of *Duchies*, *Principalities* &c.

Those which command in the lesser parts, are called generally *Tones*. *Caron* ranges them in six different degrees, and calls them *Kings*, *Dukes*, *Princes*, *Knight-Barons*, *Barons*, and *Lords*, which according to our degrees of honour are distinguished by *Kings*, *Princes*, *Dukes*, *Marquisses*, *Earles*, and *Barons*. *Caron* makes 21 *Kings*; some of which possess 1 or 2, and some 3, and in all 30 and odd of the 66 ancient Kingdomes. After the *Kings*, he puts 4 *Dukes*, 6 *Princes*, 17 *Knight-Barons*, 30 *Barons*, and 41 *Lords*: giving each a Revenue of at least 100000 *Livers per annum*, and so augmenting to the greatest to whom he gives 10 Millions and more; and makes account that the *Cube* or *Cesar* of *Japan* spends at least 100 Millions of Crowns yearly, as well in the expence of his house, as in his *Militia*, and what he disburses to the *Tones*.

The parts of  
*Japan*

The names of the 7 principal parts, into which the Estate of *Japan* is divided, are *Saycock*, *Xicoco*, *Famafoit*, *Fesfengo*, *Fesfegen*, *Quanto*, and *Ochio*. *Saycock* with the Isles which belong to it, is the nearest to *China*; *Chicock* is on the East of *Saycock*; the other five parts are in the great Island, and extend themselves advancing from East to West. *Famafoit* being the most Western part of all, and answering to the 12 Kingdomes, which the King of *Nangato* or *Amanguci* hath formerly possessed. *Fesfenco* and *Fesfegen* together make the middle of the great Island, and apparently that which passed under the name of *Tenza*, and contained 20 others. *Quanto* and *Ochio* advance themselves from the East, unto the streight of *Singaur*, which divides *Japan* from the Land of *Fesso*, of which more anon; *Quanto*, comprehended 8 Kingdomes, and *Ochio* the rest, and in these parts there are abundance of *Cities* and *Townes*, which I have observed in my *Geographical Tables*.

But because this diversity of names of *Dayri* or Emperor, of *Cube* or *Cesar*, of *Tones* or *Kings*, *Princes*, *Dukes*, &c. may breed some confusion; to give a more particular knowledge, we will say succinctly, that before the year 1500, there was in all *Japan* onely one Sovereign, which they called *Yoo*, or *Dayri*, that is *Emperour*.

These *Emperours* had Reigned a long time, without their Subjects having the least thought of revolting: but about 150 years agoe, letting themselves be carried away with idleness, and delights, they left the management of affaires in the hands of a *Prince*, whom they call *Cube*, and this charge being sometimes given to the second and third Sonnes, to exercise it alternatively from three years to three years; one of these resolving to maintain himself in this charge, without remitting it to his Companion, the *Emperour* was constrained to make use of *Armes* to reduce the *Rebell* to obedience, which he could not performe without putting him to death, the other remaining alone in this charge, because so insolent that the *Dayri* was likewise forced to defeat himself of him; but by the means of a *Prince* who was not of his family, and who was not wanting soon to trie his fortune, resolving to maintaine himself in his charge of *Cube*, in despite of the *Dayri*, which caused a third civill Warr so long and cruel, that in fine the Estate was divided into almost as many Sovereignities as it had particular Governements.

All these little Sovereignes called themselves *Kings*, and were absolute over their Subjects; rendering onely certain Duties, and Respects to the *Dayri*, to whom they left onely the name of *Dayri*, and the power to grant titles, and degrees of honour; yet giving him presents so great, and in so great number, that he might subsist with all sorts of Honour and Majesty, without meddling with affaires.

Such was the Estate of *Japan* about 1550. but as it is difficult for many equal Sovereignes to maintain themselves long time in the same equality, these little *Kings* made Warr, and subjected one another, till the most able and strongest had gained the principal Authority, both in *Policy* and *Armes*: and retook the place or charge of *Cube*, without more depending on the *Dayri*. And so in the end having extinguished the Race of the *Dayri*, made themselves absolute Masters of all the Estates of *Japan*, reduced the King-

doms

doms in  
the Pr  
and esta  
as they  
residen  
before.

Tha  
dome,  
*Japan*  
the year  
much  
there is  
there is  
reestabl  
part of  
and are  
The *J*  
having  
under th  
have her  
being in  
Church

Yet  
*Europea*  
the same  
is *Horda*  
speaks to  
*Dania*, v  
*Gold*, an  
names  
same th  
*Zypangr*  
*China* as  
there is  
roof of t  
*Gold*: a  
wainscot  
are found  
and of n  
that the  
though  
not whol  
to his *J*  
*Marke*  
other pa  
have obl  
*Japan*,  
bold to s  
the other

The

A  
Fre  
wo  
*Tedes*  
name di  
some the

doms into Provinces, distributed and parted the Provinces, and all the parts to *Tones*, and established over all such a Government as they pleased, choosing their principal residence at *Fendo* or *Fedo* as I have said before.

That which is deplorable for Christendom, is, that the last *Cubes* or Kings of *Japan* have persecuted *Christianity* from the year 1614 unto this present, with so much cruelty and barbarousness, that there is scarce left any marke of it; yet there is some appearance that it may be reestablished in time, since the greatest part of their neighbours leave *Idolatry*; and are happily converted to *Christianity*: The *Jesuites* and other Religious persons having Preached *Christ* this 100 years, under the favor of the *Portugalls*, who have here, and here adjacent a great trade, being in many places permitted to build Churches, and exercise their Religion.

Yet the *Portugalls* were not the first *Europeans* that discovered *Japan*. It is the same which *Ptolomy* calls *Fabadij*, that is *Hordei Insula*; the Isle of *Barly*, which he speaks to be *Feracissima*, & *auro* & *abundantia*, very fruitful, and abounding in *Gold*; and whose Metropolitan City he names *Argentea* or *Argyra*: which is the same that *Marke Paul* the *Venetian* calls *Zypangrî*, which he places opposite to *China* as *Ptolomy* doth; and there saith there is abundance of *Gold*, and that the roof of the Royal Palace is covered with *Gold*: and the Chambers and Cabinets wainscoted with *Gold*, where he saith there are found *Pearles* round, great, and red, and of no less value then the white ones; that there are *Precious stones*, &c. And though the situation of *Japan* agrees not wholly with that which *Ptolomy* gives to his *Fabadij insula*, nor to that which *Marke Paul* gives to his *Zypangrî*: all the other particularities which these *Auchors* have observed, being found at present in *Japan*, and not elsewhere, I may be bold to say that these Isles answer one to the other.

The Isle or Land of FESSO.

After the Isles of *Japan*, let us speak a word of the Isle or Land of *Fesso*, *Tedco* or *Fesso* for divers Authors write its name differently, some calling it the Isle, some the Land above said, and to the East

of *Japan*, In the manner that the *English*, the *Portugalls*, and the *Hollanders* describe it, this Land must extend from *Asia* to *America*: They say that from *Tessoy*, which is the most Western point of it, opposite to *Coray*: and neare *Tartary*, advancing towards the East, it is 60 dayes journey to the Province of *Matzumay*, and that from *Matzumay* unto the most Easterly point, and neere *America*, it is likewise 90 dayes journey; so that it is 150 dayes journey from one end to the other; which after only 2 Leagues aday will be 1200 of our Leagues. Its breadth is not spoke of.

The Streight of *TESSOY*, which separates this Isle from *Tartary*, hath great currents, caused by the discharging of several Rivers which come from the Northern parts, and from *Tartary* and *Fesso*. The other streight which separates it from *America*, may in all likely-hood be that *Anian*; and those two streights, limit the two extremities of *Fesso*, towards the midst must be the Province of *Matzumay* and apparently beyond the streight, which separates the Isle of *Japan*, from the Land of *Fesso*; and this streight may be called the streight of *Sangear*, which is the utmost East-Land of *Japan*.

The Traverse, or Traject of this streight is not above 10 or 12 Leagues; others say not above so many miles; others there are affirm it no streight, but an *Isthmus* which fixes *Japan* to *Fesso*; and that both the one and the other together are but one Isle, so difficult it is to find the truth of a thing so far distant.

This Isle or Land of *FESSO* is so great and vast, that the *Inhabitants* cannot but have different manners; those which are neere *Japan*, resembling the *Japannois*, those which are neer *Tartary*, the *Tartars*; and those neer *America*, their neighbouring *Americans*; and in all likelihood they are more barbarous then all their neighbours.

They are all *Idolaters*, covering themselves with the skins of *Beasts*, which they take in *Hunting*; having their bodies all hairy, and wearing their Beard and Moustachoes very long: they are Warlike, Cruell, and Fomadadable to the *Japannois*; In War they have no other remedy for their wounds, but washing them in salt water.

The Land is little inhabited; it would be rich if it were well tilled; it hath many Mines of *Silver*, and quantity of excellent *Skins*,



*Skins and Furs*, which make it appear that the *Earth* stretches to the Northward. They have some Trade with *Aquiu*, which is on the East of *Japan*; but those of *Aquiu* go seldom into *Jesso*, because they cannot with security reside with, or trust those *Barbarians*.

## The PHILIPPINE Islands, or of LUSON and the MANILLES.

**T**HE PHILIPPINE Islands are so called by the *Cassilians*, because they conquered them under *Philip* the Second, King of *Castile*. The People of the East call them the Isles of *LUSON*, because of the greatest and most famous of these Isles, which they call *Luson*, a principal City of this Isle, being likewise so called. The *Portugals* call them *MANILLES*, from the City *Manilla*, at present the chief City of the Isle of *Luson*. They are in the *Oriental Ocean*, to the Southward of *China*, to the Eastward of *India*, North of the *Malluccoes*, and Westward of the Islands of *THEEPES*: But they are 4 or 500 Leagues distant from these, not above 100 from *China*, and much nearer the *Malluccoes*, and the Isles of the *SOUND*.

Their situation is between the Equator, and the Tropic of *Cancer*; to wit, from the fifth, unto the twentieth degree of *Septentrional Latitude*; and from the 155<sup>th</sup>, unto the 170<sup>th</sup> *Meridian* or Degree of *Longitude*; and so contain 15 or 16 degrees of *Longitude* and *Latitude*, extending themselves in length and breadth 3 or 400 Leagues.

*LUSON*, *MINDANAO*, and *PARAGOYA* or *CALAMIANES*, are the greatest: *Luson* towards the North, *Mindanao* towards the South, and *Paragoya* towards the West; so that they form almost an *Equilateral Triangle*, *Tandaya* otherwise *Philippina*, *Mindera*, *Pangy*, *Maibate*, *Rebujan*, *St. Juan*, *Cebu* or the *Pintados*, *Negous*, *Matan*, *Babul*, and few others are of a lesser circuit. *Tandaya* is South-East from the most Southern point of *Luson*; and the Strait between is called of *Manilla*, not because of the City *Manilla*, more than 100 Leagues

distant, but because of the Isles of *Luson*, which are called likewise of *Manilla*. *Mindora* on the South of the Isle of the Gulf, and City of *Manilla*: The rest are between *Luson* and *Mindanao*.

We might likewise make account of *Messan*, *Calagan* and *Buisuan*, near *Cebu*; of *Abuyo* and *Capuli*; of *Banton*, *Rebujan*, *Vireges*, *Marinduque* and *Luban*, between *Maibate* and *Mindora*; of *Iloques*, *Mauris*, *Coyo*, *Bankingle* and *Kapull*, between *Mindora* and *Paragoya*, and between *Paragoya* and *Mindanao*; of the *Little Philippine* on the West; of the *Babuyonnes* on the North; of *Catanduan*, *Paracalla*, *Linton*, and others on the East of *Luson*; of *Palmer* and *St. John*, on the East of *Mindanao*. But we cannot name them all, there being so great a number, that some esteem them 1000 or 1200 of considerable note, and in all 10 or 12000.

*Magellan* was the first of the *Europeans*, who discovered these Isles in 1520. In 1564 *Dom Lewis de Valdes*, Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, sent *Michael Lopez de Legaspi* to establish some *Spanish Colonies*; and facilitate by that means their Traffic from *Mexico* with *China* and *Japan*, who seized on *Luson*, *Cebu*, &c. The *Spaniards* possess at present above 50 of them, among which, *Luson*, *Tanday*, and *Cebu*, are the most famous.

*LUSON* sometimes called *New Cabilis*, begins before the thirteenth, and ends after the nineteenth degree of *Latitude* on this side the Equator, which are not above 6 Degrees or 150 Leagues; but it stretches one of its points towards the East: So that from *Cape Bojador* towards *China*, unto that of *Caceres* towards *Tanday*, is more than 200 Leagues, passing cross the Isle. Its breadth is very unequal, and sometimes only 20, 25, and sometimes likewise 50, 60, and 75 Leagues.

*Manilla* is its chief City, seated in the most Southern part of the Island: It is well built, after the modern way; and its Houses are of *Free-Stones*, very strong, and so great, that the *Spaniards* have been forced to divide some part of it from the rest, to serve them for a *Citadel*, in case of necessity; by which means, they are not at so great a charge in keeping of so great a number of Soldiers, as would otherwise be requisite for the security of the place. They have a good Port, the entrance into which, is yet somewhat difficult, by reason of the Isles and Rocks of *Mirabelles*, at the opening of the Gulf or Bay

Bay of which, The as also *Jurisd* which shops, their R This monly sides *F* *Spaniar* veral g and the brought which I The the *Ma* are *Gola* *Tayl* is *shillings* count, a *Spanish* *Sterling*. *pan* is we The the *Ma* 20 *Mass* one *Gam* that a 4000 *li*. The *Ganton*, and the *Gallons*. The *Cagajon* Northern Southern *Luson* is Coast, name ha difficult to be as ev one of *MIN* different ous, the of the *Mindanao* length, towards 25 or 30 or the *G* on the *L* Leagues three tog the nine and betw

Bay of Cavita or Cavite, at the bottom of which, is Manila.

The Governor or Vice-Roy of these Isles, as also an Archbishop, who hath a Spiritual Jurisdiction over all the Philippine Islands, which he exercises by three Suffragan Bishops, and some Priests, who have here their Residence.

This City is very populous, here commonly residing about 15000 Chinois, besides Spaniards, and a greater number of Spaniards which here drive a Trade, in several good Commodities which the Earth and their ingenuity produces, which are brought hither, as being the chief City, of which I shall speak anon.

The Coyns here current, are, the *Tayl*, the *Mas*, and the *Cupan*, the two first are *Gold Coyns*, and the last *Silver*: The *Tayl* is 16 *Masses*, and a *Mas* is worth 4 *shillings* 8 *pence Sterling*. By which account, a *Tayl* or 16 *Masses*, is 15 *Ryals* of *Spanish*, which is 3 *li*. 14 *shil*. 8 *pence Sterling*. A *Mas* is 4 *Cupans*, and a *Cupan* is worth about 14 *pence Sterling*.

The *Weights* here current, are, the *Zicoyan*, the *Mas*, and the *Ganton*. A *Zicoyan* is 20 *Masses*, a *Mas* is 40 *Gantons*, and one *Ganton* is 5 *li*. *Haberdupois English*, so that a *Mas* is 200 *li*, and a *Zicoyan* is 4000 *li*. *Haberdupois English*.

The *Measures* here used, are called the *Gallon*, which is about two *Gallons English*, and the *Mas*, which is about 80 of the same *Gallons*.

The other Cities of the same Isle are *Cagajan* or *Nueva Segovia*, in the most Northern part; then *Casres*, in the most Southern part of the Isle. The City of *Luson* is by all Authors described on the Coast, which regards *China*: And this name hath been most famous. Now it is difficult to know, whether *Luson* or *Manilla* are two Cities; *Linsow* thinks them one and the same.

*MINDANAO* is composed of three different Isles, which are almost contiguous, the greatest, which is in the middle of the other two, retains the name of *Mindanao*, having about 100 Leagues of length, and little less of breadth. *Canola* towards the West, 75 Leagues long, and 25 or 30 broad. *Las Buenas Sennales*, or the *Good Ensigns*, or likewise *St. John* on the North East, hath onely 25 or 30 Leagues of length and breadth: And these three together, are between the fifth and the ninth *Parallel* or *Degree of Latitude*, and between the 162 and 169 *Meridian* or

*Degree of Longitude*, and contain little less than 200 Leagues from the Point of *Gallere* on the West, to *Cape Bicaju* on the East.

They belong to divers *Mahometan* or *Pagan Kings*, who are all in good intelligence with the King of *Ternate* of the *Moluccoes*, and ill-affected to the *Portugals*. Their principal Cities are *Mindanao*, which others call *Tabone*, *Saragos* or *Suriaco*, *Lomiaton* or *Lomeatan*, *Dapito*, and *Canola*. Of the Situation of other Cities, of which some Authors make mention, we have no assurance.

*PARAGOYA* or *CALIMIANES* of *Boterus*, is the same thing as *Calamian* of *Linsow*; and as *Puloam* or *Puloaym* of *Maginus*, and others: It begins almost at the eighth, and ends not till the eleventh *Degree of Latitude*, stretching it self from South-East to North-East, in length more than 100 Leagues, not having above 10, 15, or 25 of breadth. *Boterus* and *Pigafette* say, That it bears *Figs* half as long and as thick as ones *Arm*; and others, onely of a *Palm* long, but better than that of *Dates*. Its King is Vassal to him of *Borneo*.

*TANDAYA* is about the twelfth *Degree of Latitude*, and the 167 of *Longitude*: Its utmost length is about 50 Leagues, and its breadth about 40. It hath born alone the name of *Philippine*, for being the first discoverer of these Islands, and that name hath been communicated to the rest. It is esteemed the best and most pleasant of all; Fruitful, rich, easie to be approached, and its *Inhabitants* courteous. Its chief place is *Achan*.

*MINDORA* is not much less than *Tandaya*, but not so famous; yet the *Streight* between the Isle of *Manilla* and *Mindora*, is called *Mindora*, from whence it may be judged, there is likewise a City of *Mindora* on that *Streight*; and that this place hath formerly been famous. There are here *Mines of Gold*.

*CEBU* is in the midst of the *Philippines*. The *Spaniards* have built on the East Coast *Ville-Jesuw*, under the tenth *degree of Latitude*, and 165 of *Longitude*. The *Port* is good, and here it was that *Magellan* contracted Alliance with the King of this Isle, received him into the Protection of the King of *Cassile*, and in his favor passed into the Isle of *Matan*, and made war upon its King, where he was killed.

Their Exports.

All these Isles in general, are very fruitful, and yield a great quantity of *Grains*, of *Rice*, *Fruits*, *Wine*, *Honey*, &c. which is all given for almost nothing. They have *Wine of Dates*, which yields not to those of *Grapes*, and which are as strong as *Sack*: They feed much *Cattle*, and *Fowl*, as *Oxen* and *Sheep*, which they carry into new *Spain*; *Hogs*, whose *Flesh* is excellent, *Goats*, *Pullain*, &c. They have many *Wilde Beasts*, as *Stags*, and several sorts of *Fenison*, *Wilde Boars*, *Tigers*, *Foxes*, *Bears*, *Lions*, *Apes*, *Civet Cats*, &c. which inhabit in their *Forests* and *Mountains*; and in their *Rivers* they have *Crocodiles*, and an infinite number of several sorts of *Fish*, which are likewise found in their *Seas*: Amongst others, *Tortoses*, whose *Shells* are much esteemed for the beauty, and variety of their colours, there being none found like these, and those of the *Maldives*.

Their Commodities.

They produce likewise *Gold*, *Iron*, *Steel*, *Saffron*, *Wax*, *Cinamon*, *Long Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Sugar*, with several other *Metals*, *Spices*, *Drugs*, and *Precious Stones*; They fish *Pearls* on their *Coasts*, and particularly near to *Negros* and *Abuja*.

Nevertheless, the *Cassilians* have been oftentimes on the point of abandoning these Islands, as the *Kings of China* formerly did: They not caring to keep Estates so far from them, and not having people enough to keep them in subjection. It is to be believed, that this comes from the too great number of the Islands, of which, a great part will always remain free to divers *Kings* and *Lords*, which will be perpetually jealous, and enemies to the *Cassilians*, and keep them always at a great expence.

In Trade.

But besides the cheapness and abundance of *Vicuals* which these Isles afford, and the *Traffick* which they have so commodiously with *China*, and with *Mexico*, or *New Spain*, hath made the *Spaniards* resolve to keep them: And therefore they built some *Fortresses* in 1589, and transported some *Families* from *New Spain*, with *Horses*, *Sheep*, and other *Beasts* to breed a Race.

The *Chinois* have a great *Trade* to these Islands, bringing hither all their *Commodities*, as *Silk*, *Cotton* of all colours, *Porcelaine*, *Brimstone*, *Cannon Powder*, *Iron*, *Quick-silver*, *Steel*, *Copper*, and other *Metals*; also *Chyfts*, *Cabinets*, *Pictures*, *Laces*, *Coiffs*, *Vales*, and other curiosities for *Women*. Of all these *Commodities*,

there remains a part in the *Philippines*, and the *Cassilians* take away the other, and with the *Gold*, *Wax*, and *Spices*, which they get in these Isles, carry them to *Mexico*: From whence they bring what is proper, both for the *Philippines*, for *China*, and the *East-Indies*. And this trade which is driven by the *South*, or *Pacifick Ocean*, is as great, and frequent, as that which is between *Spain* and *Mexico* by the *Ocean*, or *North Sea*.

## THE Isles of LARRONS OR THEEVES.

WE have almost nothing to say touching the Isles of *THEEVES*. They are 16 or 20 different Isles, which continue from about the eighth unto the twenty and twenty one degree of *Latitude* on this side the *Equator*; and are almost all under the 138 *Meridian*. Their names, situation, and greatness, a quest may be given of by the *Chart*.

The Isle of *Dancers*, of *Martyrs*, of *Birds*, &c. Towards the South, those of *Pulo Vilan*, *De los Arcifios*, *Delos Matelotes*, and *Bidima*, &c. are towards the West, and between the *Larrens*, and *Philippines*: The *Volcanis* towards the North, where there is *Cachinal*: *Malselo* towards the North-East, but indeed rather towards the East, and seeming to belong to *America*. Also the Isles of *Bacim*, *Botaba*, *Volia*, *Can*, *Mata*, *Sepan*, *Naan*, *Cheriguan*, *Guagan*, *Arromagan*, *Agan*, *Gregua*, *Chemochoa*, *Mana*, *Englese*, *Anglose*, *Malabrigo* *Deserte*, &c.

All these Isles are poor, having little to live on; scarce any tame *Beasts*, no *Metals*; the *Inhabitants* are naked, active, great *Theeves*, particularly of *Iron*.

## The Isles of the MOLUCCOES.

I Comprehend under the name of the *MOLUCCOES*, not only the Isles of *TERNATE*, *TIDORE*, *MOTILL* or *TIMOR*, *MACHIAM* and *BACHIAN*, which are particular-ly

ly called likewise Land of East, of West; FLOR towards thereabout

They Isles, So of those ney, and are unde stretching degree or tenth or themself 160 degre and thus of Latin which are and 500 the first hicher.

CEL POU S est; then TIMOR ly called Celebes is 100 broad long, and and Timor the most p third or qu Molucces long, and

Among coes are the Cloves, with all other Grain much exc as Ginger, and divers kinde of burns, flann Cloves are Tidore, and Bachiann fe Bahars of each 300 which are yields 15 and Ternat 600 li. Fl

In these their own, modity fo

Philippines, and  
e other, and  
Spices, which  
arry them to  
y bring what is  
nts, for China,  
is trade which  
Pacific Ocean,  
s that which is  
y the Ocean, or

ROXS  
ES.

nothing to say  
of THEEVES.  
at Isles, which  
ighth onto the  
ree of Latitude  
and are almost  
Their names,  
a guess may be

of Martyrs, of  
South, those of  
n, Delas Masc  
owards the  
rrows, and Ph  
ard's the North,  
Malpelo towards  
rather towards  
belong to Ame  
Bacim, Botaba,  
Natan, Chere  
Agan, Gregua,  
e, Anglose, Ma

having little to  
beasts, no Men  
naked, no Olive,  
of Iron.

f the  
OES.

name of the  
only the Isles  
ORE, MO-  
MACHIAM  
are particular-  
ly

ly called the *MOLUCCOES*; but likewise those of *GILOLO*, of the Land of *PAPOUS*, which lye on their East, of *CELEBES* which are on their West, of them of *CETRAM*, of *FLORES*, and *TIMOR*, which are towards their South, with several others thereabouts.

They make a Body of many and divers Isles, South of the *Philippines*, Eastward of those of the *Sound*, West of *New Guiney*, and North of *Terra Australis*, and are under, or near the *Equinoctial Line*, stretching themselves only to the third degree on this side that *Line*, and to the tenth or twelfth beyond it, and extending themselves from East to West, from the 160 degree of *Longitude*, unto the 180, and thus they have together fifteen degrees of *Latitude*, and twenty of *Longitude*, which are almost 400 Leagues of breadth, and 500 of length. The *English* were the first of any *Christians* that traded hither.

*CELEBES*, the Lands of *PAPOUS* and *GILOLO* are the greatest; then *CERAM*, *FLORES*, and *TIMOR*, those which are particularly called the *Molucces*, are the smallest. *Celebes* is 200 Leagues long, and about 100 broad: *Gilolo* about 100 Leagues long, and near as broad: *Ceyram*, *Flores*, and *Timor*, each 60 Leagues long, but for the most part their breadth is not above a third or quarter of their length. The true *Molucces* are only 2, 3, 4 or 5 Leagues long, and 5, 6, 10, 12 and 15 in circuit.

Amongst all these Isles, the true *Molucces* are the most known, by reason of their *Cloves*, with which they abound, and furnish all *Asia* and *Europe*. They have neither *Grains*, nor *Mines of Gold*, few *Beasts*, much excellent *Fruit*, and several *spices*, as *Ginger*, *Cinamon*, *Mace*, *Nutmegs*, &c. and divers *Drugs*; amongst others, a kinde of *Wood*, that being put to the fire, burns, flames, and yet consumes not. The *Cloves* are their principal riches; *Ternate*, *Tidore*, and *Machian*, have the most; and *Bachian* fewer. *Ternate* yields yearly 400 *Bahars* of *Cloves*; *Tidore* and *Machian*, each 300; And in the great Harvests, which are but once in seven years, *Machian* yields 15 or 1600; *Tidore* 12 or 1300; and *Ternate* 1000 or 1200, each *Bahar* is 600 *li*, *Flemish*.

In these Isles they have no *Coyms* of their own, they using to barter one commodity for another; but since the *Hol-*

landers, *Portugals*, and *Spaniards*, have had footing here, the *Spanish* *Ryals* of  $\frac{2}{3}$  is current amongst them in the buying of *Commodities*; yet cease they not from their former way in trucking of one commodity for another.

Their common *Weights* used amongst them, are, the *Bahar* and the *Cattee*. The great *Bahar* of *Amboyna* for *Cloves*, is 200 *Cattees*, which is 625 *li*, *Haberdupois* *English*. This great *Bahar*, is 50 *Barotes*, every *Barote* being 12  $\frac{1}{2}$  *li*, *Haberdupois*; yet in some places they have a greater *Bahar*, which is 625 *li*, *Haberdupois*.

A *Cattee* is about 6 *li*, *English*; 10 *Cattees* of *Mace*, is called a small *Bahar*. 100 *Cattees* of *Mace* is a great *Bahar*. 100 *Cattees* of *Nutmegs* is called a small *Bahar*, and 1000 of *Nutmegs* is held a great *Bahar*. And observe, that 10 *Bahars* of *Nutmegs* is held for one *Bahar* of *Mace* throughout all the Islands.

As for their *Measures* of length, they have none, but measure all by *Fathoms* and *Cubits*. A *Fathom* is the length of both the *Arms*, when extended, and is held for six Foot or two Yards *English*; and a *Cubit* is the length of half the *Arm*, that is, from the top of the *Fingers* to the *Elbow*.

Their *Dry Measure* for *Rice*, *Grains*, or the like, is a *Ganton*, which is about 8; *Pints* *English*; and a *Quajan*, which is 800 *Cantons*, which is 4400 *Pints* or 550 *Gallons* *English*.

These Isles lie to the Westward, along the Coast of *Gilolo*, so near the *Equator*, that the most Southerly part is not above 24 or 25 minutes beyond that *Line*; nor the most Northerly above 48 or 50 minutes on this side it; so that together they have not above one degree of *Latitude*, and about 10 or 12 minutes, which makes 30 Leagues. Their *Longitude* is between the tenth and thirtieth minutes of the 168 *Meridian* or Degree of *Longitude*.

*TERNATE* is the most North, and from it Southward, are, *TIDORE*, *TIMOR*, *MACHIAN*, and *BACHIAN*; for little account is made of the rest. *Bachian* is 15 or 16 Leagues circuit, *Ternate*, *Tidore*, and *Machian*, 10 or 12; *Timor* 5 or 6, the rest less.

*TERNATE* is esteemed the principal Isle, being about eight Leagues in circuit, and its Kings the most powerful, both of the true *Molucces*; and of all that I have passed under the general name of *Molucces*; yet he suffers in *Ternate*, *Nofra Sen-*

Their Weight.

Their Measure.

Their Situation.

The Isles of Ternate, Tidore, Timor, Machian, and Bachian.

The great Islands in this half place, several, and commodities.

*nora della Rosario*, and *Gammalamme* in the hands of the *Spaniards*, *Ta-comma*, *Talucco*, and *Malayo* in the hands of the *Hollanders*, which are in good intelligence with him, as Enemies to the *Spaniards*. The chief place is called *Gamma-Lamma*, is seated on the Sea-side, more long then broad, and of an indifferent bigness, its *Houses*, *Mosques*, as also its *Palace-Royal*, are built of *Canes*, or *Timber*; its Road and Haven is good, and frequented by ships. The Country is not bad, yet it yields but little provision besides *Poultry* and *Goats*, it yields also excellent *Almonds*, and bigger then ordinary, and that in great plenty; they have also abundance of *Cloves* and other *Spices*, some *Druggs*, with such other *Commodities* as are found in the rest of the Islands.

*Mandellus*, in his *Travels*, relates that in the midst of this Isle, there is one of the highest Mountains in those parts; he saith, it is covered almost all over with *Palmes*, and other *Trees*, and at the top there is a hole so deep, that seems to reach to the Center of the Earth. Hereupon some out of curiosity to find its depth, could not reach it with 500 fathome of rope, but came to a clear spring of water. Out of this hole he affirmeth that there issues forth a sulphurous smell, and sometimes a thick smoke, at other times it casts up flames, and red stones, with such violence, that they are carried a very great distance from this Mountain. The smoke, he saith, doth much infect the air; and the excrements which it casts forth, corrupt the Springs and Rivers thereabouts, that they are fit for no use. This Mountain by reason of its height, and by reason of the clearness of the air, it being never troubled with mists or clouds, doth command the sight of the *Sea*, and all the *Molucces*. Two third parts of its height the Mountain is green, but from thence upwards it is excessive cold, and at the top of it there is a Spring of fair water, but so cold, that it is hardly to be drank.

The same Author saith, that in this Isle near the Fort of *Ternate* there grows a Plant, which by the Inhabitants is called *Catopa*, and from this there falls a small leaf which turns to a Butterfly, the stalk whereof turns to the head, the strings or veins of the leaf, to the body and feet; and the wings are made of the finest part of the leaf but whether it be truth or no, I leave to the judgement of the Reader.

*TIDORE* (those of the County say *Tadura*, which signifies beauty) is a little greater then *Ternate*; and as fruitful. Here the People are very industrious in pruning and watering the *Clove-trees*, by which meanes they are exceeding faire and strong. Here grows white *Sandall-wood*, which is held the best in all the *Indies*. Here are also found the Birds of *Paradise*. It hath its particular King: The *Spaniards* hold *Taroula*, *Castello*, *Picjo*, and *Maricco*, which the *Hollanders* have sometimes taken, *Timoa* or *Mothir* was once so ill treated by the *Spaniards*, that its Inhabitants abandoned it, and retired to *Gilolo*. The *Hollanders* built the Fort of *Nassau*, and have invited near 2000 of its Inhabitants to returne. *Machian* as well as *Timor* belongs to the King of *Ternate*; the *Hollanders* hold *Tassalo*, *Tallibola*, *Nuhaca* or *Nassiquia*, and *Mauricio*; it is peopled with 9 or 10000 persons.

*BACHIAN* or *BAQUIAN* is the greatest of all the *Molucces*, but ill peopled, and having but few *Cloves*; but in recompence it hath plenty of *Fruite*, and its sea stored with *Fishes*. It is divided by several little channels scarce Navigable, which yet divide it into many parts, of which *Marigoram* is in the midst of the others, where the King of this Isle resides. The *Hollanders* hold on the Coast the Forts of *Gammeduore*, and *Labona*, both once called *Barnuevels*. This Isle is of an indifferent large extent. The King is ob-solute, the soile good, and would become very fertile, if the Inhabitants would leave off their idleness, and give it Tillage.

*MACHIAN* is indifferent large and fertile, and well inhabited; its chief places are 1. *Tassalo*. 2. *Tabillola*. 3. *Mauricio*. and 4. *Nuhaca*.

*TIMOR*, *Moir*, or *MOTIL* is of a less compass, and Triangular. Its chief place is *Nassau*.

*GILOLO* or *BATOCHINE* extends it self to the second Degree on this side, and onely to the first beyond the Equator: It hath then three Degrees of Latitude. Its Longitude begins a little after the 168 Meridian, and reaches to the 172, which are near 4 Degrees, which amount to little less then 100 Leagues of length and breadth: but it is composed but of 4 Peninsulas, of which, one advances towards the North, the other three towards the East; and of these three the middle one reaches so near the Land of

*Papou*

*Papou*  
them.

It is  
nate,

*Saloda*,

North  
and in

the Co  
is in Fo

*Gilolo* is

nate, to

*Saloda*,  
ther,

West C  
and tow

*Tolo*, is

are in the

hold *Sal*

*Gilolo*, T

Eastern

The  
which m

very fer

*Rice*, *Wa*

Shores  
taste is n

Isle plen

the name

a *Fruite*

of the S

*Drink*, v

and of a

they ma

*Cloves*, r

cept *Ta*

are well

some of

*taur*.

C E I

Islands,

they ar

They ar

ally *Rice*

and *Cat*

*Sea* affor

*Air* is he

scituaio

advance

towards

pled, an

They ar

*Piracy*.

Here

*Kingdom*

which g

these Isl

*Cion* the

*Cauripan*

est Citie



e County (ay  
uty) is a little  
fruitful. Here  
ous in pruning  
ees, by which  
aire and strong.  
wood, which is  
dies. Here are  
adise. It hath  
Spaniards hold  
Marico, which  
metimes taken,  
so ill treated by  
habitants aban-  
lolo. The Hol-  
Tassan, and have  
habitants to re-  
s Timor belongs  
the Hollanders  
Nhaca or Naffi-  
s peopled with

AQUIAN is  
Soluccoes, but ill  
few Cloves; but  
enty of Fruits,  
es. It is divided  
scarce Naviga-  
into many parts,  
the midst of the  
of this Isle resides,  
the Coast the  
nd Labona, both  
This Isle is of an  
The King is ob-  
land would be  
habitants would  
and give it Til-

fferent large and  
d, its chief pla-  
lola. 3. Mauricio.

MOTIL is of  
gular. Its chief

CHINE ex-  
Degree on this  
ist beyond the  
three Degrees of  
begins a little  
and reaches to  
Degrees, which  
100 Leagues of  
it is composed  
ich, one advan-  
ne other three  
hese three, the  
er the Land of  
Papous

Papous, that there is but a *Streight* between them.

It is subject in part to the King of *Ternate*, in part to the Kings of *Gilolo* and *Loloda*. It hath *Savage People* on the North part, where is the Coast of *More*, and in some Mountains in the middle of the Country, and the City of *Mamaye* is in Form of a *Republick*: The City of *Gilolo* is not above six Leagues from *Ternate*, towards the North. Those of *Gilolo*, *Sabugo*, and *Aquilamo*, are near together, Eastward of *Tidore*, and on the West Coast of *Gilolo*. On the other side, and towards the East, are the *Fortresses* of *Tolo*, *Isian*, and *Fassungo*; these six places are in the *Spaniards* hands. The *Hollanders* hold *Sabou* and *Cuma*; *Sabou* a little above *Gilolo*, *Tacoma* or *Cuma* on one of the Three Eastern Points.

The Air of *Gilolo* is intemperate hot, which makes it unhealthy, the Soyl not very fertile, yet it hath great plenty of *Rice*, *Wilde Beasts*, and other *Fowls*. On its Shores it hath *Shell fish*, whose Meat in taste is much like *Mutton*, and about the Isle plenty of *Trees*, which they call by the name of *Sagon*; from which they have a *Fruit* which they make their *Bread* of, of the *Sap* or *Juice*, they make a pleasing *Drink*, which they use instead of *Wine*; and of a *Hair* which grows on its *Bark*, they make their *Cloaths*. It hath but few *Cloves*, neither have they many *Cattle*, except *Tame* and *Wilde Hogs*. The *People* are well proportioned, but rude and savage; some of them *Gentiles*, the rest *Mahometans*.

*CELEBES* is composed of many Islands, so near the one to the other, that they are commonly esteemed but one. They are fruitful in all Provisions, especially *Rice*; they yield *Gold*, *Ivory*, *Saunders*, and *Cotton*; feed much *Cattel*, and their *Sea* affords plenty of *Fish* and *Pearls*: The *Air* is healthful, though almost in the same situation with *Gilolo*, except that they advance to the sixth degree of *Latitude*, towards the South. They are well peopled, and its *People* are tall and comely: They are *Idolaters*, and much addicted to *Piracy*.

Here is esteemed to be Six principal *Kingdoms*; of which, that of *Macazar*, which gives some times a name to all these Isles, is the most powerful; that of *Cium* the Second; then those of *Sanguin*, *Cauripana*, *Getigan*, and *Sapar*. The greatest Cities are *MACAZAR* and *Bantachia*, 30

or 40 Leagues one from the other; as also *Celebes* seated on the *Sea*.

The Land of *PAPOUS*, that is, of *Blacks*, is little known; yet is no other then *New Guiney*, and other then the Isle of *Ceyram*; though some would confound it with them. This last is to the Westward of it, and the other to the Eastward; both the one and the other more towards the South. There are some *Whites* among its *Inhabitants*, but few; all lean, deformed, and traitors: They have *Gold*, *Ambergreece*, and *Birds of Paradise*, with which they pay tribute to their Kings, and to the King of *Ternate*.

*CEYRAM* hath the same qualities, and its *Inhabitants* like to *Papow*, and well peopled, *Flores*, *Solar*, *Malva*, *Susu*, *Timor*, *Ombo*, *Terralta*, &c. are divers Isles under the eighth, ninth, and tenth degrees of South *Latitude*, and which advance from the 160 unto the 175 degrees of *Longitude*. *Timor* (an other then that *Timor* of the *Moluccoes*) is the most esteemed. It produces store of *Grains* and *Fruits*, feeds many *Cattle* and *Fowl*; amongst its *Drugs* and *Spices*, it hath *Ginger*, *Cinnamon*, and whole *Forrests* of *White* and *Yellow Saunders*. Its *Inhabitants* are *Idolaters*, half *Savages*, and had the use of fire but lately. *Malva* on the West of *Timor*, hath quantity of *Pepper*. *Solar* is other then *Solee* or *Solayo*. This last is ten Leagues from *Celebes*, and between the sixth and seventh degree of *Latitude*; that is 15 or 16 Leagues from *Timor*, and between the eighth and ninth degree of *Latitude*. The City *Adonare* is the Residence of the King of *Solar*, and there is a great Trade for *Saunders* between this Isle and *Cabanaxza* in *Timor*. *Solar* hath likewise *Gold* and *Pearl*.

Almost in the midst of these Isles, which we call in general, the *Moluccoes*, are those of *Ambryna* and *Banda*, which are but small, yet are in great esteem. Those of *Ambryna*, are *Ambryna*, *Veranola*, *Histon*, *Noefan*, and some others.

The Isle of *AMBOYNA* hath its chief City of the same name, which is of some considerable note, besides several other small *Towns* and *Villages*: This Island was first discovered by the *Portugals*, who had here the command of a *Castle* and other *Forts*, which the *Hollanders* took in 1605, and have possessed likewise the *Fortress* of *Coabella*, *Lovie*, and the *Redout* of *Histon*, in the Isle of *Histon*. The *Spaniards* dispossessed them a little after

The Land of Papous.

The Isles of Ceyram, Flores, Solar, Malva, Susu, Timor, Ombo, Terralta, &c. divers Isles.

Partly of the King of Ternate.

The King of Aquian.

Partly of the King of Celebes.

The King of Ambryna.

1630. and the *Hollanders* have regained them since; where they drive a great and profitable Trade. The Land at first was barren, but by their industry, it is now become very fertile, producing *Rice, Sugar*, quantity of *Fruits*, especially *Lemons* and *Oranges, Coco-Nuts, Bananas*, several *Spices*, but principally *Cloves*, of which alone they receive great profit. Here it was, that the *Hollanders* did once, with a

never to be forgotten cruelty and barbarousness, murder the *English* that resided and traded thither, on purpose to gain the whole Trade to themselves.

The *Inhabitants* were heretofore *Brutish, Cannibal*, inasmuch, as they would eat one another, though their nearest relations, when age or sickness seizes them; and all *Pagans*; but since, by reason of the Commerce they had with the *Persians* and *Arabians*, *Mahometism* is somewhat received amongst them, as also *Christianity*, by reason of the *Portugals* and *Dutch*; which in time may come to some perfection, though at present it is but very small. But notwithstanding, they make use of their *Paganish* superstitions, adoring the *Devil*, who appears to them, when they invoke him; in which, they are very superstitious and ceremonious. They are much given to *sojcery* and *conjurations*, very *prophane, barbarous*, not given to *Arts* or *Literature*: They are naturally *unfaithful, thievish, covetous, stupid*, and very *timorous*. In their *Marriages* they make no great Ceremonies, taking one anothers words, which as slightly they evade, leaving one another upon the least occasion of offence, and are free for another.

The Isles of *BANDA*, are three principal ones. *Banda* which communicates its name to the rest, *Nera* and *Gumanapi*; and three or four lesser ones, *Wayer, Poleway, and Pulerin*; some add *Poellesson*, the most Western of all. *Banda* hath the Cities or Towns of *Londor, Ortulan, and Combor*; *Nera* hath that of *Nera*, and *Labetach*; *Gumanapi* hath onely one of its name, underneath a Mountain which vomits *Fire*; *Nera* is the chiefest of all. The *Hollanders* hold in the Isle of *Nera*, the Forts of *Nassau* and *Belgica*; and in the Isle of *Poleway*, the Fort of *Revenge*.

These Isles are unhealthful, the *Nutmegs* and *Mace* which these Isles produce, make them frequented by Strangers: These *Fruits* they gather thrice a year, in *April, August, and December*.

Besides these Isles already spoken of, there are these following which are ranged and numbered with those of the *Molucces*, and are found (as they lie, either on the Coast or Shore of the Isles, *Celebes, Gilolo*, or Land of *Papou*, to participate of their nature, temperature, soil, or the like; and of these Isles, those about *Celebes*, towards the South, are *Buquerquees, Cabona, Calinca, Batabaya, Solayo, and Pater Noster*, which are a Body of about twenty small Isles; towards the West, the Isles of *Muljura, Sabymo, Cucar, Nufjuive, and Biana-cae*; towards the North, *Punta des Celebres, Syem, and Saranbal*; towards the East, and regarding *Gilolo, Pangay, Xulla, Bilato, Tape, Onby, Wawary, Baton, Gabincee, St. Matthews, Bourro, Manipe, Attabuli, Kilan, Busano and Beto*. On the Coast of *Papou* Southwards, *Subiana, Corer, Away, Temimber, Tair, Keegoey, and Ara*: And on the Land of *Papou*, Northernly, are the Isles of *Insou en Moc, and Arimoo*. And to conclude, on the Coast or Sea of *Gilolo*, Eastwards, are the Isles of *Patane, Noba, Moro, Camase, and Morola or Stan*.

The *Inhabitants* are *Mahometans*, in which they are very zealous and superstitious, not entering into their *Mosques* without washing their feet; and when they are there, very fervent in their Prayers, which they use often. They are very obstinate, and the Men are much given to idleness, minding their recreations, and leaving their affairs to their Wives. The *People* are here observed to live to a great age.

The *People* of all these Isles which have passed under the names of *Molucces*, are 40 of different humors; those which are on the Coasts, most frequented by strangers, are the most civil; yet others more barbarous. And on the Coast, they are either *Mahometans* or *Christians*, the rest *Idolaters*; but the *Spaniards* and *Portugals* on one side, and the *Hollanders* on the other, do much trouble these Islands, making themselves Masters now of one, and then of another; for the most part making War betwixt themselves, or with the Islanders; among which, there are divers Kings, some subject to the *Portugals*, and others to the *Hollanders*.

Amongst all these *Kings*, the most powerful is he of *Ternate*, to whom belong *Ternate, Molbir, and Bachlan*; likewise, *Cayo* and *Gaxa*, amongst the true *Molucces*; and thereabout, those of *Meco*, where are built his *Carcels*, that is, *Vessels* of

Wars

In Islands.

The Isles of Banda, Nera, and Gumanapi, described.

War; T  
boyna, an  
comprise  
pau, par  
Kings are  
faith, T  
in his Est  
and that  
ber of Ca  
things nee  
his Militia  
bred and e

S  
T  
The li  
of S  
greater an  
underneath  
cing on this  
degree of  
and beyond  
degree of  
133 degree  
ending abo  
they are to  
titude, wh  
and 24 or 2  
are 600 or  
The Pe  
the Sound,  
of Malacca  
rather, be  
Sound, wh  
and best kn  
Sumatra and  
of the Por  
the Sound,  
the greater  
Islands.

The Isla  
12 Leagues  
ca, and ex  
Latitude on  
the other si  
eleven or t  
it lying fr  
stretches fr  
Achem, un  
the South  
Sound, nea  
50, 60, or  
Some A  
into ten, a  
is to be b  
more; for

War, *Tofoua, Xulla, Buro*; those of *Amboyna*, among which, *Ceyram* seems to be comprised: Then part of the Land of *Papou*, part of *Gilolo*, and the *Celebes*, whose *Kings* are Tributary to him, *Argensela* saith, That in Seventy Islands, which are in his Estates, he can raise 200000 Men; and that he keeps ordinarily a great number of *Carsoles*, with many *Cannons*, and all things necessary, and that the Captains of 10 his *Militia* are aged men, which have been bred and educated in *Arms*.

The Isles of the  
S O U N D.

The Isles of the *SOUND*, are those of *Sumatra, Barneo, Fava*, the 20 greater and lesser, and others: They are underneath and about the *Equator*, advancing on this side, to the seventh and eighth degree of *Latitude*, towards the North; and beyond it, unto the ninth or tenth degree of *South Latitude*; beginning at 133 degrees of *Longitude*, Westward, and ending about the 160 Eastwards: So that they are together 16 or 18 degrees of *Latitude*, which are 400 and odd Leagues; 30 and 24 or 25 degrees of *Longitude*, which are 600 or thereabouts.

The *Portugals* called them the Isles of the *Sound*, because they are to the South of *Malacca*, as *Pyrardus* saith. I believe rather, because of the *Streight* of the *Sound*, which is between the two cheif, and best known of these Islands, to wit, *Sumatra* and *Fava Major*; or else, because of the Port of *Bantam*, which is called of 40 the *Sound*, being the best Port, and of the greatest concourse that is in all these Islands.

The Island of *SUMATRA* is 10 or 12 Leagues from the *Peninsula* of *Malacca*, and extends from the sixth degree of *Latitude* on this side, near to the sixth on the other side the *Equator*, which are about eleven or twelve degrees of *Latitude*; but it lying from North-West to South-East, 50 stretches from its Northerly point towards *Achem*, unto that of *Labansamora* towards the South, and on the *Streight* of the *Sound*, near 400 Leagues, being not above 50, 60, or at most 80 broad.

Some *Authors* divide it into four, others into ten, and others into 30 *Kingdoms*. It is to be believed, that it had sometimes more; sometimes less, or that the least

were *Vassals* or *Tributaries* to the greatest. At present those most famous, are *Achem*, which holds likewise *Pedir*, to which it hath been subject, and *Pacem* on the Northern Coasts towards *India*; *Camper* almost underneath *Palimbam, Famby, Guadabyri, Priaman, Baras, and Manancabo*, beyond the *Equator*: All which, are the Seats of so many of their *Kings*. But a word or two of *Achem*, which is of the greatest esteem.

The City of *Achem* is seated on the side of a very broad River, and in a large Plain: It hath neither *Gates* nor *Walls* to defend it self, but a *Castle*, which is the *Palace Royal*, which is fortified with a good *Wall* and *Pallisado*, and well armed, and so seated, that it commands the whole City: They enter into this *Castle* or *Palace* by seven several *Gates*, one after another, which are guarded by *Women* that are expert at their *Weapons*, which are also the ordinary Guard of the *Kings Person*; and without the leave of the *King*, or his *Guard*, none are suffered to enter the *Pallisado*. The *Buildings* in this *Castle*, are but mean, which are the same with those of the City; which by reason of the often overflowing of the River, are built upon *Piles*, and covered with *Coco Leaves*, but the furniture within is rich and costly. On two sides of the *Castle*, there are pleasant *Forests*, well stored with *Apes, Herms*, and all manner of *Birds*, and other delights, in which the *King* recreats himself; as also in *Cock-fighting, Hunting the Elephants, or Bathing Himself* in the River. In all which, he seldom is without a Company of *Women*, in whom he most delighteth. He observes great state, seldom shewing himself, he is much revered by his Subjects, whom he uses no better then *Slaves*: In his *Laws* he is very severe, and in his *Punishment*, cruel. His *Government* being absolute, and merely arbitrary. His *Revenue*, without doubt, must be great, by reason of the rich *Commodities* that are found here. He is so powerful, that in 1616 he put to Sea 60000 Men of War, in 200 Ships and 60 Gallies, with store of *Cannons* and *Ammunition*, to make War against the *Portugals* in *Malacca*; and he alone drove them from the *Fort* which they had in *Pacem*; and hindered them from taking footing in *Sumatra*.

The *Coyrs* here current, are the *Cattee*, the *Tayl*, the *Maß*, and the *Copan*. A *Cattee* is 8 *Tayls*, which is worth 25; *Ryals* of *Spanish*, or 6 li. 8 *Shil. Sterling*.

The City of Achem described.

Their Coyrs.

A *Tayl* is accounted for 16 *Masses*, or 3 *Ryals* of *Spanish*, which is 16 *Shil. Sterling*.

A *Mast* is 4 *Cupans*, which is worth 12 *d. Sterling*, by which account, a *Cupan* is 3 *d. Sterling*.

But in some places in this Isle they have no *Coyas* of their own, but make use of *Spanish Ryals* of 5, which they divide into 60 parts or pence.

Their Weights.

Their common *Weights* is the *Bahar*, which is 200 *Catties*, every *Cattie* being 29 *Ounces Haberdupois English*. By which account, the *Bahar* is 360 *li. English Sutil*. As concerning their *Measures*, I have no knowledge thereof.

The Air, by reason of the great heats, is very unhealthful, but withal, is very fertile, abounding in Rice, Millet, Oyl, Beesf, Goats, Sheep, Fowls, Fish, Store of Fruits,

also it is rich in *Gold*, though of a lower alloy, in *Silver*, *Copper*, *Iron*, *Tinn*, in *Precious Stones*, in *Silks*, in several *Spices*, as long and common *Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Cinnamon*, *Cloves*, *Nutmegs*, also in *Medicinal Drugs*, in *Wax*, *Honey*, *Camphire*, *Cassia*, *Becar*, *Lignum*, *Musk*, *Civet*, *Amber*, *Wax*, *Alloes*, whole *Woods of White Sandale*, abundance of *Cotton*, &c. Here is the *Mournful Tree*, as also the *Coco Tree*, in 30 great plenty.

The *Hollanders* are in good intelligence with the people, and *Kings of Sumatra*, and particularly with him of *Achem*: They have no place or *Fortress* in the Isle, but at *Famby* a *Kingdom*, *City*, and *River* of the same name, in one degree and fifty minutes beyond the *Equator*. They have built on this *River*, and 25 *Leagues* from the *Coast*, a *House* to accommodate their 40 *Traffick* with the *Islanders*: Their *Trade* is for the most part *Pepper*, which they send from this *House* to the *Sea* by *Canoes*.

In Inhabit.

The *Inhabitants* are many of them good *Artificers* and expert *Mariners*, they are for the most part *Gentiles*, yet of late *Mohometism* hath crept in amongst them: They are of an *Olive colour* *Complexion*, flat-faced, but indifferent well proportioned, and content themselves with a mean habit.

The Isle of Borneo, with its situation, and extent.

The *Island of BORNEO*, like to *Sumatra*, is part on this side, and part beyond the *Equator*; but it reaches on this side unto the *seventeenth degree* of *North Latitude*, and beyond onely to the *fourth* of *South Latitude*. Its *Form* is almost round, having onely 250 *Leagues* from

North to South, and little less from West to East; containing in its *Continent* more than *Sumatra*, or any other *Isle* we have knowledge of in *Asia*, but it is not so well inhabited, nor of so great *Trade* as *Sumatra*, yet more fertile, and besides the same *Commodities* hath quantity of *Myrabolans*.

Its *Forests* are full of *Trees*, which bear the most excellent *Camphire* in the *World*, which is uttered in the *Indies*, being too dear to be brought farther: That which comes to us from *China*, is so falsified, and of so little value, in respect of that which comes pure from *Borneo*, that One hundred pound of the one, is not worth one pound of the other. It hath also plenty of *Provision*.

*Borneo*, *Bendarmasin* or *Bandermahen*, *Love*, and *Hormata*, are the fairest *Cities*, or at least the best known of the *Isle*; for we yet know nothing of the *Eastern Coast*. *Borneo* is on a *Salt Lake*, or rather at the bottom of a *Gulf* of the *Sea*, as *Venice* is, and is on the *North-West* of the *Island*.

Its *Houses* are built of *Wood*, and upon *Piles*, and are accounted to be 20 or 3000. Through every *Street* runneth a *Channel* or *River* of *Water*; the *Palace* of the *King*, and the *Houses* of the principal *Lords* are of *Stone*, and on the firm *Land*.

*Bendarmasin* and *Love* are towards the *South*, regarding the *Great Java*, and both belong to the same *King*: They build many *Jancoas* at *Bendarmasin*. The *River of Succadan*, and the *Neighboring Forests* furnish them easily with *Wood*, and all that is necessary for the building of those *Vessels*. *Love* is near a *River* of the same name, and this *River*, as *Succadan*, yields *Diamonds*. *Hormata*, is discrib'd by the *Hollanders* on the *Coast*, *Westwards* of the *Isle*, and they esteem in it to have a or 3000 *Houses*.

The *Inhabitants* are great, of an *Olive colour*, of a good countenance; their *Women* brown and chaste, a thing very rare in the *Neighboring Islands*. They trade little to distant places, being more inclined to *Theft* and *Piracy*, then to *Trade*, exercising this onely with their *Neighbors*, the others with strangers faroff. They are expert in all sorts of *Arms*, of good *Wits*, and capable of *Arts*. Their *Apparel* is much the same with the *Indians*, which is a *Linnen Cloth* about their *Privy Parts*, and on their *Heads* *Turbets*. In their

Religion

Religion

Gentiles.

About

little 10

John 4.

Cambaban

last is on

City of

gan, &c.

King of

The t

and MI N

however

feast of

the 6th, u

of South

rain bread

beyond the

Leagues,

have scar

North-C

its South

Along

where is o

the East-

chants of

land have

there was

ders, wh

facora o

foot of a

Rivers, o

middle, t

sides of t

vers Chan

metans, w

from their

all too shal

of the C

strength,

makes the

ing them,

yet have t

and these

very com

guard, an

passage bo

no furring

are but m

Straw, an

but for pr

store-hou

veral place

modities,

chast; me

The C

of the Isle

Sugar, P

Sweet-me

Honey, &

Religion they are either *Mahometans* or *Gentiles*.

About *Borneo* are a great quantity of little Isles, *Bonquerano* 3 Degrees, *St. John* 4. *Folo* or *Zolo* 5. *Tacyma* 6. and *Combaban* 8 Degree of Latitude: this last is on the North of the Gulf, and City of *Borneo*, near that Gulf is *Pulegitgan*, &c. all these Islands belong to the King or Kings of *Borneo*.

The two Islands of *JAVA MAJOR* and *MINOR* are to the South of *Borneo*: however there is much dispute about the seat of the little one, the greater lies from the 6th, unto the 8th, 9th, or 10th, Degree of South Latitude, for we know not its certain breadth: and from the 145 Meridian beyond the 155, this length being 250 Leagues, and its breadth little less. We have scarce knowledge of any but the North-Coast of this Island, nor at all of its Southern.

Along the North-Coast of *Bantam*, where is one of the greatest Trades of all the *East-Indies*, and where the Merchants of the *East-India-Company* of *England* have their residence, and where once there was a like Company for the *Hollanders*, which they have transported to *Jacatra* or *Bavia*, *Bantam* is at the foot of a Hill, from which descend three Rivers, of which one passes through the middle, the others along, and on the two sides of the City, communicating by divers Channels, convenient for the *Mahometans*, who believe themselves purged from their sins, as often as they wash, but all too shallow for ships to say in, the Walls of the City are of Brick of no great strength, as also are their Gates, which makes them have the greater care in guarding them; the City is indifferent great, yet have they but three principal streets, and these all but upon the Castle, at every corner of the streets there stands a guard, and at sunset they make fast all passage boats, so that in the night there is no stirring in the Streets. The Houses are but meanly built, either of Reeds or Straw, and covered with the *Coco* leaves, but for preservation of goods, they have store-houses made of stone; they have several places or *Markets* for the sale of *Commodities*, as also an *Exchange* where *Merchants* meet.

The *Commodities* of *Bantam* are these of the Isles, as all sorts of *Druggs*, *Pepper*, *Sugar*, *Preserved Ginger*, and all sorts of *Sweet-meats*, both wet and dry, *Rice*, *Honey*, &c.

Also in this City is found several good *Commodities*, which are the product of other places, which are here had at easie rates, viz. *Spices*, *Precious stones*, *Ammunition*, *Sandall-wood*, *Silke* both raw and wrought into several *Fabricks*, as *Velvets*, *Sattins*, *Damaske*, *Cabinets*, *Lacque*, *Porcelaine*, *Callico*, *Frankincense*, *Camphora*, *Benjamin*, &c.

*Commodities* most vendible here, are, *Rials* of  $\frac{1}{2}$  Spanish, *Broad Cloths*, *Perpetuances*, *Lead*, *Powder*, *Amber*, *Looking-glasses*, *Sizzers*, *Knives* of all sorts, &c.

And the sale of these *Commodities*, lasts but till nine of the *Clock*.

The *Money* which is here, and in these Isles, Coynded, is only peeces of *Copper* Minted, and in the midst of which is a hole to hang them on a string, having 100, 200, and sometimes 1000 or more or less, on a string; and with these they buy *Commodities*; they call these peeces *Petties*.

A *Satta* is 200 *Petties*, and 5 *Sattas* is 1000 *Petties*, which is about 1 *Starling*.

But the *Merchants* that reside here, do keep their *Accounts* by *Rials* of  $\frac{1}{2}$  Spanish, which they divide into 60 *Deniers*, or *peeces*, and these *Rials* are also here current, and most of all sorts of *Commodities* are bought with them; the *Petties* being used in buying of trivial *Commodities*, and are prized more or less according to the plenty, or scarcity of the *prices* of  $\frac{1}{2}$  Spanish, a 1000, and sometimes 1200 going to one of the said *peeces* of  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

The *Weights* here at *Bantam*, *Jacatra*, *Sunda*, and throughout these Isles, is the *Cattee*, the *Picull*, and the *Bahar*. A *Cattee* is about 20 ounces *English*. A *Picull* is a 100 *Cattees* which is 1; 2 li. *English* fustle weight. A *Bahar* is 396 li. of the like weight, or 300 *Cattees*.

Their *Measure* of length is a *Covet*, that is; an *English yard*.

Their *drie Measure* for *Graines*, *Rice*, *Pepper*, or the like, is a *Gantang*, which is 21 li. *English*, and contains 10 *Sacks*, consisting of 5 *Piculls*.

It is governed by a *supream* or *Sovereign Prince* whom they entitle the *Mattaran*, and hath four *Depaties*, or *Tetrachs* his *Subordinates*. It is very well peopled; the Houses of persons of quality are better built than the rest, having square Courts at their entrance, and commonly there is a *Mosque* belonging to every one of them, as also a *Cisterne* to wash themselves in. The *Palace* is indifferently well built, the

e b ing



ing some kind of State, here the *Chineſes* (who are great traders to this City, bring in most of the *Commodities* except *Pepper, Cotton, Woll, and Rice,*) have a place of meeting for their worship.

*Fifteen or twenty Leagues from Bantam is Facatra now Batavia, since the Hollanders have builded this on the ruines of the other, where they had a faire Magazine: The King of Facatra assisted by some English, beſieged it about the year 1618, the Hollanders defended themselves till March 1619, that their General Koen returning from the Moluccoes raised the ſiege; took and ruined Facatra, and rebuilt Batavia, with a very good Citadel: this place is at present the Seate or Court of the General and Councillors of the East-India Company, for the United Provinces.*

*Continuing along the Coast, and 100 or 120 Leagues from Batavia is FAPARA, a City and Kingdom with a good Port, and a faire River. TUBAN 20 or 25 Leagues from Fapara, likewise a City and Kingdom, and Golfe: 50 Leagues further is the City, River, and Port of Fortan, which is of great concourse, for those that goe or return from Bantam to the Moluccoes, and from the Moluccoes to Bantam; Passarum is 20 Leagues from Fortan, and Panarucan yet 8 Leagues farther: this makes the most Easterly point of Fava Major: Balambuan is 12 or 15 Leagues from Panarucan, inclining towards the South. All these Cities have each their Kings. Balambuan regards the Isle of Baly, and the streight that is between them, takes its name from Balambuan as the most famous. Many Portugals remained at Panarucan to facilitate the Commerce they had of the Moluccoes, of Amboyna, Banda, Timur, &c. with Malacca, or those places they possess on this side, Panarucan being in the way between. Near this City a Sulphurous Mountain cast forth such great quantity of Stones and Cinders in 1588, that 10000 persons were stifled.*

*In the midst of the Isle of FAVA, and towards the South Coast is the City of Maderan or Materan, the residence of the most powerful King of Fava: this City is 100 Leagues from Bantam, 100 or 120 from Balambuan, and onely 35 or 40 from Fapara. This King once commanded the whole Isle, he yet commands those Kings which are in the high land, and on the South Coast: those on this*

side have freed themselves from his rule, rendering him onely certain duties, yet some places he holds on this Coast.

*We have no certain knowledge of FAVAMINOR, if we do not esteem it to be those Isles to the East of Fava Major, and whose Northerne Coast we onely know. Mark Paul of Venice who made the first relation, saith that it contained 2000 Leagues Circuit, which would be more then our great Fava, as we know it at present; he saith it had eight Kingdomes, of which he had seen six; gives to the soile the same qualities with the great one; but that its Inhabitants were more savage, and some Man-eaters: we shall presently speak a word or two of both FAVAS.*

*On the East of Fava is BALT Isle, which hath not above 40 Leagues Circuit, yet is peopled with 600 thousand soules, hath its particular King, rich, and magnificent. Madura Isle on the North East of Fortan in the Fava Major, is likewise full of people; Its Cities are very faire; hath its particular King; its People are wicked, and perfidious.*

*The people of all these Isles are Mahometans on the Coast, up in the Country great Idolaters: and some Man-eaters. They have many Kings, and have hitherto been able to lunder the Spaniards, Portugalls, and Hollanders, from building on their Coasts; yet these last have lately goe Batavia, which they bravely maintain.*

*The people are corpulent, of a middle stature, broad-faced, little eyes; they wear long hair, of a Chestnut complexion; they are addicted naturally to theft, stoue and courageous, very malicious when angry, very proud, deceitfull, and great lyars; their cloathing is as the other Indians, that is only a peece of cloth tyed about their privy parts. Yet some exceed, whereas others goe quite naked; they yet retain divers barbarous customes and ceremonies, as well in matters of Religion, as otherwise. Their weapons are the Bow and Arrows, the Dart, the Lance, the Shield, and Crizes, a strange and cruel weapon.*

*The Country or Islands are very fertile affording very many rich Commodities, as hath been spoken of already, which are all very excellent; they have several sorts both of tame and wild Beasts, abundance of Pearls and Fishes, among the rest Oysters, which if Mandellshoes may be credited, weigheth 300 pound weight; among their*

*Scorpents*

*Scorpents  
I for t  
with mos  
pleasant t  
them.*

*This I  
of the y  
and Light*

*Let us  
on the o  
the neigh  
cording a  
cribed the  
Favamu  
Sondor at  
his Provin  
Malacca,  
and his  
Major: Sum  
neo, Sum  
three Sim*

*M*

*Not  
the  
and the  
Ceylan, G  
and the S*

*CEY  
Antients,  
measurabl  
found. In  
Ganges, a  
Comaria  
Cach, of  
and on the  
old Argu  
farthers  
dara Reg  
particular*

*The In  
the Lead  
Dives, th  
tends it se  
itunde, an  
Degress,  
South to  
and a hal  
which am  
East to W*

from his rule, duties, yet Coast.

knowledge of do not esteem East of *Fava* rne Coast ve of *Venice* who h that it con- cuit, which t *Fava*, as we it had eight had seen six, qualities with ts Inhabitants e *Man-eaters*: word or two of

*BALY* Isle, agues Circuit, onsfand foules, h, and magni- North East of is likewise full ery faire; hath ole are wicked,

Isles are *Maho-* the Country ne *Man-eaters*, and have hither- *aniards*; Portu- n building on have lately got y maintain.

t, of a middle le eyes; they t complexion; o theft, stout ions when an- all, and great he other *Indi-* cloth tyed a- some exceed, ed; they yet omes and ce- rs of *Religion*, ons are the e, the *Lame*, a strange and

re very fertile Commodities, y, which are e several forts abundance e rest *Oysters*, be credited, ; among their *Serpents*

*Serpents* they have *Crocodiles* very large, for their *Fruits*, they may compare with most places, as well for the fairness, pleasant tastes, as for the great variety of them.

This Isle is much troubled at some part of the years with dreadful *Thundrings* and *Lightnings*.

Let us now make a short observati on the one and the other *Fava*; and the neighbouring Isles and Countrys, according as *Mark Paul* of *Venice* hath described them. It seems that his great *Fava* must be the Isle of *Borneo*, his Isles *Sondor* and *Candor* must be *Pulo Londor*, his Province of *Beach*, the Peninsula of *Malacca*, his Isle *Patan*, that of *Sumatra*, and his *Fava Minor* our present *Fava Major*: And it is to be believed that *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Fava* are likewise the three *Sindes* of *Ptolemy*.

The Isles of  
**C E Y L A N,**  
AND THE  
**M A L D I V E S.**

NOT far from the *Cape* of *Comori* are the Isles of *C E Y L A N* on one side, and the *M A L D I V E S* on the other; *Ceylan*, 60 Leagues towards the East; and the *Maldives* 150 between the East and the South.

*C E Y L A N* is the *Trapobans* of the *Ancients*, though *Ptolemy* makes it un- measurably greater then *Ceylan* is now found. Its situation is on this side the *Ganges*, and near *Cape Comori*, of old *Comaria Extrema*, likewise near *Cape de Cash*, of old *Cori* or *Caligicum promont.* and on the stright of *Manar* or *Quilao*, of old *Argaricus Sinos*, near which or a little farther is the land of *Madura*, of old *Madura Regia Pandionis*, and divers other particulars making sufficient proof.

The *Indians* name it *Tenerafin*, that is the *Isle of Delights*; the *Arabs* *Zeilan Dive*, that is the Isle of *Ceylan*. It extends it self from 6 to 10 Degrees of *Latitude*, and so comprehends four whole Degrees, which makes 100 Leagues from South to North: it hath but two Degrees and a half, or little more of *Longitude*, which amounts to 60 & odd Leagues from East to West: the whole Circuit is about

300 Leagues; its forme is almost Oval, or rather like a *Pearle* or *Pear*, whose tail is North, and its head South.

Some place in this Isle, 7 Kingdomes, others 9, and others more; that of *Fafanapanatan* is the most Northerly; those of *Trinquilemale*, and *Baticalo* are the most Easterly; those of *Chilao*, and *Colombo* the most Westerly; and that of *Faba* the most Southward; those of *Candea*, of *Sette Coralles*, and *Ceitavaca* hold the middle. *Candea*, is at present the most famous; those of *Colombo*, and *Ceitavaca* have sometimes been the residence of Kings, which have commanded all the *Island*.

At present the *Portugals* hold *Colombo*, *Chilao*, *Manar* Isle and Fortrefs, *Fafanapanatan*, and some other places on the Coast, which regard the stright of *Chilao*, and *Manar*. *Colombo* and *Chilao* are not above 60 Leagues or little more from *Cape Comori*, *Manar* 25 or 30 Leagues from *Cape de Cash*, and *Fafanapanatan* 15 or 20 from the *Cape* of *Negapanatan*.

The best Ports of this Isle are those of *Gallo*, *Colombo*, and *Chilao*: that of *Gallo* is one of the best known of all *India*, because all that come, or goe, are constrained to make the point of *Gallo*, for feare of falling on the bankes of the *Maldives*: some years past the *Hollanders* took this important place from the *Portugalls*.

The *Aire* is to temperate, and the Land so fruitful, that some esteem it the Earthly *Paradise*. Its *Fruit*, *Herbes*, and *Plants* have a marvellous pleasant odor; Its *Cinnamon* is the best in the world, and particularly towards *Colombo*, and *Ceitavaca*, there is found much *Cardamem*, *Arca*, *Nutmegs*, *Pepper*, and other *Spices*, and several *Drugges*, also *Lignum Aquila*, *Lignum Serpents*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Braff*, *Iron* and other *Metalls*; though the *Mines* are not wrought; many precious stones, among others: those which the *Portugals* call *Cass eyes*; they have no *Diamonds*, but many *Pearles*, which they fish for in the stright between this *Island* and the *Continent*. The soile produces *Corne*, *Oyle*, *Wine*, *Cotton*, abundance of *Rice*, several roots for *Dyers*. Among their *Beasts*, their *Elephants* are so excellent, and so *Docile*, that those of other places bear honour to them as to their superiors. They have great plenty of *Fowles*, *Cattal*, and their Rivers yeild great store of *Fish*.

The Portugals call here Eskabete.

In Aire, Country, and Commodities.

As concerning the *Coyns*, *Weights*, and *Measures*, of the Isles of *Ceylan*, and the *Maldives*, I have no certain account thereof, wherefore I omit them.

The Inhabitants

The *Islanders* are generally great, black, deformed, having their Eares long, and their Nostriils large, for the rest well disposed and active, great Dancers, inso-much that they may furnish all *India* with *Comedians* and *Fuglers*; they are rich, and smother themselves in delights, all things agreeing to it, yet are they inclined to War. In those places possessed by the *Portugalls* are many *Christians*, the rest *Idolaters* or *Mahometans*.

### The MALDIVES.

The Isles of the Maldives, their Situation, and parts of the Archipelago.

THE *MALDIVES* take their name from *Male* the chief City of these Islands, and *Dive* which signifies an *Island*; they are an infinite number of very little Islands, all seated in the *Indian Ocean*, on this side *Cape Comori*, beginning at the 8th Degree of Northern *Latitude*, and not ending till the third or fourth of the South, the *Equinoctial Line* passing over them, so that they extend in length 300 Leagues, in breadth not above 15 or 16 little more.

They are divided into 12 *Atollons*, separated the one from the other by certain Channels, and containing each a great number of little *Isles*: from hence the King of *Maldives* termes himself King of 12 *Provinces*, and 12000 *Isles*, though there be many less, and the most of them desert, and which the *Sea* covers when it is high.

The disposition of these *Atollons* is admirable; then their Banks, their Entrances, their Currents; the *Atollons* are almost round, or Ovall, each having 30, 40, or 50 Leagues circuit: and succeeding one another from North, North-West, to South, South-East, there resting between them but certaine Currents, large, little or more, but all dangerous.

These *Atollons* are each encompassed with a great bank of stones, there being no humane Art, could better wall a place, then these banks doe their *Atollons*, the *Sea* breaking its waves against the banks, and within the *Atollons* there being a perfect calme, and but little depth of water, The entrances are certain open places of

40, 50, some of a 100, 200 common paces, which the Author of nature hath given to every *Atollon*; that is four to each, to facilitate their passage from one *Atollon* to another; for the Currents which are between the Channels, being carried six moneths to the East, and six moneth to the West; it was impossible to pass from one *Atollon* to another, if there were but two openings, one opposite to another. These Currents moreover are so rapid, that when it is calme, and when the wind goes with them, they carry a vessell sometimes to *Malabar*, and *Ceylan*, and sometimes to *Sumatra*, without possibility of stopping it; and on the other side, even to *Arabia*, and *Affrica*.

The names and order of these *Atollons* descending from North to South, are *Tilladon Matis*, that is the high point, and by the *Spaniards*, *Cabeza das Ilhas*, head of the Islands; then *Milla done*, *Madoue*, *Padyola*, *Malos*: *Caridon*, *Ariatollon*, *Male Atollon*, where is the Isle of *Male Poulsidon*, *Molique*, *Nillandoux*, *Collomadoux*, *Adoumatis*, *Sowadon*, *Addon*, and *Pose Molique*, the two last being esteemed but one.

The largest Chanells, and there where the Currents are the strongest, are those of *Malos*, *Madoue*, *Caridon*, *Aldon*, and *Sowadon*. *Francis Pirard* a great Traveller was shipwreckt on the first, and remained five years in the *Maldives*, where at leisure he learned the tongue, scituation, and manners of the Inhabitants, and hath set out a publique description of every particular.

The King of these Isles resides in the Isle of *Male*, which is one of the greatest, though not above a League and a half in Circuit: It is one of the most fruitful, and seated in the middle of the *Longitude* of three Islands. Strangers frequent it, because of the Court. There are no Cities through all, their disposition being sufficiently commodious; their scituation denotes a great heate, yet the dayes being equal to the nightes, and the nightes subject to great dewes, they refresh the Earth, so their Summers are without raine, and their Winter without ice; but these pouring down raine with a constant West South West wind; the Fever among the *Maldives* is very common; and dangerous to strangers, whom it often kills in few dayes.

There grows neither *Rice*, nor *Wheat*: yet are Provisions better cheep then in the rest of the *Indies*. They have *Rice* from

from the *Atollon* in *Bunbi*, li have mu *Oranges*, abundant *Cocos*, tho so much hence, l They hav *Mutton*; Quantity

They pass in m lade yearl for *Benga* for other much este are smooch which the *Glasses*, & particular dicinal, *Amber-gr* The King and *Ambe* jects to tra

There exchange *Cloth*, *Silk* *Spices*, *Pe* come not make use *King* is nei in his Isles jects.

Among *Candor* ar They mak dou, with all sort of

from the Continent, and gather at home *Millet* in abundance, and the Grain of *Bunbi*, like to *Millet*, but black. They have much *Fruit*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Oranges*, *Bananes*; and above all, so great abundance of that Nut of *India*, called *Cocos*, that no Country in the World hath so much. All the *Levant* is furnished hence, lading every year several Ships. They have many *Animals*, little *Beef* or *Mutton*; no *Dogs*, for they abhor them: Quantity of *Fish*.

They have many little *Shells*, which pass in many places for *Money*, and they lade yearly 30 or 40 Ships with these *Shells* for *Bengala* onely, besides what they lade for other parts. Their *Tortoise Shells* are much esteemed at *Cambaya*, because they are smooth, black, and well-figured; with which they make *Combs*, *Cases of Looking-Glasses*, &c. Their *Tavargare* or *Cocos*, particularly of the *Maldives*, is very Medicinal, and of greater value then their *Amber-greece*, and their *Black Corral*. The King alone is to have this *Tavargare* and *Amber-greece*, not permitting his Subjects to trade in it.

There is brought to the *Maldives* in exchange of their Commodities, *Rice*, *Cloth*, *Silk*, *Cotton*, *Oyl*, *Areca*, *Iron*, *Steel*, *Spices*, *Porcelains*, *Gold* and *Silver*, which come not thence again. Its *Inhabitants* make use of all sorts of *Arms*, yet their King is neither rich, nor powerful, except in his Isles, and in regard of his own Subjects.

Amongst the rarities of this Isle, their *Candou* and their *Cocos*, are observable. They make *Planks* of the Wood of *Candou*, with which they draw out of the Sea 40 all sort of weights, though of a 100000

pound. Their Tree is as great as our *Walnut Tree*, Leaved like the *Aspin*, and as white, but very soft. It bears no *Fruit*; they make *Fisher-boats* of it, and with rubbing two pieces of this Wood together, kindle fire as we do with a *Flint* and *Steel*; yet it neither burns nor consumes.

As for the *Cocos* or *Walnut of India*, It furnishes them with all things necessary for *Mans life*; they extract from it, *Wine*, *Honey*, *Sugar*, *Milk*, *Oyl*, and *Butter*. Its *Kernels* they eat instead of *Bread*, with all sorts of *Meat*; the *Leaf* being green, serves for *Paper* to write, being dry, they fold it in little *Bands*, and make *Panners*, *Dossers*, *Umbrello's*, *Hats*, *Cover-lids*, and *Carpets*; the *Sprig* which is in the middle of the *Leaf*, being dry, hardneth, and of it they make *Cabinets*, *Chests*, and other moveables; of the *Shell*, which incloses the *Fruit*, they make *Ladles*, *Spoons*, *Plates*, *Cups*, &c. They may build a whole *House* out of these *Trees*; the *Trunk* may serve for *Beams* and *Foynets*, the *Branches* cut into two or three for *Pails*, to *Pail* in *Gardens* or *Houses*, and for *Laths* to cover them; and the *Leaves* sowed together, and disposed in *Ranks* upon those *Laths*, cast off the *Water*, as well as our *Tiles*. They build likewise many *Ships* onely out of the *Cocos-Tree*, the *Keel*, *Sides*, *Planks*, *Pins*, *Hatches*, *Masts* and *Yards*, *Cordage*, *Anchors*, *Sails*, and even all the *Utensils* of a *Ship*, are taken from this *Tree*, and sometimes their lading, whether for *Provision* or *Moveables*, or to furnish *Rigging* for other *Ships*, is likewise taken out of this *Tree* alone.

And so much for the *Eastern Isles* and all *Asia*.

# An Alphabetical Table

OF THE

*Kingdoms, Countreys, Isles, Provinces, Cities, Towns, and Ports,*

MENTIONED IN.

# A S I A.

**N**ote, that the Places that are Printed in *Italick*, are Cities and Towns, &c. Those in Roman, Provinces, Isles, &c. And those in Capital Letters, are Kingdoms, &c. in Asia.

A.	Folio.	A R A B I A.	Folio.	B e k e r.	Folio.	B i s n o.
<b>A</b> Baye.	100	A abia the Desert.	21	<i>Balagase.</i>	62	<i>Bijep.</i>
<i>Achen.</i>	107	A abia the happy.	23	<i>Balagase.</i>	60	<i>Birdi.</i>
<i>Ach.</i>	19	A abia the stony.	30	Balamban.	110	Bisnagan.
<i>Addou.</i>	111	<i>Arabyssa.</i>	10	Balk.	44	Bizaga.
<i>Aca.</i>	33	<i>Araba.</i>	16	<i>Balk.</i>	41	Bizyala.
<i>Acana.</i>	7	<i>Araba.</i>	25	<i>Balk.</i>	90	Bizit.
<i>Adida.</i>	107	<i>Aracana.</i>	9	<i>Balkera.</i>	23, 53	<i>Boddi.</i>
<i>Adonare.</i>	105	<i>Aradevil.</i>	38	<i>Baly.</i>	210	<i>Boddi.</i>
<i>Adopissa.</i>	10	<i>Araden.</i>	41	<i>Banara.</i>	55	<i>Boddi.</i>
<i>Aloumatis.</i>	111	<i>Aracolon.</i>	111	<i>Banaych.</i>	91	<i>Bogurama.</i>
<i>Alramissim.</i>	11	<i>Aracoo.</i>	106	<i>Banay.</i>	206	<i>Bogilla.</i>
<i>Alou.</i>	9	<b>A R M E N I A.</b>	17, 16	<i>Bando.</i>	56	<i>Borra.</i>
<i>Agan.</i>	101	Armenia Minor.	10	<i>Bankole.</i>	100	<i>Borissa.</i>
<i>Agathodis.</i>	35	<i>Araragon.</i>	68	<i>Bankin.</i>	50	<i>Borissa.</i>
<i>Agra.</i>	53	<i>Arasoo.</i>	13	<i>Banochia.</i>	105	<i>Bost.</i>
<i>Agrinans.</i>	6	<i>Arromagagn.</i>	102	<i>Bantam.</i>	109	<i>Bost.</i>
<i>Alabanda.</i>	9	<i>Arca.</i>	106	<i>Bantam.</i>	100	<i>Bozbo.</i>
<i>Alappa.</i>	15	<i>Asanchif.</i>	24	<i>Bap.</i>	11	<i>Bourigion.</i>
<i>Alexandria.</i>	7, 10	<i>Asa-Ma-keran.</i>	41	<i>Bara.</i>	107	<i>Boum.</i>
<i>Alimabi.</i>	34	<i>Asara.</i>	16	<i>Barsaniffa.</i>	5	<i>Boum.</i>
<i>Aligada.</i>	76	<i>Asandam.</i>	7	<i>Bardong.</i>	71	<i>Bourapa.</i>
<i>Alimood Governor.</i>	38	<b>A S S Y R I A.</b>	24	<i>Barda.</i>	42	<i>Bouda.</i>
<i>Alimacioran.</i>	34	<i>Assacher.</i>	41	<i>Bard.</i>	91	<i>Boum.</i>
<i>Aka.</i>	76	<i>Assarab.</i>	38	<i>Bard.</i>	51	<i>Bouda.</i>
<i>Amaco.</i>	86	<i>Attabil.</i>	106	<i>Bard.</i>	51	<i>Bouda.</i>
<i>Amadehad.</i>	51	<i>Attoch.</i>	50	<i>Bard.</i>	29	<i>Bouda.</i>
<i>Amam or Ama.</i>	16	<i>Ava.</i>	68	<i>Bard.</i>	44	<i>Bouda.</i>
<i>Amanguchi.</i>	95	<i>Avarella.</i>	85	<i>Batalaya.</i>	106	<i>Bouda.</i>
<i>Amaph.</i>	1	<i>Auro.</i>	24	<i>Batalaya or Jacova.</i>	110	<i>Bouda.</i>
<i>Amastri.</i>	6	<i>Avogasin.</i>	28	<i>Batala.</i>	64	
<i>Amasba.</i>	11	<i>Auriclo.</i>	67	<i>Batalo.</i>	111	
<i>Amastriffen.</i>	34	<i>Away.</i>	106	<i>Batimena.</i>	67	
<i>Amblan.</i>	87	<i>Ayman.</i>	86	<i>Baton.</i>	106	
<i>Amboyna.</i>	105	<i>Ayack.</i>	39	<i>Batum.</i>	76	
<i>Anethonia.</i>	13	<i>Aza.</i>	5	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Amool.</i>	38	<i>Aziet.</i>	34	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Anchold.</i>	7			<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Anayra or Angoure.</i>	6			<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Andagen.</i>	91			<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Anderson.</i>	76			<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Andra.</i>	7			<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Andrafa.</i>	6			<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Angamale.</i>	67	<b>B</b>		<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Anguliffa.</i>	101	<i>Babylon or Bagdad.</i>	21	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Anna.</i>	31	<i>Baboxia.</i>	85	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Anvibi.</i>	93	<i>Babuyones.</i>	100	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<b>A N O T O L I A.</b>	4	<i>Bacca.</i>	38	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Antandru.</i>	21	<i>Bachera.</i>	90, 91	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Antioch.</i>	11	<i>Bachin.</i>	104	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Aprina.</i>	9, 17	<i>Bacim.</i>	102	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Apreudsum.</i>	13	<i>Badera.</i>	67	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
<i>Aquilans.</i>	105	<i>Badeschion.</i>	90	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
		<i>Bad.</i>	41	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
		<i>Bader.</i>	34	<i>Batu.</i>	61	
		<i>Bahrem.</i>	Ibid.	<i>Batu.</i>	61	

C

**C** *Alasaga.*  
*Calaban.*

<i>Calaba.</i>	50
<i>Calab.</i>	91
<i>Calab.</i>	106
<i>Calab.</i>	108
<i>Calab.</i>	55
<i>Calab.</i>	75
<i>Calab.</i>	55, 56
<i>Calab.</i>	30
<i>Calab.</i>	38
<i>Calab.</i>	106
<i>Calab.</i>	11
<i>Calab.</i>	Ibid.
<i>Calab.</i>	38
<i>Calab.</i>	106
<i>Calab.</i>	108
<i>Calab.</i>	101
<i>Calab.</i>	50

St. S. Jorge

ALDEA or YER



# A TABLE.

Table

and Ports,

Those in Roman Asia.

C  
Albany  
Cathay

Folio.		Folio.		Folio.		Folio.
57	Chilon.	87	D.		Gaxar.	Folio 38
58	<b>CHINA.</b>	76			Gaza.	38
59	Chinchoe.	80	<b>D</b> Alagus.	Folio 35	Gegnamela.	38
72	Chinchinair.	91	Damasum.	18	Gehud.	56
7	Chinchoe.	83	Danegan.	38	<b>GEORGIA.</b>	18
107	Chipicha.	19	Dancia.	59	Germanopolis.	10
90	Chiraf.	42	Dancers.	102	Gatigan.	105
92	Chispagata.	64	Dankalar.	50	Ghan.	75
102	Chisor.	55	Daphna.	15	Gibbelech.	19
76	Chocera.	39	Derabegerd.	42	Gilack.	41
87	Choranin.	41	Deranum.	10	Gilan.	38
64	Cheromandel.	64	Davasi.	90	Gillolo.	104, 105
33	Choy.	39	<b>DECAN.</b>	60	Gingi.	64
68	Chubedu.	76	Dehake.	55	Gignul Sebuz.	41
67	<b>C M I I R D I S T A N .</b>	39	Dely.	16	Gionis.	35
83	Chushan.	41	Derbe.	10	Girhan.	90
44, 50	Churiam.	91	Derbent.	26	Gisna-Cassaby.	44
112	Cicbia.	82	De los Mantelotes.	102	Gos.	60, 61
55	Cjdambaras.	64	Des los Arcelios.	ibid.	Goctinacor.	76
55	Cion.	105	<b>D I A R B E C K .</b>	22	Gog.	93
65	Cipan.	87	Dilemon.	38	<b>C O L C O N D A .</b>	63
102	Chirangapan.	65	Dipolis.	6	Gambros.	42
85	Clandipolis.	6, 8	Diospolis.	51	Ganchita.	50
7	Clanmont.	9	Divar.	51	Garcapa.	57
41	Coalia.	5	Dial.	60	Gardian.	64
100	Cochin.	67	Dolfar.	34	Gargia.	9
<b>COCHINCHINA</b>		74	Dorslam.	9	Gargira.	29
90	Colecht.	15	Dot Alavantodot.	76	Gaur.	55
24	Collamadour.	112	Dot Caboct.	ibid.	Godalvia.	9
10	Colobrasia.	7	Dot Cacor.	ibid.	Greer.	44
83	Colombo.	111	Dos Sombrosos de Palm.	ibid.	Gregus.	102
76	Colophon.	9	Drapanum.	13	Guahyil.	107
8	Coleran.	64	Durbacaon.	68	Guadacari.	63
6	Coloff.	9	Durondiva.	76	Guadal.	44
112	Com.	39			Guadul.	52
14	Coma.	105			Guanan.	102
26	Combahan.	109			Guator.	55, 56
39	Comana.	7	<b>E</b>		Gubethanen.	34
<b>COMANIA.</b>		29	E Grigaja.	33	Guelidra.	66
101	Comber.	106	Eliar.	93	Guischen.	39
91	Condapoli.	63	Ekalif.	34	Gumanspi.	106
39	Conlata.	10	Emil.	91	Gurhilia.	56
68	Connetta.	63	<b>Empire of the GREAT</b>		Gurhilton.	28
68	Conmiripatan.	63	<b>MOGOL.</b>	49	Gurware or Cambaya.	91
64	Coon.	63	Emporian.	60		
5	Coon.	62	Empia.	16		
104	Cozale.	5	Englek.	102		
100	Cover.	106	Ephema.	8	<b>H</b>	
91	Covey.	88	Epiphanis.	7, 17	<b>H</b> Alcan.	50
105	Cov.	29	Episcopia.	13	Hamadan.	39
100, 101	Cozma.	39	Erginal.	93	Hamedaneger.	60, 62
111	Colconati.	15	Erythra.	93	Haraware.	50
105	Coffin.	76	Erythra.	16	Harecy.	41
9	Cota.	67	Erythra.	93	Hendownes.	56
83	Cotagan.	ibid.	Erythra.	7	Herae.	41
90	Cozzin.	91			Heraclis.	6, 17
5	Coum.	ibid.			Hermanassa.	4
13	Coubilla.	105			Hieropolis.	9, 17
ibid.	Goucar.	101.			Himpin.	82
105	Coucouran.	67			Hiloban.	87
42	Coufa.	13	<b>F</b>		Hiloban.	39
68	Coulan.	67	Armacia.	13	Hiloban.	105
6	Cuyo.	67	Farmagusa.	42	Hiloban.	55
<b>ALDEA or YERACK</b>		100	Fars.	5	Honan.	83
32	Cranganor.	6	Fartach.	7	Houqua.	ibid.
67	Crav.	67	Faugoria.	38	Hormata.	108
65	Creminz.	76	Fausipolis.	10	Horey.	39
67	Cretopolis.	10	Favema.	51	Houqua.	87
47	Croffon.	7	Fermola.	93	Huguis.	85
55	Crubbe.	23	Fetipore.	6		
60	Cume.	76	Fingole.	6		
102	Cumbalich.	96	Flores.	105		
82	Curia.	96	Fruasch.	90		
102	Cuziga.	37	Fucha.	82	<b>I</b>	
43	Cuziga.	60	Furgo.	83	<b>J</b>	
53	Cyran.	11	Fugues or Chiquin.	83	Ah.	111
91	Cyrcia.	7			Jafanapan.	ibid.
85	Cyrcia.	11			Jafinga.	107
87	Cyrcia.	10	<b>G</b>		Jamulit.	98
74		10	Almia.	6	Jamba.	56
111		10	Gamma-Lauma.	104	Jamby.	107
			Gannadere.	ibid.	Janagar.	50
			Garsafa.	10	Jango Ma.	62, 72
					Japan.	94
					Japara.	110
					Jarchan.	

# A TABLE.

<p>Folio. 91 <i>Farchan.</i> 109 <i>Java Major.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Java Minor.</i> 113 <i>Icaria.</i> 116 <i>Isanium.</i> 116 <i>Jenupar.</i> 116 <i>Jerico.</i> 90 <i>Feram.</i> 30 <i>Ferusalem.</i> 99 <i>JESSO.</i> 98 <i>Jeselmere.</i> 98 <i>Jerigen.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Jeritengo.</i> 72 <i>Ibay.</i> 72 <i>Iha de Naoz.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Iha de Pedra.</i> 100 <i>Hooquet.</i> <b>INDIA.</b> 106 <i>Insuen Mac.</i> 107 <i>Islo.</i> 8 <i>Jonia.</i> 110 <i>Jortan.</i> 9 <i>Jpsu.</i> 9 <i>Jauria.</i> 9 <i>Jbau.</i> <b>ISLES of CEYLON.</b> 105 <i>Isles of JAPAN.</i> 94 <i>Isles of LARONS.</i> 102 <i>Isles of MALDIVES.</i> 111 <i>Isles of SOUND.</i> 91 <i>Isus.</i> 6, 9 <i>Ithigis.</i> 6, 9 <i>Fulipolou.</i> 72 <i>Juncaloon.</i> 41 <i>Juran.</i></p>	<p>Folio. 82 <i>Liaou.</i> 100 <i>Linton.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Lispor.</i> 106 <i>London.</i> 91 <i>Lop.</i> 105 <i>Lovia.</i> 50 <i>Lourebander.</i> 100 <i>Luban.</i> 71 <i>Lugor.</i> 100 <i>Lujon.</i> 86 <i>Luisbu.</i> 86 <i>Lycocoma.</i> 6 <i>Lycla.</i> 9 <i>Lylia.</i> 10 <i>Lynessu.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Lyltra.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>M.</b></p> <p>104 <i>M. Arabian.</i> 44 <i>Mackeran.</i> 76 <i>Macara.</i> 105 <i>Macarar.</i> 110 <i>Maderan.</i> 30 <i>Madras.</i> 110 <i>Madura.</i> 64 <i>Madura.</i> 113 <i>Madoué.</i> 9 <i>Magnéfa.</i> 7 <i>Magydh.</i> 9 <i>Magoz.</i> <b>MALABAR.</b> 66 <i>MALACCA.</i> 72, 73 <i>Malabrigo Deferte.</i> 104 <i>Malaya.</i> 67 <i>Maldivea.</i> 112 <i>Mala.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Male Atollon.</i> 41 <i>Maliapar.</i> 50 <i>Malaos.</i> 103 <i>Malpejo.</i> 105 <i>Mals.</i> 155, 156 <i>Malway.</i> 109 <i>Manaje.</i> 15 <i>Manama.</i> 107 <i>Manancabo.</i> 64 <i>Manancor.</i> 103 <i>Manz.</i> 64, 68, 111 <i>Manar.</i> 68 <i>Mandracelle.</i> 67 <i>Mangar.</i> 61 <i>Manicapatan.</i> 100 <i>Manille.</i> 106 <i>Manipe.</i> 106 <i>Maon.</i> 39 <i>Maragan.</i> 104 <i>Maricco.</i> 104 <i>Marigoran.</i> 100 <i>Marinduque.</i> 68 <i>Marfan.</i> 67 <i>Marza.</i> 71 <i>Maraban.</i> 87 <i>Martavan.</i> 9, 16 <i>Martaya.</i> 41 <i>Marbate.</i> 70 <i>Marcatas.</i> 68 <i>Marsu.</i> 17 <i>Marsan.</i> 101 <i>Mar Buenas Señales.</i> 108 <i>Masca.</i> 38 <i>Mauris.</i> 34 <i>Mauris.</i> 34 <i>Mauris.</i> 89 <i>Mazda.</i> 9 <i>Mazandaran.</i> 68, 76 <i>Mazda.</i> 11 <i>Mocca.</i> 88 <i>Mocua.</i> 11 <i>Medina.</i> 88 <i>Mediam.</i> 87 <i>Medina.</i> 84 <i>Megalo.</i> 72 <i>Megalo.</i></p>	<p>Folio. 14 <i>Merdin.</i> 41 <i>Mesched.</i> <b>MESOPOTAMIA.</b> 47 100 <i>Messane.</i> 91 <i>Mesopoturus.</i> 113 <i>Mictline.</i> 51 <i>Mevit.</i> 31 <i>Mexat. Ali.</i> 87 <i>Micau Occm.</i> 87 <i>Miamu.</i> 8 <i>Milisa.</i> 110 <i>Milina.</i> 112 <i>Milla Doué.</i> 100, 101 <i>Mindanao.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Mindora.</i> 28 <i>Mingrelia.</i> 6 <i>Mira.</i> 34 <i>Mirabat.</i> 44 <i>Mocbefan.</i> 85 <i>Mosfofa.</i> <b>MOLUCCO ISLES.</b> 103 115 <i>Moluqu.</i> 67 <i>Montique.</i> 106 <i>Moro.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Moroia.</i> 25 <i>Mosul.</i> 38 <i>Mosun.</i> 104 <i>Mosir.</i> 50 <i>Multan.</i> 106 <i>Mulidura.</i> 35 <i>Muria.</i> 63 <i>Muserte.</i> 67 <i>Myria.</i> 9 <i>Myria.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>N.</b></p> <p>104 <i>N. Abas.</i> 43 <i>Nabaya.</i> 39 <i>Nabruva.</i> 87 <i>Nancian.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Nangem.</i> 95 <i>Nangefaki.</i> 86 <i>Nanbiam.</i> 82 <i>Nanquin.</i> 12 <i>Napoufe.</i> 63 <i>Narfangapatan.</i> <b>NARSINGUE or BISSINGUE.</b> 63 64 <i>NAGAR.</i> 57 <i>Narvall.</i> 56 <i>Narvar.</i> 68 <i>Nassary.</i> 104 <i>Nassaw.</i> 104 <i>Nata.</i> 50 <i>Naugracut.</i> 93 <i>Nayman.</i> 7 <i>Naxiantum.</i> 67 <i>Naxelact.</i> 71 <i>Negapatan.</i> 64, 66 <i>Negouas.</i> 100 <i>Negroponite.</i> 106 <i>Nera.</i> 6 <i>Nlice.</i> 34 <i>Nicaria.</i> 8, 10 <i>Niipoli.</i> 12, 13 <i>Nicola.</i> 41 <i>Nirabour.</i> 76 <i>Nirabour.</i> 112 <i>Nilandoué.</i> 25 <i>Nisacra.</i> 4 <i>Nisacra.</i> 106 <i>Noba.</i> 107 <i>Noelun.</i> 65 <i>Norvague.</i> 11 <i>Nostro Señora della Rosario.</i> 103 <i>Nubaca.</i> 104 <i>Nusivul.</i> 106 <i>Nysa.</i></p>	<p style="text-align: right;">O.</p> <p>10 <i>O Bscen.</i> 7 <i>Ochia.</i> 113 <i>Ochia.</i> 31 <i>Oltro.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Olupio.</i> 87 <i>Omoo.</i> 8 <i>Onor.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Orcha.</i> 112 <i>Organci.</i> 100, 101 <i>Ormu.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Orman Lu.</i> 8 <i>Orstan.</i> 28 <i>Ouby.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>P.</b></p> <p>103 <i>Pacom.</i> 115 <i>Palyopol.</i> 67 <i>Palyacate.</i> 106 <b>PALESTINE.</b> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Palmbam.</i> 25 <i>Palmes.</i> 38 <i>Pamania.</i> 104 <i>Pamnye.</i> 50 <i>Pamphylia.</i> 106 <i>Pan.</i> 35 <i>Panaragan.</i> 63 <i>Pandior.</i> 67 <i>Panepelli.</i> 9 <i>Panay.</i> 30 <i>Panian.</i> 106 <i>Pantur.</i> 106 <i>Paphis.</i> 106 <i>Paphis.</i> 106 <i>Papou.</i> 104 <i>Paragoya or Calamianes.</i> 43 <i>Paracalis.</i> 39 <i>Parakalis.</i> 87 <i>Parim.</i> <i>ibid.</i> <i>Parmanalis.</i> 95 <i>Paru.</i> 86 <i>Pasina.</i> 82 <i>Passarum.</i> 12 <i>Pasna.</i> 63 <i>Pasane.</i> 64 <i>Pasanes.</i> 57 <i>Pasara.</i> 67 <i>Paser. Noller.</i> 56 <i>Pathmos.</i> 53 <i>Pachimia.</i> 104 <i>Patin.</i> 103 <i>Paugay.</i> 50 <i>Paubua.</i> 93 <i>Pecheura.</i> 7 <i>Pedir.</i> <b>P EGU.</b> 49 64, 66 <i>Peim.</i> 12 <i>Peninsula of INDIA the GANGES.</i> 106 <i>Peninsula of INDIA the GANGES.</i> 6 <i>Petua.</i> 3 <i>Petua.</i> 8, 10 <i>Pera.</i> 12, 13 <i>Pergama.</i> 41 <i>Perge.</i> 76 <b>PERSIA.</b> 112 <i>Petchery.</i> 25 <i>Pfana.</i> 4 <i>Pfana.</i> 106 <i>Phabarona.</i> 107 <i>Phaiga.</i> 65 <i>Phana.</i> 11 <i>Phernatia.</i> 103 <i>Phasik.</i> 104 <i>Phiana.</i> 106 <i>Philadelphia.</i> 7 <b>PHILIPPINE ISLES.</b></p>
---	---	--	---



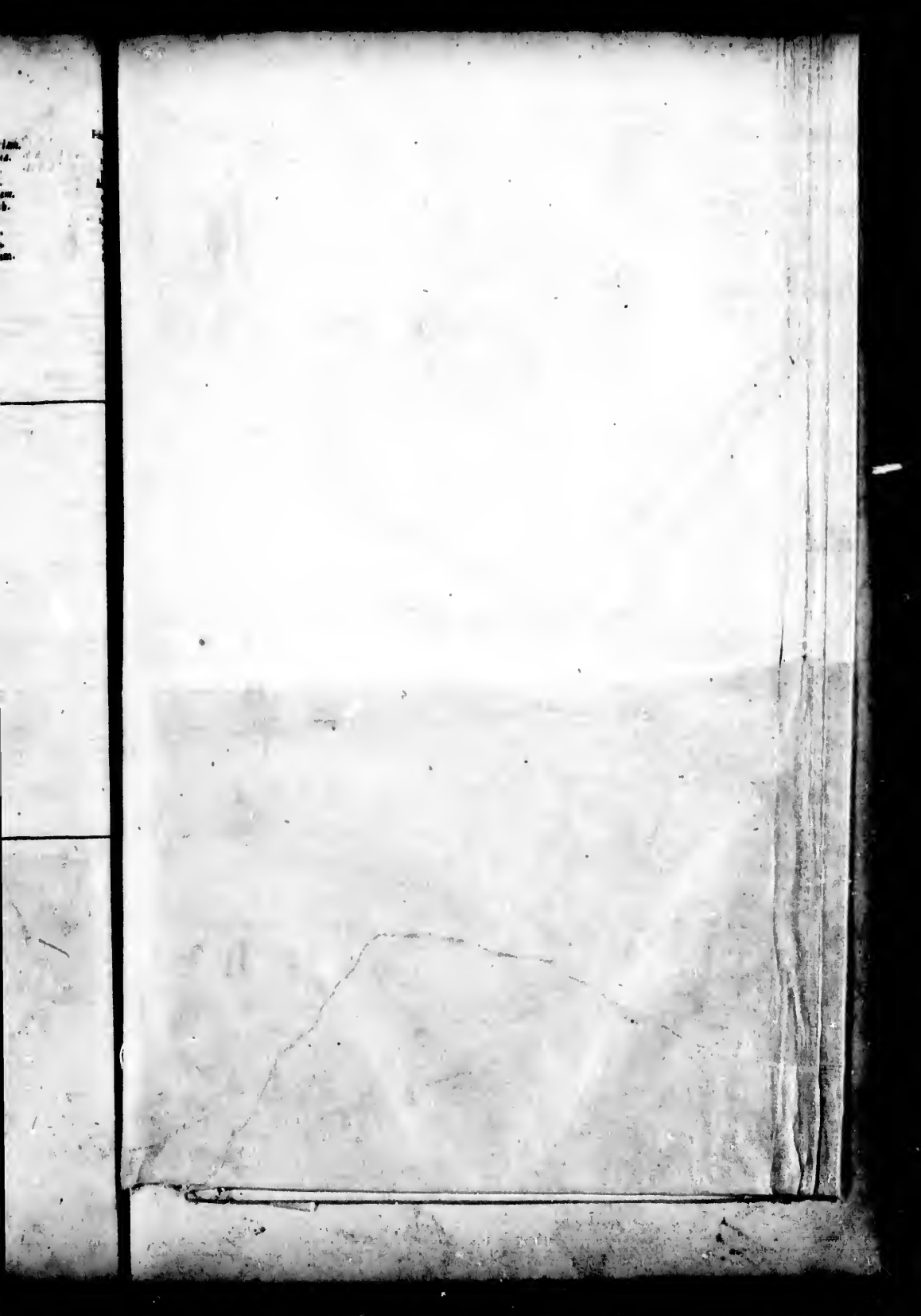
# A TABLE.

<table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>Xangua.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">Folio.</td> <td>86</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Xicoy.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">98</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ximo.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">94</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Xmas.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">80</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Xulla.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">106</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Xumbienjo or Pequia.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">80, 82</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Xangua.	Folio.	86	Xicoy.	98		Ximo.	94		Xmas.	80		Xulla.	106		Xumbienjo or Pequia.	80, 82		Y.	Folio.	Z.	<table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>Zephyria.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">Folio.</td> <td>30</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zengma.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">29</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zibid.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">44</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zidex.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">41</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zirgam.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">38</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zitrah.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zole.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">33</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zocua.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">4</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zutis.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">33</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Zunam.</td> <td style="text-align: right;"></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	Zephyria.	Folio.	30	Zengma.	29		Zibid.	44		Zidex.	41		Zirgam.	38		Zitrah.	4		Zole.	33		Zocua.	4		Zutis.	33		Zunam.		
Xangua.	Folio.	86																																																		
Xicoy.	98																																																			
Ximo.	94																																																			
Xmas.	80																																																			
Xulla.	106																																																			
Xumbienjo or Pequia.	80, 82																																																			
Zephyria.	Folio.	30																																																		
Zengma.	29																																																			
Zibid.	44																																																			
Zidex.	41																																																			
Zirgam.	38																																																			
Zitrah.	4																																																			
Zole.	33																																																			
Zocua.	4																																																			
Zutis.	33																																																			
Zunam.																																																				
<table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">Y</td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">Archa.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">Folio.</td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">Z</td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">Abow.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">Y</td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">Tenda.</td> <td style="text-align: right;">49</td> <td style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">Z</td> <td style="vertical-align: middle;">Zambasab.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">95</td> <td></td> <td>Zaru.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Zarhu.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Zarich.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Zela.</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>Zunoh.</td> </tr> </table>			Y	Archa.	Folio.	Z	Abow.	Y	Tenda.	49	Z	Zambasab.			95		Zaru.					Zarhu.					Zarich.					Zela.					Zunoh.															
Y	Archa.	Folio.	Z	Abow.																																																
Y	Tenda.	49	Z	Zambasab.																																																
		95		Zaru.																																																
				Zarhu.																																																
				Zarich.																																																
				Zela.																																																
				Zunoh.																																																

---

FINIS.

---





OCEAN OCCIDENTAL

SEA OF THE CANARIES

the

Tropique of Cancer

ATLANTIC

SEA OF CAPE VERD

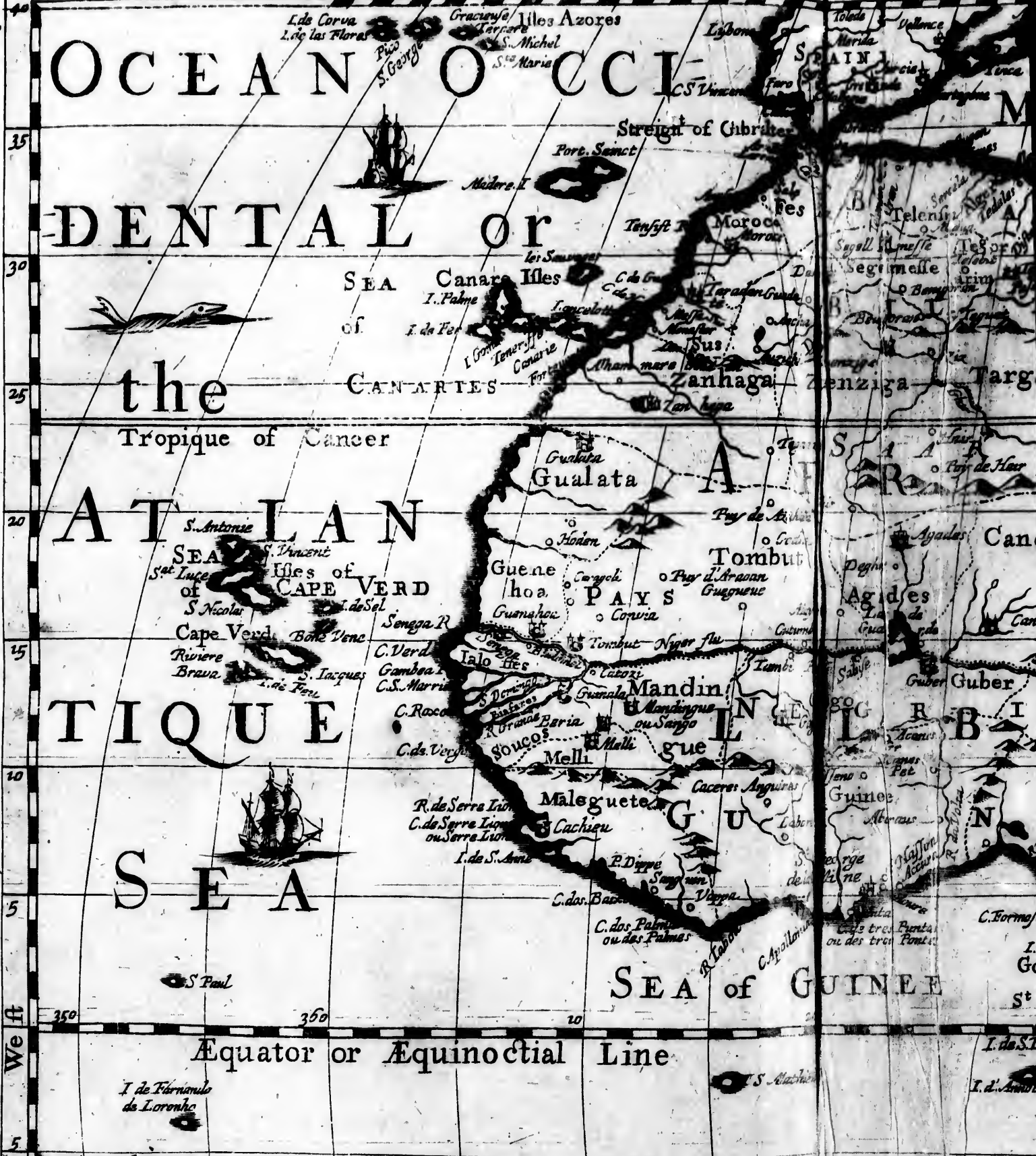
TIQUE

SEA

SEA of GUINEE

Equator or Equinoctial Line

345 350 355 360 5 15 20



*I. de Fernand  
de Lorenho*

*Rio Grande*

*I. de S. I.  
I. de Anu...*





MEDITERRANEAN SEA

THE DESERT

RUBICUM

GOLFE OF ADEN

INDIAN SEA

SUNDA SEA

GRECE  
ARCH

SARDAGNE

SICILE

TUNIS

TERANIAN

TARGA

Lempta

THE DESERT

CANO

Cassena

Gangara

DESERT

Zanfara

NUBIA

BENIN

BIAFARA

GOLFE OF ADEN

E

GOLFE OF ADEN

Loanga

CON

INDIAN SEA

SUNDA SEA

VANGUEA



60 65 70 75 80 85 90 95 100

# ANATOLIA

# A New MAP OF AFRICA

Designed by Mounsr Santon to the French King. Rendered English and Illustrated By Richard Blome By Especiall Comma

1669

SEA OF ALEXANDRIA

# ASIA

# ARABIA

# FELIX

SEA OF ADEN

# AL BARBARIE

# ZANGU

SEA OF

Ilhas do Mascarenhas

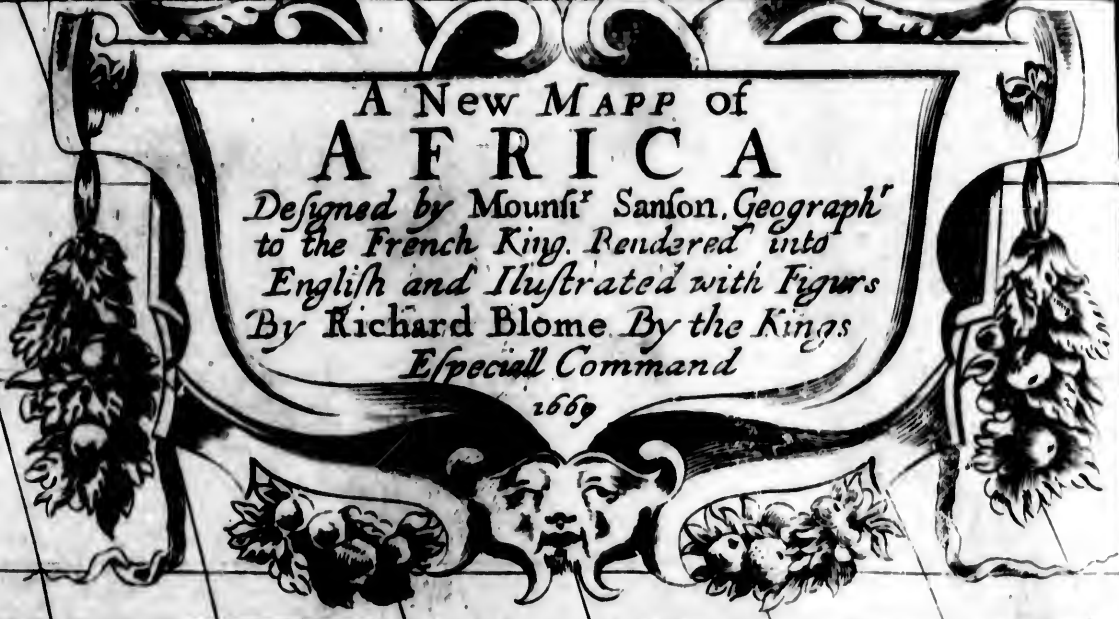


80 85 90 95 100 105

# A New MAPP of AFRICA

Designed by Mounsi<sup>r</sup> Sanson, Geograph<sup>r</sup>  
to the French King. Rendered into  
English and Illustrated with Figures  
By Richard Blome. By the Kings  
Especiall Command

1669



IA

Medina



OCEAN

SEA OF ARABIA

ORIENTAL

TAL

TAL

Os. tres Irmanas

Ilhas do Mascarenhas

Ilhas de p<sup>o</sup>

Ilhas de p<sup>o</sup>



S E A

SEA of GUINEA

Æquator or Æquinoctial Line

Tropicque of Capricorne

M E R I T O

B R I T I S H I S L A N D S  
Rio Grande  
Potengi  
Parabiz  
Oinda  
C. de S. Agustin  
S. Francisco  
S. Salvador  
Los Isles  
Porto Seguro  
S. Paulo  
I. de Ascension

S Paul

S. Machin

I. de Ascencion

I. de Helena

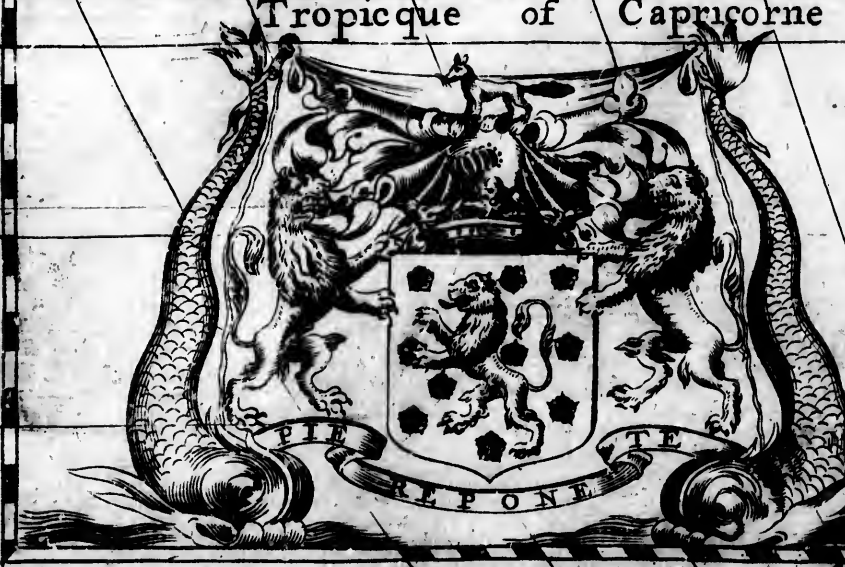
A. Trindade

I. de Martin Vas

I. dos Picos

I. de Trifido Cunha

I. de G...



To the Right Honorable & truly  
Noble Harry Marquis of  
Dorchester, Duke of Kingston upon  
Hull, Viscount of Newgate, Lord  
High Treasurer, and one of his  
Majesties most Honorable  
private Councell, &c  
  
This Map is humbly Dedicated  
Ric Blome

5  
West  
5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
34

345 350 355 360 5 10 15 20



C. Formosa  
I. de Fernao Poo  
Golfe of  
I. de Pruce  
S<sup>o</sup> Thomas  
30

SEA  
of  
CONGO

INDIAN  
SEA

CON

Sunda

Con=

Pamba GO

Bamba

Angola

Benguela

Mataman

Bajo Desertum

Concrifan

Desertum

SEA

CA

B. d. S. Helena  
Cabo Lincia

C. d. Bone Sparanza  
C. d. Bone Sperance

Dam. Dambea

Vambout

Pango

S. Salvador

Malem

ba

Butua

Butua

Concrifan

Desertum

SEA

CA

B. d. S. Helena  
Cabo Lincia

C. d. Bone Sparanza  
C. d. Bone Sperance

Vangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Yangué

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Dambea

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

Beleguanze

I. de Trifido Cunha

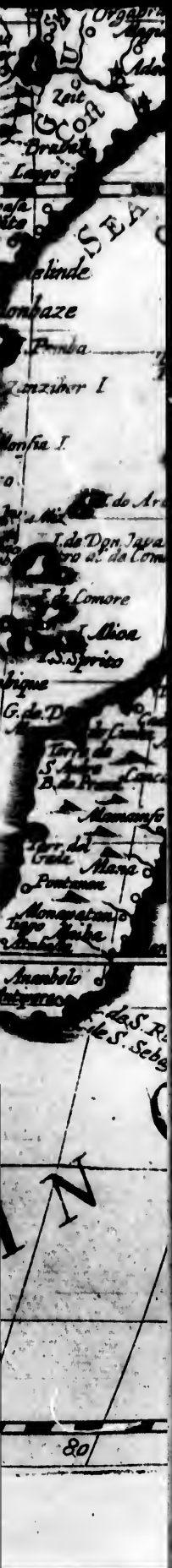
I. de Goncalv Alvaros

I. de Trifido Cunha

I. de Goncalv Alvaros

South 50 55 60 65 70

the ETHIOP



Ph  
H

Th

Sc

Th  
W  
E  
S





C. Formosa

I. de S. Thomas  
Golfe of S. Thomas

SEA of CONGO

CON

DAM

DAMBEA

Beleguanze

Loanga Gabon

Sunda

Vanhiout

Damo ut

Amhian

Quara I

Yagou

Yagou

Pamba

Bamba

Zara

Marama

Goyame

Cafa

Yagou

Yagou

I. de Loma

Angola

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. Loda

Dango

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

Bengeli R.

Angola

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

B. du Vaca

Angola

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

Cabo Negro

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

Cabo delgado

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

Mataman

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

B. de Desertum

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

Bravughl R.

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

C. S. Biago

Benguela

Malem

Zara

Narea

Galle

Yagou

Yagou

IONAL

SEA

of

CA

FRES

the

ETHIOPIAN

of

I. de S. Paulo  
I. de S. Antonio  
I. de S. Pedro  
I. de S. Paulo  
I. de S. Antonio  
I. de S. Pedro

20 25 30 35 40 50 55 60 70 75 80



A

N

N



rope, that  
between the  
Sea divides  
Asia, the  
Leagues,  
Mediterran

Besides  
on all sides  
the Mediter  
Meridiana  
East, like  
ental or In  
makes a p  
Occidental  
the Mediter  
the Merid  
Terra Au





# A F F R I C A.

## The Second Part.



**A F F R I C A** is a Peninsula so great, that it makes the third Part, and that Part the most Meridional of our Continent. It approaches so near to Spain in Europe,

that only the Streight of Gibraltar, between the Ocean, and the Mediterranean Sea divides them; it touches so little upon Asia, that only an Isthmus of 30 or 40 Leagues, between the Red Sea, and the Mediterranean joyns them together.

Besides this Isthmus, Africa is bounded on all sides by the Sea: On the North, by the Mediterranean; on the South, by the Meridional or Ethiopian Ocean; on the East, likewise by the same, or by the Oriental or Indian Ocean, where the Red Sea makes a part; and on the West, by the Occidental or Atlantick Ocean. Beyond the Mediterranean Sea, is Europe; beyond the Meridional or Ethiopian Ocean, is Terra Australis or Magellanica; beyond

the Oriental or Indian Ocean, is Arabia and the East Indies, and beyond the Occidental or Atlantick, is Brasil and America.

The Latines called it most commonly *Affrica*; and the Greeks, *Lybia*; yet both the one, and the other, are indifferently found in the Authors of the one, and the other Tongue. The first was given by one *Afer*, descending from Abraham and Kathanura; others say, of one *Afer*, Son of the Lybian Hercules; or, according to the Greeks, it is taken from *Αφρο χειμη*, that is, *Sine Frigore*, because according to its situation it must be without cold; according to the Arabs the name should be taken from *Isfriquia*, that is divided, because were it not for that Isthmus which joyns it to Asia, it were quite divided from our Continent. According to the Punick Tongue, it signifies the Land of Corn; for the abundance of Grains gathered in that particular part, called *Affrica*.

The name of *Lybia*, is taken either from *Lybia*, the Daughter of *Epaphus*, the Son of *Jupiter*; or from *Lybia*, one of the three Lakes, which descend into the River *Triton*; or from *Λιβυ*, which in the ancient Greek Idiom signifies *black*, because its Inhabitants are black; or from *Lub*, which among the Arabs signifies *Thirst*; because a good part of the Country wants water.

But of these *Histories, Fables, and Etymologies*, taken from divers *Authors* of divers *Tongues*; and for different *Reasons*, there may be new ones found or made, to content those which are covetous of them.

However it be, those names of *Affrica* and *Lybia* have been first known on the Coasts which regards *Europe*: That of *Affrica*, opposite to *Italy*; that of *Lybia*, opposite to *Greece*; which made the *Greeks*, knowing the name of *Lybia*, and the *Latines* that of *Affrica*, sooner than the names of other more distant parts, both communicate the name known to what was to them unknown. Thus two people of different Languages, have called the same thing by different names, but for the same reason.

In Form  
and from  
monstrous.

The *Form* of *Affrica*, is near Triangular, yet it advances four *Promontories* to the four principal places of the World, *Cape Bona*, towards the North; the *Cape of Good Hope*, towards the South; *Cape Guard a Fuy*, towards the East; and *Cape Verd*, towards the West; the three last are on the Ocean, and the first on the *Mediterranean Sea*: Moreover, the two *Promontories* of *Good Hope* and *Cape Verd*, end our Continent; one towards the West, and the other towards the South: Those of *Bona* and *Guard a Fuy*, regards *Europe* and *Asia*.

In Long  
and  
Breadth.

Its utmost length taken from *Cape Verd* to *Cape Guard a Fuy*, wherein there are about 80 Degrees of Longitude, is about 2000 Leagues. Its utmost breadth, taken from *Cape Bona* to that of *Good Hope*, wherein there are more than 72 Degrees of Latitude, is about 1800 Leagues; but both this length and breadth, are found much less in all other places. All the *Occidental* part is not above 7 or 800 Leagues, from South to North: All the *South* part stretches not under the *Equator*, and from East to West, only 800 Leagues, or little more, and from thence stretches it self, and ends in a point at the *Cape of Good Hope*.

In Situation  
1800.

Its *Situation* is under or about the *Torrid Zone*; the *Equinoctial Line* passing over it, and cutting it in two parts, though unequal: The most part of *Affrica*, is between the two *Tropicks*, which it out passes 11 Degrees, and 15 Degrees on one and the other side, to wit, 11 Degrees beyond the *Tropic of Capricorn*, and 15 on this side that of *Cancer*.

How In-  
habited.

Notwithstanding this side or possession

of *Affrica*, it is every where inhabited, though not so well as *Europe* or *Asia*; whether by reason of the insupportable *heats* which reign there, or because it hath many *Countreys* dry, and without Water, or because it hath others, where there is much Sand, easily removed by the Wind, which often burying men in it, or by reason of the great number of venomous, fierce, and cruel Beasts, which are found through the whole, or because there yet remains some *Men Eaters*; or else, because they sell and transport one another for *slaves*; I leave to judge.

It is moreover observable, that it is fresher and cooler under and about the *Equator*, then under and about the *Tropicks*. The reason is, because the *Sun* makes two Summers, and two Winters, under and near the *Equator*; and that the *Nights* are always equal to the *Days*, which is a great refreshment; and the *Sun* passes lightly the degrees of the *Zodiack*, which are on the two sides, and near the *Line*, to wit, the *Equinoxes*: But the *Sun* being towards the *Tropicks*, makes the days longer than the nights, and *Days* longer on the degrees of the *Zodiack*, about the one and the other *Solstice*.

Divers Authors divide *Affrica* in a very different manner; yet most agree to make first the Division into two great parts, calling that *Oriental*, which is on the East of the *Nile*, and that *Occidental*, which is on the West; others by the *Equator*, calling it *Northern* on this side, and *Southern* on the other side the *Equator*. Others by the colours of the people, observing, that on this side the *Tropic of Cancer* they are white, and beyond it black.

All these Divisions have many fautes. The *Nile* beginning its course in the *Mid-Land*, makes not an entire Division, cuts those Estates it passes through in two, and makes the two parts unequal. The *Equator* is onely an Imaginary Line in the *Heaven*, and cannot be found on the *Earth*; yet would this Line likewise cut the Estates or Regions over which it passes in two, and make likewise two very unequal parts. The *White* people in *Affrica*, are not above the fifth or sixth part, which is too unequal: There are *Whites* among the *Blacks*, and *Blacks* among the *Whites*, which makes a mixture; but all the *Whites* of *Affrica*, came out of *Europe* or *Asia*, and not from the first Inhabitants of the *Countrey*, and are to be considered but as strangers; and from thence we give name to

*Barbary*,

*Barba*  
the *C*  
*rope*;  
*bary*;  
*bary*;  
*Asia*;  
*Affrica*;  
few o  
other  
from

To  
our *L*  
parts,  
and w  
Count  
the *G*  
mity o  
carried  
guilth  
*ca* into  
two;  
called  
more p  
is beye  
and the

This  
of the  
*bia* into  
two;  
farther,  
*Interior*  
try. *E*  
to the  
*Egypt*;  
the *A*

In t  
*Lyb*;  
*Egypt*;  
and *Ly*  
of the  
*Ethiopi*  
*sina*, an  
*terior* *E*  
and the  
*Barb*  
*errania*  
and is  
*Atlas*;  
tain, li  
bounde  
*Egypt* is  
aces o  
This l  
name;  
fwer t  
*tania*,  
wife pr  
ern par  
gether  
*frica*, a  
Like

Barbary, that is, the *Country of Strangers*, the Coast of *Affrica*, which regards *Europe*; and the Ancients have called *Barbary*, a part of *Affrica*, which regards *Asia*, towards the East, because there was few or more *Whites* on the one, and the other Coast; and these *Whites* came either from *Europe* or *Asia*.

To avoid so many faults, and to make our Division of *Affrica* into two great parts, agree with that of ancient Authors, and with the disposition in which the Country is now found, I draw a Line from the *Gulf of St. Thomas*, unto the extremity of *Egypt*, on the *Red Sea*. This Line carried along where the Estates are distinguished one from the other, divides *Affrica* into two equal parts, cuts no Estate in two; and that which is on this side, is called by the Ancients, and by the Modern more precisely, *Affrica* or *Lybia*; that which is beyond this, is called both by the one, and the other *Ethiopia*.

This first Division will facilitate those of the other parts, dividing *Affrica* or *Lybia* into two, and *Ethiopia* likewise into two; *Affrica* or *Lybia* into the higher, and farther, in regard of us; and *Exterior* and *Interior* in regard of those of the Country. *Ethiopia* into high and low, according to the Moderns, or into *Ethiopia* under *Egypt*, and *Ethiopia Interior* according to the Ancients.

In the *Higher* and *Exterior Affrica* or *Lybia*, we have *Barbary*, *Billedulgerid*, and *Egypt*: In the *Farther* and *Interior Affrica* and *Lybia*, *Saara* or *Desert*, the Country of the *Negroes*, and *Guinee*: In the *Higher Ethiopia*, or under *Egypt*, are *Nubia*, *Abissina*, and *Zanguebar*: In the *Lower* or *Interior Ethiopia*, *Congo*, the *Mono-Motapa*, and the *Cafres*.

*Barbary* extends it self along the *Mediterranean Sea*, from the *Ocean* unto *Egypt*; and is bounded on the South by Mount *Atlas*: *Billedulgerid* lies along this Mountain, likewise from the *Ocean* unto *Egypt*; bounded on the South by *Saara* or *Desert*. *Egypt* is only one Valley, from the *Cataracts of Nile*, unto the *Mediterranean Sea*. This last part hath retained its ancient name; the other two put together, answer to what the Ancients called *Mauritania*, *Affrica propria dicta*, and *Lybia* likewise *proprie dicta*; so that the most Western parts of *Barbary* and *Billedulgerid* together make *Mauritania*, the *Middle Affrica*, and the most *Eastern Lybia*.

Likewise *Saara* or *Desert* the Country

of the *Negroes*, and *Guinny*, stretch themselves from the *Ocean* unto the *High* and *Low Ethiopia*: And the most Western part of *Saara* answers to the Ancient people *Gatuli*; the Eastern part of *Garamantes*. The Country of the *Negroes* to *Nigritarum Regio*: *Guinny* to many people, of which, the most famous have been the *Perorsi*. This *Guinny* is 750 Leagues long, The Country of the *Negroes* near 1000. *Saara*, *Billedulgerid*, and *Barbary*, each 11 or 1200 Leagues; their breadth being onely 100, 200, or 300 Leagues. The length of *Egypt* from South to North, is not above 200 Leagues. Its breadth if we esteem it, onely the valley along the *Nile* is very narrow; and sometimes onely 5, 10, sometimes 12 or 15 Leagues.

We have divided *Ethiopia* into the higher and the lower, placing in the higher, *Nubia*, *Abissina*, and *Zanguebar*; in the lower, *Congo*, *Mono-Motapa*, and *Cafres*. *Nubia* is for the most part on this side, and to the West; *Abissina* above, and *Zanguebar* beyond the *Nile*, and in the most Eastern part of *Ethiopia*. *Congo* makes the most Western part of *Ethiopia*; the *Mono-Motapa*, and *Cafres*, the most Southern: This on the Coast, the other within Land.

*Nubia*, *Abissina*, and *Zanguebar* together, answer to the *Ethiopia sub Egypto* of *Ptolomy*; *Nubia* to the most Northern part, and nearest to *Egypt*; *Abissina* more Southern; *Zanguebar* to that which is on the Coasts; and there where *Ptolomy* describes the Regions of *Barbary*, *Azania*, and *Trogoditica*; which answer to the particular *Zanguebar*, on the Coast of *Alexan*, and the Coast of *Abex*; which we esteem under the general name of *Zanguebar*. In the lower *Ethiopia*, *Congo* answers to the *Hesperii Ethiopes*, the *Mono-Motapa* to *Agisymba Regio*, the *Cafres* to the *Antropophagi Ethiopes*.

The Coast of *Cafres* reaches 1200 Leagues, the *Mono-Motapa* is 4, 5 or 600 long and broad; *Congo* 6 or 700 long, and 300 large, *Nubia* 400 long, and 200 broad; *Abissina* 7 or 800 long, and 4 or 500 broad. The Coast of *Zanguebar* stretches 15 or 1600 Leagues, with not above 100 of breadth; like to that of *Cafres*.

Hitherto we have touched a word of what, and where *Affrica* is, what are its *Bounds*, whence it took the names of *Affrica* and *Lybia*, where they have been first known; what is its *form*, *greatness*, *situation*, and *temperament*; what its principal

inhabited; *Europe* or *Asia*; insupportable because it hath without Water, where there is by the Wind, or by reason of venomous, which are found because there yet else, because another for

that it is about the *Tropicks*, *Equator* makes two, under and the *Nights* are which is a great difference on the one, to wit, the long towards the longer than the in the degrees of and the other

*Affrica* in a very agree to make great parts, call on the East of *Equator*, which is on *Equator*, calling Others by the *Equator*, that on *Equator* they are

many faults, in the Middle Division, cuts in two, and 1. The *Equator* in the *Heaven* on the *Earth*; it cuts the *Equator* which it passes in very unequal in *Affrica*, are part, which is *Whites* among the *Whites*, *Europe* or *Asia*, and of the Country but as *Strangers* give name to *Barbary*,

# AFRICA.

principal parts, to which of the *Ancients* they answer, and the greatness of each. Before we descend to particulars, let us say a word of its most famous *Mountains*, *Rivers*, and *Promontories*; of its principal *Estates*, *Tongues*, *Manners*, and *Religions*.

*The chief Mountains, viz.*

The *Mountains of Affrica* are in great number, and very remarkable, both for their *height*, *extent*, the *Metals* wherewith they abound, and other particulars. The most famous are *Atlas*, those of the *Moon*, and *Serre Lione*.

*Atlas.*

*ATLAS* was the most famous *Mountain* among the *Ancients*, who believed it bounded the *World* on the *South*. Its name was taken from *Atlas*, King of *Mauritania*, whom *Perseus* turned into a *Mountain*, by making him see the head of *Medusa*; and because he had been an *Astronomer*, the *Poets* feigned, that he bore up the *Heavens*. It is true, that this *Mountain* is so high, that it seems to touch the *skies*; it extends it self from the *great Sea*, or *occidental Ocean*, to which it hath given the name of *Atlantick*, even near to *Egypt*, for the space of more then 1000 *Leagues*; leaving *Barbary* on the one side, and *Billedulgeria* on the other, casting forth branches under divers names on both sides. There is the great and little *Atlas*; the *Spaniards* call the one and the other *Montes Claros*; the *Arabs* call the great one *Ayduacal*, and the little *Lant*.

*The Mountains of the Moon.*

The *Mountains of the Moon*, now of *Beth*, are higher then any of *Europe* or *Affrica* it self; they are always covered with *Snow* and *Ice*. *Ptolomy* places among them the *Head-springs of Nilus*; but these *Mountains* make divers branches towards the *Cape of Good Hope*; they are called *Picos Fragosos*, by the *Spaniards*; towards the *East of Congo*, the *Mountains of Chrystal*; above the *Lakes of Zaire* and *Zaffan*, the *Mountains of the Sun*, and of *Salt-Peter*; and it may well be, that the highest between *Abissina*, the *Mono-Motapa*, and *Casferia*, retain the name of the *Mountains of the Moon*.

*The Mountains of Serre Lione.*

The *Mountains of Serre Lione*, by the *Spaniards*, *Sierre Ligna*; by the *Portugals*, *Sierre Lioa*; are the *Deorum Currus*, or *Chariot of the Gods* of the *Ancients*: And this name was given, because from their top they send forth continual *Lightnings* and *Thunders*, as if the *Gods* could not march with less noise. Their principal ridge is between the *Country of the Negroes* and *Guiny*, where they make two

Branches; one advancing into the farther *Affrica* or *Lybia*, and the higher *Ethiopia*; the other, between the higher and lower *Ethiopia*: This seeking the *Mountains of the Moon*, the other *Atlas*.

The largest and most famous *Rivers of Affrica*, are the *Nile* and the *Niger*; the *Nile* hath been known in all times. *Ancient* and *Modern Authors* have been troubled to tell where its *Head-spring* is, and more to give the reason of the *Increase* and *Decrease* of its *Waters*; we will speak something of it in *Egypt*. Its course is 1200 *Leagues* in a straight line, and little less then 2000 in its turnings: It descends from the *Lake Zaire*, traverses the higher *Ethiopia*, *Nubia*, and *Egypt*, and falls with several mouths into the *Mediterranean Sea*; about the middle of its course, it embraces the *Isle of Meroe*, or *Gueguere*: And this *Isle* hath many *Estates* and *Signories*, and may boast it self the greatest and fairest of all *River Isles*, that we have knowledge of.

The *Niger* hath its *Springs* in the *Kingdom of Damont*, above the *Lake Niger*, and not far from the *Nile*, when it is out of the *Lake of Zaire*. This *Niger* doth in some part divide the higher *Ethiopia* from the lower; approaches *Nubia*, and the *Country of the Negroes*; hitherto rousing its streams from *South* to *North*, till loosing it self in the *Earth*, it rises again near the *Lake Borno*; turns its course, and continues it to the *West*, traversing the whole *Country of the Negroes*; 200 *Leagues* from the *Sea*, it divides it self into many *Branches*, which have divers names, and falls into the *Ocean* between the 11 and 16 degrees of *Latitude*. Its course is a little longer then that of the *Nile*; its streams more violent, and hath the same property of overflowing and fattening the *Earth*; ingenders the same *Creatures*, but not so strong; hath *grains of Gold* in its *Sand*: But the *Country* which it traverses, is neither so well inhabited, rich, nor known, as that of the *Nile*. Some believe the *Nile* and the *Niger* come from the same *Springs*, and that they begin not to divide, but between the higher and lower *Ethiopia*; one continuing its course towards the *North*, the other turning from *East* to *West*: So the *Arab of Nubia* calls both, *Nile*; and to distinguish them, adds *Nile of Egypt*, and *Nile of the Negroes*.

The other *Rivers of Affrica* are not to compare with these. *Zaire* in *Congo* may be considered for the quantity of *Waters* it

it steers mouth letus po

We on the Bona, the Arsinar Prom; the Dr passed b Red Sea the Mea West) which certain fore the thors an make it is the s caused tion of without

Possid Geograph strate, t frica, fa some did ca, acco and faith saw, tha port of C Circum-n that Eua under E Cleopatra Son Lat this Nau fected, enterpriz And Plin faith, T vigation Gades by the same there wa Ships in come the likewise, the same command the circu Affrica fr of which

We n scription ving def no, Cap tum Prom which ar

# AFRICA.

it streams down, and for the greatness of its mouth at the Sea, and so some others; but let us pass to the *Promontories*.

We have already touched a word or two on the principal ones, to wit, the *Capes of Bona, Hermea, Promontorium, Cape Verd, Arparium Prom, Gard a Fuy, Aromata Prom*; (this Name was given, because of the *Drugges and Spices* of the East, which passed before this *Cape*, to descend by the *Red Sea* into *Egypt*; and from *Egypt* into the *Mediterranean*, and through all the West) and of the *Cape of good Hope*, of which the *Greeks and Latins* have had no certain knowledge, much less those before them; nevertheless we finde some Authors among the Antients, who would make it appear, that the *Barbarians*, that is the stranger Nations have made, or caused to be made, the *Circum-naviga- tion of Africa*, which could not be done, without knowing of this *Cape*.

*Pofidonius*, in his second Book of the *Geography of Strabon*, about to demonstrate, that the great Sea encompassed *Africa*, saith, that *Herodotus* believed that some did make by *Sea* the circuite of *Africa*, according to the command of *Darius*, and saith likewise, after *Heraclides de Pontus*, that certain *Magi* coming from the port of *Gelon*, boasted to have made this *Circum-naviga- tion*. He saith moreover, that *Endoxius* of *Cizica*, being in *Egypt*, under *Emergetes* the second; then under *Cleopatra* his wife, and in fine under their Son *Latharus*, enterprized divers times this *Naviga- tion*; which not having yet effected, yet knowing he might do it, he enterprized it anew at his own expences. And *Pliny*, in his second Book, Chap. 77. saith, That this *Endoxius* finished his *Naviga- tion* from the *Gulf of Arabia*, unto *Gades* by the great *Sea*, and the same, in the same Chapter, that under *Augustus* there was found many Wracks of *Spanish Ships* in the *Arabian Gulf*, which could not come there but by the great *Sea*: He saith likewise, That *Hannan* of *Carthage*, (whom the same *Pliny*, Lib. 5. Ch. 1. saith, had command from that Republick to make the circuit of *Africa*) made the turn about *Africa* from *Gades*, unto the *Arabian Gulf*, of which he gave relation in Writing.

We may add, that *Arrian*, in his description of the *Erythraean, or Red Sea*, having described the *Promontories Noti Cornu, Cape Tacharigo, C. Delgado, and Raptum Prom, Cape of the Isles or Currents*; which are above the most Eastern Coast of

*Ethiopia, Lybia, and Affrica*; and mixing it self with the *Occidental, or Atlanticque Ocean*. So that, according to the report of *Pliny* and *Solinus*, King *Juba* had reason to say, that they might sail from the *Indian or Ethiopian Ocean* to the *Atlanticque*, and from thence to *Gades*.

By all these passages of the Antients, with what we shall say of *Sarapes* in the *Sea of Sargasso* near the *Isles of Cape Verds*, and of *Necam King of Egypt*; it may clearly appear how that many Strangers have known the circuite, and passed about the Southern parts of *Africa*.

The *Kings, Emperors, or Princes*, which at present possess *Africa*, are in very great number; the most powerful, and considerable are the great *Turk or Sultan of the Ottomans*, who holds all *Egypt*; a great part of *Barbary*, and almost all the Coast which touches the *Red Sea*. The *Negus* of the *Abyssines* (called with very little reason *Prefter John* by the *Europeans*) who possesses the fairest, and greatest part of the higher *Ethiopia*: the *Xeriffs of Fesi* and *Morocco*, which have held those two Kingdoms in *Barbary*; and likewise *Dara*, and *Segelmeste* in *Billedulgerid*. The King of *Tombut*, among the *Negros*: The *Monna's, or Mani*; that is, *Kings of Congo, Monstapa, and Emugi*; and the *Soba of Angola* in the lower *Ethiopia*; he of *Adel* in the Coast of *Ajan*: besides which there are many *Xeques* of the *Arabs*, many free, and vagabond People, who, for the most part, live without *chiefs, faith, or law*.

The *Kings of Castile and Portugal* hold many places on the Coasts of *Africa*; those of *Castile* hold some on the *Mediterranean Sea*; those of *Portugal* hold a great number on all parts of the *Ocean*, which encompass *Africa*: but the *Hollanders* have taken some from them, and others are delivered to the *English*.

Amongst a great number of diverse *Tongues* that are in *Africa*, the three or four principal and most general ones are the *Berberic or Affrican*, which comes from the antient *Punique*; the *Arabick* and *Ethiopian*. The *Affrican* and *Arabick* extend themselves through all *Barbary, Billedulgerid, Egypt, and Saara*, according as the People of these Countreys, descend from the *Affricans* or *Arabs*. The *Ethiopian* is in the greatest part of *Ethiopia*, if it be not on the *Coasts*, where the *Commerce*, and confluence of Strangers hath long since changed the  *tongue*. But the *Negros* seem to have a particular *language*.

The Emperors, and Kings which possess Africa.

The Tongues of the Negroes in Africa.



These *Tongues* have divers Idioms, and very different the one from the other: all or at least the three first descending from the *Hebrew*, or *tongues* derived from it.

Their Religion.

The *Religions*, which have course in *Africa* may be reduced to four: *Mahometism*, *Paganism*, *Christianity*, and *Judaism*. *Mahometism* possesses *Barbary*, *Billedulgerid*, *Egypt*, *Zaara* or the *Desart*, part of the *Negroes*, and a good part of the Coast of *Zanguebar*. *Paganism* holds part of the *Negroes* and *Nubia*, *Guiny*, and almost all the lower *Ethiopia* (I comprehend the *Cafres* with the *Pagans*;) part of *Zanguebar*, and some mixture elsewhere. *Christianity* holds, in *Africa*, almost the whole Empire of the *Abissines*, part of *Egypt*, but the most part *Schismaticks*; and along all the Coasts of *Africa* where the *Portugals* are the strongest, they have introduced *Christianity*: as in *Congo*, *Angola*, and some Coasts of the *Cafres*, and *Zanguebar*. As for *Judaism*, it is scattered in many *Cities* on the Coasts of *Barbary*; as at *Morocco*, *Fex*, *Algier*, &c. Likewise in *Egypt*, and on the confines of the *Abissines*, and the *Negroes*: they have the Kingdom of *Ximen* tributary to the *Abissines*; but the *Jews* are but a small number in *Africa* in comparison of the others. I make account that *Africa* being divided into 16 equal parts: *Mahometism* would possess five or six, *Paganism* six or seven, *Christianity* three, and *Judaism* only one.

In Division into Parts, as is shown.

*Africa*, as it is at this day known, may be divided into these eight parts following, viz. 1. *Barbary*, (in which is found the Kingdoms of *Morocco*, *Fex*, *Algier*, *Telenfin*, *Tunis*, *Tripoli*, and *Braca*.) 2. *Billedulgerid* or *Namidia*. 3. *Egypt*. 4. *Zaara* or *Lybia Interior*, in which is comprehended the Country of the *Negroes*, *Guiny*, with some certain *Iles*: 5. *Nubia*. 6. The ... of the *Abissins*, or the higher or greater *Ethiopia*, in which I comprehend *Zanguebar*. 7. *Ethiopia* the Lower, in which are found the Kingdoms of *Congo*, the Empire of the *Monomatapa*, the Land of *Cafre*. And 8. and lastly, the *Iles* of 50 *Africa*. And of these in order.

## BARBARY.

Kingdom of Barbary, its Parts and Situation.

**B**ARBARY is bounded on the East, with *Cyrenaita*; on the South, with *Mount Atlas*; on the West, with the

*Atlantick Ocean*; and on the North, with the *Mediterranean*, the *Streights of Gibraltar*, and some part of the *Atlantick*.

It is situate under the third, and fourth *Climats*, so that in the most Southern parts the longest Summers day is 13 $\frac{1}{2}$  hours, increased to 14 $\frac{1}{2}$  in the most Northern parts. It is extended in length from the *Atlantick Ocean*, to the greater *Syrtis* 500 Leagues; in breadth from the *Mediterranean Sea* to *Mount Atlas*, where narrowest about 33 Leagues; but towards the *Straights*, where broadest about 100 Leagues.

The Country being of a large extent, makes it to be of a different nature; as such parts as are near the *Mediterranean* are full of *Hills*, which are very woody where are found great plenty wilde *Beasts*, hath good store of *fooles*; its *Earth* produceth no *wheat*, but it hath *Barly*, and some other *Grains*, though not in great plenty; their *Fruits* are good, of which they are indifferently well-provided; betwixt which and *Mount Atlas*, as *Heylin* noteth, is a *Champaign Country*, watered with many *Rivers* which descend from that Mountain; the Country more fertile, and better furnished with *Fruits*, *Fowls*, and *Fish*, hath store of tame and wilde *Beasts*, as great herds of *Cattel*, *Elephants*, *Lions*, *Leopards*, &c. also abundance of excellent *Horses*, which, for their beauty, shape, and swiftness in running, makes them much esteemed by the *Europeans*; hath plenty of *Corn*, *Oyl*, *Honey*, *Sugar*, *Wine*, some *Mines of Gold*, and other *Metalls*; with several other things worthy of note, which I shall speak of when I come to treat of its particular Kingdoms. Yet it falleth exceeding short of its former fertility, of which *Pliny* reporteth (if we may credit him) that near the City of *Tasape*, in the way to *Leptis*, one might have seen a great *Date-tree* overhadowing an *Olive*, and under the *Olive* a *Figg-tree*, under the *Figg-tree* a *Pomegranate*, under the *Pomegranate* a *Vine*, and under all *Pease*, *Wheat*, and *Herbs*.

The People are of a blackish Complexion, much of the nature and disposition of the *Arabians*, who formerly overspread them; they are ingenious, and given to *Arts* and *Literature*, especially to *Philosophy*, and the *Mathematicks*, very studious in their *Law*. They are very distrustful, inconstant, unfaithful, crafty, malicious, when angered; very active, good *Horsemen*, of a stately gait, and costly in their apparel; They are very jealous of their *Wives*, not giving them the liberty of going abroad, or permitting

permitted home.

Barb to the Kingdom of Telenfin

The ... ed by the ... Atlas, as an ... walled separates Mount Segelmiss ... raby from North.

It is d ... of ... between the two first Land, and Dna ... miraby: other on stretch to four first

1. The ... Cape de N ... part which South, and which part of Morocco is esteemed its Govern ... their resi ... the Engl ... have here son of whic of their C

The Town a spacious plenty of Commod become t ... Countr 10 ... The C have come ... of wh ... 2. Mess ... the River Soil; it is walled ap ver passes, on the fan

# MOROCCO.

permitting them the Society of men at home.

Barbary, as I said before, is divided into the Kingdoms of Morocco, Fez, Algier, Telenfine, Tunis, Tripoli, and Braca.

## MOROCCO.

The Kingdom of MOROCCO is the most Western part of Barbary, bounded by the Ocean, the River *Sus*, Mount *Atlas*, and the River *Ommiraby*: The Ocean washes it on the West, the River *Sus* separates it from *Tesset* on the South; Mount *Atlas* divides it from *Darrha*, and *Segelmesse*, on the East, and the *Ommiraby* from the Kingdom of *Fez*, on the North.

It is divided into seven Provinces: those of *Sus*, *Hea*, *Guzula*, and *Morocco*, are between the Rivers of *Sus*, and *Tensift*; the two first on the Sea, and the other within Land. The Provinces of *Teldes*, *Hascora*, and *Ducala*, are between *Tensift*, and *Ommiraby*: the two first up in the Land, the other on the Ocean: and these three last stretch towards the North and East; the four first towards the South and West.

1. The Province of *Sus* is about the River *Sus*, and is sometimes extended as far as *Cape de Non*; we will leave with *Tesset* that part which is most advanced towards the South, and here make account of only that which passes for a Province in the kingdom of Morocco, *Taradante*, not far from *Atlas*, is esteemed the chief City of this Province, its *Governors* and *Kings* having here made their residence; much enriched of late by the *English* and *French Merchants*, who have here a *Staple* for their *Sugars*, by reason of which the People have learned many of their *Customs*, and are much civilized. The *Town* is large and well built, seated in a spacious plain, which affordeth great plenty of *Sugar*, and several other good *Commodities*; by reason of which, it is become the only *Mart Town* of all these *Counties*.

The *Coyne*, *Weights*, and *Measures*, have correspondency with those of *Morocco*; of which anon.

2. *Messa*, seated at the flux or mouth of the River *Sus*, in a barren and unpleasant Soil; it is composed of three little *Cities* walled apart; and betwixt which the River passes. 3. *Tejens*, seated higher, and on the same River, on a spacious Plain, is

likewise composed of three *Towns*, each distant a Mile from each other, having their *Temple* common in the midst of the three. 4. *Tedja*, on this side *Tagavoss*, beyond the River *Tagavoss*, containing about 8000 *Houfes*, something larger than *Taradante*, but not so rich; its chief Ornament being a fair *Mahometan Temple*, much frequented by those of the same Religion. 5. *Capo D' Aguer*, seated on a Promontory so called, and is a place of great importance.

*Sus*, is the greatest River, and communicates its name to the Province, which it makes fertile by its Inundation. The Mountain of *Atlas* under a number of different names, spreads it self through all the Country. The Fortress, and City of *Guarguesen* in the midst of the Coast, and on a branch, which this Mountain under the name of *Idevacall*, stretches into the Sea, belongs to the Crown of Portugal.

Between *Messa* and *Aganabra*, is a *Temple* on the Coast, where those of the Country believe *Fonas* to have been vomited up by the *Whales*; and will needs have all the *Whales* that pass before this *Temple*, presently to dye, and call themselves on the shore. It is true, they are often found, and the *Rafters* which support the Roof of the *Temple*, are only *Whales ribs*: they say likewise that out of this *Temple* shall come a *High-priest*, who shall reform all *Laws*: and thus they wait for, because *Mahomet* promised it them.

The Province of *Guzula* is to the East of *Sus*; to the South of *Hea*, and *Morocco*; to the West of the Province or Kingdom of *Darrha*; and to the North of *Tesset*. Its name retains something of note, and is not far distant from the Seat of the ancient *Gethuli*. Here are observed to be no walled *Cities*, or *Fortresses* of note: but it hath many *Burroughs* and *Towns* of 1000 or 1200 *Houfes*; where there are *Markets* kept thrice a week, and a great Fair yearly, which lasts two Months, to which many People from most parts of *Africa* do resort: during these Fairs there is all the seventy used, which at other times of the year is not. The chief place bears the name of the Province, the People are rude and barbarous, and with much ado are subject to the King of Morocco. In the Country are many rich Mines of *Gold*, *Brass*, *Iron*, and other *Mittals*.

The Province of *Morocco*, particularly so called, lyes all between the Rivers of *Aff* and *Small*.

North, with lights of Gibraltar, and fourth Southern parts 23 hours, in Northern parts, in the Atlantic 500 Leagues; Mediterranean Sea narrowest about the Straights, Leagues, a large extent of nature; as Mediterranean are very woody where the Beasts, hath earth produceth, and some in great plenty; which they are betwixt which is noteth, is a rich Mountain, and better fur, and Fish, hath Beasts, as great Lions, Leopards, of excellent shape, and makes them much; hath plenty of Wine, some of Metals; with of note, which I to treat of its fertility, of which credit him) in the way to a great Date, and under the the Figg-tree a granate a Vine, and Herbs, fish Complexion, position of the spread them, ven to Arts and sophy, and the in their Law, constant, un- when angered; of a stately el, They are, nor giving abroad, or permitting

In chief River Sus

Here on the Coast is a Temple, said to be vomited up by the Whales.

Province of Guzula, its bounds, a description of Places.

Province of Morocco, and its chief Cities

*small*, and *Tenifst*, from their Springs at the Mount *Atlas*, until they meet about 15 or 20 Leagues from the Sea. *Affnual* divides it from *Guzula*, and *Hea*; *Tenifst* from *Hascora*, and *Ducala*. The City of *Morocco* is the chief of the whole Kingdom, and hath been a long time in great esteem, and once accounted the Metropolis of all *Barbary*, and reckoned amongst the greatest Cities in the World. At which time it had 24, or 25 *Gates*, being in circuit 12 miles, and contained about 100 thousand Families. It is strongly girt about with Walls, and adjoined within with many publick and private *Buildings*, as, its *Palace*, which they name the *Alcafare*, which contains several others; and, besides the stately Lodgings, hath very fair *Gardens*, *Hot-houses*, *Parks*, &c. its *Churches*, or *Mosques*, are very fair, especially one, which is held the greatest in the World, seated in the midst of the *City*, adorned with many sumptuous Pillars, which were brought out of *Spain* when the *Moor's* had the possession of the *Countrey*: beautified with a stately *Steeple*, so high, that the Hills of *Azati* (one of the branches of the lesser *Atlas*) which are 45 Leagues distant may be easily discerned. It hath a very large and strong *Castle*, esteemed as bigg as a reasonable *Town*, in the middle whereof is a *Temple*, which hath a *Tower*, on the top of which are three *Balls of Gold*, which they esteem of the value of 200 thousand *Ducats*, so well placed (they say enchanted) that they cannot be taken away, though attempted by divers *Kings*, by reason of some strange Misfortune, that befell them, which makes the Inhabitants think they are kept by a guard of *Spirits*. Here is also a *Burse* for *Merchants*, who trade hither.

The Kingdoms of *Morocco*, and *Fez*, were antiently under the Government of the King of *Morocco*, but are at present (through the long continued civil wars) two Kingdoms, and each assuming Sovereignty. *Morocco*, and *Fez*, being the Metropolitan *Cities* of these Kingdoms, in which the *Coyns*, *Weights*, and *Measures*, as also the *Commodities*, have a great concordance, and agreement; But *Morocco*, being the most antient, and once the chief *City*, and at present of great trade, I shall treat of them under this *City*, which are as followeth.

They have three sorts of *Coyns*, viz, first, *Gold*, called the *Ducat*, or *Mitigal*, weighing three penny weight, and worth

about 10 s. *sterling*, which is subdivided into 10 Parts. Secondly, *Silver*, called *Blanquills*, four of which make an *Ounce*, and 10 *Ounces* make a *Ducat of Blanquills*. Thirdly, *Copper*, called *Fluces*, 200 of which make an *Ounce*, and 10 *Ounces* make a *Ducat of Fluces*. And all these *Coyns* have their several values, as *Gold*, and *Silver* rise and fall in their prizes.

The weight of 100 *Ducats* Gold is 15 Ounces *Troy*, only it is 1 per cent, less than our *English weight*. Their gross, or bigger weight is the *Quintal*, of which they use three sorts, according to the *Commodity* weighed, of which the least, and that which is most general, is just 12 l. *English*, which among them is but 100 l. so that their *Pound* is 18 Ounces: The second *Quintal*, by which the *Fruits* of the *Countrey* are weighed, is 1; C. *English*, reduced into 100 l. there. And the third *Quintal*, by which onely *Lead*, *Iron*, and *Wax*, are weighed, is 1; C. *English*, reduced also into 100 great *Pounds* of 24 Ounces to the *Pound*.

Their *Measure* of length for all *Commodities* is the *Cubit*, call'd by them *Draw*, which is exact: 20 Inches *English*: Their *measure* for *Corn* is the *Algrada*, which contains 8 *Bushels* single *Winchester*, and each *Algrada*, contains 20 *Saws*, and each *Saw* two *Allmoeds*.

The *Commodities* of these *Countreys* are *Gold*, *Wax*, *Sugar*, several sorts of *Hides*, especially *Goats skins*, *Salt-peter*, *Silk*, *Wool*, *Ostrich-feathers*, *Honey*, several sorts of *Fruits*, as *Dates*, *Almonds*, &c.

They have *Mines* of *Tinn*, *Iron*, *Copper*, and *Lead*, with a mixture of *Silver*, but are not perfect in the use of them.

*Commodities* vendable here, and in these parts, is *Cloth*, *Linnen*, *Callicoes*, all sorts of *Spices*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, &c.

But of late, by reason of the defacement and Spoils which it hath suffered by the *Arabians*, together with the removal of the Seat Royal to *Fez*, now the Metropolis of all *Barbary*, it hath lost much of its splendor, a great part of the *City* being deserted, so that they make use of but four or five *Gates*, neither is that part so populous, rich, nor hath so good a Trade as formerly it had. 2. *Agmess*, seated on a River of the same name; and at the meeting of divers passages, which descend from Mount *Atlas* in the Plains of *Morocco*, hath been so fair and populous, and its Hills and Valley about it so adorned with pleasant *Gardens*, fruitful *Vineyards*, and fertile *Fields*; that it was called

Morocco,  
its Trade,  
and Com-  
modities.

its Coyns.

called th  
almost d  
tain, an  
small pl  
Mounta  
mella, (I  
name,  
note,  
have Sn  
are stron  
scituated  
The A  
of that o  
tween th  
it self to  
extends  
South,  
North,  
the oth  
mountain  
many go  
fertile, &  
Commodi  
ous peopl  
a manner  
rant of A  
Law, w  
Chirurgia  
the circ  
are gener  
but very  
Its chief  
place of  
Sawens.  
River,  
jents were  
good T  
1000 H  
good P  
Mosque,  
bout the  
ned by t  
they are  
to its fo  
1600 H  
are este  
rains, Te  
taining a  
well scit  
than th  
Tegesse,  
upon M  
Tefethua  
of a Riv  
where th  
gadour,  
from the  
Kings of  
to keep

h is subdivided  
Silver, called  
make an Ounce,  
of *Blauquille*,  
Fluces, 100 of  
and 10 Ounces

And all these  
values, as Gold,  
their prizes.

*Uccas* Gold is 15  
per cent. less than  
grofs, or bigger  
which they use  
to the Commodity  
least, and that  
at 112 l. English,  
at 100 l. to that  
s : The second  
its of the Coun-  
English, reduced  
the third *Quimal*,  
on, and Wax, are  
reduced also in-  
24 Ounces to the

for all Commodity  
them Draw, which  
b: Their measure  
which contains 8  
and each *Algra*  
and each *Saw* two

ese Countreys are  
A forts of *Hides*,  
*Salt-peter*, *Silk*,  
ency, several forts  
ds, &c.  
ann, *Iron*, *Copper*,  
of *Silver*, but are  
m.

ere, and in these  
*Alcois*, all forts of  
n of the deface-  
hath suffered by  
with the removal  
now the Metro-  
lost much of its  
e City being de-  
se of but four or  
pare to populous,  
yads as formerly  
on a River of the  
meeting of divers  
rom Mount *At-*  
hath been so fair  
nd Valley about  
*Gardens*, fruit-  
elds; that it was  
called

called the little *Morocco*; at present it is almost desert. 3. *Elginmuba* near the Mountain, and on the River *Seefwa*, is but a small place. 4. *Imgiagen* seated on a Mountain very steep on all sides. 5. *Temilla*, seated on a Mountain of the same name. 6. *Tenezze*, a Town of some note. And lastly, *Seefwa* where they have Snow all the year long. All which are strong places, and very advantageously situated.

The Province of *HEA* is to the West of that of *Morocco*, the River *Asifnall* between them, from that of *Hea*, advances it self towards the Ocean; and its Coast extends from *Cape de Guer* towards the South, unto the River *Tensifi* towards the North, this separation from *Ducala*, and the other from *Sa* Province is mountainous, and woody, watered with many good Rivers, the Soil indifferently fertile, and would produce several good Commodities, but is inhabited by industrious peoples, these being a sort of idle, and in a manner barbarous people, altogether ignorant of *Arts*, except the Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read, as also some *Chirurgians* who are chiefly employed in the circumcision of their Children; they are generally very courteous to Strangers, but very contentious among themselves. Its chief Cities are, 1. *Tednest*, once a place of good esteem, seated on the River *Savens*. 2. *Hadequis*, seated on the same River; likewise, 3. *Teguleth*, and 4. *Tejens* were in good note, being places of good Trade; the first containing about 1000 Houses, having the benefit of a good Port; and beautified with a fair Mosque, and some Hospitals. But since, about the year 1500, they were much ruined by the Portugals, in whose possession they are, who have since somewhat added to its former Estate. *Tednest* hath about 1600 Houses, the most part *Jews*, which are esteemed the chiefest. In the Mountains, *Tesgedeli* is most considerable, containing above 1000 Families, being very well situated; Its Walls being no other than thick Rocks. So are *Hensugagen*, *Tegesse*, *Eitdeset*, *Culejas*, &c. situated upon Mountains, and of good strength. *Tefethna* on the Coast, and at the mouth of a River of the same name, hath a Port where there is some trade. The Isle of *Mogadour*, near the *Cape of Ocem*, is distant from the Coast two little Leagues. The Kings of *Morocco* have built here a Fortrels to keep some Mines of Gold and Sil-

ver, which are in the neighbouring Mountains.

The Mountains of *Aidvaccal* or *Idevacal* near *Cape de Guer*; of *Demensera* near the Province of *Guzula*, and *Gebel el Haden* near the *Tensifi*, take up a part of the Province: and are fowell inhabited, what the last can set forth 12000 fighting men, the first 20000, and the other 25000 *Idevacal* begins the *Atlas* towards the Ocean.

North of the Province of *Morocco*, are those of *Hafcora*, and *Teldes* separated the one from the other by the River *Quad el Habid*, *Hafcora* along the *Tensifi*; *Teldes* along the *Ommiraby*; and the one and the other extending themselves from *Atlas*, which is here called *Tensifi* and *Dedes*, unto the joyning of *Quad el Habid*, and *Ommiraby*. *Tefza* is the chief City of *Teldes*; and near the River *Derna*, which falls into the *Ommiraby*, is on the side of *Atlas*; and regards the plain. A rich City, since having driven away two of their Burgesles, the King of *Fez* made them pay more then 100 thousand Duckats, of which the *Jews Synagogue* payed 50000. This City was built by the old *African Moors*; and beautified with many *Mahometan Mosques*, and its Walls were made of a kind of Marble. 2. *Elmadine* is the chief City of *Hafcora*, peopled with about 10000 Families, Scituate in a pleasant Valley & begirt with Hills; it is well built, its Inhabitants are Civil, Ingenious, and addit themselves to *Arts*, and *Traffique*, and *Manufactures*: the Women are fair, as in 3. *Tagodast* which is on a Mountain, whose foot is washed with many little streams, which water their *Gardens*. 4. *Elginmuba* towards the South, was built by the people, and in a like scituation with *Tagodast*. The occasion was taken from the Nobles, having formed two Factions in *Tagodast*, and the people unwilling to Interest themselves in any party, retired to *Elginmuba*; where there is nonereceived into the Government but *Arizans*, as *Tagodast* admits of none but Nobles, 5. *Bzois* likewise a City of some Trade. Between the Mountains, *Teldes* hath more then 50 wald Towns, built near the streams of the River *Darba*. These Provinces are fertile having rich Fields, which feed a great quantity of Goats, of whose skins are made the *Cordovants*; and of their hairs, plain and watered *Chamolets*; also store of Cattle, Grains, excellent Fruit amongst others their Grapes as big as *Pullets-eggs*; they have plenty of Fowl, and their Rivers breed

In *Morocco*  
the most  
inhabited.

Provinces  
of *Morocco*  
and *Teldes*  
and *Hafcora*  
along the  
Coast.

In *Fez*.

The *Fez*  
City and  
Comand.  
City.

## The Kingdom of FEZ.

breed store of *Fish*; they have *Honey*, *Wax*, some Mines of *Iron*, &c.

**DUCALA** is the most Northern part of the Kingdom of *Morocco*; and possesses that which is between the River *Tensift*, and *Ommiraby*; from the Hills of *Ducala*, which separates it from *Hascors* unto the Ocean: The *Land* is fruitful, and of good yielding, particularly for *Grains*. Its best *Cities* are *Azamor*, & *Elmadine*. 1. *Azamor* where the *Ommiraby* enlarges and forms a Gulf to disburthen it self into the *Sea*. This *City*, before the *Portugalls* became came Masters of it in 1613, had above 5000 houses. It fell again into the hands of the *Moores*; was established; and entirely restored, having a strong Garrison; and driving a great Trade for *Fish*, particularly for *Shads* taken in the *Ommiraby*. 2. *Elmadine* towards the *Sea*, and in a fair Plain, hath sometimes been esteemed the Capital of the Country. The *Portugalls* hold three Leagues of it, and on the Coast of *Magazan*. 3. *Magazena Sanni*, which they have fortified; and on the same Coast have dismantled *Tite*, the easier to fetch in Tribute thence, and from the Neighbouring places. *Asafi* or *Sussy* not far from *Tensift*, is strong, and hath a good Trade, where the *French* hath a Consull. The Kings of *Fez* have formerly besieged *Magazan* with 200 thousand men, but in vain.

The Kingdom of *Morocco* hath suffered great changes, within these few Centuries of years; having been often united, and as often separated from that of *Fez*. And sometimes likewise its South parts, *Sus* and *Cunula* have made a Kingdom apart. Its principal Ports are those of *Messa Azafi*, *Magazan*, and *Azamor*. Its Pro-montories those of *Guer*, *Ocem*, *Cantin*, and *Carvos*. Its Rivers, the *Sus*, which waters its Southern parts; *Tensift* which divides the Estate in 2. equal parts; and *Ommiraby* which separates it from the Kingdom of *Fez*. These three Rivers are by much the greatest, and carry almost all the rest to the *Sea*. The *Asifnal* that is the River of *Noyse* falls so high from its spring, that it makes an *Abyss* or Gulf, like to that of *Tivoli* in *Italy*. The *Agmet* loses it self under ground, below the *City* of the same name; and rising again near *Morocco*, disburthens it self in the *Tensift*. *Ria dos Savens*, or *Alofes* that is of *Shads* took its name from the quantity of these *Fish*, which are taken at its mouth.

The *Aire* of the Plains, and Fields of *Morocco* is much hotter then in *Europe*, that

of the Mountains according to their height is more or less cold. In general this Kingdom is provided with all things necessary for mans life; they have *Grains* and *Pulse* in abundance; as also *Fruits* which are excellent, especially their *Grapes*. They have likewise *Flax*, *Hemp*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Sugar*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, *Copper*, *Marble*, *Cordovants*, *Amber*, *Chamoless*, and many good *Manufactures*.

## The Kingdom of FEZ.

THE Kingdom of *FEZ* lies between that of *Morocco*, and the *Mediterranean Sea*; and between the *Ocean*, and the Kingdom of *Telensin* or *Argiers*. The River *Mulvia* separates it from these last, on the East, The *Ocean* bounds it on the West; the Mountains of *Atlas*, and the River *Ommiraby* divides it from *Segelmesse* and *Morocco*, towards the South, and the Strights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean Sea*, separates it from *Spain* on the North.

Its Provinces are Seven, viz. *Temesne*, *Fez*, and *Aggar* on the Ocean; *Habat* on the Stright; *Errife*, and *Garret* on the *Mediterranean Sea*; and *Chau*; all up in the *Land*.

**TEMESNE** the most advanced towards the West and South, extends it self from Mount *Atlas*, unto the *Ocean*, between the Rivers *Ommiraby* and *Buragrag*, which separate it from the Kingdom of *Morocco*, and the Province of *Fez*. It hath formerly been so flourishing, that it hath counted 40 great *Cities*, more then 100 middle sized, and 300 little ones; besides an infinite number of villages.

*Morabus Quemim*, *Ben Monnall*, that is, *Quemim* son of *Monnall* having seized it, and his Successors having reigned the space of 130 years, *Joseph Ben Teixifen* that is *Joseph* Son of *Teixifen*, after having finished the *City* of *Morocco*, made so cruel a War upon them, that the Country remained desart 180 years; till such time as *Manfor* peopled it with *Arabs* taken from about *Tuniz*, which the Kings of *Merins* drove out after 50 years; and seized other *Arabs* taken from the families of the *Zenetes* and *Haboares*. These in little time became so powerful, that they sometimes armed 6000 *Horse*, and 20000 *Foot*; and often have paid little or no tribute to the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*.

Besides

Terrains of  
Ducala  
bound  
Fertility,  
and hills  
places.

Kingdom  
of Morocco  
no further  
proceeds  
etc.

Chief  
Towns, Pro-  
montories,  
and Rivers.

Be-  
Counc  
level'd  
Coast  
for in  
wife fu  
ders, a  
ground  
and the  
be built  
but mu  
consider  
ing ma  
Colledge  
out the  
that of  
and of  
the wa  
made ab  
bout R  
water fr  
City. E  
are almo  
not abov  
because  
tagalls,  
Walls b  
yards, a  
Anfa  
Plain, h  
Cities of  
English a  
In the en  
was the c  
Almanfor  
and Raba  
Withi  
and in th  
hath bee  
Territory  
ruined by  
known a  
of one c  
estem a  
people lay  
struments  
dare touch  
near *Thag*  
Miracles,  
are met b  
ed by tho  
cher of o  
goe in ex  
Men, wo  
mage. A  
River G  
one side  
place are  
*Tagagis* ab



Besides the Inestine Wars of the Country, the *Portugalls* have divers times level'd and ruined the fairest *Cities* of the Coast: as *Ansa* or *Anasa*, and *Al Mansor* in 1468. and afterwards *Rabat* likewise suffered their Incursions, and Plunders, *Rabat*, and its *Fortress*, are on a rising ground between the River of *Buragrag*, and the Sea. King *Mansor* caused it to be built after the Modell of *Morocco* 30 but much less, and made it one of the most considerable places of all *Barbary*, erecting many *Pallaces*, *Temples*, *Hospitals*, *Colledges*, *Baines*, *Shops*, &c. and without the South Gate a *Tower* as high as that of *Morocco* 3 It was very populous and of a good *Trade*. And because the waters round about were salt, he made an *Aquaduct* as beautifull as those about *Rome*. This *Aquaduct* carried the water from a Fountain 12 Miles from the *City*. But at present these fair Edifices are almost ruined, it being possessed with not above 500 families, and much souldery because of the Neighbourhood of the *Portugalls*, most of the ground within the Walls being turned into Gardens, Vineyards, and Meadows.

*Ansa* on the Coast, and in a delightful Plain, hath been one of the most famous 30 *Cities* of *Affrica*, for its *Trade* with the *English* and *Portugalls*; and for its riches. In the end, its being addicted to *Pyracy*, was the cause of its ruine, and of that of *Almansor* on the River *Guir* between *Ansa* and *Rabat*.

Within the Land, *Muchaila* on the *Guir*, and in the Roode from *Morocco* to *Rabat*, hath been rich, well built with a great Territory, and fruitful in *Grain*. It was ruined by the Kings of *Morocco*; and is not known at present, but for the Tomb of one of their *Morabuts* whom they esteem a *Saint*, and where the Country people lay in pledge their *Ploughs*, and Instruments of labour, which no persons dare touch. They have another *Morabut* neer *Thagia*, whom they believe to work Miracles, and to preserve them when they are met by *Lyons*, a place much frequented 50 by those of *Fez*, as being the Sepulcher of one of their *Prophets* to which they goe in exceeding great numbers (both of Men, women, and Children) in *Pilgrimage*. Adendum towards the Sea, on the River *Guir*, well walled, and fenced on one side by a lake or pool: about this place are many *Iron Mines*. *Tegegit* or *Tagagit* above the *Ommiraby* hath store of

*Grains*, where the *Arabs* have a *Toll*, once of great note. The Land of *Ham-el-challa* is mixed with Wood, Plow'd Lands, Fruit-Trees, Meadows and Pastures, and breeds many *Tortoeses*.

The Province of *Fez*, between the Rivers of *Buragrag* and *Suba* is narrow towards the Coast, and enlarges it self within the Land. Its *Cities* are *Fez*, *Mechnese*, *Sala*, *Mahmora* with several others,

The Ornament of this Province, and of the whole Kingdom ( nay we may say of all *Barbary* ) is *Fez*, which the *Mahometans* call the Court of the West: It is 100 Thousand paces from the Ocean, and as much from the *Mediterranean Sea*, seated on the River of *Pearls* or of *Fez*, which runs between those of *Bunafar* and *Suba* into which it falls. Its form is a long square, of which the middle is in a Plain, the two ends on Hills; and without a number of suburbs of which 32 are most considerable: some of 500, some of 1000, and others of 2000 houses. This *City* bears the name of *Fez* from the abundance of *Gold* which was found in the digging the foundation thereof. The *City* hath 12 principal Quarters, or *Regions*, 62 great places for *Trade*. It is a place of great *Traffique*, and much frequented by *Merchants* of divers Nations who are allowed a publick meeting place for their *Commerce*, and lodging for their residence; and also *Store houses* for their *Commodities*; this place may rather be called a *Court*, than an *Exchange*, it being inclosed within a strong *Wall*, in which are 15 fair *Streets* for several Nations to meet and reside for the better negotiating of their affairs; to this inclosure there are 12 *Gates* which every night are shut up, and kept guarded at the *Cities* charge for the security of their *Goods* and *Persons*. In this *City*, there are more then 200 great large and streight *Streets*, accompanied with an infinite number of little ones, its *Houses* are well built, covered for the most part with *Mosaicque* work without, and painted with *Flowers*, *Fruits*, *Prospects*, and *Landships* within.

It hath 700 *Temples*, among which 50 are stately built, adorned with many *Pillars* of *Marble* and *Falpar*; the most part are not vaulted, but tarrested, not paved, but properly mated. The greatest and most sumptuous of all, is seated in the heart of the *City*, containing about a Mile in Circuit, in breadth it hath 17 *Arches*, and in length 120, and sustained by 2500 *Pillars* of *White Marble*, under the chiefest

to their height  
neral this King-  
things necessary  
rains and Pulse  
fruits which are  
*Grapes*. They  
Honey, Wax,  
Copper, Mar-  
Chamolets, and

of FEZ.

*FEZ* lies between  
the *Mediterra-*  
the *Ocean*,  
Ar-  
via separates it  
east, The *Ocean*  
the Mountains of  
mmiraby divides  
Morocco, towards  
ights of *Gibraltar*,  
ea, separates it

viz. *Temesue*,  
can, *Habat* on  
d *Garret* on the  
*Chau*; all up in

ost advanced to-  
h, extends it self  
the *Ocean*, be-  
y and *Buragrag*,  
the Kingdom of  
ce of *Fez*. It  
ishing, that it  
ies, more then  
little ones; be-  
villages.

*Monnall*, that  
aving seized it,  
g reigned the  
Ben *Teixifen*  
*Teixifen*, after  
*Morocco*, made  
that the *Conn-*  
urs; till such  
t with *Arabs*  
hich the Kings  
0 years; and  
om the fami-  
ares. These  
powerful, that  
0 *Horse*, and  
ave paid little  
s of *Fez* and

Besides

est Arch (where the Tribunal is kept) hangeth an exceeding great Lamp of Silver, incompassed with about 100 lesser, and under the other Arches hangeth great Lamps, in each of which do burn about 150 lights: It hath 31 great high Gates, the roof whereof is 150 yards long, and 80 broad, & round about are several Porches containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth, under which are the publike <sup>10</sup> *Stores-houses of the City*: The Tower is sustained by 35 Arches in length, and by twenty in breadth: All the Temple hath 900, and almost all these pieces enriched with Marble. Its Revenue is 200 Duckats a day, others say 400, which are either 75 or 150 thousand Duckats yearly. Within and without the City, there are above 200 Hospitals, of which 25 are for the sick people of the Country, among which one can daily provide for 2000 Persons, others are for strangers, but their Revenues are much squandered, and they give nothing but the Bed and Coverlet, but in some food for three daies. There is likewise 200 *Bainies* or *Stewes*, 200 *Inns*, of which some have more then 100 *Chambers*, 400 *Mills* which daily work 1200 *Mules*. Among its *Colledges*, the building of that of King *Habu-Hemon* cost 500 thousand Duckats, being a most curious and delicate building, all enriched with *Mosaicque* work of *Gold*, *Azure*, and *Marble*: its *Gates* are of *Brass*. In this *Colledge* are abundance of stately Buildings, as *Cloisters*, *Halls*, *Bainies*, *Hospitals*, &c. It hath a stately *Library*, in which besides other *Books* are 2000 volumes in *Manuscripts*. They have 150 publike necessary houses built so commodiously, that the waters carry away the ordure. Here are 250 *Bridges* of which some are covered with Buildings that they cannot be seen. They have 86 publike *Fountains*, besides for the conveniency of the *Citizens* 600 particular ones, from whence almost every house is furnished with water. To its *Walls* it hath 86 *Gates* which serve for entrance into the City. The *Commodities*, *Coynes*, *Weights*, and *Measures*, have correspondency with those of *Morocco* aforementioned.

In Commemoration of the City and its Walls.

The New City of Fez.

South East of the old Fez is the new City, at a Mile or 1200 paces distance this is almost only for the House, and for the Officers of the King. The *Palace* where he ordinarily resides, and the *Palaces* of the principal Lords, the *Mimi*, a stately *Temple*, &c. are in the first quarter. The

Officers of the Court, and the Captains of the guard hold almost all the second, and the Kings guards alone had formerly the third. Now a good part of this last quarter is possessed by *Jews* and *Goldsmiths*, and part of the second, by divers *Merchants* and *Artisans*. But too much may be said of Fez: a word or two of some of the other Cities in this Province.

In this City of Fez, (as generally throughout these parts) they have abundance of *Conjurers*, *Fortune-tellers*, *Fuglers*, and *Inchanters*, who are in some esteem amongst them. Its *People* are of a dusky or blackish *Complexion*, of *Stature* tall, and well proportioned, they are of an active disposition for *War* and *Horse-manship*, otherwise excessive idle, they are very subtle, close, sly, perfidious, <sup>20</sup> inconstant, proud, ambitious, much addicted to luxury, and therefore by consequence very jealous of their *Wives*, whom they keep with great severity, and that the more according to their external *graces*, they are very revengeful if injured, and hard to be reconciled. In their *Gate* they have much of the *Spaniard* in them. In their *Apparel* they goe very sumptuous and rich, but their *Food* is but very gross.

As to their *Religion* they are either *Mahometans* or *Heathens*, and are for the most part inclined to *Literature* and *Arts*.

In this City are four sorts of Magistrates: one for the *Canon-Law*, one for the *Civil-Law*, another for *Marriages* and *Divorcements*, and another as an *Advocate* to whom they make their appeal. In the *Administration of Justice*, they are more or less severe, according to the <sup>30</sup> *hainousness* of the offence.

In their *Marriages* they observe many Ceremonies: as, being agreed, they are accompanied to the Church by their *Parents*, *Relations*, and *Friends*, which Ceremony being ended, they are invited to two Banquets, the one at the *Bridegrooms* cost, and the other at the *Brides* Relations, which being done, the *Bridegroom* causeth the *Bride* to be conducted to his house with *Musick*, and *Torches*, being accompanied with their *Friends*, and being entred the House, she is immediately lead to the Chamber door, and delivered by her *Father*, *Brother*, or some of her Kindred to his *Mother* (if living) who there waits for her coming, who immediately is redelivered to him, who forthwith conducts her to a private *Chamber*, where he enjoyeth her; and if she is found to be

be  
bloo  
the  
in th  
grea  
and  
cont  
they  
upon  
grea  
Pare  
are o  
H  
Frien  
habif  
and fi  
the  
verfe  
for se  
time  
come  
is not  
of Mo  
cially  
I.  
hands  
sently  
defeat  
pieces  
likewi  
1614.  
goodne  
Sally,  
Kings  
Cities,  
a great  
Hollan  
is on a  
which d  
King M  
have th  
place w  
retaken  
afterwar  
made dri  
have, for  
Pyracies  
Fez, is  
for 5 or  
filled wi  
Fruits,  
Lemons,  
they gat  
what is g  
dom,  
large and  
(as in th  
civil, but  
of Fez.

## The Kingdom of FEZ.

13

be a *Virgin*, which will appear by the *blood* which will proceed, which perceiving, they die up with a *Napkin*, and carry in their hands to shew the Company, with great joy, and then they make *Feasts*, and are very merry: but if she be found contrary, and that no *Blood* is caused, then they judge her *Virginity* lost, and thereupon the *Marriage* is frustrated, and with great disgrace she is turned home to her Parents. This with several other *Ceremonies* are omitted in the *Marriage* of a *Widow*.

Here the *Women* at the death of their *Friends* assemble themselves together, habit themselves in *Sark-cloath* and *Albes*, and sing a *Funeral Dirge* to the praise of the *Deceased*, and at the end of every verse, howl and cry, and this they doe for seven daies together, during which time her *Friends* send in *Provisions*, and come and comforts her: for their custom is not to have any meat dress in the House of Mourning, during the said time, especially untill the *Corps* is interred.

1. The City of *Mahmora* fell into the hands of the *Portugalls* in 1515, was presently retaken by the King of *Fez*, who defeated 10000 *Christians*, and gained 60 pieces of *Artillery*. The Kings of *Spain* likewise made themselves Masters of it in 1614, and have fortified it because of the goodness of the Port. 2. *Sala, Sale* or *Sally*, hath been the residence of some Kings of *Fez*. It is composed of two Cities, the Old and the New; and hath a great Trade with the *English, French, Hollanders, and Genovese*. Its *Fortress* is on a rising ground, with a high Tower which discovers the Sea. In the Castle the King *Mansor*, and other his successors, have their magnificent Tombs. The place was taken by the *Castilians*, and retaken from them some years past: and afterwards abundance of the *Moors* of *Granada* driven from *Spain*, retiring thither, have fortified and enriched it with their *Pyracies*. 3. *Mechnes* between *Sally* and *Fez*, is in the middle of a Plain, where for 5 or 6000 paces, there is only *Gardens* filled with so great quantity of excellent Fruits, as *Pomegranats, Citrons, Oranges, Lemons, Figs, Olives, Grapes, &c.* that they gather here almost a third part of what is gathered through the whole Kingdom. The City is well Built, its Streets large and well ordered. Its *Inhabitants* (as in the whole Province) liberal, and civil, but always in jealousy against those of *Fez*. Divers *Aqueducts* bring water

to the City, and furnish the *Temples, Bains, Hospitals, and Colleges*; and, besides those, 6000 private houses. Its Revenue is often esteemed for the eldest Son, or Successor of the Crown.

*Asgar* is a Province between the Rivers of *Suba*, and *Lusur* or *Lixa*, on the Coast; it extends itself far up the Land, towards the City of *Fez*. Its part towards the Sea, hath quantity of Fens and Marshes, where they catch store of *Fishes*, quantity of *Forests*, whence they have *Charcoal* and *Wood*: and throughout the whole, such fair and fertile *Fields*, with an air so pleasant, that formerly the *Kings* of *Fez* passed here a part of the Spring in Hunting. 1. *Elgumba* or *Elgubma*, in the way from *Fez* to *Larrache*, and formerly the fairest of the *Provinces*, serves now only as a *Granary*, where the *Arabs* store up their *Corn*. 2. *Casar-el-Cabir*, a place of pleasure which *Mansor* caused to be built between the *Fens*, the *Forests*, the *Sea*, and the *River*, may now have 1500 Houses, with a Market kept on *Mundays*. This place is adorned with a stately *Hospital*, a *Colledge*, and many *Temples*. The *Battel* which *Don Sebastian*, King of *Portugal*, lost in 1578, was fought near this place. In which it is observable, that the three Chiefs of the *Arabies*, which that day met, all died, viz. *Don Sebastian* of *Portugal*, in the field of the *Battel*; *Muley Mahomet* of *Fez*, in favor of whom *Don Sebastian* passed into *Africa*, was drowned passing the River of *Muezzin* to save himself in *Arzile*; and *Abdelmelech* of *Morocco*, the Conqueror, died with labor and pains, or with the sickness with which he was seized before the *Battel*; all three competitors for this Kingdom; with several others of eminent quality: Amongst others, that famous infamous *English Rebel*, *Stuckley*. 3. *Iharais* or *Larrache*, once *Lixos*, which some among the *Ancients* say, was greater then the *Great Carthage*, and hath made the Royal Residence of *Antaw*, whom *Hercules* defeated; and from whence he brought the *Golden Apples*, gathered in the *Hesperides* Gardens. It is at present one of the Principal Fortresses of the Kingdom, and hath often been attempted in vain by the *Portugalls* and *Spaniards*; nor fell it into their hands, till after that *Muley Xecque* having saved himself, by retiring into *Spain*, where he received some assistance, and there delivered it unto them in 1610. Which a little after was the cause his own people slew him,

Frontier of Africa is here by sea about 10 leagues

A narrow strait here

D him,

him. The *Spaniards* have fortified this place better then it was, there being besides the City, three several and distinct Forts.

Province of Habat.

The Province of *Habat* is part on the *Ocean*, part on the *Mediterranean Sea*, and holds all the Streight of *Gibraltar* on the *African* side; from whence it stretches, it self almost to *Fez*. It is one of the most considerable ones that is in the Kingdom of *Fez* being near to *Spain*, which is on the other side the Streight; and it seems to serve for a Fence or Barrier between *Spain*, and the Kingdom of *Fez* and *Morocco*. This conjecture may be drawn from the Ancients, comprising *Mauritania Tingitana*, where are the two Kingdoms of *Fez* and *Morocco*, with *Spain*. And from this that *Earl Julian*, Governor of *Bætica*, had no sooner put *Gibraltar* into the hands of the *Moors*, but they passed over and seized almost all *Spain*. But now that the *Spaniards* hold many places on the Coasts of this Province, the *Xeriffs* of *Fez* and *Morocco*, cannot well have any design to set foot again into *Spain*, having enough to do to defend themselves.

In chief parts.

The principal Cities of this Province, are, *Arzila*, which the *Portugals* took in 1471, carrying away all its inhabitants, and among the rest *Muley Mahomet el Oataz*, then seven years old, after King of *Morocco*, who remembering more his imprisonment, then the liberty he had had from *Spain*, in the year 1508 raised ten thousand *Moors*, besieged, and took the City of *Arzila*, and the Castle, the *Portugals* hardly defending themselves in a Tower, which was yet relieved, the City and Castle retaken, and the *Moors* well beaten. The *Portugals* afterward, and under some pretext, abandoned this place, which *Muley Mahomet* called the *Black*, returned it to *Don Sebastian*, King of *Portugal* in 1578, but which the *Xeriffs* retook again, and do at present possess. The City is great and strong, with a Port on the *Ocean*, the soyl produces more fruits and pulse, then *Grain* and *Wood*. 2. *Tangier*, of old *Tingis*, hath been the most famous among the Ancients, builded, as they say, by *Antanus*; and so renowned, that the neighboring *Mauritania* took from it the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*; and the Streight, of *Fretum Tingitanum*; yet were its *Bishop* and Government united not long since to that of *Centa*, where they had their residence, till the dis-union of the Estates of *Portugal* and *Castile*; *Centa* remaining in the hands

of the *Spaniards*; *Tangier* and *Cazar Exzaghir* returning to the *Portugals*. The former of the two last is now delivered into the hands of the *English* upon the marriage of *Donna Catharina*, *Infanta* of *Portugal*, with our Sovereign Lord King *Charles* the Second, of happy memory. Where we have a good Fort and *Mold*, for the convenience of *Shipping*; by which means, it may be in time a place of a considerable Trade. It is made a very strong place since the *English* have been masters of it, and doth contain about 1500 Houses well built; they have pleasant Gardens. Near to this place it is said, that *Hercules* overcame *Antaus*, a monstrous Giant of 64 Cubits high. 3. *Tetuan* or *Tetteguin* hath not above 800 Houses, which are as well built as any in *Barbary*; and a good part of the *Moors* driven from *Granada*, being retired thither, it is maintained in a good estate; they are continually courting on the Sea, and keep many *Christians* their slaves.

In this Country are abundance of other Cities, though of no such considerable note as those aforementioned. Its Mountains which are counted about eight, are inhabited by the Tribes of *Gamera*, who drink *Wine*, though contrary to the Law of *Mahomet*, and pay some 3, some 4, others 6000 Duckats yearly. That of *Rabon* hath *Vineyards*, and its *Inhabitants* make quantity of *Sape* and *Wax*. *Benifescare*, besides its *Wax*, yields *Hides* and *Linnen-Cloth*; and on its *Saturday Markets*, the *Christians* may Trade. *Beniburnus* is almost dis-inhabited, by reason of the Neighborhood of *Cazar Exzaghir*, under whose government it hath been. *Chebib* on the contrary, is much augmented, after that the *Portugals* took *Tangier*, the ancient *Inhabitants* of this retiring thither. *Benichessen* hath its *Inhabitants* addicted to *Arms*; as likewise *Quadres* near the Streight, and *Bemguerdarseth* near *Tintnan*, to whose government they are obedient, serving against the *Garison* of *Centa*. They have formerly furnished the Kings of *Granada* with a great power, and among them with one *Helul*, whom their *Poems* and *Romances* esteem the terror of all *Spain*. *Angera* hath *Flax*, of which they make *Linnen-Cloth*; as also *Timber* fit to build Ships.

*ERRIF* above the *Mediterranean Sea*, and between the Rivers of *Gander* and *Nochor*, advances it self in the Land as far as the Mountain which separates it from the

Provinces

Provinces of Mountainous ful in *Grain* *Figs*, *Olive* *city of Goat* or *Oxen*. Floor, and are valiant, Its Cities at *Gomer*, *Terg*. The most the Neigh 1. *Gomer* is name, 2. ing, utterin rants of the present alm or *Belis*, wit Port, is in some *Galleys* the Fort of *Spaniards* h or 1200 pa seated on a well peopl The Mount Goats, *Fruit* and others r zexal can a of *Tomus*, a and a *Volcan* fire. *Susa* and most p people und selves in lib GARR Coast upon the River *M Telenfin*. at present *John Gufm* having tak before by *Aragon*. The Port, that may count to the *Traf* the *Venetia* of *Iron* in t of this *Pro* tremity to the Provin out Water. The *Pro* that it con dom: *T Mulrovia*, o here their Branches

## The Kingdom of FEZ.

13

Provinces of *Fez* and *Chau*. It is very Mountainous and Woody; it is little fruitful in *Grain*, abundant in *Barley*, *Vines*, *Figs*, *Olives*, and *Almonds*: Hath quantity of *Goats*, *Asses*, and *Apes*, few *Sheep* or *Oxen*. The Houses are onely of one Floor, and ill covered; the inhabitants are valiant, but much addicted to *drink*. Its Cities are almost all on the Coast, as, *Gomer*, *Terga*, *Bedis*, *Mezemma*, and others.

The most part ill inhabited by reason of the Neighborhood of the Spaniards. 1. *Gomer* is seated on a River of the same name. 2. Those of *Terga* use much *fish*-ing, uttering their *Sale fish* to the Inhabitants of the Mountains. The place is at present almost quite deserted. 3. *Bedis* or *Belis*, with its *Castle*, its *Palace*, and its *Port*, is in some esteem, and maintains some *Galleys*: But it is much molested by 20 the Fort of *Pennon de Velez*, which the Spaniards hold in an *Island* not above 1000 or 1200 paces from *Bedis*. 4. *Mezemma* seated on a Mountain, formerly great, and well peopled, hath now nothing but Walls. The Mountains have *Vines*, *Barley*, *Horses*, *Goats*, *Fruits*, &c. Some pay some tribute, and others none at all. That of *Benignaxeval* can arm 25000 men, hath quantity of *Towns*, and a *City* famous among them, 30 and a *Volcano* which continually casts forth fire. *Susaon* is one of the most fruitful, and most pleasant places of *Africa*. Its people under their *Xequ* keeping themselves in liberty.

*GARRET* possesses the rest of the Coast upon the *Mediterranean Sea*, unto the River *Mulvia*, which separates it from *Telenfin*. *Mellila* hath been its chief City, at present in the hands of the *Castilianes*. 40 *John Gusman*, Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, having taken it in 1497. as *Chafala* was before by *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* and *Aragon*. The one and the other have their *Port*; that of *Mellila* much better, and may count 2000 Houses, serves as a passage to the *Traffick* between those of *Fez*, and the *Venetians*. There are excellent *Mines* of *Iron* in the Neighborhood. The middle of this Province is Mountainous. Its extremity towards the South, joyning to 50 the Province of *Chau* is untiled, and without Water.

The Province of *CHAUS* is so great, that it contains a third part of the Kingdom: The Rivers of *Cebu* or *Suba*, of *Mulvia*, of *Nacor*, and some others have here their Springs at the foot of divers Branches of the *Atlas*. This Country is

but meanly inhabited, considering its bigness; and its people fierce and warlike, to which they are addicted, not caring much for *Traffick* or *Tilling* their *Ground*, which if well ordered, would produce several good *Commodities*. Among its Cities, *Tezza* is the chief, and is esteemed the Third of the Kingdom of *Fez*, and makes no less than 5000 Houses. The Nobility have here many rich *Palaces*, but the private houses are not fair. It is adorned with three *Colledges*, 23 *Banias*, many *Hospitals*, about 100 *Mosques* or *Temples*, among which there is one greater, though not richer than that of *Fez*: It hath a magnificent *Castle*, and the Kings *Marins*, sometimes made here their residence, and gave it to their second *Son*; as well because of the beauty of the *City*, and the civility of its inhabitants; as for the goodness of the air, and the abundance of all sorts of *fruits*, which they gather there. 2. *Turtis* is beyond the River *Mulvia*, and on the River *Quhas*; so advanced on the frontiers, that the King of *Fez* and *Telenfin* have often carried it, the one from the other. The City is seated on a Hill in the midst of a Plain, but encompassed about with *Deserts*, very advantageous inclosed with strong Walls; well built within, and filled with 3000 houses. 3. *Dubdu* is on the side of a high Mountain, from which many Fountains descend, and run through the City. 4. *Garfis*. And 5. *Haddaggia* are on the *Mulvia*. 6. *Gherfelwin* onely is beyond the *Atlas*, and on the borders of *Segelmesse*, it is handsome within, but beautiful without, &c.

Among the Inhabitants of the Mountains, there are some rich, who pay little or nothing; others poor and overburthened with *Tribute*. According as these Mountains are of difficult or easie access; or, that they are fruitful in *Vineyards*, *Fruits*, and *Pastures*. The Plains of *Sabelmarga*, that is, the Plain of *Meadows*, have almost nothing but *Charcoal-men*, by reason of the adjacent Woods; that of *Algari-Gomer*, *Shepherds*, because the Grass grows all the year; that of *Gnregra*, *Husbandmen*, the Land being proper for *Grain*.

In this Province there is a remarkable Bridge over the River *Sebu*, which runs between Rocks so high, that this Bridge is 150 yards from the Water. It is a *Basket* or *Pannier* hung upon two Cords, which tinn upon two Pillies fastned to the ends of two great Piles of Wood, on each side

The Inhabitants of the Mountains.

A strange Bridge.

of



of the Valley : And those who are in the *Basket* ( there may go about ten persons ) draw themselves from one side to the other by the Cords which are made of Sea-Bulrush, as well as the *Basket*.

Of the Seven *Provinces* of *Fez*, we may say that *Chaus* is the greatest : *Temesne* next to it, but the most flourishing : *Habat* the most important, by reason of its Neighborhood with *Spain* : *Hafgoz* the least. But that of *Fez* bears away the Bell by reason of its City, the chief of the Kingdom.

The Country of Fez and Morocco, is divided into four sorts of Lands, Mountains, Valleys, Plains, and Coasts ; and the most part of their Provinces have these four sorts. The Mountains are almost all in the hands of the Arabs and Berberes, who live partly free, partly tributary. The Valleys are almost all the same, according as they are more or less engaged in the Mountains, or near the Plains. The Plains are all obedient. The Coasts in part belong to the Kings of Fez and Morocco, in part to the Portugals and Spaniards, these holding what is on the Mediterranean Sea, the others on the Ocean. So that considering the Continent of these two Kingdoms, even when they were united, there was always a quarter, or third part which obeyed not the Xeriffs, or Kings of Fez and Morocco. But if they had been absolute in these two Kingdoms, they might easily have brought into the field One hundred thousand Horse, and more then so many Foot.

The *Kingdoms* of *Fez* and *Morocco*, ought to be considered in four sorts of Lands, Mountains, Valleys, Plains, and Coasts ; and the most part of their Provinces have these four sorts. The Mountains are almost all in the hands of the Arabs and Berberes, who live partly free, partly tributary. The Valleys are almost all the same, according as they are more or less engaged in the Mountains, or near the Plains. The Plains are all obedient. The Coasts in part belong to the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*, in part to the Portugals and Spaniards, these holding what is on the Mediterranean Sea, the others on the Ocean. So that considering the Continent of these two Kingdoms, even when they were united, there was always a quarter, or third part which obeyed not the Xeriffs, or Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*. But if they had been absolute in these two Kingdoms, they might easily have brought into the field One hundred thousand Horse, and more then so many Foot.

The Moors of Fez and Morocco, are well disposed, strong, active, and yet melancholly ; they may marry four Wives, and repudiate them when they will, giving them the Dowry they promised when they espoused them. And if they would be rid of them better cheap, they treat them ill ; and these Women may forsake their Husbands, quitting their Dowry. Besides these four Wives, they may have as many Concubines as they can keep ; but the Law permits them not twelve, but with the one or the other of the four Wives. Persons of Estate spend so much on their Weddings, that they say commonly, That the Christians spend the greatest part of their Goods in Law-suits ; the Jews, in their Paschal Feasts ; and the Moors in their Nuptials. They enterre their dead in Virgin Earth, that is, where no person hath been before interred, fearing lest at the general

Resurrection it should be difficult to unmix all their pieces.

Besides these *Moors*, in the Estates of *Fez* and *Morocco*, (but more in this then the other) there are many *Arabs* which go by *Cabilles* or *Lineal Descents* ; and which make War and Peace as they please, between themselves, and with the *Moors* : Wandering continually, and pillaging now one Coast, and then another. They either assault or convoy the *Caravans* according to their interest ; sometimes serving the Kings of *Morocco*, sometimes making War upon them. Those that are in the highest Mountains of *Atlas*, are so rude and barbarous, that the Ancients have believed them to be *Satyrs*, *Pans*, *Aegipans*, that is, *Half Devils*. In some *Cities* there are quantity of *Jews* ; almost no *Christians*, except they be *Slaves*, or some *Merchants*. The *Commodities* of *Fez*, besides those particularly mentioned in the several *Provinces*, are the same as those of *Morocco*, and the rest of *Barbary*.

This *Kingdom* hath been for a long time (through the usurpation of that damned Tyrant *Gayland*) violated from their lawful Sovereign, who to this day doth manage a Rebellion against him, as did *Oliver Cromwell* against our Sovereign Lord the King ; who for *Impiety* and *Policy* may be fitly yoked together : Of whom I shall (for the Readers better satisfaction) give a short account, as to his person and policy in carrying on, and managing his Rebellion : and then to his Revenue, Court, Militia, and Forces ; of which in order.

This *Gayland* is of an indifferent good stature, fat, plump, and handsomer in person, then in condition : Of nature he is valiant and boisterous, yet sly, and of few words ; he is melancholly and watchful, yet lustful and intemperate ; he is perfidious and cruel ; so that when he sweareth most solemnly, and fawneth most basely, then he intendeth most mischief. By Calling, he is a *Butcher* and a *Priest*, it being the custom here for every one to have a *Trade* : And although by nature he hath that sadness that suiteth with his *Priesthood*, yet by art he hath gained that which becometh a *Prince*. He commonly goeth to his devotions six or eight times a day, and as oft he visiteth his *Concubines*, whom he seldom embraceth after the age of Sixteen. In his speech he is dubious, not daring plainly to own his thoughts, nor absolutely to disown them ; so that his greatest care is, not to be understood

by his Friends.

The reason of the people's reason of one hand married, there to others ; all Mahomet as likewise tended of their Religion about the the other their *Commodities* inferior) ed, that Mahomet Cromwell Priest) several unav for the pr was raised bility, wh the King Invasion the King Gayland which his gain to the tia, and ences ; from : F another eth but ly stirs a prolong two par Peace, his high party, v They c eth the King t betray done, mits, Garison the K the S at last in a st time from the M to rec

by his Friends.

The reason of the people's reason of one hand married, there to others ; all Mahomet as likewise tended of their Religion about the the other their *Commodities* inferior) ed, that Mahomet Cromwell Priest) several unav for the pr was raised bility, wh the King Invasion the King Gayland which his gain to the tia, and ences ; from : F another eth but ly stirs a prolong two par Peace, his high party, v They c eth the King t betray done, mits, Garison the K the S at last in a st time from the M to rec

by his Friends.

The reason of the people's reason of one hand married, there to others ; all Mahomet as likewise tended of their Religion about the the other their *Commodities* inferior) ed, that Mahomet Cromwell Priest) several unav for the pr was raised bility, wh the King Invasion the King Gayland which his gain to the tia, and ences ; from : F another eth but ly stirs a prolong two par Peace, his high party, v They c eth the King t betray done, mits, Garison the K the S at last in a st time from the M to rec

by his *Enemies*, nor mistaken by his *Friends*.

The reason of the Rebellion by *Gayland* was upon this account: First, Perceiving the *people* to be much discontented, by reason of Oppressions of the *King* on the one hand: As, that every man, when first married, should bring his wife to the *Court*, there to offer up her *Virginity* to the *Courtiers*; also that, contrary to the Law of *Mahomet*, there was a licence to drink *Wine*; as likewise, that the *King* being weak, intended contrary to the Fundamentals of their *Religion*, to treat with the *Christians* about their building of *Forts*; and that, on the other hand, the *Christians* invading their *Country*, he stirs up the *Puritan Mahometans*, (among whom, he was no way inferior) to a Sedition. Then it was broached, that the *Law* was corrupted, and that *Mahomet* would come to reform it, (for as *Cromwel* was a *Preacher*, so is *Gayland* a *Priest*;) then *Liberty* was cried up, and several unworthy *Persons* were advanced, and for the promoting of his design, jealousy was raised between the *King* and the *Nobility*, who held their meetings; and whilest the *Kingdom* was thus in a hurlyburly, an Invasion is contrived: In the mean time, the *King* being left in a helpless condition, *Gaylands* party offer him their service, which his necessity accepts of; who soon gain to themselves the power of the *Militia*, and tyed him up to divers inconveniences, which he could not free himself from: First, one *General* is chosen, then another; all which time, *Gayland* appeareth but as an eminent *Soldier*, yet privately stirs up *Fearfulness*, hindereth *Treaties*, prolongeth the *War*, till at last there were two parties in the *Army*; the one for *Peace*, and the other for *War*. Now was his high time to appear and gratifie his party, who otherwise would be disbanded: They chose him *General*, then he modelleth them, and they remonstrate, that the *King* must be laid aside, as one who had betrayed his *Kingdom* to *Foreigners*. Which done, after he had vanquished the *Enemies*, and shut up the *Christians* in their *Garison*; he turneth his course towards the *King* and *Nobles*, took off some of the *Senate* for ill advising the *King*, who at last was secured himself, as now he is, in a strong *City*, as a *Prisoner*. Since which time *Gayland* had his *Pedigree* derived from *Mahomet*, as *Cromwel* had his from the *Welsh Kings*. He taketh upon him to redress the grievances that the people

have for these many years groaned under: Most of the *old Nobility* (especially those that will not be conformable unto him) he either taketh off, or keepeth under. He keeps his *revells* and *sports*, thrice every year, whereby he gaineth the love of the *Country people*. He purchaseth as many *Slaves* and *Renegades* as he can, from whom he hath all his skill and conduct. There is of late a design set on foot by his party, for the chusing of him for their *King*, and for the healing of the breaches, and do desire him to accept of the *Sovereignty*. He keeps up a constant Faction in his *Army* between his chief Officers, which keeps them from revolting or getting a Head: Besides which, he entertaineth so many several *Nations*, and *Interests*, that it is almost impossible for them to close to any particular design against him. Then he keepeth such strict orders amongst them, that they know no publick affairs, no not so much as where to march the next day. Again, most of the chief Officers of the *Army*, are related to him, either by Alliance or Kinred.

He relieth not much upon *Fortresses*, as having none very considerable; neither upon his *Artillery*, though he is very well provided therewith. But his *Forces* are, first, of 2700 *Horses*; and 2000 *Harquebussiers*. Secondly, of a *Royal Squadron* consisting of 6000 *Gentlemen*, of good account, and noble parentage; who are stately accoutred, and richly clad. Thirdly, of *Timariots*, to whom he granteth great privileges, besides yearly salaries. Fourthly, *Arabians*, who in time of need, serve on horse-back. But these are esteemed rather *Thieves*, than true *Soldiers*. And Fifthly, a kinde of *Military forces*, in the nature of our *Trained Bands*; who, upon urgent occasion, are to give their assistance.

He trains up the *Moors* to such Discipline, that 20000 will march in a body for a day together, in such silence and order, that they can hardly be heard. His *Men* march not all in a *Company*, but the chief *Commanders* set forth two hours one after another, every one having his *stratagem*, and *Ambuscado*; also their *Wives* and *Boys* attending them well guarded. In their march they have *Wind Instruments*, *Hoarse Drums*, or the like: They eat and lie in one *Blanket*, tying their *Horses* Bridle to their *Arms* whilest they *graze*. In their *Engagements* they observe great Prudence and Policy, as to the ordering their *Battalia*;

the like he doth observe in the besieging or storming of a Town.

*His Revenue*

His Revenue is great, the which he receiveth divers ways, for, besides the *Tythes* which he receiveth from their labor, and fruits of the Earth, he receiveth Tribute from every House; as also, from all persons above the age of Fifteen, as well Male as Female. Likewise, he receiveth the *Tolls* and *Customs* of Fez, and other Cities, for all Goods: Also his Revenue is much augmented from the Revenue he receiveth from the Mills; as also from the Land of the *Negroes*, by the great quantity of Gold which he fetcheth from thence. Again, he is Heir to all the *Alcaydes*, and those that receive a Pension from him, and at their death he is master of all their Estates; one-ly he taketh care for the bringing up of their Children; if *stales*, until years of service; and if they are found apt for the service of the Wars, then he granteth them their *Fathers* provision; and if *Daughters*, till they are married. And for his gaining an interest in the goods of rich men, he bestoweth upon them some Government of Charge with Provision; and for this reason they remove as far as they can from the Court, or his sight. And this is the great reason, why the City of Fez falleth to the inheritance of her ancient glory.

*His Court*  
and *Service*

In his Court, he observeth great state, having his *Guards* and *Officers of State*, as a King hath; and when he goeth abroad, notice is given to all his *Relations* and *Servants*, who attend on him, and march in order, according to their degree, and order. When he lieth in the field (as all those Kings do, most part of the year, to keep their subjects in awe) his Tent is four square, like a Castle, and in the midst of his Noblemen, and then those of his Soldiers, which serve for his guard; so that all together, they resemble a City. And thus much for this Grand Traytor *Gayland*.

### The Kingdom of ALGIER and TELENSIN.

*The Kingdom of Algier, its bounds, length, and breadth.*

THE Kingdom of ALGIER is at present the most famous, or rather the most infamous on the whole Coast of *Barbary*: As well for its Riches and Forces, as for those *Pyraeces* it exerciseth towards the *Christians*; and the barbarousness it useth towards its Captives.

Its name is taken from the principal City, seated in the midst of its coast on the *Mediterranean Sea*; towards the West, it is separated from the Kingdom of Fez, by the Rivers of *Zhas* and *Mulevia*; towards the East, divided from that of *Tanis*, by the *Guad-il-Barbar*. The Northern Coast is washed by the *Mediterranean Sea*; the South confined by the Mountains of *Atlas*; which divide it from *Sergelmesse*, *Tegararin*, and *Zeb*, parts of *Billedulgerid*. Its length from West to East, is near 300 Leagues, its breadth 50, 60, or 75 Leagues.

We will divide it into five parts, of which, that of Algier shall make the middle one; *Telenfin* and *Tebu*: shall be on the West; *Bugia* and *Constantina* on the East. The *Turks* (as *Grammajus* saith) hath established Twenty Governments, whereof ten are on the Coast, and ten others within Land. On the Coast there are five Westward of Algier, and five Eastward of Algier. *Sargel*, *Tenes*, *Marjalquibir*, *Hunsin*, and *Harejsol*, advance towards the West: *Algier*, *Bugia*, *Gigell*, *Constantina*, and *Bona*, towards the East. Of the ten Governments which are within Land, *Grammajus* places six in the Mountains of *Telenfin*, or *Benrafid*, *Tenes*, *Algier*, *Bugia*, *Constantina*, and *Bona*. These names of Mountains being taken from Cities, neighboring on them, and almost all on the Coast. The four Governments remaining are, *Steffa*, *Necab* or *Necam*, *Mezella* or *Mesila*, and *Musfin*, which are the names of their chief places.

But *Grammajus* not contenting himself with this Division within Land, makes yet other ten; of which, four he calls Kingdoms, and which are onely Tributary. *Harguela* or *Guergela*, *Cuco*, *Tricarta* or *Techcort*, and *Labe*. Two Provinces, *Benirafid*, and *Tebesse*. Two Dynasties or Signories, *Meliana*, and *Angat*: And likewise two Kingdoms subject, *Telenfin* and *Tenes*. Of these ten pieces, *Telenfin*, *Angat*, *Benirafid*, *Tenes*, and *Meliana*, are towards the West; *Cuco*, *Labe*, and *Tebesse*, towards the East; *Guerguela* and *Techcort*, far towards the South.

These two last are so engaged in *Billedulgerid*, that I cannot well describe them with the Kingdom of Algier, though they be Tributary to it. And the Governments or Provinces within Land, are so near, and sometimes so engaged with those of the Coast, that I will not change the order I have taken to consider this Kingdom in five principal

principals  
Governments  
therein.  
quibis  
and Beau  
the qua  
on the C  
shall be  
the Coast  
Algier.  
Steffa, L  
Land, th  
Constant  
of Coast

The  
of the  
Tilmisun  
dom of th  
vinces of  
Bugia, v  
above fe  
the Sea:  
and fauc  
pear in  
Mophues  
250; bu  
Inns for  
of 34; b  
had 1600  
20000 a  
the year  
Synagogue  
it suffered.  
they rece  
many of i  
some othe  
it low.  
cent, its  
more larg  
embellish  
Merchants  
Algier. I  
Modern Fu  
2. Hun  
bar and  
Its Port is  
hath much  
granates,  
habitantes  
1533. this  
ans, and n  
3. Har  
man Colo  
(sometime  
he seized  
situation is  
ed by the  
on with th  
side. Th

the principal  
its coast on the  
the West, the  
Kingdom of Fez;  
Al-Muvia, to-  
that of Tanis,  
The Northern  
Mediterranean Sea,  
the Mountains of  
Syracuse,  
Bilkeidgerid,  
is near 300  
60, or 75

five parts, of  
make the mid-  
shall be on the  
ina on the East,  
faith) hath e-  
ments; whereof  
n others within  
are five West-  
astward of Al-  
quibir, Humain,  
wards the West:  
Constantina, and  
Of the ten Gon-  
Land, Gram-  
Mountains of Telen-  
Algier, Bugia,  
These names of  
in Cities, neigh-  
most all on the  
ments remaining  
us, Mezelia or  
are the names

tenting himself  
and, makes yet  
he calls King-  
tributary. Hu-  
ricarta or Tech-  
vinces, Benira-  
sies or Signia-  
And likewise  
nfin and Tenes,  
Angat, Beni-  
towards the  
belle, towards  
short, far to-

aged in Bille-  
describe them  
though they  
Governments  
e so near, and  
those of the  
ge the order I  
Kingdom in five  
principal

principal parts, in each part observing the  
Governments, Provinces, and Kingdoms  
therein. Humain, Hareglab, and Marsal-  
quibir, on the Coast; Telenfin, Hanghad,  
and Beniraf, within Land, shall compass  
the quarter of Telenfin; Tenes and Sarfell,  
on the Coast, and Meliana, within Land,  
shall be the quarter of Tenes. Algier on  
the Coast, and Cuco, within Land, that of  
Algier. Bugia and Gilgili, on the Coast; 10  
Stefa, Labex, Necaus, and Mesila, within  
Land, that of Bugia. Bona on the Coast,  
Constantina and Thebelle, within Land, that  
of Constantina.

The City of Telenfin, which those  
of the Country now call Tremecen and  
Tibnisan, hath once been chief of a King-  
dom of the same name, of which, the Pro-  
vinces of Telenfin, Tenes, Algier, and  
Bugia, were the parts. The City is not 20  
above seven or eight Leagues distant from  
the Sea: It hath been one of the greatest  
and fairest of all Barbary. This may ap-  
pear in that there remains but eight  
Mosques of consideration, it having had  
250; but four Bania's of 160; but two  
Jams for the Franks, and four for the Moors  
of 34; but six Hospitals of 30 or 40. It  
had 16000 Houses about the year 1006,  
20000 about the year 1200, 25000 in  
the year 1550, and the Jews had ten great  
Synagogues. The divers changes which  
it suffered, and the rude treatment which  
they received from the Turks, hath made  
many of its Inhabitants retire into Fez, and  
some other where, which hath reduced  
it low. That which remains, is magnifi-  
cent, its Houses better built, its Streets  
more large and spacious, its Gardens more  
embellished. Its People more civil, and its  
Merchants of better Quality than those of  
Algier. It hath a Citadel built after the  
Modern Fortification.

2. Humain, which others call Humam-  
bar and Unhain, is the ancient Artifga.  
Its Port is not great, but good; its Land  
hath much Figs, Oranges, Citrons, Pome-  
granates, and Cotton; of which, the In-  
habitants make divers Manufactures. In  
1533, this place was ruined by the Castilli-  
ans, and not restored till long after.

3. Hareglab is the ancient Siga, a Ro-  
man Colony, the residence of Syphax,  
(sometimes King of this Country) before  
he seized the Estates of Massimissa: Its  
situation is on a Rock, whose foot is wash-  
ed by the Sea, and hath no communicati-  
on with the firm Land, but on the South-  
side. This City hath been much greater

then it is; the takings and retakings which  
it suffered by the Kings of Fez, by the  
Califfs, by the Moors, by the Castilians,  
and by the Arabs reduced it to the estate  
it is at present under the Kings of Algier,  
who kept a Garison in its Castle.

4. Oran and Marsa-el-Quibir, which <sup>city of Oran de-  
scrib'd.</sup>  
belongs to the Marquisate of Oran, are in  
the hands of the Catholick King. Oran  
which the Affricani call Tuharan, the A-  
rab of Nubia, Vaharan, is the Cusja of the  
ancients; and Marsa-el-Quibir, their Por-  
tus Magnus, since this name signifies, The  
great Port. This was taken by the Mar-  
quess of Comares, in the year 1505; the  
other by the Cardinal Ximenes, in the  
year 1509. At the taking of this last, the  
Castilians lost only 20 men, killed 4000  
Moors, and delivered 20000 Christian  
Captives. This City of Oran before it was  
taken, had above 6000 Houses, a number  
of Temples, Hospitals, Canes, Bania's, &c.  
and had sometimes been the residence of  
the Gothick Kings: The Ventians, Ge-  
nouese, Catalonians, &c. having here so  
great a Trade, that its riches and power  
inclined its inhabitants to deny tribute to  
the Kings of Telenfin; and to make some  
incursions on the Coast of Spain, which  
was the cause of their loss. At present it  
is a Suffragan Bishoprick to the Archbisho-  
prik of Toledo; it hath some Convents and  
Hospitals, among others one very rich. It  
is strongly seated on the Mediterranean-  
Sea, powerful at Sea in the Gallies, and  
is a place of some Trade, affording most  
of the Commodities the Country pro-  
duceeth.

Their Coins are generally the same with  
those of Barbary.

Their Weight is the Quintal, but of se-  
veral sorts, which is divided into Roves,  
viz. The Quintal of five Roves of 20 li.  
per Rove, which is 100 li. or Rotolo's, and  
the Quintal of four Roves of 25 li. per  
Rove, which is also 100 Rotolo's; also the  
Quintal of six Rotolo's; and lastly, the  
Quintal of 15 Rotolo's. The 100 li. of  
London is found to make of the first 90 li.  
or Rotolo's, of the second 133, of the third  
48, and of the last 58; Rotolo's.

Their Measures are two, viz. The Mo-  
risco Pike which agreeth with that of Al-  
gier, and the Fare of Spain.

5. Marsalquibir hath one of the fairest,  
greatest, and most secure Ports that is in  
all Affrica. The Government or Marqui-  
sate of Oran comprehends likewise some  
Castles and Mountains, where there are good  
Garisons

Garifons which keep the Neighborhood in jealousy. *Mazagan* with its *Castle* on the Coast, is in the hands of the *Moors*.

Province of  
Algeria,  
and its  
chief pla-  
ces.

The Quarter of *ANGHAD* or *RHANGUAD*, though for the most part desert, yet hath some fertile places, where are the Cities *Gnaqida*, and others. *Gnaqida* hath yet about 3000 *Families*, its Land fruitful in *Grains*, and watered with many *Rivers*. The Desert is possessed by the *Arabs*, and amongst them many *Lions*, *Wilde Boars*, *Stags*, and, above all, *Ostriches*. In hunting of which, the *Arabs* often exercise themselves, making profit of their *Feathers*, eating their *Flesh*, and cunying their *Skins* to carry their baggage in. They keep the heart to make use of, in *charms* or *witchcrafts*, the fat to mix in their *Medicaments*, and the nails or the horn to make *Pendants* for the *Ears*, to deck themselves with, when they utter the other parts.

Province of  
Beni-Rasid  
and its  
chief pla-  
ces.

*BENI-RASID* or *BENI-ARAXID*, hath some Plains towards the North, many Mountains toward the South, is fruitful almost every where, and hath three or four places of some consideration in these Mountains.

1. *Beni-Arax* of old *Bunobora*, is not walled, it contains more then 2000 Inhabitants.

2. *Calaa* or *Calat-Huara* of old *Urbara*, between two Mountains, is strong.

3. *Masfar* of old *Vittoria*, hath a *Castle* where the Governor of the Countrey resides.

4. *Batha* of old *Vaga*, on the River *Miza*, having been ruined by the Inhabitants of the Mountain of *Guanferis*, some *Morabur* out of their opinion of his sanctity restored it in Anno 1520.

And 5. *Medua*.

Province of  
Tenes,  
and its  
chief pla-  
ces.

The Province of *TENES* is between that of *Telenfin* and *Algier*, to whose *Kings* it hath been subject, sometimes to one, and sometimes to others, and sometimes it self hath born the Title of a *Kingdom*. Its principal places on the *Sea*, are, *Tenisa* and *Sargel*, within Land, *Meliana*. 1. *Tenisa*, part on the side of a Hill, and part on a Plain descending to the *Sea*, hath a *Castle* and a *Palace*, formerly the abode of its *Kings* or *Lords*; now, of its *Governors*: Its *Inhabitants* are addicted to *Traffick*. The Countrey, both in the Mountains and Plains, yields them *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Hides*, *Wax*, *Honey*, and some other *Commodities*. The *Arab* of *Nubia* makes account of its *Antiquity*, and the strength of its *Walls*.

This place answers to the ancient *Julia Cesarea*. I know well, that most Modern Authors hold *Algier* for *Julia Cesarea*, and likewise a certain *Abbot* who wrote some *Geography*, and believed himself a loue more able in this matter, then all the rest together, makes no difficulty of it. I would make it appear how these Writers follow one another, like blinde men, and have not taken the pains to seek what place at present may answer to *Julia Cesarea*: The demonstration is easie.

Between the Streight of *Gibraltar* and *Cape Bons*, the Coast of *Affrica* stretches it self from West to East, scarce leaving the same *Parallel*, which is 34 degrees of *Latitude*. In the midst of this Coast, is *Cesarea* or *Julia Cesarea*: It must be considered what places it hath on one and the other side, on the same Coast; and by the best known, judge where it may fall.

In the *Roman Itineraries*, and in *Ptolemy*, *Portus Magnus* is on the West of *Julia Cesarea*, *Salda* on the East. The Explication of the one, and the other place being given, it will be easie to finde the third. *Portus Magnus* cannot but have been where now is *Marsalquibir*: This name signifies, A great *Port*, and the quality and greatness of the *Port* or *Haven*, there being hereabouts no other of this sort, permit not this Explication, to be either revokeable or doubtful. *Salda* hath more difficulty, and, to finde the truth, we must at the same time know *Salda*, *Sitiff*, and *Igilgili*, which have been famous, and Colonies of the *Romans*.

The Modern Authors do almost all agree, that *igilgili* is the present *Gigel*; not one that I know, but explains *Sitiff* to be the now *Steffa*. There are divers opinions of *Salda*. *Cassadus* takes it for *Algier's Mercator*, for *Tedels*; others, for other places: But the most pleasant Explication of all, is that of the *Abbot*, who will have *Tabraca* to be the Modern name of a place; and that that *Tabraca* should answer to the Ancient *Salda*; and observes not that *Salda* and *Tabraca* are two ancient places, distant the one from the other, three or four hundred thousand paces, according to the *Roman Itineraries*; and more then five hundred thousand, if we may credit *Ptolemy*: Nor yet takes notice, that *Tabraca* hath nor quitted its ancient name, but is yet called *Tabraca* or *Tabarca*; a place which the *French* and *Genovese* know very well, as we shall speak in its place. *Molan*, *Marmelous*, and *Samitus*, explain

*Bugia*

*Bugia* for  
make it  
then othe

The *R*  
*da*, *Sitiff*,  
80, or i  
other. I  
present fo  
at the fam  
of *Gegel* a  
*Igilgili* an  
mult answ

The *R*  
*nus* for *M*  
*Julia Ces*  
*Tennes* and  
fering the  
*salquibir* an  
*Algier*, an  
with the di  
*varies* give  
*Cesaria*, be  
and betwe  
we may be  
we have the  
The Explic  
sitation,  
many erro  
ing well tas  
others answ

Moreove  
*lia* for *Jul*  
*Cesarea*, w  
name, and  
of the fam  
*Igilgili*, and  
is to put th  
continuing,  
*naan*, and *B*  
the ancient  
which are,  
and *Bulla*  
sently.

1. *Brisch*  
*nesa*, and b  
have many  
is the ancien  
*bricari*. Th  
the *Moors* dri  
and enriched  
their *Silks* a  
both of the  
the most par  
*Mulliana*, is c  
most part of  
*tains* and *Wa*  
dorned with  
*Temple*. 5.  
which had be



*Bugia* for the Ancient *Salda*, and we will make it appear, they have hit more true than others.

The *Roman Itineraries* have placed *Salda*, *Sitifi*, and *Igilgili*, in a Triangle at 75, 80, or 100000 paces the one from the other. *Bugia*, *Steffa*, and *Gigel*, are at present found in the same disposition, and at the same distance, likewise, the names of *Gegel* and *Steffa*, answering to those of *Igilgili* and *Sitifi*, it follows, that *Bugia* must answer to *Salda*.

These two places known, *Portus Magnus* for *Marsalquibir*, *Salda* for *Bugia*, *Julia Cesarea* will be found to answer to *Tennes* and *Rufucurram* with *Algier*, considering the distances there is between *Marsalquibir* and *Tennes*, between *Tennes* and *Algier*, and between *Algier* and *Bugia*, with the distances which the *Roman Itineraries* give between *Portus Magnus* and *Cesaria*, between *Cesaria* and *Rufucurram*, and between *Rufucurram* and *Salda*. But we may be tedious, let it suffice, that we have shown the way to find the truth. The Explication of these places of consideration, being all taken, there follows many errors in the neighboring places, being well taken, it is eassie to see what the others answer.

Moreover, the *Abbot* writes *Cesaria Julia* for *Julia Cesaria*, or rather for *Fol Cesarea*, writes *Gigilgili* for the Ancient name, and *Igilgili* for the Modern name of the same place. The ancient being *Igilgili*, and the new *Gigel* or *Gegel*, this is to put the Cart before the Horse; and continuing, he names *Tebessa*, *Soufa*, *Cairuan*, and *Begge*, &c. without observing the ancient name of one of these places; which are, *Tebeste*, *Rhusfina*, *Thysdrus*, and *Bulla Regia*, as we shall say presently.

1. *Brischa*, and 2. *Sersela*, East of *Tennesa*, and between *Tennes* and *Algier*, have many *Roman Antiquities*. The first is the ancient *Icosima*, the other is *Rufubricari*. This hath suffered divers ruins; the *Moors* driven from *Granada*, rebuilt it, and enriched it with their *Piracies*, with their *Silks* and *Fruits*. The *Inhabitants* both of the one, and the other, are for the most part *Wesvers*. 3. *Meliane* or *Malliana*, is on a Mountain, where yet the most part of the Houses have their *Fountains* and *Walnut-trees*. 4. *Mezume* is adorned with a *Castle*, a *Palace*, and a fair *Temple*. 5. *Tegudent* hath a large circuit, which had been empty, had not sometime

since a *Marabut* repeopled it. These two places are by some esteemed in the quarter of *Telensin*. Among the Mountains *Bem-Abucaid*, is near to, and of the appurtenances of *Tennes*. *Guanferis* can let forth 2 or 3000 Horse, and 15 or 16000 Foot.

The Quarter of *ALGIER* comprehends likewise that of *Conco*, in the Mountains of *Eguet-Vandaluz* alias *Conco*, and *Tabusuplus*, which is the principal place, built on the top of a Rock, craggy on all sides. It may contain about 1600 Houses, the Kings or Lords of the Country reside here, and have oft disputed their liberty with the Kings of *Algier*. These Mountains are two or three days journey long, and their approaches very difficult: They yield *Olives*, *Grapes*, and especially *Figs*, of which, the King makes his principal Revenue. *Cattle*, *Iron*, *Salt-peter*, and the Plains afford *Corn*; and every where Springs of running Water. The people are *Bereberes* and *Aznages*, well armed and courageous.

*ALGIER*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom, is at present the most famous place of all the Coast of *Barbary*; either for its riches and power, or for the extent of its Estates. It is seated on the declension of a Mountain, in form of a Triangle; so that from the *Sea*, all its Houses appear one on the top of another, which renders a most pleasant prospect to the *Sea*: The circuit of this City is not above 3400 Geometrical paces, fortified with some ill-disposed *Bastions*; but the *Island*, which was before it, is joynd to the *City* some years past; where is built a *Pentagone*, the better to secure the *Port* and *Island*, and keep it from being fired, as in 1596, 1606, &c. It is a *City* not so large, as strong; and not so strong, as famous: Famous for being the receptacle of the *Turkish Pirates*, who so much dominion over the *Mediterranean Sea*, which to often proves to the great damage of all *Merchants*, who frequent those *Seas*. This *City* hath at present 12 or 15000 Houses; it had not when *F. Leon* of *A F F R I C A* wrote above 4000. The *Streets* are but narrow, but the Houses fair and well built, yet one which runs along the *Sea*, is fair and large; they count 100 *Mosques*, whereof seven are very sumptuous; five Houses or Lodgings of *Fanissaries*, capable to hold each of them 600 men; 62 *Banias*, of which, two are very beautiful; 100 *Oratories* of *Turkish Hermises*, and almost as many publick *Schools*. Out of the *City* are many *Tombs*

The Seat of Algier, and its parts and places.

The City of Algier described.

cient *Julia* of Modern *Cesarea*, who wrote d himself a then all the city of it. I these Writers le men, and k what place *Julia Cesarea*:

*Gibraltar* and *Algeria* stretches it leaving the degrees of *La-Coast*, is *Ce* ft be consider- and by the best fall.

and in *Ptolemy*, West of *Julia* The *Explicat* ther place being re the third. *Por* ve been where name signifies, quality and great- s, there being is sort, permit e ether revoke- hath more d sfi- uth, we must at *Sitifi*, and *Igil*- nous, and *Colo*-

do almost all a- present *Gigel*, explains *Sitifi* to are divers opini- ces it for *Algier* s others, for other fant Explication s, who will have ern name of a rachs should an- s and observes are two ancient the other, three paces, according e and more then e we may credit notice, that *T*- s ancient name, or *Tabarca*; a *Gemaefe* know eak in its place. *Samtus*, explain *Bugia*

of *Turks, Moors, and Jews*, the burying place of the *Christians*, is without ornament. Among these *Tombs*, is remarkable, that of *Cave*, Daughter of *Fulian*, Earl of *Bethica*, who having been ravished by *Roderic*, King of the *Goths*, was the cause of the *Moors* descent into *Spain*. It hath almost no more *Suburbs*; the *City* being encompassed with many *Hillocks* and rising *Grounds*, whose *sides* and *valleys* are covered with 12 or 15000 fair *Gardens*, abounding with store of pleasant *Fruits*, with their *Fountains* and other places of delight. Beyond these *Hills*, is the *Plain* of *Moteja*, 15 or 16 *Leagues* long, and 8 or 10 broad, very fruitful in *Grains*.

Coyn of  
Algeria.

The *Coyns* which pass here, are *Aspers* and *Doubles*; Fifty *Aspers* making a *Double*. A *Double* is esteemed to hold correspondence (as to valuation) with the *English Shilling*, or with two single *Spanish Ryals* of  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Four *Doubles* is a *Ryal* of  $\frac{1}{2}$ , which is called an *Ostian*. Five *Doubles* and 35 *Aspers*, is a *Pistole* of *Spain*; and seven *Doubles* is a *Sultany* or *Chequin*, which is the common *Gold Coyn* not onely here, but in all *Barbary*. And these are the usual, and most current *Coyns*.

Their  
Weights.

Their *Weight* is the *Rotollo*, or *li*. of 30 *Ounces*; and of this *Rotollo* or *li*, 94 *li*. hath been observed to make 112 *li*. *English*. But they have two sorts of *Weights*, a *grois* and a *small*; Ten of the small making six of the *grois*.

Their  
Measures.

Likewise their *Quintal* is found to differ according to the *Commodity* which is weighed.

As all *Drugs*, *Copper*, *Brass*, *Wax*, &c. by the *Quintal* of 100 *Rotollos*, or *li*. 40  
*Cheese*, *Almonds*, *Cottons*, &c. by the *Quintal* of 110 *Rotollos*.

All *Wools*, *Tarn*, *Iron*, *Lead*, &c. by the *Quintal* of 150 *Rotollos*.

And *Oyl*, *Dates*, *Honey*, *Soap*, *Figs*, *Raisins*, &c. by the *Quintal* of 166 *Rotollos* or *li*.

*Gold*, *Silver*, *Precious Stones*, and *Pearls*, are weighed by the *Mitigal*, which is 72 *Grains English*.

Their *Measure* is the *Pico*, of which they have two sorts, *viz.* the *Turkish* and the *Morisco*, which is the measure of the *Countrey*, and is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the *Turkish*, by which all *Linnen* is sold, the *Turkish Pico* is divided into 16 parts, and every  $\frac{1}{4}$  part is called a *Robo*, and by this all other *Commodities* are sold.

Their dry *Measure* is called a *Tarry*,

which as they heap it, is about five *Gallons English*.

The *Commodities* that are here found, are the product of the *Countrey*, *viz.* *Oyls*, *Dates*, *Figs*, *Raisins*, *Almonds*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Copper*, *Brass*, *Castile Soap*, *Estridge Feathers*, excellent *Barbary Horses*, some few *Drugs*; and lastly, *Slaves* and *Captives*: Besides which, by reason of their 10 *Piracy* on the *Seas*, most *Commodities* are here found.

*Commodities* most vendable here, are such as are fit for *Tuniz*, and other parts of *Barbary*.

This place is famous for the *Shipwrack*, which *Charles* the Fifth here suffered, who besieging this *Town*, lost in its *Haven* at one *Tempest* (as *Hejlin* noteth) besides a very great number of *Karvels* and small 20 *Boats*, divers strong *Gallies*, 140 *Ships*, a great many pieces of *Ordinance*, about half his *Men*; and such great quantity of gallant *Horses*, that in *Spain* they had almost like to have lost their race of good and serviceable *Horses*.

The *Cities*, 1. *Temendussa*, about 7 or 8 *Leagues* from *Algier*, with a good *Port*; and 2. *Teddeles*, 18 or 20, are the best places of the *Coast*: The first answers to the ancient *Fomium Municipium*, the other to *Rufipsistr*, likewise, *Municipium*. 3. *El Col de Mudejares* of old *Tigis*, is newly re-peopled by the *Morisco* *Mudejares* of *Castile* and *Andalusia*; and the *Tagarins*, which were of *Valentia*: It is 8 or 10 *Leagues* from *Algier*, beyond the *River Selef*, which they here call the *River of Saffran*. 4. *Gezaira*, a *City* seated on the *Sea-shore*. 5. *Mensoro*. And 6. *Garkum*, both *Sea Towns*.

The *Air* about *Algier* is pleasant and temperate: The *Land* hath excellent *Fruits*, as *Almonds*, *Dates*, *Oyls*, *Raisins*, *Figs*, some *Drugs*, &c. The *Plain* of *Motteia* is so fertile, that sometimes it yields 200 for one, and bears twice a year good *Grains*. In the most desert *Mountains* are found *Mines* of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, quantity of fierce *Beasts*. The *Countrey* affords excellent *Barbary Horses*, also *Estridge Feathers*, *Wax*, *Honey*, *Castile Soap*, &c. Besides they have good quantities of most *Commodities*, which by reason of their *Piracy*, they take from other *Nations*, to the great enriching of the place, most of the *Inhabitants* living by it, setting out *Vessels* in *Partnership* and sharing the gains, selling the *Commodities*, and the *Men* they take, as *slaves* in open *Markets*. The *Natives*

tives of *A*  
is the *Mo*  
all sorts of  
the greater  
*Turks* have  
to transpo  
*Countreys*  
*Moors* driv  
have retire  
tains, ma  
*Slaves*,  
of this *C*  
12 or 1500  
are some  
200 or 300  
onely amo  
in, and ab  
less then  
But of late  
of *Sandwic*  
*lish Fleet*,  
Second, p  
*Ships*, fco  
deliver up  
jects in an  
well as *Eng*  
very honor  
not to seiz  
give them  
they pleas  
with *Tuniz*  
tories: Bu  
ple will ke

Accom  
*Algier*, th  
brought th  
*stian Slave*  
robbed oth  
those of th  
fell us, *A*  
nal *Ximen*  
enough in  
besides the  
present *C*  
of *Munita*  
have three  
*Months* ta  
one taken  
yet greater  
coming fro

The *Pl*  
the *River*  
the *East*,  
are to prin  
in the *Land*  
*Messila*, i

1. *Bug*  
able of 20  
3000: *B*

is about five Gal-

are here found, *viz.* *Almonds, Honey, Nile Soap, Estridgeary Horses,* some *Slaves* and *Cap-* reason of their *Commodities* are

ndable here, are and other parts of

for the *Shipwrack*, here suffered, who st in its *Haven* at (noteth) besides a *Carvels* and small *ies,* 140 *Ships,* a *inance,* about half quantity of gal- they had almost race of good and

*adsuba,* about 7 or with a good *Port*; are the best pla- first answers to the *ipium,* the other *unicipium.* 3. *El Tigish,* is newly *que Mudejares* of and the *Tagartins,* : It is 8 or 10 beyond the River call the River of a City seated on *re.* And 6. *Gar-*

is pleasant and hath excellent *es, Oyls, Raisins,* The Plain of *Mon-* sometimes it yields twice a year good *ert Mountains* are *ver, Iron,* quan- Country affords *s,* also *Estridge Castile Soap, &c.* quantities of most *ason* of their *Py-* Nations, to the *ace,* most of the *etting out Vess-* *paring* the gains, and the *Men* they *kets.* The *Natives*

ives of *Algier* are fairer, and not so brown as the *Moors*; but the *City* is filled with all sorts of Nations. The *Fanissaries* make the greatest part of the *Militia*: The *Turks* have the chief Trade, who are found to transport several *Commodities* to other *Countreys*; but there are many of the *Moors* driven from *Spain,* and others who have retired themselves from the *Mountains*; many *Arabs, Jewish,* and *Christian* *Slaves.* The number of the *Inhabitants* of this *City* cannot be esteemed by the 12 or 15000 Houses it contains; for there are some Houses, where are found 100, 200 or 300 persons; the *Christian Slaves* onely amount to about 30 or 40000 within, and about the *City*; and there are not less than 6000 Families of *Renegades.* But of late the Right Honorable the Earl of *Sandwich,* present *General* of the *English Fleet,* by order from King *Charles* the Second, put out to Sea with a Fleet of Ships, scoured those Seas, forced them to deliver up all the *Slaves,* who were Subjects in any of the *Kings* Dominions, as well as *Englishmen,* and brought them to very honorable terms: By which, they are not to seize, or stop any *English Ship,* but give them free liberty of Trading where they please; and the like Peace is made with *Tunis,* and other of the *Turks* Territories: But how long these perfidious people will keep this Peace, is a question.

Account is made of the great riches in *Algier,* they take store of *Silver,* which is brought them for the redeeming of *Christian Slaves* and *Commodities,* they have robbed other Nations of; as likewise, for those of their *Country,* which they would sell us. And therefore it was, that Cardinal *Ximenes* said, that there was Money enough in *Algier* to conquer all *Affrica*; besides their ordinary *Arms,* they have at present *Cannons, Muskets,* and all sorts of *Munitions.* Among their *Cannons* they have three of note, one with seven Mouths taken at *Fez,* another very great one taken on a *Malta Galley*; and another yet greater taken on a *Portugal Vessel* coming from the *Indies.*

The Province of *BUGIA* is between the Rivers *Major* and *Sesegmar.* This on the East, that on the West. On the Coast are to principal places, *Bugia* and *Ghegel*; in the Land are *Stessa, Labes, Necaus,* and *Mesila,* in some consideration.

1. *Bugia* is a great City, its circuit capable of 20000 Houses, but hath not above 8000: But that which is uninhabited, is

mountainous and inconvenient; it was built by the *Romans* on the side of a lofty Mountain, which regards the *Sea*; now the chief City of this *Province.* Its Streets and Houses are in good order, it is adorned with many sumptuous *Mosques,* some *Monasteries* and *Colledges* for Students in the Law of *Mahomet,* and many fair *Hospitals* for the relief of the poor: Its Castle is good and strong, seated on the River *Guad al Quibir,* that is, *Great River.* It is very fruitfully situated.

2. *Ghegel* formerly famous, is now onely a Borough of 500 ill-built Houses. Its Castle is very good; its Land hath little *Corn,* store of *Hemp, Figs,* and *Nuts*: They hold this place to have been the beginning of the fortune of *Barbarossa.*

3. *Labes* makes a separate Estate above *Bugia,* and consists onely in Mountains of so difficult access, that the *Kings* of *Algier,* and the *Turks,* can scarce force them to pay Tribute. The chief *Fortress* of these Mountains, and the Residence of their King or *Xeque,* is *Calaa.* The others are,

4. *Coco de Teleta,* their Sepulture.

5. *Tezli,* at the foot of the Mountain, to defend the approaches.

These Mountains have little *Corn* or *Fruit*; they can raise 5000 Horse, 4000 *Harquebusers,* and 20000 Men, armed after their mode, all valiant, and better defenders of their liberty, than those of *Couco.*

6. *Necaus.* 7. *Mesila,* are beyond the *Abez,* but near the same River. *Necaus* is the most pleasant of all *Barbary.* It hath something of particular in its public Buildings; every House hath its Garden so embellished with *Flowers, Vines, Fruits,* and *Fountains,* that it seems a *Terrestrial Paradise.*

8. *Chollum.* 9. *Gergelam, &c.*

The Province of *CONSTANTINA* hath sometime had its *Kings.* This is the new *Numidia,* of the Ancients the most occidental part of the true *AFRICA,* and which touches on *Mauritania,* to the West; the River *Sufesmar* making

50 the separation. This Province comprehends three quarters, of which, that of *Constantina* extends to the *Sea,* and a good way in the *Land*; that of *Bona* likewise on the *Sea,* but little on *Land*; that of *Tebessa* is farther in the *Land,* touching on *Biledulgerid.*

1. *Tebessa,* formerly *Thebeste,* surpasses, as they say, all other Cities of *Barbary* in three things: In the force of its *Walls,* beauty

Province of  
Constantina, the  
parts and  
chief places.

The City of  
Tebessa.

beauty of its *Fountains*, and great number of its *Wall-nut Trees*. In counter-change, its *Inhabitants* are *Brutish*, its *Houses* ill built, and its *Air* unwholesome.

The City of Bona.

2. *Bona* of old *Hippo Regnis*, ill inhabited at present, part of its *Inhabitants* being retired into the Mountains, hath been famous to Antiquity, for its greatness, but much more for its Bishop *St. Augustine*, so seign'd among the *Doctors* of the Church. It hath suffered great changes under the *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Moors*, and afterwards under *Barbarossa*.

3. *Tabarca*, a City and Isle is of this Government, likewise the Hills and Mountains of *Bona*, where are gathered much *Fruits of Fejube*, *Grains*, and store of *Cattle*: And the Coast hath Red, White, and Black Corral; which the *French*, near to *Bona*, and the *Genouese*, near to *Tabarca*, go to fish for. The family of the *Lomolins* in *Genova*, having a Fortrefs in the Isle of *Tabarca*; the *French*, a *Bastion* between *Tabarca*, and the Point of *Mascara*; the one and the other for the security of their Fishing and Commerce.

The City of Constantina.

4. *Constantina*, which the *Moors* called *Constantina*, the Ancients *Circa Julia*, is a great City, not having less than 8000 Houses. Its situation on a Mountain, which hath but two *Advenues*, the rest being Precipice, makes it strong. The River *Sufegmar* washes the foot of the Mountain, its *Castle* stands to the North, *Colo* and *Sucaicada*, on the Coast, are under the Government of *Constantina*, likewise the Mountains which extend themselves to the *Mediterranean Sea*, and to the confines of *Bona*. The Countrey about *Constantina*, is fertile, its Mountains Tilled, *Colo* hath its *Inhabitants* more civil than those of *Constantina*, those having no trade, but with those of *Billedulgerid*, the others with those of *Europe*. The *Inhabitants* of the Mountains can raise about 40000 Men, and maintain themselves almost in liberty, both against the Kings of *Alger*, and the *Arabs*.

The City of Cirta.

5. *Cirta*, in the *Roman History*, was the residence of many Kings of *Numidia*, among others of *Masiniſſa*, afterward of *Syphax*, who drove *Masiniſſa* from his Estates, and settled himself at *Cirta* with his Wife *Sophonuba*, who had been promised to *Masiniſſa*. This *Woman* a little after having perſwaded *Syphax* to favor *Carthage*, of which, she was against the *Romans*; drew their *Arms* into his Estate, where *Scipio* defeated, and took *Syphax*

prisoner, *Masiniſſa* besieged, and took *Cirta*, where *Sophonuba* was; who had so many attractions, and so much cunning, that in the same day she beheld her self captive and Wife to *Masiniſſa*: But she killed her self soon after, that she might not fall into the *Romans* hands, and be led in triumph through *Rome*.

6. *Stora*, and 7. *Mabra*, both Maritime Towns.

## The Kingdom of TUNIS.

THE Kingdom of *TUNIS*, besides its particular Province hath sometimes extended it self over *Constantina*, and *Bugia* on one side, and over *Tripoli* and *Ezzab*, on the other. At present it hath only its own Province, and something in *Billedulgerid*.

This Kingdom of *Tunis* is bounded on the North, and North East with the *Mediterranean Sea*, and *Tripoli* on the South, with parts of *Billedulgerid*, and on the West, with *Alger*. It is divided into four Maritime Governments, and three or four Inland ones. The Maritime are, *Biserta*, *Galeta*, *Souſa*, and *Africa*; *Begge*, *Urbi*, *Cayroan*, and part of *Billedulgerid* are the third or fourth within Land. All together extend themselves from the River *Gnad il Embar*, unto that of *Capes*. This separating them from the Kingdom of *Tripoli*, the other from the Province of *Constantina*.

The River *Gnad il Barbar*, or *Hud il Barbar*, takes its source near *Urbi*, which it waters with a Channel made on purpose, and discharges it self into the *Sea* near *Tabarca*. In its course it makes so many turnings and windings, that it must be passed 25 times in the Road between *Bona* and *Tunis*, and that with much difficulty and danger, there being no *Bridges*, and scarce any *Boats* to Ferry over. The River *Capes* of old, *Triton* descends from *Billedulgerid*, and waters at first a very sandy Countrey, leaves *Capes* on the right, and on the Coast of *Tripoli*, and disburthens it self into the little *Syrtes*, now the Golf of *Capes*. *Magrada*, another River, hath its Spring likewise in *Billedulgerid* on the confines of *Zeb*, which it waters in part; washes *Tebeſſa* of the Province of *Constantina*, cuts the Kingdom of *Tunis* into two almost equal parts, and disburthens it self in the *Sea*, near *Garilmesse*, between *Tunis* and

and *Hami* times ex that *Tra* some day

*BIS* the *Affr* the count indifferen pled with Eastward name, 3 mouth, a bout 160 In this C change fo for their S fend the This plac firnamed the hands place also Wars.

The C much este ing *Cartha* whose Ke the neck of the *Sea*, T that whic then that t wween thef ens them, little *Gul* which is l which all hath given top of a H *Sea*. The and the ne trenched *Fanissarie* ed, and tu A *Fountai* place, so a *Fortress*. *Fort* in 153 in 1574. t ral *Blake* *Pyrate Shi* *Tunis* a present on It counts c which are Ten Place *Temples* a many *Orat* *frians*, 1 *Schools*, 5 rished and

and *Hammamet*. Its increase are sometimes extraordinary, and all of a sudden, so that Travellers are often forced to wait some days for a passage.

**BISERTA, BENSERTA**, by the Africans of old *Utica*, according to the common opinion, is a City but of an indifferent greatness, but strong, and peopled with about 6000 families. It looks Eastward on a Gulf, to which it gives its name; and this Gulf is straight at its mouth, and large within Land, and is about 16000 paces long, and 8000 broad. In this City there is a fair *Bourse* or *Exchange* for Merchants; two great *Prisons* for their *Slaves*; and some *Bassions* to defend the *Port*, which is good and large. This place is famous for the death of *Cato*, surnamed *Utica*, who for fear of falling into the hands of *Cesar*, here slew himself: A place also much noted in the *Carthaginian Wars*.

The Government of **GOLETTA** is much esteemed, because of the neighboring *Carthage*; or rather because of *Tunisi*, whose Key it is. It is a *Fortress* built in the neck of the Gulf, between *Tunisi* and the *Sea*. This Gulf is formed in two parts; that which is most within Land, is larger than that which advances to the *Sea*. Between these two parts, that which straightens them, makes the *Goletta*, that is, *The little Gullet* (in difference to the other which is larger, and towards the *Sea*) by which all must necessarily pass: And it hath given occasion to build a *Fort* on the top of a Hill, whose foot is washed by the *Sea*. There was heretofore the old *Fort*, and the new; the old was onely an intrenched *Bassion*, guarded by 30 or 40 *Familiares*; the new is great, well fortified, and furnished with all things necessary. A *Fountain* of running water crosses the place, so that it seems rather a City than a *Fortress*. *Charles* the Fifth took this *Fort* in 1535, which the *Turks* took again in 1574, under this *Fort* was it, that *General Blake* with the *English Fleet* fired the *Pyrate Ships* of *Tunisi* in 1654.

*Tunisi* at the bottom of this Gulf, is at present one of the fairest Cities of *Barbary*. It counts eight *Gates*, eight chief *Streets* which are crossed by abundance of others. Ten *Places* or *Markets*; more than 300 *Temples* and *Synagogues* of the *Jews*, and many *Oratories*, some likewise for the *Christians*; 150 *Bain's* or *Hot-houses*; 86 *Schools*; 9 *Colledges* where youth is nourished and instructed at the publick ex-

pence; 64 *Hospitals*, and a great number of *Canes* or *Inns* for *Merchants* and *Christians*, &c. The Buildings of the *Royal Palace* are magnificent; it had long since 10000 *Houses*; and is much increased since the *Moors* of *Granada* were driven out of *Spain*: Among its *Inhabitants* are many *Merchants*, *Apothecaries*, *Druggists*, *Confectioners*, *Cooks*, *Bakers*, *Butchers*, and above all, *Drapers* and *Weavers*, &c. Their common *Bread* is kneaded with *Oyl*, of which they have abundance, and utter quantity into *Egypt*. Their *Linnen* and *Manufactures* have vent through all *Affrica*: It is a place of great *Traffick*, and and much frequented by *Merchants* of *Foreign* parts, affording several other good *Commodities*, as *Gold*, *Saffron*, *Wax*, *Oyl*, *Raw* and *salted Hides*, variety of *Fruits*, *Wool*, *Sponges*, *Hard Soap*; they have also a great trade for *Horses* and *Ostrich Feathers*, &c. and above all for *Christian Slaves*. *Commodities* most vendable here, are, *English Cloths*, *Perpetuances*, *Iron*, *Lead*, &c.

The common *Coyus* of *Tunisi*, and the *Kingdom* thereof, are, *Dollars*, *Aspers*, and *Barbors*. A *Barbor* is a small piece of *Copper*, and of the lowest value; of which, 12 makes an *Asper*, and 52 *Aspers* makes a *Dollar* or *Piece* of  $\frac{1}{2}$ , which is valued according to 4 s. 4 d. *Sterling*; and by these they keep their *Accounts*: They have also  $\frac{1}{2}$  Pieces of  $\frac{1}{2}$ ;  $\frac{1}{4}$  Pieces of  $\frac{1}{2}$ ; and *Ryals* of  $\frac{1}{2}$ : Likewise some *Gold-Coyus* passeth amongst them.

Their common *Weight* is the *Quintal* or 100 *li*, and is about 2 *li*. lesser than the 112 *li*. *Haberdupoin English*; and this *Quintal* containeth 100 *li*, or *Rosolas*, and each divided into 16 *Ounces*, and each *Ounce* into 8 *Drams*; and by these *Weights* are weighed all sorts of *Commodities*.

Their *Measure* of length is the *Pike*, and of three sorts; the *Pike* for *Linnen Cloth*, is 18 *Inches English*; the *Pike* for *Woollen*, is 27 *Inches*, or  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a *Yard English*; and the *Pike* for *Silk*, is  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the *Club Pike*.

Their *Measure* for *Corn*, is the *Casice*, which is about 9 *Bushels English*; and this *Casice* is divided into (or contains) 18 *Wibes*, and each *Wibe* into 12 *Saws*.

Their *Oyl Measure* is the *Meter*, and containeth 32 *li*. *Tunisi*.

They have no *Water*, either of *Well* or *Fountain*, (except that which is reserved for the *Bassa*) but make use of *Cisterns*, and *Rain water*: They are fain to have their *Mills* turned by their *Slaves*, or by

Gg Oxen,

ed, and took  
s, who had so  
much cunning,  
beheld her self  
nissa: But she  
that the might  
nds, and belid

both Maritime

## TUNIS.

NIS, besides  
ce hath some  
Constantina, and  
ver Tripoli and  
present it hath  
and something in

is bounded on  
ast with the *Me-*  
is on the South,  
d, and on the  
divided into four  
and three or four  
ine are, *Biserta*,  
3, *Begges*, *Urbi*,  
*dulgerid* are the  
d. All together  
the River *Gwad il*  
es. This sepa-  
dom of *Tripoli*,  
nce of *Constan-*

bar, or *Hued*  
three near *Urbi*,  
Channel made  
ges it self into  
in its course it  
and windings,  
times in the  
*unisi*, and that  
nger, there be-  
any *Boats* to  
Capes of old,  
*dulgerid*, and  
by Country,  
and on the  
urthens it self  
the Gulf of  
River, hath its  
*gerid* on the  
waters in part;  
ce of *Constan-*  
*unisi* into two  
urthens it self  
between *Tunisi*  
and

Ge-  
omet  
1674

79  
1707

1707  
1707  
1707

In Trade  
and Com-  
modities

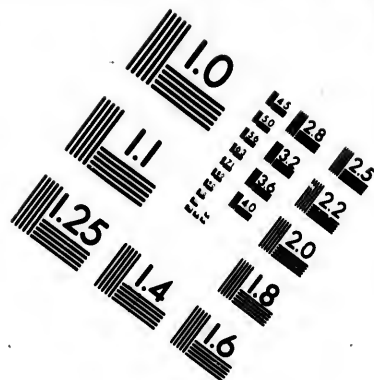
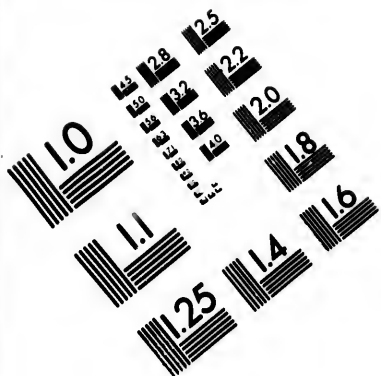
Coyus of  
Tunisi

their  
Weight

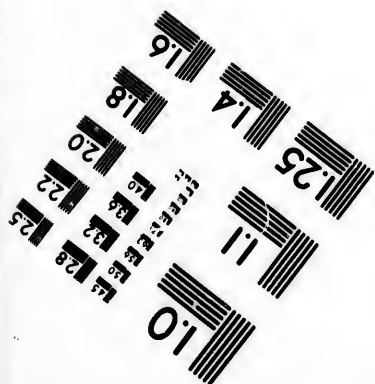
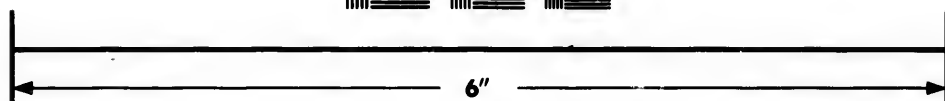
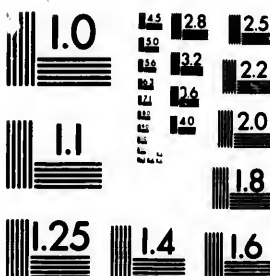
their  
Measures







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 672-4503

1.5  
2.0  
2.5  
3.2  
4.0  
5.0  
6.3  
8.0  
10

11  
12.5  
15  
20  
25

*Oxen.* The Arab of Nubia, *Sanntus*, and some others, esteem *Tunis* to answer to the Ancient *Tarhis*. This place (as *Heylin* noteth) is observable in the *History* of the *Holy Wars*, for the Sieges and Successes of two of our *English Princes*, viz. *Edward* the First, in his Fathers life time; and *Henry* the Fourth, then but Earl of *Darby*, by both, of which, the City was forced to a composition.

Tunis is  
situated in  
the ruins of  
Carthage.

But the Ruines of *Carthage*, from which *Tunis* had its increase are remarkable: because of the *Antiquity*, *Situation*, *Greatness*, and *Power* of this City. The beginning of it is given to *Dido*, the *Phenician*, who inclosed with a Wall the quarter, or *Castle* of *Byrsa*, which is two miles and a half in Circuit, which in the County they still call *Bersac*, and *Byrsa* signifying a *Hide* to the *Greeks*, and a *Fortress* to the *Phenicians*, the one agrees with the Fable that *Dido* had bought, and builded the place on the greatness and extent of an *Oxes Hide*: the other to the *Situation* and advantage of the place, where this *Fortress* was built. This *Situation*, and the goodness of the neighbouring *Port*, drew so many *People*, that it became one of the fairest *Cities* in the world. Its circumference in its splendor was 360 *Stadij*, like to that of *Babylon*, and its Inhabitants have been so rich and powerful, that they disputed with the *Romans*, for the Empire of the World, being once called the Lady and Mistress of *Affrica*.

The particular power of this City, was not known till the third and last *Punic* war; when after having had to do with *Masinissa*, to whom they yielded a good part of their Estates; after having granted and put into the *Romans* hands; their *Ships of War*, their *Elephants* their *Armes*, and their *Hostages* which were demanded: when they commanded them to leave the City, and to inhabit from the *Sea Coast*, despair made them resolve on the War: They made other *Armes*, built new *Ships*, the *Women* and *Virgins* giving their hair to make *Cables*, and *Cordage*, and defended themselves yet three or four years.

It was afterwards restored, and at divers times, but the *Vandalls*, and in the end the *Arabes* have wholly ruined it, there not remaining above 7 or 800 houses of *Fishermen*, *Gardiners*, &c.

The Government  
of *SUSA*,  
is *Hamametha*,  
or *Machometes*.

The Government of *SUSA* or *SUSA*, contains the Cities of *Hamametha*, or *Machometes*, of *Susa*, of *Monastero*, &c. *Hamametha* communicate

its name to the neighbouring *Gulf*, at the bottom whereof it is situated, its *Walls* are strong, and its *Harbour safe*. *Susa* is in a higher and lower City, the former on a *Rock*, and of difficult access; the last on the *Sea*, with a good *Port*, where are laid great quantities of *Oyles*: both the one and the other well built. The Duke of *Savoy* made an enterprize on them in 1619. 3. *Monastero* which the Arab of Nubia calls, *Lemta* of old *Lepta Minus*, is known by us under the name of *Monastero*, because there was once a famous *Monastery* of the Order of *St. Augustine*. The riches about *Susa* is in *Olives*, *Pears*, and other *Fruits*, and *Pastures* for *Cattel*. The ordinary *Food*, for the Inhabitants is *Barley-bread*, the Country affording no other *Grain*. The Inhabitants of *Susa* and *Hamametha* add themselves to *Traffick*, others to *Whitning of Cloth*, they make *Charcoal*, and draw some profit from their *Fishing*.

The Government of *AFFRICA* or *EL-MADIA*, hath nothing considerable, but this place may be made far better than it is: Its situation is in a *Peninsula*, which touches not the maine, but by an *Isthmus* of two or 300 paces, where there is likewise some *Marsh*, and on this side the City is invested with a double *Wall*, and good *Ditches*: Its *Port* within the City is capable to lodge 50 *Galleys*, but its entrance is so narrow, that a *Galley* is forced to lift up its *Oars* to pass. The *Christians* took and pillaged *Monastero*, and *Affrica* in 1550.

The *Coasts* about *Susa* and *Affrica*, have been well known in the *Roman History* in the time of the Wars between *Caesar*, and the party of *Pompey*. *Caesar*, landed at *Rhuspina*, now *Susa*, *Adrumetum*, now *Hamametha* being in the Enemies hands; and in the beginning had divers little favourable encounters thereabout: In the end he happily defeated both *Scipio*, and *Fubaneer* to *Thapsus*, now *Affrica*; and after that defeat, *Cato* despairing flew himself at *Utica*, now *Besferta*: *Scipio* saved himself in some *Ships*; but being met by *Caesars Fleet*, passing his sword through his body, he precipitated himself into the *Sea*. *Fuba* would have retired to *Zama*, where he had left his *Wives*, *Children*, and *Treasures*; but *Zama* having refused to open him the *Gates*; he and *Petrujus* retired into a house in the *Fields*, where they killed themselves

elves,  
upon the  
*Hamametha*  
was the  
*Post* of a  
route,  
For  
distant  
gives it,  
wee at  
have sin  
ces it 5  
and 600  
but it ap  
from *Ca*  
and pac  
thousand  
Begg  
URBS  
the Ro  
the way  
both sea  
Grains,  
*Tunis* &  
they we  
is *Sand*  
*Camud*,  
faire Cit  
GA  
as it fe  
Govern  
*Tobulha*  
but its p  
Land,  
steemed  
City is  
affores  
any *W*  
*Cisterna*  
*Tunis*,  
*Sea*.  
was the  
the *Sar*  
*Temple*  
of *Mar*  
fair one  
who all  
and now  
dence  
*Mabom*  
parts of  
chief m  
believe  
*Priests*,  
Heaven  
to abo  
Not

selves. During this War, and almost upon the landing of *Caesar*, happened near *Hammametha*, a thing incredible, which was that 30 *Gaul-Horsemen* assaulted a *Post* of 2000 *Moorish Horse*, put them to route, and pursued them into the *City*.

For *Zama*, or *Zama Regia*, it is far distant from the position which *Ptolemy* gives it, and from that of *Ortelius*, which we see at other times, and which all others have since followed. This Author places it 500 thousand paces from *Carthage*, and 600 thousand paces from *Adrumetum*, but it appears both by the *Roman History*, and by the *Itinerary table*, not to be distant from *Carthage*, above 100, or 120 thousand paces, and from *Adrumetum* 100 thousand paces, or little more.

*Begge* or *Beija*, of old *Bulla Regia*, and *URBS* or *Ourba* of old *Orba*; This in the *Road* from *Tebessa* to *Tunis*, that in the way from *Constantina* to *Tunis*, are both seated in faire plains, so fertile in *Grains*, particularly *Begge*, that those of *Tunis* say, that if they had two *Begges*, they would yield as many *Cornes*, as there is *Sand* in the *Sea*, and nigh to *Urbs* is *Camuda*, *Arbes*, *Musti*, and *Marmagen* all faire *Cities*.

*CAYROAN* of old, *Thestrus* ought as it seems to be among the *Maritime Governments*; since it holds on the Coast *Tobulha*, *Asfachusa* and some other places, but its principal place being on the maine Land, its Government is likewise esteemed to be within the Land. This *City* is seated in a sandy plain, which affords neither *Grain*, *Fruite*, nor scarce any *Water*, but what is preserved in *Cisternes*, it is about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and about 36 from any part of the *Sea*. It was first built by *Hacha*, who was the first that Conquered *Affrick* for the *Saracens*; who adorned it with a stately *Temple* or *Mosque* supported on *Pillars* of *Marble*, of which two or three are very fair ones, and of a prodigious greatness, who also placed in it a *Colledge* of *Priests*, and now in much esteem, being the residence of a high *Priest*, of the Law of *Mahomet*, and to this place from all parts of the Country, the Corps of their chief men are brought to be interred; who believe that by the Prayers of those *Priests*, they shall find a shorter way to Heaven, then if interred at any other place. Its Inhabitants are now reduced to about 4 or 500 families.

Not far from *Cayroan*, are the Moun-

tains of *Zaghoan*, and *Gnestet*, the last not above 12000 paces distant, both the one and the other have divers foot steps of *Roman buildings*. But I believe it was from the last that *Scipio* considered the battaile between *Massanissa* King of *Nu-midia*, and *Asdrubal* chief of the *Carthaginians* and of this Encounter *Scipio* would sometimes say to his friends, that he was the third who had had the pleasure to see a famous battail, without having run any resigoe: to wit *Jupiter* from the top of *Mount Ida*, and *Neptune* from some eminence in the *Isle* of *Samo-thrace* who beheld the battails between the *Trojans* and *Greeks*; and himself this between *Massanissa* and the *Carthaginians*, the other *Cities* of this Kingdom of *Tunis*, and towards *Billealgerid*, *Ze Gassa*, *Hama*, *Techio*, *Neifa*, and *Nafsa*.

## The Kingdom of TRIPOLI.

THE Kingdom of *TRIPOLI* takes up the just moyety of the Coast of *Barbary*, from *Capes* unto *Agypt*, and divides it self into two principal parts, or Provinces, which bears likewise the Title of Kingdoms, to wit *Tripoli* and *Barca*.

The Province or Kingdom of *Tripoly* is between the two *Syres*, now the *Sands* or *Banks* of *Barbary*. These are *Gulfses*, of different greatness, but of the same nature, infamous for the *Shipwrack* of *Vessels*, lost on their Flats or *Rocks*: among which the depth of the water is very unequal, and changes often, there being sometime much, sometimes a little, and sometimes none at all. The little *Syres*, now the *Gulfe* of *Capes*, separates *Tripoly* from *Tunis*. The great *Syres* now the *Gulfe* of *Sydra*, divides it from *Barca*; this towards the East, the other towards the West, and on the South it is bounded with *Bilidulgerid*; and on the North with the *Mediterranean Sea*.

Its principal *Cities* are *El-Hamma*, *Capes*, *Zoara*, the two *Tripolies* old and new, *Sarmana*, *Lepeda*, &c. *El-Hamma* is in the land, *Capes* and the rest on the *Sea*; between *El-Hamma*, and *Capes* is a lake excellent against *Leprosy*, two *Capes* of old *Tacapa*, hath good *Walls*, and a good *Castle*; but its *Port* dangerous, and incapable to receive either many or great *Vessels*.

Mountain  
of Zepho  
and Gu  
clet.

See  
the  
map  
p. 25

The  
same  
city  
is  
also  
in  
the  
map

The  
same  
city  
is  
also  
in  
the  
map

50



*Vessels*, it is situate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the lesser *Syrtis*. 3. *Zocra* of old *Pisida*, between *Capes* and *Tripoli*, hath its land so dry, that the *Inhabitants* are forced to water it, and yet will scarce produce any thing save *Barley*, and some *Fruits*; among which, *Lotos* with which they make an excellent *Metheglin*, but it lasts good not above 9 or 10 days, *Flesh* is here very scarce, they not having wherewith to feed *Beasts*. The *Arabs* frequent their *Markets*, and bring them it with *Wools*, wherewith they make *Cloths*, and other *Manufactures*. 4. *Tripoli* the old, of old *Sabrata*, and which the *Arab* of *Nubia*, calls the Tower of *Sabari*, hath onely some *Hamlets*, and Remnants of fair and stately *Edifices*. 5. The new *Tripoli* of old *Oea*, is better maintained, though it hath many ruins, by reason of the divers 20 changes it hath had. The disposition of its places, *Streets*, and the order of its Buildings is agreeable, being adorned with many fair *Mosques*, *Colledges*, *Hospitals*, &c. The *Inhabitants* subsist onely on their *Commerce*, which is of what they got from their *Palm-trees*, *Lotos*, and *Linneen Cloth*, which they utter'd in *Africa*, *Sicily*, and *Malta*; besides their black and *Ethiopian Slaves* which they sold; till of late they have much enriched themselves by *Pyracy*, it being the usual retreat for *Pirates*, who infest these *Seas*, and do much mischief to *Christian Merchants* on the Coasts of *Italy*, *Sicily*, and elsewhere. The *Commodities*, *Corns*, *Weights*, and *Measures* of *Tripoli*, are, correspondent with those of the Kingdom of *Tunis*, before treated of. 6. *Ichada* or *Lepeda* of old *Lepsis Magna* (in difference of *Lepta Minus*, 40 on the Coast of *Tunis*) is likewise in some repute, as it was in the time of the *Arab* of *Nubia*, and more under the *Romans*: Farther is the great *Syrtis*, at the bottom of which, is the Isle *Sydra*, which communicates its name to the Gulf; and on the firm Land, are the Tombs of *Philenes* or *Ara Philenarum*, which set the Limits between *Africa* and *Lybia*; and afterwards, between the Estates of the *Carthaginians* and the *Cyrenians*; and in fine, of the *Eastern Empire*, against that of the West. And 7. *Sebeicum*, a City near the Sea shore, nigh to which, are three small Isles.

Along the Coast, are some Isles, among which, that of *Gerbes* is well known; formerly it was joynd to the firm Land by a *Bridge*. It had two Cities; now hath no-

thing but one *Castle* worth notice, and many *Hamlets* which gather little *Corn*, but much *Fruits*; among the rest, *Lotos* so sweet and pleasant, that the companions of *Ulysses*, having tasted them, sought no longer to go into their Country.

This Isle hath about 18000 paces circuit, yields one of the greatest Revenues to the King or *Bassa* of *Tripoli*, by reason of the confluence of *Merchants*, who fetch thence *Cloth* and divers *Stuffs*, and carry them to *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, &c. one of the principal parts of the Revenue of the same *Bassa*, is the *Saffron* of the Mountain of *Garian*, which is on the South of *Tripoli*: And this *Saffron* is found the fairest, and the best of all others.

## BARCA.

The rest of the Coast of *Barbary*, is now known under the name of *BARCA*; it is bounded on the East, with *Egypt*; on the South, with the Desert of *Nubia*; on the West, with *Tripoli*; and on the North with the *Mediterranean Sea*, which is also some of its Western bounds. The Ancients called it particularly *Lybia*, comprehending that which is farther in the Land, and which we call the Desert of *Barca*; and divided this *Lybia* into the *Cyrenaick*, the *Marmarick*, and *Lybia Exterior*. This last being the nearest to *Egypt*; the *Cyrenaick* to *Tripoli*; and the *Marmarick* resting for the middle. Likewise, the most Northern and Maritime part of the *Cyrenaick*, hath passed under the name of *Pentapolis*, because it had five fair Cities; to wit, 1. *Berenice*, otherwise *Hesperides*, now *Bernichum*. 2. *Teuchira*, otherwise *Arsino*, now *Torochara*. 3. *Ptolemais*, now *Tolometa*; and 4. *Apollonia*, now *Boni-Andreas*; and these four are on the Sea; the fifth, *Cyrene*, now *Corene* or *Cayraan*, is within Land.

This by much, the most famous, was a Colony of the *Lacedemonians*, and hath yielded Learned Men: Its situation is on an eminence that discovers the *Sea*; and its campaign, as of those other Cities, is moistened by divers *Waters*; and their soyl so fruitful, that some have esteemed the *Hesperian Gardens* with their *Golden Apples* about *Berenice*.

Its other chief Towns and Cities, are, 1. *Barca*, an Inland City of some account, 2. *Melela*, 3. *Carcora*, 4. *Camara*, 5. *Zunara*,

In chief  
place and  
people.

Tripoli  
and its  
Trade  
above.

Corns,  
Weights  
and Meas-  
ures of  
Tripoli.

The Isle of  
Gerbes de-  
scribed.

5. Zu  
All Ma  
some a  
Bait  
rene, a  
near 20  
was for  
under  
crates,  
band o  
endured  
that un  
thier of  
whom  
and by  
and for  
Daugh  
City an  
time of  
Countr  
Egypt;  
Soldans  
ving alm  
Egypt.  
far from  
quarter,  
Kingdom  
much a  
out dive  
from thi  
Desert.  
Cities,  
Inhabita  
both wit  
Abyssines  
Civet,  
transport  
Common  
Corn, L  
which th  
nes, and  
Its oth  
Barca, a  
lina. 4.  
marus.  
9. Rosa  
All Mari  
of which  
Roads, f  
quented  
Betwe  
andria,  
Alberton  
able bot  
And son  
it Amma  
way to  
mon.

th notice; and  
her little *Corn*,  
the rest, *Lotas*  
t the compani-  
ed them, sought  
Country.  
3000 paces cir-  
eat of Revenues  
*Tripoli*, by reason  
ants, who fetch  
uffs, and carry  
ppi, &c. one of  
Revenue of the  
of the Mountain  
e South of *Tri-*  
ound the fairest,

5. *Zunara*, 6. *Avium*; and 7. *Saline*.  
All Maritime Towns and Cities, and of  
some account.

*Bastus* gave the first beginning to *Cy-  
rene*, and he and his Successors reigned  
near 200 years: After which, the City  
was sometimes in Liberty, and sometimes  
under Tyrannism: Among which, *Nico-  
crates*, having put to death *Phadimus* Hus-  
band of *Aretaphila*, to espouse her: She  
endured him sometime her Husband, and  
that until she had occasion to gain the Bro-  
ther of *Nicocrates*, named *Leander*; to  
whom she gave her daughter in marriage,  
and by his means rid her self of *Nicocrates*,  
and soon after (by the means of her  
Daughter) of *Leander* also, and so sat the  
City at liberty; which endured till the  
time of *Alexander* the Great, when the  
Country fell to the *Ptolemies*, Kings of  
*Egypt*; afterwards, to the *Romans*, to the  
*Soldans* of *Egypt*, and to the *Turks*; ha-  
ving almost always followed the fortune of  
*Egypt*. But at present *Barca* or *Barce*, not  
far from *Cayraan*, is the most famous of this  
quarter, and hath given its name to the  
Kingdom. The *Arab* of *Nubia* makes  
much account of it in his time, and lays  
out divers ways, and gives the distances  
from this place to others, farther in the  
Desert. Moreover, this quarter of five  
Cities, is called by some *Mesrata*, and its  
Inhabitants esteemed rich. They trade  
both with the *Europeans*, *Negroes*, and  
*Abyssines*; fetch from them, *Gold*, *Ivory*,  
*Civet*, *Musk*, and *Slaves*, which they  
transport into *Europe*, besides their Native  
Commodities; and bringing from *Europe*,  
*Corn*, *Linnen*, and *Woollen Cloth*, &c.  
which they carry to the *Negroes*, *Abyssi-*  
nes, and elsewhere.

Its other chief places in the Kingdom of  
*Barca*, are, 1. *Doera*, 2. *Focella*, 3. *Sal-*  
*lina*, 4. *Luchun*, 5. *Solana*, 6. *Mu(olo-  
marus*, 7. *Carium*, 8. *Albertonius*,  
9. *Roxa*, 10. *Raibba*; and 11. *Ripaalba*.  
All Maritime Towns and Cities; and most  
of which, having good and commodious  
*Roads*, *Ports*, and *Havens*; and well fre-  
quented and inhabited.

Between *Cayraan* or *Barca*, and *Alex-  
andria*, there is on the Coast, the Port of  
*Alberton Paratonium*, which is consider-  
able both for its goodness and greatness:  
And sometimes the Ancients have called it  
*Ammonia*, because from hence was a  
way to the Temple of *Jupiter Ham-*  
*mon*.

This Temple hath been very famous a-  
mong the *Pagans*, *Bacchus* returning  
from *Asia*, which he had overcome, caused  
it to be built in honor of his Father; who  
under the shape of a *Ram*, had showed him  
as he passed with his Army, where to finde  
water in those Deserts; and he first con-  
sulted the Oracle, and put it in such re-  
pute, that divers other *Heroes* afterwards  
consulted it, *Perseus* when he was sent to  
fetch the head of *Medusa*, the *Gorgon*:  
*Hercules* going from *Mauritania*, where he  
had overcome *Anteus*, towards *Egypt*,  
where he was to defeat *Busiris*. *Alexander*  
the Great, to make it believed he was like-  
wife the son of *Jupiter*; and that the  
Empire of the World was destined to him.  
But *Cambyses* the son of *Cyrus*, having a  
design to pillage this Temple, beheld his  
Army perish in these Deserts, and was  
saved himself onely to see his own mad-  
ness, and to die unhappily by his own  
Weapon.

About this Temple there are some  
*Springs* of running *Water*, and some *Trees*,  
which makes this quarter pleasant. A-  
mong these *Waters*, that which they call-  
ed the Fountain of the *Sun*, had this par-  
ticular quality, that it was very hot at  
midnight, and very cold at Noon day;  
the cold increasing from Morning till  
Noon, and diminishing until Evening; and  
from thence the heat increasing till Mid-  
night; and diminishing until the Morn-  
ing.

There was three several ways, which  
they used ordinarily to go to this Oracle:  
The shortest was by *Paratonium*, now *Al-*  
*berton*; which as we have said, was upon  
the Coast; and from whence it was but  
1300 *Stadii*, which are about 162000  
paces. Another way was from *Cyrene*,  
now *Cayraan*; from whence it was 3000  
*Stadii*, or 375000 paces. *Pliny* saith,  
400000; the difference is 25000 paces.  
The longest way was from *Memphis*; from  
whence it was 3600 *Stadii*, or 450000 pa-  
ces. These are 180 Leagues for this last,  
150 or little more for the second, and 65  
for the first. All these ways are very dif-  
ficult, the Country being onely Deserts  
of Sands; so dry, that the wind moves  
them like the dust of the High-way, and  
that in so great a quantity, that they are  
able to inter *Carravans*. And if there be  
any Habitations in these Deserts, and  
where there is any *Springs* of *Water*, they  
are distant one from the other 40, 50, 60,  
sometimes 100 Leagues; and these Ha-  
bitations

The Temple  
of Jupiter  
Hammon,  
now be-  
quainted by  
the Pagans.

A.

ft of *Barbary*, is  
the name of *BAR-*  
the East, with *E-*  
th the Desert of  
with *Tripoli*; and  
*Mediterranean Sea*,  
Western bounds,  
particularly *Lybia*,  
ch is farther in the  
all the Desert of  
is *Lybia* into the  
k, and *Lybia Ex-*  
nearest to *Egypt*;  
and the *Marma-*  
dle. Likewise,  
Maritime part of  
d under the name  
had five fair Ci-  
ty, otherwise *Hef-*  
2. *Teuchira*,  
rochana, 3. *Pto-*  
and 4. *Apollonia*,  
these four are on  
e, now *Corene* or

most famous, was a  
*Lybian*, and hath  
its situation is on  
the *Sea*; and its  
other Cities; is  
very; and their soyl  
is esteemed the  
their *Golden Apples*

and Cities, are,  
of some account.  
1. 4. *Camera*,  
5. *Zunara*,

H h

bitations

bitations have little or nothing, since that of *Hammon*, the most considerable, is not above 80 *Stadis*, or 4 *Leagues* circuit; and yet it had a *King*, a great *Priest*, &c.

The Desert of BARCA with its chief places and people of the desert.

In the *Desert* of *BARCA* there are some parts peopled & frequented, amongst those vast and floating *Sands*, as, 1. *Angela*, where there are 3 *Cities* and many *Villages*; and their people have a great power against the *Serpents*, and therefore may answer to the Ancient *Billi*, (if the South wind have not buried these in the *Sand*, for resolving to make upon him, because he had dried up all their *Waters*.) 2. *Serta*, which hath been once a great *City*, but at present reduced to *Ruines*. 3. *Alquechet*, which hath three *Cities* and some *Villages*, and possibly *Elhochat* or *Eleocath*, is the same; or if they be two, they answer to the Ancient *Oasis Magna*, and *Oasis Parva*. Its other chief places, are, *Sabia*, *Ernet*, *Conza*, *Alcor*, *Angela*, *Ebaida*, *Gorham*, and *Ammon*, spoken of before. Among these *Deserts*, are many *Arabs*, of which, some are powerful in *Horse* and *Foot*; and will not suffer any *Cities*, except of some *Africans* which pay them tribute.

The People of Barbary.

At present the *People* of these *Deserts*, are in part *Africans* or *Bereberes*; part *Arabs*, and all extremely barbarous. And since we are safe on these *People*, and that we have here the occasion, let us say, That *Barbary*, *Billedulgerid*, and likewise *Znaxa*, and part of *Nubia*, are for the most part inhabited by these two sorts of *People*. The *Africans* and *Bereberes*, are, the Natural inhabitants of the *Country*, or at least have been long seated there. They are divided into five principal *Races*, to 40 wit, of *Zanbagia*, *Musmuda*, *Zemeta*, *Haora*, and *Gumera*: And these five *Races*, are subdivided into more than 600 *Branches*, or numerous *Lines*; which distinguish themselves very well, the one from the other, being very curious to keep the Antiquity of their *Race*, and to know from what *People* they are descended.

The Race of the Arabs which inhabit in Barbary.

The *Arabs* passed into *Africa*, in the year of *Grace* 999, or the 400 of the *Era* of *Mahomet*: And there was but three *Races* which passed, viz. Those of *Esquequin* and *Hilal*, coming from *Arabia Deserta*; and that of *Maquyl* from *Arabia the Happy*; they might make together 50000 fighting men: But they so multiplied afterwards, that the *Race* of *Esquequin* hath eight or nine principal *Lines*, under which, are many *Branches* which

they call *Heyles* or *Cob-Heyles*, that is, *Assemblies*, and live by *Advares*, which are like *Boroughs*; of 100, 150 or 200 *Tents*, which they carry along with them, and dispose as they think fit; they may make together about 40000 *Horse*, and 400000 *Foot*, in 1200 *Advares*. The *Race* of *Hilal* is divided into 11 *Lines*; these *Lines* into many *Branches*, and may make 30000 *Horse*, and 150000 *Foot*. The *Race* of *Maquyl* hath 23 *First*, or *Second Lines*, and may raise about 30000 *Horse*, and 400000 *Foot*; which are for the three *Races* 100000 *Horse*, and near a *Million* of *Foot*. We cannot find how many *Advares* or *Communalities* are in the two last *Races*.

And these *Arabs* are on all *Coasts* among the *Bereberes*; yet so, that they have their *Habitations* distinct the one from the other; some in one quarter, some in another of the same *Province*: And it is to be observed, that there are *Bereberes* and *Arabs* still in the *Cities*, and others still in the *Field*; but these are accounted the most *Noble*, because the freest, often reaping the *Harvest* of their *Neighbors* labor.

## BILLEDULGERID.

**BILLEDULGERID** is very improperly called *Numida* by the Modern Authors: *Numida* having been upon the *Mediterranean Sea*, which *Billedulgerid* touches not at all. Its confines are on the North of *Barbary*, from whence it is separated by *Mount Atlas*: On the South, *Zaara*; on the West, the great *Ocean Sea*, and on the East, *Egypt*. Its principal parts, Kingdoms, or *Provinces*, are, *Sus* or *Tefset*, *Dara*, *Segelomessa*, *Tegorarin*, *Zeb*, *Billedulgerid*, and the *Desert* of *Barca*; which stretch themselves from the *Ocean* unto *Egypt*: And this length is of 1000 or 1200 *Leagues*, its breadth being for the most part not above 100 or little more; from which they have what is useful for them. The *Air* is healthful, they live long, are deformed, are held base *People*, ignorant of all things, are addicted to theft, murder, are very deceitful, they feed very grossly, are great hunters. They acknowledge *Mahomet* for their *Prophet*, whose Principles of *Religion* they observe, though they differ in many *Ceremonies*; their *Garments* are but mean, and so short, that

that not a with their distinguish which is n make use Among by Advare of 100, v transport where the Cattle; a their Tent vets Street leaving for shut up, a Arabs est of all, cal and Prune which abio feminate: more civil ans are.

SUS, name of T the farthest of the Kir Western p divided into dausquerit. Sea; Tefset and Araba these parts Villages; are Bereber fruitful, y as Oranges Barley, &c others, in 5000 Horse held the b and almost proper one 3. Num h Dates, 400 Hou Negroes. live of Co Dates; an Those of G Garguessa Dates. A are severa Buzedora, Buleza, at opposite, Ifles.

DAR Morocco

that not above half their body is covered with them; the better sort of them are distinguished by a *Facket of Blew Cotton*, which is made with wide Sleeves. They make use of *Camels*, as we do of *Horses*. Among them are many *Arabs* which live by *Advares*, that is, *Communalities*, each of 100, 150 or 200 *Tents*; which they transport whither they please, that is, where they finde best feeding for their Cattle; and when they stop, they dispose their *Tents* in a circle, making therein diverse Streets, and common places; and leaving some inlets and outlets, which are shut up, and guarded like a City. These *Arabs* esteem themselves the most noble of all, calling those which Till the *Earth*, and Prune *Vineyards*, Servants; and those which abide in Cities, Courtiers, and Efeminate: And these *Arabs* are esteemed more civil and ingenious than the *Numidians* are.

*SUS*, which *Sannus* passes under the name of *TESSET*; and which is called the farthest *Sus*, to distinguish it from that of the Kingdom of *Morocco*, is the most Western part of *Billedulgerid*; it may be divided into seven Quarters, of which, *Tdausquerit*, *Extuca*, and *Nun*, are on the Sea; *Tesset*, *Guadennum*, *Isrena* or *Ufaran*, and *Archa*, within the Land. Each of these parts have many Cities, Castles, and Villages; and the most part of its Poople are *Berberes*, *Affricans*, or *Arabs*, *Tdausquerit* is the best quarter, and the most fruitful, yields *Fruits*, sweet and sower, as *Oranges*, *Citrons*, &c. Also *Wheat*, *Barley*, &c. Feeds much Cattle, among others, multitudes of *Horses*; can raise 5000 *Horse*, and 30000 *Foot*: They are held the best Soldiers in all *Billedulgerid*, and almost of all *Affrica*. 2. *Extuca* is proper onely for Pastures, abounds in *Goats*. 3. *Nun* hath but little *Barley*, and few *Dates*. 4. *Tesset* is a Town of about 400 Houses, hath some trade with the *Negroes*. The Inhabitants of *Guadennum* live of *Goats* Milk, by *Hunting*, and of *Dates*; and the Countrey hath *Ostriches*: Those of *Isrena* trade with the *Portugals* at *Guargussen*, and those of *Archa* hath onely *Dates*. And in these seven Quarters there are several other Towns and Cities, as, *Buzedora*, *Utemila*, *Albene*, *Anfulima*, *Buleza*, and *Suana*, all Maritime places, opposite, and not far from the *Canary Isles*.

*DARA* is on the East of *Tesset* and *Morocco*: It is divided commonly into

three parts, of which, the chief retains the name of *Dara*; the other, are, *Taffilet* and *Ytaia*, which pass likewise under the name of *Taffilet*. All these parts have been divers times under the dominion of the *Xeriffs*, of *Fez*, and *Morocco*. *Dara* is about a River of the same name; and where the River doth overflow it, it is indifferent fruitful. Among its chief Cities, are, *Bensabih* or *Mucabah*. 2. *Quitera*, *Tagumader* or *Tigumedet*; from whence came the *Xeriffs*, of *Fez*, and *Morocco*. 3. *Taragaleh* of 4000 Houses, and a *Ferry* of 400. 4. *Tinzulin*, the most spacious of all. 5. *Timeguit* of 2000 Families. 6. *Tesuf* or *Dara*, once the Royal City of all these Quarters, now in ruins.

*TAFFILET* hath borne the Title of a Kingdom, as well as *Dara*; and its chief City of the same name hath more then 2000 Families of *Berberes*. To this place (as *Haylin* observeth) did *Mahomet* the Second, Son of *Mahomet Ben Amet*, and second King of *Morocco*, of this Family, confine his eldest Brother *Amet*, having took him prisoner in *Anno Dom. 1544*. *Ytaia* is for the most part esteemed under *Taffilet*, though near upon as great. The Land belonging to the one and the other, are harth and mountainous, and situated between *Dara* and *Segelomessa*; *Taffilet* toward *Morocco*, from whence it is separated from Mount *Atlas*; *Ytaia* towards the *Saara* or *Desert*, where is that of *Zuenziga*.

*SEGELOMESSA* or *SUGHLEMESSE*, is one of the greatest and best Provinces or Kingdoms of all *Billedulgerid*. Its chief City bears the same name; it is made famous by the *Arab* of *Nubia*: It hath been ruined and rebuildt within 100 and odd years; it is seated in a Plain, and on the River *Ziz*: Where, and on those of *Ghir*, *Tagda*, and *Farscala*, are likewise some other Cities; more then 300 walled Boroughs, and a great number of Villages. The Rivers overflow, and make fertile the Countrey, as doth the *Nile* in *Egypt*. The Inhabitants may raise about 120000 men to bear Arms; they have sometimes been subject to their Lords, sometimes to the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*: Now are partly divided into Lines and Communalities, and partly subject to the *Arabs*.

Under the name of *Segelomessa*, we will pass with *Sannus* 12 or 15 little Estates, which have but few Cities or walled Towns, and some Villages: Poor, and almost

The Kingdom of Taffilet, with its chief place.

The Kingdom of Segelomessa described.

Several small Estates in and about Segelomessa.

...les, that is, *Advares*, which 100, 150 or 200 long with them, fit; they may 1000 *Horse*, and *Advares*. The into 11 Lines, inches, and may 150000 *Foot*, 23 *First*, or *Seffe* about 30000; which are for *Horse*, and near cannot finde how *multies* are in the

on all Coasts a-er so, that they distinct the one in one quarter, same Province: l, that there are all in the Cities, d; but these are ble, because the Harvett of their

GERID.

RID is very im- munda by the Mo- having been upon which *Billedulgerid* ionfines are on the whence it is sepa-

On the South, great *Ocean Sea*, its principal parts, are, *Sus* or *Tef- Tegorarin*, *Zeb*, *Desert* of *Barca*; from the *Ocean* length is of 1000 dth being for the 10 or little more; that is needful for thful, they live held safe People, dded to theft, tful, they feed ters. They ac- their *Prophet*, on they observe, ny Ceremonies; an, and so short, that

most all subject to the *Arabs*, *QUENEG* hath three Cities, of which, *Zebbellinum* the chief, is on a very high Rock, and holds the passage of *Segelomeffa* to *Fez*, by Mount *Atlas*, *Gastrum* another City, is on the side of a Mountain, *Tamara-costum* is on a Plain. Besides these Cities, there are about twelve Towns, and twice as many Villages. They have sometimes aided the *Xeriffs* of *Fez* and *Morocco* with 8000 Men. *Helel* is the principal of its quarter, and the residence of the Lord of *Malgara*, *Manunna* the chief of *Rheteb*, is peopled with *Moors* and *Jews*, all *Merchants* and *Artisans*. These places are on the *Ziz*, descending from the *Atlas*, towards *Segelomeffa*. *Subail*, *Humeledegi*, and *Ummelhesen*, make each their Estate apart. The last is on the way from *Segelomeffa* to *Dara*. The Land is quite Desert, covered with Sand, and black Stones, *TEBELBEITA* hath three Cities, 12 Villages: *Farcala*, 3 Cities, 5 Villages: *TEZERIN*, 5 Cities, 15 Villages: *BENIGOMIA*, 8 Cities, 15 Villages; the Cities, *Mazalag*, *Abubinanum*, and *Chasaira*, make each their Estate: *BENIBESERI*, *GUACHDA*, and *FEGHIGA*, have each three Cities, and some Villages, Those of *Feghiga* addict themselves to *Traffick* and *Letters*; gather quantity of *Dates*, as doth likewise *Gnachula*. An excellent mine of *Iron* employs those of *BENIBESERI*, in carrying it to *Segelomeffa*: A rich Mine of *Lead*, and another of *Antimony*, yields profit to those of *Chasair*, who carry them to *Fez*: The others bear onely *Dates*, and their Inhabitants are oppressed by the *Arabs*, who rule over them. *Togda*, besides its Laborers of the Land, hath some *Tanners* of *Leather*, and the Soyl yields *Grains* and *Fruits*.

I have made *Tegovarim* and *Zeb*, the Fourth and fifth Parts of *Billedulgerid*, taken in general. Under the name of *Tegovarim*, I shall comprehend *Tesebit* and *Benigorait*; under that of *Zeb*, I comprehend *Mezzab*, *Techort* or *Techortina*, and *Guerquela*.

Quarter of  
Tegovarim  
as noted.

*TEGOGARIN* hath more than 50 Cities or Walled Towns, and 100 or 150 Villages; the chief of which, are, *Tegovarim*, *Tnat*, and *Tegdeat*. The Country is abundant in *Dates*, yields *Corn* when watered; feeds no *Cattle*, except it be a few *Goats* for their *Milk*. Its People addict themselves to *Trade*; fetch *Gold* from the *Negroes*, which they carry into *Barbary*; and bring from thence feve-

ral *Commodities* to carry to the *Negroes*: Receiving strangers with delight, and letting nothing be lost that they can leave with them, to enrich their Country. *Tesebit* or *Tesevin* hath 4 Cities, 28 Villages; the most part of the Men are Black, the Women onely Brown, and comely: All poor, as likewise in the Desert of *Benigorait*.

The Province of *ZEB* is more to the East then *Tegovarim*, it touches the Kingdom and Province of *Algier* and *Bugia*, near *Mesila*, on the North; is divided from the Regions of *Mezzab*, *Techort*, and *Guerquela*, towards the South, by divers Mountains. Its principal Cities are five, *Pescara*, *Borginum*, *Densena*, *Nesta*, *Teolacha*, and *Masaxa*. One part of these Cities were ruined, when the *Arabs* entred into *Affrica*, a part by *Barbarossa*; the most part afterwards restored: At present the *Turks*, the Kings of *Conco*, and *Labes*, and the *Arabs*, receive some tribute from them. The Inhabitants of *Pescara* live in the Fields in the Summer, being constrained to abandon the City by reason of the multitude of *Scorpions*, whose biting is mortal, as is that of the Black *Scorpions*, which are towards *Calaa* in the Kingdom of *Labes*: Yet here the Inhabitants taking but two drams of a little Plant, cures them, though bitten, and preserves them a whole year, saith the *Arab* of *Nubia*, from biting. *Borghia* is well peopled, hath many *Artisans* and *Laborers*. The Water which passes at *Densen*, is hot; as likewise, that which passes at *Nesta*. The Inhabitants of *Teolacha* are proud and haughty.

The Quarter of *MEZZAB* is to the South of that of *Zeb*, and is a great passage from divers parts of *Barbary*, to go towards the Land of the *Negroes*; which makes those of the Country Trade on the one, and the other side. They have six Walled Towns, and a great number of Villages; are Tributary to some *Arabs*.

The Estates of *Techort* and *Guerquela*, have each their *Prince* or *King*; they have sometimes been free, sometime subjects, or tributaries to *Morocco*, *Tekusim*, *Tunus*; and in fine, to the Kings of *Algier*; to whom they give a certain number of *Negroes* in form of Tribute. Each Estate takes its name from its chief City, besides which, they have each of them many Walled Towns, and about 100 or 150 Villages; and about 150000 Duckats of Revenue: They can raise 40 or 50000 Men,

Men, be-  
chart the  
having  
the *Tur*  
and three  
abundant  
their ric  
they tre  
more civ

*BILL*  
*GERED*  
is a part  
taken in  
the Coast  
ters of *T*  
*Fezzen*,  
rich in *D*  
and hath  
boring *C*  
is above  
*Tensar*,  
number o  
Towns an  
bears the  
three or fo  
the chief  
walled *T*  
of *Fezzen*  
Towns, an  
last Estate  
the *Turks*  
*Tripoli*. *C*  
lived to b  
is put by  
of *Tunis*.

*O* Fall  
is the  
to *ASIA*  
perswaded  
and *Mod*  
whole, or  
hold it al  
bounds  
which is  
*Mediterr*  
*Barca*, on  
and the *M*  
The *Nil*  
through  
its *Catar*  
or more:  
so much,  
is between  
the Valley



*Men*, but they are but bad souldiers. *Techou* though on the top of a Mountain, and having 2500 houses, was yet taken by the *Turks* of *Algier* with a very few people and three pieces of Cannon. They have abundance of *Dates*, from whence flows their riches: they want *Corn*, and *Fish*, they treat *Christians* favourably, and are more civill then their neighbours.

**BILLEDULGERID**, or **BELED-EL-GERED**, that is, The Country of *Dates* is a particular Province of *Billedulgerid*, taken in general. This Province is above the Coast of *Tripoli*, and we add the Quarters of *Teeuragu*, *Fasliuen*, *Gademex*, and *Fexzen*. The particular *Billedulgerid* is so rich in *Dates*, that it takes thence its name, and hath communicated it to the neighbouring Countries, and to all that part which is above *Barbary*. Its principal Cities are, *Tensar*, *Caphsa*, and *Nessasa*, and a great number of Villages, *Teeuragu* hath 3 walled Towns and 26 Villages, of which the chief beares the name of *Teeuragu*. *Fasliuen* three or four Towns, and 30 Villages, and the chief so called, *Gademex* hath 16 walled Towns, and about 60 Villages, the chief of which are *Gademex*, and *Statio*. *Fexzen* more then 50 Cities; or walled Towns, and above 100 Villages. The two last Estates are free, the others subject to the *Turks*, or to the Kings of *Tunni* and *Tripoli*. *Caphsa* of old *Capha*, which is believed to be built, by the *Lybian Hercules*, is put by some among the Governments of *Tunni*.

EGYPT.

Of all the parts of *Africa*, *EGYPT* is the nearest, and onely contiguous to *ASIA*, and this neighbourhood hath persuaded some Authors both Ancient and Moderne, to esteem *Egypt* either in whole, or in part, in *Asia*. At present we hold it all in *Africa*, and give for its bounds the *Red sea*, and the *Isthmus* which is between the *Red sea*, and the *Mediterranian*, on the East, the desarts of *Barca*, on the West, *Nubia*, on the South, and the *Mediterranian sea*, on the North. The *Nile* alone washes this Region through its whole length, which is from its *Cataracts* to the *Sea*, above 20 Leagues or more: its breadth not being above half so much, and of that breadth, that which is between the Mountains, which incloses the Valley of *Nile* on the East, and the

Coast of the *Red sea* is but desart, there being nothing inhabited but the valley, which lies on both sides the *Nile*, incloied with Mountains, and very narrow in the higher part of *Egypt*, but enlarging it self much more as it approaches the *Sea*. Of this figure which the Country makes, the antients have taken occasion first to divide it, into high and low; after into high, middle, and low; higher, which they called *Thebaïs*, by reason of *Thebes*, at present *Saida*: Middle, which they called *Hepatanomos*, by reason of the 7 *Nomi Provostships*, or *Governments* it contained, at present *Becbria*, or *Demefor*, lower, and more particularly *Egypt*, and sometimes *Delta*, the best part of the lower having the form of a Greek  $\Delta$ , the 2. sides of which were incloied by the branches of the *Nile*, and the third by the *Sea*, and this part is now called *Erriff*. The *Romans* changed something in the number, and in the names of these Provinces, which we shall now omit.

At present *Egypt* is divided into 12 principal *Casilisfs*, *Sangiacates*, or *Governments*, of which five answer to the higher *Egypt*, viz. *Girgia*, *Manfelout*, and *Ebenneuf*, on the left hand of the *Nile*, *Minio*, and *Cherkeff* on the right. Still descending the *Nile*, two with the Territory of *Cairo* answer to the middle *Egypt*, viz. the *Casilisfs* of *Fium*, and *Giza*, on the left, and *Cairo* with its Territory on the right hand of the *Nile*: then four others answers to the lower, viz. *Manfoura*, *Garbia*, *Menoufia*, *Callionbech*, or *Basbieh*, with *Alexandria*, and its Territory: for the *Casilisf* of *Bonbera*, or *Baera* is out of the limits of the ancient, and true *Egypt*, and in *Lybia*, which passes commonly under the name of the Kingdom of *Barca*.

*EGYPT* is very famous in that they would make us believe that the first men were here formed, and as there are yet formed a great number of *Creatures*, which appears when the Inundation of the *Nile* diminished: saying that the *Gods*, after them the *Heroes*, and in fine, men have reigned for almost an incredible number of years. Of these *Gods* there are three degrees, of which *Pan* was the most ancient of the eight first, *Hercules* of the 12 second, and *Demis* of the third. They divide the times of their men Kings by *Dynasties*, that is Dominations of divers families; and give so great a number to their Kings, and so great a time to

their Reigns, that they must have beginning long before the Creation of the world; and likewise by their account, their *Gods*, and *Hero's* had reigned before men the space of 20 or 25000 years: they attribute the foundation of most of their Cities to their *Gods*, *Hero's*, and *Kings*; and these they make, and build many *Labyrinths*, *Pyramids*, *Obeliskes*, *Colusses*, &c. not knowing how to expend their Treasures, or employ their people.

In the History of the Kings of Egypt, one *Sesostris* or *Sesostrius*, subdued all EUROPE and ASIA, if we will believe them. *Joseph* an Hebrew servant, and after master of the house of *Potipher*, from the prison, rose to such favour with the King, that he alone had almost the whole Government of the Kingdom, established his brothers in Egypt; and their descendants multiplied so, that in the end, the Kings of Egypt became jealous and fearful, lest they should make themselves masters of the Kingdom, another *Sesostris* subdued Syria, Assyria, Media, the Isles of Cyprus, &c. and was esteemed as much, or more than any of his predecessors. *Mephris* or *Memnon* it was that dedicated his Statue to the Sun, which he saluted at its rising, and shewed some signe of Joy, so miraculously was it made. *Basris* treated the Hebrews so ill, that he left after him the name of an infamous Tyrant. *Cenchris* was the Pharaoh who was drown'd in the Red sea. *Proteus* gave occasion to say that he turned himself sometimes into a *Lyon*, sometimes into a *Bull* or *Dragon*, &c. by reason of his different arming his head, or possibly for his different actions. *Remphis* had no other care but to keep up riches. *Chemnis* caused to be built the first and greatest Pyramid, employing therein 360000 men, for the space of 20 years, of which more anon. *Sesacor* or *Sesonchis*, armed 400000 foot, 60000 horse, & 1200 Chariots against *Rehoboam*, took and pillaged Jerusalem and its Temple. *Bochoris* though weak of body, was so prudent, that he gave laws to the Egyptians. This was he that leagued himself with *Hosea* against *Salmanazar* King of the Babylonians. *Sevecho* or *Sebeko* reigning in Egypt, *Senacherib* King of the Assyrians being come to assault him, an infinite number of Wild Rats, knawed in one night the Arrows in the Quivers, and the Strings or Cords, of the Bows, and the Thongs of the Assyrians Arms, which caused on the morrow both

their flight, and overthrow. *Necao*, or *Necans* began the Channel between the Nile, and the Red Sea, passed by the Meridional, or *Athiopian Ocean*, by the Occidental or *Atlantique Ocean*, recented by the streight of *Gibraltar*, and returned into Egypt, at the end of three years: he vanquished *Fostas* King of *Fada*, and was also vanquished by *Nebuchodonosor*. *Apryes* happy in his beginnings, was in the end defeated by those of *Cyrene* in *Lybia*; and saw all Egypt revolt, who chose for their King *Amasis*, under whose reign there were counted 20000 Cities in Egypt, as *Pliny* saith. Under this *Amasis*, the Estate fell into the hands of the Persians, after to the Macedonians, Greeks, and then to the Romans, &c. Among the Kings of Persia who ruled in Egypt, *Cambyses* was the first, and best known; among the Macedonians, and Greeks, *Alexander* the great; after whom the Kings of Egypt took the names of *Ptolemies*, from the name of him who first bore the title of King after *Alexander*, but after the Romans had to doe with the affairs of Egypt, there was nothing more remarkable of their History but *Cleopatra*: after whom *Augustus* reduced this Kingdom to a Roman Province; and it remained under the Romans, and under the Emperours of the East, near 700 years, till about the year of Grace 640, that the Arabs seized it under their *Califs*; who resided first at *Medina*, then at *Bagdad*, *Damascus*, and sometime at *Cairo*. The *Soldans* abolished this Califate in Egypt, and among them the Christians have but too well known one *Saladine*, who drove them out of a great part of the holy Land. Among these last Soldans, *Campsen*, *Gaurus*, and *Tomonboy* were esteemed valiant, yet were so ill served, that the Turks under their Emperour *Selimus*, became masters of Egypt in 1518 and doe yet possess it.

At present the Port sends a *Bassa* to command in Egypt, and the 12 *Casilifs* or *Governours* of the Country depend on this *Bassa*, and are as it were onely his Farmers: They give him every year a certain number of *Parfes*, (every *Parfe* of 750, or 760 *Lion dollars*) some 25, 30, 40, some onely 10 or 12 according to the goodness of the Country, or the greatness of their *Casilifs* or *Governments*, some having only 40 or 50 Towns, other 100, 200, 300 and more, besides these *Parfes* for the *Bassa*, they give to the *Tihaja* or *Haja* (who is as it were his

Chan-

*Chancellor* sixth, or a they give Prince, or times more they give *Parfes* the *Ardeps*, &c. The Grand the Grand dom is 1800 *Zeccheens* is 8 million, and this revenue parts, of w nishing and Pilgrimage for the paym cers, with management third and last. The *Ca* one of the b above 100y received its likewise its or under *God* extent, the *Corne*, and *fe* *lifs* of *Manse* *sucl*, are no and worth li On the othe *Mimis*, and C an extent as are incompar scarce yieldi others doe; being at the Mountain.

These 5 Egypt, or th in which are Towns and V through all occasion to *Fium* and *Gis* 10 to the mid and *Giza* hav is easily wat store of *Gr* *Flax*, *Milke* the *Casilif*, not a free sw of life and de have, being o and too nee

This City time been all

Chancellor) and other Officers, about the sixth, or at least the fifth part of what they give to the *Bassa*. And for the Prince, or *Grand Signior*, some pay six times more, others ten times more than they give to the *Bassa*: and besides these *Purses* they furnish a certain number of *Ardeps*, or measures of *Grain*, *Pulse*, &c. The constant Profit or Revenue that the *Grand Signior* draws from this Kingdom is 1800000 *Zeccheens* yearly, each *Zeccheen* is valued at 9 s. Sterling, which is 8 millions and 10000 pounds Sterling, and this revenue is divided into three equal parts, of which one is allotted for the furnishing and accomodating the Annual Pilgrimage to *Mecca*; the second goes for the payment of the Souldiers and Officers, with other necessary charges for the management of the Kingdom; and the third and last goes clear into his *Chequer*.

The *Casilis* of *Girgio*, or of *Sait* is one of the best and richest: it passed not above 100 years since for a Kingdom, and received its *Bassa* from the *Port*. It hath likewise its *Dieban*, disposes its *Casilis*, or under Governments, which lye in its extent, the soyle is fruitful, bears much *Corn*, and feeds many *Cattle*. The *Casilis* of *Maasfelout*, and *Beneusef*, or *Ebenusef*, are not so great but better peopled, and worth little less than that of *Girgio*: On the other side of the *Nile* are those of *Minia*, and *Cberkeffi*, which have as large an extent as the other three together; but are incomparably less as to the goodness, scarce yielding the 10 part of what the others doe; so great difference is there in being at the foot, and on the East of a Mountain.

These 5 *Casilis* answer to the higher *Egypt*, or the *Thebaïs* of the Antients: in which are a great many Citties, walled Towns and Villages, as are generally found through all *Egypt*, as anon I shall have occasion to treat of. Those *Casilis* of *Fium* and *Giza*, with the Territory of *Cairo* to the middle. The *Casilis* of *Fium* and *Giza* have very good Earth, and which is easily watered by the *Nile*: it yields 50

store of *Graine*, *Fruits*, as *Raisins*, &c. *Flax*, *Milke*, feeds many *Cattle*, &c. but the *Casilis*, or *Governour* of the last hath not a free sword, that is, hath not power of life and death as he pleases, as the others have, being out of the course of the *Arabs*, and too near *Cairo*, of which a word or two.

This City of *CAIRO* hath for a long time been all the Ornament of *Egypt*: It

was the residence of the *Sultans*, is now of the *Bassa*, some make it very great, others much less: the first compose it of 4 parts, to witt old *Cairo*, new *Cairo*, *Bonlas*, and *Charafat*; there being some void places between each: they say that these 4 parts together with their Suburbs may be about 10 or 12 Leagues long, and 7 or 8 broad, nor give they it less than 25 or 30 Leagues Circuit. They count 16 or 18000 Streets, 6000 *Mosques*, and if the particular *Oratories* be comprized above 20000, also they account about 200000 houses; among which are divers *Bazars* or *Markets*, *Canes* or *Magazines* of certain Merchandizes, many *Hospitals*, and magnificent structures. The *Castle* is great, strong, and well fortified, situate on the top of a Rock, which overlooks the City, and discovers the plain off all sides, even to the loss of sight. The *buildings* paintings, and other *Ornaments* which yet remain, doe testify the manificence of the *Soldans*. This *Castle* (as *Heylin* noteth) for largeness, may rather be held for a City, than a *Castle*, enclosed with high and strong walls, and divided into many Courts, in which were stately buildings, but now hath lost much of its glory, being in part destroyed by *Selimus*; that which now remains, he saith, serveth now for the Court or habitation of the *Bassa*, who whath the Government of this Kingdom. In and about this City, he saith, are abundance of delicate *Orchards*, which are places of great delight in which are excellent *fruits*, *walks*, &c. and nigh to this City, there is a pleasant Lake which is much frequented by the Inhabitants, who for their recreation pass some time daily on this Lake in boates, for their further mutual society, and seeing their friends and acquaintance.

*Cesar Lambert* of *Marsilia* in his relations of the years 1627, 28, 29, and 32, saith, that *Cairo* (separated from the other Cities and Towns) is not so great as *Paris*; (and if an eye witness of both may be believed he speaks truth) and takes for witness some eminent French Gentlemen then at *Cairo*, who confesses their joyning it to the Cities and Boroughs adjacent, it may with reason be called *Grand Cairo*: but however he maintains this to be but almost the shadow of *Cairo*, as it was 100 and odd years since, so much is the trade diminished, and that according to the report of the people of the Country. He saith likewise that the *Castle* hath

*Cairo Lambert*  
his description  
of  
*Cairo*.

hath been much greater, and more magnificent then it is at present, and observes several footsteps of proud buildings, now of no use; and after all, saith, that this is not strong.

*Paradyse  
descriptions  
of Cairo*

*Sandy* in his book of Travells among other remarkable things, makes this description of it, saying, that this great City called *Grand Cairo*, is inhabited by *Moors, Turks, Negroes, Jews, Copties, Greeks, and Armenians*, who are observed to be the poorest, and yet the most laborious, the civillest and honestest of all others; they are not subject to the *Turk*, neither doe they pay him any Tribute of Children, as other *Christians* do; and if they happen to be taken in Warts, they are freed from bondage; and this priviledge they gained, by a certain *Armenian* that foretold the greatness and glory of *Mahomet*. Here he saith they hatch eggs by artificial heat, and that in exceeding great numbers, which they doe in this manner. In a narrow entry, on each side, are two rows of ovens, one over the other. On the floors of the lower they lay *Flax*, over those mats and upon them eggs. The floors of the upper oven, are as roofs to the under, being grated over like kilns, onely having tunnels in the middle, which have covers over them. These gratings are covered with mats, and on them they lay drie and pulverated dung of *Camels, &c.* three or four inches thick, at the farther and higher sides of those upper ovens are trenches of lome, which are about a handfull deep, and two handfals broad, and in these they burn the aforesaid dung, which yieldeth a gentle heate, without any fire, under the mouths of the upper ovens are conveyances for the smoak, having round roofes, with vents at the top to open and shut; and thus lye the eggs in the lower ovens for the space of eight daies, turning them daily, and looking that the heate be gentle and moderate, then they put out the fire, and put the one half into the upper ovens, then they shut all close, and let them alone ten daies longer, at which time they become hatched.

*This  
is the way  
of  
Cairo*

*Sir Henry  
Blount his  
description  
of the City  
Cairo.*

I shall conclude my description of this City, with some observations which *Sir Henry Blount* hath observed during his abode there, first, he saith that there are *Mosques* and *Oratories* to the number of 35000, some of which are very stately and magnificent; next he saith there is 24000 noted streets, besides by streets and lanes, and some of these streets are about two

miles in length, and to all these streets, at each end, there is a door which every night is lockt up, and kept guarded, by which means tumults, robberies, fire or the like is prevented, and without the City to hinder the Incursions of the *Arabs* from abroad, there doth also watch every night four *Saniacks*, with each of them 1000 horsemen, the number of men that doe every night guard this City is 28000. This City is built, he saith, after the *Egyptian* manner, high, and of large rough stones, with part of brick, the streets are but narrow, but as the houses decay, they are rebuilt after the *Turkish* manner, mean, low, and made of mud and timber: yet their *Palaces* are stately, with spacious *Courts*, wherein are fair Trees to keep them from the heat of the Sun; also other *Courts* belonging to their *Palaces* adjoining to curious gardens, wherein are variety of excellent fruits, and watered with fountains, nor want they any state in their Edifices, which are vast, lofty, and very magnificent. This City notwithstanding its greatness, he saith, is so exceeding populous, that the people pass to and fro, as it were, in throngs; near to this City are *Josephs 7 Granaries* now brought to ruines, yet four of them are so repaired, as they are made use of to keep the publick corn. On the South end of this City, he saith, there yet remaineth a round Tower, wherein *Pharaohs* daughter lived when she found *Moses* in the river which runs hard by it.

The *Coyas* of *Cairo* as generally through all *Egypt*, are as well Forraim as Domestick, viz. the *Spanish Ryal of 2*, which by them is called the *Piastre*, and *Dollar*, which is commonly held worth 80 or 90 *Aspers*, which is their own *Coyas*, an *Asper* being worth something above a half penny *English*. A *Maidin* is the common *Silver Coyas* here, as also through all the *Turks* Dominions, 3. *Aspers* makes a *Maidin*, and 30 *Maidins* a *Dollar*. Their *Gold Coyas* are the *Sheriff*, the *Solaway* and *Chequin*, all which are of one and the same value, and is accounted to be 81. *Sterling*. They keep their 40 50 *coyas* by *Aspers*, *Maidins* and *Dollers*.

Their weights here, as throughout all *Egypt*, are accounted to be of four sorts. The First, is called the *Quintar* of *Zera*, which is 212 li. *Haberdupois English*. The Second, is the *Quintar* of *Farsori*, which is 93 li. *Haberdupois English*. The Third, is the *Quintar* *Zaidin*, which is 134 li. *Haberdupois English*, and the Fourth, is the *Quintar* *Mina*, which is 167 li. *Haberdupois English*. Note

Note

to the  
Also nor  
Musk, &  
Metallic  
ver 3 an  
8 Ounces  
One li

dupois En  
Quintar  
tar 108 R  
75 Rotolo  
Rotolo.

Their  
lexandria  
Egypt, ar  
one, the  
ches Engl  
Stuffs, Si  
The other  
measure of  
ches Engl  
of Linnan  
Commoditi

South  
other side  
distance,  
greatest  
them to be  
drowned in  
himself, th  
least for his  
est of the t  
Seven wond  
gular, lesse  
Basis of ev  
length, an  
scended by  
bout three f  
a bigness, a  
in this, as a  
veral Room  
18 other Py  
not so ancie  
which I shal

Nigh to  
place where  
which, the  
of their dea  
found; and  
places where  
fatham und  
the Sand,  
Earth is so f  
sture never  
their art of  
preserve th

Note, that the first three *Quintars* are by *Rotols*; but the *Quintar* contains in *Alexandria* 20 *Ounces* to the *Mina*, and in *Cairo* 16 *Ounces*. Also note, that fine *Commodities*, as *Amber*, *Musk*, &c. are sold by the *Metalico*. Fifty *Metalicoes* is a *Mark* weight in *Gold* or *Silver*; and 42 our *English Mark* weight of 8 *Ounces Troy*.

One hundred pound futtle of *Ilaber* 10 *dupou English*, doth make by the *Zera Quintar* 48 *Rotols*: By the *Forsari Quintar* 108 *Rotols*: By the *Zaidin Quintar* 75 *Rotols*; and by the *Mina Quintar* 54 *Rotols*.

Their *Measures* of length in *Cairo*, *Alexandria*, and generally throughout all *Egypt*, are noted to be of two sorts; the one, the *Pico Turchesco*, which is 22  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Inches English*, and serves to measure fine *Stuffs*, *Silks*, *Cloth of Gold*, or the like. The other, the *Pico Barbaresco*, or proper measure of the *Countrey*, being 25  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Inches English*, and serves for the measuring of *Linnen* and *Woollen Cloth*, and the like *Commodities*.

South West of *Grand Cairo*, on the other side of the *Nile*, about four Leagues distance, stands the three oldest, and greatest *Pyramids*; the *Jews* affirming them to be built by *Pharaoob*, who was drowned in the *Red Sea*; the fairest for himself, the next for his *Wife*, and the least for his only *Daughter*. The greatest of the three, and chief of the *Worlds* Seven wonders, is made in form *Quadrangular*, lessning by equal degrees; the *Basis* of every *Square*, is 300 paces in length; and so lessning by degrees, ascended by 250 steps, each step being about three feet high; the *Stones* are all of a bigness, and hewed four square. And in this, as also in the others, there are several *Rooms*. There are also about 16 or 18 other *Pyramids*, but of less note, and not so ancient as these three aforesaid are, which I shall pass by.

Nigh to this *City*, in the *Plain*, is the place where they did inter their dead; in which, they used such art, that the bodies of their dead remain to this day perfect sound; and these we call *Mummies*. The places where these bodies lie, are about ten fatham under ground in *Vaults*; either in the *Sand*, or upon an open *Stone*: The *Earth* is so full of dry *Sand*, wherein moisture never comes; which together by their art of *Embalming* them, doth thus preserve the *Bodies* for these so many

thousand years past. In the *Brest* of these *Mummies* is set a small *Idol*, some of one shape, some of another, with *Hieroglyphicks* on the back side of them.

This *City* of *Grand Cairo* was formerly of a very great *Trade*, but that which hath now ruined it; as likewise, that of *Alexandria*, is the discovery of the *East-Indies* by the *Cape of Good Hope*; by which, the *English*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*, at present go to these *Indies*, and bring into the *West* all those *Drugs*, *Spices*, *Precious Stones*, *Pearls*, and a thousand other *Commodities* which came before by *Aleppo*, or by *Egypt*; but passing by *Cairo*, let us come to the other *Casilis*.

In the lower *EGYPT*, are those of *Garbia*, *Menusia*, and *Callionbech*, within the *Delta*, and between the *Branches* of the *Niles*. That of *Mansaura*, without, and Eastward towards the *Holy Land*, and *Arabia*: Likewise without, and Westward of the *Nile*, is the *Casilis* of *Bonhera* or *Baera*, which stretches it self from the *Nile* unto the *Cape of Bonandrea*.

This last *Casilis* is almost quite out of *Egypt*, though within its *Government*, and the length of its *Sea Coast*, not less than that of all *Egypt* along the *Nile*: But that which is distant from the *Nile*, is subject to the *Arabs*, and very *Desert*; that which is near it is better worth. Its *Governor* is obliged to Mannel a *Calloch* or *Channel* of 100000 paces in length, to carry water from the *Nile* to *Alexandria*; and when a new *Bassa* arrives in *Egypt*, this *Governor* hath likewise to furnish him with *Horses* and *Camels* for himself, his *train* and *baggage*, and to defray his charges from *Alexandria* unto *Cairo*. But since the *Wars* with the *Venetians*, the *Bassa's* have generally come round by *Land*, and not adventured by *Sea* to *Alexandria*. Among the *Deserts* of this *Casilis*, those of *St. Macaire* have had 360 and odd *Monasteries*: And here is likewise to be seen, a *Lake* of *Mineral Water*, which converts into *Nitre*, the *Wood*, *Bones*, or *Stones*, that are thrown into it.

The *Casilis* of *Callionbech*, *Menusia*, and *Garbia*, being between the *Branches* of the *Nile*, and out of the course of the *Arabs*, ought to be esteemed the best in *Egypt*; and particularly, the last which yields more abundantly *Sugar*, *Rice*, *Milk's Grains*, *Oyl*, *Flax*, *Herbs*, *Honey*, *Fruits*, &c. And *Maala*, one of its principal *Cities*, which they call the *Little Medina*, is a place of great devotion with them, where

The Casilis by the lower Nile with their chief places.

these streets, at which every is guarded, by liberties, fire or without the of the Arabi so watch every each of them of men that City is 28000. after the Egp- of large tough the streets are cases decay, they manner, mean, and timber: yet with spacious es to keep them un; also other places adjoining ein are variety of ed with foundy state in their E- lofty, and very notwithstanding so exceeding popa- to and fro, near to this City now brought to are so repaired, as keep the publick of this City, besaich, and Tower, where- ed when the found uns hard by it. generally through- ain as *Domestick*, which by them and *Dollar*, which 80 or 90 *Aspers*, an *Asper* being a half penny Eng- mon *Silver Coyne* ne *Turks* *Dominion*, and 30 *Ma-* Coyne are the *She-* min, all which are and is accounted y keep their *Ac-* and *Dollers*. s throughout all be of four sorts. *Quintar* of *Zera*, *ois English*. The *of Forsari*, which *ish*. The *Third*, which is 134 *li*. of the *Fourth*, is h is 167 *li*, *Ha-* Note



they hold yearly a famous Fair, which the *Governor* opens with great pomp, observing many Ceremonies. The *Casilifs* of *Manfours* doth produce the same *Commodities*, but not in so great a quantity, though of a greater extent than *Garbia*; but more over it yields *Cassia*. These four or five *Casilifs* take up the whole Coast of *Egypt*, and of its *Government*; and on this Coast are the Cities of *Alexandria*,<sup>10</sup> *Rofetto*, *Damiata*, and some others.

The City of Alexandria depicted.

*Alexandria*, among the *Turks*, *Scandria*, was built by the command of *Alexander the Great*, and by him peopled with *Greeks*, immediately after the conquest of *Egypt*; and the Modell traced by the *Architect* *Dinocrates*, who for want of other matter, made use of *Wheat-flower* to mark out the circuit; which was taken for a good *Augury*. It was afterwards beautified by many, but especially by *Pompey*. It is situated Westward of the *Delta*, over against the *Ile of Pharos*, and built upon a Promontory, thrusting it self into the *Sea*; with which, on the one side, and on the other, the *Lake Marcotis*. It is a place of good defence; its circuit is about 12000 paces, adorned with many stately edifices, among which, the most famous was the *Scrapium*, or the *Temple* of their<sup>30</sup> god *Separis*. Which for curious workmanship, and the stateliness of the Building, was inferior to none but the *Roman Capital*, then the *Library* erected by *Ptolemy Philadelphus*; in which there was 200000 Volumes, which *Demetrius* promised to augment with 300000 more. And this in the War against *Julius Cesar* was unfortunately burnt. And this is that *Philadelphus* who caused the *Bible* to be<sup>40</sup> translated into *Greek* by the Seventy two *Interpreters*, which were sent him by the *High Priest Eleazar*. In this City, in *Anno 180*, *Gantenus* read *Divinity* and *Philosophy*, who, as it is thought, was the first Inlitturer of *Universities*. This City hath been enriched with 400 high and strong *Forts* and *Towers*; and the *Ptolemies* or *Kings of Egypt*, having made here their residence after the death of *Alexander* the<sup>50</sup> *Great*, and caused many stately and magnificent *Palaces* to be built: Under the *Houses* are *Cisterns* sustained with *Pillars* of *Marble*; as also *Pavements* for their refreshment, being their Summer habitation, their ancient custom, by reason of the heat, being to build their Houses as much under ground as above, the upper part serving for their Winter habitation. It

was their custom also to erect great *Pillars* of *Marble* or *Porphyry*; among others, that of *Pompey*, which stands upon a four square *Rocky Foundation* without the *Walls*, on the *South side* of the *City*: It is round, and of one intire piece of *Marble*, and of an incredible bigness, being above *One hundred foot high*, not far from the place where he was slain in a *Boat* at *Sea*, and where his ashes were laid. In this *City* are also two square *Obelisks*, full of *Egyptian Hieroglyphicks* of a vast bigness, and each of one intire piece of *Stone*; said to be thrice as big at that at *Rome*, or that at *Constantinople*. Near these *Obelisks*, as *St. Henry Blunt* relateth, are the ruins of *Cleopatra's Palace*, high upon the shore, with the private *Gate*, whereat he received *Mark Antony* after their overthrow at *Allium*. And he saith, That about a bow shot further, upon another *Rock* on the shore, is yet a round *Tower*, which was part of *Alexanders* *Palace*. This *City*, after the *Romans*, were *Masters* of *Egypt*, was maintained forich, fowell peopled, and so powerful, that it was esteemed the *Second* of their *Empire*: And when the *Arabs* seized it, there was counted 12000 *Sellers* of *Herbs*, 4000 *Bathing-houses*, 400 *Play-houses*, &c.

Thus was the former state of this *City*, but at present almost a heap of ruins, especially, the *East* and *South* parts; not the moyety of the *City* being inhabited. And were it not for some conveniences of *Trade*, or the like, more then any pleasure of the place, by reason of the evil *Air* which reigns there, it would be soon left wholly desolate. It is now inhabited by a mixture of *Nations*, as, *Turks*, *Jews*, *Greeks*, *Moors*, *Copties*, and *Christians*. Now remarkable for a *Mosque*, in which *St. Mark*, their first *Bishop*, was said to be buried: Yet their rests still within, and near the *City*, many *Obelisks*, *Columns*, *Foot-steps* of proud Buildings, &c.

*Rafchis* or *Rofetto*, a pritty little *City*, seated on the *Nile*, four miles from the *Mediterranean Sea*; a place of no strength, but of a great *Trade*, and well furnished with several sorts of *Commodities*. Its Buildings are stately, both within and without, and is onely defended by a *Castle*, being without *Walls*, or other *Fortifications*. This *City* in ancient times, was noted for a place of all kinds of *Beastiness* and *Luxury*.

*Damiata* is a fair *City*, and its Land excellent, famous for the often *Sieges* laid

unto

unto it by 1220. *W* did stoutly end, the *L* them did who findin ed in; who corner, he give them found the *Pestilence*, them: *W* needs add t *City* was b of the ruine by *Peleus*, for the mur by the gods in the adjoy *Heylin* note *St. Isidore*. *Pious* and *R* tant. *And* *mous Geogr* *And* these t present the abundance c in some repu on the *Red* *nal*; and *C* *Merchandise* fair *Town* *Nile*, by som of *Josephan* *Christ* for sea ruins of a fa as they say ther of *Conf* too tedious *Egypt* is not under its fir as I have se *Tables*, as t *Casilifs*; a pleasantly tea which travel dividing it s cially in the *veral Monet* the *Mediterr* ted several C to which Ire In this C one is called *Territory* of *Leagues* in l other is call *Casilifs* of 27 *Leagues* and 3 in bre

A great Pillars  
 among others,  
 ds upon a four  
 without the  
 of the City: It  
 piece of Mar-  
 bigness, being  
 high, not far  
 slain in a Boat  
 were laid. In  
 e Obelisks, full  
 of a vast big-  
 piece of Stone,  
 ate at Rome, or  
 Near these Obel-  
 lateh, are the  
 ce, high upon  
 e Gate, where-  
 atony after their  
 d he faith, That  
 , upon another  
 a round Tower,  
 anders Palace,  
 s, were Masters  
 orich, fowell  
 ul, that it was  
 eir Empire: And  
 here was count-  
 , 4000 Bashing-  
 ce.  
 ate of this City,  
 eap of ruines, e-  
 uth parts; not  
 being inhabited,  
 onveniencies of  
 hen any pleasure  
 of the evil Air  
 ould be soon left  
 winhabited by a  
 , Turks, Jews,  
 and Christians.  
 osque, in which  
 p, was said to be  
 kill within, and  
 elisks, Columns,  
 dings, &c.  
 rity little City,  
 e miles from the  
 ce of no strength,  
 and well furnished  
 mmodities. Its  
 orth within and  
 nded by a Castle,  
 other Fortifica-  
 ent times, was  
 ndes of Beastli-  
 and its Land ex-  
 often Sieges laid  
 unto

unto it by the *Christian* Armies, in *Anno*  
 1220. Who for 18 Months continuance,  
 did stoutly defend themselves; till in the  
 end, the Enemy hearing no noise, some of  
 them did adventure to Scale the *Walls*,  
 who finding no resistance, the Army march-  
 ed in; who then found in every house and  
 corner, heaps of dead bodies, and none to  
 give them burial; and searching them,  
 found them to die of *Famine* and of the  
*Pestilence*, which grievously rag'd amongst  
 them: Which lamentable spectacle, must  
 needs add terror to the beholder. This  
 City was built, as some Authors say, out  
 of the ruins of *Pelusium*, which was built  
 by *Peleus*, the Father of *Arctius*; who  
 for the murder of his Brother *Phocæus*, was  
 by the gods commanded to purge himself  
 in the adjoining *Lake*. This place (as  
*Heylin* noteth) was the *Episcopal See* of 20  
*St. Isidore*, surnamed *Pelusotes*, whose  
*Pious* and *Rhetorical Epistles*, are yet ex-  
 tant. And at this place *Ptolemæus*, the fa-  
 mous *Geographer*, drew his first breath.  
 And these three Cities, after *Cairo*, are at  
 present the fairest of *Egypt*. There are  
 abundance of other Cities which are yet  
 in some repute; as *Sues* and *Cosir*, seated  
 on the *Red Sea*; *Sues* noted for its *Arse-  
 nal*; and *Cosir*, for its reception of the 30  
*Merchandizes* of the East; and *Saïet*, a  
 fair Town not far from *Cairo*, on the  
*Nile*, by some said to be the dwelling place  
 of *Joseph* and *Mary*, where they fled with  
*Christ* for fear of *Herod*, where are yet the  
 ruins of a fair and beautiful *Temple*, which  
 as they say was built by *Helena*, the Mo-  
 ther of *Constantine*, with several others  
 too tedious to name: But to speak truth,  
*Egypt* is nothing in regard of what it was 40  
 under its first *Kings*, with several other,  
 as I have set down in my *Geographical*  
*Tables*, as they are found in said *Twelve*  
*Cassilifs*; and are all commodiously and  
 pleasantly seated on the Banks of the *Nile*,  
 which traverses the whole Country; di-  
 viding it self into several streams, espe-  
 cially in the Higher *Egypt*, where with fe-  
 veral Months it falls into (or receives)  
 the *Mediterranean Sea*: Also, I have no- 50  
 ted several Cities seated on the *Red Sea*,  
 to which I refer the Reader.

In this Country are two *Lakes*, the  
 one is called *The Lake of Bucheïra*, in the  
 Territory of *Alexandria*, and is about 12  
 Leagues in length, and 7 in breadth; the  
 other is called *The Lake of Moëris*, in the  
*Cassilifs* of *Giza* and *Fium*; and is about  
 27 Leagues in length, and 20, 15, 10, 5,  
 and 3 in breadth.

Thus much for the Description of the  
 Country: In the next place, I shall treat  
 of the *Inhabitants*, as to their *Laws*, *Reli-  
 gion*, *Customs*, *Antiquities*, *Hieroglyphicks*,  
*Stature*, *Habit*, &c. Also the *Fertility* and  
*Rarities* of the Country, amongst which  
 I shall end with the Description of the  
*Nile*.

Their *Laws*, as to *Justice* and Govern-  
 ment, are perfectly *Turkish*; and there-  
 fore I shall refer the Reader to the Descrip-  
 tion of the *Turks*, as ye may find it treat-  
 ed of in the Description of *Constantinople*,  
 their *Metropolitan City*. Yet for rigor in  
 their punishments, they exceed other part  
 of *Turkey*, and that by reason of the trea-  
 cherous, malicious, and base dispositions  
 of them; their executions being different  
 according to the quality of the crime, for  
 some offences they use, *flaying* alive;  
 for others *impaling*; *cutting* them of with  
 a red hot *Iron* on the *Waist*; for others  
*coyning* with *Honey* in the *Sun*; also, some  
 they hang by the *Foot*, and the like  
 cruelties.

The ancient People of this Country  
 were *Heathens*, worshipping the *Sun*, *Moon*,  
 and *Stars*, sacrificing to *Apollo*, *Jupiter*,  
*Hercules*, and the rest of the gods; also  
 attributing *divine honors* to *Serpents*, *Cro-  
 codiles*, as also to *Garlick*, *Onions*, and  
*Leeks*: But the god which they most a-  
 dored, was *APH*, a coal black *Ox*, with a  
 white *Star* in his *Forehead*, two *Hairs* only  
 in his *Tail*, and the form of an *Eagle* on  
 his back; but now *Mahometism* is much  
 received amongst them. The *Christian*  
*Faith* was here first planted by *St. Mark*,  
 who was the first *Bishop* of *Alexandria*.  
 And these *Christians* are all of the *Jacob-  
 ites* Sect, observing the same *Customs*  
 and *Forms* of *Ceremonies* in their *Re-  
 ligion*, as those formerly treated of in  
*Asia*.

Among the many *Rarities* or *Antiqui-  
 ties* of this Country, are the *Pyramides*;  
 as also the *Obelisks* and *Columns* spoken of  
 before; next on the Banks of the *River*  
*Nile*, stood that famous *Labyrinth* built  
 by *Psammetichus*; a place of an exceeding  
 great bigness, containing 1000 Houses,  
 besides 12 *Royal Palaces*, within an intire  
 Wall, which had but one entrance; but  
 an exceeding many turnings and windings,  
 which caused the way to be exceeding dif-  
 ficult to finde, the building being as much  
 under ground as above. The Buildings  
 were of *Marble*, and adorned with stately  
*Columns*: The Rooms were fair and  
 large,

large, especially a *Hall*, which was the place of their general Conventions, which was adorned with the statues of their gods, and composed of polished *Marble*. Not far from the *Pyramides* doth stand the *Colossus*, being in form of an *Ethiopian Woman*, which heretofore was adorned as a *Rural Deity*. This *Colossus* is of a vast bigness, and is made out of the *Natural Rock*, together with huge flat *Stones*. Also the *Ile* and *Tower* of *Pharos*, opposite to *Alexandria*, a place of a great bigness, and of great rarity and magnificence; its *Watch Tower*, was of an exceeding great height, being ascended by steps, and on the top of this *Tower* there were placed every night abundance of *Lanterns* with *Lights*, for the directions of *Sailors*, by reason of the dangerousness of the *Sea* on that *Coast*, being so full of *Flats*.

The Jews  
at Hiero-  
lyphicks.

The *Egyptians*, instead of *Letters*, made use of *Hieroglyphicks*; of which, an example or two shall suffice; viz. For *God*, they painted a *Falcon*; for *Eternity*, they painted the *Sun* and *Moon*; for a *Tear*, they painted a *Snake* with his *Tail* in his *Mouth*; for any thing that was abominable, they painted a *Fish*. With a 10000 more in the like nature too tedious to name.

The op-  
tion are of  
several  
sorts.

The *Egyptians* are said to be the first that invented *Arithmetick*, *Geometry*, *Musick*, *Philosophy*, *Physick*; and by reason of the perpetual serenity of the *Air*, found out the course of the *Sun*, *Moon*, and *Stars*; their *Constellations*, *Risings*, *Settings*, *Aspects* and *Influences*; dividing by the same, *Years* into *Months*, grounding their *divinations* upon their hidden properties. Also the first, *Necromancers* and *Sorcerers*.

They dif-  
fer from  
others, &c.

These *People* were much given to *Luxury*, prone to *innovations*, cowardly, cruel, faithless, crafty, and covetous; much addicted to *Fortune telling*, wandering from one *Country* to another, by which cheating tricks they get their livelihood: But these *People* are not the same as the ancient *Inhabitants* were, being a *Misceline* of other *Nations* as aforesaid: These *People* not adding themselves to *Arts* or *Letters*, as the former did. They are of a mean stature, active, of a tawny complexion, but indifferently well featured; and their *Women* fruitful in *Children*, sometimes bringing two or three at a time.

They are  
not

Their *habit* is much after the *Turkish* dress, in which they are not over curious.

Among the many *Rarities* in this *Country*, I shall content my self with only two or three; and first, About five miles from *Cairo*, as one *Stephen Dublies*, a grave and sober man reports, as being an eye witness, saith, That there is a place, in which, on every *Good Friday*, there appears the *Heads*, *Arms*, and *Legs* of Men, rising out of the ground, and that to a very great number; and if a man draws nigh them, or doth touch them, they will shrink into the *Earth* again: A thing, which if true, is an exceeding great wonder, denoting the *Resurrection* of the whole *Body*. But this is not impossible, though very improbable.

They have in this *Country* a *Race* of *Horses*, which for one property may be esteemed the best in the *World*; that is, they will run without eating or drinking, one jot, four days and nights together: And there are some *Egyptians*, which with the help of a *Sway* bound about their body, and carrying with them a little food to eat, are able to ride them. For shape, these *Horses* do not surpass others; and for this property they are held so rare, and esteemed at three years of age, to be worth 1000 pieces of *Eight*, and sometimes more: And for this breed of *Horses*, there are *Officers* appointed to look after them, and to see the *Fales* of them, and to register them in a *Book* with the colour, &c. which they receive from the testimony of credible persons, to avoid cheats. But these *Horses* are not fit for any other then such a *Sandy Country*, by reason of their tender feet.

But let us come to the *Nile*, which is the principal piece in all *Egypt*: I hold it for one of the most considerable *Rivers* of the *World*. The length of its course, and the divers *Mouths* by which it discharges it self into the *Sea*. Its inundation at a prefixed time, the quality of its *Waters*, and the fertility and richness it leaves where it passes, are my inducing *Reasons*.

It begins towards the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, running for the space of above 45 degrees of *Latitude*, which are 11 or 1200 *Leagues* in a straight line, and more then 2000 in its course, crosses a great *Lake*, embraces the fairest *River Island*, and waters the richest *Valley*, we have knowledge of. Among its *Inhabitants* this is particular, that naturally some are *Black* and some *White*; and that in the same time, the

one have  
when the  
where )  
Summer.

Its tru-  
known;  
comes ou-  
its course  
which we  
ceives a  
from the  
tell whet-  
name of  
be done:  
of *Egypt*,  
Kings of  
search. I  
who hath  
must be  
South, an  
City of *Z*  
same name  
being like

At the  
*Nile* passes  
*Damons* an  
ceives a litt  
*Zafflan*, w  
*Zafflan*; &  
*guere*, the  
descends fr  
at the entr  
*Nubia*, whi  
from *Saara*  
parently an  
lied to be  
*Rivers* are  
disburthen  
carry a great

But in *E*  
passes betw  
approaching  
and the *N*  
Branches, a  
the *Sea*, T  
seven, nine  
time of *Inu*  
principal on  
*Damiat*,  
*Bourles*, an  
Navigable,  
the others al

This *Innu*  
ful, some  
winds that  
the current,  
the quantity  
to the cont  
where the

in this Coun-  
with onely two  
ive miles from  
bles, a grave  
being an eye  
is a place, in  
there appears  
of Men, rising  
hat to a very  
draws nigh  
m, they will  
n: A thing,  
ing great woa-  
rection of the  
not impossible,

ntrey a Race of  
operty may be  
World; that is,  
ng or drinking,  
ghts together:  
ans, which with  
nd about their  
hem a little food  
m. For shape,  
others; and for  
held so rare, and  
age, to be worth  
and sometimes  
of Horses, there  
look after them,  
em, and to regi-  
the colour, &c.  
the testimony of  
id cheats. But  
or any other then  
y reason of their

e Nile, which is  
Egypt: I hold it  
erable Rivers of  
n of its course,  
y which it dif-  
Its inundation  
ality of its Wa-  
and richness it  
re my inducing

Tropick of Ca-  
that of Cancer,  
bove 45 degrees  
or 1200 Leagues  
re then 2000 in  
Lake, embraces  
and waters the  
knowledge of,  
his is particular,  
Black and some  
same time, the  
one

one have their Summer, or their Winter; when the others (which is not known elsewhere) have their Winter, or their Summer.

Its true *Spring* is likewise almost unknown; it is certain that the River that comes out of the *Lake of Zair*, and takes its course towards the North, is that which we call the *Nile*: But this *Lake* receives a number of *Rivers* which descend from the Mountains of the *Moon*. To tell whether any of these *Rivers* bears the name of *Nile*, and which they be, cannot be done: Though there have been Kings of *Egypt*, *Roman Emperors*, *Sultans*, and Kings of *Portugal*, which have made the search. In sum, and according to *Ptolemy*, who hath said as much as any hitherto, it must be that most advanced towards the South, and which washes at present the City of *Zambery*, crosses the *Lake* of the same name, or of *Zair*; the City of *Zair* being likewise on the same *Lake*.

At the coming out of the *Lake*, the *Nile* passes between the Kingdoms of *Damout* and *Goyame* in the *Abyssines*; receives a little on this side the *Equator*, the *Zaffan*, which comes out of the *Lake of Zaffan*; near the *Ile of Mero* or *Gueguere*, the *Cabella* or *Yaguazzi*, which descends from the *Lake of Barceua*; and at the entrance into *Egypt* of the River *Nubia*, which crosses *Nubia*, and comes from *Saara*, and *Bikedulgerid*; and apparently answers to that, which *Fuba* believed to be the true *Nile*. These three Rivers are the greatest of all those which disburthen themselves in the *Nile*, and carry a great many others.

But in *Egypt* the *Nile* remains alone, passes between two ranks of Mountains, approaching the Sea, the Valley enlarges, and the *Nile* divides it self into many Branches, and glides by many Mouths to the Sea. The Ancients made account of seven, nine, or more, now except in the time of Inundation, there are onely two principal ones; which pass by *Rosetta* and *Damiatia*; and three lesser by *Turber*, *Bowles*, and *Maala*: These not being Navigable, but during the Inundation, the others always.

This *Inundation* of the *Nile* is wonderful, some attribute it to certain *Etesian* winds that is North-West, which repulse the current, and make it swell: Others to the quantity of *Snows* which melt; and to the continual *Rains* which fall there, where the *Nile* hath its beginnings, or

there where it passes. Others will have the Ocean then to swell, and under ground communicate its Waters to the *Nile*, &c. But there are so many different opinions touching the cause of this *Inundation*, and so many Reasons are given pro and con, that a whole Treatise might be made of it. *Gabriel Sionite* and *John Helronite Maronites*, in a Treatise they have put before the *Geography* of an *Arab of Nubia*, report after *Abn-Chalil-Ben-Aali*, that this *Inundation* comes from a dew which falls at a certain time, known there by the Earth weighing more after the dew begins to fall, and less before.

This *Inundation* begins about the sixteenth or seventeenth of *June*, increases for the space of forty days, and decreases for other forty days; so that its greatest height is about the end of *July*, and it ends about the beginning of *September*. If it begins sooner or later (which is observed by certain *Pillars* in the *Towns*, and particularly in the *Castle of Rhoda*, which stands in a little *Ile* opposite to old *Cairo*, and where the *Bassa* resides, during the solemnity of opening the Channel, which passes through and fills the *Cisterns* of *Grand Cairo*; and in the *Fields* by the *Aspes*, *Tortoyes*, *Craw-fish*, *Crocodiles*, &c. who remove their Eggs or Young from the Banks of the *Nile*, immediately before the *Inundation*, and lay them there where it will bound) they give judgment, whether their will be more or less Water, and the People are advertised, to the end, they may take order for what they have to do.

The King *Mari* had expressly caused to be dug the *Lake of Mari*, to receive the Waters of the *Nile*; when it had too much, or to furnish it when too little: At present they remedy it when little, by *Channels*, advanced towards the higher Countrey, that they may be watered: When too much, by certain *Flood-gates* which they open to let the water slide away.

For the effect of this *Inundation*, is, That all that the *Nile* covers with its Water, is made fruitful, and no more. It Rains sometimes in the Lower *Egypt*, very little in the Higher, and not sufficient to moisten the Earth; but when the *Nile* increases too much, or too little, it doth hurt: At 12 Cubits, it is yet Famine; at 15 or 16 sufficient; at 18 or 20 abundance: The little cannot moisten the highest Lands, and nearest the Mountains: That which lies too long, leaves not time to

Sowe the lower Grounds, but the little, or none at all, is more dangerous then the too much, and often besides the Famine, prefaces some other misfortune near. So before the death of *Pompey*, there was little, before that of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*, none at all.

Moreover, the Dew which causes this *Inundation*, is imperceptible, as the same Author says: He assures us however, that so soon as it falls, the Air is purified, and all *diseases* and *Pestilential Feavers* of the Country, (which are there very rief) cease; which makes it appear, that these Waters are excellent, and indeed all Authors agree, that the Waters of the *Nile*, are sweet, healthful, nourishing, and that they keep a long time without corrupting; so that they be discharged from the Mud and Sand they bring along with them from the Grounds, through which they pass. The first Kings of *Egypt* made so much account of them, that they drank nothing else then the Waters of *Nile*; and when *Philadelphus* married his Daughter *Berenice*, to *Antiochus Theos*, King of *Affyria*, he gave order, that from time to time there should be the Water of *Nile* carried her, that she might drink no other. And the fruitfulness which these Waters cause, is not onely known by their making the Earth so exceeding fertile, (which otherwise is as barren) so that if they do in a manner but throw in their Seed, they have four rich Harvests in less then four Moneths; and in that they produce and nourish an infinite number of strange Creatures, as *Crocodiles*, which from an Egg, no bigger then that of a *Goose*, cometh to be 20, 25, and sometimes to 30 foot long. His Feet are armed with Claws, his Back and Sides with Scales so hard, not to be pierced; but his Belly soft and tender, by reason of which, he receiveth many times his deaths wound: His Mouth is exceeding wide, hath no Tongue; his Jaws very strong, and armed with a sharp Set of Teeth as it were indented: His Tail is equal to his Body in length, by which he infoldeth his prey, and draws it in the Water: At the taking of his prey, he gives jumps, and it is a pretty while ere he can turn himself; so that if it be not just before him, it may escape him. Four Moneths in the year it is observed to eat nothing, which is during the Winter season, the Female is said to lay one hundred Eggs at one time, which she is as many days a hatching; and they will live to the age of one

It is Water  
in reading  
unmistaking.

hundred years, and growing to the last. Also this River breedeth *River-Horses*, of old called *Hippo-potami*, they have great Heads, wide Jaws, and armed with Tufts as white as *Ivory*; they are proportioned like a *Swine*, but as big in body as a *Cow*; smooth skinned, but exceeding hard. Also *River-Bulls* about the bigness of a Calf of a Twelve moneth old, and in shape like a *Bull*. Also here are found abundance of great and small *Fishes*. And lastly, the fruitfulness of these Waters are shewed, in that the *Women* and *Cattle* which drink thereof, are very fruitful, ordinarily bringing forth their Children and Young, by two and three, and sometimes by four and five at a time.

There are yet many fine things might be said of the *Nile*, as, its divers Names, its *Cataracts*, &c. But we have likewise omitted many things which might be said of *Egypt*, which hath been famous in *Holy Writ*, as well as in prophane, and which would swell into a Volum. Let us end with saying something of the fertility of the Country, what *Commodities* it produces and communicates to other Countreys.

It is plentifully furnished with several *Metals*, the Ground along the *Nile* produceth abundance of *Corn*, *Rice*, *Pulses*, and other *Grains*; that it may well be termed the Granary of the *Turkish*, as it was formerly of the *Roman Empire*; and it seeds much *Cattle*, produceth great plenty of *Fish*, hath store of *Fowls*, yields excellent *Fruits*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Figs*, *Cherries*, &c. Also *Capers*, *Olives*, *Flax*, *Sugars*, *Cassia*, *Sena*, *Oyl*, *Balsome*; some *Druges* and *Spices*, *Wax*, *Civet*, *Elephants Teeth*, *Silk*, *Cotton*, *Linnen Cloth*, with several good *Mansfaatures*; also *Hides*, besides the *Ashes* of two little Weeds growing about *Alexandria*, whereof quantity are transported to *Venice*; and without which, they cannot make their *Chrystal-Glasses*. We may add, that *Incense*, *Coffee*, and other *Commodities* of *Arabia* and *India*, pass through this Countrey, to be transported into the Western parts of *Turky*.

Throughout the Country they have abundance of *Palm-trees*, which may be reckoned among the *Rarities* of the Country, and that for several Reasons. These Trees are observed always to grow in couples, Male and Female: They both thrust forth *Cods* full of *Seeds*; but the Female is onely fruitful, but not except it grows by the Male, and having his Seed mixt with



ing to the last.  
*river-Horses*, of  
they have great  
med with *Turks*  
are proportioned  
body as a *Con*;  
ding hard. Also  
gness of a Calf  
and in shape like  
nd abundance of  
And lastly, the  
eers are shewed,  
ttle which drink  
ordinarily bring-  
and Young, by  
mes by four and

ne things might  
ars divers *Names*,  
ve have likewise  
ich might be said  
en famous in *Holy*  
ane, and which  
Let us end with  
fertility of the  
*ities* it produces  
r Countreys.

ed with several  
ng the *Nile* pro-  
*rn*, *Rice*, *Pulce*,  
it it may well be  
the *Turkish*, as it  
an *Empire*; and  
produceth great  
e of *Fowls*, yields  
*ons*, *Oranges*, *Ci-*  
*gs*, *Cherries*, &c.  
*s*, *Sugars*, *Cassia*,  
*Druges* and *Spic-*  
*ams Teeth*, *Silk*,  
with several good  
*des*, besides the  
s growing about  
nity are trans-  
hout which, they  
*al-Glasses*. We  
*Coffee*, and other  
nd *India*, pass  
o be transported

*Turky*.  
nurey they have  
which may be  
ies of the Coun-  
Reasons. These  
to grow in cou-  
They both thrust  
but the Female  
except it grows  
g his Seed mixt  
with



**AFRICA or LIBIA ULTERIOUR** Where the **CO**  
 the **COUNTRY** of **NEGROES** and **GU** with  
 the **Kingdoms** Designed by **Monsieur Sanfon** G  
 into English by **Richard Blome** By the **Kings**  
 iall. Co



Where the COUNTRIES of SAARA DESERT  
 and GU with the Circumjacent Countries and  
 anfon Gapher to the French King and Rendered  
 Kings shall Command Printed for Richard Blome 1669

with hers,  
at the begi  
bears, is  
which in ta  
of these T  
Brains; w  
And this i  
taste much  
Branches  
&c. Of th  
Cordage; t  
the Leaves,  
&c. This  
the perfect  
these Reaso  
fructific, bu  
a Brain in  
once corrup  
die: And l  
thereof, gro  
ble Hair, t  
appearing li  
the Dates a  
Egypt.

## ZAH

IN our A  
placed S  
the Count  
GWI NY,  
and signific  
taken from  
So the Ara  
forts, *Cebel*  
hath onely  
Green. *Za*  
Stones, and  
some *Marsh*  
The Count  
hath almost  
*Wells*, and  
*Rains*, the  
sides the le  
sometimes  
*hoppers*, th  
the Earth  
Country t  
no small adv  
This Cot  
habited, th  
week togeth  
scarce any G  
any *Water*;  
drawn out c

with hers, which they do not fail to do at the beginning of *March*. The *Fruit* it bears, is known by the name of *Dates*, which in taste resemble *Figs*. The *Pith* of these *Trees* is *White*, and called the *Brains*; which are in the upper most parts. And this is held an excellent *Sallad*, in taste much like an *Hartichoke*; of the *Branches* they make *Bedsteads*, *Lattices*, &c. Of the outward *Husk* of the *Cod*, *Cordage*; of the inner, *Brushes*; and of the *Leaves*, *Fans*, *Feathers*, *Mats*, *Baskets*, &c. This *Tri*'s held among them to be the perfect *Image* of a *Man*, and that for these *Reasons*: First, Because it doth not fructifie, but by *Culture*; next, as having a *Brain* in the uppermost part, which if once corrupted as mans, doth perish and die: And lastly, in regard that on the top thereof, grow certain *strings* which resemble *Hair*; the great end of the *Branches* appearing like *Hands* extended forth; and the *Dates* as *Fingers*. And so much for *Egypt*.

## ZAHARA or SAARA, that is, Desert.

IN our *Africa* or *Lybia Interior*, we have placed *SAARA* or *ZAHARA*, the *Country* of the *NEGROES* and *GUINT*. *Zahara* is an *Arab* name, and signifies *Desert*; and this name is taken from the quality of the *Country*: So the *Arabs* divide the *Land* into three parts, *Cebel*, *Zahara*, and *Azgar*. *Cebel* hath onely *Sand*, very small, without any *Green*. *Zahara* hath *Gravel*, and little *Stones*, and but little *Green*. *Azgar* hath some *Marshes*, some *Grass*, and little *Shrubs*. The *Country* is generally hot and dry: It hath almost no *Water*, except some few *Wells*, and the *Land* is much better: But besides the leanness of the soyl, there is sometimes such vast quantities of *Grass-hoppers*, that they eat and ruine all that the *Earth* produceth. Through this *Country* the *Caravans* pass, which adds no small advantage unto it.

This *Country* is so barren, and ill inhabited, that a *Man* may travel above a week together without seeing a *Tree*, or scarce any *Grass*; as also, without finding any *Water*; and that *Water* they have, is drawn out of *Pits*, which oft-times is co-

vered with *Sand*, and tastes very brackish; so that many times men die for want of it: Which knowing the defect, those *Merchants* which travel in this *Country*, carry their *Water* as well as other *Provisions* on their *Camels* backs;

The *People* are *Bereberes* and *Africans*, likewise *Abexes* and *Arabs*, of which, the first are seated in the most moist places; the others wander after their *Flocks*: Some have their *Cheques* or *Lords*; almost all follow *Mahometism*. Though the *Air* be very hot, yet it is so healthful; that from *Barbary*, the *Country* of the *Negroes*, and other places, sick people come as to their last remedy.

This great *Desert* is divided into Seven Principal parts; of which, the three Western are, *Zanhaga*, *Zuenziga*, and *Targa* or *Hair*: The four towards the East, are, *Lempra*, *Berdoa*, *Gauga*, and *Borno*. Almost every part reaches the full breadth, and all together make but the length of this *Desert*.

*ZANHAGA* is most Westward, and touches the *Ocean*; with this *Desert* are comprehended those of *Azood* and *Tegauca*. This last yields *Salt* like *Marble*, which is taken from a *Rock*, and carried 2, 3, 4 or 500 Leagues into the *Land* of the *Negroes*, and serves in some places for *Money*, and for this they buy their *Pillnals*. These *People* use it every moment, letting it melt in their *Mouths*, to hinder their *Gums* from corrupting; which often happens, either because of the heat, which continually reigns; or, because their food corrupts in less then nothing. In the *Desert* of *Azood*, and in the way from *Dara* to *Tombut*, are to be seen two *Tombs*; the one of a rich *Merchant*, and the other of a *Carrier*: The *Merchants* *Water* being all gone, and ready to die for want, buys of the *Carrier* (who had not overmuch) one *Glass* full, for which he gave him 10000 *Ducats*: A poor little for so great a sum: But what would not a man do in necessity; yet, at the end, the *Carrier* repented his bargain; for both the one and the other died for want of *Water*, before they could get out of the *Desert*. Those near the *Sea* have some trade with the *Portugals*, with whom they change their *Gold* of *Tibar* for divers *Wares*.

The *Country* or *Desert* of *ZUENZIGA*, under the name of which, passes that of *Cogdenn*, and is more troublesome and dangerous then that of *Zanhaga*, as also more destitute of *Water*; and yet it hath



hath many People, among others, certain *Arabs*, feared by all their Neighbors, and particularly by the *Negroes*, whom those *Arabs* take, and sell for *Slaves* in the Kingdom of *Fex*: But in revenge, when they fall into the hands of the *Negroes*, they are cut into so many pieces, that the biggest that remains, are their two Ears. Its chief places are *Zuenziga* and *Ghir*.

**Targa.** The Desert of *TARGA* or *HAIR* (some esteem this last the name of the principal Place, and the other of the People) is not so dry, nor troublesome as the two others. There are found many Herbs for *Pastures*, and the Soyl indifferent fruitful, of a temperate Air. They have some *Wells*, whose Water is good. In the morning there falls store of *Manna*, which they finde fresh and healthful, of which, they transport quantity to *Agades*, and other places. Its chief places, are, *Targa* and *Hair*.

**Lempta.** *LEMPTA* is likewise esteemed the name of a People, and its principal Place, also *Digir*. This Desert is dry, and more troublesome then that of *Targa*, and its People haughty, brutish, and dangerous, to them that cross it going from *Constantina*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoli*, to the *Negroes*.

**Berdoa.** *BERDOA* is no less Desert then that of *Lempta*; but it hath *Dates* about those places, which are inhabited, and which are well furnished with Water. They count three little Walled Cities and some Towns, the chief bearing the name of the part.

**Borno and Goaga.** *BORNO* and *GOAGA* are scarce Desert. They have each their *King*. He of *Borno* is of the Race of *Berdea*, and his People part Black, part White, are civil, and drive some *Trade*. But they have likewise their *Wives* and *Children* in common, and scarce any *Religion*, as formerly the *Garamantes*. The *King* of *Goaga* descended from a *Black Slave*, who having seized on the effects of his Master, after having bought some *Horses*, ran over the Neighboring Countreys, traded for some time for *Slaves* against *Horses*, whom he made mount on his; and became master of this Estate more then 200 years ago. Part of his People are *Christians*, as those of *Egypt*; but ignorant, and almost all *Shepherds*.

The chief places in *Borno*, are, *Amasen*, *Kaaha*, and *Borno*; the two former seated in the Lake *Semoga*: The chief place of *Goaga*, bears the same.

All the People of *S A A R A*, are ge-

The People of Senar.

nerally sober, and accustom themselves to hunger, thirst, and all sorts of labor, being forced to it, by the sterility of the Countrey. In the way from *Fex* to *Tombut*, and from *Telenfu* to *Agades*, and in many other Rodes, is not sometimes found one drop of Water in the space of 6, 8, 10 or 12 days journey. Among the seven parts of *Saara* or *Zahara*, I make account that the third and fourth, first answer to the people *Gatuli*, and three or four last, to the *Garamantes*: And some assure us, that the Ancient City *Garama* is yet to be seen; a thing not to be believed, since *F. Leon* of *Africa*, and the *Arab* of *Nubia*, make no mention of it. This residing near, and the other having been sometimes in the Countrey.

## The Land of NEGROES.

THE *NEGROES* are People about the River *Niger*, which hath taken its name from these People; and these People from their colour, being Black; not the People from the *River*, as some have believed. The Ancients calling them, to wit, the *Greeks*, *Melani*; the *Latins*, *Nigritæ*; which is the same thing, *Negroes* or *Blacks*. They are divided into many *Parties* or *Kingdoms*, of which some are on this side, others beyond, and others between the Branches of the *Niger*. We have placed on this side, the Kingdoms of *Gualata*, *Genebea*, *Tombut*, *Agades*, *Cannan*, *Cassina*, and *Gangara*. Beyond, those of *Mehy*, *Senfes*, *Mandinga*, *Gago*, *Guber*, *Zegzeg*, and *Zanfara*.

Between the Branches, and about the Mouths of *Niger*, are a great number of People, Kingdoms, and Signories. The principal People are the *Faloffes*, between the Branches of *Saanga* and *Gambia*; the *Casanguas*, between *St. Domingo* and *Rio Grande*; and the *Biasares* beyond, and a long *Rio Grande*. The most famous Kingdoms of the *Faloffes*, are those of *Saanga* and *Gambia*: Among the *Casanguas*, those of *Casamanse* and *Farem*; among the *Bijasares*, those of among the *Biasares*, those of *Guinala*, *Biguba*, and *Bisegne*.

All these Kingdoms and People, and likewise the others which are about the *Niger*, are so little known, that some think

it not names seem GU ving in Guadalupe, black without led L them, power, GE Cattle, good tr ry, and the Nig have th known is a Vass eth the here it is Merchan wear Wh all the res other pla and Sam TOM well wate makes it and it hat chief whe situate of it is the re a fair Pall the rest Church is It is well a good tra King with subdued of the Neg of the M narily 300 marched with 300 Salla, and also Gueg AGA Cattle, a looking t hood; usi and remov niency of Cattle; ar their chie dom, in w tributary

it not worth the pains to set down their names. We will speak onely of what shall seem most remarkable.

**GHILATA** is one of the least, having in it not above three *Towns*, of which, *Goadia* is the chief; besides some few Villages. Fruitful in *Dates*; they are coal black, live in a mean condition, and without any form of Government, or settled Laws: They have no *Gentry* among them, but are civil to strangers to their power.

**GENEROA** is rich in *Grain, Cotton, Cattle, and Gold*; for which they have a good trade: with the *Merchants* of *Barbary*; and by reason of the overflowing of the *Niger*, the Soyl is very fertile, yet have they not many *Towns*: That most known, where their *King* resideth, who is a Vassal to the *King of Tombut*, beareth the name of the Kingdom: And here it is, that their *Priests, Doctors, and Merchants* inhabit. The *Priests* and *Doctors* wear *White Apparel*, and for distinction, all the rest wear *Black or Blew Cotton*. Its other places, are, *Putsan, Fou de Sabe, and Samba-Lamech*.

**TOMBUT** hath quantity of *Gold*, is well watered with the *River Niger*, which makes it very fruitful, especially in *Grains*, and it hath good *Pastures* which feed many *Cattle*, they have some *Towns*. The chief whereof gives name to the Kingdom, situate on a branch of the *River Niger*, it is the residence of their *King*, who hath a fair *Palace* built of lime and stones, all the rest of the houses except one fair *Church* is made of *Mud*, and *Thatched*. It is well filled with *Merchants* who drive a good trade betwixt this and *Fez*. This *King* within this 100 and odd years, hath subdued and made tributary a great part of the *Negroes*, is magnificent in his Court, of the *Mahometan Religion*, keeps ordinarily 3000 horse for his guard, and hath marched against the *Xeriffs* of *Morocco*, with 300000 men, its other places are *Salla, and Berissa*, also seated on the *Niger*, also *Gueguebe, Casogali, and Casali*.

**AGADES** hath great quantities of *Cattle*, and are much given to grazing and looking to them, making it their livelihood, using the ancient custom of *Tents*, and removing up and down for the conveniency of fresh and good pasture of their *Cattle*; and among their moveable *Towns* their chief bears the name of the Kingdom, in which the *King* resideth, who is tributary to him of *Tombut*, its other pla-

ces, are, *Deghir, Mayma, and Mura*, seated on a Lake of the *Niger*.

**CANUM** besides its *Cattle*, hath *Grain, Rice, Cotton, and Fruits*, hath Springs of running *Water*, as also a good *River* which issueth forth many little *Rivulets*; it is well stored with *Wood*, very populous; and hath several *Towns*, the chief bears the name of *Cano*, wherein is the *Palace* of their *King*, who is also tributary to the *King of Tombut*. This *Town* is environed with a Wall of *Chalk Stone*, of which, most of the Houses are built, and well frequented by *Merchants*. Its next chief place is *Germa*.

**CASSENA** is *Craggy, Barren, and very Woody*, yet it yields some store of *Barley and Millet*. The People live very meanly, wanting many things that the other Kingdoms have plenty of; and their Houses and *Towns* are as poor; among which, *Cassena* is the chief; next, *Nebrina and Tirca*.

**GANGARA** is rich in *Gold*, hath not many *Towns*, the chief whereof bears the name of the Kingdom, in which, the *King* resideth, being also the habitation of many *Merchants*; and its *King* very absolute, of a great Revenue: His *Militia* is in some esteem among the *Negroes*, being observed to keep in continual pay, 500 *Horsmen*, and 7000 *Men*, which use *Bows and Scimitars*. The next is *Semegonda*, seated on a Branch of the *Niger*.

**MELLY** is a spacious and fruitful Kingdom, seated all along on a Branch of the *River Niger*, which makes it very fertile in *Corn, Cattle, Dates, Fruits, Cotton, Wool, &c.* And by reason of the conveniency of the said *River*, hath a good Trade for their *Commodities* with other Countries. They have some *Towns*, its chief taking, its name from the Kingdom, containing about 6000 Houses, indifferently well built, but unwall'd. It is the Seat-Royal of their *King*, they have likewise here a famous *Colledge*, and many *Temples* which are well furnished with *Priests and Doctors*, who read the *Mahometan Law*, and under whom the youth of this Kingdom; as also those of *Tombut*, and other parts of the *Negroes* are educated. These People are esteemed the most ingenious, the wittiest, and most civil to strangers of all the *Negroes*. Their *King* is also tributary to the *King of Tombut*.

**SOWSOS** hath divers petty Kingdoms, and all subject to their *Concho* or *Emperor*; among which; that of *Bona*

Mm hath

themselves; to labor, being to Tombut, and in many places found one of 6, 8, 10 or the seven parts account that answer to the four last, to assure us, that is yet to be believed, since Arab of Nubia, This residing been sometimes

NE S.

re People about which hath taken people; and these being Black; River, as some Ancients calling Melani; the Lo- the same thing, ly are divided into y, of which some yond, and others the Niger. We the Kingdoms of t, Agades, Ca- Beyond those ga, Gago, Guber, and about the great number of Signories. The Faloffes, between and Gambia; the Domingo and Rio beyond, and a ost famous King- those of Sauga Casaugas, those among the Bi- ce of Guinala, Bi- and People, and th are about the that some think it

Kingdom of Canum

Kingdom of Casena

Kingdom of Mellis

Kingdom of Sowsos

Kingdom of Canum

Kingdom of Casena

Kingdom of Gangara

Kingdom of Mellis

Kingdom of Sowsos

hath seven others under it. Its quarter is *Mountainous*, covered with *Trees*, and well watered with *Rivers*. It hath some *Towns*; its chief takes its name from the *Kingdom*, and it yields *Corn*, *Cattel*, *Fruits*, &c.

Kingdom  
of Mandingue

*MANDINGUE* begins at the River *Gambia*, and reaches near 200 Leagues up in the Land: They have quantity of *Gold*, good *Ships of Wars*, and *Cavalry*, and there are divers *Kings* or *Lords* in *Guiny*, which are tributaries to him of *Mandingue*.

King-  
dom  
of Gago

*GAGO* hath store of *Gold*, *Corn*, *Rice*, *Fruits*, and *Cattel*, but no *Salt*, besides what is brought from other places; and which is ordinarily as dear as *Gold*. The People are idle and ignorant, the People of *Gago* bear so great a respect to their *King*, that how great soever they be, they speak to him on their knees, and when they are faulty, the *King* seizes on their *Goods*, and sells their *Wives* and *Children* to strangers, who remain *Slaves* all their lives. But besides these, there is here, as well as in other parts of the *Negroes*, great traffick for *Slaves*, either of certain neighboring People, which those of the Countrey can take, or of the *Maleslayers* of the Countrey, or of the *Children* whom the *Fathers* or *Mothers* sell, when they are in need, or when they please them not: And these *Slaves* are bought by many People of *Africa*, but more by the *Europeans*, who transport them into the *Isles* of *St. Thomas*, *Cape Verd*, the *Canaries*, *Brazil* and the *English* to the *Barbadoes*, and elsewhere; where they work like *Slaves*, either in *Mines*, in making of *Sugar*, *Indies*, and cultivating the *Earth* for these and several other *Commodities*. They have many *Towns* and *Villages*, among others that of *Gago* is the chief, and is the residence of their *King*; as also, of many *Merchants*, and containing about 4 or 5000 *Houfes*, but unwall'd.

Kingdom  
of Guber

*GUBER* is well fenced with *Mountains*, doth produce *Rice* and *Palm*; and above all, have exceeding great flocks of *Cattle*, from which they get their livelihood. This *Kingdom* is very populous, and well stored with *Towns*, its *Metropolitan* bearing the name of the *Kingdom*, which is well inhabited by *Merchants*, and containing about 6000 *Houfes*; being also the residence of their *King*. The People are ingenious and good *Artificers*, making several rich *Mansfactures*.

*ZEGZEG* and *ZANFARA* are barren, the People idle and ignorant, have some *Towns*, whose chief are so called; the Land yields *Corn*, *Grass*, &c. and feeds great quantities of *Horses*.

The Countrey of the *Negroes* is esteemed as fertile, as those watered with the *Nile*. It bears twice a year, and each time sufficient to furnish them with *Corn* for five whole years; which makes them not sow their *Lands*, but when they judge they shall have need. They keep their *Corn* in *Pits* and *Ditches* under *Ground*, which they call *Matamores*.

Among the *Cities* which the *Arab* of *Nubia* describes in the *Negroes*, he makes great account of *Ghana*, (that is, *Casa*;) and saith, That this *City* is double, and on the two *Coasts* of a fresh *Sea*, that is, a *Lake*; and he esteems it the greatest, best peopled, and richest among all the *Negroes*; and that not only the *Merchants* thereabouts, but those who come from the uttermost parts of the *West*, have here a *great Trade*. He speaks wonders of its *Justice*, the *Government* of its *King*, of the fair *structure*, and rich moveables of his *Palace*, his *Throne*, &c.

## GUIANA or GUINY.

*GUINY* is the *Coast* of *Africa*; which is found between the *River Niger*, and the *Equinoctial Line*. Some give it a larger extent, some a less: There are they who begin it on this side the *Niger*, and continue it unto the *Kingdom* of *Congo*. We have comprehended in the Countrey of the *Negroes*, that which is about the *Niger*, and in the Lower *Ethiopia*, that which is beyond the *Gulf* of *St. Thomas*: And so *Guiny* will remain between the *Cape* of *Serre Leon*, which will bound it on the *West*, and against the *Negroes*, to the *River* of the *Camarones*, which on the *East*, will separate it from the lower *Ethiopia*. This *Coast* right from *East* to *West*, is 7 or 800 Leagues long, and not above 100 or 150 in breadth. The *Form* being much more long then broad, we will divide it into three principal parts; which we will call *MELEGUETE*, *GUINY*, and *BENIM*: This the most *Eastward*, the first the most *West*, and the other in the middle;

And the  
Kingdom  
of Zanzibar

The first  
of the  
Land of  
Negroes

middle  
part  
together  
this  
what is  
of some  
mas,  
Under  
we com  
Capes  
order the  
eastern  
the Cap  
but like  
River  
dom of  
River  
Guiny is  
manica  
which is  
of Three  
Ivory:  
Three Pe  
abundant  
one, and  
The  
modious  
lish, Fre  
trade like  
Coast;  
Hides, w  
Gold Coa  
as of SA  
and other  
esteemed  
his Estate  
on the C  
the Land  
In the  
Coast of  
de la Min  
landers t  
Town of  
the one,  
Traffick  
of the E  
that the  
made gr  
they brou  
is specifie  
the Iron  
1200000  
and the  
not spok  
greece, a  
which wi  
but rathe  
Chamber  
had for

VFARA are ignorant, have are so called, &c. and feeds

gross is esteem- tered with the ear, and each them with Cann sh makes them but when they l. They keep Ditches under

atamores. ch the Arab of roes, he makes (that is, Cane,) is double, and a Sea, that is, a e greatest, best ong all the N- y the Merchants who come from e West, have eaks wonders of ent of its King, d rich moveables &c.

CA or Y.

Coast of Africa; between the River ... Some me a less: There on this side the into the Kingdom comprehended in roes, that which in the Lower beyond the Gulf of Guiny will remain re Leon, which est, and against ver of the Cama- will separate it ia. This Coast est, is 7 or 800 above 100 or 150 being much more will divide it into which we will call HINT, and ost Eastward, the the other in the middle;

middle, yet each of these three parts separated, make the breadth, and the three together, the length of this Guiny. After this Guiny, we shall speak something of what is on this side towards the Niger, and of some Isles which are beyond, as St. Thomas, &c.

Under the name of MELEQUETE, we comprehend that which is between the Capes of Sierra Leon and of Palmes: Under the particular name of GUINY, we esteem not only that which is between the Capes of Palmes, and of Three Points; but likewise, that which advances to the River Volta, and beyond, where the Kingdom of Benim begins, and ends not till the River Camerons. Of these three parts, Guiny is the largest, and best known, communicating its name to the rest. Its Coast, which is between the Capes of Palmes and of Three Points, is called the Coast of Ivory: That which is beyond the Cape of Three Points, the Coast of Gold. For the abundance of Gold and Ivory, found in the one, and the other.

The Coast of IVORY is very commodious, and well inhabited. The English, French, Hollanders, and Hanse-Towns, trade likewise in divers Ports, on the same Coast; fetching thence, Gold, Ivory, Hides, Wax, Amber-greece, &c. On the Gold Coast, are divers Kingdoms or Realms; as of SABON, FOETH, ACCARA, and others. The Kingdom of SABON is esteemed the most powerful of all, and that his Estates extend sixty and odd Leagues on the Coast, and near two hundred up in the Land.

In 1482, the Portugals built on the Coast of FOETH, the Fort of St. George de la Mina, and long time after, the Hollanders that of Nassau, adjoining to the Town of Mour, on the Coast of Sabon; the one, and the other, to maintain their Traffick. It is observed by the Company of the East Indies for the United Provinces, that the Chamber of Amsterdam alone made great profit of the Merchandises they brought from these Quarters, and it is specified, that between 1624 and 1636, the Ivory alone, hath yielded clear 1300000 Livres. The Hides as much, and the Wax near 100000 Livres: It is not spoken, how much the Gold, Amber-greece, and other Commodities produced; which without doubt, was not much less, but rather more: Nor what the other Chambers of Rotterdam, Groningue, &c. had for their parts. But the Fort of St.

George de la Mina being falln some years past into the hands of this Company, they at present have the greatest, and best profits which are drawn from all these Coasts, Its other places, and which are within Land, are, Labore, Uxoo, and Quinimburn.

That of MELEQUETE took its name from the abundance of Melequete; here gathered of divers sorts: It is a Spice in form like French Wheat, some of a taste as strong and biting, as Pepper: And this Melequete is called here, Grain of Paradise. Likewise others much stronger then the common of India, and of which, an ounce hath as much effect, as half a pound of that of Calicut; which is the cause it is not permitted to be brought into Portugal, for fear least it should make the other of no value; from which the Portugals receive great gain, but the English, French, and Hollanders bring it. The Portugals call this Pepper, Pimenta-del-Rabo. The Italians, Pepe della Coda: Teyl Pepper, that is, Long Pepper. Of their Palm Trees they make Wine as strong as the best of ours: They have likewise, Gold, Ivory, Cotton, &c. The Coast of Melequete, between the Capes of Sierra Leon, and that of Palmes is not full 200 Leagues. Its chief place is Bugu, on the Cape of Sierra Leon.

The Kingdom of BENIM hath more then 350 Leagues of the Coast; Cape Formoso dividing it into two parts: That which is on the West, forms a Gulf; into the middle of which, the River Benim disburthens it self; and more to the West, that of Lagoa: That which is on the East, extends it self on a right line, where the Rio Real de Calabari, and the Rio del Rey, disburthen themselves near to that of Camarones; which ends the Estate towards the East. This last part is more healthful then that of the particular Guiny, the Inhabitants living One hundred years and more. The Land produces the same Fruits, and feeds the same Beasts with Guiny; and its People are more courteous to strangers. Their principal City, so called, is esteemed the greatest, and best built of any, either in Guiny, or the Land of the Negroes. Its King is powerful, and very loving to his Subjects; they are all much addicted to Women: The King being said to keep about 5 or 600 Wives, with all which, twice a year he goeth out in great pomp, as well for recreation, as to shew them to his Subjects; who according to their abilities

The part of Melequete ... from the ...

The Kingdom of Benim, ...

do exceed: Those of the gentle or better sort keeping 20, 30, 40; others 50, 60, and 70: And those of the poorest rank 5, 10, or 12. Their Custom both for Men and Women, till they are married, is to go naked; which when they are, their *cloathing* is onely a cloth, which is tied about their middles, and hangs down to their knees. Its other chief places are; *Onwerre, Focko, Boni, and Bodi.*

The Soil of Guiny.

The Soil of *Guiny* is generally fertile, the most part bearing twice a year, because they have two Summers, and two Winters. They call it *Winter*, when the Sun passes their *Zenith*, and that the Rains are continual. Besides the *Gold of Mines*, there is *River Gold*; and some years there hath been, when the *Hollanders* have got to the value of 2000 *Livers*: And that in exchange for *Baubles*, and some *Household Utensils*, of which, we make little account.

We have bounded our *Guiny* with *Serre Leon* towards the West, and said, That there are Authors which begin it from the *Niger*: We may here take occasion to speak one word of that part. The name of *Serre Leon* is taken from a Mountain, which we have already described between the Country of the *Negroes* and *Guiny*: And this Mountain advances a *Cape*, and pours down a *River* of the same name into the *Sea*; from hence to the *Niger*. The *Air* along the Coast, is more healthful, and the *Soyl* more fruitful than *Guiny*. The *Rivers* which descends from the *Mountains*, and which have their declension towards the West; and the *Winds* which continually blow, afford such a freshness, that it is not excessive hot, though under the *Torrid Zone*.

The Fertility and Commodities.

All this whole Country or Land of the *Negroes*, is very fertile, abounding in *Corn, Rice, Millet*, and in many sorts of *Molequet*; in *Fruits*, as, *Oranges, Citrons, Lemmons, Pomegranates, Dates, &c.* Also in *Gold*, both in *Sand*, and in *Ingot*; in *Ivory* or *Elephants Teeth* in great abundance, in *Wax, Hides, Cotton, Amber-greece*; they extract *Wine* and *Oyl* from their *Palm Trees*; and of this *Oyl*, and the *Ashes* of the *Palm Tree*, they make excellent *Soap*. They have many *Sugar Canes*, which are scarce at all Husbanded: They have *Brasil Wood*, better then that which cometh from *Brasil*: They have abundance of *Wood*, proper to build and Mast *Ships*; and *Pearls*, which they finde in *Oysters*, towards the *River Des Ostru*, that is, of *Oysters*; and

of *St. Anne*, between the Branches of the *Niger*.

And for these *Commodities* in way of Barter, they truck or take *Slaves*, course *Cloth*, both *Linnen* and *Woollen*; *Red Caps, Frize Mantles, and Gowns*; *Leather Bags, Sheep-skin Gloves*; *Guns, Swords, Daggers, Belts, Knives, Hammers, Ax-heads, Salt, Great Pins*, little pieces of *Iron*, which they convert to several uses; *Lavers* and great *Dutch Kettles* with two handles, *Basons* of several sizes, *Platters, Broad Pans, Potsnets, Pots, &c.* made for the most part of *Copper*, which are sometimes Tinned within. Some of which *Utensils* are made of *Tinn*, and others of *Earths*, which are here desired: Also *Looking-Glasses, Beads, Coralls, and Copper, Brass, and Tinn Rings*, which they wear about them for their adornment *Hors-tails* which they use to keep away *Flies* which annoy them, as also when they dance. And lastly, certain *Shells* which pass instead of *Money*.

They have not here, nor in many other Countries, no current *Money of Metall*, as the *Europeans* have; but make use of those *Shells* aforesaid, which they hang in bundles upon strings; some more, some less; for which, they buy in their *Markets* such things as they want. And these *Shells* they buy of the *English*, and others, by weight; for which, one may command *Slaves*, or any *Commodity* they have, sooner then for trucking *Commodities* for them: Yet their *Gold* passes, both in *Ingot*, and in *Sands*, and according to its goodness, and fineness, it is valued, and by them, as by *Merchants* which Trade hither; very well distinguished, from the lowest sort, to the finest of 24 *Carrets*: With which, by weight they also make their payments.

Their *Weights* are of divers sorts, among which, a *Benda* is the greatest, which is but two *Ounces*; a *Benda Offa* is half a *Benda*; a *Pefos* is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an *Ounce*; an *Eggebba* is two *Pefos*; an *Affeva* is 2  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Pefos*; a *Seron* is 1  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Pefo*; an *Enfanno* is just as much as a *Pefo*; a *Quienta* is  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a *Pefo*; a *Pefo* is a *Lote*; an *Agiraque* is  $\frac{1}{4}$  a *Pefo*; and a *Mediataba* is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of a *Pefo*. And for the weighing their *Gold*, they have little hollow *Scales* like the half of an *Orange Peel*.

Their *Measure* of length for *Cloth*, or other *Commodities*, is a *Fathans*, which is about two *Fatham*, or twelve *Foot* long.

Among

Amo  
phant,  
all four  
very ge  
live to  
age of  
able, bo  
fitable  
That w  
the Fem  
Next th  
Muck-C  
in the M  
keep th  
them th  
or Pots,  
they ve  
tions ar  
gain go  
Males a  
by reaso  
wherein  
pifs it o  
must be  
excellen  
Rabbets  
they wi  
will they  
Muck.  
Baboons,  
taken ar  
men: A  
the Riv  
the Fire  
but the  
wife the  
Meat th  
beloved  
of Men  
themsel  
there an  
which l  
They  
which,  
which a  
Thei  
Lemmon  
Annana  
taste, re  
Fruit so  
though  
was for  
Iniamu  
tree, an  
the Oyl  
Oysters  
may be  
strange  
The



the Branches of the

Commodities in way of  
 ke Slaves, course  
 Woollen, Red Caps,  
 is, Leather Bags,  
 ns, Swords, Dag-  
 mmers, Ax-heads,  
 le pieces of Iron,  
 several uses; La-  
 Kettles with two  
 eral sizes, Platters,  
 es, &c. made for  
 which are some-  
 Some of which U-  
 n, and others of  
 ere desired: Also  
 Corrals, and Cap-  
 lines, which they  
 their adornment  
 e to keep away  
 , as also when they  
 certain Shells which

nor in many other  
 Money of Metall,  
 but make use of  
 which they hang in  
 some more, some  
 ay in their Markets  
 t. And these Shells  
 sh, and others, by  
 one may command  
 modity they have,  
 Commodities for  
 gasses, both in In-  
 and according to its  
 , it is valued, and  
 hants which Trade  
 nguish'd, from the  
 st of 24 Carrets:  
 ht they also make

f divers sorts, a-  
 the greatest, which  
 enda Ossa is half a  
 an Ounce; an E-  
 Astrea is 2; Pefos;  
 Eufanno is just as  
 nta is 3 of a Pefo;  
 iraque is 1; a Pefo;  
 a Pefo. And for  
 , they have little  
 half of an Orange

gth for Cloib, or  
 Falkans, which  
 or twelve Foot

Among

Among their *Beasts* they have *Elephants*, which are said to be the biggest of all four footed *Beasts*: Of nature they are very gentle, docile, and tractable; they live to a great age, seldom dying till the age of 150 years. They are very serviceable, both in War and Peace, and as profitable by reason of their Tusks: It is said, That when the *Male* hath once seasoned the *Female*, he never after toucheth her. Next the *Elephant* may be reckoned the *Musk-Cats*, which with Springs they take in the *Woods*, when they are young, and keep them in Hutches, and take from them the *Musk*, which they keep in *Glasses* or *Pots*, and so vend it: And these *Cats* they vend to the *English* and other Nations at good rates; from which they gain good riches: And of these *Cats*, the *Males* affordeth the most and best *Musk*, by reason the *Females* piss in the Cod, wherein the *Musk* groweth; so that they piss it out with their Water. These *Cats* must be kept very cleanly, and allowed excellent diet; as, White Bread and Milk, Rabbits, Hens, and the like; otherwise, they will be in danger of dying; neither will they (if not kept lusty) afford so much *Musk*. Then their *Apes*, *Monkeys*, and *Baboons*, which are strong and lusty, being taken and brought to it young, serve like men: They send them to fetch Water at the River, make them to turn Meat at the Fire, serve at Table to give Drink; but they must be very watchful, otherwise they will do mischief, and eat the Meat themselves. And, these are much beloved by their *Women*, doing the duty of Men, which they are as desirous of themselves, and hating men. Again, there are some of these *Monkeys* or *Apes*, which love *Men* and hate *Women*.

They have variety of *Birds*, among which, they have several sorts of *Parrots* which are brought to talk.

Their *Fruits* are excellent, as, *Oranges*, *Lemons*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Dates*, *Ananas*, or *Pynes*, which for smell and taste, resembleth all *Fruits*. *Trennelius*, a *Fruit* so delicate and delicious, that 'tis thought it was the *Fruit* in *Paradise* which was forbidden *Adam* and *Eve* to eat of. *Iniamus*, *Bastatas*, *Bachonens*, the *Palm-tree*, and above all, here is a *Tree* called the *Oyster Tree*, by reason of its bearing *Oysters* thrice every year; a thing, if report may be credited, is true; and if true, very strange.

The *Inhabitants*, especially before the

coming of the *Portugals*, were rude and barbarous, living without the knowledge of a *God*, *Law*, *Religion*, or *Government*, very dis-ingenuous, not caring for *Arts* or *Letters*.

They are much addicted to *Theft*, though esteemed among them for a crime, and especially they take it for an honor, if they can cheat or steal any thing, (though not considerable) from a *White Man*. They are very *perfidious*, *Lyers*, given to *Luxury*; in matter of *Justice*, they are indifferent severe, punishing oftentimes with death; but paying a fine will free them; and the place of *Judicature* is in the open *Market place*. Their *Food* is gross and beastly, as is their *Habitations*, mean and beggerly. They go naked, save about their waste they tye a piece of *Linten*; yet very proud and stately: They are of a *Corpulent body*, *flat nosed*, *broad shouldered*, *white eyed* and *teeth'd*, *small eared*, &c.

In *Matters of Religion*, they are great *Idolaters*, worshipping *Beasts*, *Birds*, *Hills*, and indeed, every strange thing which they see; they hold there is two *Gods*, one doth them *good*, and the other *hurt*; and these two *Gods*, they say, fight together. Also they believe there is a *God* which is invisible, which they say is black; yet of late they have tried many *Forms of Religion*, as, *Judaism*, *Mahometism*, and *Christianity*, but care not much for any. Nevertheless, some of them believe they dye not, and to that end, give their *dead bodies* something to carry with them to the other *World*. They keep their *Festivoes day*, that is, one day in Seven for a day of rest, as their *Sabbath*, which is on a *Tuesday*. (a day that no other Nation in the *World* keeps) very strict; at which time, they offer *meat* and *drink* to their *Fetisso* or *God*, on a four square place, covered with *Hires* or *Fetissoes straws*, which the *Birds* (by them called *Gods Birds*) devour. During which time, the *Fetisso* sits upon a *Stool* with a *Pot of Drink* in his hand, using several *Ceremonies*.

Among their *Barbarous customs* they have one very good, and that is, when their *Daughters* are of a fitting age to marry, they put them into *Houses*, which are in the nature of *Monasteries*, where for a year they are educated by *Old Men* of good repute amongst them. And at the expiration of the said year, they are brought well habited (according to their *Custom*) and accompanied with *Musick*

N n and

and Dancing; and when a *Young-man* makes choice of any of them, he bargains with her *Parents*, and satisfies the *Old Man* that educated her, for his pains and charges (which is not much) and then takes her to *Wife*. The *Portion* being thus paid, they meet one another naked, and the *Wom-en* swears to be faithful to the *Man*, both at *Bed* and *Board*, and so the *Marriage* is concluded: But the *Man* 10 swaereth not, being at liberty; so that upon the least offence, he may put her away, or force her to pay a fine of so many *Poces of Gold*: And according to the ability of a *Man*, he may buy and keep as many *Wives* as he pleaseth; among which, the eldest is subservient to the youngest, The *Man* never lieth with any of his *Wives*, neither *eateth* with them, but on *Tuesdays*, which is their *Sabbath*. And although 20 the *Husband* commands, yet the *Wife* is the *Purse-bearer* until she be with *childe*, and ready to be delivered; at which time, being stark naked, and in the *Field*, among the *People*, she throweth the *Bag* to her *Husband*, until taking a handful of *Manniget* and a spoonful of *Oyl*, she goeth abroad the next day, as well as if she had not been with *childe*, or suffered any pain; and then feasteth her *Neighbors*, circumciseth the *Childe*; and after it hath lain sprawling upon the ground two or three days, she taketh it, and carrieth it on her 30 *Shoulders*, like those which we call *Gipsies*; and when the *Childe* is about four years of age, the *Mother* bringeth it to the *Father*, who teaches it to *Swim*, make *Nets*, *Fish* and *Row*, giving it nothing but what it can earn; and when it can be master of so much *Gold* as will purchase 40 *Linnen* to make it a *Waste-cloth*, it is rich.

*Their War.* In *Guiny* there are several *Petty Kingdoms* who make *War* one against the others; during which *War*, they destroy and burn the *Country*, to the end, that the enemy may finde no succor, removing their *Goods* to a *Neighboring Kingdom*, with whom they have peace, and the whole *Kingdom* surrounds the *King*, for his defence and safeguard; and thus they march. Their *Weapons* are the *Bow* and *Arrows* with which they are so expert, that they can shoot within the breadth of a *shilling*. Also they make use of the *Pontard*, the *Dagger*, the *Shield* and *Turbant*. In which *Wars*, those they kill, they eat; those they take, they make *Slaves*; and such are those, that the *English*, *Dutch*, and

other *Nations* buy of them; and whom they *subdue*, they take *Hofstages* from.

Their *Kings* are not over-rich, that *Revenue* which they have comes from the *Customs* and *Tythes* upon *Goods*; as also in the two *Ounces of Gold* paid by every man that lieth with anothers wife: Likewise, in *Fines* levied for *Theft* for their ransom; and lastly, in the *Six-penny* forfeitures for bringing their *Weapons* within any of their *Cities*: Neither do they live in great pomp and grandure, a poor cottage with us, being with them a *Princes Palace*. Yet they are had in such reverence, that none cometh to speak with them (though of their *Nobility* and *Gentry*) but must crawl upon the *hands* and *knees*, and so deliver their business unto them. But the *White Men* are had in so much respect (though never so poor) that they sit gig by jowl by their *Kings*. Upon the *Coronation day*, as also on the *Quarter days*, when the *Kings* receive their *Customs*, they make a magnificent *Feast* which lasteth for two or three days; at which times they have all the varieties in their way as the *Country* will afford; and many of them are held very powerful.

And here, on this *Coast of Guiny*, the *Dutch* have been great *Traders*, having 30 several *Holds* and *Factories*, but of late in *Anno 1663* and *64*, the *English* have had many strugglings with the *Dutch*, whom they have pretty well subdued; and have now fetled their several *Factories*, and are incorporated into a *Society at London*, called the *Royal Company*, and do begin to drive a considerable *Trade*; which in time will be much augmented to the enriching 40 of *England*.

## Isles of St. THOMAS, &c.

Between *Guiny* and the *Lower Ethiopia*, is a *Gulf* where are the *Isles* of *St. THOMAS*, *Princes Island*, *Fernand Po*, *Annobon*, or *Bon Anne*; and farther in the *Great Sea*, *St. Matthew*, the *Ascension*, *St. Helena*, &c. These *Isles* have their names from the day whereon they were discovered: That of the *Prince*, because its *Revenue* was designed for the *Prince of Portugal*; that of *Fernand Po*, from him that discovered it,

But

But  
THOMAS  
the best  
thirty,  
more ap  
ter; w  
Leagues  
ter; and  
which ar  
found ve  
strangers  
who fear  
years, an  
*Natives*  
100 year  
days and  
year equ  
in *March*  
the *Dow*  
year falls  
so that it  
*Roots*, and  
riches is th  
sometimes  
*Arrobe* be  
five *Millic*  
ger, &c. u  
for their *C*  
*Stuffs*, *Bea*  
er, and lit  
*Money* in  
*Trade* in th  
the *Rivers*  
*St. Juan*,  
*Grains* and  
sown and  
*Earth* bein  
*Bread* of  
from *Pala*  
have abund  
both great  
*Whales*.  
*Four-foot*  
*Hogs* bea  
with *Suga*  
out, they  
lent, th  
no value  
The *mid*  
*tains*, wh  
ber of *T*  
with *Clo*  
that from  
as makes  
all parts  
The *K*  
*voolan*, and  
and some  
have ere

How they  
bring up  
their *Chil*  
dren.

Their *War*.

Their *Wap*  
pens.

them; and whom  
 Hostages from,  
 not over-rich, that  
 live comes from the  
 in Goods; as also in  
 paid by every man  
 wife: Likewise, in  
 for their ransom;  
 enny forfeitures for  
 within any of their  
 they live in great  
 poor cottage with  
 Princes Palace. Yet  
 veneration, that none  
 them (though of  
 y) but must crawl  
 oces, and so deliver  
 n. But the White  
 h respect (though  
 y sit gig by jowl by  
 the Coronation day,  
 days, when the  
 doms, they make a  
 h lasteth for two or  
 imes they have all  
 y as the Country  
 of them are held

But of all these Islands that of St. THOMAS is by much the greatest, and the best: Its form is almost round, it is thirty, others say forty; others, and with more apparent truth 60000 Paces Diameter; which are 180000 Paces, or 65 Leagues circuit, seated under the Equator; and by reason of the excessive heats which are there predominant: The Air is found very prejudicial and unhealthful to strangers, especially to the Europeans, who scarce ever reach to the age of fifty years, and the Women much less: Yet the Natives of the Country live commonly 100 years, and without sickness. Their days and nights are throughout the whole year equal; they have no Rain but onely in March and September, yet by reason of the Dew, which at all other times of the year falls. The Earth is well moistned, so that it brings forth all sorts of Fruits, Roots, and Pot-Herbs; but their principal riches is their Sugars, of which they have sometimes exported 150000 Arrobes, each Arrobe being 30 li. Weight, which is five Millions of pounds yearly: Also Ginger, &c. there is carried them in exchange for their Commodities, Wines, Oyls, Cheefe, Stuffs, Beads, Drinking-Glasses, Corn Flower, and little White Shells which serves for Money in Ethiopia, as in Guiny, &c. They Trade in the Neighboring Coasts, where are the Rivers of Barca, Campo, St. Benito, St. Juan, and the Isle of Corisoo: Those Grains and Vines which they would have sown and planted, have not thriven, the Earth being too fat. They make their Bread of divers Roots; have their Wood from Palm-trees: They feed much Fowl, have abundance of several sorts of Fish, both great and small, among others, Whales. They have also great store of Four-footed Beasts, among others, their Hogs bears the Bell; which being fed with Sugar Canes, after the Juice is drawn out, they grow fat, and become so excellent, that their Pullain is accounted for no value to them, even for sick people. The middle of the Isle is filled with Mountains, which are loaden with a great number of Trees, which are always covered with Clouds, which so moisten the Trees, that from them falls so much fresh water, as makes many little streams, which waters all parts of the Island.

The Portugals have built the City Pawanfan, containing about 7 or 800 Houses, and some Forts, to defend the Port: They have erected a Bishoprick, and do allow of

no Religion, but the Christian. Th's Town is well frequented by Portugall Merchants, who trade in the Commodities aforesaid. The Inhabitants are Negroes, and very Black.

The Hollanders some years past seized the Island of St. Thomas, took on the Coasts thereabouts divers places from the Portugals; and built some Forts towards the Cape of Good Hope: But the Portugals have since retaken them, and built anew some other; of which, time will give us more knowledge.

PRINCES ISLAND hath a little City, and the Inhabitants live conveniently; the Isle being fruitful, yielding Fruits, Sugar, some Ginger, &c. Once taken by the Hollanders, who for some reasons, soon abandoned it.

The Island of ANNOBON yields Sugars, Cottons, Cattle, and excellent Fruits. In this Isle there is a Town of 100 or 120 Houses of Blacks, who are governed by some few Portugals. In 1623, the Hollanders took from thence above 200000 Oranges, in lets then four days; and these Oranges so great, that each weighed twelve Ounces.

The Island of St. HELENA was first discovered by the Portugals upon the 21 of May; on which day, is celebrated the memory of St. Helena, the Mother of Constantine the Great; from whom it took its name. This Isle is so fertile, that it is observed no Place in all Europe yields the like plenty; for with manuring and cultivating the Earth, it produceth excellent Fruits, which are here found all the year long: It hath great store of Barbary Hens, Peafants, Partridges, Pigeons, Quails, Peacocks, with several sorts of small Birds in great plenty; it hath also Goats, Swine, &c. Yet this Isle is not inhabited, but serves for the English, Portugals, Spaniards, and Hollanders, to refresh themselves in going, but for the most part in returning from the Indies; it being sufficient to furnish Ships with Provision for their Voyage; here being Salt to preserve the Meat from stinking; and besides, the Air is so healthful, that they often leave their sick people there, who in a short time are restored to perfect health; and by the next Ships that put in there, are taken in again. During which time, they finde wherewithal to feed them: But some years ago, the Hollanders ruined all that was good, onely to spight the Spaniards; who afterwards did the same, that the English, Hollanders,

Princes Island.

The Island of Annobon.

The Isle of St. Helena.

THOMAS,

Lower Ethiopia are the Isles of Island, Fernand, and farther, the Ascension, these Isles have whereon they of the Prince, designed for the of Fernand Poo,

But

&c.

It might have no profit by it. This *Island* is well furnished with good Waters, which alone is a great refreshment to Ships.

Other Iſles  
not in hab.  
ed.

The *Islands* of *FERNAND POO*, *St. MATTHEWS*, and *ASCENSION*, are also not inhabited, and of no great account, nor much known; which we shall pass by, saying onely, that they have some *Fowls*, *Wilde Beasts*, and their *Seas* yield *Fishes*.

*Nubia*, nor *Vincent Blanck*, who saith, he hath been in these quarters, and speaks onely of the *Desert* of *Gorham*. Other Authors make mention of this City, and describes it on the *Nile*. *Sanutus* saith, that there are found *Emeralds* in those Mountains, which bounds *Gorham* on the South.

Except onely *Gorham*, the *Arab* of *Nubia* observes the distances between all the other Cities which we have taken notice of; and saith, that *Tamalma* hath many Inhabitants, no Walls; makes little account of *Mathan* and *Angimi*: Moreover, he esteems *Mathan* the Residence of the King of *Canem*, who holds here many Cities; makes *Zaghar* better, and saith, it hath some Trade. *Tagua* and *Nubia* more, from which last, the *Region* and *People* took their names. *John Leon* and *Sanutus* after him, esteems *Dancala* or *Dangala*, the chief of the *Kingdom*, seated on the *Nile*, and that it hath about 1000 Families. And, he saith, its Houses are built with Chalk, and covered with Laths or Boards: The Inhabitants civil and rich; driving a good Trade through all *Egypt*, even to *Cairo*, whither they carry *Arms*, *Cloaths*, *Civis*, *Sanders*, and *Ivory*. They have a certain *Poyson* worth 100 *Duckats* an *Ounce*, which they sell onely to strangers, which promise not to use it in the *Countrey*. And also *Bugia* seated on the *Nile*, a City of some account and Trade; as is *Falac*, *Gualva*, and *Cusa*, also seated on the *Nile*.

## NUBIA.

Nubia  
and its  
bound.

**N**UBIA is bounded on the North, West, and South, almost every where with Mountains; which separate it from the *Desert* of *Barca* and *Egypt*, on the North; from *Saara* and the *Negroes*, on the West; and from the *Abyssins*, on the South; the rest towards the East, is bounded in part by the *Nile*, which separates it from the *Ile* of *Gueguere*; in part by an Imaginary Line, which separates it from divers Provinces; of which, some belong to the *Abyssins*, and others to the *Turks*; who hold all that is on the *Red Sea*, which they have taken from the *Abyssins*.

In length  
and breadth

*NUBIA* thus taken, makes a long square, whose length from South West, to North East, is about 400 Leagues; and its breadth from South East, to North West, almost every where, 200 Leagues.

The chief  
Cities

The chief Cities of *Nubia*, are, *Cusa*, *Gualva*, *Dancals*, *Falac*, and *Sula*, according to the *Arab* of *Nubia*: Moreover, and in the same Author, I finde that *Tamalma*, *Zaghar*, *Mathan*, *Angimi*, *Nubia*, *Tagua*, and some others fall likewise in *Nubia*; and by some Authors *Gorham*, which some would place among the *Negroes*, should be likewise in *Nubia*, because it is on the *Nile*: There where it can have no communication with the *Negroes*, who ought to be upon, and about the *Niger*. Likewise *Damocla*, towards the *Negroes*; and *Bugia* towards *Egypt*, ought to be esteemed in *Nubia*.

The City  
Gorham.

*Gorham* is on the *Nile*, and on the Coast of the *Ile* *Gueguere*. *Sanutus* makes a *Kingdom*, a *Desert*, and a *People* of this name, and extends them almost all the length of the *Ile* *Gueguere*; not making any mention of the City of this name, nor *John Leon* of *Africa*, nor the *Arab* of

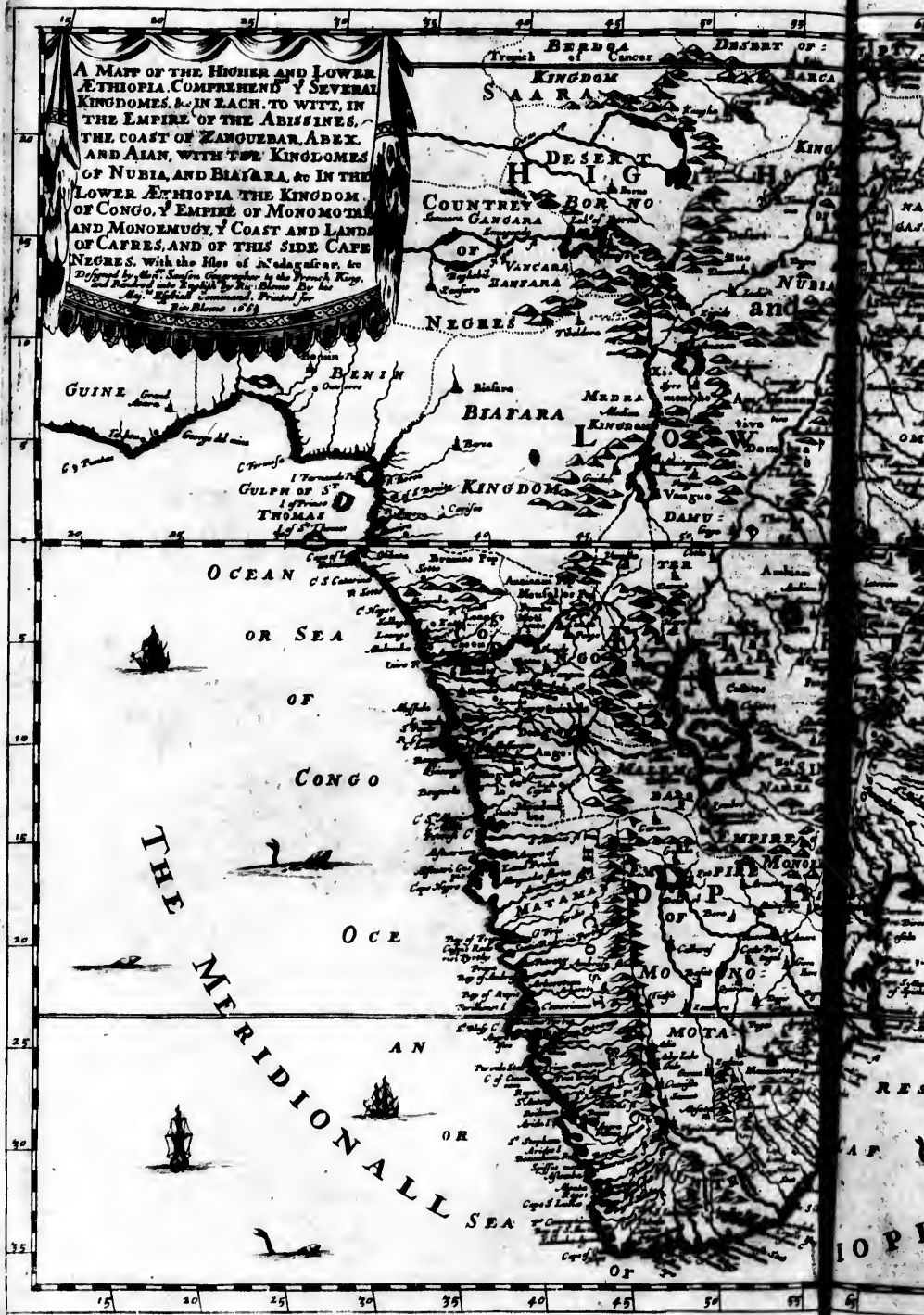
## The Empire of the ABYSSIN S, or the higher and great ÆTHIOPIA.

**A**BYSSIN, or the Empire of the *ABYSSIN S*, is commonly called the Higher and Great *ÆTHIOPIA*; because it makes the greatest and better part of the one, and the other *Æthiopia*; and is the greatest, and most considerable Estate of all *Africa*, under one name alone, and one Prince. It extends its self on this side, and beyond the *Equinoctial Line*; from the Mountains of the *Moon*, and the Springs of the *Nile*, even near unto *Egypt*; and from the Kingdoms, and Estates of *Congo*, and the *Negroes*, unto the





A MAP OF THE HIGHER AND LOWER  
 ETHIOPIA, COMPRISING Y SEVERAL  
 KINGDOMS, & IN EACH TO WITT, IN  
 THE EMPIRE OF THE ABISSINES,  
 THE COAST OF ZANGUEBAR, ABEX,  
 AND ALAN, WITH THE KINGDOMS  
 OF NUBIA, AND BIAYARA, & IN THE  
 LOWER ETHIOPIA THE KINGDOM  
 OF CONGO, Y EMPIRE OF MONOMOTTA  
 AND MONOMUGY, Y COAST AND LANDS  
 OF CAFRES, AND OF THIS SIDE CAPE  
 NEGRES, WITH THE ILES of Madagascar, &c  
*Designed by Mr. W. Sanden Geographer to the British King,  
 and Published into English by Mr. Blome, By his  
 M<sup>ty</sup>s Special Command, Printer for  
 His Majestie 1678*





Francis Lewis Sculp

the C  
ber.  
North  
West  
Leag  
Leag  
So

many  
numb  
shall c

*Barnag*  
*Red Se*

*Barnag*  
the E  
of *Dan*  
make t  
tween

*Angola*  
*Kuran*

*midri*  
*gota, 2*

long th  
yond th  
ing 4 o

*Bagan*  
springs

*Cafates*  
*Narea,*

*B A*  
the *Sea*

dom or  
of the *J*

dom of  
at prefer

are *Snaq*  
will desc

name of  
*buroua* is

after whi  
*Emacen*

Province  
a City

20 Leag  
*Chaxum*

and acco  
the *Ordi*

*Sheba* or  
Both the

far from  
name.

There  
found a

*sine* is a  
and here

*Iron* inste  
The *K*

by reaso  
Children

the Coasts of *Zanguebar*, *Ajan*, and *Habex*. Its greatest length from South to North, is 800 Leagues. Its breadth from West to East, 4, 5 and sometimes 600 Leagues: Its Circuit about 2500 Leagues.

Some divide this great Estate into so many Kingdoms, and Provinces, that the numbring of them would be tedious: we shall observe the most known. That of *Barnagasso* is between the *Nile*, and the *Red Sea*; *Tigremahan*, or *Tigre*, South of *Barnagasso*; *Angota* South of *Tigre*: on the East of *Tigre*, and *Angota*, are those of *Dancala*, *Fatigara*, and *Xoa*; and these make the Coast of *Ajan*. *Amaras* is between the South and West, in regard of *Angota*: whose chief places are *Fugi*, *Kurana*, and *Burn*, *Bagametri*, or *Abagamidri* is on the West of *Amaras*, *Angota*, *Tigre*, and *Barnagasso*; and lies along the *Nile* from the *Equator*, till beyond the Isle of *Gueguere* or *Moors*: reaching 4 or 500 Leagues. On the West of *Bagametri*, are those of *Dambea*, and *Damout*; on the South, and towards the Springs of the *Nile*, those of *Goyame*, and *Casates*; neer the mountains of the *Moon*, *Narea*, &c.

*BARNAGASSO* signifies King of the Sea, because formerly all this Kingdom or Government held all the Coast of the *Red Sea*, from *Egypt* unto the Kingdom of *Dancala*; which is 250 leagues: at present the *Turks* hold this Coast, where are *Suaquen*, *Mazza*, *Arquico* which we will describe with *Zanguebar*, under the name of the Coast of *Habex*. *Barua* or *Daburua* is esteemed the chief of *Barnagasso*; after which some put *Canfila*, *Dassila*, and *Emacen*: others esteem *Canfila* and *Dassila* Provinces or Governments, and *Emacen* a City of the Government of *Dassila*, 20 Leagues from *Barua*, 50 from *Suaquen*. *Chaxumo* is the chief of *Tigre*; a fair City, and according to the common opinion, the Ordinary Residence of the Queen of *Sheba* or *Saba*, that came to see *Solomon*. Both the City and Quarter of *Sabain*, not far from *Chaxumo*, seem to retain the name.

There are every where, hereabouts, found a great many fair Churches: *Angotine* is a City in the Kingdom of *Angotine*, and here they use *Salt*, or little pieces of *Iron* instead of *Money*.

The Kingdom of *AMARA* is famous, by reason of its Mountain, where the Children, and nearest of Kinred to the

*Grand Negus* are guarded: This Mountain is very high, of a great circuit, and whose approaches are very difficult, being craggy on all sides, and easie to defend; which made this use be made of it, to keep there those which may cause any commotion in the Estate. The top of the Mountain is formed into a great Plain, where there are fair Buildings, many Cisterns, a rich Monastery, &c. Some speak wonders of this Mountain, and that the *Grand Negus* being deceased, they take thence him who is the true inheritor, if he be capable to govern the Estate, if not the second or third, &c. in order. Others sustain that there are no such things as they put here, neither *Monastery*, *Library*, *Gold*, *Precious Stones*, &c.

*BAGAMEDRI* is subdivided into Provinces, like to *Tigre*; hath a greater extent, and should be better, lying along the *Nile*. The Prince resides often at *Dambea*, which is beyond the *Nile*, as well as *Damout*. Some place the Springs of the *Nile* in *Goyame*, others in *Casates*. The one and the other Kingdom being about the Lake of *Zaire*, *Goyame* where this Lake reduces it self into a River, which is the *Nile*: *Casates* on one of the Principal Rivers of those that fall into the Lake; which apparently should be called the *Nile*. *Narea* is between the Lake of *Zaire* and *Zassan*, which are two Lakes, from whence descend the Principal Rivers which make the *Nile*.

The Air of *Abyssin* is very temperate considering its situation. *Tigre* particularly is esteemed so, by reason of the Northern Winds which refresh it. All the Countrey is in Plains, except some Mountains, which are especially towards its bounds. The Soyl is generally good, fruitful in Grains and Pulse, of which, it hath excellent, not known to us; they have few Vines, as also few Herbs, the Grasshoppers much annoying them. The Land feeds many tame and wilde Beasts; and much Fowl, among others, an infinite number of Turtles. Their Rivers have Crocodiles, and River Horses, which they call *Gomaras*; it is a hardy Fish, and will assault men in the Water.

It hath much Metals, as, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Lead*, *Tin*; and the Mountains so full of Sulphur, that they may afford wherewith to make *Salpeter*: more then any Countrey in the World. *Tigre* particularly, hath Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, *Lead*, *Copper*, and *Sulphur*: *Damout* hath more *Gold*, then

Kingdom of Bagamedri with its Provinces, &c. described.

The Air, fertility, Commodities, &c. of the Abyssin.

all the rest: *Bagamdri* and *Goyame* hath likewise *Gold*.

In Temp.

The *Inhabitants* are generally Black; some more, some less; they are (for the most part) of a good stature, flat nosed, woolly haired, of a nimble spirit, and very jovial: They have scarce any thing of Literature, neither do they much desire to attain to any. They *Covyn* neither *Gold* nor *Silver*, but receive it by weight. Some Authors make this *Prince* so rich, that there is scarce any in the World hath so much present *Gold* in his *Coffers*. *Sanctus* saith, that he once offered to the Kings of *Portugal* a Million of *Drams* of *Gold*, and as many men to exterminate the *Infidels*. *Petro Covillan*, a *Portugal*, and here *Ambassador* on the behalf of the Kings of *Portugal*, said, that this *Emperor* might with his *Treasures* buy a whole World. And <sup>20</sup> *Queen Helena* writing to *Emmanuel* of *Portugal*, and speaking for her Grand-child *David*, saith, that if the King of *Portugal* would furnish them with 1000 *Vessels* of *War* and *People* fit for the *Sea*, that she would on her part, furnish them with all things necessary for the *War*, and give them 200 Millions of *Gold*, and that she had *Men*, *Gold*, and *Provisions*, in such great number and plenty, as there were <sup>30</sup> *Sands* in the *Sea*, or *Stars* in the *Firmament*.

This *Emperor David*, at the persuasion of *Michael Sylva*, a *Portugal*, caused all his *Gold* to be melted, which he had before, as taken from his *Mines*, or *Rivers*; and all being reduced into certain four-square *Jagots*, there were four great *Halls* filled; and there were judged to be in every *Hall* 300 Millions of *Gold*, which are <sup>40</sup> 1200 Millions of *Gold* in all: As for *Silver*, they made no account of it as *Treasure*, but it was made into *Money* to serve for *Commerce*. There was in this *Treasury* a fifth *Hall* filled with *Coffers* and *Cases* full of *Diamonds*, and all sorts of *Precious Stones* and *Pearls*, &c.

*Zaara*, King of *Athiopia*, led against *Asa*, King of *Judah*, 90000 *Foot*, and 10000 *Horse*, which are 100000 *Men*, <sup>50</sup> *Pliny* esteems the *Isle* of *Meroes* alone to have 250000 *Men* fit to bear *Arms*, and 400000 *Artisans*. At present, the *Grand Negus* is held able to raise a *Million* of *Men*; and *Barnagu* alone to furnish 200000 *Foot*, and 20000 *Horse*. The *Prince* is always in the *Field*, and 5 or 6000 *Tents* attending on him, where are *Churches*, *Hospital*, *Shops*, *Taverns*, &c. which are

furnished with all things necessary for himself, and his *Train*.

There are scarce any *Fortresses* in the *Country*, except where the *Mountains* of themselves make them. The *Neighbors* to this *Estate*, are the *Turks*, who hold all the *Coast* of *Haber* on the *Red Sea*, the King of *Adel*, and some others, on the *Coasts* of *Ajan* and *Zanguebar*; the *Monomotapa*, or the *Monoemugi*, towards the *Mountains* of the *Moon*, the *Congo*, or some *Estates* neighboring on *Congo*, and the *Negroes* towards the *West*; some Kings of *Nubia*, towards the *North*. Except the *Turks*, the *Abyssins* having no *Civil War*, can easily reduce the greatest part of them to reason, or, at least, hinder them from molesting him.

## ZANGUEBAR or ZANZIBAR.

Under the general name of *ZANGUEBAR*, I comprehend all the *Coasts* of the Higher *Athiopia*: And these *Coasts* are, on the *Athiopian Ocean*, and the *Red Sea*, or *Gulf* of *Arabia*: I subdivide them into three parts; the *Coast* of *Zanguebar*, the *Coast* of *Ajan*, and the *Coast* of *Abex*. The *Coast* of *Zanguebar*, extends it self from the *Capes* to under the *Equator*, for the space of 5 or 600 *Leagues*: That of *Ajan* is between the *Equator* and the *Streight* of *Babel-Mandel*, likewise 600 *Leagues*. The *Coast* of *Abex* advances from that *Streight* to *Egypt*, and hath not above 400 *Leagues*. The first part was called by the *Ancients*, *Barbaria Regio*, the second *Azania Regio*, and the last *Trogloditica Regio*.

The particular *Coast* of *ZANGUEBAR* towards the *East*, regards some *Isles*, among which, that of *Zanguebar*, which hath communicated its name to the *Coast*; and then those of *Penda* and *Monfia* are the best known. *Maffy* makes mention here of the *Isle*, and *City* of *Querimba*; and *Texera*, of *Anisa*: The one and the other, possibly answer to some of those which *Sanctus* calls *St. Rocq*, and *Monfia*, which, he saith, are four *Islands*, two great, and two small.

*Penda* and *Zanguebar* are the greatest of all, and according to the form *Sanctus* gives them, are each of 100 *Leagues* circuit; *Monfia*, 50; and the others much less,

In Kings very rich and powerful.

less, produce Millions of *Oranges*, which want *niza*, not for *ces*.

Kings of *ches* on a *River* *Isle*, and *Quilon* *Isle*, *Pate*, *Mong*

table: *tans*, *Ivory*, *The*

that *Co* *Isle* of *just* bet *Guard* *one* and *of* this *ness*, and *but* of a *vessels* of the *Cap* the *heat* the *Ship* *fresh* the *good* *H* *nished* with their *vo* *Port* *serv* the *Isles* *return*.

The *v* and a *ha* *beautiful* a *good* *tr* by the *since* it the *Holl* *none*, or *great* *nu* *Citrons*, and and *Sheep*, *G* here *rece* *Their* *F* as *great* a *ful*. *Th* *year*, *its*



necessary for him.

Fortresses in the  
the Mountains  
m. The Neigh-  
the Turks, who  
Haber on the Red  
, and some others,  
and Zanguebar;  
e Monotungi, to-  
of the Moon, the  
s neighboring on  
towards the West;  
towards the North.  
Abyssins having no  
reduce the greatest  
or, at least, hinder  
im.

EBAR or  
IBAR.

al name of ZAN-  
comprehend all the  
: Æthiopia: And  
the Æthiopian Ocean,  
Gulf of Arabia: I  
three parts; the  
the Coast of Ajan,  
ex. The Coast of  
self from the Cafres  
for the space of 5  
at of Ajan is between  
Streight of Babel-  
o Leagues. The  
es from that Streight  
above 400 Leagues,  
ed by the Ancients,  
cond Azania Regis,  
a Regio.

st of ZANGUE-  
ast, regards some  
that of Zanguebar,  
cated its name to  
those of Penda and  
own. Nassy makes  
Ile, and City of  
a, of Anisa: The  
sibly answer to some  
e calls St. Rocq, and  
ch, are four Islands,  
all.

ar are the greatest  
to the form Sannus  
of 100 Leagues cir-  
nd the others much  
less,

less. All and particularly Zanguebar, produce quantity of Grains, as Rice, Millet, &c. quantity of fruits, as Citrons, Oranges, &c. and many Sugar Canes, which they know not how to refine; nor want they Fountains of fresh water. Aniza, and Querimba hath Mauna, but not so much esteemed as that of other places.

On the Coast are the Estates or Kingdoms of Mongalo, on one of the branches of Cuama, Angos, or Angouche on another Branch, or on another River of the same name, Mozambique Isle, and City on the Coast, as likewise Quiloa, and Mombaze. Melinda is no Isle, but on the Coast, so are Lamon, Pate, &c.

Mongalo, and Angos are little considerable: their Inhabitants black, Mahometans, and Pagans, they Traffique in Gold, Ivory, Calicoes, and Silk.

The Isle and City of Mozambique is on that Coast of Africa, which regards the Isle of Madagascar towards the East, and just between the Capes of Good hope, and Guardafuy, near 1000 leagues from the one and the other, some account is made of this City, and its Fort, for the goodness, and depth of its Port, though small; but of a very important retreat for the vessels of Portugal, after they have passed the Cape of Good hope, where oftentimes the heate, or the working or motion of the Ship distempers many Men, who refresh themselves here, there being a very good Hospital, and a Magazin always furnished with what ever is needfull, to finish their voyage to the East Indies, this Port serving them, going to the Indies, as the Isles of Sancta Helena, doth in their return.

The whole Isle is not above a League and a half in Circuit. Its City is not so beautiful as many have believed it, but of a good trade, wealthy and well frequented by the Portugalls. Its Castle is good, since it hath sustained divers assaults of the Hollanders. The soyle is dry, hath none, or very little fresh water, but the great number of fruits, as Cocons, Oranges, Citrons, as others common to the Indies, and and the quantity of Cattel, as Oxen, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, &c. which are found here recompence these inconveniencies: Their Figs long and large, and four times as great as ours are excellent, and healthful. The Tree sprouts, and dies every year; its shoots forth but one Branch,

where many Figs ripen one after another, so that they are found to continue almost all the year: the leaves are so great that two will cover a person of a moderate Stature: dying it leaves a root, which shoots forth another Figtree the year after.

Their Swins-flesh is so healthful, that Physicians order it for sick people. Their Pullain are good and delicate, though their Feathers, Flesh, Blood, and Bones, are very black, and if boyled in Water as black as Ink. Here they are said to have Sheep whose Tails weigh about five and twenty pound weight.

The Natives are black, of a mean stature, and very barbarous and fearful. The Governor of Mozambique reaps a great profit yearly, and particularly by the Mine, and Powder Gold, they trade for on the Coast. It is assured, that he gains yearly 100000 Crowns, and all are prohibited Traffick on that Coast, without his permission. Besides the Gold, they have Amber-greece, Ebony, and Ivory, and since 1617. Silver of several Mines have been newly discovered.

The Coyns, Weights, and Measures, of these Parts or Countreys. I shall include under this City, as being the chief place of Trade; and which, are the same with those of Lishour in Portugal, as having since they became Masters of it, settled their Coyns, Weights and Measures there, which for your further satisfaction, see in your discription of Lizbone in Portugall.

QUILOA is 150 Leagues, or little more from Mozambique, in a streight line: and near 250 by Sea, It hath two Cities, the old and the new: the old on the main Land, the new in an Island, divided from it by a small Channel: this last is much the fairest; its houses high, and of many stories are magnificent, and well furnished, accompanied with Gardens, where they gather excellent fruits throughout the whole year. The Kings of Quiloa once commanded all the Coast into Mozambique, and Sofala; but this estate hath received a great change since the coming of the Portugalls into these quarters. Its Inhabitants are yet rich, and have a great Traffique for Gold, which they bring from the main Land, where there is near as much, as on the Coast of Sofala, as also Silver, Amber-greece: Pearls and Musk, they are part black, part white, these coming from Arabia, and are Mahometans; the others of the Natives are partly

Kingdom of  
Quiloa, its  
chief places  
@.

In Portugall  
Idolaters,

*Idolaters*: Both the one and the other, go clad after the *Arab* or *Turkish* manner; the richest wearing Cloaths of *Gold* and *Silver*, *Silks*, *Fine Calicoes*, and *Scarlet*, enriching the Guards of their *Swords* and *Daggers* with fair *Pearls* and *Precious Stones*; as the *Women* do their *Ear Pendants* and *Bracelets*: They are very comely, of a civil behavior, neat in their Houses, and love to go in rich *Apparel*. Here the *People* are observed to use a strange custom to those of the *Female Sex*, which is not used by any other *Nation* or *People*, save themselves; which is, that they sow up the *Privy* parts of the *Female Children*, onely leaving a small vent for the issuing forth of their *Urine*. And thus sowed, they keep them carefully at home, until they be married; and those that are by their *Husbands* found not to have this sign of their *Perpetual Virginity*, are sent to their *Parents* with all kinde of ignominy, and by their *Parents* are as disgracefully received. The *Country*, though unhealthful to the *Europeans*, ought to be esteemed good, since the *Inhabitants* are rich, the *Soyl* fruitful in *Grains* and *Fruits*, feeding many *Beasts* and *Fowl*. Its *Forests* full of *Game*, and its *Neighboring Sea* full of excellent *Fish*.

The City and  
City of  
MOMBAZA.

**MOMBAZA** is 150 Leagues from *Quiloa*, seated on a little *Hill*, and in an *Island*, at the bottom of a *Gulf*, where great *Ships* may ride at *Anchor*. This *City* was formerly great, being about a *League* in circuit, encompassed with a strong *Wall*, and fortified with a good *Castle*, well *Peopled* of a good *Trade*, its *Streets* in good order, and its *Houses* high and well built with *Stone* and *Chalk*, appearing almost all towards the *Sea*. It was found out when *Vasco de Gama* was in the *Indies*; and afterwards taken and retaken divers times by the *Portugals* in 1505 and 1507. by *Francisco Almeida* in 1528. by *Nunno de Canna*, in 1589. by at the same time that the *Imbies*, a *People* that were *Maneaters*, assaulted the *City* towards the *Land*: But these eat all that fell into their hands, the *Portugals* contented themselves to pillage the *City*, and carry away *Slaves*, and *Captives* of those *Citizens* they could take. At present the *Portugals* keep there a *Fort*, by reason of the goodness of the *Haven*, and to maintain their *Trade*: The *Isle* of *Mombaza* is but small.

The Kingdom of Melinda is situated.

**MELINDA** is another *Kingdom*, but of a small extent, yet made consider-

able by the good intelligence it hath always preserved with the *Portugals*. Since *Vasco de Gama* passed there the first time in 1489. until this present, which hath stood it in good stead; the *Neighboring States* having been taken, pillaged, and burned divers times. This kept entire maintaining its *Trade* with the *Portugal*, and with the *East*: Its chief *City* bears the name of the *Kingdom*, seated in a fruitful and delightful *Soyl*, yielding great plenty of *Rice*, *Millet*, *Flesh*, good store of *Fruits*; as *Lemons*, *Citrons*, *Oranges*, &c. But not well furnished with *Corn*, the greatest part whereof is brought out of *Cambaya*, a *Province* in *India*. This *City* is fair, well *Walled*, and the *Houses* built after the *Moorish* manner, with many *Windows*, and *Terrasses*. The *Inhabitants* (as *Herodotus* noteth) on the *Sea Coasts*, are of the *Arabian* Breed, and of the same *Religion*: Those of the *Inlands* which are the original *Natives*, (he faith) are for the most part *Heathens*, and of an *Olive colour*, but inclining to *White*; and their *Women* of a very *White Complexion*, as in other places. They are said to be more civil in their *habit*, course of *life*, and entertainment in their *houses*, then the rest of this *Country*; and great *Friends* to the *Portugals*, who return the like kinde usage to them. This *Kingdom* of *Melinda* is not distant from *Mombaza* above 30 Leagues by *Land*, and 60 by *Sea*; whose *People* are of the same nature and disposition with those of *Melinda*.

The *Estates* of **LAMON**, **PATE**, and **CHELICIA**, and likewise some others are under the Government of *Melinda*. *Panbaxira*, King of *Lamon*, and Brother to the King of *Chelicia* surprized in 1589. *Roch Brito*, Governor of *Melinda*, and some other *Portugals*, whom they sold to the *Turks*. The *Admiral Thomas Sousa Cotinho* assaulted them, took; and cut off the head of the King of *Lamon*, quartered the others, and hung them up in divers places, to serve for example. These *Kings* are almost all *Mahometians*; yet here are found some few *Christians* which inhabit among them.

We have observed on the *Coast* of *Zanguebar* but five or six different *Estates* or *Kingdoms*; there are some others, but of lesser note, and all tributary, or in good intelligence, and trading with the *Portugals*.

The *Coast* of **AFAN** contains the Republick of **BRAYA**, which *Sannus* dis-

calls

call  
M  
D  
C  
buil  
tribe  
Rep  
ven  
men  
and  
it ru  
a de  
bore  
much  
very  
and  
the  
whic  
Silks  
A  
wards  
Grain  
well  
which  
Fruit  
of H  
Mabo  
bians  
they  
save  
Of C  
Olive  
very  
Arrow  
boa  
which  
Magad  
A  
come  
doms  
Arabi  
Great  
each  
the o  
regard  
famous  
the A  
Zacod  
Isles,  
and n  
Nubia  
ander  
thence  
the be  
Aristo  
chief  
doms,  
I, Zi

calls *Barrabas*; then the Kingdoms of *MAGADOXO*, *ADEA*, and *ADELLE*; some of their People on the Coast are White. *BRAVA* is well built, an indifferent Mat, rich, and pays tribute to the *Portugals*. It is the only Republick at present in *Affrica*, being governed by Twelve *Counsellors* or *Statesmen*. *MAGADOXA* is its chief City, and hath sometimes been so powerful, that it ruled over all this Coast; it is situate in a delightful and fruitful Soyl, and neighbored by a safe and large Haven, which is much frequented by the *Portugals*, and is very rich, affording *Gold*, *Honey*, *Wax*, and above all, *Abyssin* Slaves, which by the *Portugals* are held in great value, for which, they bring them in exchange, the *Silks*, *Spices*, *Drugs*, &c. of *India*.

*ADEA* extends it self but little towards the *Sea*: The Country is fertile in *Grains*, as, *Wheat*, *Barley*, *Rice*, &c. It is well shaded with *Woods*, and large *Forests*, which are plentifully furnished both with *Fruits* and *Cattle*, besides a great increase of *Horses*. The *Inhabitants* are of the *Mahometan Religion*, and follow the *Arabians* in many of their *Customs*, from whom they were descended, keeping much of their *Language*, and in their *habit*, naked, save onely from the middle downwards, Of *Complexion*, for the most part, of an *Olive colour*, and well proportioned, not very expert in *Arms*, except in poisoned *Arrows*. Its other chief places are *Barrabes* and *Quilmanca*, seated on the *Sea*, which is called the Coast of *Ajan*, as is *Magadoxo*.

*ADELLE* within these few years is become the most powerful of all these *Kingdoms*: Its Estates extending both on the *Arabian Gulf* or *Red Sea*, and on the *Great Ocean*, stretching 300 Leagues on each side, *Cape Guardafuy* ending both the one and the other towards the East, regards in the *Sea* the Isle of *Zocotora*, famous for the quantity and goodness of the *Aloes* here gathered, which they call *Zocotrin*, about which are several other Isles, but not so considerable, being small, and many not inhabited. The *Arab of Nubia* would make us believe, that *Alexander the Great* was in this *Island*, drove thence the *Inhabitants*, and planted *Greeks* the better to manage the *Aloes*, which *Aristotle* had so much prized to him. Its chief City takes its name from the *Kingdoms*, its other places of most note, are, 1. *Zeila*, of old *Avatia*, and its Gulf *A-*

*vatia Sinus*, is one of the best places of the Kingdom of *Adel*, though about the City there wants *Water*, yet the Country farther off, furnishes *Wheat*, *Barley*, *Millet*, *Oyl of Sesamum*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Fruits*, *Gold*, *Ivory*, and *Incense*: They sell to the *Turks* and *Arabs*, abundance of *Abyssin Slaves* which they take in War, and in exchange receive *Arms*, *Horses*, &c. This *Zeila* is a noted Port Town, well frequented with *Merchants*, by reason of the variety of good *Commodities* that it yields. Once of great beauty and esteem, till in the year 1516. it was sacked and burned by the *Portugals*; before which, it was esteemed the most remarkable Empire of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian Trade*. 2. *Barbora*, and 3. *Meta*, are two of the most noted Sea-Port Towns in all *Adel*, both under the *Turks* jurisdiction. The first is seated on the same Sea Coast, as *Zeila* is, well frequented by *Merchants*; nigh to a lofty Promontory, which they call *Mounr Fellez*: And the last is seated near the *Cape of Guardafuy*. The People inhabiting on the Sea Coasts, are descended from the *Arabs*, and of the *Mahometan Religion*; but those towards the Inland Countreys, of the old *Æthiopic Race*, and wholly *Gentiles*.

The Coast of *ABEX* hath for its principal places, *Aquico* of old *Magnum Littus*, *Maccua Isle*, *Macaria Insula*, and *Snaque Ptolomæi Fœrærum*. The *Turk* hath a *Bassa* at *Suaque*, and some say another at *Maccua* or *Aquico*. *Suaque* is in the midst of the Coast of *Affrica*, which lies on the *Red Sea*, or *Arabian Gulf*, distant from *Sues* in *Egypt*, which ends this *Gulf*, 250 and odd Leagues; and from *Babel Mandel*, which begins it, 260, or little more. So the Authority of this *Bassa* extends almost quite over this *Sea*. The Isle of *Maccua* hath good *Pastures*, feeds much *Cattel*: *Aquico* is almost opposite to *Maccua*, and both hath commodious *Havens*. Its other chief places, are, *Canfila*, *Dassila*, *Emacen*, *Barva*, *Zama*, *Corberia*, and *Carna*.

About this Coast of *Abex* are several Isles, as, *Babia de Cabras*, *Suaque*, *Mirc*, *Meger*, *Ballaccia*, *Maccua*, *St. Peitire*, with several others not worth the naming.

All this Coast of *Abex* hath been under the Government of *Bernagasso* in *Abyssin*, and belonged not to the *Turk*, till within this hundred years. A Country dry, untilld, but of some Trade: The People fierce, retaining much of their ancient

P p Barbarism.

ce it hath *algals*. Since the first time in which hath stood neighboring States, and, and burned, and maintaining, and with the, and the name of fruitful and de- great plenty of store of *Fruits*; *anges*, &c. But, the greatest out of *Cambaya*, is City is fair, uses built after many Windows, *inhabitants* (as *Illy-* casts, are of the same *Religion*: which are the origi- ure for the most *Olive colour*, but their *Women* of a is in other places, ore civil in their entertainment in st of this Coun- to the *Portugals*, usage to them. is not distant 30 Leagues by whose *People* are disposition with

ON, *PATE*, and likewise some government of *Me-* of *Lamon*, and *Helicia* surprized vernor of *Melin-* gals, whom they Admiral *Thomas* hem, took; and King of *Lamon*, and hung them up rve for example. all *Mahometans*; few *Christians* n. n the Coast of different *Estates* some others, but tary, or in good g with the *Por-*

*N* contains the which *Sannus* calls

The Coast of Abex with its Bay, p. 37.

Barbarism. They Fish Corral near the Isle of *Suaque* and *Aquico*; they frequently pass from *Suaque* to *Ziden*, in *Arabia*, which serves for a *Port* to *Mecca*, and is about 100 Leagues over. This is the Traject which the *Arab* of *Nubia* describes between *Ahab* and *Giorda*, which answer to *Suaque* and *Ziden*.

Places on the Coast of Zanguebar.

On the Coast of *Zanguebar*, are found these following *Cities* and *Towns*, viz. *Quilmanca*, *Pata*, *Lamon*, *Oya*, *Padraonum*, *Melinda*, *Mombaccia*, *Quiloa*, *Mozambicha*, and *Zefala*.

And about the Coast of *Zanguebar*, are seated the Isles of *Monfa*, *Sanctus Rochus*, *Zanzibara*, *Penda*, *Aliadore*, *Comera*, *Sanctus Christophorus*, and *Sanctus Spiritus*.

Several Kingdoms, Provinces, or Countreys in the Empire of the Abyssins, with their chief places.

The chief Places in the several *Kingdoms*, *Provinces*, or *Countreys*, spoken of before in this *Empire* of the *Abyssins*, are as followeth, viz.

*Chaxuma* and *Sabaina* are the chief in the Kingdom or Province of *TIGRE*.

*Angotina*, *Bugana*, *St. Maria*, and *Olabi*, in the Kingdom or Province of *ANGOTA*.

*Degibeldara*, in the Kingdom or Province of *DANCALA*.

*Dobas* and *Nundina*, in the Kingdom or Province of *FATIGARA*.

*Xoa*, in the Kingdom or Province of *XOA*.

*Fugi*, *Barrana*, and *Barn*, in the Kingdom or Province of *AMARA*.

*Machada*, *Baza*, *Ermia*, *Azuga*, *Chilcut*; *Eserc*, *Cemenia*, *Ambiami*, *Amasen*, and *Syre*, in the Kingdom or Province of *BAGAMEDRI*.

*Ambadara*, *Ambiacantiva*, and *Mitigazi*, in the Kingdom or Province of *DAMBEA*.

*Agog*, *Gorraua*, and *Sesila*, in the Kingdom or Province of *GOTAME*.

*Marauma* and *Cafates*, in the Kingdom or Province of *CAFATES*.

*Falacia*, *Gawi*, and *Zet*, in the Kingdom or Province of *NAREA*.

And *Gorga*, *Bava*, and *Gafat*, in the Kingdom or Province of *GORGA*.

The Empire of the ABYSSINS, or the Lower ÆTHIOPIA.

This *Empire* of the *ABYSSINS*, *Heylin* makes to be the *Dominions* of *Empire* of *Prefter John* or *Preshbyter John*, and faith, That he is of such great force, that he is able to bring into the Field upon a sudden occasion, a Million of fighting Men; and of his *Wealth* and *Riches*, many speak wonders, some saying, he is able to purchase half of all the World, if it were to be sold: Others make it not so great, but say, that besides his necessary expences in the management of *State Affairs*; the payment of his *Army*; the pomp in his *Court*, &c. He lays up yearly in his *Treasury*, Three Millions of Crowns. But without doubt, his *Revenue* and *Force* is great; for it is said, That he himself proffered the *Portugals* a Million of *Money*, and another of *Men*, if they would employ them in a War against the *Infidels*.

The Title of the Emperor of the Lower and the Kingdom of the Abyssins.

The *Government* of these *Emperors*, is absolutely *Tyrannical*; the *People* being used more like *Slaves* than *Subjects*; treating them as he pleases, as well to their *lives* as *estates*, giving honors to whom he pleases, which upon any slight occasion he taketh away again. He is held in such great reverence among all his *Subjects*, as well rich as poor, that at his name they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers; and reverence his *Pavilion* as they pass by it, though he is not in it: And to keep up this reverence which he holds due to him, he seldom shews himself to his *Subjects*, and then not without his *Crown* on his head, a *Silver Crucifix* in his hand, and besides, his face is covered with a *Vale* of *Taffety*, which according as he is pleased to grace the person he talketh with, he listeth up and putteth down, to shew him his face.

The Title of this Great and Mighty *Emperor*, I shall borrow from *Heylin*, who thus hath it. *N. N. Supreme* of his *Kingdoms*, and the *Beloved* of *God*; the *Pillar* of *Faith*; sprung from the *Stock* of *Judah*; the *Son* of *David*; the *Son* of *Solomon*; the *Son* of the *Column* of *Sion*; the *Son* of the *Seed* of *Jacob*; the *Son* of the *Hand* of *Mary*; the *Son* of *Nahu*, after the *Flesh*; the *Son* of *St. Peter* and *Paul*, after the *Spirit*.

He is called

Spiri  
Ethi  
doms.  
Goa,  
nazo,  
Foun  
dron,  
Sabai  
Sheba  
Region  
Th  
which  
the E  
baptiz  
more g  
of St.  
they h  
of the  
opinion  
as they  
Males  
dren; a  
days, a  
Circumc  
tized, a  
me of th  
ceives af  
fter the  
after the  
themselv  
phany day  
that John  
hold, th  
derived f  
nal Propa  
one Nat  
the recei  
it unfit  
Seasts w  
clean, are  
not eating  
bath day  
riefts ne  
ther do t  
are force  
sweat of  
hands,  
first Gene  
over a Bo  
(and as t  
at Ferus  
rents the  
We l  
Higher a  
that whic  
East; th  
the Sourc  
ly discou  
proceed

ABYS-  
the Lower  
IA.

ABYSSINS, The I. of Ethiopia, and the River of the Emperor.  
The Dominions of *Presbyter John*, such great force, in the Field upon occasion of fighting and Riches, many saying, he is able to make it not so tedious his necessary assistance of *Stac Afhis Army*; the he lays up yearly millions of Crowns, *Revenue and Force* That he himself Million of Money, they would employ *Infidels*. These *Emperors*, is the People being *Subjects*; treat- as well to their poor to whom he slight occasion he is held in such his *Subjects*, as at his name they touch the ground and reverence by it, though he up this reverence, he seldom *Subjects*, and then his head, a *Sil-* and besides, his of *Tassety*, which to grace the per- listeth up and in his face. *eat and Mighty* He is *from Heylin*, who *am of his King-* God; the *Pillar* *Stock of Judah*; *on of Solomon*; *son*; the *Son of* of the *Hand of* after the *Flesh*; *Paul*, after the *Spirit*.

*Spirit*. *Emperor of the Higher and Lower Æthiopia*, and of the most *Mighty Kingdoms, Dominions, and Countreys of Xoa, Goa, Caffare, Fatigar, Angota, Balagnazo, Adea, Angne, Goyame, where the Fountains of Nile, Amara, Banguamedron, Ambea, Vagucum, Tigreman, Sabaim; the Birth-place of the Queen of Sheba, Bernagallum, and Lord of all the Regions, unto the confines of Egypt.*

They profess the *Christian Religion*, which was first made known unto them by the Eunuch of *Queen Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip the Evangelist*, and more generally received by the Preaching of *St. Matthew the Apostle*. Since which, they have much swerved from the purity of the true *Religion*, by their many corrupt opinions which are crept in amongst them; as they use *Circumcision* both to their *Males and Females*, when they are Children; and they *Baptize* their *Males*, forty days, and their *Females*, eighty days after *Circumcision*. That *Infants* dying unbaptized, are sanctified by the *Womb*, by virtue of the *Eucharist* which the *Mother* receives after her *Conception*: They administer the *Eucharist* to *Infants*, presently after they are *Baptized*. They *Baptize* themselves in *Ponds and Lakes*, every *Epi-* *shany day*, as supposing that to be the day that *John Baptized Christ* in *Jordan*. They hold, that the reasonable *Soul of Man* is derived from their *First Parents* by *Seminal Propagation*. They acknowledge but one *Nature*, and one *Will in Christ*. After the receiving of the *Sacrament* they hold it unfitting to spit until *Sun-set*. Those *Beasts* which in the *Old Law* are held unclean, are so esteemed with them, they *eat* of them: They keep their *Sabbath day* on *Saturdays*: They allow their *priests* no yearly means or stipends, neither do they suffer them to beg; but they are forced to get their livelihoods by the sweat of their brows, and labor of their hands. They accept onely of the three first *General Councils*. They have moreover a *Book*, which is writ in eight *Volumes* (and as they say) by the *Apostles* assembled at *Jerusalem* for that purpose, the contents thereof they most strictly keep.

We have divided *Æthiopia* into the *Higher and Lower*; esteemed the *Higher*, that which is towards the *North*, and the *East*; the *Lower*, that which is towards the *South and West*. We have succinctly discoursed of the parts of the *Higher*, proceed we now to the *Lower*.

This *Lower Æthiopia* extends it self from the *River of the Camarones*, where the bottom of the *Gulf of St. Thomas* is, and so turning about the *Capes of Negra, Bona Esperanza, and Des Cartes*, into the *River of Cuama*; which bounds it from *Zanguebar*, part of the *Higher Æthiopia*; as the other doth from the *Kingdom of Benim*, part of *Guiny* which is in *Africa or Lybia Interior*.

We have likewise subdivided this *Lower Æthiopia* into three parts, *viz.* Into *Congo, Monomotapa, and Cafretia*, or the *Countrey of the Cafres*. We may yet subdivide these three parts, each into two others, which will make six. The first shall be, what is between *Guiny and Congo*, and the *Kingdom of Congo*; the second, *Monomotapa and Mono-Emugi*; and the last, the *Land of Cafres* on this side, and *Westward*; and the *Land of Cafres* beyond, and *Eastward of the Cape of Good Hope*.

Between *Guiny* and the *Kingdom of Congo*, there are divers *Kingdoms*, and divers *People*: The *Ambosins and Camarones*, are on the *Sea*; then the *Kingdoms of the Capones*, the *Countrey of Gabom*, the three *Kingdoms of Cacombo, Gabom, and Pongo*; of which, this last is most powerful. Among these *Estates* are the *Capes of Lopo Goncalves*; up in the *Land*, are the *Kingdoms of Biafra, Medra, Danma, &c.*

The *Land of AMBOSINS and CAMARONES*, are near the *River of Camarones*; a *Countrey* very fertile. The *Lands of Capones and Angra* are pleasant, because of the many fresh streams which water them. The first are poor, the *Capones* are malicious, those of *Angra* addicted to *Arms*.

The *Estates or Kingdoms* which are about the *Cape of Goncalves*, have their *People* of the same *Tongue*, the same *Religion* (who are *Idolaters*) and the same *Manners*, and their *Kings and Lords*, are in peace, and in good intelligence with one another: Those nearest the *Sea*, are the most courteous and civil, by reason of the confluence of strangers; and when they *Trade* with those of *Europe*, they white their faces with *Chalk*; their beautiful *Garments* are made of *Mats*, Tissued with the *Rind of certain Trees*, and properly accommodated.

Those of *Biafra* more advanced in *Land*, are very barbarous, adding themselves to *Witchcrafts*, and sometimes sacrificing

Lower Æthiopia, between Africa and Lybia

In Guiny and Congo

See Page 60



sacrificing their Children to Devils. Those of *Medra*, *Dauma*, and some others further off, are almost quite unknown, and possibly not worth regard.

The *Portugals* traded here alone along time, and possessed several parts on this Coast: within few years, the *Hollanders* have taken divers places from them, some of which they have since retaken.

### The Kingdom of CONGO.

Kingdom of Congo, with six Provinces adjacent, viz.

Beyond the *Equinoctial Line*, and unto *Cape Negro*, lies the Kingdom of CONGO, under the name of which, we comprehend many others which have been Subjects, Tributaries, or Allies to the King of Congo, as are the Kingdoms of *Loango*, and the *Anziquaines* to the North; of *Cacongo*, and the people *Gallas*, or *Giaquas*, to the East; of *Angola*, *Malamba*, *Mataman*, and others, to the South.

Kingdom of Loango, with six Provinces, viz.

The Kingdom of LOANGO hath its principal City of the same name, others say, *Banza Loango*, or simply *Banza*; it is seated on the *Sea*, as is *Quilongo*, *Quavri*, and *Mayumba*. It comprehends six Provinces, and is throughout indifferent fertile in grains; affords excellent Fruits; Wine of *Palms*, breeds many *Cattel*, and all things necessary, for life is found here; it is well stored with *Elephants*, having more than any other Country in these parts; they have quantity of *Ivory*, but have neither *Gold*, nor *Silver*. The Country is very hot, by reason of its lying under the line, but it is indifferent healthful, and well peopled. Their King once subject, writes himself now but *Allie* to the King of Congo; and is called *Mani-Loango*, and the Governours of the six Provinces, likewise *Mani*, that is, Lord of such or such a Province. Their subjects are all *Bramas*, who by Religion are *Heathens*.

Kingdom of Congo, with six Provinces, viz.

The Kingdom of CONGO may be said to be the fairest of the lower *Æthiopia*, though those of the *Monomotapa*, and *Movo-Emugi* have more extent, yet hath he always been esteemed the most Polite; hath had all his neighbours subjects, and the most part yet his Allies. It may have in length 200 leagues, and about 120 on the Coast. It is subdivided into six great Provinces, to wit, *Bamba*, *Songo*, *Sunda*,

*Pango*, *Batta*, and *Pemba*: which together hath 30 or 40000 little Towns.

*Songo*, *Sunda*, and *Pango* lies upon, and mounting from the sea up the River *Zaire*, *Bamba*, *Pemba*, and *Batta* are towards the River of *Canza*, and the Lake of *Aquilonda*, these three last making the most Southern parts; the three other the most Northern of the Kingdom: and all take their names from the principal places where the Governours of the Provinces reside.

The Country of BAMB A, is well stored with *Beasts*, and *Birds*, both tame and wild; well watered with *Rivers*, hath *Mines of Silver*, and its people exceeding strong. Its chief places are, *Bamba*, on the River *Loze*; *Motole*, on the River *Dorati*; *Bengo*, also *Pavo*, *Lengo*, and *Mussulo*, on the *Sea*.

SONGO lies on both sides the River *Zaire*, which sends forth many turbulent streams, and hath so many Islands that one part of it hath very little to do with the other; its chief places are *Sonho*, nigh to *Cape de Pedro*, and on a branch of the *Zaire*, also, *Bommo*, *Matinga*, *Cabinde*, *Malemba*, and *Cascau*, which three last are on the *Sea*.

SUNDA is indifferent fertile, hath several rich *Mines of Metals*, among the rest the *Inhabitants* set the greatest esteem upon *Iron*, by reason that of it they make their Materials for *War*; it is parted by the *Zaire*. This Country furnishes foreign Merchants with several rich *Furrs*, as *Sables*, *Martrons*, &c. Its several chief places, are *Sunda*, *Betequa*, *Iri*, and *Quincaso*.

PANGO is but barren, its Inhabitants barbarous, but strong in Arms; its chief places are *Pango*, *Cundi-Funquenes*, and *Angote*; and this Country is watered with the River *Zaire*.

BATTA is also of a barren soile, and its people also barbarous, but indifferent well skill'd in Arms; and that being forced to it, rather to defend themselves, then to offend others. Its chief places are, *Batta*, *Agisymba*, and *Congo*.

PEMBA is held to be the richest, and pleasantest Province of all Congo, being very fertile in *Grains*, *Fruits*, &c. hath good water; the air is healthful, the Inhabitants since the *Portugals* sat footing there, are become very civil, imitating them both in behavior and apparel.

In this Province of *Bemba*, its chief City is called *Banza*, that is, the Court, and

and  
is th  
an ce  
ty o  
with  
give  
to ha  
possi  
and  
being  
great  
The  
of Ba  
of th  
Com  
seize  
ba, P  
and Z  
The  
dom  
Danda  
defcen  
Zaire  
defcen  
hath  
by rea  
falls wh  
at its  
it enlarg  
ity of  
lets th  
preties i  
into the  
lence,  
sweetne  
intermi  
Sea.  
Naviga  
Isle of  
last; It  
high, th  
and wh  
falt.  
The  
and eas  
idle: th  
Beasts  
stones i  
of Prey  
curious  
cats, &c  
Instrum  
mixture  
many v  
is of gre  
Provinc  
pecially  
even in  
through

*Bamba*: which together  
little Towns.

*Pango* lies upon,  
sea up the River  
and *Batta* are to-  
*za*, and the Lake  
ree last making the  
the three other  
the Kingdom: and  
n the principal pla-  
s of the Provinces

*AMBA*, is well  
i *Birds*, both tame  
d with *Rivers*, hath  
s people exceeding  
s are, *Bamba*, on the  
n the River *Dorati*;  
*go*, and *Mussulo*, on

both sides the River  
orth many turbulent  
o many *Islands* that  
ery little to do with  
laces are *Sonho*, high  
d on a branch of the  
e, *Matinga*, *Cabinde*,  
*au*, which three last

ifferent fertile, hath  
e *Metals*, among the  
et the greatest esteem  
n that of it they make  
ar; it is parted by  
Country furnishes for-  
n several rich *Furrs*,  
e. Its several chief  
tequa, *Iri*, and *Quin-*

barren, its Inhabi-  
strong in Arms; its  
e, *Cundi-Funquenes*,  
s Country is watered

of a barren soile, and  
ous, but indifferent  
and that being for-  
defend themselves,  
Its chief places are,  
d *Gongon*.

to be the richest, and  
of all *Congo*, being  
*Fruits*, &c. hath  
healthful, the *In-*  
*portugals* fat footing  
ery civil, imitating  
and apparel.

*Bamba*, its chief  
that is, the Court,  
and

and which the *Portugals* call *St. Salvador*, is the residence of the *King*, seated on an eminence, which discovers the Country on all sides. This situation together with its being in the middle of the Estate, gives it a great advantage, some esteem it to have 10000 *Inhabitants*, others 100000; possibly those understand 10000 families, and those 10000 souls; for the *King* being powerful, and his Court alwaies great, there cannot but be multitudes. The *Iste* and *City of Loanda*, on the Coast of *Bamba*, were not long since in the hands of the *Portugalls*, now the *East India Company* of the *United Provinces*, have seized it. Its other chief places are *Simba*, *Pemba*, on the River *Danda*, *Lemba*, and *Tinda*.

The most famous Rivers of this Kingdom are the *Zaire*, the *Lelunda*, the *Danda*, and the *Coanza*; the three last descend from the lake of *Aquilonda*; the *Zaire* from the lake of *Zaire*, from whence descends likewise the *Nile*; the *Zaire*, hath 400 Leagues course, is very rapid, by reason of the many *Cataracts*, or great falls which it hath from the Mountains; at its entrance into the Estates of *Congo*, it enlarges it self much, embraces quantity of *Islands*, and at its mouth hath no less than 8 or 10 Leagues breadth, yet presses its waters 15 or 20 Leagues farther into the Sea; and that with so great a violence, that its waters retain their natural sweetness, without being corrupted; or intermingled with the salt waters of the Sea. The Rivers *Danda*, and *Coanza* are Navigable, and receive great *Ships*. The *Iste* of *Loanda* is near the mouth of the last; It is observed that when the sea is high, the springs of running water are fresh, and when the Sea falls, they become salt.

The *Congolans* are naturally very sweet, and easy, able, and strong, but dull and idle: they will not take the pains to tame *Beasts* for service, nor to employ their fine Stones in *buildings*, nor make their *Birds* of Prey, for *Hawking*; yet make they curious *Cloths*, *Velvets*, *Damasks*, *Brocats*, &c. They have no harmony in their Instruments of *Musick*, but a confused mixture of many cords or strings, and many voices content them; their money is of *grey shells*, taken on the Coast of the Province of *Bamba*, and these shells especially the females are much esteemed, even in other Kingdoms, and almost through all *Æthiopia*. Their *Grain*s,

*Fruits*, *Waters*, *Fowle*, *Sea* and *River Fish* are excellent. They have store of *Elephants*, *Mines of Silver*, *Iron*, *Chrystall*, *Marble*, *Fasper*, *Porphyre*, &c.

They know not their *Histories*, but by the Reigns of their *Kings*, and without specifying the time, for they have no letters, much less learning; and hereupon some would make us believe that *Emanuel* of *Portugal*, having sent a famous *Ambassador* into *Congo*, with many presents, among others three fair books, excellently bound, and which contained the *Cannons*, the *Laws Imperial*, the *Ordinances*, *Civil right*, the *Infortiate*, the *Rubricks*, &c. and with these books, many *Doctors of Law* to teach the knowledge of them; and when the *King of Congo* did understand the subject that these fair books contain'd, and knew the profession of the *Doctors*, he was so surpris'd, that he remained sometime silent; but in the end, he caus'd these books to be burned, saying, That he feared they would overthrow the very foundation of his Estate; and that he contented himself to judge according to reason, and need no other Interpreter then common sense, but with all protesting that he would remain a good, and intire friend to *Emanuel* King of *Portugall*, and so sent back his *Doctors*. The Author of the *Essay* of the wonders of Nature applies this story to the *King of the Abyssins*: It is much at one, let us return to *Congo*.

They say, that the Province of *Bamba* can furnish at a need 400000 strong and warlike men; the other Provinces are no less, nor possibly worse peopled then this, but less addicted to *Armes*. This being esteem'd the *Bulwark* of the Kingdom, affect'd to the service of their Prince, and so strong that at one blow of a sword they can strike of an *Oxes head*, or cut a *Slave* in two. Their *Elephants* are so great, that some of their teeth are found to weigh 200 l. and they make such esteem of their tails when they are old, that sometimes they exchange three *Slaves* for one *tail*. They make of them divers *Ornaments*, and *Cords* for their Instruments of *Musick*. The Kingdom falls only to the *Males*, and in default of *Legitimates*, to *Bastards*: to shun all process, all riches belongs to the *King*, who disposes of them to whom he pleases, keeping to himself a sufficient revenue. *Christianity* hath been introduced about 150 years agoe, but not without much difficulty in its beginning.

State of  
Cacongo.

East of Congo, and South of *Anziquaines*, is the Estate of *CACONGO*; and South of *Cacongo*, are, the *Giaques* or *Faggas*, which the *Abyssins* call *Gallas*, and others *Imbagolas*. These People are Vagabonds, Cruel, Men-eaters, like to the *Anziquaines* and *Mocoveies*, living onely on what they steal from their Neighbors. The great *Fagge* disposes absolutely, both of their *Idolatri*, and their *War*.

Kingdom of  
Angola.

The Kingdom of *ANGOLA*, once *Abanda*, is between *Congo* on the North; *Mataman* on the South; *Malemba* on the East; and the *Sea*, on the West. This Kingdom hath 100 Leagues of Coast, to wit, from the tenth unto the fourth degree of *Meridional Latitude*; and that which continues unto *Cape Negro*, and belongs to divers Lords, tributary to it. The principal City of the Countrey, is *Cabazza*, or *Engaze*, and likewise *Dongo*; which Modern Authors place at the meeting of many Rivers. It is 75 or 80 Leagues from the Sea. The Mountains of *Cambamba*, rich in Mines of *Silver*, are in this Countrey, which the *Portugals* cause to be labored. Its other chief places are, *Mafingas*, on the River *Goanza*; *Benguela*, seated on the Sea, on the Bay of *Thora*; 30 and *Quicongo*, a Sea-Port Town.

Trade.

Through the whole Countrey there is a great traffick for *Slaves*, 20 or 25000 yearly being transported from the Port of *Leanda*. There are such multitudes in this Kingdom, that the *Grand Soba*, as they say, can in a moment raise 100000 Men; and that in *Anno 1584*, he raised 1200000. In *Anno 1585*, 600000. Yet these last were put to flight by 200 *Portugals* at the head of 10000 *Æthiopians*. The first by 150 *Portugals* at the head of 8 or 10000 *Congolans*, which may make us judge of the goodnes of their *Militia*.

The Kingdom is divided into *Provinces* or *Mirindes*, which have each their *Sobas*, which a hundred years ago, or little more, were onely Governours for the Kings of *Congo*, now subje& all to the Great *Soba* of *Angola*, who makes onely some present 50 to the King of *Congo*. Its People use the same *Tongue*, *Money*, and *Arms*, with those of *Congo*.

## The Empire of the *MONO-MOTAPA*.

THE *MONO-MOTAPA*, that is, the Emperor, King, or Sovereign of *Motapa*, is, according to *Vincent Blanc*, called by his People *Tabaqui*, and possesses an Empire so great, that it is made of 1000 Leagues circuit: (In the manner that *Vincent Blanc* describes it, and gives it bounds, it cannot have less than 2000.) It is said by him, that this Prince deports himself with gravity, and that there is no access to his person, but with very great submissions: That he is always adorned with *Chains* and *Precious Stones*, like to a *Woman*, or rather like a *Spouse*: Is pleased to receive Presents, but gives little: Keeps a great *Seraglio* of *Women*, which it is forbid to approach; and one part of his Guard, according to some, is likewise composed of *Women*, who are active at their Arms, and courageous. He calls his principal City *Madrogan*, (which is the *Mono-Motapa* of others) where his Royal Palace is, which is magnificent and great, flanked with *Towers* without, with four principal *Gates*; within hung with *Tapestries* of *Cotton* mixed with *Gold*, and adorned with many rich and stately moveables.

Besides this *Palace*, he hath others which they call *Symbaoe*, that is, *Courts*, situated in divers parts of the Estate. Among these Buildings they make great account of that which is towards *Buina*, both for the wonderful greatness of the *Stones*, wherewith it is walled, as for the ancient, and unknown *Inscriptions*, which are above the *Gate*. This name of *Symbaoe* seems to retain something of the *Agisymba* of the *Antients*.

This *Prince* is always clothed after the manner of his Predecessors, nor may he change any thing, except the Ornaments of his Neck and *Buskins*: He wears no *Foreign Stuffs* for fear of *Poison* and *Witchcrafts*; his *Drink* is *Wine* of *Palm*, distilled with *Manna*, *Amber*, and *Musk*: He spends much in *Odors* and *Perfumes*, making them be mixed in those *Lights* which are carried before him, and which serves where he is. His *Court* hath a great many *Officers* which serve with order and silence, besides which, they are thronged with *People*.

Peop  
becau  
Shou  
ing to  
but a  
Kings

The

stature

that th

are com

to Tra

selves

their a

*Cotton*

fort ha

brought

*Maid*s

they ar

*Wood*,

*Clock*,

greatest

may ha

but the

ways th

inherit

*Women*

none off

of them.

fit to be

*Natural*

*Conception*

with a gre

haveno *P*

affairs are

place, so

fact or c

those for

ze the n

sudden ex

King to

*Christians*

the begin

by the co

wife perm

*Mines* of

Countrey

rich, th

the *Prin*

the *Mine*

*Gold* in t

of *Dos*

of *Cuam*

are towa

of the *C*

then is r

have nec

The

*phants*, v

other *Be*

People. His Officers are easily known, because they carry the *Talmassara* on their Shoulder, more or less enriched according to their condition or degree of place; but all in the same fashion with the *Kings*.

The *Inhabitants* are all black, of a mean stature, active, and such good *Footmen*, that they are said to out-run *Horses*: They are courageous, addicted to Arms, as also to Trade. The commonalty cover themselves but below the Waste, for which, their apparel is made of *Skins of Beasts*, *Cotton Cloth*, or the like; but the better sort have *Cloths* and *Stuffs* which are brought them from the *Indies*: The *Maids* cover nothing of their body till they are married. Their *Houses* are of *Wood*, or *Earth* whitened, fashioned like a *Clock*, or rather like a *Bell*. Those of the greatest *Lords*, are the highest. They may have as many *Wives* as they please, but the who is the first espoused, is always the chief, and her Children alone inherit the *Fathers* goods and estate. The *Women* are here used very respectfully, none offering so much as to take the *Wall* of them. The *Maids* are here not thought fit to be married till their *Menstrua* or *Natural Purgations* shews their ability for *Conception*, which makes them solemnize with a great feast their first *Flux*. They have no *Prison* in all the Country, but all affairs are determined and ended on the place, so soon as they are convicted of the fact or crime; but above all offenders, those for *Theft*, *Adultery*, and *Witchcraft*, are the most severely treated. And this sudden execution of criminals, makes the King to be revered by his Subjects. *Christianity* found here some difficulties at the beginning; at present it is established by the consent of the King, who hath likewise permitted the *Portugals* to work the *Mines of Gold and Silver*, which in this Country are in great quantity, and so rich, that there are some, who call this Prince, *The Emperor of Gold*. Not only the *Mines*, but likewise the *Rivers* have *Gold* in their *Sand*, among which, those of *Dos Infantes*, of the *Holy Ghost*, and of *Cuama*, towards their *Springs*, which are towards the Lake *Zachaf*; but those of the Country, care for no more of it, when it is necessary to truck for what they have need of.

The *Woods* have great store of *Elephants*, which yield them *Ivory*; as also other *Beasts*. Hath rich *Pastures*, which

are well furnished with *Cattel*, hath *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Fowl*, is well watered with many *Rivers*, in which are abundance of *Fish*. The *Air* is temperate, except that their *Winter* is colder then may be expected in that Climate, by reason of the *Mountains* which inclose it on all sides, and cross the Country: And their *Winter* is in the same time, when we have our *Summer*, to wit, when the *Sun* is about the *Tropick of Cancer*.

The *Mono-Motapa* is said to be one of the most powerful Princes of *Affrica*; if we consider the greatness of his *Estate*, his *Riches*, and the great number of *Princes* which hold of him, or are under his Dominion. Of these *Princes*, some are on the main *Lands*, as that of *Butna*; others on the *Coast*, and between the *Cafres*, as those of *Zefala*, *Quitewa*, *Sedanda*, and *Chicana*. They yearly receive the fire which the *Mono-Motapa* sends them, or upon refusal, are accounted *Rebels*. But all these People, though hardy, and addicted to Arms, are unexpert in them; so that their number would do them little good, if assaulted by the *Europeans*. They believe onely in *One God*, and punish with death, *Idolaters* and *Sorcerers*.

But a word or two of the chief places of this Empire, and first with the Kingdom or Province of *BUTUA*, whose chief places, are, *Butna*, *Carma*, *Gallita*, *Zet*, seated on the Lake *Zachaf*, *Dobdel*, *Calburas*, *Tialfo* and *Zimbra*, both under the *Tropick of Capricorn*. *Bafat*, *Quiticni*, *Armeta*, *Maitagasi*, *Boro*, *Amara*, *Giera*, and *Hagala*; most of which, are *Cities* of some account, and seated on *Rivers*. The chief places in *MONO-MOTAPA*, particularly so called, are, *Mono-Motapa*, the chief of the Empire; *Zuggi*, *Fouros*, and *Mofata*.

The chief in *ZEFALA* bears the same name, seated in an *Isthmus*, so called.

The chief in *QUITEVA* is *Cuama*, seated on the River so named.

About the shore of *Zefala*, are several *Isles*, among which, three bear the name of *UCIQUE PARYE*; three of *UCIQUE MAFORES*; and two of *SPICHELLÆ*; and farther, a *Sea*; and towards of *Ile of Madagascar*, is the *Ile of BAIXOS DE INDIA*.

The chief place of *SEDANDA*, is so called.

And the chief places of *CHICANGA*, are, *Zimbas* and *Buro*.

And

of the MO-TAPA.

OTAPA, that is, King, or Sovereign of Vincent Blanc, Tabaqui, and possesses it is made of 1000 the manner that Vincent, and gives it (ave less then 1000.) at this Prince deports and that there is no but with very great he is always adorned ou Stones, like to a re a Spouse: Is pleats, but gives little: io of Women, which ich; and one part of g to some, is likewise, who are active at agious. He calls his ogan, (which is the ers) where his Royal agnificent and great, without, with four hin hung with Tape- d with Gold, and ach and stately move-

he hath others which atis, Courts, scitua- he Estate. Among make great account ds Butna, both for els of the Stones, as for the ancient, ons, which are above of Symbao seems to e Agisymba of the

ys clothed after the ffors, nor may he ept the Ornaments is: He wears no Poyson and Witch- of Palm, distilled and Musk: He ed Perfumes; ma- hofe Lights which and which serves hath a great many order and silence, e thronged with People.

The chief of the King.

The chief seats in the Empire of the Mono-Motapa.

And these are the parts comprehended under the Empire of the *Mono-Motapa*.

The Empire  
of the Mono-  
motapa

The *Mono-Emugi*, that is, Lord of *Emugi*, hath his Empire or Estates between the *Abyssins*, the *Cafres*, the *Mono-Motapa*, and the *Zanguubar*; so that it is about the Mountains of the *Moon*. The *Giaques* or *Zaggas* which joyn to *Congo*, are likewise esteemed subject to this Empire: He hath often War with the *Mono-Motapa*, of which, he seems once to have been a part, is in peace with the King of *Zanguubar*, that he may have commerce to the Sea, for he hath much *Gold*, *Silver*, *Ivory*, and the same Commodities as *Mono-Motapa*; but its people are more barbarous and brutish.

The chief places in the *Mono-Emugi*, are, *Agag*, *Asta*, *Lcuma*, *Camur*, *Beif*, *Bagamiro*, and *Zembre*, seated on the bottom of the Lake *Zaire*.

Between the *Mono-Motapa*, the *Mono-Emugi*, and the *Coast*; some doth place the Kingdoms of *Inhambane* and *Inhamior*, and esteem them likewise subject to the one or the other.

## C A F R E R I A or the Land of C A F R E S.

The Land  
of Caffre-  
ria.

**C**AFFRERIA or the Land of **C**AFFRES, makes the most Southern Coast of all *Athiopia*, winding like a Semi-circle about the *Cape of Good Hope*; some begin it from *Cape Negro*, and continue it unto the River of *Cuama*. This separating it from *Zanguubar*, and the other from *Congo*, or what we have esteemed with *Congo*: Others begin it and end it with the *Tropick of Capricorn*, as well on this side as beyond the *Cape of Good Hope*: I esteem under the name of *Cafres*, all the Coasts which environ the *Mono-Motapa*; both towards the West, South, and East: So that we may call these *Cafres*, *Occidental*, *Meridional*, and *Oriental*. This distinction being taken in regard of the natural situation, in which these people are from the *Mono-Motapa*, or we may chuse rather to consider them in *Occidental* or *Oriental*, as we have already done; the *Cape of Good Hope* then keeping the one from the other.

It hath formerly been believed, that

these People had neither *Kings*, *Law*, nor *Faith*; and therefore were called *Cafres*, that is, without *Law*. But it hath since been known, that they have divers *Kings* and *Lords*, as those of *Mataman*, where there are divers *Metals*, *Chrystal*, &c. And of *Melemba*, among the *Occidentals*; those of *Chicanga*, *Sedanda*, *Quitewa*, and *Zefala*, among the *Oriental*s; and others we know not towards the South, and *Cape of Good Hope*.

On the *Coast of Cafres*, are these places and Isles, viz. *St. Nicolai*, *Piscarins*, the Port of *Carascalis*, the *Cape of Good Hope*, *St. Martins Bay*, and the *Cape of St. Lucia*. Also these Isles four bearing the name of *St. Lucia*, two of *St. Christophers*, five of *Crucis*, and three of *Aride*. Many of which, as likewise the *Capes* are well known by *Sea-men*, especially the *Cape of Good Hope*.

All these Coasts of *Cafferria* are bounded within Land, by a Chain of Mountains, formed by the Mountains of the *Moon*, and which inclose *Mono-Motapa*. That part of these Mountains which advance towards the *Cape of Good Hope*, are called by the *Portugals*, *Picos Fragos*, that is, *Watry Points or Rocks*.

This *Cape* is the most remarkable piece in *Cafferria*; the most Southern point of *Africa*, and of our Continent; and the most famous *Promontory* of the whole World. *Vasco de Gama* knew it in 1498. and after having doubled it, found the way by the *East-Indies* to the *Great Sea*; and from hence the *Portugals* boast to have been the first that had the knowledge of this *Cape*. But we have made appear in the general discourse of *Africa*, that the *Ancients* have both known and spoke of it.

Near the *Cape of Good Hope*, and farther towards the South is the *Cape of Needles*, which should be more famous, since it is more Southerly then the other by 12 or 15 Leagues: But the name *Cape of Good Hope* is given to all that Head of Land, which is the most Southern of *Africa*.

The *Air* of this *Country* is sometimes temperate, and sometimes cold, by reason of the Mountains which are covered with *Snow* and *Ice*; from whence descends quantity of cold Waters. The *Valleys* and *Lower Countreys* pleasant and fertile; hath store of *Woods* and *Forests*, in which are abundance of *Beasts* and *Fowls*; as *Deer*, *Antilopes*, *Baboons*, *Foxes*, *Hares*, &c. Also *Ostriches*, *Herons*, *Pelicans*, *Pheasants*,

Ph  
The  
feet  
strat  
dive  
in th  
T  
Lips  
wore  
baro  
they  
in the  
Bead  
flash  
Clea  
cold  
with  
none  
in th  
Beast  
But  
more  
have n  
the M  
ago di  
giving  
Land,  
to his  
da, and  
for the  
seems to  
pays tr  
the Por  
resses o  
&c.  
Zefal  
elephant  
whether  
years:  
the Gola  
Fleet br  
ance:  
Red Sea  
go to P  
pbir; be  
Ivory, n  
some par  
that the  
some so  
Inscrip  
time ago  
some Ne  
thither li  
gint Tran  
the name  
ferent fro  
Howev  
Gold, bo  
and often



neither Kings, Law, nor  
ore were called Cafres,  
Law. But it hath since  
they have divers Kings  
se of Mataman, where  
estals, Chryfal, &c.  
among the Occidentals;  
Sedanda, Quiteva, and  
e Orientals; and others  
is the South, and Cape

f Cafres, are these pla-  
St. Nicolai, Piscarims,  
alis, the Cape of Good  
Bay, and the Cape of  
nele Isles four bearing  
ia, two of St. Christo-  
is, and three of Aride.  
likewise the Capes are  
n-men, especially the

f Cafreria are bound-  
a Chain of Mountains,  
ountains of the Moon,  
Mono-Motapa. That  
ains which advance  
Good Hope, are called  
Picas Fragos, that is,  
cks.

ost remarkable piece  
ost Southern point of  
Continent; and the  
emory of the whole  
ama knew it in 1498.  
led it, found the way  
the Great Sea; and  
ingals boast to have  
d the knowledge of  
have made appear in  
of Affrica, that the  
known and spoke

ood Hope, and farther  
the Cape of Needles,  
e famous, since it is  
the other by 12 or  
e name Cape of Good  
hat Head of Land,  
hem of Affrica.

untry is sometimes  
imes cold, by rea-  
which are covered  
m whence descends  
ers. The Valleys  
easant and fertile;  
A Forests, in which  
ts and Fomis; as  
nt, Foxes, Hares,  
Herons, Pelicans,  
Pheasants,

### The Isles of AFRICA.

Pheasants, Partridges, Geese, Ducks, &c.  
They are well supplied with good Water,  
feed much Carrel, which they truck with  
strangers for Knives, Sizars, Spoons, and  
divers toys; they have likewise much Fish  
in their Rivers.

The Inhabitants are Black, have thick  
Lips, flat Noses, long Ears, and in a  
word, very ill-shapen. They are more bar-  
barous and brutish then the rest of Affrica,  
they are Man-eaters; their chief ornaments  
in their Apparel, are Chains of Iron, Brass,  
Beads, Bells, or the like; and cutting and  
flashing their skins in several shapes,  
Cloathing they have none, onely in the  
cold season they wrap themselves about  
with skins of Beasts. Towns they have  
none, or very few, for the most part living  
in the Woods and Forests, like brute  
Beasts.

But the Cafres on the East, are much  
more civil then the others; most of them  
have made a part, and are yet subject to  
the Mono-Motapa, who about 50 years  
ago divided his Estate into four parts,  
giving to his eldest Son what is within  
Land, and by much the greatest part; and  
to his three younger Sons, Quiteva, Sedan-  
da, and Chicanga towards the Sea Coast  
for their portions, Cals or Zefala  
seems to make its piece out, whose King  
pays tribute both the Mono-Motapa and  
the Portugals; and these have divers For-  
tresses on the Coast, Sena, Tete, Cuama,  
&c.

Zefala is so abundant in Gold and E-  
lephants, that some take it for the Ophir  
whether Solomon sent his Fleet every three  
years: And they give for a reason, that  
the Gold, Ivory, Apes, &c. which that  
Fleet brought, are here found in abun-  
dance: That this Fleet parting from the  
Red Sea, there is no likelihood it should  
go to Peru, which some take for this O-  
phir; besides, that there is there neither  
Ivory, nor Apes, but that it was rather to  
some part of Asia or Affrica. They add,  
that there remains not far from Zefala,  
some footsteps of ancient Buildings and  
Inscriptions, left there by strangers long  
time ago: Nay likewise, that there is  
some Notes and Books how Solomon sent  
thither his Fleet. Moreover, the Septua-  
gint Translate Sophira instead of Ophir, and  
the name of Sophirs is not over-much dif-  
ferent from Sopholo.

However it be, there is here store of  
Gold, both in the Mountains and Rivers,  
and often very clean and pure, as well in

Powder as Sand, and this Gold is esteemed  
the best, and finest in Affrica, ours seem-  
ing but Brass in comparison of it.

The Countrey is healthful and pleasant,  
seated onely on the Coast, the Mono Mo-  
tapa confining it within Land: A part of  
its now Inhabitants are not the Natives,  
but descended from that Coast which be-  
longed to the Mono-Motapa. The Na-  
tives, as I said before, are black, and Ido-  
laters, or Cafres; the others very Swar-  
tly, and for the most part Mahometans:  
They have a great Trade on this Coast for  
their Gold, two or three Millions being  
yearly brought hence, and that for toys  
and things of a very small value, which  
are carried them from divers parts of Asia  
and Europe, and some parts of Affrica.

### The Isle of MADAGASCAR OR St. LAURENCE.

THE Isle of MADAGASCAR, the Na-  
tives call it  
Mada-gascar,  
with an  
high and  
bread. or St. LAURENCE, is much  
greater then any about Affrica, if not the  
greatest of both Continents. It stretches  
it self from a little on this side the twen-  
ty sixth degree of Meridional Latitude,  
unto a little beyond the twenty sixth de-  
gree of Meridional Latitude, which are  
more then fourteen degrees of Latitude;  
but sloping from North North-West, to  
South South-East, it is from Cape St. Se-  
bastian to that of St. Ro. ain, about 400  
Leagues long. Its breadth ought to be  
considered at twice; in that part nearest  
the Equator, it is 60 or 75 Leagues broad;  
in that part towards the South, the least  
breadth passes 120, and stretches some-  
times to 150 Leagues,

Mark Paul of Venice knew this Isle  
400 years ago, and called it Madagascar:  
Which name it hath conserved till this  
time, and is interpreted by some, the  
Islands of the Moon. We call it common-  
ly the Isle of St. Laurence, because it was  
first discovered by the Portugals on St.  
Laurence day, in the year 1506. And by  
Lawrence Almeida, Son of Francis Almeida,  
First Vice-Roy of the East Indies for the  
Crown of Portugal.

The Com-  
modities  
and Trade.

Our last Relations say, That it hath Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Rocks of Crystal, and excellent White Marble, that there are found Emeralds, Saphires, &c. Many sorts of Gums and Resins, especially great store of that Gum which the Druggists call Dragon's Blood, which they extract out of the Flowers of a certain Tree which grows there. They have also Talque, Cotton, Indico, Sugar Canes, 10 Saunders, Ebony, Ivory, Honey, Wax, Hides. Their Ground yields Salt, Sal-peter, and in most places Grains, and upon their Sea Coasts is found abundance of Amber-greece. And for these and several other good Commodities that are here found, are brought them in exchange, Corals, Pater-nosters, Chains, Beads, Bracelets, Glass Pendants, and divers Toys, Sheaths, Hats, Bonnets, Shoes, Little Bells, 20 Garnets of divers colours, false Pearl of Venice, Ribbands, and Girdles of divers colours, Agates, Cornelians, also Stuffs, Indian Habits, Looking-Glasses, &c.

The People  
and their  
Abode.

Its Inhabitants are for the most part Black or very Tawny, and some White, which in all appearance came from Asia: They are of a good stature, and well shaped, are very tractable, and courteous to strangers, and more especially to the 30 French, then any other Europeans, are addicted to idleness, and not caring to cultivate the Earth; their clothing is only a piece of Cotton Cloth of several colours which they fasten about their middles, and hangs down to their knees; and on their Heads, a Cap made of the Barks of a Tree, besides which, they adorn themselves about their Neck, Arms, Legs, &c. with those Toys aforesaid: Their Feeding 40 is exceeding gross; their Houses are no better than Hog-sties or little Huts made of Branches of Trees, except those of their Princes which are made of Wood, but of no large size, nor over handsome; they lie upon Mats, and their Cloth which they wear about their in the day, serves for a Coverlid in their Night.

They are Heathenish, and given to Adoration (some say they adore the Devil) 50 using Sacrifices, which they do in the Woods, not having Churches; they have no Civil Form of Government amongst them, but he that can make the greatest party, and hath the greatest family, is in most esteem and command, to which end, they have as many Wives as they can keep to increase their Progeny.

They have a great number of Oxen, The Isles  
of Africa  
17 from  
July of Ca.  
Sheep, Kids, Hens of divers sorts, and quantity of Rice; they make Wine with Honey and certain Roots, which is so strong, that they are frequently drunk with it; they have for the most part, those Beasts that are found among us; but yet all with some difference: Their Oxen have between their Neck and Shoulders, a great lump of Fat, which they esteem excellent: Their Sheep have their Tails twenty Inches about, and as much in length: Their Goats are very high, and their Hogs little: They have Salamanders, Camellions of divers colours; Apes of many kinds, and believe that these Apes would speak, but for fear they should be compelled to labor: They have Crocodiles and Tortoises, of which, some have their Shells so great, that they will cover ten or twelve persons; and they find sometimes 5 or 600 of their Eggs as big as Hens Eggs: Their Flesh is delicate and fat, in taste resembling Veal: They have other Tortoises which are only three or four Foot diameter, and their Shells being polished, are figured with divers colours; of which, they make Cabinets, little Boxes, and other pretty moveables esteemed in the Indies and in Europe.

They have Canners or Craw-fish in great quantity on the Sea Coast; along the Rivers, and within the Land, even as high as the Mountains, if there be any Trees to shade them: They lodge themselves like Rabbits, and come out of their holes when they hear it Rain; going to seek Frogs, and other Insects, on which they feed. There are some years past, since the Hollanders landing near the Banks of St. Peter, on the North East of the Island, these Crabs disposed by Bands, assaulted them, so that they were forced to barricado and defend themselves with much difficulty and danger, and with the loss of some of their men: And this encounter they hold for one of the most dangerous ones they have had in all their Voyages.

Their Pheasants are stronger and fairer than ours, their Partridges bigger, and of divers colours: They have Parroquets as big as Crows, and black; another middle sort, and some as little as our Larks, the one and the other of divers colours: They have Singing Birds not yielding to those of the Canaries. Their Bees are little, their Honey excellent; their Ants fly, and leave on the Bushes where they light, a white Gum which they use instead of Glue.

Their

Their C  
two Bee  
the Dev  
catch in  
Fish; an  
they are  
sons one  
Their  
Drink; t  
Cotton w  
Stuffs for  
Blue col  
them; w  
Teeth, w  
beauty;  
trees.  
One o  
Country  
smoothne  
lime and  
cup infuse  
like-warm  
erial dist  
be made ex  
tree.

Among  
ins twice  
many kind  
Vomegran  
&c. The  
divers Ro  
Bread, an  
atics; they  
Beans, Pea  
White, Gr  
Scaftive  
jates, wh  
and shut up  
towards th  
nor openin  
while after.

The Isle  
commodio  
found good  
Air of the  
Europeans,  
which here  
Torrid Zon  
blished a c  
and somet  
Anton-Gil  
in all the Isle  
farther tow  
more tow  
continuing  
jara; or  
Manapate;  
natenga, A  
St. Cuce, a



*Mountains* which are well clothed with *Trees*, and always green; among which, some are so lofty, that they seem to overtop the *Clouds*. And its *Valleys* as pleasant and green, and adorned with several sorts of *Trees*, as well those that bear *Fruits*, as, *Cocoas*, *Dates*, *Oranges*, *Citrons*, &c. as those which yield none; as great quantity of excellent *Ebony*, and other *Trees*; some of whose wood is yellow, others red, others mixt; and all with fair and lively colours. The Leaves of their *Palm-trees* are large enough to cover a man; the *Birds* are here so tame, that they suffer themselves to be taken with the hand, or killed with a stick. They have *Tortoises* strong enough to bear a man, but four-footed *Beasts* they have none.

Besides these *Isles* aforesaid, there are several others which are seated about the *Ile* of *Madagascar*, as, Two bearing the name of *Deigo Soares*: Two by the name of *Nunni Pereira*: Three by the name of *Deigo Roix*. Four by *Sancta Clara*: Two by *St. Romanus*: Three by *St. Julianus*: Three by *St. Jacobus*: Nine by *St. Vincent*: Three by *St. Christophers*: Three by *Comora*: And eight by the name of *Bugi*.

Also the *Isles* of *Boamarage*, *St. Anthony*, *St. Maria Radix*, *Mascarenha*, *Johanni de Luboa*, *Syrantium*, and *Mozambicba-Nova*, with some others.

Between the *Ile* of *Madagascar*, and the main *Land*, about 70 Leagues from the *Ile*, 100 from *Cefala*, and 150 from *Mozambique*, are the Banks of *India* infamous for Shipwracks, and particularly for that of the Admiral *Fernando Mendosa* in 1586. where the Vessel having struck, and broke against the *Rocks*, the *Admiral*, *Master*, *Pilot*, and *Captain*, with ten or twelve others, first saved themselves in the little *Skiff*; other ninety persons cast themselves soon after into the *Long-boat*; but these not having *Provisions* enough, were constrained to return some into the *Sea*. It is observed that among others, the eldest of two *Brothers* being destined to be thrown also into the *Sea*, his younger Brother offered to be thrown in his place, because that the eldest was more capable to sustain their Family then he, which accordingly was done; but he swimming followed the *Skiff* so long, and tried so often to re-enter into the Vessel, that in the end, Ditty moved the others, that he was received into the *Skiff* again; of all the rest who remained of the *Shipwrack*,

some died of hunger, others endeavored to joyn some *Planks* together to save themselves on them, but in vain; two persons onely were saved of these last; between 40 and 50 of the second; and all the first, which were about 60, of near 600. The *Banks* and *Rocks* are of sharp *Stones*, and with divers points like to *Corral*, some black, others white, others green, but all horrible even to behold.

There rests a great number of *Islands* to the North and East, and between the North and East of *Madagascar*, and among these *Isles* many *Banks* and *Rocks*. We will omit a particular description of them, as unnecessary, and onely say, That the *French* have often designed to establish a powerful *Colony* in the Country; encouraged by its *Commodities*, and the great Commerce it is like to maintain.

## The Isles of CAPE VERDE.

ONE hundred and fifty Leagues from *Cape Verde*, and towards the West, are a body of *Islands* which extend themselves from 13; unto the nineteenth degree of *Latitude*, and from 153; unto 157 or thereabout of *Longitude*. They are called in general the *Islands* of *CAPE VERDE*, because that *Cape* is the nearest main *Land* to them.

Among these *Isles* there are Ten in some consideration, though a part of them not inhabited; they are ranged almost in form of a *Cressant* or *Semi-Circle*, of which, the convex part regards the Continent, and the two Points, the *Ocean*: That which makes the Point towards North and West, is that of *St. Antonio*, which those of *St. Vincent*, *St. Nicholas*, and *Sancta Lucia* follow, advancing between East and South; then those of *Sal*, *Bona Vista*, and *Maya*, descend from North to South, and are the most Easterly of all: Those of *St. Fago*, of *Fuego*, and *Brava*, the most Southern; returning from East to West, and advancing a little towards the South. So that *St. Anthony* and *Brava* make the two Ends or Points towards the West, *Bona Vista* makes the middle of the half Circle towards the East.

*SANCTA LUCIA*, *St. NICHOLAS*, and *St. FAGO*, are the greatest,

greatest, hav  
of length,  
and a 200 or  
*Antonio* an  
then half, an  
in circuit, y  
have not ab  
make no ac  
whose name  
which are ra

*St. Fago*  
chief of all  
City of the  
are *Ribera*  
wards the V  
East, *S. A.*  
North, all  
likewise *St.*  
ous, other  
chel: *Pol*  
the others  
Houses, t  
hilly, but  
*Vines*, *Fru*  
Feeding mo  
cularly *Goa*  
bringing fo  
and three c  
are very fat

*S. A.*  
peopled at  
*choles*. *St*  
been este  
have man  
many as t  
the *United*  
found in  
Men, *W*  
*pians*. *S*  
no lets  
strong, b  
be believ  
*Portughe*

The  
*1582*  
60, he  
is made  
the *Sea*  
besides  
they r  
100 Shi  
Country  
times as  
reported  
make a l  
yearly,  
The or  
the *Sk*  
great q

others endeavored together to save, but in vain; two of these last, between the second, and all about 60, of near and Rocks are of sharp Rivers points like to others white, others even to behold. number of Islands to, and between the Madagascar, and among Rocks and Rocks. We description of them, only say, That the designed to establish the Country; commodities, and the great to maintain.

Isles of VERDE.

and fifty Leagues from and towards the West, which extend them to the nineteenth degree from 153; unto Longitude. They the Islands of CAPE that Cape is the near-

there are Ten in though a part of them are ranged almost in a Semi-Circle, or it regards the Compass-Points, the Ocean: the Point towards that of St. Antonio, St. Vincent, St. Nicholas, advancing beyond those of Salt, descend from North to the most Easterly of 150, of Fuogo, and return; returning to advancing a little so that St. Anthony two Ends or Points a Vista makes the Circle towards the

IA, St. N I- FAGO, are the greatest,

greatest, having each 100 or 120000 paces of length, 15, 20 or 30000 of breadth; and 200 or 250000 paces of circuit. St. Anthony and St. Vincent are less; more than half, and not of above 100000 paces in circuit; the rest, which are the least, have not above 30, 40 or 50000 paces. I make no account of seven or eight others, whose names have not been given us, and which are rather Rocks than Isles.

St. FAGO is the greatest and the chief of all, having a Bishops seat in the City of the same name; besides which, are Ribera Grande, with a good Port towards the West, PRATA towards the East, SANCTA MARY towards the North, all with their Ports. Some place likewise St. Thomas, whose Port is dangerous, others St. Domingo, others St. Michael: Possibly these fall under some of the others. Ribera Grande hath 500 Houses; the Air is unhealthy, the Land hilly, but the Valleys fruitful in Grains, Vines, Fruits, Sugar Canes, Millons, &c. Feeding much Fowl and Cattle, and particularly Goats in abundance: These Beasts bringing forth young every four Moneths, and three or four at a time; and the Kids are very fat and delicate.

SANCTA LUCIA is the best peopled after that of St. Fago, St. Nicholas, St. Vincent, and St. Anthony, have been esteemed Desert, yet they appear to have many Inhabitants; though not so many as they could feed: The Ships of the United Provinces passing here in 1622 found in that of St. Anthony 500 persons, Men, Women, and Children, all Ethiopians. St. Vincent and St. Nicholas had no less. At May these Ethiopians are strong, and of good stature; but it is to be believed, that everywhere are some Portents to keep the rest in awe.

The Isles of SALT of BONA VISTA, of NATO, and of St. FAGO, yield so great quantity of Salt which is made naturally of the Water, which the Sea from time to time leaves, that besides what they consume in the Country, they laden every year more than 100 Ships, which is transported into other Countreys; and yet there remains six times as much, which becomes useles. It is reported, that the Isles of NATO could make alone, lading for 2000 Sail of Ships yearly, and the others not much less. The other riches of the Country lies in the Skins of their Goats, which are in so great quantity through all these Isles, that

many Flocks are seen of 1000 Head. The Skins are sent to Brasil, Portugal, and other places, and make excellent Cordovans. The Flesh is salted in the Country, and sold to Ships going and returning from Brasil to the Indies. Besides the Salt and Goats which are the principal riches of the Country, they have many Wilde Horses, Oxen, Apes, &c. also Cotton, which they make several Manufactures. Also Rice, and many sorts of Grains. Among their Fowl, they have one kinde particular to them, which they call Flamencos; the Feathers of their Bodies are all White, and those of their Wings Red as Blood. Their Tortoises are not above two or three foot long; they come out of the Sea, and lay their Eggs in the night, covering them with Sand, and the heat of the Sun hatches them.

In Fuogo and Brava they gather Wines which yield little to those of the Canaries.

Between the Islands of Cape Verde, and the main Land, inclining towards the Canaries, the Seas called Sargasso, because from the twentieth degree unto the twenty fourth (Linscot and Davisy say, to the thirty fourth) and for the length of 30, 40 or 50 Leagues, the Sea is covered with an herb like to that which is found in the bottom of Wells, and which the Portugals call Sargasso. This Herb, except that it is more Yellow, resembles Sea-Parley, bearing certain Grains or Fruit at the end, but of neither taste nor substance. Many have been much troubled to know from whence these Weeds come; which are distant from the Isles, and from the firm Land more than 60 Leagues; and in a part of the Sea, where there is no bottom found: Nevertheless, they are so close, and in so great quantity, that the Water seems rather a Meadow of Green Field, than a Sea; Ships which fall among these Weeds, had need of a good Wind to disengage themselves; and I believe it was these which hindered Salspes from finishing his course about Affrica; and were the cause of his misfortune.

This Salspes, Son of Teufles, one of the Achemenides; having ravished the Daughter of Zopyrus, the Son of Megabises, was condemned by Xerxes to be crucified. His Mother, the Sister of Darius, caused this punishment to be changed into another; to wit, he was caused to make the Circumnavigation of Affrica, which could not be done without great difficulty



and hazard. He embarked in *Egypt*, pass'd the Pillars of *Hercules*, enter'd into the *Occidental Ocean*, and pass'd far to the South, along *Africa*, but knowing that it would yet require much time and pains to end this course, he return'd into *Egypt*, and thence to the *Court*, where he said he had met with somewhat that hindred his Ship from passing farther. *Xerxes* took him for a liar, and made him suffer the death he was before condemn'd to.

The Isles of  
Cape Verde.

To continue: The Position wherein the Isles of *Cape Verde* are now found, answers much better to the Position of the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolemy*, then that of the *Canaries*. *Ptolemy* places his *Fortunate Isles* between the tenth and sixteenth degree of *Latitude*, the Isles of *Cape Verde* are between the thirteenth and nineteenth, the *Canaries* beyond the twenty sixth. The *Meridian* of the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolemy*, is at eight degrees of *Longitude* from the Coast of *Africa*, and towards the West. The least *Meridian* of the Isles of *Cape Verde*, is at eight degrees of *Longitude* from the same Coast, and towards the same side. The least *Meridian* of the *Canaries* touches the Coast of *Africa*. *Ptolemy* confines his *Fortunate Isles* under one *Meridian*, and extends them from South to North, between the tenth to the sixteenth parallel or degrees of *Latitude*, which are five degrees of *Latitude*. The Isles of *Cape Verde* are not justly under one *Meridian*, but under two or three, and extend themselves from the 13; to the nineteenth, which are five degrees of *Latitude*. The *Canaries*, on the contrary, are all couched from West to East, and almost under the same parallel or degree of *Latitude*, which is the twenty seventh, lengthning themselves from the first to the sixth of *Longitude*.

These Four Reasons are very strong to prove, That the Isles of *Cape Verde* do rather answer to the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolemy*, then the *Canaries*. Their distance in regard of the *Equator*, is not different from that of the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolemy*, but three degrees; that of the *Canaries*, is fifteen. Their distance in regard of the Coast of *Africa*, agrees with that of the *Fortunate Isles*, not with that of the *Canaries*. The disposition of their situation from South to North, approaches near to that of the *Fortunate Isles*, and the number of the degrees of *Latitude* which they contain, absolutely agrees with it. The situation of the *Canaries* from East

to West, and the little *Latitude* they contain, are much contrary. Notwithstanding all these Reasons, we shall yet make it appear, that oft-times we must not conclude on the Positions of *Ptolemy*, and that the *Canary Islands* answer to the *Fortunate Islands* of *Ptolemy*, and the Ancients, and not these of *Cape Verde*.

Let us speak first a word of the *Madera's* and *Pario Sancto*, which belong to the Crown of *Portugal* as well as those of *Cape Verde*. But before I pass to the *Madera's*, a word or two concerning its Inhabitants, who *Mandello* maketh to be black, copulent, but well proportioned, he saith, They are envious, mischievous, and dangerous people, for the most part Pagans, worshipping the *Moon*, and adoring the *Devil*, whom they call *Cannate*: Some of them are *Mahometans*, as far as Circumcision. They marry many *Wives*, whom they make to labor like *Slaves*, as well in the Fields as in their Houses, and they are accustomed to such hardship, that as soon as they are delivered, they go and wash themselves and the Child in the *Sea* or next *River*. They are not admitted to sit at meals with their Husbands, but wait till they have din'd or sup'd. They believe the Resurrection of the Dead, but withal think that they shall rise *White*, and trade there as the *Europeans* do. He saith, they are great *Drunkards*, and their debauches are always at the Funerals of their Friends, which commonly lasts four or five days together: During which time, they do nothing but drink and weep in remembrance of their Friend departed. They are very turbulent and quarrelsome, being always at wars with their Neighbors, their *Arms* are the *Bow*, and a kind of *Lance*, in which they are very expert. He saith also, that the greatest Marks of their Victories, are the *Privy-parts* of their Enemies, which they cut off, and give to their *Wives*, who wear them as *Necklaces*, which by them are esteemed far beyond *Pearl*.

The Country is indifferently fruitful, hath store of *Cattle*, as, *Oxen*, *Bufflers*, *Elks*, &c. whose *Hides* they have a good Trade for, as also for *Elephants Teeth*, *Wax*, *Rice*, *Amber-grass*, *Sugar Cases*, *Cotton*, whereof they make several *Mannifatures*, *Carduants*, &c.

MADERA

M  
THE 10  
DBI  
under the  
15 Leagues  
of circuit.  
John Gonsa  
the *Aussica*  
and under e  
likewise Tr  
sancta is a  
were Deser  
to covered w  
to set it on  
would Till  
fire lasted fir  
through all  
Woods; and  
some were  
in the *Wan*  
Earth, but  
ceeded, the  
after, yield  
little and li  
30, and pos  
one.

The *Am*  
many *Fount*  
to refresh a  
pleasant and  
bear more F  
and their P  
tribe at once  
be *Mousses*  
bearing the  
much *Fowl*  
*Partridges*  
as, *Orange*  
*Monkey*. *Wa*  
*Cedar-wood*  
sorts of *F*  
it is transp  
those *M*  
shoched, h  
his prin  
Toward; t  
*Bishoprick*  
*Sancta*. *Gr*  
*Parishes*,  
*Hospitals*,  
25000. *Re*  
dms in the  
of Pleas  
The  
on the *He*

MADERA Island.

THE Isle of MADERA, or MAD-EIRA as the Portugals say, is under the 32 degree of Latitude; about 25 Leagues long, 8 or 10 broad, and 60 of circuit. It was discovered in 1420 by John Gonsalves and Trifan Paex, under the Auspices of Henry Infante of Portugal; and under the name Johannes Zarco, and likewise Trifan Paex, discovered Porto Sancto in 1428. The one and the other was Desert, and particularly Madera was so covered with Wood, that they were faine to let it on fire to make room for what they would Till. The History saith, that this fire lasted six or seven years, before it ran through all the Island and consumed the Woods; and among the first Inhabitants, some were constrained to save themselves in the Water, to avoid the heat of the Earth; but yet their design so well succeeded, that the Earth, for a long time after, yielded sixty for one; which by little and little, diminished to 50, 40, 30, and possibly now to twenty five for one.

The Air is almost always temperate, many Fountains, and seven or eight Rivers to refresh this Countrey, that it is very pleasant and exceeding fertile. The Vines bear more Bunches of Grapes than Leaves, and their Wine is strong and racy; their Wheas excellent; though the Countrey be Mountainous: Their Sugars delicious, bearing the Bell from all others; they have much Fowl, as, Hens, Pigeons, Quails, Partridges; they have quantity of Fruits, as, Oranges, Citrons, Pomegranates, Honey, Wax, Dragons Blood, Cordovans, Cedar-wood, with which they make all sorts of Joynts work so artificially, that it is transported into Europe, and elsewhere. Those Mountains and Woods which are re-locked, have Wilde Bees, &c.

Its principal Towns, are Tungbal or Funchal, the chief of the Island, and a Bishoprick; Monchico or Monchico, and Sancta Cruz. All the Island contains 36 Parishes, 5 or 6 Religious Convents, 4 Hospitals, 6 or 7000 Houses, and about 25000 Persons; so many Castles and Gardens in the Field, that it seems a Garden of Pleasure.

The Isle of PORTO SANCTO or the Holy Port, hath almost the same

Commodities with Madera, but is not above 8 or 10 Leagues in circuit; hath no Fortress, which was the reason that in 1606, the Pyrates took away 6 or 700 persons.

Madera answers to the Ancient Cerno Atlantica, and some have esteemed Porto Sancto to answer to the Ancient Ombrio or Inaccessibilis; but we shall show the Countrey in the Canaries.

The CANARY Islands.

THE CANARY Islands are Westward of Affrica, almost opposite to the Capes of Bojador or Non; they are to the number of Seven, seated between the 26 and 28 degrees of Latitude; and between the first and sixth, or little more of Longitude. If we comprehend some little Isles above Lanzelotta, and likewise the Salvages, they would reach to the twenty ninth or near the thirtieth; if likewise, the Madera, and Porto Sancto, they would pass beyond the two and thirtieth degree of Latitude. But there are few Authors esteem the Salvages, almost none the Madera, among the Canaries, because this last is too far distant and belonging to the Crown of Portugal; the Canaries to the Crown of Castile; and the Salvages being Desert, almost no account is made of them. And now we shall make it appear, that the Body of the Seven Isles of the Canaries, answers in all things to the Body of the Seven Fortunate Isles of the Ancients.

We have before set down those Reasons which might make us believe, that the Isles of Cape Verde might answer to the Fortunate Islands, but now shall produce others, and those stronger for the Canaries.

In the Occidental or Atlantique Ocean, and to the West of Affrica, Ptolemy makes account of onely one Body of Islands, which he describes to the number of Six. We finde now in that Ocean, and not far from Affrica, three different Bodies of Islands, and each very considerable; to wit, the Azores, the Canaries, and those of Cape Verde. Of these, the Canaries are nearest to Affrica, and the most Eastern; the Azores, the farthest and most Western; and those of Cape Verde do remain in the middle, as to Longitude: And moreover, those of Cape Verde are the nearest

The Canaries Islands described.

Canary Isles, the Fortunate Isles of the Ancients, &c.

Latitude they con-  
y. Notwithstand-  
e shall yet make it  
we must not con-  
of Ptolemy, and  
answer to the Fer-  
y, and the Anci-  
Cape Verde.  
ard of the Madera's  
ch belong to the  
ill as those of Cape  
is to the Madera's,  
ng its Inhabitants,  
to be black, corti-  
ed, he saith,  
chievous, and dan-  
most part Pagans,  
and adoring the  
Cannots: Some  
as far as Circum-  
any Wives, whom  
Slaves, as well in  
louses; and they  
hardship, that as  
red, they go and  
the Child in the  
y are not admitted  
eir Husbands, but  
d or sept. They  
of the Dead, but  
shall rise White,  
Europeans do. He  
nards, and their  
at the Funerall  
munonly lasts four  
uring which time,  
nk and weep in re-  
nd departed. They  
warrlesome, being  
Neighbors; their  
a kinde of Lances,  
expert. He saith  
Marks of their  
y parts of their E-  
c off, and give to  
them as Neck-Laces,  
emed far beyond

erely fruitful,  
Orons, Bufflers,  
they have a good  
Elephants Teeth,  
ve, Sugar Cases,  
the several Mann-

nearest the Equator, and most Southerly; the Azores the farthest of, and most Northernly; and the Canaries in the midst, as to Latitude.

Now the one of these three Bodies of Islands must answer to the Fortunate Isles of the Ancients, and of Ptolemy, placed in the first Meridian; and among Modern Authors, if there be any which would give the first Meridian to the Azores; and others to those of Cape Verde; and others to the Canaries; it is for the most part out of the belief they have, that one or the other answer to those Fortunate Isles.

Ptolemy having made account but of one Body of Islands in the Occidental Ocean, it is more likely to be that which is nearest the Main Land, and Gades, then those farther off. This reason makes for the Canaries. Pliny, Solinus, Capella, and others, have made account of three different Bodies of Islands in this Ocean, to wit, the Fortunate Islands, the Gorgades or Gygons, and the Hesperides; placing their Fortunate Isles near the Coast of Mauritania, the Gorgades two days sail from the Coast, and the Hesperides forty days sail farther, then the Gorgades, and at the bottom of some Gulf; so that these answer, either to the Azores, or to the Isles of St. Thomas, in the bottom of the Ethiopian Ocean; or rather to the Antilles or Caribes in the Gulf of Mexico, as we shall speak more in another place: They cannot answer to the Canaries; nor can the Gorgades answer to other than those of Cape Verde; the Canaries then remain for the Fortunate. This is another reason for the Canaries. But the goodness of the Air, the fruitfulness of the Soyl, their proximity to the Coast of Africa, the names and particularities of every one of the Fortunate Isles, absolutely concluded them the Canaries.

The Fortunate Isles received this name from the Ancients only, because of the healthfulness of the Air, and fruitfulness of the Soyl. The Canaries are excellent healthful, the Azores little, and the Isles of Cape Verde not at all healthful; likewise the Canaries have the best Grains, Wines, Fruits, &c. that are in the World, which they transport everywhere. The Corn of the Azores will not keep, and their Wines are consumed in the Country, not being strong enough to be transported to other places. In the Isles of Cape Verde, the Inhabitants can scarce gather Corn and Wine necessary; exporting nothing but

Salt and Goats Skins. Pliny esteems some of his Fortunate Isles 8000 paces from the Coast of Africa; the Azores are 300 Leagues; those of Cape Verde, 150: Among the Canaries, Forcventura is not above 10 or 12 Leagues from Cape Bojador. The Air, Soyl, and Neighborhood to the Coast of Africa, makes then for the Canaries. Let us proceed to confer their old and new names, and other particulars;

Ptolemy calls his Fortunate Isles, Aphroditis, that is, Inaccessibilia; Htra, that is, Funonis Insula; Pluitalia; Ortelius reads Pluitalia, Casperia, Canaria; Centuria; which interpreters write Pinturia. Pliny, Solinus, and Capella, call them Ombrio, Funonia, Funonia Minor; (instead of which, Ortelius puts Thiede) Capraria, Nivaria, and Canaria.

In the numbering of these Isles, Pliny and his two Apes or Coppies, Solinus and Capella agree upon Six, changing little in the rank, names, and number of Ptolemy; but Pliny inakes mention of one Pluvialia, among his Fortunate Isles, a little before he comes to number the other Six. This Pluvialia must then be a Seventh, and possibly Thede the Eighth.

Conferring the Fortunate Isles of Ptolemy, with those of these three Authors, we shall finde that his Aphroditis answers to their Ombrio, his Htra Insula to their Funonia: There is nothing answers to their Funonia Minor, or Thede, whether they be two different, or only the same Island: His Pluitalia answers to the Pluvialia of Pliny, which the two others did not know; his Casperia to their Capraria; his Canaria, to their Canaria; and his Centuria or Pinturia; to their Nivaria. Some names being corrupted by others.

At present it will be hard to judge which of the Canaries answer to each of the Ancients Fortunate Isles, yet let us see if we can effect it, and do it better then others have done; there is not difficult for the Great Canary, since it retains its ancient name: The Isle of Ferr also most apparently answers to the Pluitalia of Ptolemy, or rather to make all particulars better accord with the Pluvialia of Pliny; where he saith, Non esse aquam nisi ex imbribus, as at this day according to the common opinion, it hath no Water; but what distils from a certain Tree, always covered with Clouds. The Isle of Teneriffe likewise, whose Pike is always covered with Snow and Clouds, may answer to their

Nivaria,

Nivaria  
Nebulos  
saith So  
four or  
ficaly,  
nor, Th  
Minor  
Pliny  
Pluvialia  
niam ab  
stantide  
Capraria  
begives  
to West  
and Capr  
Fortuna  
em; anc  
ma, bei  
naries;  
for the P  
Capraria  
nomia bei  
paces fro  
to the F  
are the m  
6 or 700  
But Plin  
two Fun  
then the  
which is  
nor; and  
other Fun  
age, Ph  
with first  
to the far  
Islands w  
to the oth  
There re  
the Cana  
among th  
make it  
to the ou  
to the co  
that is,  
Ombriod  
the; this  
known,  
it seems  
Gomer is  
and Ten  
known,  
these Isl  
and the  
best, and  
it cannot  
Ancients  
nor for?  
That  
miles, o

*Nivaria* quæ nomen accepit à perpetua nive. *Nebulosam*, saith *Pliny*; ab *abre. Nebuloso*, saith *Solinus* and *Capella*. There remain four or five Islands wherein will lie the difficulty, *Aphrositas*, *Funonia*, *Funonia Minor*, *Theode*, if it be other then *Funonia Minor*, and *Capraria*.

*Pliny* seems to joyn this *Capraria* with *Pluvialis*; and saith after *Schæw*, *Funoniam abesse à Gadibus 150000 pa. ab ea tantundem ad occasum versus Pluvialiam, Caprariamque*. Seeing the great distance begives between these Isles, and from East to West, it may be said, that *Pluvialis* and *Capraria* are the most Western of the *Fortunate Isles*; *Funonia* the most Eastern; and that of the Isles of *Ferr* and *Palma*, being the most Western of the *Canaries*; that of *Ferr* being already allowed for the *Pluvialis*; *Palma* will rest for the *Capraria* of *Pliny*. On the other side, *Funonia* being the most Eastern, and 750000 paces from *Gades*, it must either answer to the *Forteventura* or *Lancelata*, which are the most Eastern of the *Canaries*, and 6 or 700000 paces from *Gades* or *Cadix*. But *Pliny* and *Solinus* make mention of two *Funonias*, of which, one being less then the other, we will give *Lancelata*, which is the least, for their *Funonia Minor*; and *Forteventura* the Greater, for the other *Funonia*: And it seems in this passage, *Pliny* would observe, those he met with first, from the nearest to the Coast, to the farthest off. Of the Seven Canary Islands we have given Six, which answer to the other Six among the *Fortunate Isles*. There remains the Isle of *Gomer*, among the *Canaries*; and *Ombrio* or *Aphrositas*, among the *Fortunate Isles*: This might make it be judged, that one must answer to the other; but there are many reasons to the contrary. The name of *Aphrositas*, that is, *Inaccessibile*, or of *Ombrio* and *Ombriana*, as *Capella* writes it, shows, that this Isle hath been in a manner unknown, in regard of its Neighbors; nay, it seems impossible to be landed upon. *Gomer* is between the Isles of *Ferr*, *Palma*, and *Teneriffe*; these three having been known, *Gomer* being in the midst and near these Islands, must likewise be known; and the Port of *Gomer* being one of the best, and most frequented of the *Canaries*, it cannot answer to the *Aphrositas* of the *Ancients*. Let us therefore leave this *Gomer* for *Theode*, and say,

That farther in the Sea, and about 100 miles, or as others say 200 Leagues from

the *Canaries*, is an Isle they call *San Brandon*: Authors say, that those which think not of it, finde it sometimes by chance; but that it is never found by those who expressly seek it: However it be, it is held for truth, and *Vincent Blane* assures us; that from the top of *Teneriffe*, whence may be seen all the *Canaries*, this is likewise sometimes seen, yet that those which attempt to go to it, cannot finde it, though with great pains; whether it be that the Fogs hide it, or that some Current carries them from it; and for this reason they have given it the name of *Fortunada*, *Incautada*, and *Nontrovada*, &c. After all these particularities, I can doubt no longer, but this Isle is the *Aphrositas*, *Inaccessibile*, and the *Ombrio*, that is, the shadow of the *Ancients*. And so the whole Body of the *Canaries*, will answer to the whole Body of the *Fortunate Isles*, without adding the *Madera*; and from hence we have reason to place the first Meridian in the *Canaries*, as *Ptolemy* hath placed it in the *Fortunate Isles*, since these first answer to the last; which will give a great facility to the reconciliation of *Ancient* and *Modern Geography*, otherwise not to be done. Let us proceed to what each of the *Canaries* may have at present considerable, beginning with those nearest the Main Land.

*Forteventura*, once *Erbania*, is not far distant from *Cape Bojador*, above 10 or 12 Leagues; from the Great Canary 16 or 18; from *Lancelata* 6. Its greatest length is 25 Leagues, 15 or 16 its greatest breadth. In the middle, it streightens so much, that there remains butely a League or two from one Sea to another: And this part was crossed with a Wall, which separated the Island into two Estates, when it was discovered. The Land is partly Mountainous, and partly in Plains; fruitful in *Wheat* and *Barley*: Along the Coast glide many streams of *Fresh Water*; and along these streams are the *Tarbau Trees* crooked and soft, which bear *Gum*; of which is made pure white *Salt*. In the Countrey, besides the *Palm Trees*, which bear *Dates*, the *Olive Trees*, *Mastic Trees*; and the *Orsolle*, a Grain for Dying, there is a kinde of *Fig-tree*, from which they have *Balm* as white as Milk, and which is of great vertue in *Physick*. They make *Cheese* of their *Goats Milk*, with which the Countrey is so well stocked, that they may afford more then 50000 yearly; and besides the profit made of their *Skins*, and their *Fat*, (each *Beast* yielding 30 or 40

T pound)

The Isle of Forteventura is 400 Miles.

*Pliny* esteems some 1000 paces from the *Azores*, are 3000 of *Verde*, 1500: *Azores* *Forteventura* is not far from *Cape Bojador* and *Neighborhood*, makes then for the *Isles* proceed to confer the *Isles*, and other parti-

*Fortunate Isles*, *Aphrositas*, *Hera*, that *Pluvialis*, *Orelinus*, *Canaria*; *Centers* write *Pimuria*, *Capella*, call them *Canaria Minor* (instead of *Theode*) *Capraria*,

Of these Isles; *Pliny* *Oppiers*; *Solinus* and *ix*, changing little in the number of *Ptolemy*; mention of one *Pluvialis* *Fortunate Isles*, a little be- *number* the other Six, then be a Seventh, the Eighth

*Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolemy* these three Authors, his *Aphrositas* answers *Hera Insula*; to their nothing answers to *Theode*; whether one, or only the same answers to the *Pluvialis*; the two others did *Capraria*; *Canaria*; and his; to their *Nivaria*, interrupted by others.

It is hard to judge which is better to each of the *Ancients*, yet let us see if we can it better then others; it seems no difficult for the *Ancient* *Ferr* also most appa- *Pluvialis* of *Ptolemy*, particulars better *Capella* of *Pliny*; where *nam nix ex imbribus*, *Water*, but what *Tree*, always covered *Isle* of *Teneriffe* like- *Water*, always covered with *Water*, may answer to their *Nivaria*,

pound,) their *Flesh* is excellent. The *Ports* of this *Island* are not proper, but for smaller *Vessels*.

Its chief places towards the *Sea*, are, *Forteventura*, *Ricqueroque*, *Chabra*, *Baltarhays*, *Lancala*, *Pozanegro*, and *Tarafala*. Most of which are well frequented by *Merchants*, especially by the *English*, who of late are incorporated into a joyn't Fellowship and *Stock*; and not onely to this *Ile*, but to all the *Seven Canary Isles*.

The Isle of  
Lancelotta

*LANCELOTTA* is 16 or 18 Leagues long, and 10 or 12 large: The access to it, is difficult on the North and West Coast; the *Country* is plain towards the East, and the *Continent* where its *Towns* and *Ports* are, as *Coyas* or *Lancelotta*, *Porto de Nayos*, and *Porto de Cavallos*: These last are near one to the other; the *Ile* hath the same properties with that of *Forteventura*.

The Great  
Canary  
Ile.

The *GREAT CANARY* is almost equal in length and breadth, which is about 18 or 20 Leagues. It is the principal of these *Islands*, both because of its greatness, fertility, and the goodness of its *Air*; and because the *Governor* and *Bishop* of these *Islands*, whose yearly Revenue is 12000 *Ducats*, have their Residence in the *City Canaria*, or *City of Palma*.

In Inhab-  
itants, chief  
plants, for  
industry, com-  
modities,  
and trade.

This *City* is fair, its *Inhabitants* well clad, and civil; and how hard soever it rains, its streets are dry, being onely Sand. After the *City of Canaria*, are the *Cities* of *Tedele*, *Galder*, *Argores*, *Gusa*, and *Del Douze Ingenos*, or *Twelve Sugar Engines*. This *Island* is exceeding fruitful, and the *Soyls* fertile, that they have two Harvests in one year, reaping their *Wheat*, *Barley*, and other *Grains* in *February* and *May*. Their *Wheat* is excellent, and its Bread very white; but from the excellency of its *Fruits*, as, *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Figs*, *Olives*, *Apples*, *Pears*, *Peaches*, *Melons*, *Potato's*, and above all, from its *Wine*, which is far beyond that of *Spain*. A sort of *Wine*, if not abused and sophisticated, is exceeding good for a cold weak stomach; it is also more pleasing to the *Palate* than other sorts of *Wine*, and less fumes into the *Head*. And this *Wine*, among all others, bears the *Bell* with us in *England*, as also with those of the *Netherlands*. From these we may judge of the goodness of the *Island*. They have also several other good commodities, as, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Sugar-Canes*, *Cheese*, and *Woad*, in

great abundance; and breeds such plenty of *Cattel*, that the *Leather* is not one of the least *Commodities* they vend to other *Nations*, as, *Spain*, *England*, *Holland*, &c. They have also store of *Fowl*; it is well covered with *Fir Trees*, *Dragon Trees*, *Palm Trees*, &c. And its *Rivers* well filled with *Fish*; but above all, they have *Plumons* which delights in *Water*; it is cut and shoots forth yearly into three or four *Branches*; each *Branch* bears 30 or 40 *Apples*, resembling a *Cucumber*; they incline to black; being ripe, they eat more deliciously than any *Comfit* in the *World*.

The *Coyas*, *Wights*, and *Meafnes* here, and throughout all these *Isles*, are the same with those of *Spain* in *Spain*, being so settled upon the *Spaniards* taking it; to which I refer the *Reader*.

*TENERIFFE*, which some call *Enfer*, is distant from the *Grand Canary* 16 or 18 Leagues, towards the North West: Its utmost length is about 24 or 25 Leagues, and 12 or 15 its greatest breadth. The *Land* is raised in little Hills, and towards the middle, is the *Pike of Taida* or *Torreira*, a straight and round *Mountain*, which reaches in height 45000 *English* paces, which is 45 *Miles*, (some make it not so high, others say it is higher, *Nandelfo* makes it so high, that a man cannot reach the top in less than three or four days.) And all agree, that it is the highest *Mountain* in the *World*; even so high, that it may be seen in a clear day 60 Leagues distance at *Sea*, and from the top of it, a man may easily discover, and count all the other *Canary Islands*, though some of them be above 50 Leagues distance from this. It often casts forth *fire* and *sulphure*: Its *Summer* is in form of a *Sugar Loaf* or sharp *Point*, called the *Pike of Teneriffe*: For two or three *Miles* about it, are onely *Cinders* and *Pumice Stones*; two or three *Miles* lower, all is covered with *Snow* throughout the year, though there never fall any in those *Islands*; and yet lower are found the great *Trees Pinastice*, whose *Wood* is very weighty, and never rots in *Water*. Under these *Trees Laurel*s cover almost 10 or 12 *Miles* of the *Country*, where the *Singing Birds* of the *Canaries*, known among us by the name of *Canary Bird*, warble their pleasant notes. The foot of the *Mountain* casts forth divers *Branches*, and extends it self into a good part of the *Island*, which abounds more in *Corn*, than any of the

the re-  
them a  
us and  
that in  
World  
Grains,  
Flax, &  
have t  
West In  
the Co  
Shrubs  
which a  
lent Can  
the Dra  
they dr  
Dragons  
caries.

Its pri-  
cause of  
Leagues  
rishes, a  
of the Is  
Cruz, &  
Adra,  
to the nu  
and the b  
about Can  
as Parche  
honorable  
and a ves

GOM-  
nriff, is  
City of t  
Indian  
Corn, Fr  
those of  
Country  
gro-trees,  
deep and  
were form  
of the oc  
Orange C  
mong whi  
Hospitalit  
their Wine  
or return

The Is-  
of all the  
15 or 16  
6. This  
known,  
and many  
it; yet  
found too  
of the soy  
the Isle is  
Hiero, se  
In the  
Canaries,



is such plenty  
is not one of  
vend to other  
lands, *Holland*,  
of *Fowl*, it is  
*Dragon Trees*,  
*Rivers* well fill-  
all, they have  
Water; it is  
y into three or  
ch bears 30 or  
*numbers*; they  
ripe, they eat  
Comfit in the

*Measles* here,  
*Isles*, are the  
in *Spain*, being  
taking it, to

which some call  
the *Grand Canary*  
wards the North  
th is about 24 or  
r 25 its greatest  
lified in little Hills,  
is the Pike of  
treight and round  
is in height 4500  
45 Miles, (some  
ers say it is higher,  
igh, that a man  
less than three or  
gree, that it is the  
World; even so  
een in a clear day  
Sea, and from the  
asily discover, and  
y *Islands*, though  
0 Leagues distance  
asts forth fire and  
in form of a *Sugar*  
alled the Pike of  
three Miles about  
nd *Panico Stones*;  
er, all is covered  
they year, though  
hose *Islands*; and  
great Trees *Vine*-  
ery weighty, and  
Under these Trees  
or 12 Miles of the  
*Singing Birds* of  
among us by the  
h, warble their  
out of the Moun-  
Branches, and ex-  
part of the *Island*,  
*Corn*, then any of  
the

the rest; and sometimes it alone feeds them all. The Country between *Rovos* and *Redeja*, is so fruitful and pleasant, that its like can scarce be found in the World, such quantity it produces of *Grains*, *Wines*, *Fruits*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Sugar*, *Flax*, *Silk*, &c. And from hence they have their *Vines* which they carry to the *West Indies*; the best of which grow on the Coast of *Rambles*. There are certain *Shrubs* which yield a liquor like to *Milk*, which after it is thickned, makes an excellent *Gum* by them called *Taybayba*. From the *Dragon Tree*, cut towards the Root, they draw a red liquor which they call *Dragons Blood*, well known to *Apothecaries*.

Its principal City *Laguna* so called, because of the Lake near to it, is 4 or 5 Leagues from the Sea, contains two *Parishes*, and is the residence of the *Governor of the Island*. The other Cities, are *Santa Cruz*, *Roxana*, *Rajalesa*, *Carashico*, and *Adra*. When it was discovered, its *Kings* to the number of seven dwelt in *Governors*, and the bodies of their dead were set up about *Caves*, where they became as dry as *Parchment*; among which, the most honorable had a stick put in their hand, and a vessel of *Milk* before them.

*GOMER* is 8 or 9 Leagues from *Tenoriff*, is 10 or 12 Leagues long. Its chief City of the same name, often receives the *Indian Fleet*, and furnishes them with *Corn*, *Fruits*, *Sugar*, and *Wines*, as well as those of *Tenoriff*, and *Canaria*. The Country is high, plain, bears many *Dragon-trees*, feeds small *Cattel*. Its *Roads* are deep and large: The people of this Isle were formerly more barbarous than those of the other *Canario Isles*, using many strange Customs not known elsewhere; among which they held it for a great sign of *Hospitality*, to let their Friends lie with their *Wives*, and receive theirs in testimony or return of kindness.

The Isle of *FERRA* is the most West of all the *Canaries*, distant from *Palma* 15 or 16 Leagues, from *Gomer* only 5 or 6. This Isle in reason should be well known, many persons having been there, and many Authors treated very amply of it; yet I will a little show the diversity found touching the greatness, and quality of the soil; as also the Water with which the Isle is served. Its chief place is called *Hierro*, seated on the Sea shore.

In the Treatise of the Conquest of the *Canaries*, begun in 1402, by the *Sieur*

*Bethencour*, a Gentleman of *Normandy*, the Isle of *Ferr* is esteemed to be seven Leagues long, and five large. The Authors of this Treatise, are *Father Peter Bouchiers*, of the Order of *St. Francis*, and *John Le Ferrier*, Priest; both *Domesticks* to the Lord *Bethencour*, during the Conquest of these Isles, *Thomas Nichols* (saith our *English Midnal*) who about 1526, had been seven whole years *Factor* in these *Islands*, for some *Merchants of London*, and who makes assurance of saying nothing but from his proper knowledge and experience, makes this Isle of *Ferr* but of six Leagues circuit. *Thevet* and others do the same. This cannot be above two Leagues cross, and onely a League from the middle to the extremity, which will be found false.

*Nichols* continuing his Description of the Isle of *Ferr*, saith, that its *Goats* and *Wine* are its principal Revenue. In the Conquest of these *Islands*, *Cap. 42*, there is found in the Isle of *Ferr* plenty of *Hog*, *Goats*, and *Sheep*; and in *Cap. 65*, where is a particular Description of this Isle, mention is made of *Beasts*, *Fowl*, *Fruits*, and *Corn*. And *Daviny* who takes his Relations from divers Voyages, saith, That this *Island* is fair and fertile; that it produces quantity of *Grains* and *Sugar Canes*, *Fruits* of divers sorts, and *Herbs* in great quantity: That it hath much *Cattle* which yield abundance of *Milk* and *Cheese*.

*Nichols* farther saith, That in this Isle there is no fresh Water found; onely in the middle of the Isle there grows a Tree, whose Leaves are much like those of the *Olive*, which being always covered with Clouds, drops from its Leaves into a *Cistern* which is underneath it, very good Water; and in such great abundance, that it suffices all the *Inhabitants*; as also all the *Cattle* and living *Creatures* in the *Island*. *Sauntus* adds, that there is no fresh water, neither of *Rivers*, *Fountains*, *Lakes*, nor *Wells*; and that without this Tree, it would be uninhabitable. *Vincet Blanc* in his Relations, and *Bergeron* in his Treatise of *Navigations*, &c. say the same thing.

One *Jackson* an *Englishman*, who reports to have seen, considered, and measured this Tree in 1618, saith, That the water falls into a *Pond* containing 20000 *Tuns*, which in one night is filled; and that from this *Pond* the water is by divers Channels conveyed into other *Ponds* or *Cisterns*, through the whole Isle, which

A Tree  
whose  
Leaves di-  
stribute  
water  
which  
falls into  
the  
Pond  
being so  
high as  
Rivers.

is very well peopled: some say it hath in it about 8000 people, and above 100000 head of *Cattel*, which for an Island but of six Leagues Circuit is very well, for if the Tree be in the middle of the Isle, it cannot be above a League distant from any extremity; and moreover more than 20000 Tuns of water, for 100000 months will be a Tun a day, for every five months, which is too much drinke, if they drinke nothing but water.

*Fans* in his *Hydrography* touching the Isle of *Ferr*, saith, that it rains scarce at all, or very rarely; *Linschot* contents himself to say, that there are found no veins of fresh water, except about the sea Coast; and those in such inconvenient places, that the Inhabitants have no profit by it, for default of which, God out of his providence hath supplied this defect by the Tree. In the History of the Conquest of these Isles, Chap. 42. it is said that the Country is bad towards the Sea, and a League within Land; but that the middle of it is high, good and delightful; that it hath great plenty of waters, and drains often. In the 65 chap. that the waters are good, and at the end of that Chapter, And in the higher Country are Trees which still drop water, pure and clear, which falls into a ditch near these Trees, the best in the world to drinke. And moreover that this water hath a singular vertue for digestion, which it effects in an hour, whatever, or in whatsoever quantity, hath been eaten.

Moreover *Fackson* assures us, that this Tree hath neither flowers, nor fruit; that it is on the side of a Mountain, that it dries up in the day, that at night a cloud hangs over the Tree, and that in the same time it distills its water drop by drop, and fills a reserver of 20000 Tuns, &c.

These particulars are contradicted by others. *The Conquest of all these Isles* saies many Trees, not one alone, otherwise it would be immortal. *Ferdinand Suarez*, of *Figueroa* Bishop of these Islands saith, that this Tree beares a fruit like an *Acorne*, of a pleasant taste, and Aromatick. The relations of the Voyages made in 1602. place this Tree on the top of a very high Mountain, and two Leagues from the Sea, saying it hath not its like in any Country, (though there be the same in the Isles of *St. Thomas*, and other places) The most Authors agree that its leaves are alwaies green, and compare them to the *laurel*. *Sannus*

saith, that the cloud begins to rise about noon, and in the evening, quite covereth the Tree, which at the same time distills water, drop by drop along the stunkes, branches and leaves; and that it continues so till day. Others say, that this water falls from Noon all night, until a little after the Sun be risen. But most will have the cloud perpetually about the Tree; and that it distills continually. *Suarez* makes the *Peas* or *Cisterns* of not above 20 Tuns. The relations of 1602. say, two reservers, each 20 foot square; but neither *Suarez* nor others makes any mention of other reservers in the Isle; but will have this water in one place alone, whether all goe to fetch it.

From all these Authors it may be judged, that the Isle is more than six Leagues Circuit; that it hath all necessary food for *Man*, or *Beast*, that it hath water on the Coast, and within Land; that besides these waters, there are Trees in the middle or higher in the Country, which distill water in an extraordinary manner and of a particular vertue, which makes the Inhabitants use it rather then other. And this hath given occasion to *Authors*, and *Travellers*, to write and speak wonders, though so differently, that it is hard to know the truth; and sometimes they seem to strive who should lye best. But let us pass from the *Ocean*, into the *Mediterranean Sea*, and come to *Maba*, which is one of the best, but none of the least considerable pieces of *Africa*. Nigh unto these seven Islands; called the *Canary Isles*, are the Isles of *Roca*, *Santa Clara*, *Gratisa*, *Alegria*, and the two *Savage Isles*.

*PALMA* is distant from *Canary*, 10 or 15 Leagues to the North West. It is round or oval, and its circuit about 25 Leagues: Abounds in *Corn*, *Wine*, *Sugars*, and all sorts of *Fruits*. It is well stored with *Cattel*, and therefore made the victualling place of the *Spanish* Fleet that goe to *Pero* and *Brazil*. The name of the same name, hath great continuance, by reason of its *Wines*, loden for the *West Indies*, and other places. Its best, and like an *Malva*, is made about *Brenia*, whence are taken more then 2000 Pipes yearly; also *St. Andre*, and *Tassa Corda*, are on the Sea. It hath little *Corn*, which is brought from *Teneriffe*. Four *Sugar Engines*, the Church of *Palma*, and the Governours House, are esteemed fair.

The  
d  
almost a  
Land o  
600 Le  
and 500  
This Str  
sea towa  
ending i  
from M  
Europ  
Coasts o  
are the  
( these  
on the S  
90, and n

The A  
in *Africa*  
pinion ha  
modern  
the Isle,  
is in *Eura*  
holds, th  
in the han  
are all *Eur*  
the Coun  
have alw  
*Africa*, t

This I  
for its gre  
ther for A  
is the ret  
*Knights* o  
at present  
have sett  
because it  
all *Christ*  
*Sicily* and  
The le  
or 25000  
and its C  
are 20, 0  
or 12, inl

The *Malta*, is  
dry: yet  
*min*, and  
*Figgs*, *A*  
&c. It fe  
*Coates*, *S*  
*tridges*, &  
of prey.  
*Fruits*, as  
*Cotton*, o

## The Island of MALTA.

THE *Isle* of MALTA is in the middle of the *Mediterranean sea*, and almost at an equal distance from the main Land of *Asia*, and *Europe*. It is about 600 Leagues from the Coast of *Souria*, 10 and 500 from the Streight of *Gibraltar*: This Streight beginning the *Mediterranean sea* towards the West; and that Coast ending it towards the East. Likewise from *Malta* to the nearest Land of *Europe*, which is *Italy*; and to the nearest Coasts of the firm Land in *Africa*, which are the Coasts of *Tunis*, and *Tripoly*, (these bounding the *Mediterranean sea* on the South, that on the North) is 80, 20 90, and near 100 Leagues.

The Antients have esteemed it rather in *Africa*, then in *Europe*, and the opinion hath been followed by almost all modern Authors: though it be nearest the *Isle*, and Kingdom of *Sicily*, which is in *Europe*, and from which it likewise holds, then to *Africa*: and though it be in the hands of the *Knights of Malta*, who are all *Europeans*, the Native tongue of 30 the Country, and most of their Customs, have always more resembled those of *Africa*, then *Europe*.

This *Isle* at present is very famous, not for its greatness, nor for its fertility, neither for Antient renown; but by reason it is the residence of the great *Master*, and *Knights of St. John of Jerusalem*, whom at present we call of *Malta*, where they have settled, since they lost *Rhodes*: and because it serves as a powerful Rampart for all *Christendom*, and particularly for *Sicily* and *Naples*.

The length of the *Isle* is not above 20, or 25000 paces, its breadth 10, or 12000, and its Circuit about 60000 paces, which are 20, or 25 *Italian* miles in length, 10, or 12, in breadth, and 60 in Circuit.

The *soile* except the Antient City of *Malta*, is almost all stones, craggy, and dry: yet it produces *Wheat*, *Barley*, *Cumin*, and all sorts of *Fruits*, among others *Figs*, *Apricocks*, *Citrons*, *Melons*, *Grapes*, &c. It feeds *Horses*, *Asses*, *Mules*, *Hogs*, *Goats*, *Sheep*, *Hares*, *Connies*, *Hens*, *Partridges*, *Quails*, *Fanleons*, and other *Birds* of prey. And its *Beasts*, *Fowle*, *Grasses*, *Fruits*, as likewise their *Capers*, *Honey*, and *Cotton*, of which they make *Cotton Cloth*,

and several *Manufactures*, are excellent; yet it wants much *Corn*, and *Wine* for the necessary food of its Inhabitants, which are near 75 or 80000 soules: and among which there are about 15 or 16000 *Souldiers*, besides the *Knights*, so that they are constrained to fetch provision from *Sicily*, which they have at a certain rate, and with privilege to pay no custome.

The *Coynes*, of this *Isle* as followeth, viz. 10, *Taries* is a *Riall* of 3, and 12, *Saries* is a *Crown* of *Silver*: two of which *Silver Crowns* are of equal value with three *Crowns* of *Copper*. 17, *Taries* is a *Sultany*, and 17 is a *Chequan*.

Their *Weights* are pounds of 12 ounces, and 2 li, or 30 ounces is a *Rotolo*, 100 *Rotolos* is a *Kintall*, which is 110 li. *English*.

Their *Measures* are the same with those of *Sicily*.

The natural Inhabitants of this *Island* are said to be miserable, churlish, and uncivil people, of complexion, not less tawny than the *Moorcs*, use the *African language*, but follow the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, which the *Knights* are bound to defend. Their women are faire, who are debared the Society of men, and goe veiled, as not desiring to shew themselves, and are guarded after the *Italian* manner; they have here a great many of *Curtizans*, which are tolerated, who for the most part are *Greicians*, who sit at their doors playing on Instruments, &c. to invite men in to them.

On the Coasts of this *Isle*, and beginning by *Malta*, and turning towards the East, South, and West, &c. to make the Circuit, the *Ports*, *Roads*, and *Harbours* which present themselves, are *Marza*, or *Marza-scala*: then *Marza-sirocco*, where the *Turks* landed the 19 of *May*, 1565, when they had a design to besiege *Malta*. The great *Master Vignacour* hath since caused to be built two *Fortis*, which defend the entrance; and a third upon that *lanquet* or tongue of land, which advances into the middle of the Port, enough to hinder any for the future from casting Anchor there in quiet, continuing towards the Coast which regards the South, and far towards the West, is nothing but *Rocks*, except it be a little *Bay* or *Golfe* of *Pietra Negre*, others call it *Pietra Sanita*, where the 5 of *July* arrived the first succour in favour of *Malta*. This relief was but of 600 men, who passed from *Pietra Sanita* to the old City, and from thence

This Isle  
has oft  
withstand  
the fury  
of the Turks.

thence to the Bourg *Il Borgo*, which the *Turks* besieged, after having taken the *Fort of St. Elmo*, and this assistance served much to the defence of that place. *Pietra Sancta* regards towards the South, the Rock of *Forfola* or *Fursura*. Towards the West are the *Golfes* or *Bayes* of *Antefega*, the *Islanders* call it *Hayntofeca*, then *Muggiario* where the *Turks* first cast Anchor the 18 of *May*, 1565. Between the West and North is the *Bay* or *Port of Melecca*, where the great relief arrived the 7 of *December* following. *Melecca* regards the Island of *Coza*, and in the freight or channel between both are the *Illes* of *Cumin*, and *Cuminat*. This part of the Isle about *Melecca* is almost divided from the rest, by the *Golfe* or *Port* of the *Saline Vecchie*, or *old Saltpits* towards the East; and that of *Muggiario* towards the West; and if the *Turks* had seized the pass which is between them, this assistance had proved vaine. Next to the *Golfe* of the old *Saline*, is the *Creek* and *Chappel* of *St. Paul*, where according to common tradition he was shipwrackt: next is the *Creek* of new *Salines*, and the *Creek* of *St. George*, where the *Turks* dis-embarked their *Ammunitions* to serve to assault the *Fort St. Elmo*. And in fine the ports of *Marza Maffetto*, and *Marza grande* are those where at three several times have been builded, and fortified three Cities, and divers *Forts* contiguous to each other.

*Adam* the great *Master* of the Isle began first, and fortified *Il Borgo* the *Bourg*, which they sometimes call the victorious City, for having been so well defended against the *Turks*. The great *Master De La Sengle* fortified the Isle of *St. Michael*, which is likewise called *De La Single*, and *De Valletta* the great *Master* in 1566. began to lay the foundation of the new City, after that the *Turks* were constrained to abandon the seige, and Island of *Malta*; and this new City is likewise called *Valletta*.

The *Bourg* is 2000 paces in Circuit, the Isle of *Sengle* 1500, each of 1000, or 1200 houses, the one and the other so well fortified, that they received 70000 Cannon shot, and sustained an incredible number of assaults of 60, or 70000 *Turks*. The *Arsenal* for the *Gallies* is yet in the *Bourg*, but there resides there onely *Malteses*, and *Mariners*, and in the Isle of *Sengle* *Mariners* and *Souldiers* of fortune.

The great *Master* and the *Knights* reside at present in the City of *Valletta*, which is now by much the most considerable of these Cities, both for its force, the advantage of its situation, and the beauty of its publique and private buildings. It is built upon *Monti Scaberros*, which formes a *Langue* of Land all of a Rock; and between the Ports of *Marza Maffetto*, and *Marza grande* commanding on all sides, and into all parts of the one and the other Port, and its ditches to the landward, which are cut out of the Rock, which are exceeding broad, of a very great depth, strongly flankt, and well fortified. The Walls are strong, joyne to the Rock, and are about 60 foot high, and are well provided with *Guns*, &c. against any occasion. It contains above 2000 houses, which are for the most part uniforme, builded of free stone; they are commonly two stories high, flat at top, and with *Terrasses*. The *Marketplace* is spacious, from whence several faire streets doe take their rise; to every house there is a *Cistern* to preserve water for their occasions; besides these houses there are several stately structures, as the *Great Masters Palace*, which is a gallant Edifice, having a *Tower* which overlooketh the whole Island; the *Hall* or *Chamber of Assemblies* where they sit in Council, is curiously adorned and painted, where in their fights both by Sea and Land, as well at home as abroad, are lively represented; and this as also the *Armory*, which may on a suddain arme 20 or 25000 men, are in the *Great Masters Palace*; then the Churches of *St. Paul*, and *St. John Patron of the order*, the one the seate of a *Bishop*, and the other of a *Prior*, are magnificent; likewise the seven *Alberges* of the *Knights* like so many *Palaces*, where the Commanders of the seven tongues treat the Cavaliers at the expence of the Order. The *Arsenal* near *Porto Reale* it as well furnished with all sorts of Munition as any in Christendom. Also the *Hospital* of *St. Johns* towards the *Castle* of *St. Elmo* doth merit fame, not only for its buildings which are curious, but for the entertainment there given to those that fall sick, where the *Knights* themselves lodge when sick or wounded to receive cure, where they are exceeding well attended, have excellent good dyet, served by the *Junior Knights* in silver, and every friday visited by the *Grand Master*, accompanied with the great *Crosses*: a service which was from the first institution commanded; and

The  
and  
the  
Malta

and there  
Here are  
one for  
the third

The Ca  
the City  
at the ope  
siege of M  
the Turks  
Cannonho  
4000 men  
others Dr  
Coursiers  
among wh  
Fort was r  
before: a  
only by a  
the other  
Borgo is th  
wile abov  
Sengle, hav  
der the Tu

Besides  
about the  
Medina, th  
Country f  
noble City  
on an easie  
tagious sci  
it in 1551.  
of the Ile  
near the  
Chappel of  
preached,  
ed Shiprac  
count amon

All the  
or 300 pe  
and their  
with Pow  
meats, and  
on, that th  
Malta the  
vided alwa  
visions for  
be underst  
Fortificati  
wife becau  
on of its K

This ord  
Sanays, re  
John the c  
dria; thou  
as their Pa  
the Hospi  
built by o  
when the  
in the Hol  
such good

The Knights  
rety of Valletta,  
most considera-  
or its force, the  
and the beauty  
buildings. It is  
, which formes  
Rock; and be-  
a *Muffetto*, and  
ing on all sides,  
e and the other  
the landward,  
ock, which are  
ery great depth,  
fortified. The  
o the Rock, and  
nd are well pro-  
ainst any occa-  
-no houses, which  
orme, builded of  
only two stories  
h *Tarrafes*. The  
from when e  
e ke their rise, to  
steme to preserve  
is, besides these  
stately structures,  
allace, which is a  
g a *Tower* which  
Island; the *Hall*  
ies where they sit  
adorned and pain-  
is both by Sea and  
e as abroad, are  
this as also the  
n a suddain arme  
in the *Great Ma-  
urches of St. Paul*,  
he order, the one  
and the other of a  
likewise the seven  
like so many *Pa-  
nders of the seven  
ers at the expence  
rsenal near Porto  
with all forts of  
hristendom. Also  
towards the *Castle*  
t same, not only  
e curious, but for  
given to those that  
nighes themselves  
ed to receive cure,  
ng well attended,  
et, served by the  
, and every friday  
fter, accompani-  
s: a service which  
ion commanded;  
and*

and thereupon called *Knights Hospitallers*. Here are as *Sandys* saith, three *Nummeries* one for *Virgins*, another for *Bastards*, and the third for penitent *Whores*.

The *Castle of St. Elmo* is at the end of the *City of Valletta* towards the sea, and at the opening of two Ports. During the siege of *Malta* it was taken, and sackt by the *Turks*, after having wasted 18000 *Cannonshot*, given divers assaults, and lost 10 400 men of their best *Militia*, among others *Dragut*, one of their most famous *Coursiers*. The *Christians* lost 1300 men, among whom many *Knights*. But this *Fort* was restored to a far better Estate then before: and is separated from the *City* only by a ditch cut likewise in the *Rock*; on the other side, and on the point of the *Borge* is the *Fort of St. Angelo*; and likewise above the *Borge*, and the Isle of 20 *Sengle*, have been made new works to hinder the *Turks* from lodging there.

Besides these three *Cities*, and the *Forts* about them, the ancient *City of Malta*, *Medina*, that is the *City* as those of the *Country* say, or according to others the noble *City*, is in the middle of the *Island*, on an easie ascending hill, and in an advantageous situation. The *Turks* assaulted it in 1551, but soon retired. The *Bishop* 30 of the *Isle* hath here his residence; and neer the *City* is yet the *Grotte* and *Chappel of St. Paul* where they believe he preached, and where he lay when he suffered *Shipwrack*, and this place is of great account among them.

All these *Cities* and *Forts* have 250 or 300 peices of *Cannon* on their Rampart; and their *Magazines* are so well provided with *Powder*, *Shot*, *Wood*, *Bisket*, *Salts*, 40 *meats*, and all *Provisions*, and *Ammunition*, that they call it *Malta Fior del Mondo*, *Malta* the flower of the *World*: being provided alwaies with *Ammunitions* and *Provisions* for a three years siege, yet this is to be understood, not only because of its *Fortifications*, and *Ammunitions*, but likewise because of its force, and the resolution of its *Knights*.

This order of *Knighthood* according to 50 *Saways*, received their denomination from *John* the charitable *Patriarch of Alexandria*; though vowed to *St. John Baptist* as their *Patron*. Their first seat was the *Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem*, built by one *Gerrard*, at the same time when the *Europeans* had something to doe in the *Holy-Land*, where they received such good success, and became so famous

that they drew *divers* worthy persons into this society: which by *Pope Gelasius* the second was much approved of. He saith, that one *Raymond* was the first *Master* of this *Order*, who did amplify their *Canons*, and entituled himself *The poor servant of Christ, and Guardian of the Hospital in Jerusalem*; and at the allowance of one *Honorius* the second, were apparelled in black garments, signed with a *White-Cross*; this *Order* we have said began at *Jerusalem*, and at first medled not but with the *Government of the Hospital of St. John*, and were called *Fryers Hospitallers*, or simply *Hospitallers*, as those of the *Temple Templers*; but when these *Hospitallers* were constrained to make profession both of *Hospitality* and *Armes*, they were called *Knights Hospitallers*, or *Knights of the Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem*; after the loss of *Jerusalem*, they held their *Convent* in the *City* and *Fortress of Margatt*, then in *Aicre* or *Ptolemaidis*, and all the *Latine Christians* being driven from the *Holy Land*, and from *Souria*, they retired into *Cyprus*. But during their stay in *Cyprus*, they gained *Rhodes*, and established themselves there so powerfully, that they were called *Knights of Rhodes*.

*Margaret* was taken from them in 1285; *Aicre* in 1291, little less then 200 years after *Godfrey of Bullion* had conquered the *Holy Land*, and this order began before; after the loss of *Aicre* they lived in *Cyprus*; from 1291, to 1309, in which year they took, and settled in *Rhodes*, and maintained it more then 100 years, sustaining four sieges, till in 1522, *Sultan Solyman* became *Master of Rhodes*; they then retired into 40 *Europe*, now into one place, and then into another, and in fine to *Malta*, which *Charles* the fifth gave them in 1530, with some little neighbouring *Isles*, as likewise the *City of Tripoly* in *Barbary*, which they could keep no longer then 1551, that place being too far engaged in the enemies country.

These *Knights* are of *divers Nations*, and are divided into eight *Tongues*, to wit of *Province*, of *Auvergne*, of *France*, of *Italy*, of *Arragon*, of *England*, of *Germany*, and of *Castile*; so that the three first are in *France*, and the last in *Castile*; each *Tongue* contains many *Priories*, and each *Priory* many *Commanderies*, these 3 *Tongues* which are in *France*, have neer 300 *Commanderies*. The other 5 *Tongues* which are in *Italy*, *Arragon*, *England*, *Germany*, and *Castile*, made neer 400, but there are no

more

These  
Knights of  
Jerusalem  
move their  
habitation



England.

more in England the Kings of England when they confiscated the goods of the Church, having likewise seized the goods and *Commanderies* of the *Knights* of Malta; and in Germany a part of these *Commanderies* being fallen into the hands of *Lutherans*, and *Calvinists*, serve no longer: so that at present France alone furnishes little less than half the *Commanderies* of Malta.

And it hath been observed that from the first establishment of this Order, unto this very present, of 57 great *Masters*, there hath been 37 *French*, only 4 or 5 *Italians*, 7, or 8, *Spaniards*, and 11 whose Nation and tongue the History could not observe; but apparently the most part were *French*, since this Order began; the *French*, of these 34 known, 12 were in the *Holy-Land*, and in *Sonria*, 13 in *Rhodes*, and 9 in Malta unto Father Paul of *Lascaris*; 20 of every one there is a *Grand Prior*, who lives in great reputation in his Country, who orders the affairs of their Order, and for England, *St. Johns* by *Clarken-well* in times past was a mansion of the *Grand-Prior*.

Then Ceremonies

There are several Councils among these *Knights*, as that for deciding of differences which may happen among them; the Council of War, the *General Chapter*, which may augment, or moderate the Authority of the great *Master*, renew the Ordinances and Government of the Religion, or their Order, and which is held every five years.

The Ceremonies performed on the making of these Knights.

The Ceremonies used in *Knighting* are these which follow; first being clothed in a long loose garment, he goeth to the *Altar* with a *Taper* in his hand of *White Wax*, where he kneeleth down, and desires the Order of the Ordinary; then in the name of the *Father*, the *Son*, and the *Holy Ghost*, he receiveth a sword, therewith to defend the *Catholick Church*, to repulse and vanquish the enemy, to expose himself to death for the Faith, to relieve the oppressed, and all by the power of the *Cross*, which is defigured by the cross hilt, then is he girt with a belt, and thrice strook on his shoulders with his sword, which signifies that he is cheerfully to suffer all afflictions for the honour of *Christ*: who taking it of him, flourisheth it a lost three times, as a provokement to the adversary, and then sheathes it again. Then he that gives him *Knighthood*, doth exhort him to get true honour by laudable and courageous actions, to be vigilant in the Faith, &c. then two other *Knights* of the said Order,

doe put on a pair of gilt spurs, which doth signifie that he should see no ignobility for gain, and to value Gold no more than dirt; and thus with a *Taper* in his hand he goes to *Mass*, where he is excited to *Hospitality*, to works of *Piety*, redemption of *Christian Captives*, &c. Also he is asked whether he is resolved to live among them, to quit the Authority of secular Magistracy, to revenge their injuries, whether he be of any profession, whether a *freeman*, joynd in *Matrimony*, or vowed to another Order; which having answered thereunto, upon the receipt of the Sacrament he vows in this order: I vow to the Almighty God, to the Virgin Mary his immaculate Mother, and to *St. John Baptist*, perpetually by the help of God, to be truly obedient to all my superiours, appointed by God and this Order, to live without any thing of mine own, and withall to live chastly; which done he is received as a member of them; besides other prayers, they are commanded to say daily 150 *Pater-nosters*, for such as have been slaves in their Wars. None are admitted to this Order, but those as can prove their gentility for six descents, which is examined and approved by the *Knights* of their Nation; they remain a year upon approbation, before they are admitted into the Society, where they come very young, that they may the sooner come to a *Commendum* at home. Their habit as we noted before, are black cloaks, with large white *Crosses* of fine linnen set on the shoulder place; but in time of War they wear *Mandilions* of *Crimson* with the said *White Crosses* set behind and before, and about their necks they wear a *Riband* with a branch of the *Cross*. If one of these *Knights* be convicted of a *Capital offence*, he is in the first place publicly degraded in the Church of *St. John*, where he received his *Knighthood*; also strangled, or thrown into the sea. There are of these *Knights* 1000, whereof 500 alwaies reside in this Island; the other 500 dispersed throughout *Christendom*, at their several *seminaries*, which upon any summons are to make their personal appearance; every several *Alberges*, and sit at table like *Friers*. Of these there be 16 of great authority (*Counsellors of State*), called the *Great Crosses*, out of whom the Officers of their Order, as the *Marshall*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellor*, the *Master* of the *Hospital*, &c. are chosen, and who together which the *Master* punishes the transgressors

gressors as  
Master ha  
vessel to g  
ther be ch  
tude on cl  
formed; 7  
two *Knigh*  
for the Eng  
themselves  
*Knights*, a  
they three  
the great M  
is filed T  
virend *Frie*  
*Master* of sh  
salem, *Prin*  
great *Master*  
ceived with  
ceremonies,  
the *Comm*  
der; he assi  
Officers of  
name, and  
money, disp  
and sentence  
kinned, crea  
ven to the e  
&c. In the  
under a *Car*  
attended, a  
ng to their  
doth all the  
great rever  
Besides  
the *Knights*  
*Camin*, and  
*Forsola* or *F*  
(and when t  
them, or pla  
call him *Prin*  
of which the  
*Princes*, this  
*Ancients*; a  
by its inhab  
*Moores*. It  
Malta, and al  
its forme app  
triss is on an  
Town bene  
mountainous  
but by *Hami*  
and there, the  
land watered  
assist Malta w  
*Hares*, *Fowls*  
excellent *Fan*  
sented to the  
name of the g  
Malta, likew

gressors as aforesaid, Now when the *Great Master* hapneth to dye, they suffer no vessel to goe out of the Land, untill another be chosen, least the *Pope* should intrude; The several *Seminaries* nominate two *Knights*, and two also are nominated for the *English*; and these 16 from among themselves chose 8, and these 8 chose a *Knight*, a *Priest*, and a *Frier servant*, and they three out of the 16 *great Crosses*, elect the *great Master*, who being thus chosen, is stiled *The most illustrious and most reverend Prince*, the Lord *Frier A.W.* *great Master of the Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem*, Prince of *Malta* and *Goza*. The *great Master*, being thus chosen, and received with these and many other noble ceremonies, hath a great power over all the *Commanders* and *Officers of the Order*; he assembles the *Councells*, calls the *Officers of Justice*, who exercise in his name, and execute under his seals the *Coyns money*, disposes of *Treasure*, imprisons, and sentences the *faulty*, pardons the *condemned*, creates *Knights of Grace*, confers even to the eighth dignity of the *great Cross &c.* In the *Councell* and at *Table* he sits under a *Canopy of State*, and is bravely attended, and served by *Knights* according to their order, and without *Fee*, and doth all the *acts of Sovereignty*, and hath a great revenue to support his dignity.

Besides *Malta*, the *Great Master*, and the *Knights of Malta* possess the Isles of *Cumins*, and *Cumios* which are very little; *Forsola* or *Fursura*, which is but a *Rock*, (and when they would jest with any among them, or play on some young *Knight*, they call him *Prince of Forsola*.) The Isle of *Goza* of which the *Great Master* takes the title of *Prince*, this is the *Gaulos* or *Gandos* of the *Ancients*, and to this day called *Gauldisch* by its inhabitants, and *Gauldofch* by the *Moors*. It is about 6 or 8000 paces from *Malta*, and about 20000 paces in *Circuit*, its forme approaching an *Oval*. Its *Fortress* is on an uncommanded hill, and the *Town* beneath it; all the Isle though mountainous is peopled not by *Villages*, but by *Hamlets*, and *houses* scattered here and there, the *aire* being very good, and the land watered with many *streams*. It may assist *Malta* with its *Cornes*, *Fruits*, *Muttons*, *Hares*, *Fowle*, *Honey*, &c. they take here excellent *Falcons*; and that which is presented to the *Vice-Roy of Sicily* in the name of the *great Master of Malta*, and for *Malta*, likewise those which are presented

to the *King of France*, are for the most part taken here.

This Isle of *GOZA* was taken, and pillaged by the *Turks* in 1551, who carried neer 4000 soules *Captives*, there remaining almost as many. At present it is restored, and the *Castle* well fortified, and all the approaches of the Isle defended with some *Forts*. Its *Governor* is one of the *Knights* whom the *grand Master* sends from three years to three years; the *Inhabitants* speak *Arab*, or *Moreseo*, as at *Malta*, have the same manners, and are all *Catholiques*.

Likewise *LAMPEDOSA*, and *LINOSA* or *Limosa* distant from *Malta*, about 100000 paces, belong to these *Knights*, but both are esteemed desart. West of them, and towards the *Cape of Bona* is the Isle of *Pantaleria*, which belongs not to the *Knights*, but to the *Catholick King*; but because we have not remembered it before, we will here speak a word of it. Its *Circuit* is about 30000 paces. Its *City*, and *Port* regard *Sicily* towards the *North*; and *Malta* towards the *East*. Above the *City* is a *Castle or Rock*, which nature hath made craggy, and inaccessible on all sides. The *Land* bears little *Cornes*, quantity of *Pulse*, and *Kitchin-herbs*, produceth abundance of *Cotton*, *Anniseeds*, *Figgs*, *Melons*, *Cappes*, and excellent *Grapes*, &c. The *manners*, *habit* and *tongue* of the *Islanders* retain much of the *Moors*, yet they are all *Catholiques* like to *Malta*, and under the *Vice-Roy of Sicily*. In the midst of the *Island*, and in a *Cave* is a *Pitt*, which exhales continually an obscure vapour, which spreading it on all sides on the *Rock*, dissolves into water, and distills with such abundance, that it furnisheth all the *Inhabitants* have need of not only for their drink, and other uses, but for their *Beasts*; nor is there any other fresh water in the Isle, the *Land* being dry, reddish, and so hot that a naked foot can scarce suffer it.

For the rest the *Knights of Malta* are always in *Armes* against the *Moors*, *Mahometans*, and all the *Pyrates*, of the *Mediterranean sea*, and by their expeditions with those few *Gallies*, they have delivered out of their hands a great number of *Christian Captives*, reduced many *Mahometans* to the *Christian Faith*, maintain their *Armes* in good reputation, and on all occasions which present themselves, whether of their own, or with other *Princes of Christendom*, they freely employ and

venture both their lives and goods in favor of *Christians* in general and particular. *Bosius* hath writ the History of this Order, their Institution and Policy; the Wars they have sustained in the Holy Land, in Cyprus, in Rhodes, in Malta, &c. And *F. Mathieu* of *Gassancour*, a *Celestine Fryer*, hath made a *Martyrology* of these *Knights*, to wit, in what occasions they have given their lives for the defence of the Faith, their *Eligies*, *Blazons*, proofs of *Chivalry*, and their *Genealogical* descent from the most part of most illustrious houses of *Europe*.

But it is time to finish *Africa*, and to say that if we would have believed certain *Authors* among the *Antients*, this *Africa* had been represented to us with unsupportable *beastes*, unsufferable *droughs*, fierce and cruel *beasts*, perfidious *Men*, horrible and affrightful *Monsters*; whereas time, which daily discovers things unknown to the *Antients*, hath made us see that the great *beastes* of *Africa* have some refreshments; that the driest sands have some wells, some waters; that the vastest solitudes have some green fields, some fruits, that the *beasts* are not so dangerous, but that *Amen* may defend themselves from their fury; nor the *Men* so faithless, but that they have *Commerce* and *Society* among themselves, as also with *Strangers*; that their *Dragons*, *Serpents*, *Griffons*, &c. are for the most part imaginary.

And moreover, the generosity of its *Lions*, the docility of its *Camells*, the Feathers of its *Estriches*, the odour of its *Crocods*, the swiftness of its *Barbes*, the agility of its *wilde Asses*, the greatness of its *Elephants*, the strength of its *Eagles*, the diversity of its *Parroquets*, and the wantonness of its little *Monkeys*, &c. recompence the mischief which other *Beasts* may doe.

And though there are as yet some people fierce, and *Man-eaters*, the most part of the others are very ingenious, and tractable. The *Egyptians* have long since sufficiently made known their cunning in *Sciences*, *Arts*, and *Arms*, so have the *Carthaginians*, &c. and the *Antients* esteemed

the *Ethiopians* the most innocent and justest Men in the world, believing the *Gods* sometimes banquet with them.

Besides there are many particulars worthy of observation in *Africa*; what City was ever fairer, or more magnificent than *THEBES*, in the higher *Egypt*? Then *MEMPHIS* in the middle? Or *ALEXANDRIA* in the lower? Our *Egypt*, what City was ever richer, more powerful, or more proud than *CARTHAGE*, except *Rome*? and at present *FEZ* is so splendid, that there is no City in *Europe* to compare with it; though many believe it not to compare to *CAIRO* in *Egypt*: Among the Seven Wonders of the World, some place three in *Egypt* alone, the *Statue* of *MEMNON* at *Thebes*, the *PYRAMIDES* near *Memphis*, and the *PHARUS* of *Alexandria*.

Not onely these beautiful Works, and fair Cities, not onely the infinite quantity of *Gold*, and other *Metals*, *Precious stones*, *Graines*, *Fruits*, *Spices*, *Druggs*, *Wines*, *Oyles*, *Sugars*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Cordovans*, *Amber*, *Ambergreece*, *Elephants-teeth*, *Estriches-feathers*, *Saffron*, *Corral*, *Civet*, *Musk*, *Incense*, *Coffee*, *Capers*, *O-lives*, *Ivory*, *Silk*, *Cotton*, *Flax*, &c. of which they make *Velvets*, *Silks*, *Damasks*, &c. a thousand several *Manufactures* which are found there, ought to make us account *Africa* very considerable: but its extent which is little less than *Asia*, twice as great as *Europe*. Its position is in the Southern part of our Continent; the South is esteemed after the East, before either North or West: It was the portion of *Cham*, second son to *Noah*, which may make us judge it the second in greatness and goodness. Its first *Monarchies* have been known before those of *Europe*; some will say before those of *Asia*, *Arts*, *Sciences*, *Letters*, and *Laws*, have been in great reputation here before they passed into *Greece* or those of *Europe*.

These reasons therefore induced us to give among the three parts of our Continent, the second place to *Africa*.

An

Kingdom

is, that the  
Roman Letter  
Africa.A.  
Babnamum.  
Accara.  
Alicca.  
Adeca.

Paratulum.

IE R.

iviv.

before they passed

of Europe.

three parts of our

Africa.

An

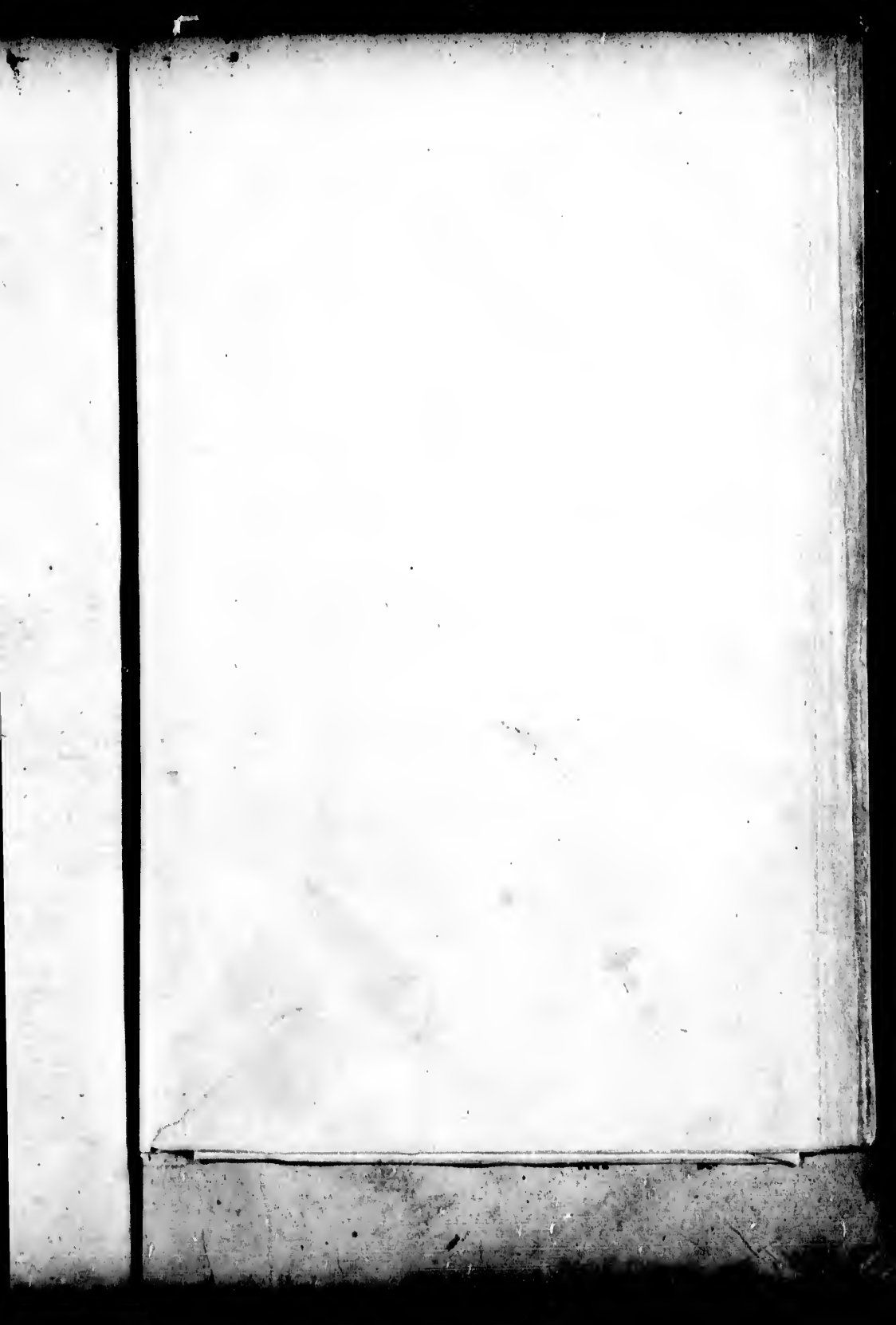












# SEPTENTRIO

To the high and Mighty Prince James Duke of Yorke & Albany Marquess of Ormond Earle of Ross & Ardmarch High Admirall of England K<sup>t</sup> of the most noble order of the Garter sole Brother & Privy Counsellor to his most Sacred Ma<sup>ty</sup> K. Charles the 2<sup>d</sup> this Mapp is humbly Dedicated by Rich: Blome

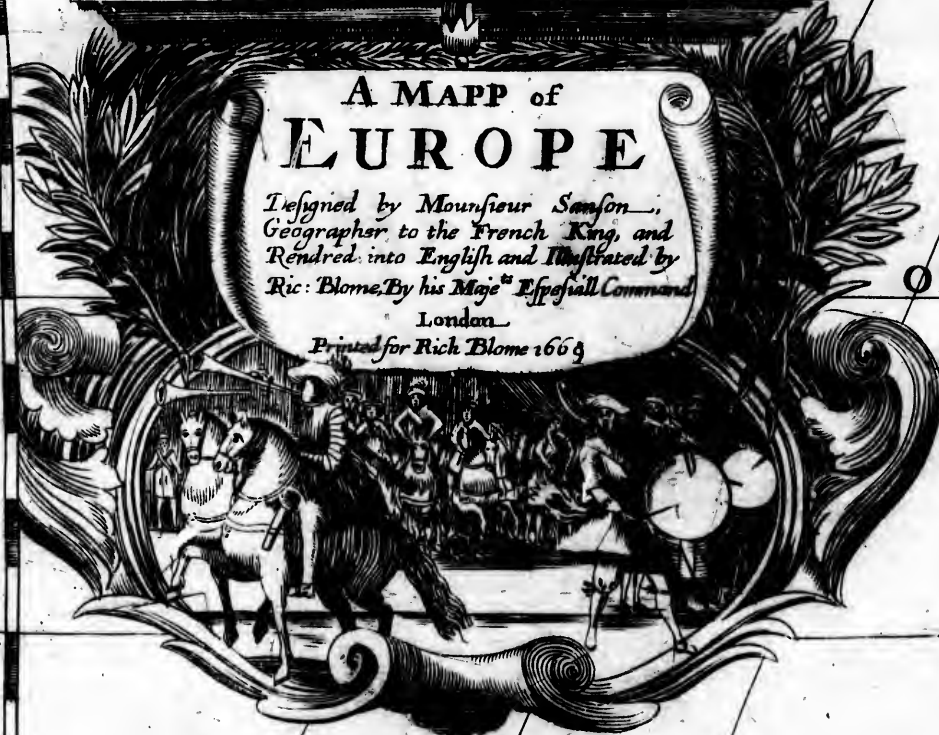


## A MAPP of EUROPE

Designed by Mounseur Sanson, Geographer to the French King, and Rendred into English and Illustrated by Ric: Blome, By his Maje<sup>ty</sup> Espejiall Command

London

Printed for Rich Blome 1669



# ATLAN

# FRENCH



70

65

60

55

50

360

5





10 15 20 25 30 35 40

# ARCTIC OCEAN

ARTIC CIRCLE

SEA OF DENMARK

ENTALS  
Isles of Fero

Schettland Ho

Orkades Isles

ENGLAND

SWEDEN













A T L A N T I C

T H E F R E N C H S E A

T H E S P A N I S H S E A

O C E A N

C A N A R I E S E A

P A R T I E O F

50  
45  
40  
35  
30

5 10 15 20





# MEDITERRANEAN SEA

# R A N E

# PART OF AFRICA

25 30 35 40



**MEDITERR**







50

55

60

65

70

A R  
R T  
U C O

EPONOU  
TRI  
RIA

W

Lepre

T

A O

R I

A N

V

VE



E



them,  
West of  
FRIC  
It is  
Ocean,  
which  
Seythia  
identical  
on the  
which  
its South  
frica.  
But  
fall in  
straight  
many  
the Ar



# EUROPE.

## The Third Part.



**EUROPE** is one of the Three Parts of our Continent, of which **ASIA** makes the most Eastern; **AFFRICA** the most Southern; and **EUROPE** in regard of

Sea of *Marmara*, of old *Propontis*; the *Black-Sea* or *Mare-Majus*, of old *Pontus Euxinus*; and the Sea of *Zabaque*, of old *Mæotis Palus*.

Between the *Archipelago*, and the Sea of *Marmara*, is the *Strait* of *Gallipoli*, otherwise the *Dardanelles Castles*, or *Arm* of *St. George*, of old *Hellisponius*. Between the Sea of *Marmara* and the *Black-Sea*, is the *Strait* of *Constantinople*, or *Channel* of the *Black-Sea*, of old *Bosphorus Thracius*. Between the *Black-Sea*, and the Sea of *Zabaque*, is the *Strait* of *Cassa* or *Pelpe-ro*, or likewise the *Arm* of *St. John*, of old *Bosphorus Cimmericus*.

Then the *Rivers* of *Dan*, of old *Tanaï*; of *Volga*, of old *Rha*; and of *Oby*, of old *Carambyce*, complete the Division of *Europe* from *Asia*, by drawing a Line from the one to the other.

The situation of *Europe* is between the 35 and 72 Degrees of *Latitude*; and between the 10 and 100 of *Longitude*. Though it fill not all this space, its *Latitude* shews it to be almost all in the *Temperate Zone*; and that it hath no part within or approaching the *Torrid*, but some part under or near the *Frozen Zone*.

But the *Ocean*, together with the divers Seas which encompass and divide the parts of *Europe*, have given so great advantage to its people, that they are long since

them, is between *North* and *West* to wit, *West* of *ASIA*, and *North* of *AFFRICA*.

It is for the most part bounded by the *Ocean*, and the *Mediterranean-Sea*: That which we call the *Septentrional*, *Frozen*, or *Scythian Ocean* on the *North*; and the *Occidental* or *Atlantick Ocean*, or *Great Sea* on the *West*: The *Mediterranean-Sea* which is but an *Arm* of the *Ocean*, lies on its *South*, and separates *Europe* from *Africa*.

But towards the *East*, divers Seas which fall into the *Mediterranean*, several *Straits* between these Seas, and a great many *Rivers* separate it from *Asia*; to wit, the *Archipelago*, of old *Mare Egeum*; the

the Danubius  
the Rha  
the Oby

Europe  
situated.

the Euro-  
peans  
most  
fortunate.



become the most expert in the World in Arts and Sciences, as also in Arms and Military Discipline.

The Division of Europe into Parts.

We will consider Europe in Nine (or Three times three) principal Parts: And of these Nine, the First three shall be Spain, Italy, and the Estates of Turkey in Europe; and these possess the Southern part of Europe. The Second three Parts shall be France, Germany, and Poland, and these possess or take up the middle part of Europe. And the Third, or last of the said three Parts, shall be Scandinavia, where are the Estates of Denmark and Sweden, Russia Alba or Moscovia, and the Isles of Great Britain; and these three Parts are the most advanced towards the North. As to the several small Isles of Europe, I shall comprehend them under one or the other of these Three Parts, and that according to their situation or vicinity unto them. And of these Parts in order.

Observing the method, the three Southern Parts of Europe are Peninsulæ, and divided the one from the other: The three Parts in the middle, and more in the Continent, are contiguous one to the other: and the Northern Parts distant from one another; one is for the greatest part in divers Peninsulæ, the other in Main-land, and the last is all in Isles.

Besides these Nine Parts, there will remain some Estates between France, Germany, and Italy; likewise some Estates between Germany, Poland, Turkey, and Moscovia; as also some Lands and Estates in Turkey, which we shall describe as occasion presents.

The Languages of Europe.

But before we proceed to the Parts, let us yet speak one word in general, That there are three principal Tongues, and as many principal Religions in Europe. For Tongues, the Latine, the Totonick, and the Sclavonian, are at present the most common and general in Europe. The Latine extends it self into Italy, France, and Spain, though in divers Idioms: So the Totonick Tongue extends it self into Germany, the British Isles, and that part of Scandinavia, where are the Kingdoms of Denmark and Swedenland. The Sclavonian Tongue is in Poland, Moscovy, in a good part of Turkey in Europe, and likewise in Bohemia, &c. though still in several Idioms and Dialects. The other Tongues of Europe are much less general, as the Greek, the Albanian, the Hungarian, and the Tartarofque in the Eastern parts of Europe: And lastly, the Basque, Welsh, Irish, and Laplandish, in the

most Western and Northern Parts of Europe.

The general Religion in Europe.

The Religions, or rather different Sets of Religion, (Christianity being professed through almost all Europe) are likewise Three most general, to wit, The Protestant Religion hath spread it self alone, and everywhere, where the Totonick Tongue is spoken, besides in divers other places. The Roman Catholick is almost alone, and everywhere with the Latine Tongue, and is likewise conserved in some places of the other Tongues, as in part of Germany, Poland, and in divers places of Turkey in Europe. (Schism alone, and every-where among the People speaking Sclavonian and Greek.) The Mahometan Religion is among the Natural Turks of Europe; but amongst them are People (though subject unto them) which are both Protestants, Roman Catholics, and Schismaticks. But let us proceed to its Parts according to our intended Order or Method, and then the First is Spain.

## S P A I N.

Among the Southern Parts of Europe, Spain extends it self farthest to the West, and is almost quite encompassed with the Ocean, and the Mediterranean-Sea, to wit, with the Ocean towards the North-West, and part of the South; and with the Mediterranean-Sea towards the East, and in part towards the South. Between the North and the East, it is contiguous to the Continent, where the Pyreanean Mountains separate it from France; from whence it stretches it self to the Straight of Gibraltar, which is the opening of the Mediterranean-Sea to the Ocean, and which separates Spain from Africa.

These Pyreanean Mountains are that Isthmus or Neck of Land, that uneth Spain to the Continent, and serveth as a Defence and Bound for this Kingdom and France.

These Mountains are inhabited by a sort of rude and barbarous People, and these Hills on the side which regards France, are naked and barren; but the sides towards Spain, are fertile and well cloathed with Wood; and on this side is seated Romevalles, famous for the battle here fought by the

Parts of

Different *Sells* The general Religion in Europe.  
 are likewise  
 the *Protestants*  
 and every-  
 place is spo-  
 The  
 and every-  
 and is like-  
 of the other  
 any, *Poland,*  
 by in *Europe.*  
 are among the  
 (*Greek.*) The  
 the *Natural*  
 (st them are  
 them) which  
 in *Catholics,*  
 us proceed to  
 tended *Order*  
 is *Spain.*

C

Parts of *Es-*  
 it self farthest  
 almost quite  
 and the *Me-*  
 the *Ocean* to-  
 nd part of the  
*Mediterranean-Sea*  
 art towards the  
 h and the East,  
*continent,* where  
 parate it from  
 rches it self to  
 which is the  
*Asian-Sea* to the  
 es *Spain* from

*Spain* are that  
 that unireth  
 d serveth as a  
 s Kingdom and

abited by a fort  
 ple, and these  
 wards *France,*  
 e sides towards  
 cloathed with  
 ated *River*  
 here fought by  
 the



Scale of the Kingdom of Spain  
Scale of the Kingdom of France  
Scale of the Kingdom of Portugal





BAY OF BAYE

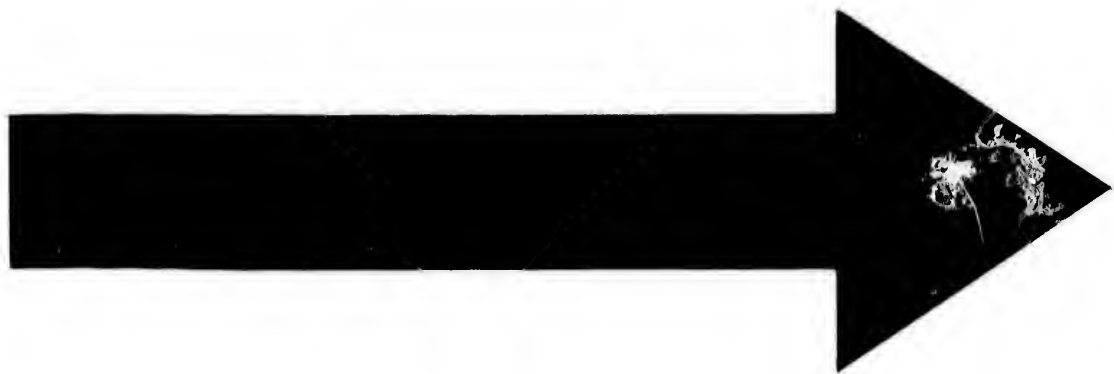
P S O V A A G O N R T

SPANISH

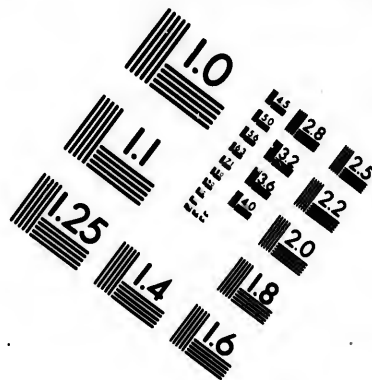
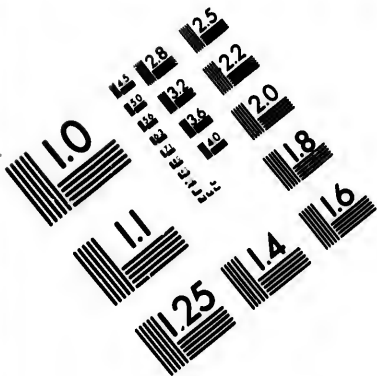
SEA

A General Mapp of the Kingdom of  
**SPAIN**  
 Designed by Monsieur Sanson, Geographer to the French King  
 and Reduced into English and Illustrated by Ric: Blome, by  
 his Majesties Especial Command.  
 1669

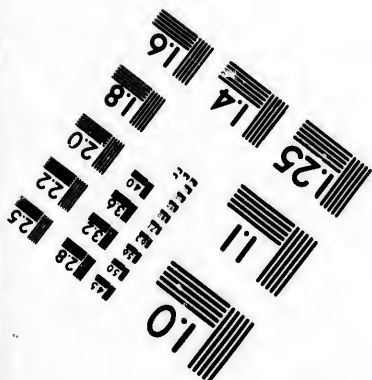
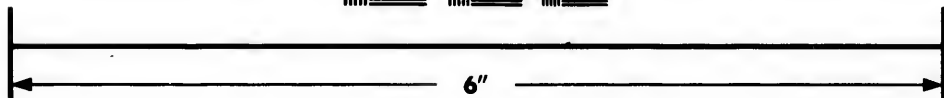
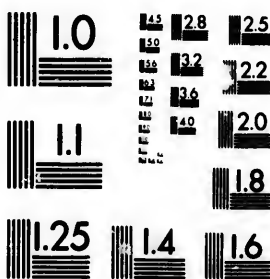
rights of Gibraltar







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



the French,  
about 2000  
sie. The hi  
or continue  
Cannu, on t  
day, one ma

These M  
called from  
of one *Behr*  
ravished by

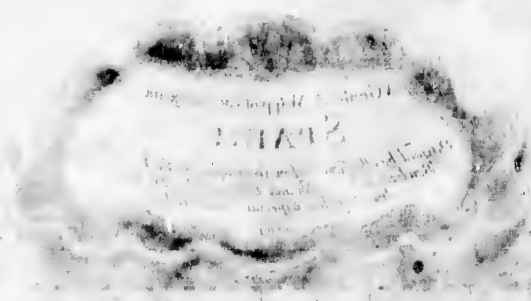
*Spain* tal  
(which thou  
been always  
same Contu  
35 Degree  
44<sup>th</sup>, which  
from South  
Degree of  
fourth, wh  
And this is  
and *Longit*

It is feat  
of the Nor  
most in the  
*Climates* ;  
day is 15 h

This Co  
fertile in C  
a small size  
and as the  
the Inhabit  
their cheif  
which the  
are so exp  
*Flesh*, they  
*Dishes*, ve  
taste, by r  
ces they ar  
their *Olim*  
dish : But

*Corn* and  
*modities* ;  
*Metals* ;  
*wock*, *Sap*  
*Coriander* ;  
*wonds*, Or  
*Lamb-skin*  
which the  
*Filchards* ;  
*Lead*, *Tin*  
*skins*, and  
From *Fra*  
*Corn*, *Lin*  
*Raf* *Corn*  
*Corn*, *Co*  
*Firy-bear*  
And from  
Manufac

*Spain* v



# SPAIN

the *French*, against the *Moors*; in which, about 20000 of the *French* were made to die. The highest part of these Mountains, or continued Ridge of Hills, is Mount *Camus*, on the summit of which, in a clear day, one may see both the Seas.

These Mountains are feigned to be so called from one *Pyrene*, a *Nymph*, Daughter of one *Bebrix*, who was here said to be ravished by *Hercules*.

*Spain* taken conjoyntly with *Portugal* (which though a particular Kingdom, hath been always taken as a Member of the same Continent) extends it self from the 35 Degree of *Latitude*, unto almost the 44<sup>th</sup>, which are about 200 *French* Leagues, from South to North, and from the ninth Degree of *Longitude* unto the twenty fourth, which are 250 and odd Leagues. And this is its utmost extent of *Latitude* and *Longitude*.

It is situate in the most Southernly part of the Northern *Temperate Zone*, and almost in the midst of the Fourth and sixth *Climates*; so that the longest Summers day is 15 hours.

This Countrey is found to be not over fertile in *Corn* nor *Cattle*, which are but of a small size, but the *Flesh* exceeding sweet, and as the Countrey breedeth but few, so the Inhabitants order their dyet thereafter, their chief food being *Sallets* and *Fruits*, which the Earth produceth; in which they are so expert, that with a small peece of *Flesh*, they will make two or three several *Dishes*, very excellent and pleasing to the taste, by reason of the *seasonings* and *Spices* they are composed of; and above all, their *Olinus* are esteemed as an excellent dish: But in recompence of the defect of *Corn* and *Flesh*, they have several rich *Commodities*; as *Wines*, *Oyls*, *Sugars*, several *Metals*, *Rice*, *Cork*, *Soda*, *Barrelia*, *Shumack*, *Soap*, *Anchoves*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Wood*, *Coriander*, *Saffron*, *Aniseeds*, *Raisins*, *Almonds*, *Oranges*, *Lemmons*, *Liccoris*, *Wool*, *Lamb-skins*, *Raw Silk*, *Tobacco*, &c. For which they receive from *England*, *Herrings*, *Pilchards*, *Newland Fish*, *Irish Salmon*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Serges*, *Bays*, *Says*, *Calves-* skins, and other *Englisb* Manufactures. From *France* they are furnished with *Paper*, *Corn*, *Linnen*, &c. From *Ireland*, and the *East Countrey*, they are provided with *Corn*, *Cardage*, *Masts*, *Tarr*, *Resin*, *Pitch*, *Firr-boards*, *Masts*, and other *Timber*, &c. And from *Italy*, with *Raw-Silk* and several Manufactures.

*Spain* received its first People from *Cel-*

*tes*, whence came the name of *Celtiberi*, *Quasi Celta ad Iberum*; then the *Phoenicians* and *Carthaginians* possessed the most Southern parts, and those nearest to *Africa*, and endeavored to make themselves Masters of all the Countrey. The *Romans* drove them out, and possess it wholly; and in the declension of their Empire, the *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Sueves*, *Alains*, and *Silinges* settled here, and parted it among them: The *Goths* in the end remained sole Masters, till such time as the *Moors* vanquished them, and forced them to retire to the Mountains of *Leon*, the *Asturias*, and *Gallicia*.

*Charles Martell* having defeated these *Moors* in *France*, and afterwards *Charlemain* having made War upon them in *Spain*; the *Goths* began to take breath, and to sally fir'n the Mountains, and by little and little repulsed, and in fine, drove these *Moors* out of *Spain*, which yet they effected not, but in the space of 7 or 800 years; during which time, several Kingdoms were formed in *Spain* to the number of Fourteen, which were afterwards reduced into Three Estates, and then fell under one Government alone; but it was soon divided into two or three, as we have seen within a short time, and as they were 150 and odd years ago.

The People now inhabiting in *Spain* are of a Swarthy Complexion, Black haired, and of a good proportion: They are very stately in all their actions, of a majestic gait, not altering their pace, though danger pursues them at their heels: They are very grave and serious in their carriages; in offices of Piety, very devout: They know how to deport themselves when their betters are in place, and to the King very obedient, true, and loving: They are patient in adversities, not given to alter their resolutions, in War they are too deliberate, and their Foot is esteemed better then their Horse: They are much addicted to Women; they are great vaunters and braggers, and are exceeding proud, though scarce masters of a Single *Ryal*, which is but Six pence sterling; feeding themselves with a foolish fanatic, That their Children may come to be great persons. The Women are very sober, discreet, and loving to their *Husbands*, they are indifferent handsome and clear complexioned.

In Matters of Religion they are *Roman Catholics*, in which, they are very devout, and strict, not admitting the publick exercise of any other Religion throughout the whole

The several People, inhabiting Spain.

The Moors vanquish'd by the Goths.

The several People, inhabiting Spain.

# S P A I N

whole Kingdom of Spain: So indulgent to the Pope, that he gave the King the name of the most Catholic King.

Spain and Portugal famous for their Navigations.

The Navigations and Discoveries of the Spaniards into the West-Indies, and the Portuguese into the East-Indies, have made them Indiscreetly famous throughout Christendom, where they have potent Colonies; from whence they have reaped exceeding great riches, not only to the Kings, but also to the People by their trade to those parts, most of them addicting themselves to Traffick.

The King of Spain cannot chuse but have an exceeding great Revenue, having so many ways to raise it at home, besides his riches brought him out of the Indies; yet his expences are so great, that he is accounted not rich: But all conclude him to be very potent and powerful.

Spain divided into fourteen Kingdoms.

The Fourteen Kingdoms, are Castile and Leon, in the middle of the Countrey; and Northward of Castile and Leon, are those of Navar, Biscay, Signory, and the Asturias, or Oviedo; to the Westward, are Galicia, Portugal, and Algarve; to the South, Andalusia, Granada, and Murcia; and to the Eastward, Arragon, Catalonia, and Valencia. To these Fourteen Kingdoms, we may add the Islands of Balears, seated in the Mediterranean-Sea, which comprehends Majorca, Minorca, and Iviza.

See the Geographical Table for the Division of Spain.

All these Kingdoms have formerly been reduced into Three Estates, which they call Castile, Arragon, and Portugal: Those of Castile and Arragon were first united, then that of Portugal; but Portugal is at present divided from Castile, and Catalonia would have done the same. But let us leave those Revolutions to History, and proceed to the several Kingdoms, of which in order.

K. and of Castile, with its chief places.

The Kingdom of CASTILE is divided into the Old, and the New; that is to say, into the first and last, gained or reconquered from the Moors; both the Castiles together are bound on the East, with Navar and Arragon; on the South, with Andalusia, Granada, and Murcia; on the West, with Portugal; and on the North, with the Asturias or Oviedo, and Biscay.

The Old Castile is situate Northward of the New; its chief City is esteemed to be Burgos, famous as contending with Toledo, for the Primacy of all Spain; next to it in repute, is Valladolid; a neat and fair City, and an University, it is honored with

the Birth-place of King Philip the Second, who erected a Colledge for the English Papistical-Fugitives. Thirdly, the City Namantia, famous for its defending its self against the power of the Romans for fourteen years; and at last left Scipio nothing but a Pile of Ashes for his triumph: For being put to extremity, rather then yield themselves to the Romans; they gathered together all their Goods, Armour, and Treasure in a heap, and made a fire of them; in the flame of which, they voluntarily ended their days. This City was seated on or near the place where now standeth Soria. And fourthly, Segovia, a place of note for Cloathing here made.

The New Castile is South of the Old, and boasts of Madrid for its chief place; which though but a Village, yet is the greatest Village in all the World, and may compare with many Cities in Europe; and its Territory, though it be neither pleasant nor abundant, yet is made both, by the Residence of the Kings of Spain.

Here are four Fairs in this City every year, to wit, The Fair of Villalium, it begins the first day of Lent, and lasteth twenty days: The Fair of May, and is made in Medina del Campo, it begins the first of June, and lasteth fifty days: The Fair of August, and is made in Medina de Rioseco, and begins the first of August, and lasts thirty days: And the fourth and last, is the Fair of October, and is made in Medina del Campo, it begins the first of November, and lasts fifty days.

The chief City of this Kingdom, is Toledo, which, with its Territory so called, formerly made a Kingdom of it self, but now united to New Castile.

This City is seated on the River Tago, and almost in the heart of all Spain; it is a fair City, beautified with several stately Edifices; its Walls are strong, whereon are placed 50 Towers of Stone, which adds much to the strength of this City. It is honored with an University, famous for the study of the Civil and Cannon Law; as also with 18 National Councils here held under the Reign of the Catholic Kings, who here resided; and now the Seat of an Archbishop. Next to it may be accounted Alcazar, of note for its order of Knights; so called; also Alcala de Henares, dignified with an University for the study of Divinity. And lastly, Caena seated at the Spring-head of the River Xucar, nigh to which is the stately Palace of the Escorial, or St. Lawrence, built by King Philip the Second:

A place that he presents stately stables, singing a Per in the bui  
This Z very com the Front Kings Pal delightfu that towa and beau towards t stately Ga into a ma inhabited St. Ferom the right belonging the left ha belonging This pl scence, th lost, if on The Ki some th hath on the Castile; on the North joyned with the A to the Sea eldest Son their Title ry; whic Kingdom. The chi Oviedo, and so by the Elever was called 2. Ovi and from had the last 3. Avu in Astury. 4. Astu lamanca, mous Acc The Ki quity may Fourteen bounds, Southern Castile, a Metropoli a place m



lip the Second, the English Pa-  
ly, the City  
its defending its  
the Romans for  
left Scipio no-  
for his triumph:  
ty, rather than  
omans, they ga-  
oods, Armour, and  
le a fire of them;  
they voluntarily  
City was feated  
re now standeth  
egovia, a place of  
ade.  
outh of the Old,  
its chief place,  
llage, yet is the  
World, and may  
s in Europe; and  
e neither pleasant  
ade both, by the  
of Spain.  
in this City every  
r of *Vidalion*, in  
*Levi*, and lasteth  
of *May*, and is made  
t begins the first of  
ays: The Fair of  
*Medina del Rioseco*,  
*August*, and lasts  
urth and last, is the  
made in *Medina del*  
ist of *November*,  
his Kingdom, is  
Territory so called,  
om of it self, but  
ile.  
n the River *Tago*,  
of all Spain; it is a  
with several stately  
strong, whereon are  
strong, which adds  
of this City. It is  
famous for the  
*Cannon Law*; as  
Councils here held  
Gothish Kings, who  
the Seat of an Arch-  
be accounted Al-  
order of *Rodrig* to  
*Licavari*, signified  
he Study of *Divini-*  
ated at the Spring-  
r, nigh to which is  
he *Escorial*, or St.  
*Philip the Second*:  
A

A place reputed of such Magnificence, that neither past times came near it, nor present can equal it. In this large and stately structure, are eleven several *Quar-dangles*, every one incloistred, all expressing a *Peruvian Treasure* to have been spent in the building them.  
This *Baldice* is four square, having at every corner a high and majestic *Turret*; the Front towards the North, regards the *Kings Palace*; that towards the East, many delightful and pleasant *Gardens and Walks*; that towards the South, divers sumptuous and beautiful *Buildings*; and the Front towards the West, is adorned with three stately *Gates*, the midst of which leadeth into a magnificent *Temple*, a *Monastery*, inhabited by 150 *Monks* of the Order of *St. Ferome*, and a *Colledge*. The *Gate* on the right hand leadeth to several *Offices* belonging to the *Monastery*; and that on the left hand, to the *Schools and Out-houses* belonging to the *Colledge*.  
This place is of such beauty and magnificence, that a Voyage to *Spain* were not lost, if onely to go to see it.  
The Kingdom of *LEON*, called by some the Kingdom of *Leon* and *Oviedo*; hath on the East and South, *Biscay* and *Castile*, on the West, *Gallicia*, and on the North, the *Ocean*. Thus it is conjoined with *Oviedo*, which is the same with the *Astury*, and stretcheth it bounds to the Sea; and from this place, the eldest Sons of the Kings of *Spain* have their *Titles*, being called Princes of *Astury*; which was the ancient name of this Kingdom.  
The chief Towns or Cities of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, are 1. *Leon*, by some called *Legio*, and so by *Mercator*; because it is supposed the Eleventh Legion quartered here, which was called *Legio Germanica*.  
2. *Oviedo*, the chief place of *Astury*; and from this City it is to be supposed it had the last name.  
3. *Avilez*, seated on the Sea side, and in *Astury*.  
4. *Astorga*, 5. *Placencia*; and 6. *Salamanca*, of note for having the most famous Academy of all *Spain*.  
The Kingdom of *NAVARR*, for Antiquity may claim the second place of all the Fourteen Kingdoms. It hath for its Eastern bounds, the *Pyrenean Mountains*; for its Southern, *Aragon*; for its Western, *Castile*; and for its Northern, *Biscay*. The Metropolis of this Countrey is *Pampelona*, a place more famous for her *Fortification*

then her *Negotiation*; yet hath it often suffered under the several incursions of the *Goths, Moors, Navarrais, French, and Castilians*. Next to it is *Viana*, once the Title of the Prince of *Navar*, near which *Caesar Borgia* was slain by an Ambush, 3. *Espella*, 4. *Tudela*, 5. *Olite*; and 6. *Sanguessa*, all good Cities.  
This Countrey was one of the first, that with success, opposed the *Moors*.  
The Signiory of *BISCAY*, once called *Cantabria*, hath on the East, *Navar*; on the South, *Old Castile*; on the West, *Astury*; and on the North, the *Cantabrian Ocean*. This Countrey of all *Spain*, remained alone unconquered by the *Moors*, by reason of its Mountainous and Woody situation; by reason whereof, it is exceedingly well furnished with *Rivers* which here have their rise; and among the *Trees* they are furnished with those that are found excellent for the Building of *Ships*: And this Countrey for its many *Iron Mines*, is called the *Armory of Spain*. The chief places in this Kingdom, are 1. *Bilboa*, a Town of great Trade, Riches, and much frequented by *Merchants*, seated two miles distant from the *Ocean*; it aboundeth in *Wines, Cattle, excellent Bread, and the best Blades*, known by the name of *Bilboa-Blades*.  
The *Commodities* that this place affordeth, is *Iron* here wrought, *Chestnuts*, *Wool* brought from *Castile*, and hence transported, &c.  
*Commodities* most vendible here, are, *Pilchers, Herrings, New Found-land Fish, Dried Hake, Salt-Salmon, Lead, Tinn, Bees Wax, Bays, Serges, Callicoes, Fustians, Perpetuanoes, Norwich Stuffs, Tan'd Hides, Calves Skins, Pewter, Butter, &c.*  
*Coyas* here currant, are the same with those of *Spain* aforementioned.  
As to their *Weights*, they make use of two *Kintals*; the one being 100 li. *Sutle*, which produceth in *London* 111 or 112 li. and is that common *Kintal*; and the other is onely proper for *Iron* here made, which maketh at *London* 158 li.  
Their *Measure* is the *Vare*, of which 109 *Masures* makes 100 *Yards English*.  
*Corn* is here sold by the *Hanega*, and five *Hanegas* maketh a *Quarter English*.  
2. *St. Sebastians* another noted Town for *Traffick*. 3. *Andero*. 4. *Fonterabia*, all Sea-Port Towns, 5. *Victoria*. And 6. *Tolofetta*, Cities of some account.

The King-  
dom of  
Gallicia,  
with its  
chief Cit-  
ies.

The Kingdom of *GALICIA* hath on the East the *Astury*, on the South, the River *Minius*; on the West and North, the *Sea*. Its former *Inhabitants* were the *Galaiici*, whence it had its name. The *Country* is *Mountainous*, like to the *Astury*. Its chief places are *St. Fago de Compostella*, or more commonly *St. Fago*, in honor of *St. James*, who here lieth Entered: It is honored with the *See* of an *Archbishop* and an *University*; and in a *Church* in this *City* the *Inhabitants* keep the *Reliques* of *St. James*, which are worshipped by them with great devotion; by reason of which, it is much frequented by strangers, who hither come also to pay their devotions. 2. *Bajona*, seated at the mouth of the River *Minius*. 3. *Coronna*, not far from the Promontory of *Nerius*. 4. *Mondonedo*. 5. *Lugo*. And 20 6. *Tuy*, seated on the River *Minho*.

## PORTUGAL.

The King-  
dom of  
Portugal  
known

The Kingdom of *PORTUGAL*, as united with that of *Algarve*, and divided from the Dominions of *Castile*, contains the Kingdoms of *Portugal*, and *Algarve*. They have for their Eastern bounds, the *Castiles* and *Andalusia*; for its Southern and Western, the *Ocean*; and for its Northern, the River *Minius* or *Gallicia*. It enjoyeth a sweet and healthful Air; the *Country* for the most part is *Hilly*, and not very grateful to the *Husbandman*; but that defect is recompensed by their abundance of *Honey*, *Wine*, *Oyl*, *Fruits*, *Fish*, *Salt*, *White Marble*, *Alum*, &c. which are 40 the general and proper *Commodities* of the Kingdom; besides *Druggs*, *Spices*, *Cottons*, *Callicoes*, *Precious Stones*, *Silks*, and other *East India*, *Persia*, *Arabia*, and *China* *Commodities* which here abound, by reason of their several *Colonies* in these parts: As also the great *Trade* by them there driven. This Kingdom is about 320 miles in length, and about 120 in breadth, in which compass are said to be about 1460 50 *Parishes*, and many *Nunneries* and *Religious Houses*. The most fertile place of all *Portugal* is about *Coimbra*; its *Fruits* are excellent, and sound exceeding good when preserved; by reason of which, here are abundance of *Confessioners*.

This *Country* is well watered with *Rivers* of all sorts, having near 100 great and small; as the *Tagus* and others, which

I shall speak of in places more convenient.

The *People* are esteemed more honest, plain, and of a simpler behavior, than the rest of *Spain*, and more devout in matters of *Religion*.

The chief *Cities* of *Portugal*, are, 1. *Lisbona*, seated upon the *Tagus*: The *Latine* writers call it *Olisippo* or *Ulisippo*; and as some have fabulously imagined, to be built by *Ulysses* in his Ten years Travels. It is conveniently seated for *Navigation*, and of a great resort and *Trade*; it is in compass seven miles, and contains thirty and odd *Parish Churches*, in which may be numbred at least 20000 *Houses*, all well built, and comely to behold; and on its *Walls* (which are strong) are about Sixty *Turrets* and *Towers*, which renders a pleasing shew to the beholder; and for entrance it hath Twenty two *Gates* towards the *Sea*, and Sixteen towards the *Continents*: Towards the *Continents*, it is seated on Five small *Hills*, betwixt which is a *Valley* which runs down to the River *Duro*, whose entrance is defended by a *Castle*; and on the highest of these *Hills*, is seated an ancient *Castle*, now serving openly for a *Prison* for great *Persons*. And this *City* being the 30 *Metropolis* of the Kingdom, is the Residence of the Kings of *Portugal*, and the *See* of an *Archbishop*.

The *Commodities* that this *City* of *Lisbona* yieldeth, are those aforesaid, as being the *Metropolitan*: For which they receive divers *Commodities*, as *Bays*, *Says*, *Serges*, *Perperuanes*, *Cloths* *dress* and *died*. *Lead*, *Shot*, *Iron*, *Herrings*, *Poor John*, or *Bacalaow*, and all *English Manufactures*.

Their *Coyns* are as followeth; viz. A *Vimim* is 20 *Res*, which is Two pence sterling.

A *Ryal* is 40 *Res*, or Two *Vimims*.

A *Teston* is 100 *Res*, which is 15 *d. Sterling*. And; a *Teston* is 50 *Res*.

One *quarser* of a Piece of  $\frac{1}{2}$  is 90 *Res*, which is 13  $\frac{1}{2}$  *d. Sterling*.

A Piece of  $\frac{1}{4}$  is 360 *Res*, which is worth 4 *s. 6 d. Sterling*.

A *Croisado* is worth 500 *Res*.

A *Mill Reas* is worth 25 *Ryals*.

They keep their *Accounts* in *Milreus* or *Reas*.

Their *Weights* is the *Quimal*, which is of two sorts, the small and the great: The smaller is for *Pepper*, &c. and is divided into four *Roves* of 28 *li*, the *Rove*, which is 112 *l*. at 16 *Ounces per pound*; which maketh 112 *li. English*.

The

The g  
res, Suga  
vided in  
32 li. w  
Ounces p  
to be bi  
C. by 16  
Cynam  
128 li. E  
Pepper  
just our  
Lead  
Wax is  
being sh  
Sugars ar  
Their  
two forts  
whereby  
or Stuffs  
suring, to  
that the  
most an E  
By the  
measured  
doubled  
Ell Flemi  
to this the  
sure as the  
Their A  
quiere, an  
a Bushel  
and five  
naque, call  
quiere ma  
makes a  
which is  
makes a B  
The fe  
Braga, c  
dom, no  
Archbisho  
on the Du  
Coimbra,  
Mondogo  
among V  
nified wit  
Universit  
the Taga  
main Ath  
tainus, w  
here adju  
which co  
retireme  
heat of  
ed at the  
Portugal  
eighth,  
the tent  
the twe

more conve-  
ed more honest,  
navior, then the  
vout in matters

Portugal, are,  
the Tagus: The  
sippo or Missippo;  
ly imagined, to  
en years Travels,  
for Navigation,  
Trade; it is in  
nd contains thirty  
in which may be  
Horses, all well  
hold; and on its  
) are about Sixty  
ch renders a plea-  
; and for entrance  
s towards the Sea,  
Continents: To-  
is seated on Five  
which is a Valley  
River Duere, whose  
y a Castle; and on  
s, is seated an an-  
opely for a Prison  
his City being the  
om, is the Residence  
, and the See of an

at this City of Lú-  
e-fore said, as being  
which they receive  
Bays, Says, Serget,  
st and dead, Lead,  
Poor John, or Bac-  
annafitures,  
followeth; viz. A  
h is Two pence ster-

Two Vintins,  
which is 15 d. Sterl.  
ce of 7 is 90 Res,  
s,  
Res, which is worth

500 Res.  
rch 25 Ryals.  
counts in Milreas or

Quintal, which is  
and the great: The  
&c. and is divided  
i, the Rove, which  
s per pound; which

The

The greater Quintal, whereby all Spi-  
er, Sugars, &c. are weighed, is also di-  
vided into four Roves, each Rove being  
32 li, which is 128 li, the Quintal at 16  
Ounces per pound. And this weight is found  
to be bigger then the English 112 li. or  
C. by 16 li.

Cynamon is sold by the Quintal of  
128 li. English.  
Pepper by the Quintal of 112 li, which is 10  
just our C.

Lead is sold by the Quintal 128 li.  
Wax is sold by the Pound of 16 Ounces,  
being the same with the Pound Sterling.  
Sugars are sold by the Rove of 32 li.

Their Measures for Cloth or Silks, be of  
two sorts, the first is called the Vars,  
whereby is sold all sorts of Linnen, Silk,  
or Stuffs of Fustian breadth; and in mea-  
suring, to every Vars is given an Inch: So  
that the Vars is 42 3/4 Inches, which is al-  
most an Ell English.

By the second, called the Covada, is  
measured all Commodities of breadth  
doubled together; and this maketh a just  
Ell Flemish, or 2 of a Yard English. And  
to this they give no advantage, but mea-  
sure as the Turks do with the Pike.

Their Measure for Corn, is called an Al-  
quiere, and three of these Alquieres makes  
a Bushel of Bristol or Winchester Measure;  
and five of the Alquieres makes the Ha-  
maque, called the Salt Measure. Sixty Al-  
quieres makes a Moy; Fifteen Alquieres  
makes a Tun of Bristol Water-measure,  
which is 10 Gallons of Winchester, which  
makes a Bushel, and 40 Bushels a Tun.

The second City may be reckoned  
Braga, once the Metropolis of the King-  
dom, now dignified with the See of an  
Archbishop. The third Miranda, seated  
on the Duere, an Episcopal See. The fourth  
Coimbra, seated on the sides of the River  
Mondego, of a pleasant situation, being  
among Vineyards and Woods of Olives, dig-  
nified with an Episcopal See, and a famous  
University. The fifth Samaren, seated on  
the Tagus. The sixth Sintra, upon the  
main Atlantick, at the end of high Moun-  
tains, which for the pleasure of the Woods  
here adjacent, as also the cool refreshings  
which come from the Sea, it is the usual  
retirement of the Kings of Portugal, in the  
heat of Summer: The seventh Porto, sear-  
ed at the mouth of the Duere, now called  
Portuport, a Town of good Trade. The  
eighth, Braganza; the ninth, Lamego;  
the tenth, Guarda; the eleventh, Evora;  
the twelfth, Elvas; the thirteenth, Parta-

legre; the fourteenth, Leiria. All fair  
Cities.

South of Portugal is ALGARVE,  
anciently called Regnum Algarbium: It  
was united by the marriage of Alphonso the  
Third of Portugal, who had it in Dowry  
with his Wife Beatrix, Daughter to Al-  
phonso the Fourth of Castile, and Tenth of  
Leon.

Its chief places are, Faro, a Port-Town  
towards the Straights of Gibraltar and Sil-  
vis, anciently the Seat of its Kings within  
Land. The utmost end of this Country  
is called the Cape of St. Vincent, because  
the Bones of St. Vincent, which the Chri-  
stians kept sacred, were by the Saracens  
(the then Masters of this Country) burnt,  
and scattered about the Earth.

The Kingdom of Portugal is much co-  
veted by the King of Spain, who esteems  
it to be the chiefest Pearl of his Cabinet,  
and as the choicest Flower in his Garland;  
and which to regain, he hath oft-times  
waged War against them: But those who  
bring an unjust War upon a Nation, as the  
King of Spain hath several times on this,  
if they rightly consider it, cannot ex-  
pect the accomplishment of their desires,  
which he hath of late been sensible of;  
where, by the valor of the English assis-  
tance to the King of Portugal (since our  
alliance to them by the late and happy  
Marriage of our Sovereign Lord, King  
Charles the Second, to the Illustrious and  
Vertuous Lady Dona Katherine, Infanta  
Portuguesa) they received an exceeding  
great overthrow.

The Principal Order of Knighthood  
in the Kingdom of Portugal, is of Jesus Christ,  
instituted by King Dennis of Portugal, in  
Anno 1321, was confirmed by Pope John  
the Two and twentieth. Their Robe is a  
Black Cloak under a White Vesture; over  
which, is a Black Cross, &c.

The Kingdom of ANDALOUSIA  
hath on the East and South, Granada, and  
the Sea; (and adding the Country of  
Estremadura, it reaches Northward to the  
Castiles;) on the North, the Hill Seira  
Morena; its Western bounds being the  
Sea, Algarve, and Portugal. It is the most  
rich and fruitful Country of all Spain: It  
is watered with the Rivers Batiu, Ana, Te-  
neo, and Odier.

This Country boasts in its chief City  
Sevilla or Sevil; the most beautiful of all  
this Continent, of which the Spaniards say,  
Chi non ha vista Sevilla, non ha vista Mara-  
villa; that is, He who hath not seen Sevill,  
hath

The King  
of Spain,  
made de-  
sires of  
Portugal.

Chief Order  
of Knight-  
hood.

The King-  
dom of An-  
dalousia,  
was in-  
stituted.

hath not seen a Wonder. It is in compass 6 miles, encompassed with stately Walls, and adorned with no less magnificent Buildings, as Palaces, Churches, and Monasteries, among which the Monastery of Gerzifins, is endowed with 25000 Crowns yearly; the River Betis separates it into two parts, which are joyned together by a stately Bridge. From hence the Spaniards set forth their West-India Fleet, and hither they return to unlade the riches they bring from those parts; and the Trade of this City is of that greatness, that some have dared to say that the Customs here are worth to the King of Spaine, the yearly Revenue of above half a Million of gold, and indeed this City, and Lisbon in Portugal may be said to be the chief Cities for Trade in this Continent, the one having had the whole commerce of the West-Indies, and the other of the East. It is dignified with a flourishing University, and the See of an Archbishop, who is held so rich, that his Revenue amounteth to 100000 Crowns yearly, and hath under his jurisdiction 2000 small Villages, and consequently as many benefices, besides Frieries, Nunneries, and Hospitals, and is esteemed the next in degree to him of Toledo. In this City are continually kept 30000 Genets for the service of the King of Spain, which are to be ready upon all occasions; from hence come our Sevill Oranges, and lastly, here resteth the body of Christopher Columbus, famous for his Navigations, and Discoveries of the New World.

Coynes here, as generally throughout all Spaine, are the same with those of Madrid, the Royal Seat of the King of Spain, 40 viz. Pieces or Ryalls of 2, Rials of 3, Rials of 4, and single Ryalls. A Ryal is worth 6 d. so that a Ryal of 2 is worth 4 s. sterling. A Marvide: which is the 34th part of a Ryal or 6 d. and 375 Marvides makes a Ducat, which is worth something above 5 s. 6 d. sterling; their Gold-Coynes are, the double, single, half and quarter Pistolet, and a Pistolet is 32 Ryals, which is 16 s. sterling, the double Pistolet 64 Rials, the half Pistolet 16 Ryals, and so forth.

Here and in other places of Spaine, they keep their Accounts by Marvides, and Ryals.

Their Weights, is the Kintal of 100 l. subtle, at 4 Roves to the Kintal, each Rove being 25 l. which said Kintal is found to make in England about 108 l.

The Common Measure is the Vare, 8

100 whereof makes in London 74 Ells. Wine and Oyle is here sold by the Rove, which is 4 gallons English.

Next to Sevill we may reckon Cordova, once the Royal Seat of the Moorish Kings, from hence cometh that excellent Cordovant Leather, made of the skin of a Sardinian Beast; not far from this City was fought that famous Battel between Caesar and the sons of Pompey, where Caesar gained the day, and made an end of the Civil Warrs, which had continued four years; and nigh to this City is a Wood of 30 miles in length, wherein are nothing but Olive-trees. Then Marchena famous for its Genets, also Medina Sidonia, whose Duke was general of the invincible Armado in 1588. Then Xeres de la Frontera, a Sea Town, from whence comes our Sherrie-Sack; and lastly Cadiz seated in an Isle below Sevill, a Colony of the Carthaginians.

The Country of ESTREMEDURA hath on the East and North, Castile; on the West, Portugal; and on the South, Andalusia. Through this Country runneth the River Betis. It hath for its chief places Merida, which was built, and made a Colony by Augustus; and Guadalcanall famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold.

The Kingdom of GRANADA, hath on the East Murcia, on the South, the Mediterranean Sea; on the West, Andalusia; and on the North, Castile. Its chief Cities are, 1. Granada, a stately City, where is yet to be seen the Palace of the Moorish Kings, covered with Gold, and indented with Mosaical worke; its Buildings are of Free-Stone; it is fenced about with a strong Wall, on which are 130 Towers, and hath 12 Gates for entrance into it; it is an Inland Town, yet famous for being the residence of the Parliament, and Court of Justice, for all the Southern parts of Spain, as Valladolid is for the North, and therefore well frequented and inhabited by Lawyers; next is Malaga, a famous Sea-Port-Town, seated on the Mediterranean-shore, a place abounding in Reasins, and a rich Wine known unto us by the name of Malaga-Sack.

The Coynes are Ryalls of 8 Quartiles, Canos, Marvides, Pistolets, and Duckets of Gold.

The Ducket is 11 Ryalls.

The Pistolet is 26 Ryalls Plate.

The double Pistolet 52 Ryalls.

Eight; Quartiles makes a single Ryal.

Two Canos is a Quartile.

Two

The Trade of Sevill.

The Coyne of Sevill.

Their Weights.

Their Measure.

Two  
Four  
And 3  
is 6 d. Ste  
They  
Yellow or  
Mervides  
Their  
which th  
of 25 lib.  
ounce con  
28 grains  
106 li. H  
Their  
Vare of 3  
Their  
divided in  
bres, and  
25 of the  
English.

Their o  
The Lique  
being all c  
divided in  
In weight  
English.

Next to  
ria seated o  
This C  
the Mores v  
tributed to  
aets.

The Ki  
esteemed a  
ver-Mines  
well stored  
the East w  
Valencia or  
West wich  
with New-  
Cartagena,  
thage; it  
Navens in  
diverranean  
takes its na  
of good ac  
vered from  
by Ferinan  
The Ki  
bounded on  
the South  
with Castil  
varre. Th  
the middle  
Cities are,  
on the Riv  
led Casar  
founded; i  
the seat of

# S P A I N.

Two *Mervides* is a *Cano*.  
 Four *Mervides* is a *Quartile*,  
 And 34 *Mervides* is a final *Ryal*, which  
 is 6*d*. *Sterling*.

They generally keep their Accounts in  
*Yellan* or *Brass* money, by *Duckets*, *Ryals*, and  
*Mervides*.

Their Weight is the *Quintal* or *C*,  
 which they divide into four *Roves* or Parts  
 of a 5. *lib. per Rove*, at 16 *ounces* per *li*, each  
 ounce containing 16 *drams*, and each *dram*  
 28 *grains*, and this *C*. maketh in *London*  
 106. *li*. *Haberdapsis*.

Their Measure for *Silk*, *Cloth*, &c. is the  
*Yare* of 32  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Inches* *English* by Rule.

Their Wine Measure is a *Rove*, which is  
 divided into 8 small Measures called *Som-  
 bres*, and is in *England* four *Gallons*. And  
 25 of these fills a *Pipe*, which is 100 *Gallons*  
*English*.

Their Oyle-Measure is the *Rove* of 25 *l*.  
 The *Liquid-Measure*, and that of *grains*  
 being all one, *viz*, the *Hanoque*, which is  
 divided into 2 *Almudes*, making 1 *Bushel*.  
 In weight by heap 144 *l*. by *Strick* 99 *l*.  
*English*.

Next to *Mallaga* may be reckoned *Alme-  
 ria* seated on the *Sea*.

This Country was the last out of which  
 the *Mores* were driven, which may be at-  
 tributed to its Mountains, and barren-  
 nesses.

The Kingdom of *MURCIA* was once  
 esteemed a rich Country, abounding in *Sil-  
 ver-Mines*, and withal very fertile, and  
 well stored with *Fruits*; it is bounded on  
 the East with the *Mediterranean Sea*; and  
*Valencia* on the South with the *Sea*, on the  
 West with *Granada*; and on the North,  
 with *New-Castile*. Its chief places are, *Fuist*,  
*Cartagena*, first built by *Asdrubal* of *Car-  
 thage*; it is now one of the most famous  
*Havens* in all *Spain*, seated also on the *Me-  
 diterranean shore*; and next *Morcía*, which  
 takes its name from the Country, a City  
 of good account. This Kingdom was re-  
 covered from *Albaquois* the last *Morish King*,  
 by *Ferinand* of *Castile*, 1541.

The Kingdom of *ARRAGON*, is  
 bounded on the East, with *Catalonia*; on  
 the South with *Valencia*; on the West  
 with *Castile*; and on the North, with *Na-  
 varre*. This Country is divided just in  
 the middle, by the River *Iberus*. Its chief  
 Cities are, 1. *Saragosa*, or *Caragosa*, seated  
 on the River *Iberus* or *Ebro*, antiently cal-  
 led *Casar Augusta*, by whom it was first  
 founded; it is a famous *University*, and once  
 the seat of the *Morish Kings*, 2. *Lerida*,

seated on the River *Ginga*, which hath its  
 Spring-head in the *Pyrenean hills*, in its  
 course divides this Country from *Catala-  
 nia*, and emptieth it self into the *Iberus*; it  
 is an *University*, as is 3. *Huesca*, and 4. *Mor-  
 sons*, famous for giving entertainment to  
 the *K. of Spain* every third year, at which  
 time the *People* of *Arragon*, *Valencia*,  
 and *Catalonia*, make the *King* a present  
 of 600000 *Crownes*, to wit, 300000 for  
*Catalonia*, 300000 for *Arragon*; and  
 100000 for *Valencia*, and this is all the  
*Taxes* or *Monies* they pay to the *King*, for  
 three years, 5. *Jaca*, 6. *Boria*, 7. *Ca-  
 latsind*, 8. *Darica*, 9. *Albarazin*, and  
 10. *Teruel*.

The Kingdom of *CATALONIA*,  
 or *Catalogue*, is between the River *Iberus*,  
 on the South; *Arragon* on the West; the  
*Pyrenean Mountains*, on the North; and  
 the *Ocean*, on the East; Its chief places  
 are *Barcelona*, seated on the *Mediterranean*  
*shore*, a place of good strength, and anti-  
 quity, being built out of the ruins of *Rubi-  
 cata*, an old Colony of the *Africans*; and  
 now dignified with the seat of the *Vice-  
 vent*; and next *Girona*, seated on the Ri-  
 ver *Batulus*, the antient seat of the *Arra-  
 gonian Princes*. This Country lately (*Bur-  
 in vain*) struggled for their liberty with the  
*King of Spain*.

The Kingdom of *VALENTIA* is the  
 last of the fourteen, which are numbred  
 in *Spain*. It is environed with *Marcia*, *Ca-  
 stile*, *Arragon*, and the *Sea*: It is seated  
 not far from the mouth of the River *Gha-  
 dalangar*, and about two miles distance  
 from the *Sea*, where there is an open but  
 ill commodious road for ships, called *la*  
*Grana*: yet as being the chief City of the  
 Country, it is a place of a good *Trade*, af-  
 fording several good *Commodities*. Here  
 is an *University*, in which *Saint Dominick*  
 the institutor of the *Dominican Order* stu-  
 died.

The next place I shall name is *Alicant*,  
 seated on the *Mediterranean shore*, enjoy-  
 ing a commodious road for shipping, by rea-  
 son of which it is a place well frequented,  
 enjoying a good *Trade*, and affording for  
*Merchandise*, great quantities of excellent  
*Wines*, known by the name of *Alicant*  
*wine*, *Aniseeds*, *Licorish*, *Raisins*, hard  
*Soap*, *Sassa* of which hard *Soap* is made, *Best*  
*ropes*, *Sudawurilla*, *Almonds*, *Fool-woods*,  
 and sometimes *Quicksilver*.

*Commodities* most vendible from *Bu-  
 land*, are, *Bayes* of *Colchester*, *Minikin* and  
 a hundred *Bayes* died into several colours,

Ccc

The King-  
 dom of Cas-  
 talonia, is  
 with its  
 chief places

The King-  
 dom of Va-  
 lentia, is  
 seated

The Com-  
 modities  
 and Trade  
 of Alicant

Commodi-  
 ties most  
 vendible  
 from Bu-  
 land

London 74 Ells,  
 and by the Rove,

reckon *Cordova*,  
 the *Morish Kings*,  
 an excellent *Cord-  
 ova* skin of a *Sar-  
 den* this City was  
 between *Casar*  
 where *Casar*  
 the end of the  
 continued four  
 City is a Wood  
 therein are nothing  
*Marchena* famous  
*na Sidonia*, whose  
*invincible Arma-  
 de la Frontera*, a  
 comes our *Sherrie*  
 in an Isle be-  
 of the *Carthagini-*

**STREMEDURA**  
 north, *Castile*; on  
 and on the South,  
 this Country run-  
 hath for its chief  
 is built, and made  
 and *Guadalcanall*  
*Silver* and *Gold*.

**ANADA**, hath  
 on the South, the  
 the West, *Anda-  
 lous*, *Castile*. Its  
*ada*, a stately City,  
 the Palace of the  
 and with *Gold*, and  
*work*; its *Build-  
 ing* is fenced about  
 which are 130 *Tur-  
 for* entrance into  
 n, yet famous for  
 the *Parliament*, and  
 all the Southern  
*adolid* is for the  
 well frequented and  
 the next is *Malla-  
 gona*, seated on the  
 place abounding in  
 the known unto us  
*Sack*.

of 8 *Quartiles*,  
*plets*, and *Duckets*  
 is.  
 its Place.  
*Ryals*.  
 takes a single *Ryal*.  
 vile.

Two

all



all kind of mixt *Serges, Perpetuanes, Che-  
noys, Castilians, Damascuskes*, with all  
other sorts of civil coloured *Norwich Stuffs,  
Silk, Worsted, and Woollen Stockings*, both  
course and fine.

*New found-land fish, Red-herrings, Pil-  
chers, Hawks, Conger, New-England-fish,  
Tin-Lead, Lead-Ore, Calveskins, Tobacco,  
Musk, Pepper, Nutmegs, Cloves*, together  
with all other sorts of *Spices*.

Their  
Coyne.

The *Coyne* here currant, and by which  
they keep their *Accounts*, are, *Livers,  
Solds, and Deniers*, accounting 12 *Deniers*  
to make one *Sold*, and 20 *Solds* make one  
*Liver*, which is worth 5. d. *Sterling*, by  
which account, a *Sold*, which is the 20 part  
of a *Liver*, is worth 3. d. *Sterling*, and a  
*Denier* is worth a farthing *Sterling*.

They have here *Ryals*, which they call  
*Current Money*; A single *Ryal* being worth  
6. d. *Sterling*, with which they buy and sell  
all their *Commodities*, except *Oyles*, which  
are commonly bought with pieces of 1.

The *Current money* is usually of less  
worth then *Plate*, from 7 to 16 per *Cent*,  
according to the plenty or scarcity of pieces  
of 1, in the *Country*.

Their  
Weights.

Their *Weights* is the pound of 18 ounces,  
and 24. *Li.* makes a *Rover*, and 4 *Rovers* the  
*Quintal* of 96 *li.* *Nauarrois*, and 2 *Quin-  
tals* makes the *Carga*.

Their  
Measures.

Their *Measure* is the *Fart*, which ma-  
keth 55 *li.* *Inches English*.

Their *Drie Measure* is the *Hanoque*,  
whereof 5 makes 8 *Bushels English*.

Their *Wine-Measure* is the *Canar*, which  
maketh about 3 *Gallons English*.

The other places in this Kingdom of *Pa-  
lamia*, are, 1. *Murcia*, 2. *Callera*, 3. *Xativa*,  
and 4. *Segora*.

This *Country* was taken from the *Moor*  
in 1338. by *James* the first of *Aragon*.

### Islands of the BALEARES.

The *Islands* of the *BALIARES*, or

Kingdom of *MAFORCA*, compre-  
hend that of *Majorca*, and *Minorca*, which

are seated in the *Mediterranean Sea*. *Ma-  
FORCA* is about 60 miles from *Spain*, and  
300 miles in circuit. Its chief places are

*Majorca* an *University*, giving or taking the  
name of the *Country*; and *Palmira* where  
*Raymondus Lullius* was born.

*MINORCA* distant from *Majorca* nine  
miles, and is 150 miles in circuit: its chief  
places is *Ciudadella*, and its chief *Port* is *Ma-  
jorca*.

The  
Island  
of  
Majorca.

hon, very large and commodious, so that  
500 sail of ships may safely ride at one time,  
and sheltered from the weather. These  
Isles are indifferent fertile in *Corn, Wine, and  
Oyle*; three good *Commodities*.

*Coyne* in these Isles of *Majorca*, and *Mi-  
norca* here currant, have relation to those of  
*Valencia* in *Spain*. And their accounts are  
kept in *Livers, Solds, and Deniers*.

Their *Weights* are two, the one is the  
*Rotello*, whereof 100 makes a *Canar* of  
*Barbarisco*, which is 117. *li.* which makes in  
*London* 110. *li.*

The other is the common *Canar* or  
*Quinal* of these Isles, and is 104. *li.* which  
makes in *London* 117. *li.*

Their *Measures* of length is the *Can*  
of 67, or 68. *Inches English*, which is 1;  
*Yards English*.

Their *Oyle Measure* is a *Quartano*, 12  
whereof makes a *shin* or *edar* of *Oyle*; and  
214 *Quartanos* is a *Ton* of *Oyle*.

Nigh unto these Isles are two small  
Islands, 1. *EBRISA* or *Tuvisa*, of  
about 150 miles in circuite, whose chief  
place is *Tuvisa*, and its *Port* is *Magna*. The

chief *Commodity* which it affordeth being  
*Salt*; of which here is made a great quanti-  
ty, and about 20 miles distance from this  
Isle; is the other, called *FORMEN-  
TERA*, about 50 mile in compass; these

two Islands are also seated in the *Mediterranean  
Sea*, and are found to yield all things  
necessary for life, and the People are ex-  
cellent *Swimmers*, as well the *Women* as  
the *Men*.

The best *Ports* of *SPAIN* are ac-  
counted to be *Carraxa* in *Gallicia*, and on  
the *Ocean*, *Cartagena* in the *Kingdom* of  
*Portugal*, and on the *Mediterranean Sea*; and

*Santbal* on the *Ocean*; and in the *Kingdom*  
of *Portugal*. And the *Cities* of greatest  
commerce, as we have said before, are *Sevill*,  
and *Lisbon*.

The *Air* of the whole *Country* is gene-  
rally good and healthful; and the soil fer-  
tile, were it well tilled, but it is ill inhabited  
considering the goodness of the *Country*,  
which comes from the expulsion of the

*Moors*, driven out by *Philip* the third,  
as also from the great number of *Colonies*,  
which *Spain* hath sent to *America* on the

*West-Indies*. The whole *Country* is *Catholic*; it hath  
15 *Arch-bishops*, 56 *Bishops*, 20 of 25000  
*Parishes*, and abundance of very rich  
*Abbeys* and *Monasteries*. The *Archbisho-  
p* of *Toledo* hath 3 or 400000 *Ducats* of  
yearly *Revenue*, other *Arch-bishops*, and

*Bishops*

modious, so that  
ride at one time,  
weather. These  
Corn, Wine, and  
dices,

*Majors*, and *Mi-*  
lation to those of  
their accounts are  
*Deniers*.

the one is the  
akes a *Centar* of  
which makes in:

Common *Centar* or  
is 104. li. which

length is the *Can-*  
*glis*, which is 17

is a *Quartan*, 12  
of *Oyle*, and  
of *Oyle*.

les are: two small  
*SA* or *Tuisa*, of  
quite, whose chief  
ort is *Magno*. The  
it affordeth being  
ade a great quanti-  
distance from this  
ed *FORMEN-*  
in compass; these  
ed in the *Medit-*  
to yield all things  
the People are ex-  
well the *Women* as

*SPAIN* are ac-  
in *Gallicia*; and on  
the Kingdom of  
*Mediterranean Sea*; and  
ed in the Kingdom  
*Cities* of greatest  
id before, are *Sevil*,

Country is gene-  
ly; and the soil fer-  
is inhabited  
of the Country,  
expulsion of the  
*Philip* the third,  
umber of Colonies,  
to *America* on the

*Catholick*; it hath  
*shops*, 20 or 2500  
of very rich

The *Archbish* p  
00000 *Ducats* of  
*Arch-bishop*, and  
*Bishop*.



Designed by Giovanni Battista Piranesi  
 and engraved into Engraving by Rud. Blum, by  
 his Majesty's Special Command.

Printed for Richard D. B. in the  
 Strand near St. Dunstons Church



To the Hon. S. William Pitt, Secretary of State, this Map is humbly dedicated by R. B. Adams.

Richard Blome, A. 1069.

Bishops  
some 1000  
*Spain* hath  
more, to  
have cov  
were it no  
of all for  
fetch *Corn*

*Silver* and

In *Spai*

*Duro* or *L*

*Guadiana*

*rus* or *Ebr*

The *D*

its Springs

of the ant

and near *O*

ceives the

dom of *L*

waters, *To*

fro *Portuga*

*de Douro*,

the *Ocean*

of *Portuga*

The *T*

Springs in

*Albarazin*

*Castile* and

of *Molina*

Mountains

are the *Sp*

*Xucar*, and

the three fi

of which, i

ges it self f

towards the

as; where

selves into

gne waters

enters. *Port*

*Samarcin*

to vomit

*Ocean*

The *G*

mons for i

it conceals

of some le

which feld

waters *Mer*

near *Elvira*

from *Anda*

between *C*

*Cadix*

The *G*

almost all

its Springs

wife that o

the Spring

being in t



Bishops, for the most part, 50, 60, and some 100000 Duckats. The Trade which Spain hath had for these, 150 years, and more, to America, might (in a manner) have covered the Country with Gold, were it not that the Inhabitants, negligent of all sort of labor, are constrained to fetch Corn and other Manufactures for their Silver and best ware.

In Spain are five great Rivers, viz. The Douro or Douvre; the Tagus or Tajo; the Guadiana; the Guadalquivir; and the Ibero or Ebro.

The DOVERE or DOURO hath its Spings in Old Castile, above the ruins of the ancient Numantia, passes to Soria, and near Osma and Valladolid, where it receives the Pisuerga; enters into the Kingdom of Leon, which it divides into two waters, Toro and Samara; separates Leon from Portugal, where it slides by Miranda de Douvre, passes near Lamego, and falls into the Ocean near Porto, one of the chief Ports of Portugal.

The TAGUS or TAJO hath its Springs in the Sierra Molina or Sierra de Albarazin, which are Mountains between Castile and Arragon, where are the Cities of Molina and Albarazin; and in these Mountains, and near the one to the other, are the Springs of Guadalquivir, Gabriel, Zucar, and Tajo or Tagus. The Springs of the three first make a Triangle, in the midst of which, is that of Tagus, but it disengages it self from the rest, taking its course towards the West, falls into the great Ocean; whereas the others disburthen themselves into the Mediterranean Sea. The Tagus waters Toledo and Alcantara before it enters Portugal, where it likewise washes Samarcin and Liboqua, and opens a Gulf to vomit forth its Waters into the Ocean.

The GUADIANA is neither so famous for its length or course, as because it conceals it self under ground for the space of some leagues, not far from Merclin, which seldom happens to great Rivers: It waters Merida and Badajoz in Castile, passes near Elvas in Portugal, divides Algorva from Andalusia, and ends in the Ocean between Cape St. Vincent, and the Isle of Cadix.

The GUADALQUIVER hath almost all its course in Andalusia, though its Springs be in the New-Castile, as likewise that of the Guadiana, and the Tagus; the Springs of the Douvre, and the Ebro, being in the Old Castile. Guadalquivir

passes by Cordova and Sevilla, and falls into the Gulf of Cadix, below St. Lucar of Barrameda.

The IBERUS or EBRO from which some will have Spain take the name of Iberia begins in the Mountains between the Kingdoms of Castile, Leon, Asturias, and Biscay, takes its course towards the East, turning in the end towards the South, and falls into the Mediterranean Sea: The other four Rivers of Spain turn towards the West, and fall into the Ocean. The Ebro waters Logronne and Calohorre in Old Castile, Tudelle in Navarre, Saragoza in Arragon, and Tortosa in Catalonia; and loses it self in the Sea by the A'scaques, directly opposite to the Isles of Baleares.

Monsieur Sanson speaking of the Rivers of Spain, saith, That the Ebro is esteemed for its name; the Douvre for its force, and quantity of Waters; the Guadalquivir for its riches; the Tagus for its renown; and the Guadiana not having wherewith to answer to the others, for shame hides it self under ground.

The chief Hills in Spain, are Seir Morana, being a chain of Hills declining from the midst of Spain, towards the Streights of Gibraltar; and on these Hills it was, that Cerruanes, the wit of Spain, made it the Scene of the many warlike exploits, achieved by the Flower of Knight Errantry Don Quixot de la Mancha. 2. Imbalda or Idubeda, extending it self from the Pyrenes towards Portugal, and 3. Seira Nevada, which from East to West crosses Granada; and are very high Hills.

ITALY.

ITALY lies in the middle of the three most Southern parts of EUROPE. It is formed like a Boot, and washed on all sides by the Sea; viz. By the Adriatick, on Gulf of Venice behind; by the Tyrrhenian before; and by the Ionian at the foot; onely the top of the Boot is contiguous to France and Germany, from which it is parted by the Alps, which are Mountains which stretch themselves from the Sea of Genoa, unto the Gulf of Venice.

This Country took the name of Italy, from: Italus, a King of Sicily; and he it was who first instructed them in Agriculture.

sure. It was said to be first inhabited by *Janus* and his Posterity.

The extent of the Roman Empire.

The extent of the *Roman Empire* before *Constantine* ruled, and the division of it, was accounted to be about 3000 miles in length, to wit from the River *Euphrates* Eastward, to the *Irish-Ocean* Westward; and in breadth about 2000 miles, viz. From Mount *Atlas* Southward, to the *Danubius* Northward.

The ancient Roman people.

The Ancient *Romans* were a gallant people, of a sound judgment, and ready wit, well skilled in *Arts* and *Sciences*, very covetous of glory, of great valor, as may appear by their subduing the greatest part of the World; who contrary to the custom of Invaders, to sack and ruine Countries, they taught the people manners, literature, instructed them in *Arts*, *Sciences*, &c. The *Romans* were the first that wore the Purple Robe, and the beginners of Triumphs; they had excellent and stately *Theaters*, and it was held no dis-reputation to be an Actor.

The largeness of the Grecian Empire.

And as the largeness and great extent of the *Grecian Empire* was its overthrow, so was it of this; for during the reign of the Eleven *Western Emperours*, and some succeeding years, *Italy* was seven times almost reduced to ruine, partly by *Barbarous Nations*, and partly by *Fire* and the *Swords* so that they were forc'd to quit their interest in their subdued Territories, and use what means and wayes they could to preserve themselves. But as to its present condition, it still is a spacious, rich and populous Country.

The Country well furnished.

The Country is exceedingly well furnished with whatsoever may be found useful for *Man*, and the *Soyl* so rich and fertile in *Grains*, *Rice*, *Fruits*, &c. that in some places they have three Harvests in one year.

The chief Commodities.

The chief *Commodities* for Merchandize which this large Country yieldeth, is *Silks* both raw and wrought in several *Fabricks*, as *Taffeties*, *Satins*, *Plushes*, *Velvets*, *Cloth of Gold* and *Silver*, and *Damask*; also *Greengrass*, *Rashes*, and *Fustians*. It affordeth also all sorts of curious *Glasses*, *Allome*, *Armor*, excellent *Wines*; *Oyles*; *Saffron*, *Anniseeds*, *Brimstone*, *Argal*, several *Metalls*, *Olives*, *Almonds*, *Galls*, *Kidskins*, *Lute-strings*, *Quick-silver*, *Alloes*, and several *Druggs*, *Gold Thread*, *Anchovies*, &c.

The Italians.

The *Italians* are very ingenious, respective, and grave, but withall very deceitful and perfidious in their dealings, ex-

ceeding malicious, if affronted; much addicted to *Venery*, and to that end, *Women* are allowed that liberty to make the best use of their own; but oft-times contrary to nature, the *Men* act their *Venery*: They are generally exceeding jealous of their *Wives*; so that they are denyed the liberty of the *streets*, the common view and society with *Men*. The *Women* are for the most part very beautiful, endowed with a good wit, and are of a modest behaviour (as to outward appearance) it being observed of them, that they are *Saints in the Church*, *Angels in the streets*, *Magpies at the door*, *Sirens in the Windows*, and *Goats in the Garden*.

Their *Language* is very courtly and eloquent, still retaining most of the *Latine*; but to avoid *Histroy*.

This *Italy* may be considered in three principal parts; to wit, *Lombardy*, *Italy*, and *Naples*, to which, for the fourth part, may be added the *Neighbouring Isles*. *Lombardy* what is upon and about *Po*, the particular name of *Italy* may remain for the middle parts: and the name of *Naples*, for what belongs to the Kingdom of *Naples*.

The particular parts of *Italy*, and which I intend to treat of, in these three Parts (to wit, *Lombardy*, *Italy*, particularly so called, and *Naples*) shall be, 1. The Estates of *Piemont*. 2. The Dukedom or Duchy of *Savoy*. 3. The Dukedom of *Milan*. 4. The Estates of *Genes* or *Genua*. 5. The Country of *Monferrat*. 6. The Estates of the Duke of *Venice*. 7. The Dukedom of *Mantua*. 8. The Dukedom of *Modena*. 9. The Dukedom of *Parma*. 10. The Dukedom of *Placenza*. 11. The Bishop-rick of *Trent*, and these are in *Lombardy*. Then the Estates, Dukedoms, Counties, &c. of 12. *Bolognese*. 13. *Ferrarese*. 14. *Romagne* or *Romandiola*. 15. *Urbino*. 16. *Marcia Ancona*. 17. *Perusia*. 18. *Ombria* or *Spoleto*. 19. *Sabine*. 20. *Orvietin*. 21. *St. Peters Patrimony*. 22. *Campagna di Roma*. 23. *Florence*. 24. *Sanese*. 25. *Pisan*. 26. *Lucque*. 27. *Alassa*. 28. *Piombino*. 29. *Isle of Elbe*, which the seven are in *Tuscany*. And these are in *Italy* particularly so called. Then 30. the Kingdom of *Naples*, with its several Provinces; and then 31. and lastly, the *Italian Isles*, to wit those of 1. *Sicily*. 2. *Sardaigne* or *Sardinia*. 3. *Corfica*. 4. The *Isles of Naples*; and 5. the *Ligurian Isles*. All which I have observed in my *Geographical Tables*, and of these in order.

L O M

L O M into bardy bey of Rome, and for di it more a higher a higher t which be Milan, v King, of t Genua; : unto the of Savoy l In the Venice, w Parma, a Dukes, an The E Latine Re denoting t foot of th on the Ea with Liguria on the W North, wi is divided b Mantona, possessions, much inter It is very p walled Cit chief is Tur norum, as t ther City of bitants of t present the of Savoy; of an Arch the famous vinity; its Avoff, of c the North then Verca bordering c belonging t third Duke conti Duke quilate and a Sea-Port And fin let us cre v and speak o on this si

LOMBARDY.

**L**OMBARDY is commonly divided into Lombardy on this side, and Lombardy beyond the Po, and that in regard of Rome, and not of us; and therefore, and for divers other reasons, I have thought it more convenient to divide it into the higher, and lower; and I esteem in the higher the whole Estates of Piedmont, which belongs to the Duke of Savoy; of Milan, which belongs to the Catholic King; of the Common wealth of Genes, or Genoa; and of Montserrat which belongs unto the Duke of Mantona, yet the Duke of Savoy hath some part of it.

In the lower Lombardy are the Estates of Venice, which is a Republicque; of Mantona, Parma, and Modena, which have their Dukes, and of Trent, which hath its Bishops.

The Estates of PIEDMONT called in Latine Regio Pedemontana; (both names denoting the Country to be seated at the foot of the Mountains) It is bounded on the East, with Milan; on the South, with Liguria, and the Mediterranean Sea; on the West, with Savoy; and on the North, with Switzerland. This Country is divided between the Dukes of Savoy and Mantona, the River Tenser separating their possessions. It is exceeding fertile, though much inferior to other parts of Lombardy; It is very populous, containing about 160 walled Cities and Towns, of which the chief is Turine, of old called Augusta Taurinorum, as being the Metropolis and Mother City of the Taurini, the ancient Inhabitants of this Country. In this City is at present the Palace and Court of the Dukes of Savoy; it is also dignified with the See of an Archbishop, and an University, where the famous Erasmus proceeded Dr. of Divinity, its other chief places are Aoste, or Aost, of old Augusta Pratoria, seated on the Northern bounds of the Country; then Vercelli a Town of great strength, bordering on Milan; to which it was once belonging, untill given unto Amadeus third Duke of Savoy, by Philip Maria, Visconti Duke of Milan; next Saluzzo, a Marquisate and Bishops sea; also Nice or Nizza a Sea-Port Town, and serveth for Turine.

And since we have before omitted it, let us ere we pass further, repass the Alpes and speak of the Territories of this Duke on this side, which is the Country of

SAVOY, from whence he bears his title. This Country is bounded with the Dolphinat, Bress, Switzerland, and Piedmont: A Country extremely mountainous and full of narrow passages, and consequently not very fruitful. Its chief City is Chambery, or Cambria, the Seat of the Duke when he is in these parts; it is seated in a pleasant valley, among Mountains which are well filled with beautiful Houses, belonging to the Gentry of this Country; this City was taken by Henry the Fourth of France, in his Wars against this Duke, Anno 1600, as were likewise those two strong holds of Mount-Melion, and St. Katherine, for which the Country is more famous then any thing else, they having been by reason of their situation and fortification accounted impregnable; and the Government of the last being denied to the famous Marshal Byron, plunged him in that gulph of discontents and treasons which begat his ruine; also its other chief places are Tarante, which commands the passage into Italy, then Thonon, Cluse, Beaufort, Ugine, Montferrat, St. John de Morienne, Tenne, Modane, &c.

\* Next to Piedmont we will consider the Dutchy of MILLAN, being under the obedience of the King of Spain. It is bounded on the East with Mantona, and Parma, on the South with Genes; on the West, with Piedmont; and on the North, with the Grisons. It is seated in the best part of Lombardy; is rich in natures gifts, and for its wonderful fertility is esteemed the garden of Italy, (as Italy is of the whole world;) affording plenty of Graines, Wines, Oyles, Silks, both raw and wrought in several Fabricks, besides sundry other Commodities; but above all, it hath abundance of the most excellent Rice in the world: It is watered with many good Rivers, as that of Adda, Ticinus, Lago di como, Padus, &c. in which are found excellent Fish.

It hath for its chief places, 1. Milan, which notwithstanding its having been so often ruined, and its foundations sown with Salt, by the Emperor Barbarossa, yet doth exalt it self as the greatest City, not only of this Dukedome, but of all Lombardy; it is seated in a wide plain, wherein are no less pleasant then profitable Meadows and Rivers; it is strongly fortified with a Wall, and a spacious and almost impregnable Castle, besides its fortifications: it is beautified with many splendid Ornaments, the chief of which are its University, then its Hospital seated

Ddd

L O M

1. *Ilaine.*

seated in an Isle, almost two miles in compass, being a fair structure, endowed with a large Revenue, and capable to give entertainment to 4000 sick persons, and lastly its *Schools*, *Nunneries*, and *Churches*, which amount in all to 238, of which there are 36 *Monasteries of Nuns*, 30 *Convents of Fryers*, 71 *Parochials*, and 11 *Collegiate Churches*, most of which are stately structures, and beautified with curious *Paintings*, *Images of the Saints*, *Sepulchers*, and several religious *Antiquities*, as the true Effigies of the *Brazen Serpent* made by *Moses*, in the Church of *Santa Ambrogio*, also in *Santa Tecla*, where there is (as they say) one of the nails which fastned *Christ* to the *Cross*, &c. The whole City is about 7 miles in compass, is exceeding populous, very rich, and of great *Commerce*, being inhabited by abundance of eminent *Merchants*, rich *Shop-keepers*, and *Artizans* who drive a great *Trade*, not only in those *Commodities* aforesaid, but also in *Gold Thread*, *Fustians*, *Silk-stockings*, *Chamless*, *Armes*, *Glasses*, &c. Also this City is inhabited by many families of Nobility and Gentry.

Coyne here  
is 1.

Their *Coyne* here currant is the *Crown of Gold of the Sun*, and is esteemed worth 96 or 98 *sol*.

A *Ducat of Gold* is in *Circa* 100 *sol*.

A *Ducat Imperial* is valued at 4 *Livers*.

A *Crown of Gold Italian* is 5 *Livers*, and 6 *Sol Imperial*.

Note that the *Imperial Coynes* are the currant *Money of the Country*; other *Coynes*, as *Spanish*, *French*, and *Italian*, pass here in *Merchandize*, as being subject to the first, and adjacent to the two last. Also the *Crown* here passes in *Commerce* for 40 110 *sol*, and the *Ducat* for as much.

The  
Weight.

Their *Weight* is the *Quintal* of 100 *li*, which makes in *London* 70 *li*.

Their Meas-  
ure.

Their *Measure* is the *Brace*, 100 whereof maketh in *London* 43 *Ells*.

de la  
Vallie.

(Next to *Milann* may be reckoned *Pavia*, or *Papia* seated on the *Ticinno*, honored with a famous *University*, this place is of note for the battail in which *Francis* the first of *France* was taken prisoner by the Emperox *Charles* the Fifth, who for his ransom was forced to release all his Title and Interest to the Kingdom of *Naples* and this *Duchy of Milan*; then *Alexandria*, which from a poor village (through the often ruins of *Milann*) is now become a fair, strong, and flourishing Town; also *Cremona* seated on the banks of the *Poe*; it was first built in the beginning of the

*Punic War*, and after the defeat of *Vitel-lus* forces under the walls of this City, it was sack't, and burnt almost to the ground by the Soldiers of *Vespasian*, who afterwards was the cause of its re-edifying; It is now a place of good account, hath a good *Trade*; its *Houses* are most of them stately, and beautified with curious *Gardens*, & its *Streets* large; it is of most Fame for its high *Tower* and *Cathedral Church*, where are to be seen many reliques of *Saints*, and curious *Pictures*; and lastly *Como* seated on a lake so called, about 50 miles in compass, on which the Citizens use to recreate themselves in boates; it is a City of good antiquity, and here it was that both the *Plinies* were born.

This *Dutchy* is about 300 miles in circuit; and found to bring in a good Revenue to the King of *Spain*; it hath 1. *Arch-Bishop*, and 6. *Bishops*.

The State of *GENES* or *Genova*, which was once very large, possesseth at present only *Liguria* in the *Continent*, and the Isle of *Corsica* in the *Tyrrhene*, or *Ligurian sea*; of this last we shall speak in due place.

*Liguria*, or *Riviera di Genova* is bounded on the East by the River *Varo*, rising about the edge of *Provence*, on the South, by the *Ligurian*, or *Tyrrhenian sea*; on the West, by the River *Magra*, by which it is parted from *Tuscany*; and on the North, by the *Appennine*: it is about 800 miles in length, and not so much in breadth. The *People* are much addicted to *Traffique* and *Warry*; and here the *Women* are allowed the liberty of the *streets*; as also to accompany, and discourse with whom they please, as well in private as in publick; a privilege which in other parts of *Italy*, is denied them.

Its chief and Metropolitan City is called *Genova*, seated on the Sea shore, at the foot of high Mountains, between two Rivers: it was built by *Jannus* the first Inhabiter of *Italy*; it was afterwards burnt by *Mago* the *Carthaginian*, and again re-edified by *Charles* the Great; it is (as also its wholestate) governed in forme of a Republicque. It is a City whose stately buildings maketh it be termed by the *Italians*, *Genova la Superba*; it hath everywhere beautiful *Palaces*, richly adorned both within and without, with *Paintings*, *Statues*, &c. to which are joynd pleasant and delightful *Gardens*, Its *Strada Nova* being a spacious, long and straight *street*, being on each side embellished with stately *Palaces*, which are for the most part all supported by vast Pillars

Great  
h. and  
V. and  
1722

Pillars of  
World;  
the Jesu  
can be  
which t  
yet must  
one of w  
ments of  
four Pilla  
ble great  
Oria, wit  
particular  
be forgot  
Maine, r  
tuous way  
the Port  
Edifices i  
Capacious  
opposite t  
thorn of a  
light to Se  
ty is in circ  
ed (beside  
faire Castle  
rich, its in  
the greatest  
in the Wo  
its Trade,  
acts, and he  
which force  
Leghorne no  
more comm  
Merchants  
Their Coy  
mong which  
makes a Sol  
valets or 20  
purling, and  
gold.  
A *Ducat*  
They ke  
Sold, and D  
Their We  
telles, which  
is 106 li. E  
that a pound  
11, ounces  
Quintall of  
The *Gro*  
Ounces to th  
is sold Lead  
Bice, Annise  
dries.  
Their Me  
have two foot  
for *Lianens*  
of 9 *Palms*,  
Yards English  
is of 10 *Palms*  
li. per *Cane*.

eat of *Pitel-*  
this City, it  
to the ground  
, who after-  
diffying; it is  
ount, hath a  
most of them  
curious *Gar-*  
of most Fame  
edral Church,  
y reliques of  
1, and lastly  
lled, about 50  
h the Citizens  
n boats; it is  
nd here it was  
born.  
oo miles in cir-  
a good Revenue  
th 1. Arch-Bi-

or *Genova*, which Genoa  
ffecth at present Genoa  
ens, and the Isle Genoa  
or *Ligurian seas*  
n due place.  
*Genova* is bounded  
: *Varnus*, rising a-  
3, on the South,  
henian sea; on  
*Magra*, by which  
ny; and on the  
: it is about 800  
much in breadth,  
hicted to *Traffique*  
e *Women* are al-  
free's, as also to  
e with whom they  
te as in publick;  
er parts of *Italy*,

itan City is called  
ea shoare, at the  
between two Ri-  
no the first Inha-  
rwards burnt by  
and again re-edi-  
t; it is (as also its  
n forme of aRe-  
hose stately build-  
h by the *Italians*,  
hath everywhere  
dorned both with-  
ings, *Statues*, &c.  
fant and delightful  
a being a spacious,  
eing on each side  
*Palaces*, which are  
upported by vast  
Pillars

Pillars of Marble, not to be paralleled in the World, among which may be reckoned the *Jesuites Colledg*, then which nothing can be more polite, and their Church which though it excell in magnificence, yet must yield to that newly built, over one of whose Altars (to omit other ornaments of an excessive value) are placed four Pillars of wreathed *Agat* of an incredible greatness. The Palace of Prince *D'Oris*, with its famous Bird-cage, deserves a particular mention; nor is its new Mould to be forgot, which though built even in the Maine, resists like a firme rock the impetuous waves of the Sea, and hath made the Port (which is encompassed with faire Edifices in form of a *Theatre*,) twice as Capacious and much safer then before, opposit to which is on a *Pharos*, a Lanthorn of a great bigness, serving to give light to Sea-men in the Night. The City is incircuit about eight Miles, defended (besides its Walls) by a strong and faire Castle, it is exceeding populous and rich, its inhabitants being observed to be the greatest Usurers, and money-Mongers in the World, which doth much Eclipse its Trade, by reason of their covetousness, and heavy Customes laid upon goods, which forceth the Merchants to frequent *Leghorne* not far distant from it, and not more commodiously seated, yet here the Merchants have a Hall.

Their *Coynes* here currant are several, among which are *Deniers*, whereof 12. makes a *Sold*: 4. *Solds* a *Chevalet*, 5. *Cavalets* or 20. *Solds* a *Liver*, which is 11. *Ed. sterling*, and 90. *Solds* makes a *Crown* of gold.

A *Ducat* currant is 4 *Livers*;

They keep their Account by *Livers*, *Solds*, and *Deniers*.

Their *Weight* is the *Quintal* of 100 *Rottelles*, which makes 150 smaller *Pounds*, &c. is 106 li. *English*, making the Calculate that a pound of 12 ounces with them holds 11 ounces *English*, which is the suble *Quintal* of 100 *Rottelles*.

The *Gross Quintal* of 150 li. is of 18 Ounces to the Pound, and by this *Weight* is sold *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Brass*, *Wool*, *Cotton*, *Rice*, *Anniseeds*, or the like *Gross Commodities*.

Their *Measure* is the *Cane* of which they have two sorts, one for *Silks*, and the other for *Linnen* and *Woodens*; that for *Silks* is of 9 *Palmas*, whereof 100 doth make 26 *Tards English*; that for *Woolen* and *Linnen* is of 20 *Palmas*, and makes 27 *yards English per Cane*.

*Wine* is sold by the *Meserole*, whereof 5 makes a *Botta dimena*, and 2 *Barrells* makes a *Meserole*, which is 100 *pints*.

*Oyle* is sold by the *Barrel*, and 14 *Barrells* makes a *Tunn* of 236 *Gallons* to the *Tunn*.

The other places of note are *Savona*, famous for the interview between *Ferdinand* of *Spain*, and *Lewis* the 12. of *France*, Anno 1507. also *Ceva* and *Finali*, now belonging to the *Spaniards*.

The *Genowayes* hold beyond the *Magra*, and within the confines of *Tuscany*, the strong Town of *Sarazana*, a Fortrefe against the great *Duke*, of which and *Lucca*, the *Italians* have a proverb. *S'il Gran Duca haveffa Lucca, & Sarazana, sa rebbe re della Toscana.*

If the *Gran Duke* had *Lucca*, and *Sarazana*, he would be King of *Tuscany*.

The whole *Liguria*, or *Riviera* of *Genes* or *Genova*, though mountainous is very fertile, especially abounding in *Oyle*, and *Muscadel Wines*.

The Estate or Country of *MONTEFERAT* doth in part belong to the *Duke* of *Mantona*; the rest of it belongeth to the *Dukes* of *Savoy*; this Country of *Monferat* is seated on the South-east part of *Piedmont*, and had its name either from *Montferrate*, that is mountainous, abounding with *Iron*, or from *Monferaci*, that is, from the fertility of its mountains; It is encompassed with the *Appenine Hills*, *Milhan*, and *Piedmond*: the river *Tenarus* parts the possessions of what the *Duke* of *Mantona* hath in this Country, from that part which belongs to the *Dukes* of *Savoy*: Its chief Cities are 1. *Alba*, once *Alba*

*Pompeja*, where *Pentinox* the *Roman* Emperour was born: 2. *Saint Vas* built by the first *Duke* of *Mantona*. 3. *Casall*, 4. *Trin*, both fair Cities, with some others.

The *Wines* of this Country are accounted very excellent.

It hath 1 *Arch-Bishop*, and 8 *Bishops*. In the lower *LOMBARDY* we have placed the Estates of *Venice*, *Mantona*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Placenza* or *Placencia*, *Trent*, of which in order.

The Estates of the *Duke* of *VENICE*, may be divided into several Parts, or *Provinces*, as they lye on firme Land, and on the Sea, which I have observed in my *Geographical Tables* in *Italy*, the chief of which I shall here only name, as I have occasion to treat of the Cities, and first with *Trevigi*, seated in the Province of *Marche Trevigiane*, commodiously



diously seated for an in-Land-Trade, and is a City of some account. 2. *Brescia* seated in the Province of *Brescia*, and is esteemed the second City for largeness and beauty in all *Lombardy*: it is more famous in her *Arch-Bishop*, who is Earl, Marquess, and Duke, then in any matter of Trade: 3. *Brescia*, *Brescia*, or *Brixellum*, also in the Province of *Brescia*, famous for the death of *Otho*, the *Roman* Emperour, who upon the newes that his Army was unfortunately vanquished by *Cacina*, and *Valens*, Captaines to *Vitellius*, here slew himself. 4. *Este* in the Province of *Padonan*, from whence came the late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 5. *Crema*, in the Province of *Crema*, seated on the river *Serio*, and in a very fertile soile, it is a beautiful and rich City, adorned with stately Edifices, the cheife of which are the publick Palace, the *Piazza*, and the *Domo* with its Tower, where are two Chappels, one Dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, and the other to *St. Marke*, both stately structures, beautified with curious Pictures, and gilt Images; then its Hospitalls, its Academy for Students called *Sopinti*; and about two Furlongs from the City towards the Castle, is a stately Temple called *Santa Maria della croce*; a structure of great beauty, and richly adorned with Pictures, &c. A place much frequented for devotion sake: this City may be termed a strong Fortieff against the *Milanois*, upon which it borders, where the States of *Venice*, (under whose government it is) have a *Custom-House*, for the collection of their Customes upon such Goods as go from those parts to *Milaine* or elsewhere; and here towards the latter end of *September*, they have annually a Fair, which is well frequented, and where severall sorts of *Commodities*, as also store of *Cattle* are vendd: 6. *Vicenza* in *Vicentin*, seated at the bottome of a Hill which commands the City, being well watered with *Rivers*, which uniting themselves not far distant from the City, form a Navigable River capable to receive *Ships* of a considerable burthen, which by passing by *Padua* falls into the Sea by *Venice*. It is about four Miles in circuite, beautified with many stately Palaces, Temples, and publick buildings, as the Hall of Justice, its Hospitalls, Colledges, Religious houses for Nuns; & Fryers, with severall Churches all beautiful Structures, most of which are embellished with Pictures. It is very populous, and inhabited by Nobility and

Gentry, who contrary to the custome of the *Italians* delight to travell. It is under the *Venetian* Government, and is a City which enjoyeth great priviledges; exercising their own Laws; here is a famous Theatre capable to receive 5000 people, whose Stage is so represented by perspective, that it seemes a Stately City, being modelled by the famous Architect *Andrea Palladio*; besides which here are other Theatres: then its *Piazza*, a spacious and a beautiful place; this City hath been of great esteem, and yet hath in and about it severall things of antiquity. 7. *Verona* in *Veronese*, a fair, large and beautiful City, seated on the *Adheps*, a place of great strength as well by nature as art; it hath been a Noble City, and of great antiquity, as may appear by the severall reliques, and peices of antiquity yet remaining; it now boasteth chiefly of its yet standing Amphitheatre capable to receive about 80000 persons, and within its Territories (which are about 80 miles in compass) is the mountain *Baldus* whence Physicians use to gather Medicinal herbes. 8. *Padua* in *Padonan*, seated in the midst of a spacious plain, about 20 miles distance from the Sea: It is a place of good strength, being encompassed with double Walls, and deep Ditches, besides its Bulwarks and Fortifications: It was built by *Antenor*, brother to *Priam* King of *Troy*, whose Tombe is here still to be seen. It hath several times been a fellow sufferer with the other Cities of *Italy*, having been formerly far more eminent and powerfull then now it is, yet doth exalt its head above many Cities in this Kingdom; to this City do belong 7 Gates, several Bridges of stone, and 5 spacious *Piazzas*; it is every where beautified with many splendid Edifices, as well private as publick, most of which are adorned with curious Paintings, Statues, &c. Here are many stately Palaces inhabited by the Nobles, Doctors, and Gentry; also its Churches are no less beautiful and rich by their Pictures, Tombs of Saints, and several things of antiquity, of which the *Domo*, or Cathedral is the chief; then the Churches of *St. Justina* where as they say are inter'd the bodies of *St. Luke* and *St. Mathias*, besides some other Saints; also of *St. Francisco*, and of the *Carmelites*; next the Bishops Palace deserves a place; here are in this City ten Colledges. Its Hall of Justice is a spacious and stately structure, having several remains of antiquity; being adorned with

curious Pictures  
Hall or Palace  
ing; its  
the Palace  
the Ponte  
large Mea  
most famo  
ans who  
Physicks  
stendom a  
Simplex; e  
Livy, 2.  
former tim  
of its Me  
men. 9.  
ing to Cren  
wards the  
Reviso in t  
ged toward  
these Provi  
hended und  
visane.

The cheif  
Adda, 11  
And then  
of Venice  
Forum Julii  
stria, the A  
driatick Sea  
miles, and  
chief places  
miles in con  
but now not  
bited: 2. P  
netians Anno  
place of any  
built by Ful  
whence the  
on of Forum  
seated night  
re,

Its cheif  
and Lizonfus  
And the  
estate, shall  
ing encompa  
and Friaulis  
the Aire of  
healthfull  
strained to his  
chief places  
polis, 2. Pol  
Frande Dnim  
proceed to V  
Republique;  
The City  
seated at the  
or Gulfe of V  
ing distant fro

curious Paintings, Figures &c. Near to this Hall or Palace are the Schools for Learning; its other noted places are the *Piazza*, the Palace of the Governour of the City, the *Ponte Molino*, the Castle for the *Munition*, large *Meadow* &c. but this City is now most famous for its Univerſity of Phyſicians who are for their great experience in Phyſick, ſo famous throughout all Chriſtendom and here they have a Garden of *Simples*; this place was ſaid to give birth to *Livy*, *Zabarell*, and *Magrim*; and in former time it was noted for the humanity of its Men, and chaſtity of its Women. 9. *Bergamo*, in *Bergamaſe*, adjoining to *Cremaſe*, 10. *Feltri*, in *Feltria*, towards the Biſhoprick of *Trent*; and 11 *Rovigo* in the *Poleſine* of *Rovigo*, far engaged towards the *Eſtates of the Church*. And theſe Provinces may be properly comprehended under one part, to wit *Marche Treviſane*.

The cheife Rivers in this Country are *Addua*, *Atheſis*, *Brenta* & *Oliwa*.

And then the ſecond part in this eſtate of *Venice* ſhall be *FRIOLIA*, formerly *Forum Julii*, and is encompassed with *Hiſtria*, the *Alpes*, *Trevigiana*, and the *Adriatick Sea*; containing in length 50 miles, and as much in breadth: whoſe chief places are, 1. *Aquilegia* once 12 miles in compaſs, ſeated on the *Natiſco*, but now not ſo large, nor very well inhabited: 2. *Palmala nova*, built by the *Venetians* Anno 1583. and the beſt fortified place of any in *Italy*, 3. *Cuidad de Auſtria* built by *Julius Ceſar*, and called *Fulium*, whence the Province had the denomination of *Forum Julii*, 4. *Tergeſtum* or *Treſiſ*, ſeated nigh to the Sea-ſhore, and 5. *Udine*.

Its cheife Rivers are *Natiſco*, *Rifanus*, and *Lizonſus*.

And the third and laſt part of this eſtate, ſhall be *Hiſtria* or *Iſtria*, being encompassed with the *Sea*, *Carniola*, and *Friolia*; its circuit is about 200 miles, the Aire of this Country was ſo unhealthyfull, that the *Venetians* were conſtrained to hire people to inhabit it, whoſe chief places are *Cape d' Iſtria*, or *Inſtino-polis*, 2. *Pola*, 3. *Cita Nuova*, 4. *St. Fruande Duino*, and 5. *Parento*: but to proceed to *Venice* the principal City of this Republicque, which is *Venice*.

The City of *VENICE* or *Venetia*, is ſeated at the bottom of the *Adriatique Sea*, or *Gulfe of Venice*; built on 72 Iſlands, being diſtant from the main Land 5 miles,

and defended from the fury of the Sea; by a bank of 60 miles in length, through which in 7 places there are paſſages broken for *Boats*; but not for *Veſſels* of any conſiderable burthen, ſave only at *Malamocco*, and the Caſtle of *Leo*, which are ſtrongly fortified; it is about 8 miles in compaſs, having for conveniency about 4000 Bridges, among which that of *Rialto* is the cheif, built of only one Arch which conjoynes both the Banks, on which are 24 *Shops*, beſides *Bulwarks* behind them; and this *Bridge* for its length; breadth, and height (which is aſcended by ſteps) maybe eſteemed in the firſt ranke with any in the world; it is built over the *Grand Canale*, or great *Channell* of the City, and for the conveniency of paſſing too and fro here are ſaid to be about 10 or 12000 *Gondelas*; all its buildings are fair and beautifull; it hath 200 particular Places, built of *Marble*, adorned with *Colombs*, *Statues*, and *Pictures* of great value, erected by the Senators at their great expence, which for their Grandure are fit to lodge and give entertainment to any Prince in Chriſtendom; moſt of which are ſeated on the *Grand Canale*; among which is the Palace of *Grimani*, a ſtately and magnificent ſtructure, wanting nothing that may add to its beauty; as of *Paintings*, *Statues*, *Coloſſuſſes* and other antiquities of *Brass* and *Marble*, which were hitherto brought from *Greece*; and the ruines of *Aquileja*; alſo the royal and proud Palace of the *Duke* deſerves a particular deſcription, which for its largeneſs; beauty and richneſs as well in its *Fabrick* without, as in its *Pictures*, *Statues* &c. within exceeds all others, then the *Tribunals*, or Courts of *Juſtice*, the *Senate-Houſe* or great *Hall*, which is 150 foot long, and 70 foot broad; all richly adorned with *Paintings*. Its *Arſenal* or *Magazine* of *War*, being about 2 miles in circuit, being encompassed about with high Walls, and the *Sea*, having but one place or Gate for entrance, and one Channell for Ships to paſs in and out at; and in this place they keep always in readineſs 200 Gallies, with all things fitting for a *Voyage* or *Fight*; and here they build their *Veſſels*, being well provided with *Timber*, *Maſts* &c. make all their *Materials*, and *Engines* of *War*, as *Cordage*, *Sailes*, *Anchor*s, *Cables*, *Gunn*s, *Bullets*, *Nails*, and other things of *Iron* and *Brass*, having here in a ſpacious *Hall*, a *Magazine* of all ſorts of *Engines* and *Armes* both for *Sea* & *Land*, as alſo *Amuni-*

E e e

muni-

in Arſenal and Magazine.

munition fit for an Army of 100 thousand Soldiers, among which are 1000 Coates of Plate garnished with Gold, covered with Velvet, and fit for any Prince to wear; but above all its Church of St. Mark, which for its exterior and interior beauty, being built with *Mosaick work*, with pillars and columns of Marble, &c. and the richness of its ornaments, as *Tombs, Figures, Statues*, and curious *Paintings*, besides its *Altars*, adorned with *Gold, Silver, Pearls, &c.* precious Stones, have deservedly made this City famous; and in this Church according to report lies the body of St. Mark, the patron of this City, which was brought hither from *Alexandria*: In this City are 17 rich Hospitals, 56 Tribunals, 67 Parish Churches, 26 Monasteries of Nuns, 34 Convents of Fryers, 18 Chappels, and 6 Free-Schools for the encrease of Learning. Its Piazza, or broad place of St. Mark, adorned with sumptuous *Fabrics, Statues, &c.* is a place much frequented by the *Gentry*, who hither come as well to show themselves, as to hear news, and discourse; and besides the *Paintings, and Statues*, in the *Palaces, and Churches*, the *Streets* are everywhere adorned with them, which adds much delight to the eye of the passenger, yet hath this City lost much of its renown, riches, and estates, since the *English, Portugals, Dutch, &c.* have found out the way to the *East-Indies*, by the Coast of *Africa*; those *Spices, Druggs, &c.* which formerly they used to fetch from *Alexandria, and Aleppo*, and distribute to the *Western World*, being now brought home to us sooner, and better cheap, however though it hath received many losses, it doth still maintain itself the bulwark of *Christendom* against the *Turk*.

The *Commodities* that this City affordeth are the product of several places, as *Wines, Oyles, Rice, Paper, Quicksilver, Looking Glasses, Amseeds, Venice-Treackell, Alces, Silk*, also the *Commodities* of *Turkey*, and those the product of *India, Persia, Arabia, and Egypt*, also here are made abundance of curious *Glasses* of sundry sorts, as also many *Fabrics* of *Silk*.

*Commodities* most vendible from *England*, are, *Baites, Perpetuanies, Sais, Scarges, Lead, Tin, Herrings, Pilchers, Salted-Salmon, &c.* also *Spices, Druggs, and Gemms* of *India*.

The *Coyes* here current is the *Duquet*,

which is worth 6 *Livers*, 4 *Solds* of *Piccoli*.

The *Duquet* of gold is worth 24 *Deniers*, the *Liver* of *Grosses* one being 20 per cent. better then the other, that *de Banco* usually valued at 4s. 4d. sterling, the other at 3s. 4d. which varieth according to the rise and fall of *Moneys* in *Exchange*.

Those *Moneys* which are here called *Piccoli*, are the current Coy of this City, and the *Moneys* which are here called *Grosses*, is worth 1 *Liver*, 62 *Solds* of *Piccoli*, or 10 *Duckets*.

They keep their *Accounts* several wayes, as some by *Livers, Solds*, and *Grosses*, which are esteemed at 10 *Duckets* the *Liver*, reckoning 20 *Solds* to the *Liver*, and 12 *Deniers* *Grosse* to the *Sold*. Others by *Duckets* and *Grosses* at 6 *Livers*, and 4 *Solds* per *Duquet*, reckoning 24 *Gross* to a *Duquet*. And others by *Livers, Solds*, and *Deniers* of *Piccoli*.

Their *Weights* are of four sorts, The 100 *li. Gros*, wherewith all *Wools, Bras, Flax, Fish*, and other *Gross Commodities* are sold, is 158 *li. suble*.

The 100 *li. suble*, wherewith all *Silk, Cottons, Cotton yarnes, Druggs, Spices*, and other fine goods are sold, is 83 *li. Gros*.

The 100 *li. of Silver* or *Gold-thread*, is 126 *li. 8 ounces suble*.

The other *Weights* is used only for *Silver, Gold, and Gemms*.

The 100 *li. suble* hath been observed to make in *London* 64 *lb*, and to make 106 *li. Gros*.

Note that they make use of for the weighing of their *Goods*, the *Ballance* and the *Stalero*, as well in *Gross*, as in *Suble Weights*, and their *Weights* which they use in weighing *Goods* by the *Ballance*, are 21. per cent. greater then the *Stalero* *Weights*.

Their *Measures* are two, and both called *Braces*, the one is for *Silks, Cloth of Gold and Silver, Damasks, &c.* of which 5 *Braces* make 3 yards *English*.

The other is for *Stuffs, Linnen, and Wallen-cloths, &c.* and this is larger then the former by 6 per cent. whercof 5 makes 2 Ells *English*.

*Wine* is sold by a *Measure* called the *Amphora*, containing 4 *Bigorzas*, the *Bigorza* is 4 *Quarts*, the *Quart* 4 *Sachies*, the *Sachi*, 4 *Liras*. But in *Gross* they account one *Amphora* 14 *Quarts*, one *Bigorza* 3 *Quarts*.

*Oyl* is sold as well by *Weight* as *Measure*; The *Measure* is called the *Miro*, and is 40 *li.* and by the *Gross* *Weight* is 120 *li.*

and

In trade of Commodities.

There is a

and t  
by Weigh  
the Staler  
Corn is  
133 li. G  
Brimst  
and other  
the 1000  
1000 li. W  
This C  
cy, marfar  
ced one ar  
Gentlemen  
and the G  
and treat  
its held fr  
bestow up  
him a Gen  
of these G  
sen, and  
in a manne  
in all pub  
and three  
out whos  
journey, a  
apparel re  
der: in his  
yearly stip  
which they  
treasury.

In the  
the death  
order; fir  
are summo  
age and up  
put their n  
ther For a  
which so  
draweth fo  
are drawn  
eth again  
ther For  
the so do  
(by the fa  
then these  
9 again by  
fer down  
ced to 11  
est of the  
sore after  
whom the  
each writ  
whom the  
scribes ar  
drawn; is  
drawn; is  
voices abo  
make choi  
veral foler

rs, 4 Soldi of Pic-  
 with 24 Deniers,  
 e being 20 per cent.  
 hat de Banco usual-  
 ling. The other at  
 according to the  
 in Exchange.  
 are here called Pic-  
 Coyne of this City,  
 re here called Gros-  
 62 Soldi of Piccoli,  
 counts several wayes,  
 Solds, and Grosses,  
 10 Duckets the Liv-  
 ds to the Liver, and  
 Sold. Others by  
 4 Livres, and 4 Solds  
 4 Gros to a Ducket,  
 Solds, and Deniers  
 of four sorts. The  
 with all Wools, Bras,  
 or Gros Commodities  
 ele,  
 wherewith all Silks,  
 Drugges, Spices, and  
 Gold, is 83 li. Gros.  
 er or Gold-thread, is  
 is used only for Sil-  
 ms.  
 hath been observed  
 ls, and to make 106  
 make use of for the  
 ds, the Ballanes and  
 Gros, as in Subtle  
 ights which they use  
 the Ballance, are 21,  
 en the Stalero Weight  
 two, and both called  
 Silks, Cloth of Gold  
 &c. of which 5 Bras-  
 sb.  
 Stuffs, Linnen, and  
 d this is larger then  
 reot; makes  
 casure called the Am-  
 gorzans, the Bigonza  
 & Sachies, the Sa-  
 Gros they account  
 arts, one Bigonza  
 y Weight as Measure,  
 d the Miro, and is  
 st Weight is 120 li.  
 and

and 1 Miro makes by Measure 25 li, and by Weight 30 li. 3 ounces, it is weighed by the Stalero.

Corn is sold by the Stajo, and weigheth 133 li. Gros.

Brimstone, Iron, Steel, Wool, Cheese, and other gros commodities are sold by the 1000 li. Weight gros, and Rice by the 1000 li. Weight subtile.

This City is the only place where poli- cy, warfare, and Merchandize have embraced one another, the Inhabitants are either Gentlemen, or Artificers and Commons, and the Gentry are held in such esteem, and treated with so great respect, that its held for the greatest honour they can bestow upon the best deserfer, to make him a Gentleman of this City, and out of these Gentlemen are the Senators chosen, and out of them the Duke who is in a manner only titular, his power being in all publick things under the Senate, and three Officers called the Capi, without whose consent he must not take a journey, and by these he is ordered what apparel to wear, and as he is kept under in his authority, so is he allowed a yearly stipend of about 40000 Ducats, which they pay him out of the common treasury.

In the manner of electing a Duke upon the death of the former they observe this order, first in the vacancy all the Gentry are summoned together from 30 years of age and upward, and so many as meet, put their names into a Pot, then in another Pot are just so many Balls, among which 30 only are guilt, then a Child draweth for each till the 30 guilt ones are drawn, for which 30 the child draweth again the second time out of another Pot, which hath 9 guilt Balls, and the 9 so drawn set down 40 out of which (by the said kind of lot) 12 are chosen, then these 12 nominate 25, out of which 9 again by lot are chosen, then these 9 set down 45, who are again by lot reduced to 11, who nominate 41 of the chiefest of the Senators, then these 41 Senators after an oath severally taken to chose whom they judge the most worthy: each writes the names in a scrole of those whom he maketh choise of, and these scroles are mingled together, and then drawn; the fitness of the persons thus drawn is waved, for he that hath most voices above 25, is the person whom they make choise of for Duke, performing several solemnities at his creation, and by

the like kind of Lottery or form, do they chuse Gentlemen into the Senate house, as also in the making of other publick Officers.

The chief Orders of Knighthood in this estate of Venice, are that of St. Mark, and that of the glorious Virgin, instituted by Bartholomeo of Vicenza anno 1222. Their charge is to defend Widows, and Orphans; and to procure the peace of Italy, the armes are a purple Cross between severall stars, their habit is a white Robe over a russet Cloak.

Here are in this Estate 2 Patriarchs, and 34 Bishops.

The Dukedomes of MANTOVA, and MODENA have on the East, Romandiole, on the South and West, Parma, Tojcane, Placenza, and Mellan, and on the North the Estates of Venice. I unite Modena with Mantona, because not long since divided from it, the chief Cities of these two Territories are first Mantona so called from the Countrey, it is a very strong City, encompassed on three sides with water about a quarter of a mile broad, and on the fourth side well walled, it is seated on a River, which emptieth it self into the Po: In this City was held the Council, wherein it was decreed that the Electing of Popes should only belong to the Conclave of Cardinals, and here Virgil that famous Poet was born.

Their Coynes are the same with those of Rome, and they keep their Accounts as they do.

Their Weight is the Quintal of 100 li. which maketh in London 72 li.

Their Measure is the Brace, and is 1 per Cent. longer then the Brace of Ferrara.

Modena a City once belonging to Ferrara, and by Clement the eighth, with its spacious Territories it was given to Hercules D'Este, last Duke of Ferrara, after by marriage united to Mantona, and since become a Dukedome of it self, under the protection of France. It was called formerly Mutina, then famous for the battle between Anthony and Augustus, where Hirtius and Panfa, the two Consuls were slain, and Anthony lost the day; this place is the residence of its Dukes, as Mantona is of hers.

Their Coynes are Deniers, Solds, and Livres, 12 Deniers making a Sold, and 20 Solds a Liver; also 5 Livres makes a Ducket of Gold large, and 12 Solds a Ducketson. And by these they keep their Accounts.

Christendom  
 at K. h. h.  
 had.

Mantona  
 of Modena,  
 their bounds  
 and chief  
 places.

Their Coyne

Their Coyne

Their

Their *Weight* is the *Quintal* of 100 *li*, which maketh in *London* 71 *li*. And the *Peso* of 25 *li*.

Their *Measure* is the *Brace* agreeing with that of *Venice*, *Regge*, and *Nirandola*, *Cities* of good account.

Parma and  
Placenza,  
Modena,  
Milan,  
Mantua,  
Pavia.

The *Dukedomes* of *PARMA*, and *Placenza* or *PLACENTIA*, hath on the East, the Countrey of *Modena*, on the South, *Appenine*, on the West, *Milan*, and on the North, *Mantua*; the chief *City* of *Parma* beareth also the same name; being seated on a small River called *Pirnia*, in a fruitfull plain, five miles distance from the *Appenines*; about four miles in compass, adorned with many rich and stately *Structures*, very populous, and well inhabited by *Gentry*, who are much addicted to *Learning*, *Arts*, and *Armes*; it hath a fair and spacious *Campagna*, which feed's abundance of *Sheep*, and here the *Duke* hath his *Palace*, a place of great delight and State; its *Churches* are beautiful, and embellished with *Pictures* and *Images*: this Countrey besides the common *Commodities* of *Italy*, boasts of its curious *Parmasan Cheese*, so much esteemed throughout all *EUROPE*.

The chief place of *Placenza* is also so called, its seated on the *Po*, commodious for *Traffic*, affording the ordinary *commodities* of *Italy*; but it is chiefly famous for its *Faires* in *Exchanges* here quarterly kept, to which all *Italy*, *Germany*, and some other Countreys do frequent and make their *Exchanges*: It is about five miles in compass, a place of good strength and beauty, having many faire and rich *Structures*, and *Churches*.

The  
Bishoprick  
of Trent.

The *Bishoprick* of *TRENT*, hath its chief *City* so called, seated in a plaine, and surrounded with mountaines of an excessive height, being always covered with *Snow*, by reason whereof it is more fit for *Wines* than *Corn*; the *City* is not large but indifferent strong; Its *Houses* are fair and stately, its *Streets* large, its *Churches* beautiful and richly adorned, its *Royal Palace*, is a sumptuous and stately *Edifice*; this *City* is particularly famous for the general *Council* there held for the establishment of the *Roman Catholick Religion*, which was kept in the *Church* of *St. Mary*.

To this *Dukedom* doth belong one *Arbbsbop*, and three *Bishops*.

## ITALY

Particularly so called.

The second part of *Italy*, according to our method, will contain the *ESTATES* of the *CHURCH*, and *TOSCANE*, which may again be subdivided into others, to wit, The *ESTATES* of the *CHURCH*, as they lye between the *Appenine*, and the *Gulf of Venice*, are those of *Bolognese*, *Ferrarese*, *Romagne*, or *Romandiola*, the *Duchie* of *Urbino*, and *Narobe*, or *Marca Ancona*. And the *Estates* of the *Church* as they lye between the *Tyrrhenian Sea*, and the *Appenine*, are those of *Perusin*, *Ombria*, or the *Duchie* of *Spoleto*, *Sabine*, *Oernistin*, *Saint Peters Patrimony*, and *Campagna di Roma*.

The *ESTATES* of *TOSCANE*, belonging to the great *Duke* of *Toscane*, are the *Dukedomes* of *Florentin* or *Florence*, *Sanese*, and *Pisan*, which two last may be comprehended under that of *Florence*. And to divers *Princes* are the *Republique* of *Lacque*, the *Principality* of *Mafia*, the *Signiery* of *Piombine*, the *Ile* of *Elbe* &c. and of these in order.

The *Province* or part of *Bolognese*, is Eastwards of *Modena*, and hath for its chief place *Bologna*, once the head of 12 *Cities*, when possessed by the *Toscans*; it is seated on the *River Apofa*, and in a large and fertile *Territory* for *Corn*, *Wine*, *Fruits*, and *Olives*; it is about five miles in compass, being begirt with a *Wall*, to which belong 12 *Gates* for entrance; this *City* is adorned with many fair and proud *buildings*, as well publick as private; in which they observe a uniform, among which is the *Popes Palace*, which for grandure and stateliness is fit to give entertainment to any *Prince* in *Christendome*; likewise its *Churches* which for state and beauty are not inferior to those of other *Cities* in *Italy*, having several reliques in them, and adorned and beautified with rich *Pictures*, *Tombs*, &c. It is dignified with the chief *University* of *Italy*; famous for its study of the *Civil Law*, and those excellent *Civilians* it hath produced, to wit *Aza*, *Bartolus*, *Johannes*, *Andreas*, and *Socius*. It is proudly built, having spacious *Courts*. This *City* is also famous for being the retiring

ting pla  
small adv  
pulous,  
and Gen  
its many  
Houses; an

Common  
are Wines  
and wron  
mands, &c.  
Coytes  
ledge the  
ot at Rom

Their  
Subtle, ac  
makes in  
li, alter w  
Bologna  
270 li, wh  
neat weigh  
There Wee  
percent) gre

Their A  
bout 25 In  
lation 100  
about 55 E  
practice 10  
sworn Measu  
thumb to e  
tome of the  
but 53 Ells  
ne observed  
ter then th

Corn is li  
whereof ma

The Terr  
is about 16  
breadth; it  
now belong  
it the yearly  
its cheife pl  
the Iron mi  
the Po, wh  
pire to defe  
well fortified  
the other  
miles in cou  
adorned with  
accounted o  
*Italy*, havin  
ous Green,  
to Streets,  
in length;  
that from e  
may be easly  
ted, rich, an  
17.

Their Coy  
Rome, and th  
do.



ting place of the *Popes*, which adds no small advantage unto it, being rich, populous, and well inhabited by *Nobility*, and *Gentry*, and the more by reason of its many *Colleges*, *Convents*, *Religious Houses*, and *Monasteries* or *Conventicles*.

*Commodities* which this *City* affordeth, are *Wines*, *Oyles*, *Corn*, *Silk*, both raw and wrought into several *Fabricks*, *Almonds*, &c.

*Coyne* here current are such as acknowledge the *Popes* Stamp, which we shall treat of at *Rome*.

Their *Weights* is the *Quintal* of 100 *li*. *Sabile*, at 12 Ounces to the *li*, which makes in *London* 80 *li*. at 16 Ounces per *li*, after which rate an ordinary bayl of *Bologna*, or *Bolonia* *Silk* weigheth there 270 *li*, which doth make in *London* 24 *li*. neat weights, the tare being deducted. Their *Weights* are observed to be 5 in 6. percent greater then at *Leghorne*.

Their *Measure* is the *Brace*, which is about 25 *Inches* English, after which calculation 100 *Braces* should produce in *London* about 55 *Ells* in *circa*, but according to practice 100 *Braces* if measured by the *sworn* *Measurer* with allowance of the *silver* *thumb* to each *Ell*, according to the custom of the *City*, we are found to make but 53 *Ells* English. And their *measures* are observed to be 7 in 8 per cent. greater then those of *Leghorn*.

*Corn* is here sold by the *Carbe*, 100 whereof makes 92 *Stajos* in *Venice*.

The Territory of *FERRARESE*, is about 160 miles in length, and 50 in breadth, it had once *Dukes* of its own, but now belongs to the *Pope*, who draws from it the yearly benefit of 250000 *Ducats*. Its chief place is *Ferrara*, so called from the *Iron* *mines* about it; it is seated on the *Po*, which on one side serves as a *Rampire* to defend it, as doth a strong *Wall* well fortified with a spacious *Moat* on the other sides. It is about five miles in compass, beautifully built, and adorned with many *Superb* *Edifices*, and is accounted one of the pleasantest *Cities* in *Italy*, having in the midst thereof a spacious *Green*, into which doth open about 50 *Streets*, most of which are half a mile in length, and so even, and uniform, that from thence the utmost ends of each may be easily discerned. It is well inhabited, rich, and dignified with an *University*.

Their *Coyne* are the same with those of *Rome*, and they keep their *Accounts* as they

Their *Weights* is the *Quintal* of 100 *li*, which makes in *London*, 75 *li*. *Haberduppis*.

Their *Measure* is the *Brace*, which makes in *London* 72 *Tards*.

Their *Wine* *Measure* is the *Mastello*, 11 whereof makes an *Ampbora* of *Venice*, which is 4 *Bigonfa's*, and a *Bigonfa* is 4 of their *Quarts*.

Its other places are *Comachio*, and *Mesola*.

*ROMAGNE* or *ROMANDIO-LA*, is Eastwards of *Bolognese*, its chief place is *Ravenna* seated on the *Adriaticque* *Sea*, and once a place of great account, having one of the fairest *Havens* in the world; and here it was where *Augustus* *Cesar* always kept a *Navy* for the defence of these parts of his *Empire*, but now it is choaked up; this *City* was the seat of the Emperour *Honorius*, and his successors, then of the *Gothish* *Kings*, and after them of the *Exarchs*, and lastly of its *Patriarch*; but now as its *Haven* is choaked up, so is the *Land* covered with water, which renders it now of no account; next to it may be reckoned *Rimini* seated on the mouth of the *River* *Rubicon*; then *Cervia* also seated on the *Adriaticque* *Sea*, and is a place where so great quantity of *Salt* is made, that the *Popes* part is valued yearly at 60000 *Crownes*, and lastly *Faenza* and *Imola*.

This *Country* affordeth *Wines*, *Oyles*, *Olives*, *Steel*, *Iron*, *Silk* of which they make several *Fabricks*, &c.

The *Duchie* or *Dukedome* of *URBIN*, not long since fallen to the *Holy* *seat*, and which indeed lies in the midst of the *Popes* *Territories*, having on the East *Marca* *Ancona*; on the South the *Apenine*, on the West *Toscane*; and on the North *Romagne*. Its chief places are 1 *Urbino*, seated at the bottom of the *Apenine*, formed like a *Miter*, and therefore so called *quasi* *urbis* *binus*. And here it was that *Polydor* *Virgil* (who writ an *English* *History*) was born: 2 *Belfort* seated in the *Midland*: 3 *Fano*, a *Sea* port *Town* to *Urbino*, and where the *English* do enjoy many immunities, and 4 *Pisauvo* a *Sea* *Town*, enjoying a good *Haven*.

In this *Dukedome* are about 200 *Castles*, the chief are those of *St. Leo*, and *Marivola*. And for the gaining of this *Country*, the *Pope* had some struglings with the *Duke* of *Florence*.

The next and last part between the *Apenine* and the *Gulfe* of *Venice* is the *Pro-*

Province of  
Naples  
1770  
1771  
1772

City of  
Ancona

The Church  
of our Lady  
at Ancona

vince of **MARCA ANCONA**, which is bounded with the *Adriatique*, *Naples*, the *Apennine*, and *Romagne*. It takes its name from *Ancona*, its chief City seated on the Hill *Cimmerius*, which like a Promontory shoots it self into the *Sea*, having the best Haven of *Italy* towards the *Adriatique Sea*, the entrance into which is shut up by two chains, the better to secure its Port and keep out *Pirates*; it was built by *Trajanus* the Emperour, in honor of whom there was erected a stately Arch yet standing. The City is of good strength, being encompassed with *Walls* and *Bulwarks*: Its *Houses* are fair, and its *Inhabitants* rich, especially by reason of its *Commerce* with other Nations. 2. *Loritto*, or *Santa Maria Lauretana* famous for the Church of the *Virgin Mary*, and the miracles here wrought, to which the devotee 10 of *Romanists* go a *Pilgrimage*, either for devotion, to pay their *vows*, or in penance imposed on them by their *spiritual Fathers*. The Church (where the Chamber of our Lady is, which as they say was brought hither in the Aire by Angels from *Palestine*, for the sins of the people) is a stately Structure being richly adorned with several *Presents*, *Offerings*, *Tables*, and *precious gifts* of *Princes*, *Nobles*, &c. as dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, as also *Vessels of Gold* and *Silver*, and other *Monuments*. In the Church, is continually kept burning abundance of *Wax Lights*, and *Lamps*, and whose *Organs* and other *music* makes an harmonious sound; and he that believeth not the *Miracles* that are here wrought, as also that it was not brought, as I have said before, from *Palestine*, is deemed by the *Catholiques* for an *Infidel*. This place is most frequented twice a year, to wit, on the *Conception of our Lord*, and the *birth of our Lady*, at which times it is throng'd with people. 3. *Macerata* the seat of the *Governors* of this *Province*, and here is a *College of Lawyers*, for the hearing and determining of causes, both which hath added much to the beauty and wealth of this City. 4. *Adria*, which gave name to the adjoining *Sea*: 5. *Ascoli* the faire: 6. *Fermo* the strong: 7. *Recanati* of old *Alia Rectina*: 8. *Fabriano*, and 9. *Cammerino*. And thus much for the *Estates of the Church*, as they lye between the *Apennine* and the *Tyrrhencian Sea*, and first with *Perusina*.

The Province or part of **PERUSINA** is Westwards of *Ombrie*, its chief place being

*Perugia* of old *Perusia*, and in this Town it was that *Augustus* besieged *L. Antonius* the brother, and *Fulvia* the wife of *Antony* the *Triumvir*, who having in vain, endeavoured to seduce *Rome* from their obedience to *Augustus*, betook themselves to this City, which at the said siege became also obedient unto him.

And nigh to this City is *Lago de Perugia*, of about 30 miles in compass, near whose banks *Hanibal* slew *Flaminius* 15000 of his *Romans*; here also is *Lacus Vademonius*, where *Dolabella* vanquished such of the *Gauls* as had escaped the sword of *Camillus*.

The Duchy of **SPOLETO**, anciently called **OMBRIA**, because situate under the shadow of the *Apennin Hills*: Its chief place or City is *Spoleto* which gives its name to the whole Territory, it is of great antiquity, where are yet remaining stately *Aqueducts*, the *Temple of Concord*, the foundation of a spacious *Theatre*, &c. Its chief places are 1. *Assisio*, famous for little, but being the birth place of *St. Francis*, 2. *Fuligno*, 3. *Todi*, 4. *Amelia*, 5. *Rieti*, 6. *Norcia*, and 7. *Nocera*.

The Land of **SABINE**, is Southwards of *Spoleto*, its chief place is *Narvis*, a place of some account.

The Province of **ORIETIN** is to the West of *Spoleto*, and East of *Perusia*. Its chief place is *Orvieto* seated on so high a Rock, that it amazes those that look down into the adjacent valleys, then *Aquapendente*.

And last of all the Part of *Italy* called **St. PETERS PATRIMONT**, containeth also all *Latium* or *Campagna di Roma*, and part of *Isturia*; It is bounded by the *Pisces* hard by *Stena*, the *Apennine*, *Naples*, and the *Tyrrhenian Sea*; in this Country are the *Mountains* called *Gallicanum*, in which *Hanibal* frighted that noble Captain *Fab. Maximus* with a *stratagem*, which was by having 4000 *Oxen*, which carryed fire on their *horns*, and so by that means passed over the *Mountains*.

The chief places in this part are first *Osia*, seated at the mouth of the *Tiber*, once enjoying a commodious Haven, but now dammed up. It is honoured with the See of a *Bishop* whose place is to consecrate the *Popes*: 2. *Ardea* to which the *Romans* fled after the *Gauls* had taken *Rome*: 3. *Veii*, a City of good antiquity, wealth and largeness: 4. *Alba* once the seat of the

*Silvian*

*Silvian King* beauty, but the hand of a place of *Roman Empire* for recreating the Town abounding known by the which great *Viterbo*, 8 *Frosi*, 12 *Ardea*, and some account and above the world, who were for *plene*, for the and for being and *Trophia* part of *Asia* a place sufficient and renowned when in her be 50 miles beautified with said to contain that is free rolled into *Omen* and *Chil* several times having twice vil *Wars* of their time in *tellans*. It is by *Vespassian*, the people to the first basket which the much excited was the *Tem* were kept sh open in the their *Monarch* wit, in the *Punic War* here was also *Gauls* by the was the *Brid* which *Horat* of the whole *quin*, and the behind him which done, Swome to tly received the City was ruine, but a *Rome*.

Province of  
Perusia  
1770

and in this Town  
leged *L. Antonius*  
the wife of  
who having in  
duce *Rome* from  
ur, betook them-  
h at the said siege  
to him.

is *Lago de Perugia*,  
pals, near whose  
minium 15000 of  
is *Lacus Fadem-*  
nquished such of  
the sword of *Ca-*

**LETO**, ancient-  
because situate  
*Appenin Hills*: Its  
*Volto* which gives  
Territory, it is of  
are yet remaining  
*Temple of Concord*,  
*us Theatre*, &c.  
*Africa*, famous for  
birth place of *St.*  
*Tedi*, *4 Amelia*,  
and *7 Nocera*.

**INE**, is South-  
chief place is *Nar-*  
ccount.

**ETIN** is to the  
East of *Perusin*. Its  
eated on so high a  
those that look  
alleys; then *Aqua-*

Part of *Italy* called  
**TRIMONT**, con-  
or *Campagna di*  
*ia*, It is bounded  
*ena*, the *Appenine*,  
*ruian Sea*; in this  
nes called *Gallica-*  
frighted that no-  
mmu with a strata-  
ving 2000 *Oxen*,  
eir *horses*, and so  
over the *Monn-*

chis part are first  
uth of the *Tiber*,  
dious *Naven*, but  
honoured with the  
ce is to consecrate  
which the *Romans*  
taken *Rome*: 3.  
ntiquity, wealth  
nce the seat of the  
*Sylvian*

*bilian Kings*, and of good fame, and  
beauty, but suffered much in the Wars, by  
the hand of *Tullius Hostilius*, 3 *Antium*  
a place of great delight, to which the  
*Roman Emperours* used to retire themselves  
for recreation: 6 *Civita Vecchia*, a Mari-  
time Town, seated on the *Tyrrhenean Sea*,  
abounding in great plenty with *Allom*:  
known by the name of *Roche Allom*, from  
which great profit ariseth to the *Pope*: 7  
*Viterbo*, 8 *Porto*, 9 *Corneto*, 10 *Sutri*, 11  
*Tuscoli*, 12 *Aletri*, 13 *Frascati*, 14 *Tri-*  
*oli*, and 15 *Palestrina*. All places of  
some account, but chesly, and lastly,  
and above all *Rome* once the Mistress of  
the world, famous for her noble *Warriors*,  
who were so exact in their Martial *Disci-*  
*pline*, for their *Triumphs* and *Antiquities*,  
and for being the place where the *Spoiles*  
and *Trophies* of all *Europe*, and a great  
part of *Asia*, were laid up; in brief it was  
a place sufficiently memorized by the anti-  
ent and renowned *Historians*. This *City*  
when in her pristine splendor, was said to  
be 50 miles in circuit, whose *Walls* were  
beautified with about 750 *Towers*, and  
said to contain about 463000 fighting men  
that is five *Citizens*, and such as were in-  
rolled into *Cense*, besides *Servants*, *Wo-*  
*men* and *Children*, but this *City* hath se-  
veral times felt the jostlings of ill fortune,  
having twice been burnt; once in the *Cl-*  
*vil Wars* of *Sylla* and *Marine*, and the o-  
ther time in the Wars of *Vespasian* and *Vi-*  
*telianus*. It was also the third time built  
by *Vespasian*, who (for encouragement of  
the people to hasten its buildings) carried  
the first basket of earth, in imitation of  
which the *Nobility* did the like, which  
much excited the people to labour, here  
was the *Temple of Janus*, whose doores  
were kept shut in the time of peace, and  
open in the time of War, which in all  
their *Monarchy* happened but thrice, to  
wit, in the Reign of *Augustus*, after the  
*Panick War*, and in the time of *Numa*:  
here was also the *Capital* saved from the  
*Gauls* by the cackling of *Geese*, and here  
was the *Bridge* called *Pons Sublicius*, on  
which *Horatius Cocles* withstood the fury  
of the whole Army of King *Porfena*, *Tar-*  
*quin*, and the *Tuscan*, until the *Citizens*  
behind him had cut down the said *Bridge*,  
which done, he jump't into the *River*,  
Swome to the *Shoar* where he was joyful-  
ly received by them, by which means  
the *City* was for that time saved from  
ruine; but a word as to the present state of  
*Rome*.

**ROME** as now it is, hath not the  
moyety of its pristine beauty and splendor,  
scarce containing 21 miles in compass, it is  
almost Orbicular, in which space there is  
about a third part wast ground, yet is it  
a place of great splendor; beautified with  
many princely *Palaces*, and sufficiently fa-  
mous for being the seat of the *Pope*, which  
makes it exceeding populous, being  
thought to contain about 200000 con-  
stant *Inhabitants*, besides an exceeding  
great confluence of strangers which hit-  
her come from all parts of *Christen-*  
*dome*, some for devotion; others to  
please their fancies with its *antiquities* and  
*curiosities*, and some for one thing, and  
some for another; and of these 200000  
*Inhabitants* two third parts may be recko-  
ned for *Clergymen*, and *Curtesans*, the  
latter of which are esteemed to be about  
40000, who pay 30000 *Duchats* yearly  
tribute to the *Pope*, for which two *Gal-*  
*lies* are maintained and furnished for ser-  
vice in *Civita Vecchia*, known by the  
names of the *Saburrabi*, being so call'd from  
the place of their abode in *Rome*; and  
this tribute the *Pope* would make one be-  
lieve he doth not take for their tolera-  
tion, but for their punishment. This *City*  
is seated on the banks of the *Tiber* up-  
on *Campus Martius*, where it was built  
after the inundation of the *Goths* and *Pan-*  
*dals*. To this *City* there is 15 *Gates* which  
serve for entrance; it is now built upon 10  
*Hills*, on which are fair *Structures*, as on  
the top of the *Vatican Hill* is seated the  
proud *Palace of the Popes*, large enough  
to give entertainment to three *Princes* at  
one time, being beautified, and enriched  
with excellent *Paintings*, and *curiosities*,  
and here are the *Gardens* called *Belvedere*,  
famous for its rare *plants*, delight-  
ful *walks*, curious *Statues* &c. as the *Sta-*  
*tue* of the *Nylr* upon a *Sphinx* with 17 *child-*  
*ren*, and several monsters and creatures,  
proper only for the said *River*; another  
of the *Tyber Foxes* connexed with a *Wolfe*  
which gave suck to *Remus* and *Romulus*,  
also one of *Venus* playing with *Cupid*, a  
*Bacchus* armless, one of *Laocoon* with his  
two *Sons*, enveloped by two *Dragons*, all  
of one *Marble Stone*; also *Apollo* *Pisces*,  
having a *Bow* and *Arrows* in one hand, and a  
*Serpent* at his feet, & the *Statue* of the *Em-*  
*peror Commodus*, which for habit & shape  
is like *Hercules* holding a child on his *Arm*,  
&c. and on this *Hill* is the *Church* of *Saint*  
*Peter*, being the most splendid & famous in  
all *Rome*, being adorned with rich *Paintings*,  
*Tombs*,

The profane  
Name of  
Munna

Statue to  
the Nylr-  
etc.

*Tombs* &c. also several choice curiosities, as the *Spear* which pierced the side of our *Saviour*, and the head of *Saint Andrew*; the other chief *Churches* are *Santa Croce*, a stately structure built by *Helena* mother to *Constantine* the great; *Santa Giovanni del Laterano*; *Santa Lorenzo* with its monasteries annexed to it; *Santa Fabiano* and *Sebastiano*, & *St. Maria Maggiore nel Monte Esquilino*, & *St. Paola Nella via Ostiense*, all which are *Superbe* buildings, and richly adorned with *Pictures*, and where are several *reliques*; and besides these *Churches* there are in *Rome* about 300, if the *Monasteries* for *Nuns*, *Religious Houses*, *Convents*, and the like are included. Here are many *Hospitals* for the relief of the distressed; likewise several gallant *Libraries*, as the *Vatican*, also that of the *Jesuites Colledge*, &c. The *Palaces* of the *Cardinals* are very stately structures, and richly adorned with *Paintings*, to which are joyned pleasant *Gardens*, wherein are divers *Statues*; and these *Palaces* are dispersed up and down the *City*; here are several *Piazzes*, the chief of which are the *Piazza Vaticana*, *la Gudea*, *la Novana*, and *la Fiore*.

Antiquities  
of Rome.

In *Rome* are abundance of *Antiquities*, some of which I will glance upon, as first the *Aegyptian Obelisks* with their several *Hieroglyphicks*, as that of *Augustus Caesar*, that of *Tiberius Caesar*; also one dedicated to the *Sun* by *Augustus*, with several others; here are also three famous *Columns*, divers *Pyramids*, abundance of *Statues*, throughout all the *City*, as one of *Apollo*, another of a *Sabyn Woman*, one of the *Amazon Hippolito*, one of *Bacchus*, also those of *Fulia* daughter to *Augustus Caesar*, of *Agrippa* daughter of *Marcus Agrippa*; also of *Ceres*, *Copia*, *Pallas*, *Diana*, *Victoria*, of *Aesculapius*, of a *Satyr* blowing a seven-reeded Pipe; one of *Diana* with a *Bow*, and *Quiver* of *Arrows*; also of *Constantine*, of *Maximilian*; likewise several statues of *Gyants*, with divers others too tedious to name, as also abundance of *Heads* of eminent people in ancient times, and other antiquities, which for brevity sake I omit. The *Castle* of *St. Angelo* which for its strength is esteemed impregnable, unless starved, and here the *Popeliveth* in more state and pompe then any *Prince* in *Christendome*, and what his office is, as also the *Religion* and *Ceremonies* used in the *Church* of *Rome*, &c. I willingly omit, supposing few are ignorant therein, though contrary in opinion to us.

The *Commodities* which *Rome* and its Territories affordeth for *Merchandize*, is *Corn*, *Wine*, *Oyl*, *Silk*, of which some *Fabricks* are made, *Alome*, *Kid-skins*, *Lustefrings*, &c. for which they receive from *England*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Herrings*, *Pilchers*, *Salt-Salmon*, *New-Land Fish*, *Stuffes*, *Bayes*, *Soyes*, *Tallow*, *Wax*, *Calveskins*, &c. which are Landed at *Civita Vecchia*, the Port for *Rome*, to which place they are transported by *Boates* and *Vessels*, up the *Tiber* on which it is seated.

Their *Coyns* here current are those of all *Italy*, the chief of which are *Duckets*, or as they term them, *Crowns* of *Gold*, which is worth a 11 *Julios* or *Paulos*.

The *Crown* of *Silver* is worth 10 *Julios*. The *Julio* is worth 10 *Bajoches*, or 40 *Quatrim*. The *Bajoche* is worth 1 *Sold*, 4 *Deniers* small money of *Rome*.

Their *Weight* is the *Quintal* of 100 *li*, which makes in *London*, 80 *li*.

But *Mr. Roberts* observes that of these *Quintals* of 100 *li*, is made two different *Weights*, with allowance given thereupon, as in sale of *Spices* or the like. The *Quintal* thereof he saith is accounted to be of the above said *Weight* 160 *li*. And the second which is the *Weight* for all *grois goods* is held to be 250 *li*, to the *Quintal*.

Their *Measures* in length are two, the one for *Woolen*, and the other for *Linne*; the one is the *Cane*, and 8 *Palmes* makes a *Cane*, and 30 *Canes* is a 100 *Venetian Braces*, which is 55; *Ells English*. The other is the *Brace*, which is 3; *Palmes* of the said *Cane*.

*Corn* is sold by a *Measure* which they call the *Rugio*, which is 412 *li*, in *Weight* there, which makes at *London* about ( ) *Gallons*.

## T O S C A N Y.

THE *Dukedome* of *FLORENCE*, or *FLORENTIN*, containeth the greatest part of *TOSCANY*, to which doth belong those of *Sanese*, and *Pisan*; and which I shall include under the *Dukedome* of *Florence*. It is separated from *Genoa* by the *River Magra*, and the strong Town of *Sarazana*, belonging to the *Genoys*; on the West from *Anconitana*, and *Ro-*

magna

magna; b  
by the P  
Tyrbenean  
dome is in  
of the fam  
people are g  
self) addi  
of which i  
Among  
toy, (C  
fair as are  
Florence (w  
dome) be  
no less frui  
the conflue  
Chiane; it  
and by res  
of the Du  
where he l  
Palace, ric  
Statues, as  
ple of Apol  
nus, a Co  
Cacus, and  
ly pieces, w  
dious to m  
cellent piec  
or curiosit  
place of ple  
as Gardens  
it are excell  
byraths and  
all sorts of  
sides this  
fair and sup  
to extranc  
the Arch-du  
to be seen  
large, strat  
ches fair stru  
Paintings, S  
the new Ch  
its beauty a  
take place.  
Papist Chur  
twenty four  
about thirty  
an ingenious  
selves to Art  
are found ex  
This City w  
Dictator, a  
the *Triumvir  
bards*; reedi  
bought its li  
gain became  
the *Medices*  
rence. The  
produceth be

ich Rome and its Merchandize, is of some of which some come, Kid-skins, which they receive Tinn, Herrings, New-Land Fish, Blow, Wax, Calves-Landed at Civit-Rome, to which rted by Boates and n which it is sea-

arrant are those of which are Duckets, or of Gold, which Paulos.

s worth 10 Julios, Bajoches, or 40 is worth 1 Sold, Of Rome.

Quintal of 100 li. 80 li.

erves that of these made two difference given there-spices or the like, he faith is above-said Weight which is the Weight to be 250 li. to the

ngth are two, the the other for Lin-ene, and 8 Palmes to Canes is 100 h is 55; Ells En-e Brace, which is Cane.

asure which they s 412 li. in Weight at London about

A N Y.

FLORENCE, TIN, contain-part of T O S- ch doth belong an, and which I e Dukedom of d from Genoa by he strong Town to the Genois; mitana, and Roma-gna

magna; by the Appenine on the North; by the Pisseo, on the East; and by the Tyrhenean Sea, on the South. This Dukedom is in length about 260 miles, and of the same breadth in many places. Its people are generally (even the Duke himself) addicted to Merchandize, by reason of which it is a place of great wealth.

Among the chief Cities of this Territory, (of which it boasts of many as fair as are in any Country in Italy) first Florence (which gives its name to the Dukedom) bears the bell. It is seated in a no less fruitful then pleasant plain, near the confluence of the Rivers Arno and Chiane; it is about 6 miles in compass, and by reason of its being the residence of the Duke, is very populous and rich, where he hath a stately and magnificent Palace, richly adorned with abundance of Statues, as the Idol brought from the Temple of Apollo at Delphos, of Scipio Africanus, a Colossus of Hercules treading on Cacus, and another of David, all stately pieces, with abundance of others too tedious to name; also here are store of excellent pieces of paintings and divers sorts of curiosities; and to make it a perfect place of pleasure, its Courts are fair, and its Gardens spacious and delightful, where are excellent Fountains, Groves, Labyrinths and walks, besides a place where all sorts of wild Beasts are kept; and besides this Palace, the City hath several fair and superbe Edifices; being a place so extraordinary beautiful, that Charles the Arch-duke used to say it was fit only to be seene on Holy-daies. Its streets are large, strait, and well ordered; its Churches fair structures, and richly adorned with Paintings, Sculptures, &c. among which the new Chappel of Saint Laurence for its beauty and splendor may deservedly take place. In this City are forty four Parish Churches, about fifty Nunneries, twenty four Fryeries, twelve Priorates, and about thirty Hospitals, it is inhabited by an ingenious People, much adding themselves to Arts and Manufactures, and here are found excellent Painters and Sculptors. This City was built by Sylla that bloody Dictator, and was made a Colony by the Triumvirs; it was rased by the Lombards; reedified by Charles the Great, bought its liberty of Rodolphus, and again became (and continues) subject to the Medices who are now Dukes of Florence. The Commodities that this City produceth being the product of the Duke-

dome, are Wines; Oyles, Silks, both raw and wrought, in several Fabriche, as Taffeties, Satins, Velvets, Plushes, and Grains in great quantities; also, Rho, Marble, &c. for which they receive from England, Cloths, Serges, Bayes, Perpetuanes, Sayes, Lead, Tinn, Calves-skins, Pitchers, Herrings, New-land-fish, Pickled Salmon, in Pisan.

The Coynes here currant, are Duckets of 7 Livres per Ducket, which is valued for 5 s. 3 d. sterling.

The Liver is 20 Solds, which is valued to be 9 d. sterling.

The Scudo or Crown is 7 Livres, which is 5 s. 7 d. sterling.

The Liver is also divided into 12 Craches, whereof 8 is a Julio, which is 6 d. sterling. 5. Quairins is 3 Crach, and 60 Craches is 2 Liver.

They keep their Accounts generally in Duckets, Solds, and Deniers, 12 Deniers making a Sold, and 20 Solds a Liver.

Their Weight is the Quintal, or 100 li. of 12 ounces to the li. which 100 li. makes in London 78 li.

Their Measure is the Brace, and 4 Braces is a Cane; and 100 Braces are found to make 48 Ells, or 60 Yards, to each Ell there is the usual allowance of the Liver Thumb.

Grain is sold by the Moggio, which is 24 Stajos, and the Stajo is 50 li. And Salt is sold by the Stajo, which is 72 li. the Stajo.

Wine is sold by the Cagno, which is 10 Barrels, each Barrel is 40 Metadells or 20 Bottles, and the Barrel is to weigh 120 li.

Oyle is sold by the Orcio, or Barrel, and contains 32 Metadells, which should weigh 85 li.

This place hath a great Trade, and is much frequented by Merchants and Strangers, by reason of the great Priviledges, and kind entertainment which they find, all sorts of Merchandize being here landed free from all Imposts, Duties, and Customs, an advantage not found in many places.

The second City I shall name is Pisa in Pisan; built by Pisa a people of Ehs in Greece: recovered to the Florentines by the valour of Sir John Hawkwood an English man, seated at the entrance of the River Arno into the Sea; it was once a very large City, and had great Territories, Corsica, Sardinia, and the Balcares, &c. having been under its subjection, being very rich and powerful, both by Land and Sea: but the many shocks of fortune

Their Coins and Accounts kept.

Their Weight.

Their Measure.

Florence, a Place of great Trade, through its kind entertainment of Merchants.



tune have reduced it within one half of its ancient limits, and much Eclipse'd its riches and beauty; yet the many several good Buildings which it still shewes, testify its ancient splendor; among which may be reckon'd its beautiful *Aqueduct*, its fair *Cathedral* with its brazen folding doors, its *Steeple* built with such Artifice, that on all sides it seems crooked at the top, and ready to fall on the head of the beholder; 10 and its *Campo Santo*, which was raised with the earth which they brought home from the *Holy-land* in their *Gallees*, when the *Christians* fought to gain it from the *Infidels*.

1. Coins  
2. Weights  
3. Measures  
4. Accounts  
5. kept

Their *Coins*, *Weights*, and *Measures*, as also their *Accounts* kept, are the same with those of *Florence*.

Here is a *Customs-house* to receive the *Customs* for all *Goods* that are landed at *Leghorne*, and enters into his Country, or laden in *Fluviè*, and going this way out of his Country; for which it is observed, that a *Bagg* of *Pepper* is about a *Crown* of *Gold* per *Balle* the *Customs*; And *English Herring*s from the arrival at *Leghorne*, until dispatched in the *Customs-house* of *Pisa*, have charges 15 *Solds* the *Barrel* of 4000 *Herring*s, by which we may judge of the *Customs* upon other *Goods*.

6. Custom  
7. house  
8. for  
9. the  
10. receiving  
11. of  
12. Customs.

*Sienna* in *Sanese*, may claim the third place, built by *Brennus* the *Gaul*, who put his old sickly men here to sojourn, and called it *Senæ*. It is an In-land City, seated in a large, pleasant and fertile Territory, wherein are the *Towns* or *Orbisello*, *Pienza*, *Sanna*, with 26 others, all walled; also the *Haven* of *Telamo*, the *Lordship* of *Flombino*, and the *Peninsula* of *Monte Argentario*, 40 enriched with *Mines* of *Silver*, and store of *Marble*. It is adorned with beautiful *Buildings*, both publick and private, as the proud *Palace* built of square stones by *Pope Pius* the second, and the *Arch-Bishop*s; then its lofty *Tower* of *Mangia*, overtopping all other buildings in the *City*, and hath the enjoyment of a pleasant prospect over the confines of *Tuscany*; its *Churches* are beautiful, among which the *Domo* is the chief, built of black and white *Marble*, and richly adorned within, and in its *Chappel* they say is kept the *arme* of *St. John Baptist*; and lastly its *Senate-house*, where there is a *Column* bearing *Romulus* and *Romulus* sucking a *Wolfe* in *Brass*. Next *Pistoia* may claim place, a *City* though small, yet rich and well-built; it is famous for its beginning that bloody faction of the

*Neri* and *Bianchi*, as of the *Guelphes* and *Ghibellines*: then *Ligorne* or *Livorno* also in *Pisan*, seated at the mouth of the *River Arno*, a faire and beautiful *City*, being accounted the strongest, and one of the principal *Towns* of *Trade* in the *Mediterranean* seas, being properly accounted the scale of the *Florentine* Dominions; but in matters of *Commerce*, it is governed by *Florence* and *Pisa* the chief *Cities* of this *Dutchy*. This *City* not many years past, was purchased by the *Florentines* of the *Genoies* for 120000 *Duckets*, before which it was a place of no great account, nor beauty, being a reception for *Theeves*, *Murderers*, *Pirates*, and all sorts of *Religions*, or rather irreligious people; but now it is well inhabited, being the residence of abundance of *Merchams* and *Strangers*, which hither come for the negotiation of their affairs.

*Commodities* here found are many, by reason of the great *Trade* there driven by so many several *Merchants*, especially by the *Europeans*, among which the *English* are no ways inferior, bringing them *Cloths*, *Serges*, *Perpetuanes*, *Sayes*, *Bayes*, *Red* and *White Herring*s, *Pickers*, *Salt-salmon*, *Tallow*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Penner*, *Hides*, *Calve-skins*, &c. also the *Druggs*, *Spices*, and *Gems* of *India*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*. Likewise the *Dutch*, *French*, &c. furnish them with several other *Commodities*, so that this place may be termed as it were a *Ware-house*, or *Store-house* of *Commodities*, all which are here afforded at easie rates. The *Natural Commodities* of this place are not many, the chief whereof are *Oyles*, *Wines*, *Silks*, both raw and wrought, *Anchoves*, *Anisceds*, 40 *Rice*, *Argall*, with some other *Italian Commodities*.

Here the *Merchants* pay no *Custom* for their *Goods*, if sold within a year; but if they happen to be unsold within a year, then they pay a certain *Custom*; but it seldom happens so, the place being of a quick trade.

*Coynes* here current with their value are as followeth, *viz.* 5 *Quatrans* makes 2 *Cracca*, 3 *Quatrans* a *Sold*, 10 *Solds* a *Liver*, 12 *Cracca*'s is a *Liver*, which is 9d. sterling, 8 *Cracca*'s is a *Folio*, which is 6d. sterling, 18 *Quatrans*, or 6 *Solds* of a *Liver* makes 1 *Sold* of a *Dollar*; 6 *Livers* is a *Dollar* long money; and 5 *Livers* a *Dollar* short money. 7 *Livers* is a *Ducket*, and 7 *Livers* is a *Scudo*, or *Crown* of *Gold*, which is 5 l. 7 d. sterling.

They keep their *Accounts* in *Dollars*, *Livers*,

vers,  
eigh,  
leth  
Ginli  
The  
of wh  
ish,  
renders  
is a  
Englis  
other  
glisb,  
Englis  
1 her  
es, mak  
Thli  
Stars  
Sacks  
the Com  
100  
makes  
of Legh  
65 M  
100 S.ick  
Linn  
The  
Stors  
sent from  
they the  
Alloy, fo  
rant of th  
the other  
Its oth  
the birth  
Cartona  
Bergo Jan  
In this  
shops, and  
The C  
the Signi  
Isle of E  
MASSA,  
last is but  
bundance  
ed with th  
the last of  
the former  
fle, both  
ble Statues  
The Con  
Compreher  
about 80  
tile) and  
on, the Ri  
three miles  
ritory is se  
able to rail  
and have  
liberty aga

of the *Gaelles* and  
*ne* or *Livorne* also  
 outh of the River  
 itful City, being  
 ; and one of the  
 City  
 Livor  
 nates  
 e in the *Mediterr-*  
 erly accounted the  
 Dominions; but in  
 it is governed by  
 chief Cities of this  
 e many years past,  
*Florentines* of the  
*checks*, before which  
 great account, nor  
 tion for *Theeves*,  
 and all sorts of *Re-*  
 gious people; but  
 being thereidence  
*ames* and *Strangers*,  
 r the negotiation of

*vers*, and *Deniers*. The *Dollar* or *piece* of  
*eight*, is a *Commodity*, which riseth and fall-  
 eth accidentally: but is usually valued at  
*Ginliis* 9 *Livers*. 6 *Testons* 3. *alla pare*.

Their *Weight* is the *pound* of 12 *ounces*,  
 of which 15; *ounces* makes the *Li*. *Eng-*  
*lish*. 130 *Li*, is a *Quintal* of *Allum*, and  
 renders 100 *li*. 6 *Ounces*; *English*. 160 *li*,  
 is a *Quintal* of *Wool*, &c. being 123 *li*.  
*English*. 100 *li*, makes a *Quintal* of all  
 other goods, being 77 *li*. 3. *Ounces* *Eng-*  
*lish*, so that 145 *li*, there is the 112 *li*.  
*English*.

Their *Measure* is the *Cane* of four *Bra-*  
*ces*, making 2 *Yards* *English*.

Their *Corn Measure*, is a *Star*; three  
*Stars* is a *Sack*; 3 *Sacks* is a *Salme*, 8  
*Sacks* or 24 *Stars* is a *Moggio*. A *Star*, if  
 the *Corn* is good, will weigh 50 *li*. *English*.  
 100 *Kilogs* of *Wheat* in the *Arch*,  
 makes at *Leghorn* 46 *Sacks*. 3 *Sacks*  
 of *Leghorn* makes the *English* *Quarter*.

63 *Minas* of *Corn* at *Genoa*, makes  
 100 *Sacks* at *Leghorn*; and 12 *Minas* makes  
 1 *Tunn* of 40 *Bushels* *Winchester Measure*.

There is usually gained by the *Fa-*  
*ctors* at *Leghorn* 10 per cent. on *Tinn*  
 sent from *England* to the *Levants*, which  
 they there melt, and cast again with an  
*Alloy*; for the *Turkes* as yet are igno-  
 rant of the difference betwixt the pure and  
 the other.

Its other places of note are *Volaterra*  
 the birth place of *Rodolphus Volaterra*;  
*Carriona* seated on the *Appennine*; *Arezzo*;  
*Borgo San Sepolchro*, &c.

In this *Dukedome* are three *Arch-Bi-*  
*shops*, and twenty six *Bishops*.

The *Common-wealth* of *LUCQUE*,  
 the *Signiory* of *PIOMBINE*, the  
*Isle* of *ELBE*, and the *principality* of  
*MASSA*, makes up the rest of *Tuscany*; this  
 last is but small in circuit, but yields a  
 bundance of white *Marble*, and is beauti-  
 fied with the *Cities* of *Massa*, and *Carrara*,  
 the last oftner the residence of the *Prince*,  
 the former strengthened with a stately *Ca-*  
*stle*, both beautified with excellent *Mar-*  
*ble Statues*.

The *Common-wealth* of *LUCQUE*  
 comprehendeth the *Territory* (which is  
 about 80 miles in compass, and very fer-  
 tile) and *Town* of *Lucca* which is seated  
 on the *River Serchio* in a plain, about  
 three miles in circuit, which with its *Ter-*  
*ritory* is so well inhabited that they are  
 able to raise 3000 *Horses*, and 15000 *foot*,  
 and have hitherto bravely defended their  
 liberty against the *Florentines*; the *City*

is a place of good beauty, being replen-  
 nished with many fair *Edifices*, and stately  
*Churches*; among which that of *Saint*  
*Martin* is the chief; and the *Walls* are so  
 adorned with trees (under whose shades  
 the inhabitants in the summer season re-  
 fresh themselves,) that at a distance to  
 travellers it seems a *City* in a *Wood*; this  
*City* is of note for being the meeting  
 place of *Romyey*, *Cesar*, and *Craffus*: all  
 three famous *Commanders*, where they  
 consulted and joyned into a confederacy  
 for the enlarging of their possessions, and  
 gaining more honour.

Next the *Iste* of *ELBE*, seated nigh  
 the *Shoare*, and opposite to the *Iste* of  
*Corfica*, from which it is distant about  
 fifteen *Leagues*; its chief places are *Cos-*  
*mapoli*, and *Porto Longone*. And oppo-  
 site to this *Iste* on the *Toscane* shore, is  
 the small *Signiory* of *PIOMBINE*.

Kingdome of NAPLES.

THE Third and last part of *Italy*  
 in general we have comprehended  
 under the *Kingdome* of *NAPLES*  
 which by some hath been divided into fix  
 parts, to wit *Terra di Lavoro*, *Calabria*  
*Superior*, and *inferior*, *Abruzzo*, *Pugia*,  
 or *Capitanata*, & *Terra di Otranto*. It is se-  
 parated from the *Land of the Church*, by a  
 line drawn from the mouth of the *River*  
*Trente*, to the head of *Ausennus*, and on  
 all other parts it is enclosed by the *Sea*.  
 This *Kingdom* is of a large extent, being  
 almost 1500 miles in circuit. It is eve-  
 ry where very fertile, and by some ac-  
 counted the richest of all *Italy*, abound-  
 ing in excellent *Wines*, *Silks*, both raw  
 and wrought into many *Fabricks*, in  
*Oyls*, *Saffron*, *Almonds*, *Anniseeds*, *Ar-*  
*gall*, *Bristome*, *Mines* of several *Mettals*,  
 &c. It is watered with store of *Rivers*,  
 as *Gariglian*, *Vomannu*, *Sibaris*, *Salinus*,  
*Pescara*, *Tromus*, *Basentus*, &c. which  
 send forth many fresh streames, which are  
 well stored with *Fish*; here are plenty of  
*Cattle*, *Fowles*, and *Graines*. It is through-  
 out replenished with fair, pleasant and  
 beautifull *Cities* and *Towns*, many of  
 which I shall speak something of, as they  
 represent themselves to our view in  
 their respective parts of which in or-  
 der.

ound are many, by  
 ade there driven by fo  
 ss, especially by the  
 ch the *English* are no  
 g them *Cloths*, *Serges*,  
*eyes*, *Red* and *White*  
*Salt-salmon*, *Tallow*,  
*rides*, *Calve-shins*, &c.  
*es*, and *Gems* of *India*,  
 Likewise the *Dutch*,  
 them with several o-  
 that this place may  
 a *Ware-house*, or *Store-*  
*house*, all which are here  
 s. The *Natural Com-*  
*modities* are not many, the  
*Wines*, *Silks*, both  
*Anchovies*, *Aniseeds*,  
 some other *Italian*

es pay no *Custom* for  
 within a year; but if  
 unfold within a year,  
 in *Custom*; but it sel-  
 place being of a quick-  
 with their value are  
 5 *Quattrins* makes a  
 a *Sold*, 30 *Solds* a  
 is a *Liver*, which is  
 is a *Fulio*, which is  
*quattrins*, or 6 *Solds* of a  
 of a *Dollar*; 6 *Livers*  
 93 and 53 *Livers* a  
 7 *Livers* is a *Duchet*.  
*Scudo*, or *Crown* of  
 d. *sterling*.

*Accounts* in *Dollars*, *Li-*  
*vers*,

Terra di  
Lavoro in  
Campania  
et Angliana

1. **TERRA DI LAVORO**, antiently *Campania*, hath on the South, the *Sea*, on the West, *Saint Peters Patrimony*, and on the North and East, the *Appennine*. *Florens* for its excellent fertility called this Country *Cereris & Bacchi certamen*, and here is seated *Naples* the Metropolitian City of this Kingdom, and one of the fairest of *EUROPE*, called by the *Italians* *Napoli la Gentile*,

City of  
Naples  
in  
Italy.

because inhabited by so many *Nobles* and *Gentlemen*. It is seated on the *Mediterranean shore*, amongst pleasant *Hills*, and fruitful *Fields*, a *City* of great antiquity, being by some said to be built by *Hercules*. It is about seven miles in compass, fortified with four strong *Castles*, to wit, *Castello Ovo*, *Castello Capodua*, *Castello Nuovo*, and *Castello Ermo*, besides a strong *Wall*, *Ditches*, *Towers*, &c. So that it is in a manner invincible, it is enriched and beautified with many *Superbe structures*, and magnificent *Churches*, *Monasteries*, *Colledges*, *Courts* and *Palaces* of *Princes* and *Nobles*, adjoining to pleasant and delightful *Gardens*. Its *Port* and *Harven* is commodious and good, where are kept store of *Galleys*, and from whence in a serene Skie may be seen the two promontories of *Minerva* and *Miseno*. This place of late hath been famous for its strange rebellion under *Masaniello* a poor *Fisherman*, a story sufficiently known to all *Hee* is an *Hospital* endowed with 60000 *Crowns* yearly, for the relief and maintenance of the sick, maimed, and impotent people, this *City* affordeth the *commodities* aforesaid, for which it receiveth from *England Lead*, *Tinn*, some *Cloths*, *Baies*, *Serges*, *Saies*, *Fustians*, *Herrings*, *Pilchards*, *Newlandfish*, also *Tobacco*, *Pepper*, and other *Spices*, *Russia Hides*, *Calveskins*, &c. Near to this *City* stands the *Hill Vesuvius*, now *Monte Grogo*, no less famous now for its excellent *Grigo Wines*, then formerly for its casting forth *smoak* and *flames* of fire from its sulphurous entrals.

How the  
Islands  
of the  
Tyber

Their *Coynes* here currant are as followeth. 6 *Cavals* makes a *Turnese*. 20 *Turneses* a *Grain*. 10 *Graines* a *Carline*. 2 *Carlines* a *Tarry*. and 5 *Tarryes* a *Duckett*, which is of equal value with 5 *sh*. sterling. They keep their *Accounts* in *Duckets*, *Tarryes*, and *Grains*. Their *Weight* is the *pound* of 12 *ounces*, which makes 11 *ounces* *English*, and after the said rate every 200 *li*. of *Naples*

Their  
Weight.

produceth 71 in 72 *li*. *English*, which in *Silke* is generally found to hold but as a *fortesaid*. The *Rottollo* is 33 *ounces*. 100 *Rottoloes* is the *Canar* of 277 *li*. which produceth 196 *li*. at 16 *ounces* per *li*. in *London*.

Their *Measure* of length is the *Palme*, and the *Cane*, and 8 *Palmes* makes the *Cane* which is accounted to be 2 *yards* *English*.

Of other *Measures* 5 *Salmos* of *Oylis* held for a *Tunn*, which is 236 *gallons* *English*. Many *Commodities* are sold by the *Salmo*, and 16 *Tomolos* is a *Salmo* which is ( ) *gallons* *English*.

The *Factors* that are here *Matriculated* *nel arte di seta odilana* (which they obtain for a small matter) save thereby the payment of *Custom* of all *dyed Stuffs*, but there is an inconveniency in it (by rendering them lyable to bear *Offices* in the *City*) besides they must have resided here eight years before *matriculation*, which makes *Forreigners* decline this privilege.

The next place of note is *Cajeta*, commodiously seated on the *Sea*, and of good strength, then *Pozzol* a fair and beautiful *City* seated on the *Sea-shore*, enjoying a commodious *Port*, also *Capua* seated on the banks of the *River Vulturnus*, a place of great antiquity, and once very beautiful, then *Nola* where *Hannibal* received an overthrow by *Marcellus*, and lastly the *Euma* once a fair and beautiful *City*, but now nothing but a heap of ruins, nigh to which is the *Lake Avernus* sufficiently famous among the *Poets*, whose unwholsome sulphurous stink so infecteth the air, that *Birds* which fly over it lose their life, and hereabouts was the *Poets* descent into *Hell*, and where the gate of *Hell* was, through which the infernal spirits when any humane creature was facitized unto them they caused to rise, and where *Aeneas* went down to *Hell* to talke with his father.

2. **CALABRIA SUPERIOR** called likewise *Magna Gracia*, because the *Grecian*. planted here many *Colonies*. It is bounded on the South, with *Calabria inferior*, on the North, with *Puglia*, and on all other parts by the *Sea*. On the South East part of this Country is *Golfo di Chilaci*, of old *sinus Scyllaticus*, and on the North East part *Golfo di Tarento*, of old *sinus Tarcentinus*. The chief places in this part are 1 *Tarentum* built by the *Lacedaemonians*, and is the birth place of *Archimedes*.

2. *CA* bath on the north on all other parts are 1 *grow* thric *Rhegium* so caule that was by the *Salernum* f *sick*, and a 4 *ABR* with *Puglia*. *Appennine*, *contians*, a *dratick*. *Agula* seat *quino*, the *Schole-divin* *mona*, the *mous* *Poet*. *Maleventum* esteem to be 5. *PUGL* on the *S* *Abruzzo*, a *sick*, it aff *lives*, *Alm* chief *Cities* with the *sea* ne, famous by *Hannibal* *Paulus* *Ann* *Romans* of *w* *Barletta* the birth pla the birth pl *Angelo*, a *ta* *fredonia*. 6. *TERR* its *Western* *Northern*, *F* Its chief pla of which *T* *anno* *1481*. that *Rome* v and not full *pulsion* of the 2 *Brundisium* is esteem'd *stendome*, a *Traffick*, af

English, which it  
to hold out as a-  
s 33; ounces, 100  
of 277 li, which  
6 ounces per li, in

length is the *Palme*,  
*Palme* makes the  
to be 2 1/2 yards

*Salmon* of *Oylis*  
is 236 gallons  
odities are sold by  
omelos is a *Salmo*  
English.

here *Matriculated*  
which they obtain  
thereby the pay-  
ed *Stuffs*; but  
cy in it (by ren-  
bear *Officers* in the  
have resided here  
riculation, which  
ecline this privi-

ote is *Cajeta*, com-  
Sea, and of good  
a fair and beauti-  
Sea-shore, enjoy-  
also *Capus* seated  
River *Vulturnus*, a  
y, and once very  
where *Hannibal* re-  
by *Marcellus*; and  
fair and beautiful  
but a heap of  
the Lake *Avernis*  
s stink so infecteth  
which fly over it  
ereabouts was the  
ll, and where the  
ugh which the in-  
humane creature  
em they caused to  
went down to *Hill*

A SUPERIOR  
*Gracia*, because  
re many Colonies.  
South, with *Cal-*  
North, with *Puglia*,  
by the Sea. On the  
is Country is *Golfo*  
*Scyllaticus*, and on  
*Isola di Taranto*, of old  
chief places in this  
wilt by the *Laceda-*  
rth place of *Arch-*

was the *Philosopher*. 2 *Cotrone*, whose  
inhabitants were noted for their activity  
in the *Olympick games*; 3 *Sybaris* built  
and peopled by the *Grecians* after the de-  
struction of *Troy*; 4 *Amycle* formerly peo-  
pled by the *Pythagoreans*; and 5 *Cofenza*  
a fair City, being the chief of these  
parts.

2. CALABRIA INFERIOR  
hath on the North *Calabria Superior*, and  
on all other parts the Sea; its chief pla-  
ces are 1 *Peste* or *Pesidonia* where *Roses*  
grow thrice a year; 2 *Regio Rhezo* or  
*Rhegium* so called from *ῥήγιον* *rumpo*, be-  
cause that here it is thought that *Sicily*  
was by the Sea broken from *Italy*; 3.  
*Salernum* famous for the study of *Phy-*  
*sick*; and 4 *Nicotera* seated on the Sea.

4. ABRUZZO, bounded on the East,  
with *Puglia*; on the South, with the  
*Appenine*; on the West, with *Marca An-*  
*conitana*; and on the North, with the *A-*  
*driatick*. It hath for its chief Cities, 1  
*Aquila* seated near the *Appenine*; 2 *A-*  
*quino*, the birth place of that famous  
*Schole-divine Thomas Aquinas*; 3 *Sul-*  
*mona*, the birth place of *Ovid* the fa-  
mous Poet. 4. *Bonventus*, once called  
*Maleventum*; and 5 *Molise*, which some  
esteem to be the chief of a County itself.

5. PUGLIA hath on the East *Otran-*  
*to*; on the South *Calabria*; on the West  
*Abruzzo*; and on the North, the *Adria-*  
*tick*; it affords plenty of *Corn*, *Oyls*, *O-*  
*lives*, *Almonds*, *Wines*, *Galls*, &c. Its  
chief Cities are, *Manfredonia*, dignified  
with the seat of an *Archbishop*; 2 *Can-*  
*one*, famous for the signal victory gained  
by *Hannibal* against the Roman *Consuls*,  
*Paulus Aemilius Tarentinus Varo*, and the  
*Romans* of whom were slain about 42700;  
3 *Barletta* a strong fortress; 4 *Fenestia*,  
the birth place of *Horace*; 5 *Arpinnum*,  
the birth place of *Tully*; and 6 *Monte St.*  
*Angelo*, a fair City, and not far from *Man-*  
*fredonia*.

6. TERRA DI OTRANTO, hath for  
its Western bounds *Puglia*, and for its  
Northern, Eastern and Southern, the Sea.  
Its chief places are 1 *Otranto*, the taking  
of which Town by *Mahomet* the Great,  
anno 1481. put all *Italy* into such a fright,  
that *Rome* was in a manner quite forsaken,  
and not fully inhabited again till the ex-  
pulsion of the *Turks* the year following;  
2 *Brundisium* boasting in its Haven, which  
is esteemed not inferior to any in *Chri-*  
*stendome*; 3 *Gallipoli*; a place of some  
Traffick, affording abundance of *Oyls* and

*Cattle*. 4 *Leccio*, 5. *Taranto*, and 6 *Brin-*  
*disi*, all places of good account.

Here are in this Kingdom 20 *Archbi-*  
*shops*, 127 *Bishops*, 13 *Princes*, 24 *Dukes*,  
25 *Marquises*, and 90 *Earles*. But let  
us proceed to the *Italian Islands*, and  
first with *Sicily*.

10 ITALIAN ISLES.

SICILY.

SICILY is the greatest of the *Isles*  
neighbouring upon *Italy*, from whence  
it is only divided by a small Channel  
running between *Mesina* and *Regio*, now  
called the *Phare of Mesina*; higher in  
this passage were the *Scylla* and *Charibdis*  
of the ancients; the first a great *Rock*; at  
the foot of which many little ones shoot  
out; the other a *Whirlpool*; which places  
were made so extremely terrible and dan-  
gerous by the *Poets*, and of which many  
fabulous things by them were reported;  
though now found neither dangerous, nor  
affrightfull, especially to the expert  
*Mariner*. This *Ile* was once called *Trina-*  
*cria* from its being triangular, and abut-  
ting three *Promontories* at each corner in-  
to the Sea, to wit *Cape de Faro*, of old  
*Pelorus* regarding *Italy*; *Cape Passaro*, of  
old *Pasimus*, regarding the *Morca*; and  
*Cape Bath*, or *Cape Coco* of old *Liliba-*  
*rum*; facing the Promontory *Mercurio* of  
*Affrica*. It is situate under the fourth  
climate, the longest day being 13 1/2 hours;  
About this *Ile* are several small ones, the  
chief of which I will onely name, viz.  
*VULCANIA*, *BASILIZO*,  
*VULCANELLO*, *LIPARA*,  
*THERMISIA*, *LISCABIAN-*  
*CA*, *ERICUSA*, *DIDIMA*,  
*TRONGILE*, *FENICUSA* and  
*STROMBOLI*.

This *Island* is termed the *Queen* of the  
*Mediterranean Isles*; not only for her great-  
ness being in compass about 700 miles;  
but for her other elaborate excellencies,  
and admirable fertility. The *Mountains*  
themselves (which are here many) even  
to the *Summits* thereof are found fruitful;  
this place yielding all things necessary for  
the use of man; it chiefly aboundeth in  
*Wines*, *Oyls*, *Sugars*, *Hony*, *Wax*, *Saf-*  
*fran*; *Salt*, *Minerals*, *Mines of Gold* and  
*Silver*; *Alom*, *Agats*, *Corall*, *Emeralds*;  
Hhh and

*Sicily in*  
*S. Strabo.*

*Sicily and*  
*Chia. Strabo.*

*Et name.*

*Et name.*

*Small Isles*  
*also Sicily*

*In Strabo.*

*Ferrius;*  
*Caesars id*

and *Silk* in great plenty, of which they make many *Fabrics*, and such abundance of all sorts of *Graines*, that it was of old called the *Granery* of the *Roman Empire*, and is now found to furnish *Malta*, the adjacent *Isles*, *Spain*, and many parts of *Italy* with her superfluities; its *fruits* are many, excellent, and in great plenty; they have most sorts of *Plants*, *Roots*, and *Medicinal Herbes*; it breedeth all sorts of *Beasts*, *Birds*, and *Fowle* in great plenty, as well those for delight and chase, as for profit: Its *Rivers* afford store of excellent *Fish*, as doth its *Sea*, where also they take up *Corrals*, *Fasperstone*, &c. in good quantities; and here are many *Baths* of different natures, which are found good to cure several infirmities in the body of Man. The chief *Hills* in this *Iste*, are *Mount Hybla*, famous for its *Bees* and *Honey*; and *Mount Atna*, now *Mount Gibello*, for its former continual sending forth flames of *Fire*, though now ceased, and for being the highest in this *Island*, whose top is exalted ten miles above its *Basis*; being a good land marke to the *Sailers* discovering it self about 150 miles.

This *Island* was first inhabited by a race of huge *Gyants*, much spoken of by *Homer*, who called them the *Levrigones*, and the *Cyclopes*, of which last was *Poliphomus* so famous for the entertainment of *Ulysses* and his fellows.

The *People* that now inhabit it, are well proportioned, of an acerte and ready wit, ingenious and of a good invention, of a voluble tongue, prone to revenge, envious, subtle, and flatterers; they are valiant and greedy of honor, and though they are seated in such a fruitful Country, yet they addict not themselves to *Traffick*, as to their *Language*, *Religion*, *habits*, &c. it is the same with *Italy*, to which it once was said to joyn.

This *Iste* (as I said) is 700 miles in circuit, which is divided into three *Valleys*, or *Provinces*, to wit *Valli de Noto*, *Valli de Mazara*, and *Valli de Demona*.

1. *VALLI DE NOTO*, is the South-east part, whose chief places are, *Syracusa*, once the Metropolis of the whole *Iste* and containing within its *Walls* (which were 20 miles in compass) 4 *Cities*, but it is now reduced to a far less circuit; The *City* as to its present state is strongly fenced about with a *Wall*, and other *Fortifications*, being a *Garrison* of *Spaniards*. Its

*buildings* are fair, and shew something of its antiquity; it hath two *Havens*, one towards the South, and the other towards the North side of the *City*, 2 *Leontium* seated Northwards of *Syracusa*, with which it had divers times struglings for priority, and liberty; and 3 *Enna* a Midland Town or *City*.

2. *VALLI DE MAZARA*, containeth all the Western part, or Corner of this *Island*; its chief places are first *Morreale*, or *Montreal*, famous for its *Arch-Bishops See*, and *Church*; 2 *Girgenti* of old *Agrigentum*, the seat of the *Tyrant Phalaris*, who afflicted *Perillus* in the brazen Bull, and 3 *Palermo* formerly *Panormus* once a Colony of the *Phunicians*, and now the chief *City* of this *Iste*, being the seat of the *Spanish Vice-Roy*; it is situate on the West Cape of the *Islands*, being beautified with magnificent *Palaces* and *Temples*, curious buildings, and fair *streets*, famous for being the birth place, and abode of so many brave men, as was *Syracusa*.

3. *VALLI DE DEMONA* is the last *Province*, possessing the North-east part of the *Island*, and boasteth of its chief Town *Messina*, seated opposite to *Rhegium* or *Regio in Naples*, a place of great strength as well by nature as art, having before it the *Sea* where they have a no less famous, beautifull, and commodious, then a strong *Haven*, and behind it are high *Hills*; the *City* is strongly *Walled*, fortified about with *Bulwarks*, and hath a *Cittadel* of great strength, being a *Garrison* of *Spaniards*; it is the *See* of an *Archbishop*, beautified with fair and stately buildings as well publick as private, and here the *Vice-Roy* hath a magnificent *Palace*, adjoining to the *Arsenal*, where their *Galleys* &c. are kept: here *Venus*, *Neptune*, *Castor* and *Pollux* had their *Temples*, from whose ruins are now erected *Christian Churches*. The *Country* and *Citizens* here live in great delight and pleasure, where is there *Play-houses* and other places of *Recreation*; besides every evening they take the air along the *Marine* (which is a vacant place between the *Wall* and the *Haven*) as our *Country* do at *Hide-Parke*, where all the pride, and beauties of the *City* may be seen, the men on Horse-back, and the women in *Coches*. This *City* is the chiefest place of *Traffick* in the whole *Islands*, being very well frequented by *Merchants* and *Strangers*. Its other places of note are *Maleso*

so or *Milady*; then ed, next ledge for chiefly for non *Laws* Town.

The *City* in *Palermo* this *Iste*, ar Their *City* is a grain *lia*, or *Sicilian* is 20 12 *Soldis*, 6 6 *Florins* is *Carlin*, all *Ducker* of which is este ling.

They ke *Taries* and stome to all upon the change.

Their *We* 100 *Rotol* which doth & this is the They have a food is weigh English.

Their *Mea* which is abo *Cane* is divide

Their *Co* which there a the general by about 1 these *Salmes* les.

*Oyl* is here weigheth 180

S A K

S A R

THE *M* seated in far from *Sicily* from which it in length 180 as circuit bei so fertile



they something  
two Havens, one  
the other towards  
2 Leontium  
Siracusa, with  
strugglings for pri-  
Enna a Midland

AZORA, con-  
part, or Corner  
et places are first  
mous for its Arch-  
orch, 2 Girgeni  
e seat of the Ty-  
Qed Perillus in the  
erms formerly Pa-  
of the Phœnicians,  
of this Isle, being  
sh Vice-Roy, it is  
ape of the Islands,  
magnificent Palaces  
buildings, and fair  
g the birth place,  
brave men, as was

DEMONA is  
felling the North-  
and boasteth of  
na, seated opposite  
Naples, a place of  
y by nature as art,  
Sea where they have  
teifull, and commo-  
aven, and behind it  
City is strongly Wal-  
with Bulwarks, and  
e strength, being a  
s, it is the See of an  
with fair and state-  
ublic as private,  
hath a magnificent  
the Arsenal, where  
kept; here Venus,  
lux had their Tem-  
es are now erected  
The Gentry and Cit-  
delight and plea-  
ay-houses and other  
besides every e-  
e air along the  
eant place between  
en) as our Gentry  
ere all the pride, and  
ay be seen, the men  
e women in Cor-  
e chiefest place of  
Islands, being very  
erchans and Straw-  
of note are Mala-  
fo

fo or Milazzo on the North Promonto-  
ry; then Erix where Venus was worship-  
ed, next Catania, where there is a  
ledge for the studying the Sciences, but  
chiefly for the study of the Civil and Ca-  
non Laws; and lastly Nicosia a Mid-land  
Town.

The Coynes, Weight, and Measures used  
in Palermo, Messina, as generally through  
this Isle, are as followeth, viz.

Their Coynes are several, viz. 6 Pich-  
olis is a grain, which is 7; Deniers of Sicily,  
or Sicile. 8 Picholis is a Ponzo, 1  
Tarie is 20 grains which is accounted for  
12 Soldi, 6 Deniers, 1 Tarie is 2 Carlins.  
6 Florins is 3 Tarie, and 12 Florins is a  
Carlin. also 13 Tarie is valued worth  
a Ducket of Gold, 30 Tarie is an ounce  
which is esteemed worth 12 sh. 6 d. ster-  
ling.

They keep their Accounts by ounces,  
Tarie and grains. They have a Cu-  
stome to allow 1 per cent. for bad money,  
upon the Payment of Bills of Ex-  
change.

Their Weight is the Rotolo of 30 ounces,  
100 Rotolo making the Cantar of 250 li.  
which doth make at London 176 or 177 li.  
This is the common Weight of the Island.  
They have a greater Cantar, by which all  
food is weighed, which maketh 184 li.  
English.

Their Measure of length is the Cane;  
which is about 2 yards English, and this  
Cane is divided into 8 Palmes.

Their Corn Measure is the Salme, of  
which there are two, the grass Salme, and  
the general Salme which is the smallest  
by about 17 li. per cent. And both  
these Salmes are divided into 16 Tonne-  
lets.

Oyl is here sold by the Cantaro, which  
weigheth 180 li. English.

SARDINIA

OR

SARDAGNE. 50

THE Island of SARDINIA is  
seated in the Mediterranean sea, not  
far from Sicily, and Southwards of Corsica,  
from which it is but 7 miles distant; it is  
in length 180 miles, and 90 in breadth,  
as circuit being about 560 miles; it is  
not so fertile as Sicily, yet it abounds in

Corn and Cattle, but is deficient in Oyl, and  
other good commodities, it is now subject  
to the Spaniards; is divided into two parts,  
viz. Cape Lugadori, and Cape Cagliari.  
Its chief places are 1 Cagliari, seated op-  
posite to Affrick, having a commodious  
Haven, and well frequented by Merchants;  
the City is adorned with goodly build-  
ings, fair Temples, and magnificent  
Turrets, being the seat of the Spanish  
Vice-Roy, as also the See of an Arch-  
Bishop: 2 Ufa, likewise the See of an Arch-  
Bishop. 3 Oristagni, and 4 Sassari both  
places of good account.

Coyne here Currant; and their Ac-  
counts kept are the same with those of  
Valencia in Spain; besides which they have  
Copper-money, to which the other money  
is reduced.

10 Their Weight is the pound of 12 ounces,  
100 whereof maketh their Quintal,  
which produceth about 88 or 89 li. En-  
glish.

Their Measures are the Fave used for  
Linnen and Woollen, which makes 3 parts  
of a yard English; by which Account 100  
Faves maketh about 83 or 84 yards En-  
glish. And the Brace used for Silks &c.  
of which 100 doth make at London about  
30 49 Ells.

Its people are of a meane stature, are ve-  
ry great hunters, great paines-takers, no  
great Lovers of the Spaniards, are of an  
ignorant and rude behaviour, not much  
addicted to learning, and in matters of  
Religion not over strict.

CORSICA.

THE Island of CORSICA seated  
in the Ligurian sea, opposite to Ge-  
nes or Genoa, is about 325 miles in com-  
pass, being 120 in length, and 70 in  
breadth, the soile by reason of the Moun-  
taines is not very fertile in grain, but a-  
boundeth in excellent Wines; it yieldeth  
likewise Oyls, Figs, Raysons, Honey, Wax,  
Alom, Box-wood, and Iron Mines; its  
Dogs and Horses are esteemed excellent.  
The chief places in this Island are, Bastia  
seated on the North-east part enjoy-  
ing a commodious Haven, and strong  
Garison, dignified with the residence of  
the Genesee Governour under whose com-  
mand the Island is; 2 Mariana, 3 Calvi,  
4 Adiazzo, 5 Porto-Vecchio, and 6 Boni-  
facio.

This

This *Iste* as also *Sardians* breeds a beast called *Musoli* not found elsewhere; it is horned like a *Goate*, and skinned like a *Stagge*, and the skins being carried to *Cordova*, and dressed, makes the true *Cordovants*.

The *People* inhabiting in this *Island*, are for the most part poor, head-strong, churlish, and not addicted to literature; they speak a kind of *Italian*, but much adulterated.

Cities: *Porto*,  
*Mel*, *Affers*,  
*red*.

Besides this *Island* there are abundance of others, though of no great account, and far lesser, as the *VULCANIAN* *Isles* lying on the coast of *Sicily*, being 11 in number, which I have already glanced upon; the chief of which is *LIPARAI*, from whence the rest often take their names, being about 10 miles in circuit, then *STROMBOLI* among these always burnes, and *VULCANIA* sends forth a constant smoak.

Isles of  
Naples.

The *Isles* of *NAPLES* are 18 in number, the chief of which are *ISCHIA*, *CAPREÆ* the retirement of *Tiberius* and *ÆNARIA*.

The chief of the *LIGURIAN* *Isles* is *ELBA*, famous for its two Ports, *Porto Ferraro*, and *Porto Longone*. Its chief places being *Cosmopolis*, built by *Cosmo di Medicus*, next *Gallimaria*, then *Giglio*, and *Monte Christo* which is but a rock.

No of Isls.

Part of Italy  
only is  
divided  
by the  
Pope, King  
of Spain,  
Venetians,  
and other  
Dukes.

These are the principal parts, and *Islands* of *Italy*, the *Catholic* King at present possesses, the *Kingdome* of *Naples*, the *Isles* and *Kingdoms* of *Sicily* and *Sardinia*, and the *Estates* of *Milaine* entirely; and among the little *Estates* which he holds in several parts of *Italy*, he hath only the County of *Fual* on the coasts of *Genoa*, the Prince of *Manaco*, on the same coast having put himself under the *French* protection, and *Pontremoli* on the other side of the *Rimera* of *Genoa*, being not long since sold to the great Duke of *Tuscany*, he holds likewise the *Estates* *delli* *Prasidij* on the Coast of *Tuscany*, *Piombino* on the same coast, and *Porto Longone* in the *Isle* of *Elba* are under his protection.

What the *Catholic* King possesses of *Italy*, makes no less then the one half of the whole, but whatever estate it be, it holds either of the *Papacy* or the *Empire*, the rest of *Italy* belongs to the *Holy* *seat*, or *Church*, of which the *Pope* is chief: To the *Venetians* who have the greatest part of the lower *Lombardy*, then to the Prince of *Piedmont* who is likewise Duke of *Savoy*; to the Duke

*Tuscany*, who holds the *Estates* of *Florence*, *Sanses*, and *Pisany*, to the Republick *Genes* or *Genoa* who hold the *Rimera* of *Genoa*, and the *Isle* of *Corsica* to the Duke of *Mantona*, to whom belong the *Dutchies* of *Montona* and *Menferray*, to the Duke of *Parma* who possesses the *Dutchies* of *Parma* and *Placenza*; to the Duke of *Modena* who possesses the *Duke* *domes* of *Modena* and *Regio*, and to the *Bishop* of *Trent*, who is Prince and Lord of his *Bishoprick*.

There are yet in *Lombardy* many little *Estates*, as of *Mirandola*, *Guaftella*, *Sabionetta*, &c. about *Mantona*, of *Pallaviano*, and *Landa*, &c. among the *Estates* of *Parma* and *Placenza*, of *Manaco* on the Coast of *Genoa*, of *Masseran* in *Piedmont*. The Count of *Pitiglian*, and the Marquis of *Malispine* in *Tuscany*, all which Princes though holding from or under the protection of others, have *Soveraign* rights.

*Italy* with its *Isles* extends it self from about the 36 degree of *latitude*, unto the 46, which are 250 leagues from South to North, and from the 36 degree of *longitude* to near the 48 which are as much or little more from West to East, but its form scarce fills the third part of what is contained in these degrees.

The whole *Countrey* is very good, the *graines*, *wines*, *fruits*, &c. excellent; the *Cities* well built, the *inhabitants* active, ingenious, and judicious, as may appear by the establishment of the *Empire* they once had, they transport into other *Countreys*, *wines*, *eyles*, *silks*, *rice*, *gold-wire*, *sustians*, *glafes*, *armour*, *allome*, *minerals*, *salt*, *honey*, *Wax*, &c.

In *Italy* I make little account of other *Rivers*, then that of the *Arno*, *Tyber*, and *Po*; the two first descend from the *Appenine*, the last from the *Alpes*. The *Arno* waters *Florence* and *Pisa* in *Tuscany*. The *Tyber* hath its Spring in *Tuscany*, and almost all its course in the *Estates* of the *Church*, where it waters *Rome*; but the *Po* receives the tribute of such abundance of *Rivers* falling from the *Alpes* and the *Appenine*, that though its course be but short, yet it becomes one of the fairest and largest *Rivers* of *Europe*; it traverses all the length of the higher and lower *Lombardy*, washes a great many beautiful *Cities*, as *Turine*, *Gafal*, *Placenza*, *Cremons*, and above and below *Ferrara* divides it self into many branches, that it may with more ease carry its great burthen of waters

into

he Estates of  
to the Re-  
no hold the Ri-  
le of *Corfica* to  
whom belong  
and *Menferrat*;  
who poffeffes the  
*Placenza* to the  
ffeffes the Duke-  
*egio*, and to the  
Prince and Lord

ardy many little  
*Guaftella*, *Sa-*  
*tiona*, of *Pallavi-*  
among the Estates  
of *Manaco* on the  
*eran* in *Piedmont*.  
and the Marquis  
all which Princes  
under the pro-  
have Sovereigne

ends it felf from a  
*atitude*, unto the  
ues from South to  
36 degree of *longi-*  
ch are as much or  
to East; but its  
rd part of what is  
es.

is very good, the  
rc. excellent; the  
*inhabitants* active,  
s, as may appear  
f the *Empire* they  
it into other Coun-  
s, *rice*, *gold-wire*,  
*allome*, *minerals*,

account of other  
*Arno*, *Tyber*, and  
d from the *App-*  
*Alpes*. The *Ar-*  
*Pifa* in *Tuscany*,  
ng in *Tuscany*, and  
the Estates of the  
*Rome*; but the  
f such abundance  
the *Alpes* and the  
its course he bur  
one of the fairest  
*urope*; it traverses  
ner and lower *Lom-*  
y beautiful Cities,  
*renzia*, *Cremona*,  
*Ferrara* divides it  
that it may with  
burthen of waters  
into



A MAPP of  
Designed by Mon<sup>r</sup> Sanfon



THE ESTATES of the TUSH EM  
Geographer to the French King Rende  
Richard Blome By the Kings Espectmand,



of the **TURKISH EMPIRE** in ASIA, and **EUROPE**  
 French King Rendered into English, and Illustrated with Figures By  
 Kings Especkmand, Printed for Richard Blome. Anno 1689.



into the  
nice,  
And f

E

**T**He  
the  
**M A N S**  
**S I G N A**  
the **G R A**  
**R O P E**  
**A F F R**  
Asia, an  
this is no  
**G r a n d S**  
and hath  
which be  
from the  
45th, an  
are 250,  
the 40th  
56, whic  
the form  
angle, w  
of that  
between  
titude ab

This  
which w  
may be  
ons, v  
**C L A**  
elavonia  
from G  
bounde  
on the  
of old  
**E s l a v**  
especia  
of 3 t  
the P  
tis, of  
**signia**  
Kungd  
divided  
**Tranly**  
**Molda**  
are wh  
other  
reach  
way i  
vancin

# TURKEY in EUROPE.

33

into the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulfe of *Venice*.

And so much for *Italy*.

## TURKEY IN EUROPE.

**T**HE ESTATE or EMPIRE of the *SULTAN*, of the *OTTOMANS*, whom we call the *GRAND SIGNIOUR*, and is vulgarly called the *GREAT TURKE*, is part in *EUROPE*; part in *ASIA*, and part in *AFFRICA*: the greatest part is in *Asia*, and the least in *Europe*; and yet this is not the least considerable, since the *Grand Signiour* makes here his residence, and hath from hence his best *Forces*. That which he holds in *Europe* extends it self from the 35th *Degree of Latitude* to the 45th, and sometimes neer the 47th, which are 250, or 300 *French Leagues*; and from the 40th of *Longitude*, unto or beyond the 56, which are likewise 300 *Leagues*. But the form of this *Region* approaches a *Triangle*, whose body fills not the *Moyety* of that surface, which would be taken up between the *Degrees of Longitude* and *Latitude* above mentioned.

This part of the *Estare* of the *Turkey*, which we call *TURKEY* in *EUROPE*, may be divided into two principal *Regions*; viz. *SCLAVONIA*, or *ESCLAVONIA*, and *GREECE*. *Efclavonia* which shall be along the *Danube*, from *Germany* unto the *Black Sea*; and is bounded on one side with the *Danube*; and on the other with the *Mountain Marinai*, of old *Scardus*. And under the name of *Efclavonia* may be understood *Hungaria*, especially so much as the *Turk* is Master of; the particular *Efclavonia*, with the *Province* of *Croacia* and *Dalmatia*, of which parts the *Turke* or *Grand Signiour* yet holds but one part; then the *Kingdom* of *DACIA*, which may be divided into the *Provinces* or parts of *Transylvania*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*, *Moldavia*, *Bessarabia*, and *Valaquia*, which are wholly possessed by the *Turks*. The other *Region* which I call *Greece*, shall reach from the *Mountain Marinai*, a great way into the *Mediterranean sea*, and advancing towards the *South*; And this part

shall contain the *Provinces* or parts of *Romania* or *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, *Albania*, *Thessalie*, *Epire* or *Epirus*, *Achaja*, *Etolia*, and *Peloponnesus*, or the *Morca*. And of these in order.

## HUNGARIA.

**T**HE *Kingdome* of *HUNGARIA* taken entirely, is bounded on the East with *Transylvania*, and *Walachia*; on the South with *Sclavonia*; on the West with *Austria*; and on the North with *Poland*. It is in part possessed by the *Turkes*, and in part by the *Christians*; it was antiently called *Pannonia inferior*, *Pannonia* from the *Pannones* its inhabitants; and inferior to distinguish it from *Austria*, which was called *Pannonia superior*: and now *Hungaria* from the *Hunni* and *Auaries* who here dwelt.

The *Soile* of this *Kingdome* is everywhere wonderfully fruitful, yielding *Corn* thrice a year, and feeding such abundance of *Cattle*, that this *Country* formerly sent into *Germany*, *Sclavonia*, and other adjacent parts about 80 or 100000 *Oxen* yearly. They have *Deere*, *Pullaine*, *Pheasants*, *Partridges*, and all sorts of *Fowle* in such plenty, that they are free for any that will take them, a privilege which in other places is prohibited, being allowed as game for the *Gentry*; and their *Rivers* are found to afford good *Fish*; It also aboundeth in several good *Commodities*, as *Hides*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Copper*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Fish*, &c.

The *People* are of a rude behaviour, not addicting themselves to literature, nor *Mechanical Trade*; they use the *Scythian language*, they are well proportionate, strong of body, and very valiant, hating the name of a *Coward*: the *Females* are denied the *Estates* of their parents, neither have they any thing in marriage, save a new *Coate*, or the like trifle; and untill Men or Women are married, they are not allowed the use of *Beds* to lye on.

This *Kingdom* now stands divided between the *Grand Signiour*, and the *Hungarians*. The *Turkes* have here 4 *Beglerbies*, to wit of *Buda*, of *Canisa*, of *Agri-ca*, and of *Temiswar*, the chief *Cities* which they possess are *Buda* seated on the *Danube*, once the *Metropolis* of the *Kingdom*, and *Royal Seat* of the *Kings* of *Hungaria*. It was taken by *Solyman* in *Anno* 1536. Next

Gyula a strong Town on the confines of *Transylvania*, which was betrayed by the Governor to *Solyman*, in hopes of a great reward, who was as ill rewarded for his pains; for *Selimus* Successor to *Solyman*, for his Treachery caused him to be put in a Barrel stuck full of nailes, in which he was rouled until he miserably ended his life. Then *Alba Regalis* which by the *Germans* is called *Wisenburg*, taken by the *Turks* in 1543. also *Quinque Ecclesia* taken in the same year with *Alba Regalis*. And these are strong places, and of good account with them.

Cl. of  
Transilva  
H. no. 32  
table 1m  
page 119

The chief places in the *Emperors* part, or *Hungarians* possessions, are *Presburg* seated on the edge of *Austria*; and since the *Turks* became masters of *Buda*, this hath been the Metropolitan place of *Hungaria*; next *Strigonium*, or *Gran*, once taken by the *Turks*, but again regained, also *Zegib* taken by *Solyman* the magnificent in *Anno* 1566. who there ended his daies, then *Newhausel* which hath several times withstood the fury of the *Turks*, but in *Anno* 1663. the *Turk* through his ambition and covetousness to enlarge his Dominions, and to make himself master of all *Europe*, first thought it convenient to gaine all *Hungaria*, and so *Germany*,<sup>30</sup> and the other *European* Kingdoms; and to that end, sent into *Hungaria* such a powerful Army, that he soon gained several places in this Kingdom, and at last this *Newhausel*, who for a long time bravely defended themselves; but his power was so great, that they were forced to yeild, still gaining more and more, which the *Christi-an Princes* being sensible of, (and fearing that if he were not stoppt in his Career, he might in time be a troublesome guest unto them) resolved to joyn with, and helpe the *Emperour* in so necessary a Warr: and to that end the *French* assisted him with about 14 or 15000 Men, the *Venetians* with *Ammunition* and *Money*, and some *Princes* with the one, and some with the other, which being united together, put the *Emperour* not only in a posture of defence, but able to assault the *Enemy*, so that in 1664. in the moneth of *August* they gave them a skirmage, where the *Christians* were very victorious; and after in a pitch battaile by the River *Raab*, which lasted from nine in the morning, till four in the afternoon, (in which time many brave and stout men fell on both sides) they were also very victorious, and the *Turks* loss being far greater then the *Christians*, there be-

ing said to fall above 6000 of his best *Fanifaries* & *Spahis*, with many of his principal *Officers*; as *Ismael Bassa*, *Cuirits Mahomet Bassa*, the *Albanian Agha*, the *Grand Viziers*, *Deputy*, with his chief *Steward*, and about forty more of great note, where the *Christians* took a great many *Standards*, and much *booty*, putting them to the rout, and pursuing them very victoriously, the *Enemy* being in great disorder, and hastning to take shelter at *Buda*, to save themselves from them, till a fresh supply is sent them; for *Newhausel* they think not secure enough; and in this pursuit abundance deserted their colours; so that if the *Christians* are diligent, they may with no great difficulty regain all that the *Turkes* are Masters of in *Christendome*. The other Towns in the *Hungarians* possession were, (if not are) *Komara* in the Isle *Schut*, then *Baus*, *Novigrad*, *Viczegrad*, *Papa*, *Owar*, *Sarwar*, and *Owar*.

The chief order of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, is that of the *Dragon*, instituted by *Sigismund*, King of *Hungaria*, and *Emperour*.

And thus much for *Hungaria*.

## ESCLAVONIA.

**E**SCLA VONIA hath for its Eastern bounds the River *Drinus*, and a line drawn thence to the Sea; for its Southern bounds the *Adriatique Sea*; for its Western, part of *Italy*; and for its Northern, *Hungaria*. The whole length of *Esclavonia* is about 480 miles, and its breadth about 120, and is situate under the sixth and seventh *Climates*, so that the longest day is 15; hours. This Country is divided into the Provinces of *Croacia*, *Dalmatia*, and the particular *Esclavonia*, and are partly possessed by the *Venetians*, and partly by the *Turks*.

The Country is observed to be more fit for grazing and feeding of *Cattle*, then for *Tillage*; for the *Sheep* and other *Cattle* bring forth young twice a year, and their *Sheep* are shorn four times in a year, likewise their chief *Commodities* are *Horses* for service, *Cattle*, as *Oxen*, and *Sheep*, which yeilds them abundance of *Hides*, *Tallow*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, and *Wool* of which they make *Cloth*. Here is also some *Mines* of *Gold* and *Silver*, which are in the *Turks* possession.

In *Esclavonia* *Turks* possessed strength; the *Venetians* and good City.

The *Provinc* manner whol the *Turks* onl of *Wibitz*, the *Venetian* on the *Savus* the *Savus*. or *Sissaken*, *Turkes* in *Ar* City.

The *Provinc* for its Eastern Southern, the *ein*, *Croatia* *Savus*. Th between the *Ve* part, and t possessed by *lato* a *Marin* seated in a n South side of ward of the an open *Port* twelve *Gallie* but unsecure the *Wall* tow great remain his *Palace*:

*Venetians* as successively between this *chandice* as a from thence I shall note is *triss* seated *Gulffe*, which ous *scitatio* whole *Adria* *Venetians* (yet,) keep manned. *Temple* of *S* buile by a co in a great a vow that *Consecrate* and being s they perform *benico* seated *Territories* called *Epid* sick sea, a *Riches*, b self.

# TURKEY in EUROPE.

In *Esclavonia* the chief place which the *Turks* possesseth, is *Posega*, a place of good strength; then *Burra*. And the chief of the *Venetians* part is *Copranitz*, a fair, strong and good City.

The Province of *CROACIA* is in a manner wholly possessed by the *Venetians*, the *Turks* only possessing the strong Town of *Wibitz*. The chief places possessed by the *Venetians*, are, 1. *Gardiskia* seated on the *Savus*. 2. *Novigrad* also seated on the *Savus*. 3. *Bruman*, and lastly *Sisseg* or *Sissaken*, famous for its resisting the *Turkes* in Anno 1592. a faire and strong City.

The Province of *DALMATIA* hath for its Eastern bounds, the *Drinus*; for its Southern, the *Adriatick sea*; for its Western, *Croatia*; and for its Northern the *Savus*. This Country is now divided between the *Venetians*, who hold the greatest part, and the *Turkes*. Its chief places possessed by the *Venetians*, are, 1. *Spalato* a Maritime Town on the *Adriatick*, seated in a most pleasant Valley, on the South side of great *Mountains*; Southward of the Town is the *Sea* which makes an open Port capable to receive ten or twelve *Gallies*; without which, is a large but unsecure Bay for great *Ships*; and in the Wall towards the *Sea*, is to be seen a great remainder of a *Gallery*, in *Dicletian* his Palace: This Town is kept by the *Venetians* as their only *Emporium*, plyed successively with two *Gallies*, which carry these places and *Venice*, such *Merchandize* as are transported into *Turkey*, or from thence brought in: The Second place I shall note is the City of *Zara*, a strong *Fortress* seated on the *Adriaticke* within the *Gulfe*, which by reason of its commodious situation, is most apt to command the whole *Adriaticke*, by reason of which the *Venetians* (though in the time of Peace, yet,) keep it strongly fortified and well manned. In this City is the *Church* or *Temple* of *St. John di Malvata*, which was built by a company of *Seamen*, who being in a great and dangerous *Tempest*, made a vow that if they escaped, they would consecrate a *Temple* to the said *St. John*; and being saved, they landed here, where they performed their *Vowes*. Third, *Sebenico* seated on the *Sea-shore*, having large Territories. Fourth *Rhagusa*, formerly called *Epidaurum*, seatuate on the *Adriatick sea*, a City of great *Traffique* and *Riches*, being a *Common-wealth* of it self.

The *Commodities* found in *Ragusa*, are, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Mines* of *Salt* and *Silver*, *Iron*, *Wines*, *Brimstone*, *Salt*, also, *Cattle*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Hides*, *Tallow*, *Warlike-horses*, &c.

Commodities and Trade of Ragusa.

*Coyns* here & throughout these parts, are generally such as pass currant throughout *Turkey*, and the *State* of *Venice* their *Neighbours* and *Commanders*, and their own being correspondent therewith, and accounted by *Grosses*, whereof six makes a *Liver*, 51 1/2; a *Hungar*, 38 a *Rial* of 1/2, 40 a *Duquet* of *Naples*, 62 a *Chequin* of *Venice*, 40 a *Rix-Dollar*; and 59 *Grosses* is 2 *Gassets*, and 1 *Gasset* is 2 *Soldes*.

Their Coyns

Their *Weight* is the *li*. and the 100 *li*. and 130 *li*. their *Quintall*, which makes 105 *li*. 10 ounces *English*, and 100 *li*. *Venice* or *Zant*.

Their Weights

Their *Measure* is the *Brace*, which for *Cloth* is 26 1/2 *Inches English*. And the 100 *Braces* of *Venice*, doth make here 124 of *Cloth*, and 116 *Braces* of *Silk*.

Their Measures

Their *Measure* for *Corne* and *Salt* is a *Stare*, of which 19; and little more is 60 *Killoes* of *Constantinople*, and 6 *Chapells* makes a *Stare*.

5 *Nova*, 6 *Trav*, 7 *Cliffa*, and 8 *Almissa*, all seated on the *Sea-shore*. And besides these places the *Venetians* have the possession of several small *Isles* on this *Coast*, and from which they are not far distant; as, 1. *LESINA*, 2. *LISSA*, 3. *CURZOLO*, and 4. *ALISTA*, whose chief places take their names from its *Isle*.

And the chief places in the *Grand Signiours* possession, are, 1. *Mareza* seated on the *Sea*; 2. *Mofar* an Inland Town towards *Bosnia*; 3. *Stagne*, and 4. *Sabien-cello* both *Maritime Towns*, and nigh unto which is the *Isle* of *MELEDA*, likewise belonging to the *Turks*.

Places in the Province possessed by the Turks

## DACIA.

THE Kingdom of *DACIA* is bounded on the East, with the *Euxine seas* on the South, with *Hemus*, which separates it from *Greece*; on the West, with *Hungaria*; and on the North, with the *Carpathian Mountains*, &c.

Kingdom of Dacia bounded

The Country throughout is very fertile, affording for *Merchandize*, *Oxen*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Tallow*, *Hides*, *Honey*, *Wax*, and excellent *Warlike-horses*, whose manes are said to hang down to their feet. Their

is Fertile and Commodities

Fruit

of his best Fav-  
our of his principal  
Gairits Mahomet  
e Grand Viziers  
ard, and about  
where the *Chri-*  
*Standards*, and  
to the rout, and  
toriously, the  
der, and hast-  
to save them-  
a fresh supply  
sel they think  
his pursuit a-  
blous; so that  
nt, they may  
in all that the  
Christendome,  
ngarians pos-  
Komara in the  
vigrad, *Vicze-*  
and *Omar*.  
ghood in this  
Dragon, insti-  
of *Hungaria*,

## NIA.

th for its East-  
*Drinus*, and a  
; for its Sou-  
e Sea; for its  
d for its Nor-  
ole length of  
hiles, and its  
ituate under  
so that the  
his Country  
s of *Croacia*,  
r *Esclavonia*,  
e *Venetians*,

to be more  
g of *Cattle*,  
p and other  
: a year, and  
nes in a year,  
tius are *Hor-*  
s, and *Sheep*,  
e of *Hides*,  
ool of which  
some *Mines*  
n the *Turks*

Fruits are good, and in great plenty, and the Earth is enriched with rich Mines of several Metals. It is situate in the Northern temperate Zone, between the 7th and 10th Climates, which makes the longest day to be 17 hours.

The People are well made, they are headstrong, resolute in their opinions, of no ready wit, they use the Sclavonian language, they are Christians, and follow the Greeke Church.

This Kingdom at present is divided into the Provinces of 1. Transylvania, 2. Bosnia, 3. Servia, 4. Bulgaria, 5. Moldavia, 6. Bessarabia, and 7. Walachia, all which are subject to the Great Turk, of which are a word or two in order.

The Province of TRANSYLVANIA, is bounded on the East, with Moldavia, on the South, with Valachia, on the West, with Hungaria, and on the North, with the Carpathian hills.

Its chief places are, 1. Waradin far engaged towards the West, and is a Frontier Town to Hungaria, and of some account and strength. 2. Weissenburg seated more Southwards, and of less account both for strength and grandure. 3. Hermannstadt more towards Moldavia, 4. Bistritz, 5. Hahyad, and 6. Karfel.

The Province of BOSNIA is bounded on the East, with Servia, on the South, with Dalmatia, on the West, with Croacia, and on the North, with the River Sava, which parts it from Esclavonia. Its chief places are, 1. Sarath, the Metropolis of Bosnia, seated in a fruitful Valley, which on the North and South sides are immured with ridges of pleasant Hills, of an easie ascent, this City is said to contain about 80 Meschetoer, and about 20000 Houses, which for the most part are built meanly. 2. Bagnialuch formerly Cazachum, once the residence of the Bosnian Kings, and 3. Jaycea the usuall Sepulcher of those Kings. This Country was made a Turkish Province by Mahomet the great, Anno 1464.

The Province of SERVIA is bounded on the East, with Bulgaria, on the South, with Macedonia, and Albania, on the West, with Dalmatia, and Bosnia, and on the North, with Hungaria. The chief Cities are, 1. Stoneborough, once the seat of its Despot. 2. Belgrade once the Bulmarke of Christendom, valiantly resisting the power of Amurath the 6th, and Mahomet the great, but yielding to Soliman, Anno 1520, when this whole Country

became a Turkish Province, this City is seated almost at the meeting of the Rivers of Danubius, Tissa, Sava, and Dravus, and 3. Samandria.

The Province of BULGARIA hath on the East, the Euxine seas, on the South, Thrace, on the West, Servia, and on the North, the Danubius, which parts it from Valachia. Its chief places or Cities are Sofia or Sophia, the seat of the Beglerbeg of Greece, under whom are 22 Sangiacs, It is seated (as Sir Henry Blunt noteth in his Voyage to the Levant) almost in the midst of a long and fruitful Valley, on the Southside about three miles distant from the City, is a high Mountain, on which there lieth snow all the year long, this City (he saith) is beautified with many fair Hanes and Bathes, the chief of which hath a hot Fountain. Its Colledge is magnificent, and its Meschetoer are many and beautiful, especially that in the midst of the City which is also the largest, and here the dores of the Houses of the Christians and Jews are not above three foom high, so made on purpose to keep out the Turkish horkes, who would else in their Travel make them leave instead of stables, by which the said Author observeth the slavery they are under to the Turkes. 2. Oesca, 3. Novi, 4. Durostoro, and 5. Destor, all which are seated on the Danube. 6. Proslavia, seated at the mouth of one of the branches of the Danube, at vire fall into the Euxine sea, 7. Calara, and 8. Varna, both seated on the Euxine or Black sea. This Country was made a Turkish Province by Bajazet the first, Anno 1396.

The Province of MOLDAVIA is seated on the West, and South of Transylvania and Valachia, and extendeth it self to the Euxine sea. Its chief places are, 1. Zucumib, or Occaconia, once the seat of the Hoovods, 2. Sotzowa, and 3. Lacy, both good Cities. This Country was first made a Turkish Province by Mahomet the great, Anno 1574.

To this Province of MOLDAVIA doth belong the small Country of Bessarabia, which lieth between Podolia on the North, and Bulgaria on the South, and is commodiously seated on the Black-sea. Its chief places are Kherman, or Monycastro, the seat of a Turkish Sargiac, seated on the River Thrac, not far from its influx into the Sea, and 2. Kilia also seated on the Euxine sea. This Country became tributary to the Turkes in Anno 1485.

The

The last LAQUIA, by the R is very fertile ry for the life Castle, Fruit ver, and Tre being esteem Dacia. Its c the Vajnods and thirdly B conquered, by Mahomet the rest of D

THE rest may be name of Gre vided into MANIA THRACE whose divers names, as th and towards towards the S Migdonia, on in the midf nia towards t rigne Sea, on THESSALY EPIRUS no A, and E DIA, and the MORE let us say fom before we de

GREEC of Arts and S bounds, the Propontis, ar for its South Western the and for its N mus. It is G perate Zone mates, the lo The Soil wit fruitful, and the Husband tilling it, bu master of all on their Esta pleaseth, m vating it, c with what is found several



The last Province in *Dacia*, is *V ALAQUIA*, being divided from *Bulgaria* by the River *Danube*. The Country is very fertile, affording all things necessary for the life and use of *Man*, as *Graines*, *Cattle*, *Fruites*, *Wine*, *Mines* of gold, *Silver*, and *Iron*, *Salt-Pits*, *Brimstone*, &c. being esteem'd the richest Province in all *Dacia*. Its chief places are first *Targovisko*, the *Vajudo* seat; secondly, *Domboviza*; 10 and thirdly *Brailonum*. This Country was conquered; and made a Turkish Province by *Mahomet* the great, about the time when the rest of *Dacia* was subdued.

G R E E C E.

THE rest of *Turkey* in *EUROPE*, may be comprehended under the name of *Greece* in general, which is divided into several parts, to wit, *ROMANIA* which answers to the ancient *THRACE*; *MACE DONIA* whose divers parts have received divers names, as that of *Famboli*, near *Thrace* and towards the North; of *Camelostaria* towards the South, and near *Thessaly*; then *Migdonia*, or particular *Macedonia*, lying in the midst of the Province; then *Albania* towards the West, and on the *Adriatique Sea*, or *Gulfe of Venice*. *THESSALIE* which is now called *Fanna*; *EPHRSUS* now *CANINA*; *ACHAIA*, and *ETOLIA*, now *LIVADIA*; and *PELOPONESUS* now the *MOREA*, of which in order, but first let us say something in general of *Greece*, before we descend to its parts.

*GREECE*, accounted the mother 40 of Arts and Sciences, hath for its Eastern bounds, the *Egean Sea*, the *Hellespont*, *Propontis*, and the *Thracian Bosphorus*; for its Southern, the *Fonian Sea*; for its Western the *Adriatique Sea* and *Italy*; and for its Northern, the *Mountainous Helms*. It is situate in the *Northerne temperate Zone*, under the fifth and sixth *Climates*, the longest day being fifteen hours. The Soil without doubt is very rich, and 50 fruitfull, and would be very profitable to the *Husbandman*, if paines were taken in tilling it; but by reason the *Great Turke* is master of all their Country, who seizing on their Estates when, and as oft as he pleaseth, makes them careless in cultivating it, onely contenting themselves with what is only necessary; yet here are found several good *Commodities*, which are

transported to other places, as *Wines*; *Oyls*, *Silks*, raw and wrought into several *Manufactures*, as *Pelvetts*, *Damasks*, &c. also *Grograines*, *Brimstone*, *Copper*, *Viriol*, *Cottons*, *Sopes*, *Carpets*, *Cute*, *Cur-rants*, *Cominsced*, *Anniseeds*, &c. The Country generally is well watered with rivers, many of which are Navigable & well furnished with *Fish*, of which more anon.

The *Grecians* though now a scattered people, since the *Turks* became Masters of their Country, yet still inhabit there, where they retain their name, Religion, and Language, as indeed they do in all other places where they live; they were once a Nation so excellent that their precepts and examples do yet remain, as approved *Canons* to direct the mind to virtue; they were lovers of freedom, every way noble; in matters of *Government* famous, in *Arms* glorious, in *Arts* admirable, and to whom the rest of the world were held *Barbarians*: but now since they are under the *Turks* yoke, their *Spirits* are so low, that their *knowledge* is turned into *ignorance*, and their *liberty* into contented *slavery*; their *virtues* into *vices*, and their industry in *Arts* into *idleness*, yet some of them are more ingenious and industrious than others. They are much addicted to *drink* and *dancing*, so that they had the name of merry *Greeks*; but chiefly in *Drink*, to which they are besotted. Their primitive *Language* needs not my commendations, being sufficiently known through all *Christendome*, for its lofty sound, elegancy, and significant expressions; a *Language* excellent for *Philosophy* and the liberal *Arts*, but more excellent for so great a part of the means of our *salvation* delivered therein; but now the elegancy of their *Language* is lost, the former being called *Scholastick Greek*.

The people are of a good proportion, and of a swarthy complexion, their *Women* very well-favoured, brown, and excessively amorous. In matters of *habit*, they differ little from those among whom they live.

The *Christian Faith* was here established by *Timothy*, to whom *St. Paul* wrote two *Epistles*, the *Fathers* which this *Church* most adhereth unto, are *Chrysofome*, *Basil*, and the two *Gregories*; and the *Church* is governed by four *Patriarks*, one of *Constantinople*, another of *Alexandria*, the third of *Jersusalem*, and the fourth of *Antioch*, he of *Constantinople* hath under his jurisdiction all *Peloponnesus*, *Dacia*, *Grec-*

ce; this City is  
ng of the Rivers  
, and *Drauus*:

*GARIA* hath  
; on the South,  
*Servia*; and on  
, which parts it  
; places or Cities  
eate of the *Reg-*  
om are 24 *San-*  
Sir *Henry Blunt*  
*Levant*) almost  
fruitful *Valley*;  
ree miles distant  
h *Mountain*, on  
ll the year long;  
beautified with  
es, the chief of  
in. Its Colledge  
*Meschetoes* are  
pecially that in the  
h is also the lar-  
of the *Houses* of  
enos above three  
purpose to keep  
ho would else in  
a leve; instead of  
id Author obser-  
re under to the  
*ovi*, 4. *Durostoro*,  
are seated on the  
ared at the mouth  
f the *Danube*, at  
sea 7. *Galatia*,  
ed on the *Euxine*  
untry was made a  
et the first, *Anno*

*ODAVIA* is  
outh of *Tran-*  
and extendeth  
Its chief places  
*caconia*, once the  
*Sotzoma*, and 3.  
This Country  
rovince by *Mab-*  
4.  
*MOLDAVIA* A  
ountry of *BB S-*  
between *Podolia*  
ria on the South,  
ed in the *black-*  
*bermen*, or *Mon-*  
*Sargiack*, seated  
ar from its influx  
also seated on  
Country became  
*Anno* 1485.

Th. et. rom  
G. et. rom

Th. professor  
Greeks.

Th. et. Lan-  
ge et.

Th. et. tri-  
Alia Par-  
et. et. rom

*cis*, Macedonia, Thracia, Dalmatia, Epirus, Asia, Albania, a great part of Polinia, Russia, the Islands of the Adriatique Sea, and of the Archipelago, with Candy, Coos, Rhodes, almost all the lesser Asia, &c. He of Alexandria hath those of Egypt, and Arabia; He of Jerusalem, those of Palestine, and the other Countreys there adjacent; and He of Antioch hath under his jurisdiction those of Aleppo, Tripoly, the lesser Armenia, Cilicia, Berytus, and other places in the greater Asia. And in all these places they have the free exercise of their Religion, where they have publique Temples, and abundance of strong Monasteries; and if a Patriarch die, another is elected by a Synod of Bishops, who according to an antient Canon, should be men of singular learning, and gravity, being not capable to be chosen till the age of 60; but of late since the Great Turke hath had here to do, (who hath the approbation of them) they are chosen more for temporal respects then for Religion.

In matters of Religion they differ much from the Church of Rome, as I have already noted; the most material points in their Religion, are the administration of the Eucharist in both kinds; and if the bread be unleavened, they think it not available; and they freely drink of the Cup; they observe four Lenten every year, in which they hold it a damnable sin to eat flesh or fish that hath blood in it; they fast also on Wednesdays, Fridays, and on Holy-Eves; but on Saterdays they feast, in regard it was the antient Sabbath: In their Creed, they hold that the Holy Ghost proceedeth only from the Father; they hold the Popis no better then Schismatics; their Churches are for the most part beautified and painted within, representing many of the Saints, but they admit of no imbossed, nor carved Images; Lampes they keep continually burning; their ordinary Liturgy is Saint Chrysostoms, but on Festival daies they read that of St. Basils, and then they are attired in their Pontificals.

As concerning their Marriages, Baptisme, and funeral rites, which are many, and being not well informed thereof, I have thought good to omit, rather then to give the reader an imperfect or false account.

This Countrey hath bred several famous men, as Alexander the subverter of the Persian Monarchy, Xenophon, Plutarch, Herodotus, and Thucydides famous Historiographers; Epaminondas, Pyrrhus,

Miltiades, and Aristides famous Captains; Plato, Aristotle, Socrates, and Theophrastus, divine Philosophers; Demosthenes, Aeschines and Ilocrates eloquent Orators; with several others too tedious to name; but to proceed to the Provinces.

The Province of ROMANIA particularly so called, which as I have said, answers to the antient Thracia; but by the Turkes, Romeli, is bounded on the East, by the Euxine, or Black sea, the Propontis and the Hellespont; on the South with the Aegenan sea, or Archipelago; on the West, with that part of Macedonia called Fambolis; and on the North, with the Hill, Hemus, which parts it from Bulgaria. The Countrey of it self, is neither of a rich soil, nor pleasant aire, more enclining to cold then heat, by reason of which their fruits are not esteemed excellent; nor plentifull; their trees bearing rather leaves then fruit; yet by reason of the famous Cities of Constantinople, Hadrianople, and others here situated, renders it the chief and best inhabited of all Greece. Its chief places are first Andrinopoli or Hadrianople so called by the Emperour Hadrian, who repaired it, but of old Orestia from Orestes the Son of Agamemnon as the Greeks say; it was added to the Kingdome of the Turkes by Bajaret Anno 1362. and continued the seat of their Kings till Mahomet the great took Constantinople from Constantine Paleologus the last of the Easterne Emperours about 90 years after. Sir Henry Blunt in his Voyage to the Levant, gives a fine description of this City, where he saith, that it is seated on three low Hills, of which that in the midst is the largest and fairest, on the top of which is a stately Mescheto, or Mosque; the bottom of the body is quadrangular after the manner of those of Constantinople (but far more curious) having four stories in height; the two uppermost so contracted, as that division which quarters the two lowest into four angles a piece, casts each of them into eight; and at either angle of the upper story is a large round Pyramide; they support a stately round rooffe, which is covered with Lead, on the top of which is placed a globe of Gold, on which is a Golden Pillar and an Half Moon; he saith that at each corner of this Mescheto is a stately Spire built from the ground, as the manner of Turkey is, and not like the steeples among us, and each of them hath three rounds on the outside for

for the Priest  
the top a great  
Gold. He saith  
are between 3  
by Fountain,  
Divine Service  
this building o  
dwits with Co  
South side for  
East side are  
and Garden; a  
are Bathes, C  
the Priests, w  
covered with  
magnificent Ec  
Sultan Solyman  
City is another  
tenour to this,  
give a descript  
Bessines, or  
three or four a  
that of London  
with rich good  
ny fair Hanes,  
there are four  
Free-stone, whic  
This City is fair  
sed. The seco  
Gallipoli, seated  
within the Sea o  
first City that e  
Europe, it being  
to Orchanes in A  
berbegh of the  
little below Gal  
lage of the He  
tamous for Xer  
cially for the w  
European side,  
on the Asian sho  
of Hero and Le  
now called the  
the passage; an  
warke of Const  
those on the Th  
other, and row  
Sea, 3 Caride  
Chersonese, opp  
nes, as also to  
therefore now c  
4 Abdera, the b  
who spent his t  
a town of the  
Constantinople,  
the great in A  
formerly Cornu  
to the Genoaies  
Grand Signour;  
to Constantinople

ous Captains, and Theophrastus Demosthenes, famous Orators, famous to name, &c.

**M A N I A** which as I have said is in Thrace; but bounded on the Black sea, the South side, on the South Archipelago; on the North side, with the parts it from itself, is a pleasant aire, but is not esteemed for their trees or fruit; yet by reason of Constantinople here situated, the best inhabited places are first to be called by the name of Constantinople, who repaired it, and the Son of the Turk by the name of Mahomet the great Constantinian Emperour, Sir Henry the Levant, gives the name of Constantinople to three low Hills, the largest of which is a state, the bottom of which is after the manner of Constantinople (but far above four stories in height) contracted, and divided into two pieces, casts each at either angle a large round Prætorian round roof, called Lead, on the top of Gold, and on the side of a Half Moon; the corner of this Mosque built from the Turk is, and each is on the outside for

for the Priests to walke, having at the top a great Globe, and Half Moon of Gold. He saith that in the Churchyard are between 30 or 40 Cocks, under a stately Fountain, for people to wash before Divine Services; as also at the bottom of this building, on the North side is a Conduit with Cocks, and as many on the South side for the same use; and on the East side are the chief Priests Lodgings, and Garden; and round the Church-yard are Bathes, Cloysters, and a Colledge for the Priests, with other usefull Offices, all covered with Lead. This stately and magnificent Edifice he saith was built by Sultan Solyman the second. Here in this City is another stately Mescheo, but inferiour to this, and therefore I need not give a description of it. Here are several Beseftines, or Exchangees, among which three or four are not much inferiour to that of London, and well furnished with rich goods; here are likewise many fair Hanes. To this City (he saith) there are four stately and lofty Bridges of Free-stone, which make a pleasant view. This City is fair, large, and well composed. The second place I shall name is Gallipoli, seated near the Hellespont, but within the Sea of Marinara; this was the first City that ever the Turks possessed in Europe, it being surprized by Solyman Son to Orchanes in Anno 1358. Here the Beglerbegh of the Sea hath his residence. A little below Gallipoli is the straightest passage of the Hellespont, a place formerly famous for Xerxes his Bridge, but especially for the two Castles of Sesto on the European side, and Abido opposite to it on the Asian shore, of note for the loves of Hero and Leander, which Castles are now called the Dardanelli, and command the passage; and are the security or bulwark of Constantinople on this side, as those on the Thracian Bosphorus are on the other, and towards the Euxine or Black Sea. 3 Caridia seated on the Thracian Chersonese, opposite to the Isle of Lemnos, as also to Troas in Asia side; and therefore now called Saint Georges Arme, 4 Abdera, the birth place of Democritus, who spent his time in laughing. 5 Pera a town of the Genovais, opposite to Constantinople, it was taken by Mahomet the great in Anno 1453. 6 Galatia formerly Cornubiantinum, once belonging to the Genovais, but now subject to the Grand Signiour; it is also seated opposite to Constantinople, from which it is only

parted by a River wherein is found good Harbour for Shipping; and here all the Western Christians, as English, French, Dutch or Venetian Merchants have their common residence, intermixed with Jews, Grecians, Armenians, and some few Turkes; and here is a Chancery-house which is placed opposite to another in Constantinople, both farmed by one Farmer appointed by the Grand Signiour, from which a great revenue is raised; and lastly **CONSTANTINOPLE** the now Metropolitan City of all Greece, the seat and residence of the Grand Signiour, and formerly of the Emperours of the East. It was first built by Pausanias, a Lacedæmonian Captain about 660 years before the birth of Christ; and by him called Bisantium; after which it was ruined by Severus, and in Anno 313 reedified by Constantine the Great, Son of Helena, who made it the seat of his Empire, and beautified it with magnificent buildings, and rich ornaments, and gave it the name of Constantinople; then it fell into the hands of the Romans, and from them to the Grecians, and lastly in 1453 to the Turks, the now possessors of it, being lost by Constantine the Son of another Helena. It is a City conveniently seated for a universal Empire, overlooking Europe, and Asia, commanding the Euxine or Black Sea, the Hellespont and Sea of Marinara, or Propontis; on the upper part of which, and near the Thracian Bosphorus it is seated, on a Haven so deep, and capacious, that the Turks for its excellency call it the Port of the World; for by Land it hath immediate commerce with Thrace, Greece, and from Scutai with Asia, by Sea, the Black Sea, and the Marmora or Hellespont not only furnish it with abundance of Fish, &c. but carry their commodities abroad and bring others home; and above all, the mouths of both those Seas are so narrow, that as I said before, the Castles command the passage, so that for strength, plenty, and commodity no place can compare to it. This City is in forme triangular, on the East side it is washed with the Bosphorus; and on the North side with the Haven, adjoining to the continent on the West; its Walls are composed of brick and stone equally intermixed, to which it hath twenty four Gates for entrance, whereof five regard the Land, and nineteen the Water, being about sixteen miles in compass, and two parts of the three being washed with the Sea; and supposed

with

with *Pera*, and *Gallata* which are opposite and nigh, or adjoining into it, and in *Europe*, and *Sculars* on the *Asian* side to contain above seven hundred thousand living soules, the most part of which are *Christians* and *Jews*, though it be the seat of the *Turkish Empire*, yet without doubt it would be far more populous, were it not for the *Plague*, which like a *Tertian Ague* here reigneth every third year. This *City* is adorned with many magnificent buildings, as well publike as private, as also with curious *statues*, and the like *ornaments* which were brought out of *Rome* and other parts; as the *Columnne* of wreathed *Brass*, with three infolded *Serpents* at the top, extended in a *triangle*, looking severall wayes: also a stately *Hieroglyphical Obelisk* of *Theban Marble*, with an *Epigram* engraven on one side of the *Pedestal* in *Greek*, and another in *Latin* on the other side; also another high *Obelisk* of sundry *stones*, which by some is called a *Colossus*, now much decayed; then another *columnne* of *Constantine*; also the *Historical columnne*, &c. There is no *City* in the world makes so stately a shew, if beheld from the *Sea*, or adjoining *Mountaines*, as this doth, whose lofty and beautifull *Cypress-streets* (as *Sandys* noteth) are intermixed with the *buildings*; that it seemeth to present a *City* in a *Wood*, whose seven-aspiring heads, (for on just so many *Hills* it is seated) are most of them crowned with magnificent *Mosques* or *Churches*, all of white *Marble*, in form round, and coupled above; being finished at the top with gilded *Spires*, some having two, some four, and some six adjoining *Turrets* of a great height, and very slender, so that he noteth, there is no *City* in the World hath a more promising object, and being entered so much deceiveth the expectation, having many vacant places, severall rows of buildings consisting only of *shops*; the *houses* not tall, lofty, nor uniforme, the *streets* exceeding narrow and ill contrived. Yet here as I have said, are many stately *houses* where the great persons reside, also many *Cane*. for *Merchants*, and abundance of *Mosques*, among which that of *Sancta Sophia* is the chief, of which a word; this *Mosque* was once a *Christian Temple*, and redified (if not built) by the *Emperour Justinian*, being then said to be in length from East to West 260 foot, and 80 foot in height, and capable to entertaine or hold at one time 36000 persons: but this greatness was

Entered  
a copy  
of  
the  
Cust  
manus.  
1611.

before it was defaced by *Mahomet* the Great, at the taking of the *City*; that which now remains being little more then the *Chancel*. It is built of an Oval form, surrounded with *Pillars* of admirable *Workmanship*; adorned with spacious and beautifull *galleries*, roofed all over with *Mosaicque painting*; the sides and floore are all flagged with excellent *Marble*; vaulted underneath, and containing large *Cisterns*, which are replenished with water from an *Aquaduct*; before the entrance there is a stately *Portico*, where all that visit this place upon curiosity, as well *Christians* as *Turkes*, leave their *shoes* before they enter. The *doors* are neatly wrought, and plated; one of which by the superstitious people is said to be made of the planks of *Noahs Arke*, which is much frequented by the devouter sort of people; but this *Mosque* hath nothing of beauty, as to what it had before it was ruined, the *Turkes* being no delighers in curious *buildings*. To every one of the principal *Mosques* doth belong publick *Bagnios*, *Hospitals*, with lodgings for *Santons* and *Ecclesiastical persons*, which are endowed with competent revenues. The inferiour *Mosques* for the most part are built square, many of them being no better then *Pent-houses* with open *Galleries*, where on extraordinary times they pray; the number of *Mosques* of all sorts, including *Sentary*, *Pava*, *Gallata*, and the buildings that border the *Bosphorus*, are said to be about 8000. This Temple of *St. Sophia*, is almost every *Friday* (which is their *Sabbath*) visited by the *Grand Signour*, by reason of its being near to his *Seraglio*, which is divided from the rest of the *City* by a lofty *Wall*, containing in circuit about three miles, wherein are stately *Groves* of *Cypresses* intermixed with delightfull *Gardens*; artificial *Fountaines*; variety of *Fruits*, and curious *plains*. The buildings are low, but rich and stately, with severall fair *Courts* one within another, and to the South side doth joyn the *Grand Signours Palace*, which opens to it by a lofty *Gatehouse*, which leadeth into a spacious *Court* about 300 yards in length, and 150 in breadth, at the far end of which there is a *Gate* hung with *Shields* and *Cymeters*, which openeth into another *Court* of less bigness, where grow abundance of *Cypress-trees*, with *Cloysters* about it, which are supported with pillars of *Marble*, having the *Chapiters* and *Bases* of *Copper*, being Leded above, and paved with *Free-*

stone

T  
stone below  
vano is kept  
do admini  
Court is a  
with stately  
ans are de  
great favour  
North side  
binet, in so  
having a pri  
where he c  
various obje  
and from th  
light himsel  
The Sou  
taken up by  
were called  
employed by  
houses for hi  
also serving  
ders.  
Not far  
place encom  
Hippodrom  
Turkes Alm  
Spachies of t  
ni, that is,  
and ride after  
at each other  
ing to avoid t  
ceive hurt, a  
The Black  
people about  
bordered with  
the Bosphorus  
Cappadocia, a  
it is confined  
higher *Mesia*  
and the remain  
North, betw  
part of *Samar  
Maotis*, and t  
fed by the gre  
parteth *Euro  
much trouble  
neither is it fo  
here the *Tu  
forbiddeth *F  
being no pass  
neither this p  
been alwaies,  
streames that  
Euxine, whe  
rus, there are  
Cyanea, and  
at a distance  
upon the top o  
the *Sea*, stand  
called *Pompey*.***

TURKEY in EUROPE or GREECE.

Mahomet the  
 the City; that  
 ing little more  
 built of an Oval  
 lars of admirable  
 with spacious  
 roofed all over  
 the sides and  
 an excellent Mar-  
 and containing  
 replenished with  
 before the en-  
 orisco, where all  
 curiosity, as well  
 their shoes before  
 neatly wrought,  
 by the super-  
 side of the planks  
 is much frequen-  
 of people, but  
 of beauty, as to  
 as ruined, the  
 is in curious build-  
 the principal Mos-  
 k Bagnios, Hospi-  
 Santons and Ke-  
 are endowed with  
 The inferiour Mos-  
 are built square,  
 better than Pen-  
 es, where on ex-  
 tray, the number  
 including Scitary,  
 buildings that bor-  
 said to be about  
 of St. Sophia, is al-  
 which is their Sab-  
 the Grand Signi-  
 being near to his  
 led from the rest  
 Vall, containing in  
 les, wherein are  
 es intermixed with  
 ficial Fountains,  
 curious plains: The  
 ch and stately, with  
 within another, and  
 byn the Grand Sig-  
 nens to it by a loft-  
 adeth into a spaci-  
 ds in length, and  
 far end of which  
 Shields and Cyme-  
 another Court of  
 w abundance of Cy-  
 ers about it, which  
 ars of Marble, ha-  
 Bases of Copper, be-  
 paved with Free-  
 stone:

stone below, and on the left hand the Di-  
 vano is kept, where the *Bassas* of the *Port*  
 do administer *Justice*, out of the second  
 Court is a passage into a third, surrounded  
 with stately buildings, into which *Christi-  
 ans* are denied the entrance, but upon  
 great favour, without the *Palace*. On the  
 North side stands the *Grand Signiours Ca-  
 binet*, in form of a stately *Summer-house*,  
 having a private passage from his *Seraglio*,  
 where he often solaces himself with the  
 various objects which the *hauen* affordeth,  
 and from this place he takes *Barge* to de-  
 light himself on the water.

The South-East Angle of the City is  
 taken up by seven *Towers*, which antiently  
 were called *Fanacula*, and these *Towers* are  
 employed by the *Grand Signiour* for *Store-  
 houses* for his *Munition*, and *Treasure*, as  
 also serving as *Prisons* for Capital Offen-  
 ders.

Not far from the *Palace* is a spacious  
 place encompassed with *Houses*, called the  
*Hippodrom* by the *Antients*, and by the  
*Turkes* *Almidan*, where every *Friday* the  
*Spachies* of the *Court* play at *Giocho di Can-  
 ni*, that is, they are mounted on *horses*,  
 and ride after one another, and throw darts  
 at each other, which by their hasty turn-  
 ing to avoid the pursuer, they oft times re-  
 ceive hurt, and are thrown down.

The *Black Sea* is distant from *Constanti-  
 nople* about 15 miles; on the East side it is  
 bordered with *Colechis*, on the South, from  
 the *Bosphorus*, it is bordered with *Pantus*,  
*Cappadocia*, and *Bithinia*; on the West,  
 it is confined by part of *Dacia*, and the  
 higher *Mafia*, separated by the *Danube*,  
 and the remainder with *Thracia*; and on the  
 North, between it and *Caucasus*, lyes a  
 part of *Samaria Asiatica*, then the fens of  
*Maurus*, and therefore called *Temerinda*:  
 fed by the great River of *Tanais*, which  
 parteth *Europe* from *Asia*. This *Sea* is  
 much troubled with *Ice* in the *Winter*,  
 neither is it so much salt as other *Seas*. And  
 here the *Turke* as my *Author* noteth,  
 forbiddeth *Forainers* to *Traffique*, there  
 being no passage into it but by *Rivers*,  
 neither this passage of the *Bosphorus* hath  
 been always, but forced by violence of  
 streames that fell into the over-charged  
*Euxine*, where it rusheth into the *Bospho-  
 rus*, there are two *Rocks* formerly called  
*Cyanea*, and *Symplegades*, so near that  
 at a distance they seem but one. Here  
 upon the top of a *Rock* encompassed with  
 the *Sea*, stands a pillar of *White Marble*,  
 called *Pompeys Pillar*, upon the shore (the

same *Author* saith) there is an high *Zan-  
 thorn* large enough to hold 60 *Persons*, in  
 which in the night are set lights to direct  
*Mariners* into *Bosphorus*, which ferterth  
 with a strong current into *Propontis*, and  
 is in length about 20 miles; but very nar-  
 row, the broadest place not exceeding a  
 mile.

The *Commodities* this City of *Constan-  
 tinople* affordeth to *England*, are *Carpets*,  
*Muhairs*, *Grograins*, *Chamblets*, *Cottons*,  
*Anniseeds*, *Raw-silk*, *Woolls*, *Hides*, *Wax*,  
*Allom*, *Caviare*, &c.

*Commodities* most vendible here from  
*England*, are, *Furrs* of *Sables*, *Martins*,  
*Fishes*, *Coyes*, &c. *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Clotls*  
 of *Coventry*, *Suffolk*, and *Gloucester*, both  
 dyed and drest in great quantities.

The *Coyes* here currant is the *Asper*,  
 by which all other *Coyes* are valued, viz.  
 A *Sultany* of *Gold*, which is of the same  
 value with the *Hungar* of *Venice*, the  
*Checquin*, and *Sheriff* of *Barbary*, passing  
 for 300 *Aspers*.

The *Dollar* of *Germany* for 150 *Aspers*.  
 The *Rial* of  $\frac{2}{3}$  *Spanish* for 150.

The *Lion Dollar* for 135.

The *Germaine Sesteine* for 90 *Aspers*,  
 and in fine most *Coyes* currant in the  
 World, provided they are good *Silver* or  
*Gold*, pass here for a considerable value in  
 payments of *Merchandizes*, but the *Coyes*  
 aforesaid are so uncertain as to their valu-  
 ation, that no credit is to be given, so  
 that those *Coy* as the *Sultany* of *Gold*,  
 which is now at 300 *Aspers*, in a short  
 time may rise to 350, and perhaps more.

They here as generally through all *Tur-  
 key*, keep their *Accounts* in *Dollars* and  
*Aspers*.

Their *Weights* are several, among which  
 a *Grain* is the least, whereof 4 makes a  
*Quillat*; a *Dram* is 16 *Graines* or 4 *Quil-  
 lats*, or which all the *Weights* are compo-  
 sed.

A *Tusdrome* is 100 *Drams*, or 72 *Mi-  
 tinals*, and is a pound subtle *Venice*.

A *Mitigale* is 1  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Dram*, or 24 *Killats*.

Twenty *Mitigalls* of *Gold*, is 3 ounces  
*Englisch*.

Three and a half *Rotoles*, and 20 *Drams*  
 in *Alepi* is a *Batman* here.

Four hundred *Drams* is an *Oake*, con-  
 sisting of 4 *Tusdroms* or pounds, at 10 ounces  
 to the *Tusdrome*, and 10 *Drams* to the  
 ounce.

A *Lodero* is 176 *Drams*, which is va-  
 lued at about 1  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Haberadouis Englisch*.

Genodrin  
 and Seeds  
 of Con-  
 stantin-  
 ple.

The Coyes  
 of Const-  
 tinople  
 and Tur-  
 key.

Weights of  
 Constanti-  
 nople.



A hundred *Loderos* are held to be 44 *Oakes*, which is called a *Quintar*.

A *Batman* is 6 *Oakes*, or 2400 *Drams*, by which *Silk* is here bought.

A hundred *Loderos* here is found to produce in *England*, 119, or 120 *l*.

Their *Measures* are three, and all called *Picos*; the first is the *Linnen Pico*, which is about 54 *Inches*, 8 whereof hath been observed to make 6 *yards English*.

The other is the *Cloth pico*, which is just half the *Linnen pico*.

The third is the *Chamlet* or *Gregraine pico*, of about 24 *inches*.

*Oyle*, *Wine*, and almost all liquid *Commodities* are sold by a *Meter*, which makes 8 *Oakes*, which is accounted 2 *Gallons English*.

Note that all goods for the most part are sold by *Weights*, and not by *Concave Measure*, as *Fish*, *Flesh*, *Fruits*, *Fewell* to burn, &c. And so much for *Constantinople*; but before I pass to the other *Provinces* in *Greece*, a word or two as to the *Manners*, *Dispositions*, *Religions*, &c. of the *Turks*, for which I was forced to be supplied from the *Travells* of Sir *George Sandys*, Sir *Henry Blunt*, and others, who say, that they are for the most part of a good *Complexion*, full *bodied*, proportionable, and of good *features*, the *hairs* of their *heads* they keep shaved, only a lock on their crown remaining; but their *beards* they wear at full length, which with them is a sign of *Gravity* and freedom, they not allowing their *slaves* to wear *beards*; they are subtle, and of a quick wit. They are generally very courteous to strangers, but bear an inveterate hatred against *Christians*; of their *Wives* they are exceeding jealous, insomuch that they are denied the frequent liberty of the *Streets*, or going to *Church*, and are also forced to goe muffled about the face, no part to be seen but their eyes. The *Women* are for the most part very handsome, and the blacker they are, the more beautiful are they esteemed; as to their *Apparel* it differs very little from that long and loose *garment*, said to have been ever used in the *East*, which they hold more honorable for its antiquity, under which they wear a *coate* with short *sleeves*, which with a sivy they girt about them: their *necks* they wear bare; on their *heads* they wear *Turbets*, and *White shashes*, the latter being for the meaner sort, and the former for the better; and these *Turbets* do exceed in richness according to their de-

grees and ability; and this is the Ornament of their *head*, which they never put off, though in the presence of the *Grand signour*; but their salutations are with an inclination of the head and body, laying their hand on their *bosomes*. On their feet they wear *buskins*, using *slip shoes* with picked toes; and their *habits* do exceed in richness according to the quality of the person, as *Cloth of Gold*, *Silver*, *Satten*, *Velvet*, *Damask*, *Scarlet*, using rich *Furrs* to line their *Garments*; but the meaner sort wear *Violet-cloth*. The *Clergy* goe in *green*, it being *Mahomets colour*, which to others is restrained, they use much perfume on their *Garments*, and all of them affect cleanliness so religiously, that besides customary lotions, and daily frequenting *Baths*, they never so much as make *water*, but they wash their *hands* and *privities*, at which business they couch to the earth, for fear their *garments* should be defiled with any of their excrements, which they hold a pollution, and hinderance to the acceptance of their *Prayer*, who are (as they say) then to be most pure in heart and habit, and always wash their *hands* and *face* before prayer, and if they *bath* not twice or thrice a week, they are esteemed nasty. They are generally very slothful, and not addicted to exercise, loving a sedentary life, but the cheifer sort delight in riding. Yet all hath one *Trade* or another, even the *grand Turk*, at which they employ some of their time.

Their *food* is gross, refusing all dainties for a peice of fat *Mutton*, which they seeth with *Rice*, and this is their most general *food*, and over this they sometimes put *Milk* made thick and sowre, and with *Pease*, *Rice*, and *Mutton* they make *Porridge*; besides they make *Porridge* of several other ingredients, the flesh which they eat is cut in gobbets; they abstain from *Blood*, *Hogs-flesh*, and things strangled, neither care they for *fish* or *fowle*, which are here numerous, and so gentle that they will suffer themselves to be taken. They have neither *tables* nor *stools*, but sit upon the floor at their *meat* cross-leg'd, it being covered with *Tapestry*, or the like, according to the quality of the *Person*; and the *dishes* have feet like standing *botles*; their *spoons* for the length of their handles may fitly be called *ladles*. Their common *drink* is *water*, yet have they several other *drinks*, as *Sherbet*, *Maph*, but above all *Cauphe*, there being esteemed more *Cauphe-houses*, then *Ale-houses* among us, where they

resort, spending time in *drinking* bidden them they will freely

As to their are not over inging; *Logick*, they study not some small insu chiefst knowledge which is their necessity hath taught *urgery*; in *Mus* ver have they keep no time, n truth, play any manner. They ing, and would bidden by *Mah* nor allow of, b not, whether it norance, or to n of *People* who l part being of the are generally suc occasions more which they are n ing their ease m

By their *Law* ed to *marry*, for *Religion*, every *Wives*, which n *Religion*, besides are *slaves* and of to keep; they bu *rents*, recording *Nuptial* rites the *nies*, some of w day before the i n *Feasting*, as th and the *Bride* few after they have l they leave her to and in the *more Chamber*, to die then those of th ing also in their mounted, come by two to the *Br* to the *Bridegr* mounted and a quality, as also v head is carried a brought to her n her face so vaile after whom fol any, as also *Peo* and *resents*: the *groom* standeth at

resort

The measure of a pico is 54 inches

The measure of a meter is 8 oaks

The Turke

The Turke

is the Ona-  
ney never put  
of the Grand  
ns are with an  
body, laying  
s. On their  
ship shoes  
habits doe ex-  
to the quality  
Gold, Silver,  
Scarlet, using  
ents; but the  
h. The Cler-  
humets colour,  
they use much  
and all of them  
usly, that be-  
nd daily fre-  
er so much as  
in their hands  
ests they couch  
arments should  
ir excrements,  
n, and hinder-  
their Prayer,  
en to be most  
d always wash  
prayer, and if  
a week, they  
are generally  
ted to exercise,  
he cheier sort  
hath one Trade  
Turk, at which  
one.  
all dainties  
hich they feeth  
most general  
ometimes put  
and with Pease,  
e Pottage, be-  
several other in-  
h they eat is  
n from Blood,  
ngled, neither  
which are here  
that they will  
n. They have  
ut fit upon the  
d, it being co-  
ke, according  
and the dishes  
s, their spoons  
dles may be sily  
mmon drinks  
other drinks,  
ve all Cauphe,  
Cauphe-houses,  
, where they  
relort

resort, spending the greatest part of their  
time in *drinking* and *chatting*. Wine is for-  
bidden them by *Mahomet*, yet privately  
they will freely take a cup.

As to their *Sciences* and *Trades*, they  
are not over ingenious, active, nor know-  
ing; *Logick*, *Rhetorick*, and *Metaphysicks*  
they study not; in *Philosophy* they have  
some small insight; in *Astronomy* their  
chiefest knowledge being to tell fortunes,  
which is their whole aime; common ne-  
cessity hath taught them *Physick* and *Chi-  
rurgery*; in *Musick* they are very ignorant,  
yet have they several *Instruments*; but  
keep no time, nor concord, neither to say  
truth, play any tune, but after a confused  
manner. They have knowledge in *Paint-  
ing*, and would have more, were it not for-  
bidden by *Mahomet*; *Printing* they will  
not allow of, but for what reason I know  
not, whether it be to keep the *People* in ig-  
norance, or to maintain the great number  
of *People* who live by *Writing*, the most  
part being of the *Priest-hood*. Their *Trades*  
are generally such as serve for their own  
occasions more then for *Negotiation*, in  
which they are not over diligent, esteem-  
ing their ease more then their profit.

By their *Law* they are in general exhorted  
to marry, for the propagation of their  
*Religion*, every man being allowed four  
*Wives*, which must be also of the *Turkish*  
*Religion*, besides as many *Concubines* (which  
are *slaves* and of any *Religion*) as he is able  
to keep; they buy their *Wives* of their *Pa-  
rents*, recording the contract. In their  
*Nuptial* rites they observe many *Ceremo-  
nies*, some of which I will insert; as the  
day before the *Marriage* they both spend  
in *Feasting*, as the *Bridegroom* many *Men*,  
and the *Bride* several *Women*, who at night  
after they have bathed and anointed her,  
they leave her to take her rest, and depart;  
and in the morning return again to her  
*Chamber*, to dress her in her best apparel,  
then those of the *Bridegrooms* friends be-  
ing also in their richest apparel, and well  
mounted, come from his house, riding two  
by two to the *Brides house*, to conduct her  
to the *Bridegrooms*, who is also richly  
mounted and attended according to her  
quality, as also with *Musick*, and over her  
head is carried a *Canopy*; and thus is she  
brought to her never seen *Husband*, with  
her face so veiled, that no part can be seen,  
after whom follow her *slaves* if she have  
any, as also *People* that bring her *apparel*  
and *presents*: she being come, the *Bride-  
groom* standeth at the dore to receive her,

who is presently conducted to the *Bride-  
Chamber*, where *Women* are waiting to un-  
dress her, and fit her for his enjoyment;  
the rest of the day they spend in *feasting* and  
*merriment*, which ended, he is obliged by  
the law to show respect alike to all his  
*Wives*, as to *Apparel*, *Diet*, *Love* and due  
*benevolence*; and if he doth not, they may  
justly complain to the *Cadi*, who will grant  
them a divorcement; the *Women* are little  
better treated then *slaves*, giving their  
*Husbands* the respect and reverence due  
to a *Master*, who upon any misdemeanor,  
will give them *Chastisement*; they sit not  
at *Table* with their *Husbands*, neither do  
they meddle with *household affaires*; all that  
is required from them, being only to please  
their *Husbands*, live peaceably together,  
and nurse their *Children*.

They have a great many *slaves*, which  
are *Christians* taken in the *Wars*, or at  
*Sea*; and for these there are weekly *Mar-  
kets*, where they are sold like *horses*, the  
*Men* being rated either according to their  
personal *abilities*, or *faculties*, as are the  
*Women* for their *beauty* and *youth*; and  
when they have agreed upon a price, they  
may carry the *Women* into a private room,  
and seal them to be assured of their *Vir-  
ginity*, which they highly esteem, and  
therefore set a greater valuation on them  
then on those who have lost it; and when  
they have bought them, they may lye with  
them, and do what they please, as to hard  
servitude, chastisement or the like.

Their *Religion* is contained in their *Al-  
coran* made by *Mahomet* their *Prophet*; it  
is written in *Arabic* time; and forbidden  
by him to be written or read in any other  
*Language*; and this book is greatly revere-  
nced by them, not so much as touching it  
with unwait *hands*, kissing it, swearing  
by it; they call it the *Book of Glory*, and  
*guilder to Paradise*; they believe in *God*,  
and hold *Jesus Christ* for a greater *Prophet*  
then *Moses*, but that *Mahomet* is a greater;  
they deny the *Divinity* of *Christ*, yet con-  
fess him to be the *Son of the Virgin Mary*,  
who as they say, conceived by the smell of  
a *Rose*, which the *Angel Gabriel* brought  
her, and that she bore him at her *Breasts*,  
who as they acknowledg was free from the  
temptations of the *Devil* and *Original*  
sin. *Christ* is called in the *Alcoran* the  
*Word* and *Breath of God*; said to raise up  
the *dead*, to give *sight* to the *blind*, to  
*cure the lame*, to give *speech* to the *dumb*,  
to know the secrets of *hearts*, and that by  
his *virtues*, his *Disciples* wrought *Mira-  
cles*.

Their slaves  
made in  
the day  
taken.

The Al-  
coran

There are  
known  
Christ a  
Prophet

cles. They severely punish all such as Blaspheme *Christ*, believing that he shall returne to *Judgement* about forty years before the end of the world, and *Judge*, *Save*, and condemn the *Christians*, as *Mahomet* shall do them. They are obliged by their *Law*, to pray seven times a day; their *Sabbath* is on *Friday*, which they observe very strict, and are very devout at their *Divine Worship*; at the dore of the *Mosque* they put off their *shoes*, as a place too holy to defile with their dirty *shoes*: and being entred they sit down in rows one behind another upon mats cross-legged, poor and rich together, without respect of persons; the *Priest* is placed in a *Pulpit* before them, who sometimes reads unto them part of the *Alcoran*, and sometimes some of their *Legends*, with *Expositions* and *Instructions*, to which they give great attention; their *Service* is mixed with *Songs* and *Responses*, at their *Prayer* they stand upright without any motion of *Body*, holding their hands up, with their faces towards *Mecca*; sometimes bowing their *Bodies*, and prostrating themselves to the earth, kissing it, and will not look back, but at the salutation of *Mahomet*, which then they doe, turning their faces first over their right shoulder, then over their left, supposing that *Mahomet* will come behind them, when they are at their devotion; the *Women* are not permitted to come into their *Mosques*, but have a place made purposely for them, where they look thorough grates.

Their  
Alcoran.  
Deeds.

They are excited to *Almes Deeds*, by their *Alcoran*, relieving the *poor*, whereof it happens that there is so few *Beggars* in *Turkey*; and when they dye, they leave *Legacies* for the freeing of *Prisoners*, *Bond-slaves*, as also for repairing and building of *Chanies*, *Hospitals*, *Bridges*, and *Fountaines* for the relief of *Travellers* and *Strangers*, so that few Nations have the like conveniencies.

Their Fast

They observe two solemn times in the year, which are both *Lents*; one is called *Ramdan*, which continueth a *Month*, and the other *Byram*, which lasteth but three daies; and in these *Fasts* they follow the custom of the *Fews*; for all the day long they neither eat nor drinke, neither are they allowed any sort of *Venery*, but at night they make themselves amends in all three.

Their  
Law  
of  
Domes,  
C. 2.

They admit no *Hell* for any but those who doe not believe *Mahomet*; but allow of a *Purgatory*, which holds but till *Domes-*

day, where in their *Graves* (which they hold is the place of *Purgatory*) they are inflicted with pain by a bad *Angel*, whose fury is lessened by a good one, according to the good life the party led when he was living; and at the *Day of doom*, *Moses*, *Christ* and *Mahomet* shall bring their several followers to judgement, and intercede for them; and that *Cain* the first *Murderer* shall be the leader of the damned; and all shall receive the rewards due unto them, the just into *Paradise*; and the damned into *Hell*, where they shall be tormented for ever; yet they hold a distinction among the damned; for they say, that those that have committed no great *Sins*, shall go into *Purgatory*, from whence they shall shortly be delivered. *Paradise* according to *Mahomet's* description, is a place of all delight, where they shall have stately *Palaces*, richly furnished, *Crystalline Rivers*, *Fields* and *Trees*, always in their verdure, and cloathed in their *Summer Liveries*, whose *Fruits* shall be delightful to the taste, and their shape pleasing to the eye; under whose fragrant shades they shall spend their time with amorous and hadsome *Virgins*, with great black eyes; not such as have lived in the world, but on purpose created for them, whose lost *Virginities* shall be daily restored to them; and that they shall ever continue young, the *Men* as it were at 30 years of age, and the *Women* at 15; and that *Boyes* of divine features shall Minister unto them, and set before them all varieties of curious *Meates*.

Their *Justice* they say is grounded upon their *Alcoran*, in which they observe this Rule, to doe as they would be done unto. Their *Judges* are always for the most part, if not all, *Ecclesiastical persons*, among which there are many orders, of which the chief is the *Musfy*, who decides great cases, and to him lie *appeales*, and his decrees the *Grand Turk* himself will not question: then the *Cady* who hath over him the *Moulasady*, who is as it were *Lord chief Justice*; all the *Judges* excepting the *Musfy*, are limited to set *Precincts*, and if they are found corrupt, they are severely punished, the execution of their *Justice* is more or less cruel according to the hainousness of their crime, but the least is terrible, their *Justice* is *Arbitrary*, and the execution very *Speedy*; and if the business be matter of *fact*, upon the least complaint, the *parties* and *witnesses* are taken, and immediately brought before the *Judge* who hears the cause, and according to

evidence,

TT  
evidence, and  
which in few  
of importance  
where it rests  
matters of T  
to evidence;  
for one; and  
sets the same  
should have  
The Gran  
Foces: his  
one raised on  
or less accor  
largeness of t  
fantasies,  
ans taken from  
trained up,  
these he puts  
indeed it is no  
more faithful  
to Christians  
always in pa  
rits are rewar  
ment. Their  
viz First, s  
chosen the tr  
Signiours per  
marious which  
rous; these  
from all dutie  
obliged to fu  
or more or le  
own charge,  
according to  
hold; and b  
sorts of Horse  
serving mead  
dise by dying  
and these are  
the mouth of  
the gaires of  
tries, and oth  
these they ha  
assist them up  
hath always  
my composed  
principally th  
and very exp  
As for the  
small, as not  
most of them  
often found  
ans, taking t  
commonly t  
reason of the  
without blo  
as they feare,  
fully defend  
might escape

CE.

(which they  
ory) they are  
Angel, whose  
one, according  
and when he was  
of doom, Moses,  
ing their several  
and intercede for  
first Murderer  
damned, and  
due unto them,  
and the damned  
l be tormented  
inction among  
that those that  
e Sins, shall go  
ence they shall  
adice according  
s a place of all  
all have stately  
Chrysaline Ri-  
alwaies in their  
n their Summer  
all be delightful  
e pleasing to the  
shades they shall  
orous and hadform  
eyes, not such  
but on purpose  
lost Virginites  
them, and that  
young, the Men  
age, and the Wa-  
es of divine fea-  
them, and set be-  
tious Meates.  
is grounded upon  
they observe this  
uld be done unto  
for the most part,  
persons, among  
ers, of which the  
o decides great  
eates, and his de-  
himself will not  
y who hath over  
s as it were Lord  
Judges excepting  
set Precincts, and  
they are sever-  
on of their Justice  
rding to the hai-  
but the least is  
Arbitrary, and the  
and if the business  
on the least com-  
pinesses are taken  
before the Judge  
and according to  
evidence,

evidence, and Justice, gives his sentence, which in few hours is executed, unless it be of importance, and is allowed an appeal, where it resteth not long undecided, and in matters of Title or Right they go according to evidence, three Women being taken but for one: and a false witness, if convicted suffers the same punishment as the accused should have done, had he been found guilty.

The Grand Turk is very powerful in his Forces: his Infantry are of two sorts; the one raised out of Towns and Cities, more or less according to his occasion, and the largeness of the place; and the other is the *Fanizaries*, which are the sons of *Christians* taken from their parents young, and trained up, which are numerous; and in these he puts the greatest confidence; and indeed it is not without cause; for they are more faithful, courageous, and inveterate to *Christians* than the rest: they are kept always in pay, and according to their merits are rewarded, and advanced to preferment. Their Cavalry is also of two sorts, viz. First, *Spahyglans*, from whom are chosen the troops which guard the Grand Signiors persons; and Secondly, *Spahy-Temariots* which are also in a manner numerous; these are such as hold Land free from all duties, in lieu of which they are obliged to furnish him with 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, or more or less *New or Horse* upon their own charge, when his occasion requireth, according to the quantity of Land they hold; and besides these there are other sorts of *Horsemen* who are *Volunteers*, some serving merely for devotion to gain *Paradise* by dying for the *Mahometan* cause; and these are very desperate, and run into the mouth of danger; others serving for the gaines of the booty, and spoiles of *Countries*, and others to merit a *Timar*. Besides these they have the *Auxiliary Tartars* to assist them upon occasion, with whom he hath always affinity; and thus is their Army composed, who for the most part (but principally the *Fanizaries*) are trained up, and very expert in *Military* affairs.

As for their Forces by Sea, they are but small, as not much minding nor needing it, most of them being *Gallies*; yet are they often found very troublesome to *Christians*, taking their *Vessels*, whose loss commonly the *Dutch* are sensible of, by reason of their cowardlines, rather yielding without blows, than to be forced unto it as they were, whereas if they would manfully defend themselves, probably they might escape.

Concerning their Funerals, so soon as life is departed, several of their Priests are sent for, who after they have performed certain Ceremonies, and desired God to have mercy on their soul, they wash the Corps, shave it, wrap it in linnen, but not tie it, neither at head nor feet, then they lay it on a *Beir*, setting a Turbant at the upper end, and so carry it to the grave, which for the poorer sort are made commonly by *Highway-sides*, and in *Fields* adjoining to a *Town* or *City*, having two *Stones* of white marble about three foot high, one at the head, and another at the feet, with an inscription concerning the deceased; but the better sort have *Sepulchres* in their *Gardens*; and as they are carried to the place, some of the *deceased* goe before with lighted *Tapers*, then follow the *Priest* singing, and are then their friends and relations, their graves are boarded on the sides and bottom, with a *Coffin*; and being laid in, another board is laid over them to hinder the earth from falling, but high enough that one may kneel as they hold, that two terrible and black *Angels*, which they call *Gudegur* and *Monger* do immediately come to the grave, and unite the soul to the body; then they demand how he hath lived; and if in answer he doth falsifie them, then they depart, and two more white *Angels* come, who protect him until the day of judgment, one sitting at his head, and the other at his feet; but if he can give no good account of his life, then these terrible *Angels* grievously torment him until the day of doom. A *Purgatory* is so obnoxious unto them, that they beseech God in their *Prayers* to free them from the examinations of those terrible and black *Angels*, as also from the punishments of the grave, and their evil journey. The *Women* once a week flock to the graves of their deceased *Friends* and *Relations*, and weep over them, kissing the stones, and praying for their delivery, oft times leaving *Bread* and *Meat* on their graves, as well for the relieving of *Birds* and *Dogs*, as poor people; and this they hold as an *Almes*, which conduceth to the ease of their deceased *Relations*. And the *Women* are obliged not to marry again until four months and ten dayes are expired. But to proceed to the other *Provinces* in *Greece*.

The *Province* of *MACEDONIA* hath on the East, *Thrace*, and the *Aegean Sea*, or *Archipelago*; on the South, *Thessaly*; on the West, *Albania*; and on the

M m m North,

The Ceremonies of Funerals their habits.

The Province of Macedonia bounded, and its parts.

The Province of Macedonia bounded, and its parts.

North, *Bulgaria* and *Servia*. This Province is at present divided into three parts, to wit into the Territory of *Famboli* towards the North, and contiguous to *Romania*, the chief towns of it being *Heraclia*, *Bylazora*, *Foro*, and lastly *Sydera-Caspa*, famous for its Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, which are exceeding rich. The second part is called *Camenolitari*, being its Southern parts, and on the side of *Thessalie*, its chief places are, 1. *Edissa*, and 2. *Scydra*, both midland Cities, 3. *Pidna*, seated on the influx of the *River Alaicomon*, which runs into the Bay called *Sinus Thermaicus*, which Town was besieged and took by *Cassander*, in which siege he took *Olympus*, the Mother *Roxane* the Wife, and *Hercules* the true apparent of *Alexander the Great*, which three he barbarously put to death, and *Edissa* seated on the same shore, the birth-place of the said *Alexander*. The third part is called *Macedonia*, on the particular *Macedonia*, lying in the midst of this Province. Its chief places are, 1. *Salonichi*, anciently called *Thessalonica*, to the People of which City *St Paul* writ two of his Epistles; it is seated on the *Ægean sea*, and is great Commerce, very populous, peopled with *Christians*, *Turks*, and *Jews*, but chiefly with the last, who are here more numerous than in any part of *Turkey*; this City is the rarest and richest not only of this Region, but also of all *Macedonia*; 2. *Stagira*, the birth place of the famous *Philosopher Aristotle*; 3. *Pallene* sacred to the *Jupiter*; and 4. *Neopolis* on the confines of *Romania*. In this Region is the famous hill *Athos*, which is said to be 75 miles in compass at the bottom, three days journey in height, and casteth its shadow to *Lemnos*, from which it is forty miles distance. It is now called the *Holy Mountain*, as being inhabited by *Religious Grecian Fryars*, where they have 24 *Monasteries*.

Province of  
Albania  
described.

The Province of *ALBANIA*, is Westwards of *Macedonia*, and lyeth on the *Adriatique sea*, famous for being the Country of that eminent and brave soldier *George Castriot*, called by the *Turkes Scanderbeg*, who was so great a scourge to those *Infidels*, of whom it is said (for truth) that in several battailes he killed above 3000 with his own hands, a man so victorious, that whatsoever he undertook he was prosperous in; yet after his death and burial, he was in such great esteem among the *Turks*, that they digged up his body, and happy was he who could get the smallest piece of his bones, which they highly

esteemed, and kept as a choise Jewel, thinking that as long as they wore it about them, they should be invincible. Its chief places are, 1. *Durazzo*, a Town of great strength, 2. *Croja*, under whose walls *Amurath* the second, that damned wretch, finished his wicked life; 3. *Scutari*, or *Scadra*, famous for its resistance it made against the *Turks*, the now Masters of it; 4. *Valona*, a good City seated on the Sea, opposite to *Oranto* in the Kingdom of *Naples*, 5. *Belgrado*, 6. *Albanopoli*, and 7. *Firgo*.

The Province of *THESSALIE*, by the *Turkes* at present called *FANNA*, a Country no less fruitful than pleasant, it lyeth Southward of *Macedonia*. This Region is famous, first for the Hill *Olympus*, which seeming to touch the skies, was by the *Poets* oft taken for Heaven; Secondly, for its pleasant Vale of *Tempe*, about five miles in breadth, and six in length, which was called for its beautifulnes the Garden of the *Muses*; Thirdly, for the *Pharsalian fields*, where the Empire of the whole World was disputed in two great Battails, the one between *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, and the other between *Brutus* and *Cassius* on the one side, and *Anthony* and *Augustus* on the other. Its chief places are, 1. *Armirio*, now the seat of a *Turkish Sanctuary*; 2. *Larissa*, seated on a fair River, which not far distant falls into the Gulf of *Salonichi*; 3. *Tricca*, and 4. *Pharsalia*.

The Province of *EPIRE*, now called *Canina*, hath on the East *Thessaly*; on the South, *Ætolia*; on the West, the *Ionian sea*; and on the North, *Albania*. The whole Country is Mountainous: Its chief places possessed by the *Turkes*, are called *Preveza* and *Larva*, both Sea-Towns; and the chief places in the *Venetians* possession, are *Torre de Butrinto*, and *Perga* also, both Sea Towns and places of good account, opposite and nigh unto which is the Isle of *Cosfon*. In this Province is Mount *Pindus* sacred to *Apollo*, and the *Muses*; and here are also the *Acroeræan hills*, so called for their being so subject to *Thunder-claps*.

The Province of *ACHAÏA*, now by the *Turkes* called *Livadya*, hath on the East, the *Ægean sea*; on the South *Peioponejus*, and its Seas; on the West, the *Ionian sea*; and on the North, *Thessalie*. It is divided into these parts, to wit *ÆTOLIA*, *ATTICA*, *BEOTIA*, *LOCRIS*, *MEGARIS*, *DORIS*, and *PHOCIS*; and in these parts are several good Cities and

Towns;

Towns; In  
to the Provi  
them; now S  
quity; ther  
scarce any o  
fornely a la  
Nursery of A  
whence all  
Fountain) I  
Europe. 2. I  
on the Riv  
Wars here  
Etoacles, So  
Mother and  
by the Mac  
edified by  
nor beauty to  
to this City  
pyla, not abo  
by 300 Spars  
against Xerx  
of his vast A  
of Persia, we  
3. Lepanto, c  
bottom of a  
Augustus and  
pire of the W  
was that sign  
derate Christ  
mer with a F  
feating 270  
Turks, and ta  
140 of their  
Captive Chr  
then 8000 M  
Juan D' Au  
ral, This C  
and affordeth  
as Raw-silke,  
seeds, Honey,  
Sec. 4. Marat  
Miltiades gain  
my of Darius  
Foot, and wh  
where Euclid  
rea, nigh to v  
ing great ba  
and the Pers  
General of the  
260000 Men  
but an incons  
famous for th  
was destroyed  
from it 60 T  
merly of gre  
famous for th  
the habitatio  
this City wa  
Hercules flew  
Hydra.



a choise Jewel, they wore it about invincible. Its name, a Town of Asia, under whose name, that damned life; 3. *Scutari*, resistance it made our Masters of it, rated on the Sea, Kingdom of *Nabatopolis*, and

*ASALIE*, by the *FANNA*, a then pleasant, *acedonia*. This the *Hill Olympus*, the *skies*, was by *aven*; Secondly, *empe*, about five in length, which lines the *Garden* for the *Pharfallure* of the whole two great *Bat-sar* and *Pompey*; *rnus* and *Casbi*; *Anthony* and *Au*-chief places are, of a *Turkish* San- on a fair River, into the Gulf of 4. *Pharsalia*.

*IRE*, now the East *The*-*Esolia*, on the d on the North, ntry is Moun- possessed by the and *Latta*, both chief places in the *orre de Bustrino*, owns and places e and nigh unto w. In this Pro- also the *Aeroce*- or their being so

*AAFA*, now by *na*, hath on the n the South Pe- the West, the *orth*, *Theffalir*. *ts*, to wit *ATO*-*TIA*, *LOCRI*, *A PHOCIS*, and good Cities and Towns,

Towns; I shall only speak of the chief, as to the Province in general, and first with *A-thens*, now *Setines*, more famous for its antiquity, than any thing else. being now scarce any other than a *Fishers-Town*, but formerly a large, rich, and Rately City, the Nursery of *Learning*, and the place from whence all *Artes* and *Sciences* (as from a *Fountain*) spread themselves all over *Europe*. 2. *Thebes*, now *Stives*, seated on the *River Cephissus*, famous for the *Wars* here made between the *Polinices* and *Eteocles*, Son to Prince *Oedipus*, and his Mother and Wife *Jocasta*. It was sackt by the *Macedons*, after which it was rededified by *Cassander*, but of no account nor beauty to what it was formerly. Nigh to this City are the Straights of *Thermopyla*, not above 25 foot broad, defended by 300 *Spartans*, and their King *Leonidas* against *Xerxes*, to the loss of about 30000 of his vast Army, who in their coming out of *Persia*, were said to drink Rivers dry. 3. *Lepanto*, chief of *Atolia*, seated in the bottom of a Gulf so called, and where *Augustus* and *Anthony* fought for the Empire of the World, and where more lately was that signal *battail* between the confederate *Christians* and the *Turkes*, the former with a *Fleet* of only 145 *Gallies*, defeating 270 of the others, killing 29000 *Turks*, and taking Prisoners 40000, with 140 of their *Gallies*, and redeeming 1200 *Captive Christians*, with the loss of less than 8000 Men of the *Christians*, *Don Juan D Austria* being then their General. This City enjoyeth a good Trade, and affordeth several good *Commodities*, as *Raw-silke*, *Cottons*, *Oyles*, *Galls*, *Anniseeds*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Currans*, *Wines*, *Grain*, &c. 4. *Marathron* of note for the Victory *Miltiades* gained against the powerful Army of *Darius*, which consisted of 100000 Foot, and 10000 Horse. 5. *Megara*, where *Euclide* taught *Geometry*. 6. *Platea*, nigh to which was fought an exceeding great *battail* between the *Grecians* and the *Persians*, in which *battail*, the General of the *Persians* together with about 260000 Men died, and of the *Grecians* but an inconsiderable number. 7. *Delphos*, famous for the *Temple of Apollo*, which was destroyed by the *Phocians*, who took from it 60 Tuns of *Gold*. 8. *Sparta*, formerly of great account; and 9. *Misene*, famous for the *Temple of Juno*, as also for the habitation of *Agamemnon*; nigh to this City was the *Lake of Lerno*, where *Hercules* slew the *Lernian Seven-headed Hydra*.

In this Province is the famous *Temple of Esculapius*; where is also the *Mount Ite-licon*, and *Parnassus*, much famous among the *Poets*; and here is also those pleasant *Arcadian* plaines, and the places where the *Olympian* games were solemnized with several other memorable places of Antiquity.

*PELOPONNESUS* now called *MOREA*, is a *Peninsula* bounded with the *Sea*, save only where it is fastned to *Achaja* (which is the main land,) by an *Isthmus* of six miles in breadth, which was once by the *Venetians* and *Grecians*, fortified with a great Wall, and 5 *Castles*, which was overthrowen by *Amurath* the second; who ruined and laid wast most of this Country. It was afterwards by the *Venetians* (who had the greatest part of this Country) rebuilt in 15 dayes, upon a rumour of a new *Warr*, and this *Wall* extended from one *Sea* unto the other, which had it been as well manned as fortified, it might have resisted the fury of the *Turks*, who soon overturned it. The whole *Peninsula* is 600 mile; in compass, and contained once many flourishing *Republicques* or *Provinces*, as *ARCADIA*, *ARGOLIS*, *ACHAÏA PROPRIA*, *ELIS*, *LACONIA*, and *MESSENIA*; but at present it is one sole *Turkish Province*. The *People* were accounted the chief of all the *Grecians*, and directed the rest as subordinate unto them. The chief places in this Country are, 1. *Corynte*, seated at the foot of the *Acro-Corinthian hills*, hard by the *Fountain Pyrene*; it is a small *Town*, and of little note now to what it was, being built out of the ruins of the ancient and famous *Corinth*, which was a place of great strength and power. 2. *Thalana*, nigh unto which is the *Mount Tenarus*, from whence *Hercules* drew *Cerberus*; as also the *Lake Lerna*, where the said *Hercules* slew the Monster *Hydra*. 3. *Missira*, of old *Sparta*, *Lacedaemon*, once of good account. 4. *Selassia*, where *Antigonus* vanquished *Cleomencs*. 5. *Nemaa*, where *Hercules* slew the *Lions*; and in honour of this exploit were the *Nemaaean games* instituted, which for many ages were so famous in *Greece*. 6. *Olympia*, very famous for the statue of *Jupiter Olympicus*, which was 60 Cubits high, and of thickness proportionate to its height, being made of *Gold* and *Ivory*, by the direction of that exquisite Artist *Phidias*; and in honour of this *Jupiter*, were the *Olympick games* instituted by *Hercules*, and performed on the *Plaines* of this City;

Temple of Esculapius.

Peloponnesus, or Morea.

The bounds and extent.

Its name.

The Chief places.

The Statue of Jupiter Olympicus, and its height, thickness, and materials.

the

the Judges choicn for the deciding of controversies which hapned, were the Citizens of this City; and these games were several sorts of manlike exercises, as *Running, Wrestling*, or the like. 7. *Megalopolis*, the birth-place of that eminent Historian *Polybius*. 8. *Mantineia*, nigh unto which the *Theban Army* which consisted of 3000 Horse, and 30000 Foot routed the Army of the *Athenians* and *Spartans*, which consisted of 2000 Horse, and 25000 Foot, where that gallant leader *Epaminondas* received his death's wound. 9. *Lacedæmonia*, 10. *Argos*, 11. *Thebes*, now ruined, but the chief places, especially for *Traffique* now remaining, are, 12. *Modon*, 13. *Coron*, and 14. *Petrus*, all three Cities seated on one shore, subject to the same *Customs*, and found to afford much alike of the same *Commodities*, as *Corne*, 20  
*Wines*, *Oyles*, *Galls*, *Copper*, *Vitrioll*, *Silk*, both raw and wrought, *Grains*, *Cate*, *Wool*, *Cottons*, *Carpets*, *Cummin seed*, *Currants*, *Aniseeds*, &c. and to these places the *English* drive a good trade, especially to *Petrus*, where they have a *Consul*, who is called the *Consul of Morea*; and for these and the like *Commodities* they carry *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Serges*, *English-cloths*, &c.

The Trade of Morea.

Their Coins of the Morea.

*Coynes* here current, as throughout the *Morea*, are, those of *Venice*, and *Turkey*, by reason of its vicinity to them, as also as being *Masters* of the *Morea*.

Their *Coynes* are *Aspers* and *Dollers*, 80 *Aspers* making a *Doller*, or *Rial* of *it*, 100 *Aspers* makes a *Pistoler*, or *French Crown*.

One hundred and twenty *Aspers* is a *Chocquin*, a *Hungar*, or a *Sultany*. And these *Coynes* are often-times found to rise and fall by the *Aspers*, 10, 20, or 30 per cent.

Their *Weights* is the *li.* of 12 ounces, 11  $\frac{1}{2}$  drams making 1 ounce. 3 *li.* makes an *Oake*, which is 4 *li.* 3 ounces *English*, which is 400 *dams*.

One hundred thirty and two *li.* is a *Quincal*, which makes 117  $\frac{1}{2}$  *li.* *English*, 111 *li.* *gross Venice*.

One hundred and forty *li.* is a *Sack*, and is 123 *li.* 14 ounces *English*.

Fifteen ounces is a *li.* of *Silk*, being 17 or 18 ounces *English*.

Their *Measures* for length are two, one for *Silk*, and the other for *Cloth*, and both *Picos*. The *Silk Pico* is 25  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Inches English*: the *Cloth Pico* is 27 *Lines English*.

Their Measures.

Their *Oyle* measure is the *Liver*, which makes 7  $\frac{1}{2}$  *li.* 15 or 16 whereof fills a *Traversers barrel* of 15 gallons *English*, being 112  $\frac{1}{2}$  *li.* neat: and 22 or 27 *Livers* a *Candy Barrel*.

*Corne* is sold by the *Bachel*, whereof 9 $\frac{1}{2}$  makes a *Bushel Winchester Measure English*.

Their *Wine* measure is called a *Loder*; and almost two *Loders* makes a *Traversers barrel*.

### The Isles Seated in the GRECIAN, or ÆGÆAN, IONIAN, and ADRIATIQUE Seas.

IN these *Seas* there are several *Isles*, many of which are of good note, and well frequented by *Merchants*, most of which are in part, if not altogether in the possession of the *Grand Signour*, yet the *Venetian* are not quite expunged. But the *Great Turk* at present, hath divided all or most of them into *Beglerbeyats*, and *Sangiacats*, that is, into *General* and particular *Governments*; there are 60 and odd of these last, under 8 *Beglerbeyats*, which are of *Romeli*, of *Denizi*, of *Buda*, of *Caniz*, of *Agria*, of *Themiswar*, of *Bosnia*, and of *Cassa*. He of *Romeli* is the chief of all the *Estate*; and he of *Denizi* the second. He of *Romeli* holds *Bulgaria*, where he hath his residence in *Sophia*; he holds *Romania*, and that which we have esteemed under the name of *Greece*. He of *Denizi*, or of the *Sea*, hath his principal residence at *Gallipoli* in *Romania*, and extends his power over the *Coasts* of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, and over the *Isles* between those three parts: The *Cities* of *Negropont*, of *Napoli di Romania*, of *St. Naure*, of *Lepanto*, &c. are under his jurisdiction, as likewise *Nicodemis* in *Asia*, *Rhodes* in its *Isle*, and *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, with others. The *Beglerbey* of *Bosna* resides at *Bagnaloc* or *Branjara*; He of *Cassa*, at *Cassa* the chief place of the *Peis Tartars*: Those of *Buda*, *Canisa*, *Agria*, and *Themiswar* are in *Hungary*, and are so many for the better securing the *Frontiers*.

The Æ  
CIA.

The  
are,

En

it is in Ciro

Achaja, fr

Earthquake

sage betwe

floweth feve

Aristote con

to have dr

Towns in th

ed in the G

3. Dion, a Se

2. STAL

about 100 M

being inhab

three Town

strongly forti

chiefe Town

no great not

ral against h

the Earth th

lets, which

Stamp, and

chants for an

3. The S

are a great b

about this Se

thick, that

gerous to Ma

The chiefe

called for its

about 60 Mill

and affordeth

no Wine: He

Brimstone, Its

Marble, Its

2. TIRA.

FIO. 5. PO

7. STAMPA

cuit, whose ch

GO. and 9.

Miles in com

tes beares th

VITA. 11.

13. CHIERO

CLIA. 16.

PHINO.

20. SIDRILA

NO. 23. H

a Golfe so call

MENIA, al

river, which  
of hills a Tra-  
nglish, being  
rivers a Candy

l, whereof 9;  
Measure En-

alled a Load;  
kes a Travers

the GRE-  
GÆAN,  
and ADRI-

s.

re several Isles  
good note, and  
merchants, most of  
together in the  
Signiors, yet the  
punged. But the  
hath divided all  
Begerbeyas, and  
General and parri-  
e are 60 and odd  
Begerbeyas, which  
zi, of Buda, of  
hemiswar, of Bos-  
of Rameli is the  
and he of Deniz  
meli holds Bulga-  
vidence in Sophia;  
that which we  
e name of Greece.  
he Sea, hath his  
llipoli in Romania,  
ver the Coasts of  
ea, and over the  
ree parts: The  
Napoli di Roma-  
panto, &c. are un-  
likewise Nicadomis  
e, and Alexandria  
The Begerby of  
nc or Brvanjara;  
the chief place of  
e of Buda, Canisa,  
in Hungary, and  
eter (securing the

The

## The ÆGEAN, or GRÆCIAN Isles.

49

### The ÆGEAN, or GRÆ- CIAN Isles.

**T**he chief of the ÆGEAN Isles are, 1. **NEGROPONTE**, of old **Enboea**, in the power of the **Turkes**; it is in Circuit 365 Miles, seated nigh to **Achaja**, from which it was rent by an **Earthquake**, there being but a little passage between them, which ebeth and floweth seven times a day; which, because **Aristotle** could not unriddle, he is said here to have drowned himself: The chiefe Townes in this Isle are, 1. **Negroponte**, seated in the **Golfe**, so called. 2. **Caristo**, and 3. **Dion**, a Sea-Town.

2. **STALIMENE**, of old **LEMNOS**, about 100 Miles in compass, well Peopled, being inhabited with **Greeks**, excepting three Townes which the **Turkes** keep strongly fortified, to keep them in awe: Its chiefe Town is **Lemnos**, or **Myrina**, but of no great note: Here is a Sovereaine Mineral against Infection, called **Terra Sicillata**, the Earth thereof is made into small Pills, which are Sealed with the **Turkes** Stamp, and so dispersed and sold to Merchants for an excellent **Antidote**.

3. The **SPORADES**, and **STCLADES** are a great body of several Isles dispersed about this Sea, or **Archipelago**, and lye so thick, that they oft-times become dangerous to **Mariners**, especially in Stormes: The chiefe of which are, 1. **MILO**, so called for its abundance of **Honey**; it is about 60 Miles in compass; is very fertile, and affordeth store of **Grains**, and **Oyle**, but no **Wine**: Here is found great plenty of **Erimstone**, **Milstones**, and excellent spotted **Marble**; Its chiefe place is so called. 2. **TIRA**. 3. **TIRESIO**. 4. **NAMFIO**. 5. **POLYCANDRO**. 6. **NIO**. 7. **STAMPALIA**, about 50 miles in circuit, whose chiefe place is so called. 8. **MORGO**, and 9. **NICSIANO**, each about 75 Miles in compass; and whose chiefe places beares the name of its Isle. 10. **LEVITA**. 11. **ZINARA**. 12. **PIRA**. 13. **CHIERO**. 14. **PERGOLO**. 15. **RAGLIA**. 16. **SIPHANO**. 17. **SERPHINO**. 18. **PARIO**. 19. **SIRNA**. 20. **SIDRILLE**. 21. **MIGONE**. 22. **TENO**. 23. **HELENA**. 24. **ENGLIA**, in a **Golfe** so called; all small Isles. 25. **FERMENIA**, about 60 Miles in circuit;

26. **ZEA**. About 50 Miles in compass. 27. **ANDRI**, about 80 Miles in circuit, and not far from **NEGROPONTE**, and is found to afford much of the same **Commodities**: Its chiefe place, as also those of the two last Isles, beares the same name with its Isle. Then 28. **COOS**, more towards **Asia Minor**; whose chiefe Town is so called, and is Inhabited by **Turkes**, but the rest by **Grecians**. In this Isle was born **Apelles** that famous **Painter**; as also **Hippocrates**, that revived **Physick** when it was lost; and here **Asculapes** had his **Temples** and **Altars**, where he was worshipped. 29. **DELOS**, towards **Negroponte**, famous for the **Temple of Apollo**; as also for a **Custom** here used, that is, not to permit the Birth of **Children**, nor **Dying of People**; so that when a **Woman** was great with **Child**, or any one sick, they were presently sent to the Island of **Rhena**, not far distant.

4. **CANDIA**, or **CRETA**, is an Isle seated in the Mouth of the **Ægean Sea**, being in compass 590 Miles, 270 in length, and 50 in breadth; it is of a fruitful Soile, and affordeth to Merchants several good **Commodities**; as abundance of **Muscadel Wine**, **Sugar**, **Sugar-Candy**, **Hony**, **Wax**, **Gumes**, **Olives**, **Dates**, **Raisens**, &c. but **Corneis** very scarce, which defect is supplied from **Peloponnesus**; The Isle is very populous, and hath many good Towns, the chiefe of which are, 1. **Candia**, the now **Bulmarke** and **Key of Christendome**, in the possession of the **Venetians**; being the only place they are **Masters** of in the whole Isle: which they have so well fortified, and so defended, that all the strength and power which the **Turkes** can bring against it, is not sufficient to repell them thence, as hath of late been sufficiently seen.

Their **Coynes** are the same with those of **Venice**, and they keep their **Accounts** as they do.

They have two **Weights**, or **Quintalls**, 55 in **Venice**, viz. the **Sabile**, and the **Gross**; whereof 100 **li. sabile** of **Candia**, is 114 **li. sabile** of **Venice**; and makes 76 **li. English**. And the 100 **li. gross** of **Candia** is a 110 **li. gross** of **Venice**; and makes 118 **li. English**.

They have also two **Measures**, and both **Picos**; one for **Silk**, and the other for **Cloth**: 100 **Braces** of **Silke** in **Venice** being 100 **Picos** here, which is about 49 **Ells English**. And 100 **Braces** of **Cloth** in **Venice**, is here 106 **Picos** of **Cloth**, which is about 55 **Ells English**.

Nnn

2. Shida,

2. *Shida*, a Maritime Town, enjoying a Commodious Haven, which by the *Turkes* is well fortified, and defended by 2 *Castles*, 3 *Sittia*, and 4 *Canea*. Here in this Island lived *Strabo*, that famous *Cosmographer*.

*Ile of Samothracia*

5. **SAMOTHRACIA**, a small *Ile*, of note for being the Birth-place of *Samo*, one of the *Sybills*, and *Pythagoras*, that *Divine Philosopher*.

And 6 In the *Aegan Sea*, or *Archipelago*, are also these *Isles* following, *viz.*

*Ile of Sciro*  
*Ile of Pelagisi*

1. **SCIRO**, Northwards of *Negroponte*, from which it is not far distant. 2. **SCHIATI**, and 3. **PELAGISI**, more Northwards, and towards the *Golfe of Salonichi*. 4. **TASSO**, a small *Ile*, seated in the entrance of the *Golfe of Contessa* in *Macedonia*. 5. **LENIBRO** also a small *Ile*, not far from *Stalimene*, or *Lemnos*.

### The **JONIAN** Isles.

**T**HE Principal of these **JONIAN ISLANDS** are, 1. **ZANTE**, about 50 miles in circuit, distant from *Peloponnesus* almost 7 leagues; it was called *Zacynthus*, from *Zacynthus* Son to *Dardanus*: The *Ile* is wonderful fruitful in *Oyles* and *Wines*, but especially in *Currants*, of which there is such abundance, that some years the *English* (who have here the chiefe Trade) have laden about 3000 Tuns, which brings no small profit to the *Inhabitants*, as also to the *Signorie of Venice* for *Custome*, under whose command it is: and for these, and other *Commodities*, they receive from *England*, some *Fish* also *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Serges*, *Perpetuanos*, and some *Cloths*; but the principal *Commodity* here brought, is *Spanish Rialls*. The Chiefe *City* in this *Ile* is also called *Zante*, a place not very large, nor beautiful; it is fortified on the East-side with a strong *Castle*, which commandeth not only the *Towne* and *Harbour* thereunto adjoining, but also a good part of the *Sea*; and upon the *Wall* is alwayes placed a *Watchman*, who is to descry what *Ships* approach, and according to the number he hangeth out so many *Flags*: the *Ile* is much troubled with *Earthquakes*, in regard of which they build their *Houfes* very low.

*Ile of Zante*

Their *Coynes* here currant are the same

with those of *Venice*, as being under their *Jurisdiction*, and they keep their *accounts* as they do.

As to their *Weights*, the 106 li. of *Zant* makes 112 li. *English*, 118 li. *Zant* makes 140 li. *Petrus*: And 111 li. 3 ounces of *Zant* maketh the *Ouintall* at *Petrus*, being 132 li. *Petrus Weight*, whereof 140 makes their *Sack of Currants*, and 100 li. *Zant* makes 105 li. 10 ounces *English*.

*Measures* for *Cloth* is as at *Venice*; by the long *Brace* is sold all *Linnen Cloth*, which is; of a *Tard English*: And by the short *Brace* all *Silks*.

The *Cloth Pico* is 27 Inches *English*; And the *Silk Pico* is 25 Inches *English*.

The *Measure* for *Oyles* is a *Liver*, weighing about 13 li. whereof 7, or 8 fills a *Travers barrel*; 10; a *Candy barrel*, and 16 *Candy barrels* makes a *Tunn*: halfe a *Farr* is less then a *Secchi* by one *Bacchello*, 7: *Farrs* making but 6 *Secchi*.

The *Measure* for *Wine* is a *Farr*, 2; whereof fills a *Travers barrel*, and 3; a *Candy barrel*.

Their *Corne Measure* is a *Bacchello*, 3 whereof makes a *Staro* weighing 144 li. and 5 *Killoes* makes 6 *Bacchellos*.

2. **ZEPHALONIA**, about 120 miles in compass; an *Ile* also fertile in the same *Commodities* as *Zant* is, but the *Currants* are smaller, and not of such esteem; it also affordeth *Honey*, *Wax*, *Powder* for *dying Scarlets*, *Wool*, &c. Its chief *Townes* and *Havens* are *Angustali*, *Guiscardo*, and *Nollo*.

3. **VAL DE CAMPARE**, formerly **ITHACA**, about 50 Miles in compass, seated North-Eastwards of *Cephalonia*; famous for the birth-place of *Ulysses*. This *Ile* affordeth most of the *Commodities* that are found in *Zant*, and *Cephalonia*; and the *Currants* are the best and fairest, but in less quantities.

4. **CORFU**, about 54 Miles in length, and 24 in breadth, seated 12 Miles from *Epirus*, and very convenient for the *Venitians* (who are *Masters* of it, as also of those aforesaid) being in the *Center* or heart of their *Territories* by *Sea*. This *Ile* is found fruitful in *Honey*, *Wax*, *Oyle*, and some other *Commodities*: Its Chiefe *City* beares the name of the *Island*, and is now reputed to be one of the *Bulwarkes* of *Christendome*, and the *Key* of the *Venetian State*, being held impregnable; having oftentimes resisted the fury of the *Turkes*: It is seated at the foot of a *Mountain*, on the summit of which are built two strong *Castles*,

*Castles*, seated by the *Venitians*. The other is *St. Angelo*,

5. **CERIGO**, seated about 5 Miles from the *Morea*: in themselves which the *Turkes* call *Marble*; it is large nor chiefe *Towne* where was formerly *Menalaus* was

6. **STROFOLIA**, now called *Strofolia*, is opposite to *Megara*, being a *Grecke Colony* out of the *Ile* of *Women* among them they have a share in their *Labour*, *Agriculture*, and *Dyer* is on *Hill* and the like; sometimes the

7. **SAINT CADIA**, where *Apollo* was born; *Lovers* cast their *Scarlets*, by casting the *Sea*; a *Colony* of the *brain* of *Whimfies*, the name of the *Fewes* which is of all *Command* of *Venitians*, from

The **AEOLIAN** Isles.

**T**HE *AEOLIAN ISLANDS* are, 1. **LENTINI**, seated on the *Morea*; the *Duke* is seated by the *castles* performed with beginning from who, being

ing under their  
p their Account  
e 106 li. of Zant  
B li. Zant makes  
lia 3 ounces of  
ll at Petras, be-  
s, whereof 140  
ants, and 100 li.  
es English.  
es by  
Linnen Cloth  
s: And by the

Inches English;  
Inches English.  
s a Liver, weigh-  
; or 8 fills a Tra-  
y barrel, and 16  
one: halfe a Farr  
one Bacchello, 7:  
is. is a Farr, 2;  
barrel, and 3; a

is a Bacchello, 3  
weighing 144 li.  
shellos.  
about 120 miles  
fertile in the same  
but the Currants  
uch esteem; it al-  
Powder for dying  
Chief Townes and  
Guiscardo, and

ARE, formerly  
iles in compass,  
of Cephalonia;  
ce of Siffes. This  
Commodities that  
ephalonia, and the  
ad fairest, but in

Miles in length,  
ed 12 Miles from  
ient for the Vene-  
of it, as also of  
in the Center or  
s by Sea. This  
Honey, Wax, Oyle,  
Lutes: Its Chief  
the Island, and is  
the Balwarcks of  
y of the Venetian  
egnable; having  
ry of the Turkes:  
of a Mountain, on  
e built two strong  
Castles,

Castles, seated on high Rocks; which are by the Venetians as strongly Fortified. The other places of note, are Castello St. Angelo, and Pagiopoli.

5. CERIGO, in compass 60 Miles seated about 5 Miles distant from Cape Malo in the Morea: It is defended by Rocks, which in themselves are inaccessible, out of which the Inhabitants take abundance of Marble, it hath many Havens, but none large nor commodious for Shipping. Its chief Towne beareth the name of the Isle, where was formerly a Temple dedicated to Venus, out of which Helena the Wife of Menalaus was ravished, and stolne by Paris.

6. STROPHADES, which are 2 small Isles, now called STRIVALLS, seated opposite to Messenia; they are of small account, being inhabited by some few Greeke Colonies, or Fryers, who never go out of the Isles, neither do they permit Women amongst them, but as they die, they have a new supply; they all live by their Labour, some in Fishing, some in Agriculture, and others in Vineyards: their Dyer is on Herbes, Routes, Oyle, Olives, and the like; they are denied Flesh, and sometimes they may eat Fish.

7. SAINT MAURA, formerly LENCADIA, where stood a Temple dedicated to Apollo, where unfortunate and mad-brain'd Lovers were cured of their Frenzies, by casting themselves headlong into the Sea; a course which was sure to ease the brain of those and all other the like Whimsies. The chief Place is called by the name of the Isle, and is inhabited by the Fenec which were driven out of Spain: and this, of all the Ionian Isles is under the Command of the Turkes, the rest by the Venetians, from whom they took this.

barossa, fled to Venice in the disguise of a Cooke, whose Injuries the Venetians re- sented, and in a Sea Fight encountered Orbo the Emperors Son, whom they vanquished, and afterwards restored the Pope to his Seat; who, for a Reward, were by him hon- oured with this Espousal.

The Islands seated in this Sea are not many, and those that are, neither great nor famous; the chief of which, are,

1. ZARA, a small Isle, but the chiefest for Traffique, having many good Harbours for Shipping, fruitful in Wines, Graines, Cat- tel, and some Oyles.

2. VEGEA, fertile in Wine and Pulse, about 10 Leagues in circuit.

3. LESINA, 50 Leagues in compass, being the largest of all the Adriatique Isles; it is very fertile throughout, its chief Towne being so called; a place, though unwall'd, yet of good strength, by reason of its strong Fortesse.

4. CHERSO, well stored with Cat- tell.

5. CURZOLA, a faire, fruitfull, and populous Island, whose chiefe place is so called.

6. GRISSA, about 100 miles in compass, an Isle rich in Salt-piis.

7. ABSIRTIDES.

8. LISSA.

9. ARBE, and

10. BRAZZIA, with some others of no great note; and so much for the Isles, in the AEGEAN, IONIAN, and ADRI- ATIQUE Sea.

The Christians have little Trade with the European parts of Turkey, their own Soile producing the same Commodities, and that in such quantities, as they are able to afford them better cheap to For- eigners.

The chiefe Rivers in TURKEY in Eu- rope are the Drin, the Affea, the Penca, the Wardar, the Mariza, and the Dan, or Da- nube, which of all the others is the strong- est, and most considerable; the others be- ing for the most part only famous in Anci- quity.

1. The DRIN hath its principal springs in the Mountaines of Jofara, whi h divide Albania from Macedonia, traversing Alba- nia, and ending in the Gulse of Venice.

2. Affa in the Morea, more famous for the Fable of Arathufus, and because it pas- seth by the Ruines of Megalopolis in Arca- dia, and of Olimpia Pisa in Elide; then for its Course, and for the Rivers which it re- ceiveth: Its course being not above 30

The ADRIATIQUE Isles.

THE ADRIATIQUE SEA is in length 700 Miles, and 140 in breadth; it was so called from Adria, once a famous Maritime Town, seat- ed on the Mouth of the Rovr Poe. The Venetians are also Lords of this; to whom the Duke is espoused every Assensow-Day by the casting in of a Ring, a Ceremony performed with great State: This took beginning from Pope Alexander the Third, who, being Persecuted by Frederick Bar-

The Isles  
Zara.

Vegea.

Lesina.

Cherso.

Curzola.

Griffa.

Abirtides.

Lissa.

Arbe.

Brazza.

Chief Ri-  
vers in  
Turkey,  
and their  
courses.

River  
Drin.

River Al-  
tea.



or 40 Leagues, and the 149 *Rivers*, which the Antients have given to be but little *Rivers*. The *PENE* in *Thessalia* may have 60 or 65 Leagues in length, and ends in the *Golfe* of *Salonique*, after it hath washeth the famous *Valley Tempe*, between the *Mountaines of Olympus*, and *Ossa*. The *WARDAR* in *Macedonia* falling in the *Golfe*, at 1 near *Salonique*, after having received *Ludias*, which washeth *Pella ville*, famous for having seen the birth and habitation of *Philip*, and *Alexander*, the great Kings of *Macedon*. The *MARIZA* is in *Romania*, passing to *Philippopoli*, *Andrinopoli*, and *Trajanopoli*, falls into the *Archipelago*, over against *Samandracchi*, of old *Samothrace*; where *Persia*, the last King of *Macedon* was taken, alter he was defeated by *Paul Emile*. The *Don*, or *Donaw*, antiently called *Danube*, according to our method is the last, although it be the second in *Europe*, as to its force, and greatness; Its Springs are in *Sevaba* in the Countey of *Furstenberg*, where is the *Schwartz-wald*, that is, the blacke Forest: it passeth to *Ulma*, over against which it receiveth *Iler*, which passeth to *Kempen*, and near to *Memmingen*, passing to *Donawert*. *DANUBE*, together in *Baviera*, where it leaveth *Neuburg* on the right hand, and *Ingolstat* on the left, divideth *Baviera* the *Dutchy* of the *Palatinate*, from whence it receiveth *Noba*: passeth under the *Bridges* of *Ratisbona* and *Straubing*, which are on the right hand, receiving from the same side the *Iser*, which washeth *Munick* and *Landsbous*, *Capitals*, both of the higher and lower *Dutchie* of *Baviera*: receiveth at *Passau* the *Inn*, which commeth from the *Engadina* in the *Grisons*, and which traverteth the County of *Tirol*, where it washeth *Insprak*, that is, the *Bridge*, on the *Tau*, then *Halle* in *Tirol*, and *Kuffin*, &c. and giveth to one part of the *City* of *Passau* the name of *Instar*, that is, the *City* of *Inn*. A little below *Passau* the *Danube* falleth into *Austriche*, and there washeth *Lintz*, the *Capital* of *Austriche*, a little above the *Inn*; receiveth the *River* of *Enn*, where is the *City* so called; washeth *Cremis*, and *Vienna* in *Austriche*, the one on the left, and the other on the right hand of the *Danube*. The *Muran*, which descendeth from *Moravia*, falleth into the *Danube*, between *Austriche*, or *Austria*, and *Hungaria*; where the *Danube* continuing his course; washeth *Prisburg*, the *Capital* *City* of the higher *Hungaria*,

Towards the left hand embraceth the *Iste* of *Shut*, about which, are, *Owar*, or *Falkenburg*, and *Gemer*, or *Favarin*; at the point of the *Iste*, *Komarc*; all 3 strong places, and which have for many years made resistance against the *Turkes*: At *Comarc*, the *Danube* having gathered together all his Waters, passeth to *Gran*, or *Sirigogne*, and between *Buda*, the antient Seat of the *Hungarian Kings*, before the *Turks* seized it: and *Pesth*, embraceth the *Iste* of *Ratzenmarck*, washeth *Colocz* to the left, receiveth the *Drave* to the right, and opposite to the *Iste* *Eravady*; the *Tisse* to the left, and over against *Salonkemen*, the *Save* to the right: and below the meeting of the *Save*, and the *Danube* is *Belgrade*; wherefore the situation ought to be in esteeme, by reason of the nearness of these 4 *Rivers*, viz. the *Danube*, the *Tisse*, the *Save*, and the *Drave*, the least of which hath more then 150 Leagues in length. The *Drave*, and the *Save* have their beginnings in *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*, &c. in *Germany*: and leaving *Germany*, they embrace that which we call the particular *Esclavonia*, which maketh part of *Hungaria*. The *Tiss* or *Tibis* hath his Course intirely in *Hungaria*, beginning in the *Mountaines* of *Crapach*, between *Hungaria*, *Transilvania*, and *Poland*. The *Danube*, after its course to *Belgrade* in *Servia*, is little known unto us, and it was from hence that the Antients began to call the *Ister*: it received to the right all the *Rivers* which descend from *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; and to the left those of *Palania*, and *Moldavia*; it dischargeth it self by 6 or 7 Mouthes into the *Euxine*, or *Black-Sea*: And its course may be about 600 *English* miles, or 200 *German*, or *Hungarian* miles from *Belgrade* to its falling into the *Euxine* *Sea*.

And so much for *Turkey* in *Europe*.

## FRANCE.

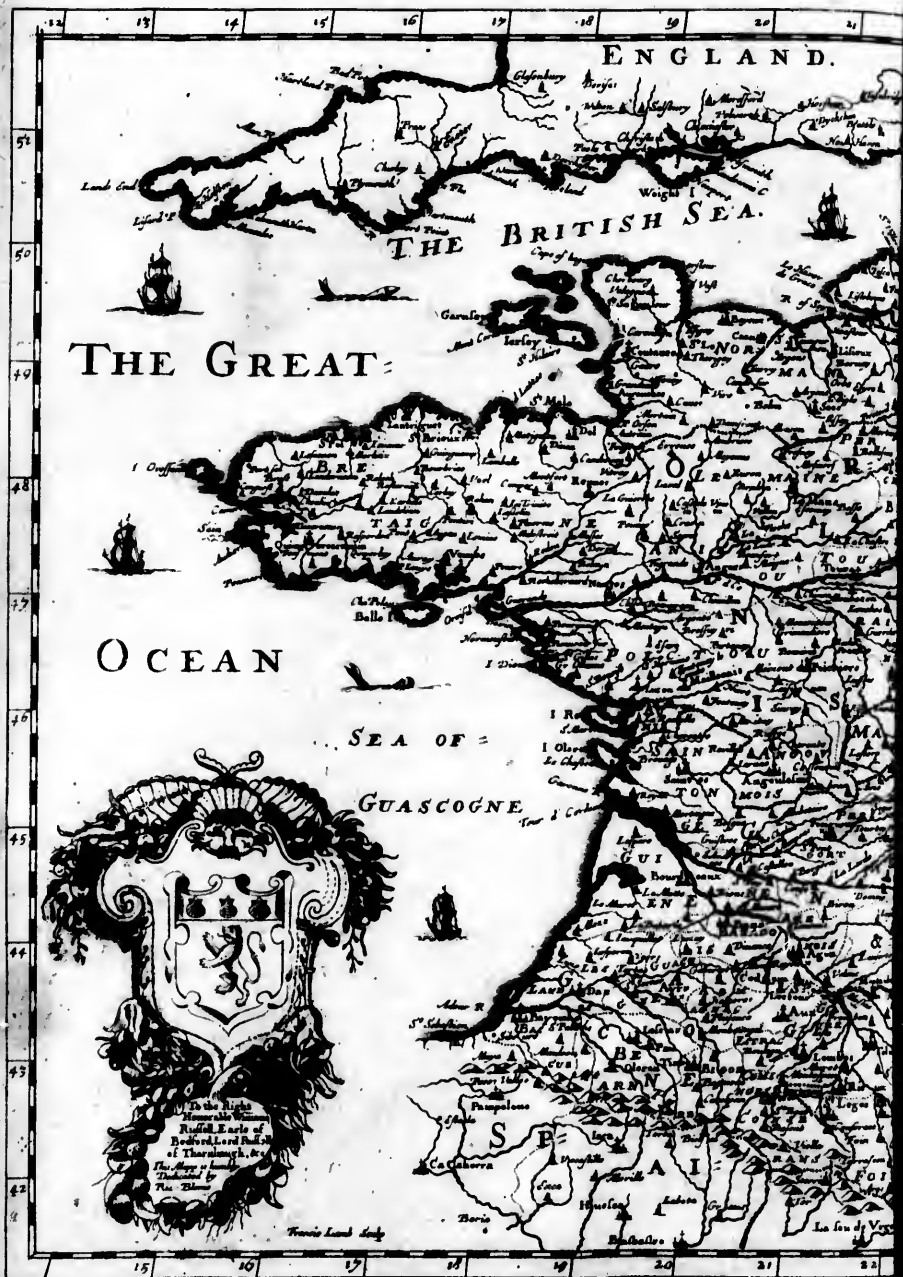
**F**RANCE is the most fruitful, and beautiful *Region*, as also the most eminent and powerful *Kingdome* of all *EUROPE*, and the best that can subsist without the assistance of others: It is situate about the 45 degrees of *Latitude*, which is in the middle of the *Temperate Zone*, (the longest Day being 16 Hours.) All other parts of *EUROPE*, as well above, as below this *Parallel*, being either hotter,

embraceth the *1ste*  
*Owar*, or *Val-*  
*varin*; at the  
 ; all 3 strong  
 or many years  
 e *Turkes*: At  
 g gathered to-  
 eth to *Gran*, or  
*da*, the ancient  
 igs, before the  
 embraceth the  
 neth *Colocz* to  
 ve to the right  
 ewdy; the *Tisse*  
 st *Salonkemen*,  
 and below the  
 the *Danube* is  
 ituation ought  
 of the nearness  
 the *Danube*, the  
 ve, the least of  
 50 Leagues in  
 the *Save* have  
 a, and *Carniola*,  
 ving *Germany*,  
 e call the parti-  
 maketh part of  
*Tibiss* hath his  
 a, beginning in  
 , between *H.* &  
*Poland*. The  
*Belgrade* in *Ser-*  
*us*, and it was  
 ients began to  
 to the right all  
 from *Servia*,  
 est those of *Pa-*  
 dischargeth it  
 the *Euxine*, or  
 may be about  
*ermain*, or *Hun-*  
 to its falling in-

in Europe.

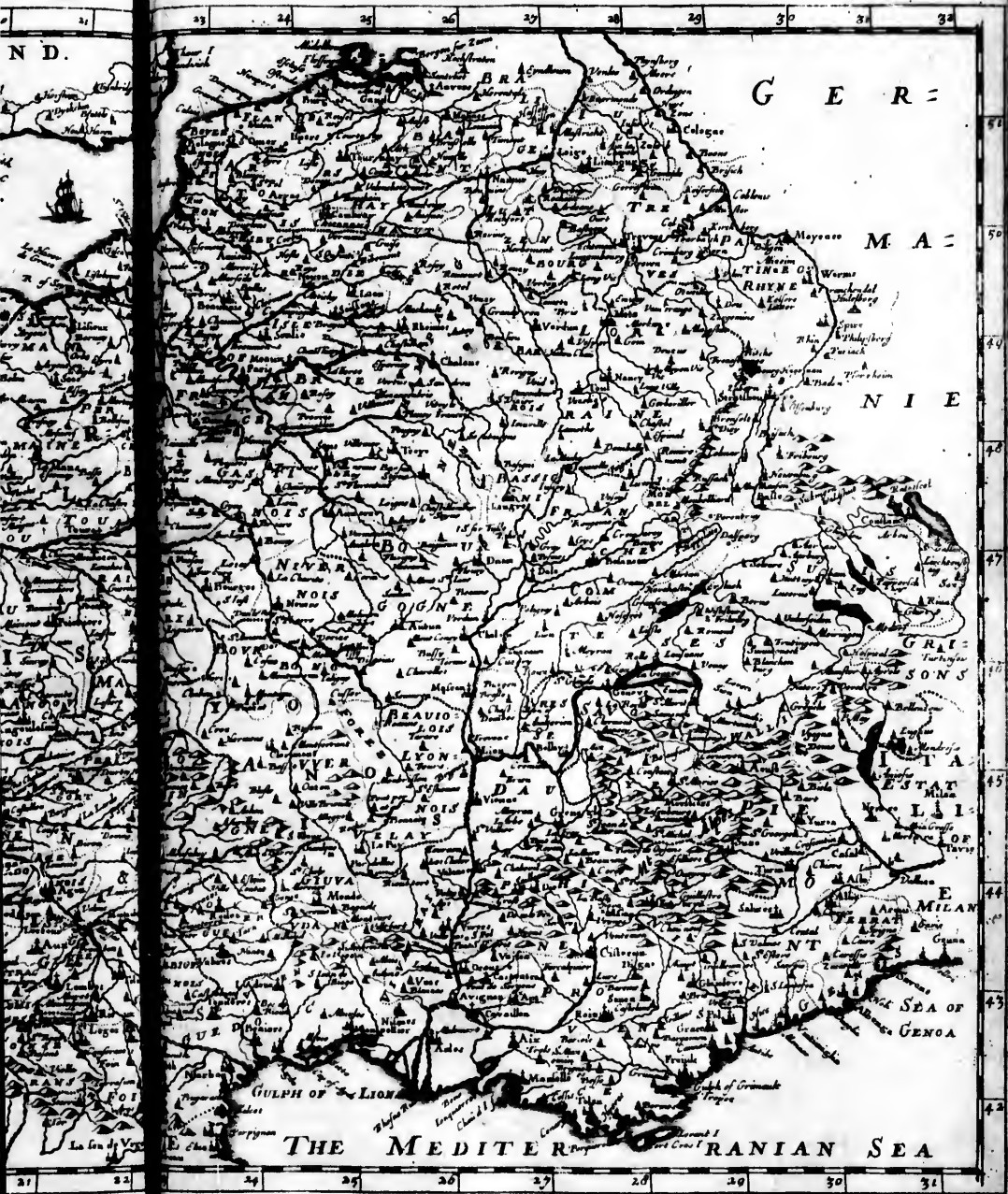
CE.

& fruitful, and  
 also the most  
 ul *Kingdome* of  
 that can sub-  
 of others: It is  
 ces of *Letiunde*,  
*Temperate Zone*,  
 Homes. ) All  
 ; well above, as  
 either hotter  
 or



A GENERAL MAP of the KINGDOM of FRANCE. Delin. by Ric: Blome. By his Majesties Especiall Command. London Printed for

Monfieur 1669



N D. G E R = M A = N I E G R I = S O N S I T A = E S T A T M I L A N P I E M O S A I L I = E M I L A N S E A O F G E N O A

THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA

N N C E. Delin Monficur Sanfon, Geographer to the French King, and Rendred into English, 1669

or colder,  
river Rhine  
drawn from  
South by  
a passage  
West by  
North, by  
it self from  
to the 31  
side, to the  
and bread  
It is conti  
the North  
on the East  
Nothing  
COUNTR  
vers little  
MANT, the  
renew Mo  
Mountaine  
of Hills, an  
dome from

The Sai  
ding for M  
ful Common  
Corns, Win  
ed as so ma  
to them of  
change of  
FRANCE  
about 120  
of Common  
ed to make  
the Custome  
may judge  
nuc. The  
red with at  
the benefi  
Ponds below  
to be about  
are well fur  
Commoditie  
rising King  
Paper, Can  
Gade, Corra  
veral Mann  
&c. the C  
sorts of Pro  
and in exci  
ties they r  
Butter, Che  
Fish both  
Clothes, K  
of all sorts,  
dian and T  
This Ki  
and filled  
numbring  
are now r



or colder, It is washed on the East with the river *Rhine*, together with an imaginary line drawn from *Strasbourg* to *Callais*, on the South by the *Mediterranean-Sea*, and opens a passage to the *Northern-Ocean*; on the West by the *Aquitaine Sea*; and on the North, by the *Brittish Ocean*: It extends it self from the 42 Degrees of *Latitude*, unto the 51; and from the 15th of *Longitude*, to the 29th, which makes its length, and breadth 200, or 225 *French Leagues*. It is contiguous to the *Low-Countries* on the North; to *GERMANY* and *ITALY* on the East; and to *SPAIN* on the South. Nothing separates it from the *LOW-COUNTRY'S* but an imaginary line; divers little Estates divide it from *GERMANY*, the *Alpes* from *Italy*, and the *Pyrenean Mountains* from *SPAIN*: these *Mountains* are as it were a continued ridge of *Hills*, and serve to separate this Kingdom from *SPAIN*.

The *Soile* is extraordinary Fertile, affording for *Merchandise* 3 excellent and useful *Commodities*, in great plenty, to wit; *Corn*, *Wine*, and *Salt*, which may be termed as so many *Load-stones* to draw Riches to them out of other Countreys; in exchange of which is yearly brought into *FRANCE* (according to computation) about 120 thousand pounds *Sterling-worth* of *Commodities*: and the King is observed to make 70000 *Crowns* yearly only of the *Customs* of the *Salt*; by which we may judge of the largeness of his Revenue. The Kingdom is every where stored with abundance of *Fish*, for besides the benefit of the *Seas*, the *Lakes* and *Fonds* belonging to the *Clergy* are reputed to be about 135 thousand, most of which are well furnished therewith: The other *Commodities* for *Merchandise* in this flourishing Kingdom, are *Wines*, *Oyles*, *Almonds*, *Paper*, *Cavium*, *Linens*, fine and coarse, *Wade*, *Corral*, *Skins*, *Nuts*, *Stuffs*, and several *Manufactures*, *Toyes*, and *Curiosities*, &c. the Country is very plentiful in all sorts of *Provision* both of *Cattel* and *Fowls*; and in exchange of which said *Commodities* they receive from *England* *Leather*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Pilchers*, *Herrings*, and other *Fish* both salt and dried; *Lead*, *Tin*, *Clothes*, *Kerfies*, *Frises*, *Cottons*, *Stockings* of all sorts, *Spices*, *Cahicoes*, and other *Indian* and *Turkish Commodities*.

This Kingdom is exceeding populous, and filled with *Townes* and *Cities*, once numbering 100 thousand *Parishes*, which are now reduced to a less number: The

People are well proportioned, and indifferent handsome, especially the *Men*; they are observed to be of a ready wit, *ingenious*, and apt for *invention*; they are of a courteous *behavior* as well among themselves, as to strangers; yet they are *litigious*, great *Scuffers*, of a hot brain, and soon moved to *brades*; they are observed to be *inconstant*, *luxurious*, *verbolists*, *effeminate*, and much addicted to the *smock*. In weighty *Affaires*, both *Civil* and *Martial* they are not over-subtle, Their first attempt being like *thunder*; and their end like *smoke*: In their *Wars* hot and fierce *Chargers* for the first; and as quick *retreaters*: they are very *active*, and given to *Exercises*, as *Tennis*, *Faulking*, *Riding* the great Horse, *Dancing*, &c. The *Women* are of a ready wit, wanton, and not over modest, nor chaste.

In matters of *Religion* they follow the *Church of Rome*, in which they are not over-strict; yet there are abundance of *Protestants* among them, who have Toleracion for the exercise of their *Religion*: there is every where a great many *Religious Houses*, which are filled with devout Persons.

It would be too tedious to observe all the different *Orders* and *Governments* in this Kingdom; we will therefore content our selves to say at present, that in the *Assemblies* of the General *Estates*, where the *Clergy*, *Nobility*, and *Third Estate* have their Seats, it is alwayes divided, or at least hath for a long time been so, into 12 General *Governments*; of which 4 are on this side, or, if you please, Northward of the *Loyre*; 4 upon, and about the *Loyre*, and 4 beyond, and South of the *Loyre*.

The 4 on this side are, *PICARDY*, *NORMANDY*, the *Ile of FRANCE*, and *CHAMPAIGNE*: the 4 about the *Loyre* are, *BRITTANY*, *ORLEANS*, *BOURGOGNE*, and *LYONNOIS*: and the four beyond the *Loyre*, are, *GUYENNE* and *GASCOYNE*, *LANGUEDOC*, the *DOLPHINE*, and *PROVENCE*: In each *Government* are several *paris*; or *Counties*, and in each a great many *Cities*, which I have largely observed in my *Geographical Tables*, therefore it shall suffice to say something of the *Chiefs*; of which in order.

*PICARDY* is environed with *Normandy*, *Flanders*, *Champaigne*, and the *Sea*; it is (or may be) divided into the higher and lower; in both of which are many *Towns*. In the lower are; *La Calais*, called by

*Caſar, Portus Ictius*, accounted part of *Bukonius*, held by the *Engliſh* near 20 years; it was taken by *Edward the Third* after 11 Months ſiege, in *Anno* 1347, and unfortunately loſt by *Queen Mary* in 14 dayes ſiege: the poſſeſſion of this place was of ſuch great importance, that it was accounted the Key of the Kingdom; it is eſteemed one of the beſt Ports in *Picardy*, ſeated oppoſite to *Dover* in *Englond*, from which it is diſtant about 10 Leagues, once of *Great Trade*, as being the *Staple* for *Engliſh Wools*, now obſoly of note, for its being the receipt of *Paſſengers* from this Kingdom to *Englond* to and from *Bulwigne*, a ſtrong Frontier Town towards the *Sea*, taken by *Henry the Eighth* of *Englond* in *Anno* 1544, at which time the *Emperor Maximilian* bore Armes under the *Engliſh Croſs*.

The Province of Picardy, with its chief Cities, &c.

In the new Edition.

In the higher *PICARDY* are, by the *City Amiens*, a Frontier Town, towards *Flanders*, well-Fortified, and famous for the ſudden loſs, and as ſudden and brave regaining it by *Henry the Fourth*. 2. *Abbeville* in *Ponthieu*, and 3. *St. Quentin* in *Vermandois*; likewiſe 3 ſtrong Frontier Townes. This Province is very fertile, and abundant in all things, excepting *Wines*; their *Grapes*, by reaſon of its Northern ſituation, not coming to ſufficient maturity.

*NORMANDY* hath on the South *Maine*, and the *Iſle of France*, on the Eaſt the *River Roine*, and on all other parts of the *Ocean*; it is well watered with *Rivers*, among which the *Rivers Seine, Anou, and Orne* take their courſe through it. This Dukedome of *Normandy* containeth ſeveral fair Townes and Cities commodiouſly ſeated for Trade, by reaſon of their neighbourhood to the *Britiſh Ocean*, the chief of which are, 1. *Rouen*, or *Roane*, antiently *Rothomagus*, being the Metropolitan City in this Dukedome, ſeated in the higher *Normandy* on the banks of the *River Seine*, over which there is a famous *Bridge of Boates*; here is held one of the *Parliaments of France*. In the chief Church of this City, called *Noſtre Dame*, is the Sepulchre of *John Duke of Bedford*, *Regent of France*. It is a place of as great a Trade as any in all *France*, being one of the three principal Townes where *exchanges* are uſed. The *Commodities* that are hence transported (being the produa of all *Normandy*) are *Linnens* both coarſe and fine, *Ruchrons, Cards, Papers, Canvas, Thread, Box-Combs, Teafes* for *Clothworkers*, ſome *Wines* called *Paris Wine, Siffes,*

The Duke of Normandy, with its chief Cities.

In Commodities and Trade.

and many *Manufatures* which are here made.

*Commodities* moſt vendable here, are *Devonſhire and Worceſhire Kerſes, Cotons of Yorkſhire and Wales, Bayes, Caſall*, ſeveral ſorts of *Cloths, Lead, Tin, Fiſh, Butter*, and alſo ſeveral *Indian and Turkiſh Commodities*.

*Coynes* here: currant are the ſame with thoſe of *Paris*.

The *Kings Beame*, or *Weight*, is here called the *Viconte*, which is 104 li. of *Paris Weight*, by which is weighed all *Commodities* whatſoever, except *Wool*, for which 108 li. is the C. And it is obſerved that their 104 li. which makes the 100 weight *Viconte*, maketh 114 li. *Engliſh*, and conſequently the 100 4 per cent. more.

The *Meaſure* is the *Aine*, by which all *Commodities* are meaſured, which maketh by experience 46 Inches *Engliſh*. And it is obſerved, that in buying of *Linnen Cloth* of this Country, there is allowed in account of *Meaſure* 24 *Aines* for 20, and this is called, The *Merchants Meaſure*: which ſaid over-*Meaſure* is likewiſe found in *Deep, Cane*, and ſome other *Cities of Normandy*.

In this City are 3 *Faires* annually kept, at a of which there is a Liberty given for 15 *Dayes*, to buy and transport any *Commodity* in this City free from the Antient *Duties of Cuſtoms*, provided the ſaid Goods be laden, and departed down the *River* as far as *Newhaven Road* by 15 dayes after, elſe to pay the uſual *Cuſtome*.

The firſt of theſe *Faires* beginneth the Third of *February*, and continueth 15 *Working dayes*. The ſecond beginneth on *Whiſon-Munday*, and laſteth alſo 15 *Working dayes*. And the third beginneth the 23th of *October*, and laſteth 8 dayes, whereof but 5 *Working dayes*, and this laſt is the greateſt *Faire* in the year for *Wines*, but it is not held a free *Faire* as the other two are.

In this City the *Engliſh* have a *Publick-Hall* allowed them for the Sale of *Engliſh Woolen-cloth*, to which place they are at certain ſet dayes enforced to carry the ſame, and lay them open, and expoſe them to ſale; and for the hire of the ſame, and cuſtody of their *Cloth*, they pay a *duty*, or *rent*.

*Cant* in *La-baſſe*, or the lower, famous for its long reſiſtance of *Henry the Fiſth* of *Englond*.

*Deiſe* likewiſe, a *City* of ſome Trade, a common landing-place for the *Engliſh* in their paſſage into *France*.

4. *Hawe de* ſtrongeſt place once a ſtrong Duke *Robert* ſeeing ſome M ved one *Arles* ſimply foot it joy her, thinking Bed; whereup tained his deli with her, in that he began King of *Englond* and diſgrace call *Wobres*, H mous for the acient *Divine taigne*. 8. *Per* 10. *Conſtance*.

The Uſe of circlings, and other little Br all *France*, whi its particular Kingdom, to v quaſi *lato ſita*, Soil: This C and the numbe juſtly contend rope, if not in about twelve Suburbs are round than vally gently glides grace, and then in a Soil ſo te ſuch plenty, v ful, ſince thoug hath no paſſage *Seine*, and that of no great bur ſtrength, no in matter of Tr ſelves with eno and *Cover*; yet *Coyne*: all Ci ther of the thr are 1. 2. a ty, *Stran*, wh *France* commo *London* for *Eng* ſyed with the King; the chi Palace of the abroad, the re the many *Palac* among the reſt *Place-Royal*, it

which are here

able here, are  
sist, Cottons of  
Coxall, several  
sist, Butter, and  
sist Commodi-

the same with

weight, is here  
100 li. of Pa-  
sist all Com-  
cept Wool, for  
it is observed  
makes the 100  
li. English, and  
per cent. more,  
by which all

which maketh  
English. And it  
of Linnen Cloth  
wed in account  
and this is cal-  
red: which said  
ound in Deep,  
Cities of Nor-

annually kept,  
poetry given for  
about any Com-  
the Antient Du-  
the said Goods  
n the River as  
5 days after,

beginneth the  
continueth 15  
and beginneth  
lasteth also 15  
the third begin-  
and lasteth 8  
king-days, and  
in the year  
d a free Fair

ve a Publick-  
Sale of English  
they are at  
carry the same,  
them to faile,  
e, and custody  
uty, or rent,  
the lower, fa-  
e of Henry the

City of some  
place for the  
into France.

4. *Havre*

4. *Havre de grace*, or *New-Haven*; the strongest place in *Normandy*. 5. *Falck*, once a strong Town, and here it was, that Duke *Robert* passing through this Town, seeing some Maides a dancing, he observed one *Arlet*, a *Skinner*: Daughter, so nimbly foot it, that his desires were to enjoy her, thinking she would be as active in Bed; whereupon he sent for her, and obtained his desire, for a Nights Lodging with her, in which, she so pleased him, that he begat on her *William* the battard King of *England*, in spite to whom, and disgrace to his Mother, the English call *Whores*, *Harlots*. 6. *Charenten*, famous for the Preaching here of that eminent Divine *Peter du Monin*. 7. *Mortaigne*. 8. *Pervins*. 9. *Auranches*, and 10. *Constance*.

The Isle of *FRANCE*, made so by the circlings, and confluences of the *Seine*, and other little Brooks, lyeth in the heart of all *France*, where we shall find, not only its particular glory, but that of all the Kingdom, to wit *Paris*, formerly *Lutetia quasi into sita*, because seated in a Clayey Soil: This City, for its riches, power, and the number of its inhabitants, may justly contend with any whatsoever in *Europe*, if not in the whole World; it is about twelve Miles in circuit, if all the Suburbs are reckoned; in some rather round than oval, seated on the *Seine* which gently glides to *Rhevan*, so to *Havre de grace*, and thence to the *Brittish Ocean* and in a Soile so fertile, that no City knows such plenty; which is the more wonderful, since though so large and populous, it hath no passage by Water to it, but the *Seine*, and that Navigable only by Boates of no great burthen; a City of no great strength, nor of much consequence in matter of Trade, only contenting themselves with enough to serve the inhabitants and *Covers*; yet it giveth Rule in matter of *Coyne*: all Cities in *France*, and is another of the three Cities where Exchanges are: 1. a convenience for the Nobility, *Wry*, and *Courtiers*, as also for *Strangers*, who in their Travels into *France* commonly reside at *Paris*, as in *London* for *England*: This City is dignified with the ordinary residence of the King; the chief Ornaments of it are the Palace of the *Louvre*, so much famous abroad, the residence of the King, besides the many Palaces of the Nobility, and among the rest that of *Luxembourg*; its Place *Royal*, its Church of *Noftra Dame*,

its University formed by *Charlemaine* in Anno 800, at the persuasions of *Alcuine* an English man; it is esteemed the first of *Europe*, of a large extent, containing 55 Colledges, and particularly the Colledge of the *Sorbuna*; also the Halls of Justice, or Courts of Parliament, being as our Courts of Judicature, are all remarkable.

The Commodities here found are fine Wines, called *Vin de Burgondy*, *Champaigne*, and *Besne*, all sorts of Manufactures of Silks, Laces both Gold, Silver, Silk, and Thread, Ribons, Hatts, all sorts of Ornaments for the Body, all sorts of Toys, together with several other Commodities which are the product of *France*.

Commodities most vendable here, are *Bayes*, *Cloth*, *Serges*, *Stockings* of all sorts, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Allame*, *Copperis*, all sorts of Spices, *Callicoes*; and other *Indian* and *Turkish* Commodities.

The *Coynes* here, as generally through all *France*, is the *Denier*, 2 whereof makes a *Double*, and 12 *Deniers* a *Souls*, and 20 *Souls* a *Liver*, or *Frank*, and by these they keep their Accounts.

But the *Coynes* for the present are only *Gold*, and *Silver Lewis*; the *Gold Lewis* weighing 11 *Deniers*, and 12 grains, which is the same weight with the *Spanish Pistoll*, and the same Standard: it formerly went for 10 *Livers*, and now for 11. The *Silver Lewis* weigheth 21 *Deniers* and 12 grains, which is a little above the weight of a *Spanish Piece of Eight*, and about the same Standard, and goeth for 3 *Livers*, or 60 *Souls*, and maketh 4s. 6d. *Sterling*.

Their Weight is the *Quintal* of 100 li. of 16 ounces the li. which produceth at *London* near 110 li. *Suttle*.

Their Measure is the *Alne*, which is 1 1/2 yard, or 45 Inches *English*.

Next to this City may be reckoned, 1. *St. Dennis*, seated about 3 Miles from *Paris*, famous for the Sepulchers of the *French Kings*. 2. *Soissons*, 3. *Beauvais*, 4. *Pontoyse*, 5. *Poisby*, 6. *Sen-lis*, and 7. *Maux*.

In this Province is the beautiful House and Forrest of *Fontaine Blean*, built by *Henry the Fourth*, being esteemed not only one of the fairest Palaces in all *France*, but of Christendome; as also the Royal Mansions of *St. Germans*, and *Boys de Vincennes*, where the pious *Henry the Fifth* finished his dayes. In this Province is the Dukedom of *Falou*, whose chief places are *Luzarch* and *Sen-lis*; this Countrey abounds in *Vineyards*, which yield the sharp Wine called *Vin de Paris*.

CHAMPAIGNE;

**CHAMPAIGNE** had its name from being a Champion Countrey, it is encompassed about with *Picardy*, the *Low-Countries*, *Lorraine*, the *Burgundies*, *Berry*, *Buzbon*, and the *Ile of France*, its chief Cities are, 1. *Rheims*, famous for being the place which the Kings of *France* are commonly Crowned, and Anointed with an *oyle* here kept, which they say came down from Heaven, and never decreaseth, and here is a *Colledge* for the entertainment of the *English Jesuits*; next to this place may be consider'd *Chaaloons*, *Sens*, *Langres*, *Troyes*, &c. This Countrey being all in Plain, must necessarily be very fertile.

Province of Champagne divided.

**BRITANNY** is environed with *Maine*, *Tourene*, and the *Sea*, towards which it hath the Sea-Port Towns of *Brest*, *Blawett*, and *St. Malas*, and within Land the Cities of *Names* seated on the Banks of the *Loyre*. 2. *Rennes*, on the little River *Vilens*, where the *Parliament* for this Province is held. 3. *Vannes*, seated on the south Sea. 4. *Braine*. And 5. *Mur-laix*, affording great store of Paper, so called: This Province was first called *Armorica*, now *Britanny*, from the *Brittains* who flew hither in the time of the *Saxons* Tyrannizing over them in *England*, and have ever since continued, and their Language yet in part remaining.

Province of Brittany divided.

Under the name of the Government of **ORLEANS**, we comprehend divers Provinces on this side, upon, and beyond the *Loyre*, in which there are a great many faire Cities, each the Capital of its Province. But a word or two of each Province.

The Treasury of La Beauce.

**LA BEAUCE** hath on the East, the *Ile of France*, on the South the *Loyre*, on the West *Maine*, and on the North *Normandy*; Its chief places are 1. *Chartes*, seated on the *Loyre*, a fair and pleasant City, dignified with an *University* for the Study of *Civil Law*. 2. *Etampes*, and 3. *Chasteau Dun*.

Province of Maine.

**MAINE**, Northward of *Anjou*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Mans*, or *Maine*, situate on the River *Magenne*, which empieth it self into the *Loyre*. 2. *Laval*, and 3. *Domsfont*.

Province of Anjou.

**ANJOU**, adjoining to *Maine*, a small Province, but exceeding fertile, and affords the best Wines in *France*; it hath for its chief places 1. *Angiers*, dignified with an *University*, which was founded by *Lewis the Second*, Duke of this place, in *An. 1388*; and 2. *Saumur*, a Town delight-

fully seated on the *Loyre*, dignified with the only *Protestant University* in *France*.

**TOURNAINE** lyeth South-Eastwards of *Anjou*, hath for its chief Town *Tours*, where the *Protestants* first began, and from one of whose Gates (called *Hugous Gate*) the *Hereticks* in *France* were called *Hugonots*; nigh to this place it was that *Charles Martel* Father of King *Pepin*, in *Anno 733*, discomfited an Army of about 400 thousand *Saracens*, of whom he slew near 370 thousand.

**BLASOIS**, Eastwards of *Touraine*, hath for its chief place *Blois*, where in the year 1572, by the command of *Henry the Third*, the Duke of *Guise*, the first stirrer up of the civil Wars in *France*, as also the great contriver, and promoter of the grievous Massacre at *Paris*, was slain in the senate House.

**ORLEANS**, whose chief place is called *Orleans*, from whence the Government took its name; a City, that *Paris* excepted, may contend with the chief in *France*, having once been the Seat of a King of its own; its pleasant situation on the *Loyre* makes it extreme beautiful, and delightful; on the chief Bridge of this City is the *Statue of Foame*, the *Paucelle D'Orleans*, who beate the *English* from its Walls, and saved the Town; it was called by *Caesar*, *Genabum*, afterwards *Arelia*; and the Countrey about it *Areliaensis*. This City is of no great Trade, yet is a great *Through-faire* for such Commodities as pass to *Lyon*, and other Cities in the heart of the Countrey.

**NIVERNOIS**, or **BURBON**, is watered by the Rivers *Loyre* and *Allier*; its chief places are, 1. *Nevers*, of some account for its pretty *Glass-works*, dignified with an ancient Dukedome. 2. *La Charite*, 3. *Clamecy*, and 4. *Doney*.

**BERRY** is very fertile, hath rich Pastures, where is a great abundance of Sheep, of whose Wool the Inhabitants make store of Cloth; its chief place is *Burges*, dignified with a flourishing *University*; here is also *Argentem*, *Sancerris*, *Chasteau Romx*, with several others.

**POICTOU**, a large and populous Province, numbering about 1200 *Parishes*; and dignified with 3 *Bishopricks*; its chief places are 1. *Poitiers*, seated on the River *Gloviou*, famous for the Study of the *Civil Law*; and, for greatness, said to be next to *Paris*; but, in matter of Trade of no note. 2. *Lafon*. 3. *Nailletais*; and 4. *Chastelleraud*. This Countrey is very

very fertile and in the morable *Edward* and *Edward* ward, con the day.

**ALLIANCE** its chief modiously reason of Trade, the City *Vesse* is a place by the re habiting m of the Kir the refuge at this Meg the *Thirso* here found dy, and a *Ray*, &c. them *New* ser, several *Calve-shin* Coynes h *Paris*.

Their *M* li, which Their *M* keth 44 *M* Its other borders of are, *Verence* tome are *Angoumois*, chief place

In the *BOURGOGNE*, built by ia her *Par* to *St. Bern* City of this an *Episcopa* its Bately *Princes Pal* *Chalonnais* of *Orange*, where the putes to a ently know Book, *Est* 6. *Senmur* is ot *Bourges* to *Champ* *Chastillon* and border Adjacen Governme

very dignified with  
 versity in France.  
 South-Eastwards  
 chiefe Town *Tours*,  
 it began, and from  
 called *Hugons Gate*)  
 were called *Hugo-*  
 it was that *Charles*  
*epin*, in Anno 732,  
 about 400 thou-  
 he slew near 370

is of *Touaine*, hath  
*ry*, where in the  
 maad of *Henry the*  
*ise*, the first stirrer  
 in France, as also  
 promoter of the  
*Paris*, was slain in

ose chiefe place is  
 hence the Govern-  
 a City, that *Paris*  
 d with the chiefe  
 been the Seat of  
 pleafane scituation  
 xtreame beautiful,  
 e chiefe *Bridge* of  
 of *Foane*, the *Pu-*  
 beate the *English*  
 ved the Town; it  
*enabum*, afterwards  
 ntry about it *An-*  
 y is of no great  
 ough-faire for *rich*  
*Lyon* and other  
 the Country.

*RBON*, is watered  
 d *Aliter*; its chief  
 f some account for  
 dignified with an  
 2. *La Charite*,  
*ney*.

ile, hath rich Pa-  
 ear abundance of  
 Inhabitantes make  
 place is *Burges*,  
 sing *Univerfity*:  
*Sauverry*, *Chasteau*  
*s*.

nd populous *Pro-*  
 300 *Parifites*; and  
 rich; its chiefe  
 eated on the Ri-  
 the study of the  
 times, said to be  
 mitter of *Trade*  
 3. *Maille*  
 This Country is  
 very

very fertile, especially in good *Vineyards*, and in these fields were fought that memorable Battel, between *John of France*, and *Edward the black Prince*, where *Edward*, contrary to all expectation, gained the day.

*ALLNIS*, South of *Poiton*, hath for its chief place *Rochel*, seated most commodiously on the *Aquitaine Ocean*; by reason of which it is a City of a great Trade, the *Sea-tides* bringing into the very City *Vessels* of a considerable burthen: it is a place of great strength, as may appear by the resistance the *Protestants* there inhabiting made against the powerful Army of the King of France; being long before the refuge of the *Rebellious Hugonots*, till at this siege it was dismantled by *Lewis the Thirteenth*: The chief Commodities here found, are, *Rebeck Wine*, *Salt*, *Brandy*, and a small sort of *Wine*, called *Vine de Rey*, &c. In exchange of which is brought them *New-found-land Fish*, *Herrings*, *Butter*, several *English Manufactures* of *Cloth*, *Calveskins*, *Lead*, *Spices*, &c.

*Coynes* here currant, are the same as at *Paris*.

Their *Weights* is the *Quintall* of 100. li. which maketh at *London* 110. li.

Their Measure is the *Aine*, which maketh 44 *Inches English*.

Its other Provinces are, *Perche*, on the borders of *Normandy*, whose chief places are, *Vereuil*, and *Mortaigne*, which by some are esteemed in *Normandy*. And *Angoumois*, to the South of *Gascogne*, whose chief place is *Angoulesme*.

In the Province of *BOURGHNDY*, or *BORGOGNE*, the chief Cities are, *Dyon*, built by the Emperour *Aurelian*, proud in her *Parliament*, and for giving birth to *St. Bernard*. 2. *Auxon*, once the chief City of this *Dukedome*, and dignified with an *Episcopal See*. 3. *Braune*, Famous for its *Rately Hospital*, equalizing many *Princes Palaces* in *Europe*. 4. *Challon*, in *Chalonnais*, and belonging to the House of *Orange*. 5. *Macon* in *Masconnais*, where the *Devil* made his *Visits* and *Disputes* to a *Minister*, which Story is sufficiently known, and being at full related in a Book, Entituled, *The Devil of Macon*. 6. *Senur* in *Auxois*, seated on the borders of *Bourgogne* Northwards, and adjoining to *Champagne*, and *Orleanois*. And 7. *Chastillon* on the *Seine*, also Northward, and bordering upon *Champagne*.

Adjacent to the Province, (and in the Government) of *Bourgogne*, are the

Countreys of *Bress*, *Baliage*, and *Bugey* and *Veromey*.

*BRESS* to the South-east, is but small, and hath for its chiefe place *Bourge*, a Town so well built, and so strongly fortified, that it is esteemed impregnable. This Country was by the Duke of *Savoy* delivered to *Henry the Fourth* of France, in lieu of the *Marquisate of Saluces*.

*BALLIAGE*, more Eastwards, and bordering upon the *Swisses*, and *Savoy*; its chiefe place is *Gex*, too far distant from the City of *Geneve*.

*BEMGET* and *PEROMET* on the South, and bordering upon *Dolphine*, and *Savoy*, its chief place is *Bellej*, of some account.

In the Government of *GUYENNE*, and *GASCOGNE*, are several Provinces, in which are many Cities; the chiefe of which is the City of *Bordeaux*, seated on the bankes of the River *Geronde*; this place is famous for being the Birth-place of King *Richard the Second*; at present honoured with an *Univerfity*, and a *Parliament*; It is a place of a considerable Trade, being plentifully furnished with several good Commodities, as *Wines* both White and Red, *Paper*, *Brandy*, *Feathers*, *Argoll*, *Prunes*, *Verdigrease*, *Kid-skins*, *Rafin*, *Vinegar*, *Corke*, *Walnut-tree*, &c.

Commodities most vendable here, are, *Lead*, *Tin*, *Copperas*, *Pilchers*, and other *Fish*, *Butter*, *Calveskins*, in all quantities of *Cloths*, also *Spices*, *Callicoes*, and other *Turkish* and *Indian Commodities*.

*Coynes* here currant are the same with those of *Paris*.

Their *Weight* is the *Rintar* of 100. li. of 16 ounces per li. which maketh at *London* 110. li.

The Measure here used is the *Aine*, which maketh 1; yard, or 45 *Inches English*, and this is the general *Aine* used at *Paris*, and throughout France.

Nigh to this City is the small Village *le Grene*, which yieldeth those excellent *VVines*, called *Graves-VVines*; and also between *Tholonis* and this Town, groweth those sweet *VVines*, called *Hibb Country-VVines*.

In the Particular *GUYENNE*, is, 1. The Province of *SAINTONGE*, South of *Poiton*, whose chiefe place is called *Saintes*. 2. The Province of *PERIGORT* hath for its chiefe place *Perigeneuse*, seated on the River *Isa*, and in the midst of the Countrey. 3. The Province of *Limoſin*, encompassed with the Provinces of

*Perigort*,  
*Limousin*,  
*Auvergne*,

Bress.

B. Ballage.

Bugey and Veromey.

Government of Guyenne and Gasconne.

In Commerce and Trade.

In Coyne.

Their Weights.

Their Measure.

Province of Saintonge.

Perigort.

Limousin.



*Auvergne, Saintonge, Poitou, and Berry,* its chief places are, 1. *Limoges, Tulle,* and *Briue*. 4. The Province of *QUERCY*, or *MERCU*, South of *Limofin*; its chief places are, 1. *Cahors*, seated on the ascent of a hill, a rich and beautiful City; and 2. *Montalban*, seated on the *Garond*, a place of good strength, being one of the cautionary Towns, and once in the possession of Protestants. 5. The Province of *ROVERGNE*, which hath for its chief place *Rodez*; and 6. The Province of *AGENOIS*, whose chief place is called *Agen*: All which are comprehended under the general name of *GUYENNE*, separated from *Gascogne*.

Under the name of *GASCOGNE*, separated from *Guyenne*, are these Provinces, or Counties and Cities, to wit, the City of *Bazas*, in the Province or County of *BAZADOS*, *Dax*, in *LES LANES*. *Nerat*, in *ALBRET*. *Condoin*, in *CONDOMNOIS*. *Aux*, and *Leizoure*, in *ARMAIGNAC*. *St. Bertrand*, in *COMMINGE*. *Tarbe*, in *RIGORRE*. *Bayonne*, in *BASQUE*; to which ought to be added, *Pau*, *Lescar*, *Oleron*, and *Ortes*, in *BEARNE*; and *St. Palais* in the lower *NAYARRE*. This Province contains all the antient *Gallia Aquitania*.

In the Province of *LYONNOIS*, *ALVERGNE*, &c. are the Cities of *Lyon*: in *Lyonnois*, seated upon the conjunction of the *Roane*, with the *Soane*; by some esteemed the second City of *France*, a famous Maritime Town, antient, and the See of an Arch-bishop, who is Primate of all *France*; among these Bishops was *Irenaeus*, the famous Father of the Primitive Church. It was called by the Antients *Lugdunum*.

Commodities here found, are, several Fabricks of *Silke*, which are here wrought, and hence dispersed throughout all *France*, and so to *England*, and elsewhere; to which end they have their Factories at *Marselia*, who trade to *Aleppio* for them for Raw *Silke*, as also to *Messina*, *Florence*, *Milan*, *Lucca*, and other parts of *Italy*.

Commodities most vendible here, are, *Bays*, *Serges* of *Exeter*, *Lead*, *Tin*, *Coyne-skins*, *Callisoes*, *Spices*, and some *Salt* and dry'd *Fish*.

*Coynes* here currant are the same with those of *Paris*.

They have here 3 *Beames*, one of which is the *King's*, and is used in the *Custome-House*, and is the *Quintal* of 100 *li.* by which all ponderous Goods pay *Custome*,

and is 8 *per cent* greater than the second, or *Town-weight*, which is also 100 *li.* of 16 ounces to the *li.* and upon this all Calculations are made: The third and last is a *Weight* used for *Silke*, and the *Quintal* of 100 *li.* at 15 ounces per *li.* and is called the *li.* of *Marke*. The 100 *li.* of the *Town-weight* maketh at *London* 96 *li.*

Their *Measure* is the *Aune* of 46 Inches English.

The next places which I shall take notice of, are, *Nombrian*, *Forez*, *Clermont* in *ALVERGNE*, formerly *Gergovia*, and then the seat of *Vercingetorix*, who so bravely opposed *Cesar*, *Molins* in *BURBONNOIS*, seated on the River *Elaver*, famous for their neat Cases of *Knives* and *Cizars*; and *Gneret* in *LA MARCHÉ*, &c.

*LANGUEDOC* may be divided into 3 quarters; in the higher *Languedoc* are the Cities of, *Tholon* in *TOLOUSAN*, a faire large City, though of no long continuance; it is seated about 120 miles from the *Sea*, and is a place of a considerable in-land Trade; 2. *Alby*, in *ALBIGEOIS*. 3. *Caste Chau-Dary*, in *AURAGUAIS*; and 4. *Foix*, in *FOIX*. In the lower part are, 1. *Narbonne*, in *NARBONE*, the first Colony planted by the *Romans*, next to *Carthage*, out of *Italy*. 2. *Beziers*, in the quarter of *BEZIERS*. 3. *Mont Pelier*. 4. *Nismes*, and 5. *Bucquize*, in the quarter of *NISMES*. In the other parts are, 1. *Mendy*, and 2. *Mervetich*, in the quarter of *GEVAUDAN*. 3. *Le Pay*, in *VELAT*; and 4. *Veviers*; and 5. *Mzes*, in *VIVARAIS*. This Province doth afford good *Wines*, and the Inhabitants addit themselves to the making of *Serges*, *Sayes*, fine *Cloths*, and the like *Manufactures*.

The Province of *DALPHINE* hath on the East, *Savoie*, on the South, *Provence*; on the West, *Auvergne*; and on the North, *Bress*; it is watered with the *Roane* and other Rivers; and honoured with the Title of the *Princes of France*.

It may be also divided into three great Parts, which are subdivided into others, viz. In the Part or Quarter toward the *Rosne*, are the Parts and Cities of 1. *Vienne*, in *VIENNOIS*, of some esteeme for its excellent *Sword Blades* here made. 2. *Cress*. 3. *St. Marcellin*. 4. *Romans*, and 5. *Valence*, a fine City, watered with the *Rhosne*, or *Roane*, all in *VALENTINOIS*. In the Quarter, in the middle of the Country, 1. *Grenoble*, in *GRISIVAUDAN*, the

the Metro-noured: wi-DIOIS. And in the t. Embren in GAPEL Brianfon, in NOIS.

The Pro-compised Piedmont, hath for its a Colony of oufly seated joying an e shipping; w Trade; being who are found ry, Turkey, and Holland

Commodit Wines, Alu besides thos where; and a nish Rialls, w Commodit England, are red, Filcher great abunda Tin, Hides, & several other those of Ale-dria, Leghorn

The Coyne counts kept, Paris; but m Coynes, by re Spain and 11 Coynes are he

Their Wei of 16 ounces London 88; l is accounted

Their Mea which makes

The next in the midst with a Parlian Roane, a Tow Fourth. In fantine, in a blishing of th And 4. The on the Med enjoying a ca is very well t

To this Pr belong the C the Principa

Coe. 7

Rovergue

Agnois.

Here is Gascogne.

Lyonnois, Auvergne, &amp;c.

The Commo-dities and Trade of Lyons.

Coyne.

Weight.

en the second, also 100. li. of on this all Cal third and last is the *Quintal* of and is called the of the Town- 66 li.

*Aine* of 46 In- shall take 90 *Forez*; *Cler-* merly *Gergovia*, *ingetoria*, who *Molins* in *BUR-* River *Elaver*, *Cases* of *Knives* *LA MARCHE*,

be divided into *Languedoc* are *TOLOUSAN*, of no long con- 120 miles from of a considerable in *ALBIGEOIS*, *AURAGUAIS*, In the lower *NARBONE*, by the *Romans*, *Italy*, 2. *BEZI-* *BEZIERS*, 3. *es*, and 5. *BUS-* *ISMES*. In the *ly*, and 2. *MER-* *GEVAUDAN*, and 4. *VIDUZIS*. This *Pro-* *vinces*, and the *In-* to the making *ts*, and the like

*ALPINE* hath the South, *Pro-* *vergne*; and on ated with the and honoured *es* of *France*, into three great ato others, viz. ward the *Rhone*, of 1. *Picnie*, in *erme* for its ex- made, 2. *Crest-* *mans*; and 5. *ered* with the *LENTINOIS*. *st* of the *Coun-* *SIKAUDAN*, the

the Metropolis of the Province, and hon- oured with a *Parliament*. 2. *Die*, in *DIOIS*. And 3. *Buyz*, in *BARONIES*. And in the Quarter towards the *Alpes*, 1. *Embrun*, in *EMBRUNOIS*. 2. *Gap*, in *GAPENSOIS*: And 3. and lastly, *Briançon*, in the Quarter of *BRIANSON-* *NOIS*.

The Province of *PROFENCE* is en- 10 compassed with the *Mediterranian Sea*, *Piedmont*, *Danubine*, and *Languedoc*; it hath for its chief places, 1. *Marseille*, once a *Colony* of the *Phocians*; it is commodi- ously seated on the *Mediterranian Sea*, en- 10 joying an excellent *Haven* and *Road* for *shipping*; which renders it a place of great *Trade*, being well frequented by *Merchants* who are found to drive a *Trade* into *Barba-* *ry*, *Turkey*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *England*, *Flanders* and *Holland*.

*Commodities* found here, are, *Oyles*, *Wines*, *Almonds*, *Verdigreace*, hard *Sops*, besides those of *Turkey*, *Barbary*, and else- 10 where, and above all, great plenty of *Span-* *ish Rials*, which are freely exported.

*Commodities* most vendable here from *England*, are, *Herrings*, both white and red, *Pilchers*, and *New-found-land Fish* in great abundance; also *Cloths*, *Bayes*, *Lead*, *Tin*, *Hides*, *Calve-skins*, *Tallow*, *Wax*, and 30 several other *Mosovia Commodities*; also those of *Aleppo*, *Constantinople*, *Alexan-* *dria*, *Leghorne*, *Naples*, &c.

The *Coynes* here currant, and the *Ac-* *counts* kept, are the same with those of *Paris*; but moreover, besides those *French* *Coynes*, by reason of the great *Trade* with *Spain* and *Italy*, the *Spanish* and *Italian* *Coynes* are here currant.

Their *Weight* is the *Quintal* of 100 li. 40 of 16 ounces to the li. which maketh at *London* 88; li. and 300. li. or 3 *Quintals* is accounted with them a *Cargo*.

Their *Measure* is the *Cane* of 8 *Palms*, which makes 2; yards *English*.

The next place of note is *Aix*, seated in the midst of the *Province*, honoured with a *Parliament*. 3. *Arles*, seated on the *Roane*, a Town well fortified by *Henry the* *Fourth*. In this Town it was, that *Com-* *stantine*, in *Anno* 313, for the quiet estab- 50 lishing of the *Church*, called a *Councell*. And 4. *Thollos*, the best *Sea-port Town* on the *Mediterranean-Sea* in all *France*; enjoying a spacious and safe *Haven*, and is very well frequented by *Merchants*.

To this *Province* of *PROFENCE*, doth belong the *Country* of *AVIGNON*, and 10 the *Principality* of *ORANGE*. In *AVI-*

*NON* are many *Walled Townes*, and some *Cities*, the chief of which is called *Avig-* *non*, a fair *City*, seated on the *Rhofne*, or *Roane*, famous for being the antient *Seat* of the *Popes* for about 70 years, till removed to *Rome*. This *City* is worthy of obser- 10 vation, in that here is said to be 7 *Parish-* *Churches*, 7 *Monasteries*, 7 *Nunneries*, 7 *Inns*, 7 *Pallaces*, and 7 *Gates* to its *Walls*; as also for being made a *Uni-* *versity*.

In *ORANGE* are several good *Towns* and *Cities*, the chief of which is *Orange*, seated on the *River Meine*, of note, for the wonderful, and excellent *Antiquities* that are here to be seen; and this *Country* belongs to the *Prince* of *Orange*.

To the 12 *General Governments*, we ought to add *LORRAINE*, where are the 20 *Cities* of *Metz*, *Toul*, *Verdun*, and *Nancy*; also part of *ARTOIS*, of *HAINAULT*, and *LUXEMBOURG*, where are the *Cities* of *Arras*, *Avesnes*, *Montmedy*, &c. likewise the *Principalities* of *SEDAN*, and *CHARLEVILLE*; also *ROUSSILLON* on the *Coast* of *Spain*, where are *Perpini-* *an*, *Elne*, &c. *ALSASIA* on the side of *Germany*; and the *Principality* of *DOM-* *BES* in *Bress*, belonging to *Madamoiselle* *D'Orleans*; but being to treat of these *plac-* *es* in *Germany* and elsewhere, I shall omit the description of them in this place.

All *France* hath 15 *Arch-bishops*; of which he of *Lyon* is the *Primate*; 105 *Bishops*; 10 *Parliaments*; among which the power of that of *Paris* extends as far as all the rest put together: under these *Parliaments* are 150 and odd *Ballives*, or *Justices-Royall*, immediate dependants on these *Parliaments*: 24 *Generalities*, and about 250 *Elections*, and *Receipts* of *Royal* *Mony*: And in the general *Governments* of the *Militia*, about 2 or 30 *Govern-* *ments*.

This *Kingdom* is generally throughout exceedingly furnished with *Rivers*; the principal of which are 4; to wit, the *Loire*, the *Rhofne*, or *Roane*, the *Garonne*; and the *Seine*.

The *LOIRE* hath its Springs in the *Se-* *venes*, at the foot of *Mount de Fou*, and on this side of *Vivaraus*, from whence it runs into the *Valay*, which it traverses; and af- 50 ter it *Forez*, *Burbonnois*, *Nivernois*, *Orle-* *annois*, *Blaisois*, *Touraine*, and *Anjou*, and ends in *Brittany*, towards the confines of *Poitou*, disburthening it self into the great *Ocean*, it waters a great many *Cities*: It receives the *Rivers* of *Allier*, *Cher*, and *Vi-* *anna*

The Princi-  
pality of Or-  
ange.

Arch-bi-  
shops, Bi-  
shops, and  
Parliaments,  
in France.

Chief Ri-  
vers in  
France.

The River  
Loire.

The River  
Rhône, or  
Roane.

enna on the left hand, the County of Mayenne on the right hand; and this brings with it the *Loir* (other then the *Loire*) and the *Sarte*, which yield it as much water as it had before, but have not their Streams so rapid.

The River Rhone.

The *RHOSNE*, or *ROANE*, begins in the *Alpes*, at the foot of *Mount de la Forche*, near that of *St. Gadard*, and near this Mountain likewise the higher and lower *Rhine*, towards the *Grisons*; the *Rus*, and the *Aaar*, or *Are*, towards the *Swisses*; and the *Tessin* towards the Coast of *Italy* have likewise their Springs. The *Roane* traverses *Valais*, and after passes the *Lake* and *City of Geneva*, separates *France* from *Savoie*; *Bresse*, *Lyonnois*, *Forez*, and *Vivaraire*, from the *Dolphine*; *Languedoc* from the County and Province, and falls into the *Mediterranean Sea*, by divers Mouths. The *Soane*, the *Isere*, and the *Durance*, are the best Rivers which fall into the *Roane*, the two last on the left-hand, and the first on the right.

The River Garonne.

The *GARONNE* hath its Spring in the *Pyrenian Hills*, on the Confines of *Arragon*, and *Catalonia*; it traverses the Valley of *Aran*, esteemed in *Catalonia*, though under the *Diocess* of *Cominges* in *France*; as also traverses the higher and lower *Cominge*, *Thoulousan*, *Aginois*, *Basadois*, and the particular *Guyenne*; and ends between that *Guyenne*, and *Kaintonge*, under the name of *Gironne*; It in some places divides *Languedoc* from *Gascony*; the chief Rivers which it receives, are, the *Tarn*, the *Lott*, and the *Dardonne*, all on the right-hand. The faire *Tower* of *Cardovan* is seated at its mouth.

The River Seine.

The Spring of the *SEINE* is near *Champigny* in *Burgundy*, between *Chanceaux* and *St. Seine*, near the great Road from *Paris* to *Dyon*; leaving the *Dutchy* of *Burgundy*, it traverses *Champaigne*, the *Ile* of *France*, and a part of *Normandy*; receives the *Tonne* on the left hand, the *Marne*, and the *Oyse* on the right. *Seine* is the least of these 4 Rivers, both in length, and quantity of Waters; yet, because it passes through *Paris*, the chief City of this Kingdom, it is of some particular esteem.

The Army of the Rhine.

Between *France* and *Germany* we might make some account of the *Escaut*, and the *Meuse*, which are in the *Low-Countries*. The *ESCAUT* hath its Spring in *Picardy*, passes at *Cumbray* into *Cambreffe*, at *Valencienne* into *Hainault*, at *Tournay* and *Gant* into *Flanders*, then at *Antwerp* into *Brabant*: It is divided into many branches,

which embrace the *Istet* of *Zealand*, and loses it self in the sea, under divers names.

The *MEUSE* hath its Spring in *Champaigne*, not far from *Langres*; it traverses *Barrois*, where it washes *St. Michel*; then *Verdun* in *Lorraine*; *Sedan*; *Meziere*, *Charleville* in *Champagne*, or on the confines of *Champagne*; *Namur*, the chief of its County in the *Low-Countries*; *Leige*, *Mastricht*, *Ruremonde*, &c. receives *Wahal* on the branches of the *Rhein*; also *Leck*, another branch of the *Rhein*, leaving *Dordrecht* on the left hand, and *Rotterdam* on the right, falls into the Ocean at the most Meridional part of *Holland*. Of these Rivers, the *Loire* is the sweetest, the *Roane* the swiftest, the *Garonne* the greatest, and the *Seine* the richest.

And thus much for France.

### GERMANY, and BELGIUM; or the LOW-COUNTRIES.

GERMANY is in the midst of those 3 parts, which we have placed in the middle of Europe; and extends it self from 45; unto 54; degrees of Latitude; and from the 28th unto the 41 degree of Longitude, which are 225 French leagues in length and breadth. This position shows, that it lies in the middle of the *Temperate Zone*; and the *Alpes* bounding it on the South towards *Italy*, keeps it from heat on that side, leaving the cold on the German.

This GERMANY may be considered in three great parts; of which each may be subdivided into 3 others. We will call the great parts *Germany* about the *Rhine*; *Germany* about the *Danube*; and *Germany* about the *Elba* and the *Oder*. *Germany* about the *Rhine* may be subdivided into the *Estates*, and *Regions*, which are on this side, upon, and beyond the *Rhine*: *Germany* upon the *Danube* may be subdivided into the higher, middle, and lower part; of which the first may be called *Souabia*, from its more noble part; the second *Bavaria*; and the third *Austria*.

Germany



land, and  
er divers

Spring in  
es, it tra-  
St. Mihiel's  
Meziere,  
n the con-  
chief of  
is, Leige,  
ives Wabal  
also Leek,  
, leaving  
and Rotter-  
e Ocean at  
land. Of  
weetest, the  
the great-

nce.

Y, and  
M; or  
UN

dit of those  
e placed in  
e, and ex-  
degrees of  
h unto the  
ich are 225  
each. This  
the middle of  
lipes bound-  
Italy, keep-  
ing the cold

considered  
each may  
We will  
about the  
nubs; and  
the Oder  
be subdivi-  
ons, which  
eyond the  
ube may be  
iddle, and  
st may be  
oble part,  
rd Austria,  
Germany



Germany ab  
likewise be  
Bohemia, &  
wherein are  
ny.

Let us be  
the Rhine, a  
this side the  
ded under  
Franche Co  
lique Low C  
known, und

The Cou  
Franche Com  
Lorraine, S  
Burgundy:  
Hedus, who  
France, an  
Warlike, M  
divers Princ  
Its whole  
length, and  
so fertile, t  
Flower of F  
Some have a  
watered with  
and Dayne:  
the Metropoli  
the Banks of  
strength and  
sity in the Yes  
Charles the F  
Secondly, Do  
Town of great  
famous for in  
Thirdly, Salis  
of some accou  
besides which  
Townes, and  
Countrey, tog  
Countreys, at  
the Spanish G

LORRAINE  
Flanders, Alf  
and Champai  
strafsa, and w  
then now it  
4 dayes jour  
yet it is suffi  
for its Duke  
loigne, there  
the Turkes:  
save a Title,  
ther by the  
a fertile So  
and Wine;  
Mines, and m  
red with Fish  
the, or Meur



Germany about the *Elbe*, and the *Oder*, may likewise be subdivided into the higher, or *Bohemia*, and into the lower, or *Saxony*, wherein are the higher and lower *Saxony*.

Let us begin with *GERMANY* about the *Rhine*, and first with those *Provinces* on this side that *River*, which may be concluded under the names of *Burgundy*, or the *Franche County*, *Lorraine*, and the *Catholique Low Countreys*, generally taken, and known, under the name of *Flanders*.

The County of *BURGUNDY*, or the *Franche County*, is bounded with *Champaine*, *Lorraine*, *Switzerland*, and the *Dutchy of Burgundy*: Its ancient *Inhabitants* were the *Hedus*, who first called *Fulius Caesar* into *France*, and its *People* are still esteemed Warlike, Marching under the Colours of divers *Princes*, by the Name of *Walloons*. Its whole extent is about 90 Miles in length, and 60 in breadth, it is every where so fertile, that it hath been called, The *Flower of France*; within whose bounds some have accounted it. This *Country* is watered with the *Rivers*, *Soane*, *Lone*, *Doux*, and *Dayne*: Its chief places, are, *Esanson*, the *Metropolitan City of Burgundy*, seated on the *Banks of the Doux*; a *City* of good strength and beauty, and made an *Unversity* in the Year 1540, by the commands of *Charles the Fifth*, and *Pope Julius the Third*. Secondly, *Dole*, in the *Balliages of Dole*, a *Town* of great strength, riches and beauty, famous for its *Colledge of Jesuits*. And, Thirdly, *Salins*, in the *Balliages of Aval*, of some account for its rich *Salt Fountain*; besides which here are numbered 20 *Walled Townes*, and about 160 *Loraships*. This *Country*, together with the *Catholique Low Countreys*, at present submits themselves to the *Spanish Government*.

*LORRAINE* is bounded with part of *Flanders*, *Alsatia*, the *County of Burgundy*, and *Champaine*; its ancient name was *Austrasia*, and was then of a far greater extent than now it is, at present being not above 4 dayes journey in length, and 3 in breadth; yet it is sufficiently famous for having had for its *Duke*, *Godfrey*, Surnamed of *Buljoigne*, the recoverer of the *Holy Land* from the *Turkes*: Its *Dukes* now enjoy little else save a *Title*, the *Country* being seized either by the *French* or *Spaniards*: It is of a fertile *Soile*, affording plenty of *Corn* and *Wine*; it hath store of *Sals*, several *Mines*, and many *Lakes* and *Rivers* well stored with *Fish*, the chief of which are, *Martha*, or *Meure*, *Mosa*, and *Moselle*: Its chief

*Townes*, are, 1. *Nancy*, in the *Balliages of Francois*, scituate off the *Meure*, once dignified with the *Seate of the Duke*. 2. *Vancolour*, the birth-place of *Foane de Pucelle*. 3. *Pout-s-Moson*, so named, by reason of its *bridge* over the *Mosa*. 4. *Mets*, and 5. *Toul*, *Citties* in the *Bishoprick of Lorraine*.

Between this *Province* and *Champaine* lyeth the *Country of BARROIS*, and belongeth to *Lorraine*, whence the eldest *Sons* of these *Dukes* were stiled *Princes of Barri*. Its chief places, are, 1. *Borleduc*. 2. *La Motte*. And 3. *Ligni*.

The *Catholique LOW-COUNTREYS* may be contained under the *Dukedomes of Limburge*, *Luxembourg*, and *Brabant*; the *Marquisse of the Holy Empire*; and the *Earldoms of Flanders*, *Artois*, *Namour*, and *Haynault*: The whole *Country* is fruitful beyond measure, yet doth the *Spaniard* reap but small benefit from hence, by reason of the great *Forces* he is constrained to maintain, to oppose the continual *IncurSIONS* of the *Hollanders*, and *French*, which lye on either side of them.

The *Duchie of LIMBOURG*, and *Bishoprick of LEIGE*, have many *Towns*, the chief of the first, are, 1. *Limbourg*, seated on the *River Weser*, and gives name to the *Dutchy*. 2. *Mastricht*. 3. *Dalen*, fortified with a *Castle*, &c. In the *Bishoprick*, are, 1. *Lydge*, seated on the *Mense*, a *Town* of good beauty, being so filled with faire *Abbeys* and *Monasteries*, that it is called the *Paradise of the Priests*; it is also dignified with a famous and well frequented *Unversity*. 2. *Tongres*, now not large, but once numbering 10 *Parish-Churches*, most of which were reduced to *Ruines* by *Attila*, *King of the Huns*; and 3. *Dienand*, upon the *Namur*; and, in the *Arch-Bishoprick*, the *City of Cambray*, of some account.

The *Dukedome of LUXEMBOURGH* is Northwards of *Lorraine*; It is said to be 240 Miles in *Circuit*, in which are contained above 1000 *Villages*, and 23 *walled Towns*, the chief of which, are, 1. *Luxembourg*, seated on the *River Elze*; 2. *Thionville*, &c. all which have suffered much in the time of the Wars between *France* and *Spain*.

In this *Province* is the famous *Forrest of Ardenna*, once 500 Miles in compass, now scarce 90; and in it, or on its edges is the no less famous waters of the *Spaw*, so much frequented by the *Europeans* from all parts; in, and about the *Moneth of July*, the water of these *Baths* being then the hottest, and

Country of  
Barrois.

The Duchy  
and Bish-  
oprick of  
Limbourg.

Dukedome  
of Luxem-  
bourg.

The Forrest  
of Ardenna,  
and the  
Spaw.

of the most vertue, being found good for several Diseases.

The Dukedome of BRABANT for the most part, is of an ungrateful Soile, it is in length 75 Miles, and 60 in breadth: every where filled with Villages and Townes, being said to number about 700 Villages, and 26 Townes (so called, because Walled,) the chief of which, are, 1. Louvaine, a faire and large City, being about 4 Miles circuit within its Walls, and 6 without; wherein are many delightful Gardens and Meadows, said to be the Mother of Brabant, being the first that receiveth, and giveth an Oath to their new Lords: It is of the more note for its Univerſity, where there is a Semenary for English Jesuits. 2. Brusselles, a City for its faunnes, and elegancy of its buildings, not yielding to any in the Netherlands, and of the same bigness with Louvaine; It is at present the Residence of the Spanish Governour for the Low-Countries: And 3. Breda, once the Seate of the Prince of Orange, till taken by the Spaniards.

The Marquisate of the HOLY EMPIRE is likewise contained in Brabant, whose chief place is Antvers, or Antwerpe, seated on the Schelde, out of which it hath 8 Channels cut, the biggest of which are able to receive 100 Great Ships; which doth much facilitate its Trade, being once one of the most famous Mart Towns in the Northern parts of the World: but, of late, Amsterdam in Holland hath got most of its Trade; It is a fair and large City, being about 7 or 8 Miles in Circuit within its Walls, which are strong, and high, and broad enough for Coaches to pass; on which the Nobility and Gentry commonly use to recreate themselves. In this City are abundance of Painters and Gravers, whose Workes are of some esteeme abroad.

Commodities here found, are; Tapeſtries, curious Pictures, several Manufactures, and other the Commodities of Flanders, for which most of the English Commodities find here vent, though in no great quantities.

Coynes here currant, as generally throughout all the Arch-Dukes Dominions, are; (besides the Spanish and Imperial) Doights, of which 8 makes a Stiver, and 10 Stivers a Shilling Sterling, and 6 Stivers a Shilling Flemish. 20 Stivers makes a Guilder, which is 3s. 4d. Flemish. And 20 shillings makes 2l. which is 6 Guilders. 2 Blanks makes 1; Stiver, 20 Stivers is 2 shillings Sterling, and 1 l. Flemish is 12 shillings Sterling; so that 100 l. Flemish is 60 l. Sterling.

They keepe their Accounts by Livres, Sols, and Deniers, which they account as l. s. d.

Their Weight is the Quintal of 100 li. of 16 ounces per li, which makes at London 104 li. and by this Weight at Amsterdam is sold all sorts of Silke.

Their Measure is the Ell Flemish, which is 2 of a Yard English, so that 100 Ells Flemish makes 60 Ells, or 75 yards English.

Corne is here sold by a Measure, called a Vertule, whereof 37½ makes a Last at Amsterdam, which is 10 quarters English.

Wine is sold by the Ame, the Stoope, and the Butt; where note, that 50 Stoops is 1 Ame, and 152 Stoops is a Butt. The Stoope makes at London 7 Pints, and the Ame 42 Gallons Wine Measure.

## FLANDERS.

FLANDERS should be the most famous of all these Countreys, since it oftentimes communicates its name to them: It is divided into Imperialem, Gallicam and Teutonicam, which last is separated from the 2 former by the River Ley. The chief Cities in Flanders, are, 1. Gand, or Gaunt, whose Walls are 7 Miles in compass, once of great beauty, but now (through the Seditions of its Inhabitants) it is much ruined, a good part of it being wast ground. It is watered by the Rivers, Scheld, and Ley, which runs through the City, and makes 26 Islands, which are joyned together by 98 Bridges; This place is particularly famous for being the Birth-place of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster.

2. Bruges, seated on a large and deep Channel, and about 3 Leagues distant from the Sea; it was once a famous Mart Town, but now of small account in matters of Traffick. 3. Ypres, seated on a River so called, a Town of great strength. 4. Grasling, seated on the Sea-side, a place of good strength; and 4. Lille, of some account.

The 4 principal Ports in Flanders, are; 1. Dunkerke, a place of great strength, especially of late, being so made when the English were Masters of it; nigh to which is the impregnable Fort of Marsick, also so made by the English. The Inhabitants of this Town are found very troublesome on the seas to those that are their Enemies; their Pirats seizing on all their ships they can meet withall, making Prize of them.

2. Ostende,

The Dukedome of Brabant.

The Marquisate of the Holy Empire.

Commodities and Manufactures of Antwerp.

Their Coyne

2. Ostende may appear 3 years, 3 against the nigh to which tel in 1664 berins, and of the Eng and 4. Sch Channel of and commu ceive about subject to Through ny Religio are filled w (for the mo ligious life, devotions w time in mak in thete (a of Nuns wo I am inform who, at easi fires such C

The Earle the East, Champagne; on the North, rain about 7 the chief of the Tapestry ras were first disfert, a ven on the confin

Picardy; and The Earle on the East, Champagne; on the North, be 20 League in which con about 900 l chief of which seated on the sieged, exce time; of fort ance it made an ancient a vennes, about white stones to

The Earle the East, Lembourg; on the North, said to be a Town, to wit 3. Bovines, Country is

2. *Ostende*, an exceeding strong place, as may appear, by its holding out a Siege of 3 years, 3 months, 3 weeks, and 3 days against the *Arch-Duke*. 3. *Nieuport*, a town to which was fought that great Battle in 1660, between the *Arch-Duke Albertus*, and the *States*, where by the valour of the *English* the Victory was gained; and 4. *Schufel*, seated at the mouth of the Channel of *Fruzes*, where it enjoys a fair and commodious *Haven*, capable to receive about 500 Sail of good *Ships*, now subject to the *States of Holland*, &c.

Throughout all *Flanders* are a great many *Religious Houses*, and *Nunneries*, which are filled with virtuous *Gentlewomen*, (for the most part *Maidens*) who live a *Religious Life*, and these *Ladies*, when their devotions will permit them, do spend their time in making of curious Works, known in these (and other parts) by the name of *Nuns worke*, the benefit of which (as I am informed) the *Lady Abbis* hath, who, at ease rates, sells to those that desires such *Curiosities*.

The Earldome of *ARTOIS*, hath on the East, *Haynalt*, on the South, *Champaigne*; on the West, *Picardy*; and on the North, *Flanders*: It is said to contain about 750 *Villages*, and 12 *Townes*, the chief of which, are, 1. *Arras*, where the *Tapestry Hangings*, and *Cloths of Arras* were first invented and made. 2. *Hedinfers*, a very strong frontier *Town*, seated on the confines of this *Province*, towards *Picardy*; and 3. *St. Omer*.

The Earldome of *HATNAULT*, hath on the East, *Limbourg*; on the South, *Champaigne*; on the West, *Flanders*; and on the North, *Brabant*: It is accounted to be 20 *Leagues* in length, and 16 in breadth, in which compass, are said to be numbered about 900 *Villages*, and 24 *Townes*; the chief of which, are, 1. *Valenciennes*, so seated on the *Scheld*, that it cannot be besieged, except with three *Armies* at one time; of some note, for the brave resistance it made against the *French*. 2. *Mons*, an ancient and strong *Town*; and 3. *Avennes*, about which are digged excellent *white stones* for building.

The Earldome of *NAMOUR*, hath on the East, *Limbourg*; on the South, *Luxembourg*; on the West, *Haynalt*; and on the North, *Brabant*: In this *Country* are said to be about 180 *Villages*, and four *Townes*, to wit, 1. *Namour*, 2. *Charlemont*, 3. *Bevines*, and 4. *Valencourt*. This *Country* is very fertile in *Graines*, hath

store of *Mines of Faspers*, all sorts of *Marble*, and abundance of *Iron*: But let us proceed to those *Provinces on the Rhine*.

Under the subdivision of the *Provinces* upon the *Rhine* may be comprehended *Alsacia*, the *Palatinate of the Rhine*, the *Arch-Bishops*, and *Electors* on the *Rhine*, the *Estates* of the succession of *Cleves* and *Fuliers*, and the *United Provinces of the Low Countries*, &c.

The *Province of ALSATIA*, hath for its Eastern bounds, *Souabe*, for its Southern, *Switzerland*; for its Western, *Lorraine*; and for its Northern, the *Palatinate*: The chief *Towns* in this *Province*, are, 1. *Strasbourg*, formerly *Argentina*, because here the *Romans* received the *Tribute* of the conquered *Nations*. It is seated within 2 furlongs of the *River Rhine*, whereto there is a *Channel* cut for the conveyance of all *Commodities*. This *City* is about seven *Miles* in circuit, a place of good strength; and it is famous for its many *Rarities*, as its admirable *Clock*, made of such curious *Workmanship*, then the height of the *Tower*, where it is placed, which is said to be almost 1000 yards in height: It is also of some account for giving entertainment to all *Handicraftsmen*.

*Coynes* here current is the *Bohemian-Crass*, or *Blaphace*, which is 3 *Crusters* or *Crusters*; 1 *Cruster* is 2 *ds*, and 1 *Pey* is 2 *Hellers*, and one *Heller* is 2 *Orchins*.

Their *Weights* are two, the *gross* and the *subtile*; and it hath been observed, that the 100 *li. subtile* of *London*, hath made here in *circa* 70 in 71 *li. of the Gross weight* for *Gross goods*, of 16 ounces the *li.* and 107 *li. subtile*, of 12 ounces the *li.* by which they weigh fine *Commodities*.

Their *Measure of length* is the *Ell*, as in other places of *Germany*.

2. *Frisbourg* in *Brisgon*. 3. *Haguenau*. 4. *Brisac*, accounted impregnable, &c.

The *PALATINATE of the RHINE*, or the lower *Palatinate*, so called, to distinguish it from *Northgoya*, or the upper *Palatinate*, lieth along the *Rhine*, and is in length from North to South 72 *Miles*, and in breadth, from East to West 96. It it accounted the most pleasant and delightful part of *Germany*, stored with *Fruits* and *Metals*; and abounding especially with *coole* and excellent *Rhenish Wines*: Its chief places are, 1. *Heidelberg*, seated in a *Plain*, and environed on 3 sides with high *Mountains*, the other side being open, and re-guards the *River Rhine* from

by *Livers*,  
y account as  
of 100 *li.* of  
London 104  
sterdam is sold  
Flemish, which  
100 *Ells* Fle-  
5 yards En-  
measure, called  
akes a *Last* at  
quarters En-  
the *Stoope*, and  
at 50 *Stoops* is  
a *Butt*. The  
s, and the *Ame*

R S.  
the most famous  
since it ofte-  
to them all:  
Gallican and  
eparated from  
ey. The chief  
and, or *Gaunt*,  
compass, once  
(through the  
it is much rui-  
ng wast ground.  
s, *Scheld*, and  
the *City*, and  
e joyned toge-  
place is particu-  
Birth-place of  
of *Lancaster*.  
large and deep  
ues distant from  
us *Mars Town*,  
in matters of  
on a *River* fo-  
th. 4. *Grauling*,  
place of good  
ome account.  
*Flanders*, are,  
at strength, ef-  
nade when the  
igh to which  
*Mardick*, also fo-  
Inhabitants of  
ouble some on  
their *Enemies*,  
their *ships* they  
Prize of them,  
2. *Ostende*,

Province of  
ALSATIA.

The  
Coynes

The  
Weights.

The  
Mea-  
sure.

The Pal-  
atinate of  
the Rhine.

from which it is distant about a mile, to which all *Commodities* are conveyed, by a small *River*, which runneth by its Walls: It is dignified with the Seat of the *Palsgraves*, as also with an *University* 2. *Spires*, seated in a Plain, about half a mile from the *Rhine*, a City of more antiquity, than *beauty* and *trade*; being famous for the *Imperial Chamber* here continually kept: And 3. *Wormes*, a City also of good antiquity, for the many *Imperial Parliaments* here formerly held. Nigh to this City stands a new, fair, strong and beautiful City, called *Frankensberg*; *Wines* which grow great plenty of *Wines*.

The *Electors*, and *Archbishops* on the *Rhine*, are those of *Magence*, *Treves* and *Cologne*.

The chief places in *Magence*, are; *Magence*, and *Aschaffenbourg*.

The chief places in *Treves*, are; those of *Treves*, and *Coblentz*.

And those of *Cologne*, are; *Cologne*, and *Bonne*.

Duchy of Cleves.

CLEVELAND containeth the *Dutchys* of *Cleves*, of *Fulier*, and of *Berge*. The *Dutchy* of *CLEVES* is in the *Marquissate* of *Brandenbourg*, and hath for its chief places, *Ovesell*, and *Hamme*, in the *County* of *Marck*.

Duchy of Julier.

The *Dutchy* of *FULIER* hath for its chief places. 1. *Aken*, or *Aquiagnam*, where the *Emperour*, after his *Election*, is invested with the *Silver Crown* of *Germany*. This place is of great esteem for its *Holy Relicks*; and 2. *Fuliers*.

Duchy of Monce.

The *Dutchy* of *BERGE*, or *MONTE*, formerly the habitation of the *Bructers*; whose chief *Cities* are, *Dussildorp*, *Hattingen*, and *Arnsberg*.

Under the name of the *United Provinces* of the *NETHERLANDS*, are contained the *Dutchy* of *Guelders*, the *Earldoms* of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Zuphen*, and the *Lordships* of *VVest-Frises*, or *Friezland*, *Vtrecht*, *Over-Tffel*, and *Groyningue*.

Duchy of Guelders.

The *Dutchy* of *GOELDERS*, or *GOELDERLAND*, (so called from *Geldabam*, once its *Metropolis*) is bounded on the East, with *Cleves*; on the South with *Lembourg*; on the VWest with *Brabant*; and on the North with *Friezland*: This *Dutchy* is said to contain about 300 *Villages*, and 24 *Towns*; the chief of which is, *Noviomagum*, or *Nienmegue*, once a free *City*, seated on that branch of the *Rhine* called *Waal*, and made one of the *Imperial Seats* in these parts, by *Charles the Great*: the other 2 being *Thionvil*, and

*Aken*; the other chief *Townes*, are; 1. *Arnhem*, the usual residence of the *Dukes* of *Guelders*, 2. *Ruremond*, so called from the *River Ruere*, and *Monde*: 3. *Harderwick*, from a *Village*, made a walled *Town* by *Otho* the third *Earle*, 4. *Guelders*, 5. *Venlo*, and 6. *Bommel*. This *Country* hath excellent *Pastures*, which are found exceeding good for the feeding of *Cattel*.

*Zuphen* is a *Town* in *Guelderland*, which hath long been an *Earldome*, it is seated on the *River Tffel*, and of very great strength, yet taken by the *Spaniards*, Anno 1590. at the *Seige* whereof was slain that honour of *Chivalry*, and *Mirour* of *Poety*, *Sir Philip Sidney*.

The *Earldome* of *HOLLAND*, hath on the East *Utrich*, on the South, the *Mense*; and on the VWest and North, the *Sea*: Its circuit is 180 *Miles*, but its breadth so disproportionate to its length, that it hath no part, three hours journey from the *Sea*. In this *Earldome* may be numbered about 400 *Villages*, and 23 *Townes*; the chief whereof, are; 1. *Amsterdam* in *South-Holland*: which, of late, by the addition of the new to the old, is a fair, strong, and beautiful *City*, being the most rich and powerful of all the *Netherlands*: famous for its great *Trade* to the utmost parts of the *VWorld*; and as infamous for its *Tolleration* of all *Religions*. It is seated on the *River Tay*, which like a large but calme *Sea* floweth on the North-side; and the *River Amstel*, taking its course from the South, through 3 *Lakes*, entereth the *City*, passing through it, falleth into the *Tay*. This *City* may be said to be the greatest *Haven Town* in the *VWorld*, where there are commonly to be seen about 1000 *Saile* of *Ships* to ride.

This *City* of *Amsterdam*, by reason of its vast *Trade* to foreign parts, is found to have great plenty of all known *Commodities* in the *VWorld*, as being general *Traders* to most places of *Traffique*; and where, for the better negotiation of their *Affaires*, and support of *Trade*, they have their *Consuls*, *Residents*, or the like. The *Commodities* therefore here found, are, the product of all *Flanders*, the *Low-Countries*, *Germany*, *Denmark*, *Poland*, *Sweden*, *Moscovia*, *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Turkey*, &c. Also the *Drages*, *Fems*, *Spices*, *Silks*, &c. of *Arabia*, *India*, *Persia*, also the *Commodities* of *Barbary*, *Egypt*, *Guiny*, *Ethiopia*, &c. likewise those of divers parts of *America*; and besides these, *England* furnishes

with them wine, *Tinn*, *Sheep*, &c. in short, all *Commodities*. Their *Coin* of *Antwerp* which is 20 s. *Sterling*. All *Gross*, 5 *Sivers* is a *Sold Turn* of 20 *Sivers* is 20 *Sivers* sides these, and of *Europe* do have and received their value. They keep *Sivers* and *Gr* *milsh*. Their *Weight* and the 100 lb or 109 lb. Their *Measure* a yard *English*. *Wine* is sold *Land*. *Corn* is sold *Quarters* *English*. 2. *Rotterdam*. *Erasmus*. 3 *Brewers* and the being the birth *Heretick*, *Dave* self *King* and *C* *damnable* and *lem*, where *Pris* *pecially* to us *Book* that was *Officin*. 5. *L* *famous* *Univer* *of 41* *Islands*; another being *by* *Bridges*; the *and* *110* of *fl* *ble*, which *is* the *Saxon*, at *6*. *Dort*, where *onal* *Synod* *ag* *7*. the *Brille*. *Nor* can we *Hague*, adorned *Sisters-General* *bles*; it is *este* in the *World*, *o* *ses*; the *Inhab* *firing* rather to *lage* in *Europe*. In *North* *Alemar*, *Inchy*

nishes them with Wool, Wooden Cloths, Lead, Tinn, Sheep, and Coney-skins, &c. And in short, all Commodities are here vendable.

Their Coynes have correspondency with those of Antwerp, as their Liver, or Pound, which is 20 s. Flemish, maketh but 12 s. Sterling. Also 120 Stivers makes 1 l. of Grasse. 5 Stivers is 6 d. Sterling, 1 Stiver is a Sold Turnois, 6 Florins makes that l. of 20 Stivers per Florin. *Catolus* Guilden is 20 Stivers or Solds Turnois. And besides these, and those of Flanders, all Coynes of Europe do here pass current, and are paid, and received in Merchandize according to their value.

They keep their Accounts by Guilders, Stivers and Grote, and some by l. s. d. Flemish.

Their Weights is the pound of 16 ounces, and the 100. lb. doth make at London 108 or 109 lb. *Seate*.

Their Measure is the Ell, which is 1 of a yard English, as is the Flemish.

Wine is sold by the Tunns as in England.

Corne is sold by the *L. s.*, which is 10 Quarters English.

2. *Roterdam*, famous for giving life to *Erasmus*. 3. *Delft*, inhabited most by *Brewers* and their Relations; of note, for being the birth-place of that Monstrous Heretick, *David George*, who stiled himself *King* and *Christ* immortal, broaching a damnable and horrid Doctrine. 4. *Harlem*, where *Printing* was first invented, (especially to us *Europeans*) and the first *Book* that was there Printed, was *Tullius Officin*. 5. *Leiden*, Dignified with a famous *Univerfity*, the Town consisting of 41 *Islands*; their passage from one to another being partly by *Boates*, and partly by *Bridges*; there being about 40 of wood, and 110 of *Stone*. In this Town is a *Castle*, which 'tis said was built by *Hengist* the *Saxon*, at his return out of *England*. 6. *Dort*, where was held in 1618, a National *Synod* against the *Armenians*: And 7. the *Brill*.

Nor can we forget its Village of the *Hague*, adorned with the *Palaces* of the *States-General*, who have here their *Assemblies*; it is esteemed the greatest *Village* in the *World*, containing about 2000 houses; the *Inhabitants* will not Wall it, desiring rather to have it the greatest *Village* in *Europe*, then a small *City*.

In *North-Holland* are the *Towns* of *Alemar*, *Inchuse*, and *Horne*.

It will not be improper: with *Holland*, since because the chief *Province* of the *United* ones, and which oft gives its name to all the rest; to speak of the power of these *States* by *Sea*, which is so great, that in *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friezland* they are able to put forth to *Sea* about 2500 *Sail* of *Ships* for *burthen* and *warr*. Nor can be forgot, how *Margaret*, Sister to *Floricus*, the fourth *Earle* of *Holland*, had at one *Birth* (being 42 years of age) 365 *Children*, which were all *Christened* in a *Basons* in the *Church* of *Lasdunen*, by *Guido* *Bishop* of *Utrecht*, who named the *Males*, all *Johns*, and the *Females*, *Elizabeths*; and the *Basons* are yet to be seen in the said *Church*.

The *Earldome* of *ZEALAND*, quasi *Sea*, and *Land*, consisting of 7 *Islands*, the remainder of 19, which the *Seas* are said to have swallowed, in which were abundance of good *Towns* and *Villages*; the 7 *Isles* yet remaining, are; 1. *Walcheren*, whose principal *Towns* are, *Middelbourg*, of old *Metelli Burgum*, once enjoying a great *Trade* by the residence of the *English Merchant-Adventurers*: and then *Flushing*, the first *Town* the *States* took from the *Spaniards*, once a poor *Town* being the habitation of *Fishermen*, but now of good strength, being held to be the *Key* of the *Netherlands*. The second *Ile* is *South-Beverland*, whose chief *Town* is *Tergoufe*. The third is *Schoven*, where are, *Sirexes*, and *Brewers-haven*. The fourth is *Tolen*, whose chief places is *Tertolen*. The other 3 *Islands*, are, *North-Beverland*, *Duveland*, and *Wolferdaike*; This *Country* is destitute of *Fresh-water*, and *Wood*, in recompence whereof it is very fertile in *Graines*, &c.

The *Barony* of *WESTFREIZLAND* is bounded on the *East*, with *Groyning*; on the *South*, with *Over-Yffel*; and on the *West*, and *North*, with the *Sea*. It is esteemed one of the 17 *Provinces*; and said to number about 340 *Villages* and 10 *Towns*, the chief of which, are, 1. *Leuwarden*, where there is held the *Common Council* for the *Province*; 2. *Harlingen*, a *Maritime Town*. 3. *Francker*, of late made an *Univerfity*: And 4. *Doekam*.

The *Barony* of *UTRICHT* is bounded on the *East*, with *Guelderland*, on the *South*, *West*, and *North*, with *Holland*; esteemed also one of the 17 *Provinces*; it containeth 70 *Villages*, and 5 *Towns*, to wit, *Rhenen*, *Amisford*, *Wicket*, *Momfort*, and *Utrecht*, a *City* so commodiously seated,

A Census  
took of  
365 children.

Barony of  
West-Friezland.

Barony  
West-Friezland.

Barony of  
Utrecht.



ed, that with the benefit of the common *Ferries*, one may goe in one day from hence to any one of the 59 Walled Towns, equally distant from it, and to Dinner, to any one of the 26 Towns, and return again at Night.

The *Barony* or *Province* of *OVER-TSSEL*, or *Transfulana*, hath for its Eastern bounds, *Westphalia*; for its Southern, *Cuiderland*; for its Western, the *Sea*; and for its Northern, *Groyning*, and *Friesland*, said to contain about 100 *Villages*, and 11 *Towns*, the chief of which are *Snoll*, *Campen*, and *Daventer*, in the quarter of *Saland*; *Oldenze*, in the quarter of *Tuente*; and *Coovorden*, in that of *Drente*.

The *Barony* of *GROYNINGHE* is a *Town* in *West-Friesland*, having under its Jurisdiction 143 *Villages*, of which the chief is *Old-Havin*, and *Keykerke*. The United *Provinces* are rather become rich by the industry of its inhabitants, and situation, then the fertility of the *Soile*.

Under the name of *Germany* beyond the *Rhine*, we comprehend *Franconia*, *Hassie*, and *Westphalia*.

The *Province* of *FRANCONIA* hath for its Eastern bounds the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*; for its Southern, the *Duchie* of *Bavaria*, and *Sovabe*; for its Western part of the *Palatinate* on the *Rhine*, and *Hessie*, which with the higher *Saxony* is its Northern bounds.

2. *Laics*; This *Province* is divided into 3 parts, viz. into *Ecclesiasticks*, or *Bishopricks*; *Laics*; and *Imperial Cities*. The *Bishopricks* are those of *VVirtsburg*, *Famberg*, and *Mergetheim*, *Cities* of good account. The *Laics* are the *Marquifates* of *Cullembach*, and *Onspach*; and the *Counties* of *Holac*, whose chief place is *VVeickersheim*, and *Weriheim*, whose chief place is so called.

The *Imperial Cities*, are, 1. *Nuremberg*, seated in a barren *Soile*, yet, by reason of the industry of its *Inhabitants* (adding themselves to *mannall works*, and curious *Arts*, giving encouragement to all *Artists*) It is a place of good *Riches*, and well frequented by *Merchants* for their *wares*, known by the name of *Nuremberg wares*.

Their *Weights* is the *li*, of 16 *ounces*, or 32 *loaves*, of which is made a several *Quintalls*, the one, of 100 *li*. the other, of 120 *li*, and the 100 *li*. here maketh at *London* 111 *li*.

Their *Measure* of *length* is the *Ell*, the

100 whereof doth make at *London* about 63 *Ells*.

2. *Francfort*, seated in a large *Plaine*, and on the *Main*, which running through the *City*, separates it in two parts, which are joyned together again by a fair *Bridge*. It is encompassed with a strong double wall; It is a free *City* of the *Empire*, and famous for the *Election* of the *Emperours*, as also for the two *Fairs*, or *Marts* for *Books* here annually held, the one in *Lent*, and the other in *September*.

Their *Weight* is the *li*, of 16 *ounces*, of which there is 3 *Quintalls*, the one of 100 *li*. for *fine goods*; the other of 120 *li* for *gross goods*; and the other of 132 *li*. and is for *Food*: and the 100 *li*. doth make at *London* 108 *li*.

Their *Measures* of *Length* are two, and both *Ells*, the one for *woollen*, and the other for *Linnen*, differing about 2 per *Cent*. 100 *Ells* of which doth make in *London* about 48 or 49 *Ells*.

And 3. *Schweinfurt*.

The *Lantgraundome* of *HASSIE* is bounded on the East, with *Saxony*, on the South, with *Franconia*; on the West and North with *Westphalia*: It had its name from the *Hessi*, who, with the *Chatti* formerly inhabited this *Country*. Its chief places, are, 1. *Cassen*, a *City* seated in a fertile *Soile*, yet of no great beauty, though the residence of those of the elder house of the *Lantgraves*; 2. *Marpurg*, an *Univeristy*, and the seat of the second house of the *Lantgraves*; And 3. *Dorneslad*, the seat and inheritance of the youngest House of the *Lantgraves*.

To this *Province* doth belong the *Country* of *VVALDOCK*, whose *Earles* are subject to the *Lantgraves*; its chief *Town* is *Corbach*.

Likewise to this *Province* belongeth *WETTERAVIA*, whose chief places; are, *Nassau*, *Solins*, *Hanan*, and *Ifenbourg*.

The *Province* of *WESTPHALIA* was the ancient habitation of the *Saxons*, until by *Charles the Great*, they were brought into a narrower compass. The *Soile* of this *Province* is very fertile, especially in *Fruits*; and, above all, wonderfully stored with *Acornes*, which makes their *Swines flesh* excellent, and so much set by.

This *Province* is divided into 3 parts, to wit, *Countes*, *Imperial Cities*, and *Ecclesiasticks*. The *Countes* are those, 1. Of *EMBDEN*, whose chief place is *Aurich*. 2. Of *OLDENBOWAG*, whose chief place is so called. 3. Of *HOLE*, whose chief place

is *Nienbourg* place is *Lip* whose chief *Counte* of place is *Be*

The *IMP* of *Emden*, good *Winter* ters, but in *And* 2. *Zee*

The *ECC* *PRICKS*, ar *Minde*, and part of this *Bishopricks* ers.

The *Bishop* a great part place is *Colle* *Schools* for the ing said to (according to red the *Bodie* came from the ur, vulgarly *len*.

The *Bishop* for its chief pla the *River Em* so called, but

2. *Warendorp* The *Bishopric* chief places, seated on the seat of the *Ch* port also, seat 3. *Engers*, with the *Bishop* of *rour Henry the*

We have al *NT* about the higher, *Bavar* the lower: und understand *Sov* der the name under the name *Dukedome* of *A* ing *Estates*, for part of the in *Austria*.

The *Provinc* *VIA*, is limited *ria*, on the *Sc* *Grisons*, on the and on the *North* divided into sev the chief where

The *Bishopric* chief places are,

is *Nienbourg*. 4. *LIPPE*, whose chief place is *Lipstad*. 5. *RAVENSBERG*, whose chief place is *Herward*: And 6. Counte of *BENTHEM*, whose chief place is so called.

The *IMPERIAL CITIES*, are, those of *Zmbden*, seated low, and therefore no good Winter City, by reason of the waters, but in the Summer very pleasant; And 2. *Zoest*, of some account.

The *ECCLESIASTICKS*, or *BISHOPRICKS*, are, those of *Paderborne*, of *Ninde*, and of *Arensberg*. The other part of this Province doth belong to the Bishopricks of *Cullen*, *Munster*, and *Tryers*.

The Bishoprick of *COLLEN* taketh up a great part of *Westphalia*; Its chief place is *Collen*, a City well stored with *Schools* for the education of youth, it being said to have about 100; and here (according to report) 'tis said are Interred the Bodies of the 3 *Wise Men*, which came from the East to *VVorship* our *Saviour*. vulgarly called the 3 *Kings* of *Collen*.

The Bishoprick of *MUNSTER*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Munster*, seated on the River *Emu*, where there is a *Monastery* so called, built by *Charles the Great*. 2. *Warendorp*; And 3. *Herwerden*.

The Bishoprick of *TRYERS*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Tryers*, an ancient City, seated on the *Moselle*, and is the chief seat of the *Chancellor of France*: 2. *Boppert* also, seated on the *Moselle*; And 3. *Engers*; which 2 last were pawned to the *Bishop* of this *Diocefs*, by the Emperor *Henry the Seventh*.

We have already subdivided *GERMANY* about the *Danube* into *Sovabia*, or the higher, *Bavaria* or the middle, *Austria* or the lower: under the name of *Sovabia*, we understand *Sovabia*, and *Switzerland*: under the name of *Bavaria*, *Bavaria*; and under the name of *Austria*, the *Arch-Dukedome* of *Austria*, and the Neighbouring *Estates*, for a long time subject to, and part of the inheritance of the House of *Austria*.

The Province of *SOVABIA*, or *SWEVIA*, is limited on the East with *Bavaria*, on the South, with *Tirol*, and the *Grisons*, on the West, with the *Danube*; and on the North, with *Franconia*. It is divided into several parts and *Bishopricks*, the chief whereof are as followeth.

The Bishoprick of *AUSBOURG*, whose chief places are, *Dillingen*, and *Fuessen*.

The Bishoprick of *CONSTANCE*, whose chief place is *Merribourg*.

The Bishoprick of *COIRE*, whose chief place is *Marjoila*.

The Dutche of *WIRTFENBERG*, whose chief places, are, 1. *Stutgard*, dignified with the seat and residence of the Duke. 2. *Tubingue*, of note, for being a University; both Imperial Cities.

10 The Marquisate of *BURGAU*, whose chief place is *Guntzburg*.

Part of the Marquisate of *BADEN DURLAC*, whose chief place is *Baden*, seated on the *Rhine*, and honoured with the residence of the *Marquess* for the winter season, as *Milberg* is for the Summer.

The Counte of *FURSTENBERG*, whose chief place is *Meskirch*.

20 The Counte of *HOHENBERG*, whose chief place is *Ehingen*.

The Counte *RHINFELD*, whose chief places are, *Rhinsfelden*, and *Lauffenbourg*.

The Barony of *WALDEBOURG*, whose chief place is so called.

The Marquisate of *ANSPACH*, whose chief place is so called.

The Bishoprick of *WEIRTSBERG*, whose chief place is so called:

30 The Bishoprick of *MENTZ*, whose chief place is so called, seated on the *Mene*. This *Bishop* is the chief *Electer* of *Germany*.

The Bishoprick of *BAMBERG*, whose chief places, are, *Bamberg*, seated on the *Maene*, and *Foschiam*, where (as 'tis said) *Pontius Pilate* was born.

40 And besides these places, there are several *IMPERIAL CITIES*, as they lie on this side, and beyond the *Rhine*; beyond the *Rhine*, as, 1. *Ausbourg*, seated on the River *Leith*; in a fruitful Plain for *Corn* and *Pastures*; Northwards of the *Alpes*, from which it is not far distant. It is a free City of the *Empire*, being Governed by a Senate of *Citizens*; it is a place of good strength, and beautified with many fair Houses of free-stone, both publick and private, among which is a stately Structure, in manner of our Exchange, for the *Merchants* to meet at.

50 2. *Constance*. 3. *Lindau*. 4. *Ueberlingue*. 5. *Kempfen*. 6. *Stemmingue*: And 7. *Ravensbourg*. On this side the *Rhine*, are, the Cities of 1. *Ulme*, so called, from the many *Elme* Trees that environ it. 2. *Norlingue*. 3. *Aulen*. 4. *Dincksjuebel*. 5. *Halle*. 6. *Hailbron*. 7. *Elsingue*: And 8. *Fuennde*, all *Imperial Cities*.

The Ancient *Inhabitants* of this Country were the *Hmdslui*; after driven out by the *Sueves*.

The

The Province of SWITZERLAND, the SWISSES, or HELVETIA, is bounded on the East, with *Tirol*, on the South, with part of *Italy*, and *Savoy*; on the West, with *Burgogne*, and on the North, with *Souabia*, and *Alfasia*. It is divided into 13 Cantons, to wit: 1. *Zurich*, 2. *Berne*, 3. *Lucerne*, 4. *Uriaria*, or *Uri*, 5. *Glaris*, 6. *Zugh*, 7. *Basle*, 8. *Fribourgh*, 9. *Underwald*, 10. *Solothurn*, 11. *Schaffhouse*, 12. *Appenzel*: And 13. *Switz*, or *Swisse*; from which last, the whole Province takes its name. This Country is in length 240 Miles, and 180 in breadth, and exceeding populous, the Men being good Souldiers, and addict themselves to the Wars, serving any Prince that will hire them. This Country is said to lie the highest of any in all Europe, as sending forth 4 Rivers which run through its quarters, to wit, the *Rhine*, which takes its course Northward, through *France*, and *Belgium*; the *Danube*, Eastward, through *Germany*, *Hungaria*, and *Dacia*; the *Poe*, Southward, through *Italy*; and the *Redanus* Westward, through *France*.

The chief places in this Country, are, 1. *Zurich*, seated on the *Lake Zurichsea*, which separates it into 4 parts, which is again joynd together by 3 faire Bridges, that in the midst serving as a meeting place for Merchants; and this Lake emptieth it self into the Brook *Limachus*, which passing to *Bade*, dischargeth it self into the *Rhine*. 2. *Basle*, seated on the *Rhine*, which separates it into the greater and lesser *Basle*, once an Imperial City, but now joynd to the Cantons of *Switzerland*: It is famous for its University, so much frequented by Students; also for the notable Council here held; as also for the Sepulchres of *Erasmus*, *Hottoman*, *Oecolampadius*, *Glarconus*, and *Pontanus*. 3. *Bade*, so called, from the Baths here adjacent, which are well known and frequented by those of these parts. 4. *Constance*, seated on the *Lake Bodensee*, famous for its General Council here held in Anno 1414; among which those of most note, were the Emperor *Sigismund*, 4 Patriarchs; 29 Cardinals, 346 Arch-bishops; and Bishops; 564 Abbots and Doctors, 16000 Secular Princes and Noble Men, 600 Barbers, 320 Festers and Musitioners, and 450 Ladies of Pleasure. 5. *Lucerne*, seated on the Banks of a great Lake, and so called (as one observeth) from *Lucerna*, a *Lanburne*; which, for the benefit of Seamen in the

night, was placed on a high Tower. 6. *Stein*, 7. *Berne*, 8. *Laufane*, 9. *Tverdon*, 10. *Nyon*, 11. *Altorf*, 12. *Switz*, or *Swiss*, 13. *Zug*, 14. *Stantzstad*, 15. *Glaris*, 16. *Fribourg*, 17. *Soleurue*, 18. *Schaffhouse*: And 19. *Appenzel*: All which are in the aforesaid 13 Cantons, and Citties for the most part of good account.

10 Confederates with the *Switzers*, are, the Common-wealth of *GENEVA*, whose Territories, though not of above 8 Miles compass, are supposed to yield the yearly Revenue of 60000 Crowns; and the *City*, though not two Miles compass, is said to contain about 16, or 17000 soules. It is seated on the *Lake Lemanus*, through which the *River Rhodane* takes its course, which divides the *City* into two parts,

10 which after 16 leagues course salueth the Walls of *Lyons*; it is a faire *City*, well fortified, and wholly in the possession of the Protestants; and since the Reformation, it is become a flourishing University: The government of this estate, is by a Common Council consisting of 200, the 4 chief among which are called *Syndiques*. The Magistrates of this *City* allow of all civil and honest recreations on *Sundays*; they

30 allow the Ministers no *Tithes*, but give them Stipents of about 40 *l. per Annum*, and to some about 80 *l.* As for the *tithe* they go towards the reliefe of the Poor, Portions for the Children of poor Ministers, or the like occasions. Likewise the GRISONS, whose chief place is *Cuire*, also *Sengal*, or *Cuntas Santi Gallis* and lastly the Territory of *Vallais*, or *Valesse*, seated wholly among the *Alpes*; a Country of

40 no great bigness, consisting in craggy rock, and impassable hills, intermixt with delightful and rich *Valleys*. Its chief places, are, 1. *Sittin*, or *Sion*, the only Walled Town in this Country, a place of good strength, by reason of its situation on a high and steep Hill, whose ascent is hazardous, therefore not to be assaulted. 2. *Motimach*, of note for its antiquity; And 3. *Augannum*, or *St. Maurice*, esteemed

50 the Key of the Country, especially in the Winter, the *Ice* stopping all other entrances, here being a Bridge over the *Rhine* for that purpose, which is strongly built, and as well guarded for fear of a surprisal; besides which, several other places, Bishopricks and Citties which are their Allies, and Subjects, which I have observed in my *Geographical Tables*; besides which, several other Territories and places.

The

9 The Province into the *Duchy of B* East by *Austr* with *Tyrol*, a with the *Lein Danube*. Its nick, seated with the *resid stad*, seated o 3. *Katubonne*. Danow, of no made between Fifth, and *Ma sau*, famous to the *German* seated on the noured with a are the largest lieth Inter d t 6. *Frisingne*, ver *Moscow*, c

The *Palati* wise called *N* *tinster* is bou with *Bohemia* *Francia*, at *Danube*: It is the *Rhine*: *Lu berg*, seated 2. *Newburge*, of the you where the *P* they sojourne their Court.

6. *Aichstet*: The *Arch* seated on *bo* hath united of that *houst* of *Stiria*, *C* County of *Windischmar*

The partic AUSTRIA, on the East, the South, b the West, *via*, on the chief Town seated on th of the *Ger* Metropolitan ty of *Germa* Magnificen ries; but, ous and *Pr* rour keeps Bulwarke c

The Province of **BAVARIA**, is divided into the *Dutchy*; and *Palatinate*. The *Dutchy* of **BAVARIA** is limited on the East by *Austria*, and *Syria*; on the South, with *Tyrol*, and *Carinthia*; on the West, with the *Leike*; and on the North, with *Danube*. Its chief Towns, are; 1. *Munich*, seated on the River *Astr*, dignified with the residence of the *Duke*. 2. *Ingulstad*, seated on the *Danube*, an *University*. 3. *Katubonne*, or *Regensperg*, seated on the *Danub*, of note, for the interview here made between the Emperor *Charles the Fifth*, and *Maurice Duke of Saxony*. 4. *Paffau*, famous for the often meeting here of the *German Princes*. 5. *Salzbourg*, seated on the River *Salzcoch*, a *City* honoured with a *Bishoprick*, whose Revenues are the largest in all *Germany*; and here lieth Inter'd the Body of *Paracelsus*: And 6. *Frisingae*, seated not far from the River *Mossem*, on the ascent of a Hill.

The *Palatinate* of **BAVARIA**, otherwise called *Northgeria*, or the upper *Palatinates* is bounded on the East and North with *Bohemia*; on the West with part of *Francia*; and on the South with the *Danube*: It is subject to the *Palatines* of the *Rhine*: Its chief Towns, are; 1. *Amberg*, seated among rich *Silver Mines*. 2. *Newbourg*, usually the portion of some of the younger *Palatines*. 3. *Cassel*, where the *Palatines* of the *Rhine*, when they sojourn in this Country, use to keep their Court. 4. *Salzback*. 5. *Burglesell*. 6. *Aichstet*: And 7. *Pfreims*.

The *Arch-Dukedome* of **AUSTRIA** is seated on both sides of the *Danube*, and hath united to it, as hereditary Possessions of that house, the *Provinces*, or *Dukedomes* of *Syria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Tirol*, the County of *Cilly*, and the *Marquisate* of *Windischmarch*.

The particular *Dukedome* or *Province* of **AUSTRIA**, is separated from *Hungaria*, on the East, by the *Leita*; from *Syria*, on the South, by the *Muer*; from *Bavaria*, on the West, by the *Ems*; and from *Moravia*, on the North, by the *Tem*: Its chief Townes, are; 1. *Wien*, or *Vienna*, seated on the *Danube*, at present the seat of the *German Emperours*, as being the *Metropolitan*, fairest, and most beautiful City of *Germany*; being adorned with many *Magnificent Temples*, and *Rarely Monasteries*; but, above all, with a most sumptuous and Princely *Palace*, where the *Emperour* keeps his Court; it is accounted the *Bulwark* of this Country against the

*Turks*, being famous for the repulse they gave the *Turks* in *Anno 1526*, when besieged by 200 thousand, under the Conduct of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, who by the valour of *Frederick* the second, *Electour Palatine*, and *Other Princes*, they were forced to retreat, with the loss of about 80000 Men.

Their weight is the *li*, which in some *Commodities* is divided into 32 *loaves*, and in some into 128 *pints*: And the 100 *li*, doth make in *London* 123 *li*, in *circu*.

Their *Measures* of length are two, the one for *linnen*, the other for *woollen*; the 100 yards at *London* makes here 103 *ells* in *linnen*, and 113 *ells* in *woolten*.

Next to it is, 1. *Ens*, or *Emr*, so called from the River *Ems*, on which it is seated. 2. *Horn*. 3. *Wells*. 4. *Nenstat*. 5. *Bade*. And 6. *Crem*, seated on the *Danube*, about 60 Miles from *Vienna*, &c.

The *Dukedome* of **STYRIA**, or **STIER-MARKE**, is contiguous to *Austria* on the South; it is in length 120 Miles, and 60 in breadth; Its chief places are, *Pruck*, *Pittau*, and *Graetz*, from which last the fourth branch of *Austria* is called *Dis Graetz*; and hath the *Government* of this Country.

The *Dukedome* of **CARINTHIA**, is bounded on the East, with *Syria*; on the South, with the *Alpes*; on the West, with *Tirol*; and, on the North, with *Bavaria*: It is 75 Miles in length, and 55 in breadth; Its chief places, are; *St. Veit*, the *Metropolitan City* of this Country. 2. *Vilbach*. And 3. *Gurck*.

The *Dukedome* of **CARNIOLA**, hath on the East, *Sclavonia*; on the South, *Yfria*; on the West, *Italy*; and on the North, *Carinthia*; It is in length 150 Miles, and 45 in breadth; Its chief Towns, are; 1. *Newmarkt*. 2. *Marsberg*; And 3. *Efling*, all seated on the *Savna*. 1. *Gorice*. 2. *Gradisque*; And 3. *Laubach*.

The *Dukedome* of **TIROL**, or **TIROLIS**, is bounded on the East, with *Carinthia*; on the South, with *Marca Trevigiana*; on the West, with the *Grisons*; and on the North, with *Schwaben*: It is 72 Miles in length, and as much in breadth; Its chief places, are; 1. *Inspurck*, seated on the *Oenus*, which gave name to the third branch of *Austria*. 2. *Trent*, a *Bishoprick*, seated on the River *Adeps*, famous, for the *General Council* there held by *Pope Paul* the Third, against the *Doctrines* of *Luther* and *Calvin*, it began in *Anno 1545*, and continued off and on for the space of 18

Years.

SS

years. 3. *Brixen*. 4. *Tirol*. And 5. *Lanck*. The Soild of this Country is very fertile, and in many places hath store of rich *silver Mines* which are very profitable to the *Arch-Dukes*. Then the County of *CILLEY* hath its principal Town of the same name. And lastly, the *Marquisate of WINDISCHMARCH*, whose chief City is *Metting*.

*GERMANY* about the *Elba* and the *Oder* contains *Bohemia*, and the higher and lower *Saxony*. To *Bohemia* are incorporated the *Dukedome of Silesia*, and the *Marquisate of Moravia*, and *Lusatia*.

## BOHEMIA.

THE Kingdom of *BOHEMIA* is encompassed with the *Hercynian Forests*, which for a long time was a fence against the *Romans*; it hath on the East, *Moravia* and *Silesia*; on the South, *Austria*; on the West, *Bavaria*; and on the North, *Lusatia*, or *Lucacia*. The whole Kingdom contains 550 Miles in Circuit, in which are said to be 780 Cities, walled Towns, and Castles, and about 32000 Villages; all which are Inhabited by a sort of People much addicted to *drunkenness*, and *gluttony*, but the richer sort, as *Nobles*, and *Gentry* (for the most part) are of another temper, following such wayes and courses as tends to their honour. The Soyle of this Kingdom is extremely fruitful, and enriched with Mines of all sorts of Mettalls, except *Gold*.

The chief Cities in *BOHEMIA*, particularly so called, are; 1. *Prague*, the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, and seated in the midst of it, on the River *Mulda*, nor Navigable, and therefore a place of no great Trade. This City consisteth of 4 severall Townes, and every one of them have their peculiar *Magistrates*, *Laws*, and *Customs*; to wit, the old *Prague*, beautified with a famous *Senate-house*, a large *Market-house*, and severall faire *Stables*: Then new *Prague*, separated from the old by a deep and broad ditch; also the little Town, so called, which is divided from the old *Prague*, by the River *Mulda*, to which it is joyned by a fair *Bridge*. In this Town, or part, is the Hill *Rachin*, on the sides of which are many beautiful *Houses*, inhabited by the *Nobility*; and on the Summit thereof is a magnificent *Palace*, and is the residence of the *Bohemian Kings*, and latter *Emperours*. The fourth

and last part, is the Town of the *Jewes*, as by them Inhabited; where they have 5 *Synagogues*, and live according to their own *Laws*.

The weight used in this City, is, the li. of 16 ounces; the 100 li. *Stable of London* maketh here about 83 li.

Their Measure of length is the *Ell*; of which they have two sorts, the one for *linnen*, and the other for *Woollen* and *Silke*. The 100 yards at *London* doth make 148 *Ells* in *Linnen*, and 160 in *Woollen*.

The next City is *Egra*, seated on the River *Eger*, on the very borders of this Kingdom towards *Francia*, once an *Imperial City*, till in *Anno* 1315, being then sold by the Emperour *Ludovicus BAVARIUS* for 400 thousand Marks, to *John King of Bohemia*. 3. *Melnick*, seated on the River *Albis*: And 4. *Budweiss*, a Town of good strength towards *Austria*. 5. *Pilsen*. 6. *Egra*. 7. *Glatz*: And 8. *Coningraccz*, Cities of good account.

The Dukedome of *SILESIA* is Eastward of *Bohemia*, it is in length 240 miles, and 80 in breadth; being divided into 2 equal parts, by the River *Oder*, which here hath its beginning: Its chief places, are; 1. *Breslaw*, or *Uvaslavia*, so called, from a Duke of this Province, who built it: this Town by a misfortune was totally burnt in 1341, but since it was rebuilt, it is become one of the neatest Towns in *Germany*. 2. *Glogau*. 3. *Lignitz*. 4. *Neyse*: And 5. *Troppan*.

The Marquisate of *MORAVIA* is bounded on the East, and North, with *Silesia*; on the South, with *Hungaria*, and *Austria*; and on the West, with *Bohemia*; it is esteemed the most fertile Countrey for *Corn* in *Germany*, abounding likewise in *Myrre*, and *Frankincence*, not growing on *Trees*, but immediately out of the Earth. Its chief places, are; 1. *Brinn*, dignified with the Seat of the *Marquess*. 2. *Olmutz*, seated on the *Norava*, from whence the County takes its name, it is an *University*. 3. *Iglaw*: And 4. *Znaim*.

The Marquisate of *LUSATIA* is bounded on the East with *Silesia*, on the South with *Bohemia*, on the West, with *Saxony*, and on the North, with *Brandenbourg*: A Countrey, though but little, yet able to Arme 30000 Foot, as good as any in *Germany*; It hath for its Metropolis *Sauszen*. 2. *Gawlis*: And 3. *Soran*.

*GLATZKO*, a County, and the *Signory of BURZ* belong likewise to the Kingdom

come of *Bohemia*.

To the King longest severall I have observed.

## Higher

THE *HIC DENBOURG* ony belongs to and Eleitor of the East with on the South, on the West, and on the North *Brandenbourg* 3 principal parts, *gia*, *Misnia*, *V*

The Province compassed with *nia*, and *Hass*: 1. *Erdford*, on Cities in *Germany* *University of Phip* famous for the in *Anno* 1530 agreeable, and God, was embraced who *Protestec* *Pope* with their ceived in *Germany* ted over all *C* was borne at *Manfield*, but *denberg*; and This Countrey breadth and le

The Province passed with *Voi* *Thuring*; its c *den*, seated on the *Duke* and is a place of *g* *Walls* and *Bol* *nance*; being *Armes* and *Ar* *warning*, he ca *and* *Fest*. 2. *plain* for *Corn* *Streets* large, *lofty* *Houses* bu some account *Study* of *Phil* these *Philosoph* *Nature*) find

County of Cilly, and Marquisate of Windischmarch.

Kingdom of Bohemia and Austria.

City of Prague, and the Kingdom of Bohemia.

City of Glatz.

City of Prague, and the Kingdom of Bohemia.



dome of *Bohemia*; its chief place is *Glatz*.

To the Kingdome of *Bohemia* there belongeth severall *Estates* or *Provinces*, which I have observed in my *Geographical Tables*.

Higher SAXONY.

THE HIGHER SAXONY may be divided into *SAXONY*, *BRANDENBOURG*, and *POMERANIA*: *Saxony* belongs for the most part to the *Duke* and *Electour* of *Saxony*; it is bounded on the East with *Lusatia*, and *Brandenbourg*; on the South, with *Bavaria*, and *Bohemia*; on the West, with *Hassia*, and *Franconia*; and on the North, with *Lower Saxony*, and *Brandenbourg*; and is divided into four principal parts, or *Provinces*, to wit, *Turingia*, *Misnia*, *Voitland*, and *Saxony*.

The *Province* of *TURINGIA* is encompassed with *Saxony*, *Misnia*, *Franconia*, and *Hassia*; Its chief places, are; 1. *Erford*, one of the largest, and fairest *Cities* in *Germany*. 2. *Jene*, an *University* of *Physicians*; And 3. *Smalcald*, famous for the *Lutheran League* here made in *Anno 1530*; whose *Doctrine* being so agreeable, and near the mind and word of *God*, was embraced by the *German Princes*, who Protested to defend it against the *Pope* with their lives: And being thus received in *Germany*, was quickly propagated over all *Christendome*. This *Luther* was borne at *Isleben* in the County of *Manfield*, but had his education at *Maidenberg*, and there he studied *Divinity*. This *Country* is about 120 miles in breadth and length.

The *Province* of *MISNIA*, is encompassed with *Voitland*, *Saxony*, *Bohemia*, and *Thuring*; Its chief places, are; 1. *Dresden*, seated on the *Albin*, the residence of the *Duke* and *Prince Electour* of *Saxony*; it is a place of great strength, having on its *Walls* and *Bulwarks* 150 Pieces of *Ordinance*, being the *Dukes Magazin* for *Armes* and *Men*: where, upon a dayes warning, he can make ready 30000 *Horse* and *Foot*. 2. *Lippich*, seated in a fruitful plain for *Corn*; it is a fair *Town*, the *Streets* large, and beautified with many lofty *Houses* built of free *Stone*; it is of some account for its *University*, for the Study of *Philosophy*. It is observed, that these *Philosophers* (among other secrets in *Nature*) find *Beere* so good; that the

*Duke* gaineth by the very *Custom* of the *Beere* here Drunk by them, and the *Inhabitants*, whose *Rules* they follow 20000 pounds *Sterling* yearly: And 3. *Mulberge*, where *John the Electour* was discomfited.

The *Province* of *VOITLAND*, is South of *Misnia*, a *Country* of no large extent, and of as little note; its chief places, are; *Zwickaw*, and *Ornitz*.

The *Province* of *SAXONY*, particularly so called, is South of *Turingia*, and *Misnia*, communicating its name to the whole; and hath for its chief places, 1. *Wittenberg*, seated on a Plain and Sandy barren ground, once dignified with the Seat of the *Dukes* of *Saxony*, famous for the *Sepulchers* of *Luther* and *Melancton*; it is an *University*: and of this *Town* there is a common Proverbe; That a Man shall meet nothing but *Schollers*, *Whores*, and *Swine*; which two last are their food. And 2. *Worlets*, seated on the *Albis*.

The *Marquisate* of *BRANDENBOURGII* is bounded on the East, with *Poland*; on the South, with *Lusatia*; on the West, with *Saxony*; and on the North, with *Pomerania*, and part of *Lower Saxony*; It is in compass 520 Miles, in which are contained 50 *Cities*, and 64 Walled *Townes*, the chief of which are; 1. *Berlin*, situated on the River *Spre*, the ordinary residence of the *Marquis*. 2. *Brandenbourg*, which communicates its name to the *Country*. 3. *Frankford*, on the *Oder* (to distinguish it from the other on the *Meine*; It is seated in a Fertile Soile for *Corn* and *Wine*; it is an *University*, and a great *Mart Town*, but not comparable to the other *Frankford*. 4. *Havelberg*, seated on the River *Havel*, the Seat of a *Bishop*; And 5. *Landsparg*. This *Marquisate* is divided into the new and the old *Brandenbourg*.

*POMERANIA* is bounded on the East, with the River *Vistula*; on the South, with *Brandenbourg*; on the West, with *Mecklenburgh*; and on the North, with the *Baltick Ocean*. Its chief places, are; 1. *Stettin*, the Residence of the *Prince*, which from a poor *Fisher-Town*, is now become the chief of the *Country*, 2. *Walden*, or *Wolgast*, once a famous *Mart Town*, where the *Russians*, *Vandals*, *Danes* and *Saxons*, had their particular *Streets* of a board for *Trade*; but in *Anno 1170* it was ruined by the *Danes*, and the *Trade* quite lost, being thence removed to *Lubick*. 3. *Gripwald*.

the *Fenes*,  
e they have  
ling to the

is, the *li*,  
le of *London*

the *Ell*, of  
the one for  
*den* and *Silke*,  
h make 148  
*oolen*.

eated on the  
orders of this  
once an *Im*,  
being then  
*icus BAVARIUS*  
*John King* of  
d on the *Ri*,  
a *Town* of  
*ria*. 5. *Pis*,  
And 8. *Co*,  
ount.

*SIA* is East-  
th 240 miles,  
divided into 2  
r, which here  
f places, are;  
called, from  
ho built it:  
was totally  
was rebuilt, it  
est *Towns* in  
*Lignitz*. 4.

*ORAFIA* is  
North, with  
h *Hungaria*,  
st, with *Bohe*,  
fertile Coun-  
ounding like-  
nce, nos grow-  
ly out of the  
3. *Briun*,  
the *Marquest*,  
*Morava*, from  
is name, it is  
and 4. *Zna*.

*IA* is bound-  
on the South  
with *Saxony*,  
*denbourg*; A  
yet able to  
is any in *Ger*,  
*polis Sausen*.  
d the *Signary*  
to the King-  
dome

Province of  
Voitland.

Province of  
Saxony.

Marquisate  
of Brandenbourg

Province of  
Pomerania

3. *Gripwald*, an *University*. 4. *Stralsunde*; And 5. *Colberg*. That part of the Country about *Stettin* belongs now to the *Sweeds*; that towards *Colberg* to the *Marquisate of Brandenburg*.

### Lower SAXONY.

IN the *Lower SAXONY* are the *Archbishopsricks of Magdebourg and Brems*; the *Bishops of Ferden, Hildesheim, and Halberstadt*, all *Cities*, with their territories. The *City Brems* is one of the *Hans-Towns*, so called, for the freedom of *Traffick* here practis'd: It is seated on the *River Visurge*, which runneth through the *City*, commodious for the conveying of *Commodities* to the *Sea*, from which it is distant 3 Miles.

Also the *Dutchy of HOLSTEME*, or *HOLSATIA*, where are the *Cities of Kyell, and Glückstad*.

The *Dutchy of MECLENBOURGH*, is on the *West part of Pomerania*; its chief places, are; 1. *Wismar*, so named from *Wismarus*, a *King of the Vandals*, father of *Rhadaguse*, who with *Alarick the Goth* sacked *Rome*. 2. *Rostock*, an *University*, founded in *Ann 1415*, by *Albert and Henry Princes* of this *Country*.

The *Dukedomes of LUNEBOURGH and BRUNSWICK*, are bounded on the *East*, with *Brandenburgh*; on the *South*, with *Saxony and Holsatia*; on the *West*, with *Westphalia*; and on the *North*, with *Denmark*: the *River Ems* taking its course through this *Country*. The chief places in these *Dukedomes*, are; 1. *Lunneburgh*, said to be so called from the *Moon*, which the ancient *Inhabitants* worshipp'd; It is an *Imperial and Free City*, over which the *Duke of Lunneburgh* challengeth a superiority; a place of good strength, being well fortified with thick mudd *Walls* and deep *Ditches*, and its buildings very faire: It is well known for its *salt Fountain* here found, over which is built a spacious *house* containing 52 *Roomes*, in every one of which are placed 8 *Chaldrons of Lead*, in each of which are boyled a tunn of *salt* every day: the profit of which is divided into three parts: one to the said *Duke*, another to the *City*, and the other part to a *Monastery*, and some adjoining *Eardomes*. 2. *Celle*, the seat of the *Duke of Lunneburgh*. 3. *Brunswick*, seated in a fertile soile for *Corn*; It is a *free Imperial City*, strongly fenced about with *Walls*, besides

the *River of Ancor* which encompasseth it: This place is famous for its *Mum*, which the *Inhabitants* are so much addicted unto, that they commonly spend the forenoones about their *Affaires*, and the afternoones in good fellowship: And 4. *Walschaiten*, or *Wolfe buttell*, the seat of the *Dukes of Brunswick*.

Also to the *Lower Saxony* belongeth the *Dukedomes of GRUBENHAGEN*, whose chief place is *Limbecke*: of *GOTTINGEN*, whose chief place is *Gottingue*; and of *LAWENBOURG*, whose chief places, are, *Lawenbourg, and Hadler*.

And last of all, in the *Lower SAXONY*, are, the *Hanse Towns of Hamburg, Lubeck and Strade, &c.*

There are in *Germany* *Cities* of 3 sorts, the first are called *Hanse-Towns*. or *Hansteden*, quasi *An Zee Steden*, that is, *Towns on the Sea*, and enjoying laige *Priviledges*, and *immunities*, and are in number 72, most of which are able to put to sea about 100 saile of *Ships*, the chief of which *Hamburg*, seated on a large and sandy *Plaine*, and on the *North-bank of the Albe*, where it divideth *Germany* from *Denmarke*: the *City* it self is compass'd with a deep *Ditch*, and on the *East and North-sides* with a double *Ditch and Wall*; it is adorned with 9 *Churches*, and many faire publick buildings, as the *Senate-House, the Exchange, &c.* as also their private *houses* are neatly built, and all of *Erick*; and the beauty of their *houses*, is at the first entrance, having broad and faire *Gates*, which lead into a large *Hall*, where, to the view of the street they place their chief *Houhold-stuff* especially their *English Pewter*, which being kept alwayes bright, casts a glittering shew to the passers by: The streets are but narrow, excepting one, which beareth the name of *Broad-street*: And to this *City* belongeth 6 *Gates*, which serves for entrance: The *Harbor* is shut up with *Iron Chaines*, and guarded very strictly. It is very populous, well inhabited, and frequented by *Nerchants*; especially by the *English*, who have here a *Faltery* for *Woolen Clnb*. In this *City* there hath been observed to be 777 *Brewers*, 40 *Bakers*, one *Lawyer*, and one *Physitian*; the reason of this great disproportion, as one wittily observed, was, that a cup of *Nimis* is their best *Vomiting Potion*; and their *Contentions* were sooner compos'd over a Pot of *Drink*, then by order of *Law*.

The *Coynes* of this *City of Hamburg*, are *Dollers*; and 3 *Dollers* is one *Whitpence*, which is worth 18 s. ster.

Their

Their  
the 120 li.  
nomination  
to the ster  
pound, whic  
pound of 15  
is the third.

Their M  
100 whereo

The next  
seated for 7  
about 5 mi  
where the E  
on some dis  
ceived from  
willing to lo  
soon gained  
is but of a fr

The Coyne  
Dollers, Mar  
ver is value  
makes a doller

Their weig  
li. of which is  
London 107,

Their Meas  
agreeth with

The last of  
Lubeck, also a  
the other tw  
North-banke  
on the East t  
Denmarke, an  
summer wher  
ing St. Maries  
ledech Streets  
besides which

It is encompa  
of brick, and  
some parts de  
hout 1000 tu  
ter from Trem  
ed on the Ba  
bout a Mile o  
City are of b  
which they h  
and the Inhab  
for their civi  
their strictne  
Justice.

The Con  
fordeth is Co  
are brought  
but their chi  
they have pl  
Freight to st  
modities sent  
Hambourgh  
Coynes lie

Their *weight* is the *li.* of which is made the 120 *li.* their *Quintal* divided into 3 denominations, the first 12 *stone*, of 10 *li.* to the *stone*, 300 *li.* thereof to the *Skip pound*, which is the second, and 20 *Lispound* of 15 *li.* to the said, 300 *li.* which is the third.

Their *Measure of length* is the *ell*, the 100 whereof makes at *London* 48 *ells*.

The next *City* is *Stoade*, commodiously seated for *Traffique*, upon the *River Elbe*, about 5 miles distance from *Hamburg*, where the *English* removed their House upon some discontents and unkindness received from the *Hambourgers*; who, unwilling to lose the great benefit of trade, soon gained them again, so that now *Stoade* is but of a small trade.

The *Coynes* here currant, are *Stivers*, *Dollers*, *Marks*, *Grafhes*, *Ortals*, &c. 1 *stiver* is valued at 2 *d. sterling*; 32 *stivers* makes a *doller*. A *marke* is 16 *stivers*.

Their *weight* is the *li.* of 16 ounces, 100 *li.* of which is their *Quintal*, and makes at *London* 107, or 209 *li.*

Their *Measure of length* is the *ell*, which agreeth with that of *Hamburg*.

The last of these *Cities* I shall name is *Lubeck*, also an *Imperial* and *free City*, as the other two are, it is seated on the North-banke of the *River Trane*, which on the East side divideth *Germany* from *Denmarke*, and on a spacious hill, on the summit whereof is a beautiful *Church*, being *St. Maries the Cathedral*, from whence leadeth *Streets* to all the *Gates of the City*, besides which there is 9 other *Churches*: It is encompassed with a double *Wall*, one of brick, and the other of *earth*; and in some parts deep *ditches*, where *Ships* of about 1000 *tuns* are brought up to *Winter* from *Tremuren*, its *Maritime Port*, seated on the *Baltick sea*, from which it is about a *mile* distant, the *buildings* of this *City* are of brick, and very beautiful, to which they have many pleasant *Gardens*, and the *Inhabitants* are to be commended for their civility to *strangers*; as also for their strictness in the execution of the *Justice*.

The *Commodities* which this *City* affordeth is *Corne*, *Hemp*, *Flax*, &c. which are brought thither from other places; but their chief *Trade* is in *shipping*, which they have plenty of, and which they let to *Freight* to *strangers*: they have no *Commodities* sent them from *England*; for *Hambourgh* furnishes their defects.

*Coynes* here currant, are, the *Rixdoller*;

worth 43 *stivers*; a *Merchants doller* is 33 *stivers*; a *Slecht doller* is 32 *stivers*; a *Marke Lbs* is 16 *stivers*; a *Guld* is 1 *Marke* and 8 *stivers*; a *Real* is 2 *Marke* and 14 *stivers*, and 9 of their *stivers* makes 6 *d. sterling*: 1 *Marke* is 16 *stivers*, and 1 *stiver* is 12 *penning*. They have also *Sechling*, which is; a *penning*; and a *Dreyling* is; a *sechling*.

Their *weight* is the *li.* of which is made 2 *Centner*, and a *shippound*. 1 *shippound* is 20 *lispond*, 20 *lispond*, or 280 *li.* 1 *Centner* is 8 *lispond*, or 112 *li.* A *schippound* of *Feathers* is 320 *li.* and a *lispond* is 16 *li.* A *Tun* of *Butter* or *Tallow* is 16 *lispond*. A *Tun* of *Salt* 20 *lispond*. A *stone* of *Flax* is 20 *li.* A *stone* of *Wool* is 10 *li.* 1 *li.* is 16 ounces, or 32 *Lods*.

Their *Measure of length* is the *ell*, 8 whereof makes in *London* 5 *yards*.

The second sort of *Cities* in *Germany*, are such as are held by inheritance of some *Princes*; and may be called *Principalities*, as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, or the like.

And the third and last sort are the *Free* or *Imperial Cities*, being about 60 in number: they are called free for their great *Prerogatives*, in *Coining Money*, *Ruling* by their own *Laws*; and *imperial*, as knowing no *Lord*, or *Protector* but the *Emperour*; to whom they pay two third parts of such *Contributions* as are Assessed in the *Assemblies*, and about 1500 *Florens* yearly, for themselves and their *Territories*.

GERMANY is a spacious *Country*, and very populous, the *People* of a strong constitution, of a good proportion and complexion, and for the most part handsome; are very ingenious and stout, much given to *drink*, but of a noble nature; the poorer sort great *pains-takers*; and the *Nobles* (which are many) either good *scholars*, or stout *souldiers*; for the *Titles of the Fathers* descend to all their *Children*: So that every son of a *Duke* is a *Duke*; and every daughter of a *Dutchess* a *Dutchess*; a thing which the *Italians*, (as *Helyn* noteth) hold so foolish and vain, that they in derision say, that the *Dukes* and *Earles of Germany*; the *Dons of Spain*, the *Nobility of Hungaria*, the *Bishops of Italy*; the *Lairds of Scotland*, the *Monseurs of France*; and the younger *Brethren of England*, make a poor *Company*.

There are so many inferior (yet free) *Princes* in this *Country*, that in a dayes journey, a *Traveller* may meet with many *Laws*, and as many sorts of *Coyne*, every *Prince* making use of his own *Lawes* and

T e t Coyne

Their Weight.

The Part of Germany.

*Cognes*, whose *Laws* the *Emperours* are sworn to keep; which made one say, that the *Emperour* is *King of Kings*; the *King of Spain* is *King of Men*, by reason of the *Obedience* his *Subjects* shew him; and the *King of France*, *King of Asses*, as bearing his heavy *Taxes*.

The *Countreys* generally fruitful, and temperate, being situate, as we have said before under the *temperate Zone*, it abounds in *Mines* of *Silver*, and other inferior *Metals*, hath store of *Corn* and *Wines*, which they transport into *Forraigne Countreys*, as likewise *Linnen*, *Laces*, *Woollen*, and divers *Manufactures*; also *Quick silver*, *Allom*, *Armes* of all sorts, and other *Ironworke*. Its *Ponds*, *Lakes* and *Rivers* are well stor'd with *Fish*.

The chief *Rivers* of *Germany*, are, the *Rhine*, the *Weser*, the *Elbe*, and the *Oder*, (for the *Danube* having but a small course in *Germany*, shall be spoken of elsewhere.) The *Rhine* hath its Springs near *Mount St. Godard*, in the *Countrey* of the *Grisons*, divides the *Suisnes* from *Swabie*, passes into *Alsacia*, into the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*, into the *Arch-bishoprick*, and *Electors* of *Mentz*, *Triers*, and *Collen*; into the *Estates* of the *Succession* of *Cleves* and *Fuliers*; and into the *United Provinces* of the *Low-Countreys*, where it divides its self into many branches, which lose themselves in other *Rivers*, or fall into the *Sea* under divers names.

The *WESER* hath its Spring in the *County* of *Henneberg*, South of the *Mountains*, and *Forests* of *Turingia*; It comes not near *Goventball* in *Turingia*, having its *Streames* from other *Rivers* between: it is called *Verze* and *Werra* in its beginning; waters under that name *Hilpershausen*, *Meinungen*, &c. leaves *Smalkaden* much on the right hand, and upon another *River*, passes to *Salznungen*, *Fach*, &c. leaves *Isenach* much on the right hand, and on another *River*; likewise *Mulhausen* of *Turingia* on the right, and on the *Unstrick*, which takes its course another way, waters *Eschwege* receives the *Fulda* at *Munden*; and here leaves the name of *Werra*, and takes that of *Weser*: Waters *Heaven*, *Minden* (this a *Bishoprick*, and other then the forementioned *Munden*) *Wyemburg*, a more considerable place of the *County* of *Hoy*; Pass by *Ferden* a *Bishoprick*; and near it receives *Abe* or *Alte*, the greatest and strongest *River* of all that falls into the *Weser*: after *Ferden* it waters *Bremen*, and slides into the *Ocean*.

between the *County* of *Oldenbourg* and the *Arch-bishoprick* of *Breme*. I have been more particular about this *River* than others, to make it appear, that former *Authors* have mistaken most of the places they have described on this *River*.

The *ELBE*, *Labe*, (or *Albis* of the *Antients*) begins in the *Mountains* of *Risenberg*, that is, the *Mountains* of *Giants*, which are between *Bohemia* and *Silesia*; it is formed of 11 several *Streames*, from whence it takes the name of *Labe*, that is, *Eleven*; it receives in *Bohemia*, not only the *Multan*, which passes through *Prague*; but it may be said, that coming out of *Bohemia*, it carries in one sole *Channel* all the waters which spring and fall in *Bohemia*: It waters *Dresden* in *Misia*, *Wittenburgh* in *Saxony*, *Magedburg Arch bishoprick*, *Lunenburgh Dutchy*, *Hambourgh*, that famous *City*, leaving *Stoade* on the left-hand, *Gluckstad* on the right; and after having divided the *Arch bishoprick* from the *Dutchy* of *Holsatia*, falls into the *German Ocean*.

The *ODER* hath the greatest part of its course in *Silesia*, the reid in the *Margisate* of *Brandenburgh*, and *Pomerania*, from whence it casts it self into the *Baltick-sea*. Its spring is in the utmost part of *Moravia*, on the confines of *Silesia*, where it waters *Brieg*, *Breslau*, *Glogau*, *Craven*, &c. and gathers together the waters of *Silesia* before it parts: It waters *Frankfort* on the *Oder* in *Brandenburgh*, and *Stetin* in *Pomerania*, where it divides into many *Channels*, and opens in the end a *Gulf* (*Der Grosse Haff*) that is, a great *Lake*; and embraces the *Iles* of *Ussedom*, and *Wollin*, making 3 mouths, by which it disburthens it self into the *Sea*.

That part which we call *BELGIUM*, or the *LOW-COUNTREYS*, is of a large extent, seated in the *North Temperate Zone*, under the 8th, and 9th *Climates*, the longest-day being 17 hours; the *Aire*, by reason of the industry of the *Inhabitants* in draining the *Marshes*, and turning the standing *Waters* into running *Streames*, is now very healthful, as being purged from those grosse vapours, which did thence arise: The *Countrey* yieldeth exceeding low, and therefore subject to inundations. The *Commodities* that this *Countrey* yieldeth, are, *Linnen*, *Tanne*, *Thread*, *Sayes*, *Silks*, *Perkins*, *Tapestries*, *Pictures*, *Prims*, *Blades*, *Soaps*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Fish*, *Pots*, *Votives*, *Ropes*, *Cables*, *Armen*, several *Manufactures*, &c. besides the *Commodities* of *India*, *Persia*,

The fertility  
and  
Commodities  
of  
Germany.

Chief Rivers  
in  
Germany.

The Rhine

The Weser

urg and the  
have been  
River then  
former Au-  
the places  
ver.

Albia of the  
ains of Ri-  
of Giants,  
d Silesia; it  
mes, from  
abe, that is,  
a, not only  
gh Prague's  
g out of Bo-  
nnel all the  
n Bohemia:  
Wittenburgh  
b Bilsoprick,  
ourgh, that  
on the left-  
and after ha-  
ck from the  
the German

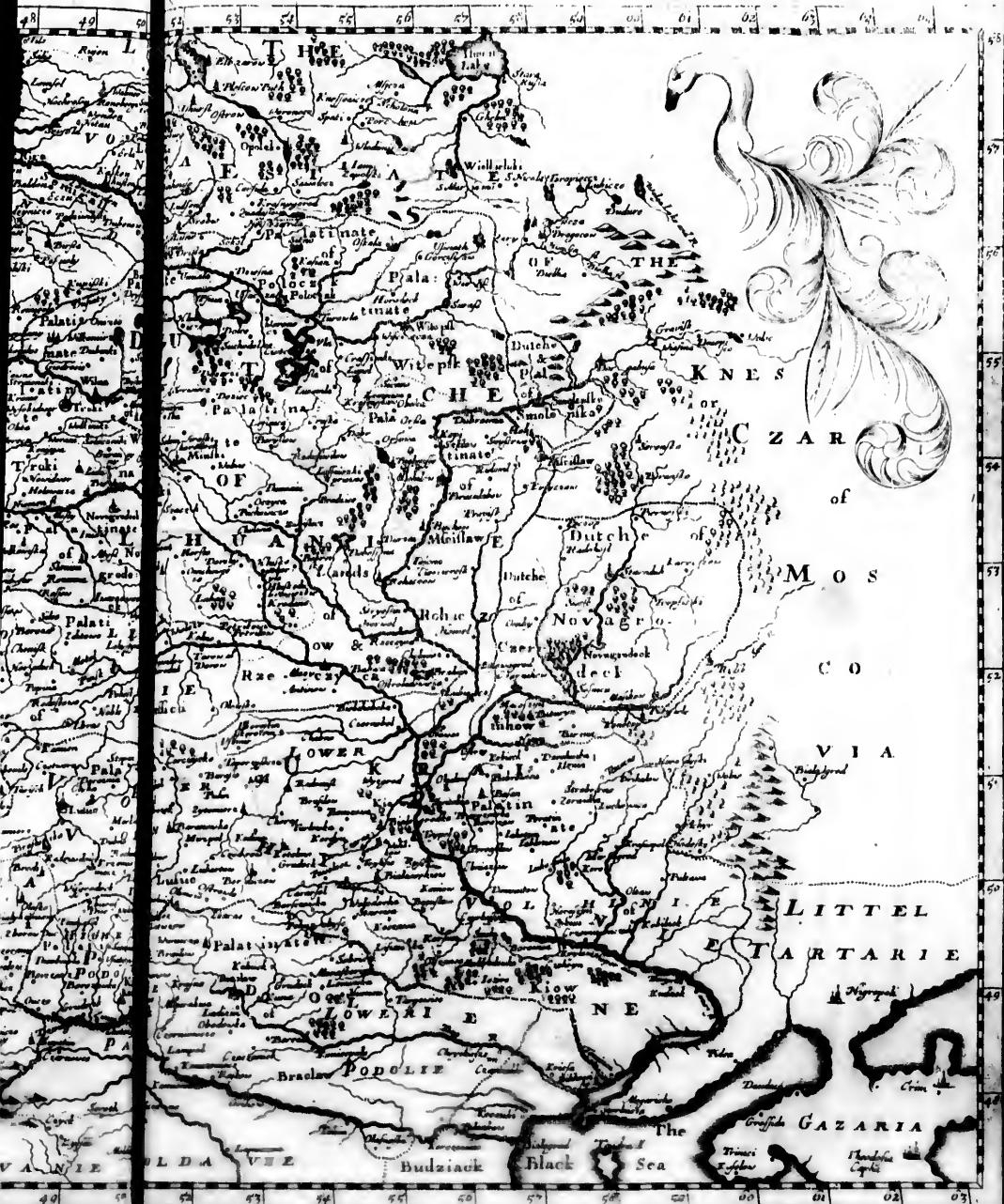
teff part of  
the Margui-  
ranis, from  
Baltick-sea.  
out of Mora-  
ia, where it  
Cruzen, etc.  
ists of Silesia  
Frankfort on  
nd Stetin in  
s into many  
end a Gollf-  
great Lake;  
Sedom, and  
by which it

LCIUM, or  
a large ex-  
perate Zone,  
s, the long-  
e Aire, by  
abitants in  
urning the  
streames, is  
urged from  
d thence a-  
ed ng low,  
tions. The  
y yeildeth,  
ayes, Silks,  
ms, Blades;  
us, Vostles,  
Manufact-  
ies of India,  
Persia,





A MAP of the ESTATES of the CROWNE of POLAND, where are the KINGDOM of LITHUANIA VOLHYNIA PODOLIA. &c. Designed by Monsieur Sanson Geographer to the French King. Rindred into English by J. Blaeu.



KINGDOM of ... withits Palatinates the DUTCHES of RUSSIA NOIRE CUAVIA MOZOVIA PRUSSIA  
 Rendred into English by Ric: Blome, By his Majesties Especiall Command, London Printed for Ric: Blome 1669

# GE

*Persia, China, Tur*  
which are here  
of the great Trade  
other parts.

The Countrey  
the People lusty  
they are a subtle  
People, hating id  
addicted to *Dr*  
that were said to  
the *Compass, C*  
*uris in Glass, Pa*  
and the first Inv  
*pestries, Sayes, W*

And so n  
an

# PO

**T**He *Estates*  
**LAND**  
two sorts  
States of *POLA*  
*Estates of LI*  
*Lithuania* having  
*Kings and Duk*  
been united till  
years. The *E*  
*Poland*, which w  
er and lower, c  
into the Dutch  
*sis*. The *Estates*  
vided into *Lith*  
all *Dutchies*: t  
greater, where  
Entituled himse  
*nia*.

All these *Est*  
*ania* taken tog  
the 48 degree  
which are abou  
562500 Paces,  
*gitude* unto the  
*leagues*, or 875  
as much *Conti*  
are bounded on  
by *Muscovy*, an  
on the South,  
and the *River*  
*Hungaria, Tran*  
the West, by *G*  
on the *Baltick S*  
are bounded p  
longs to the c  
by *Muscovy*.

*Persia, China, Turkey, and other Countreys* which are here had at easie rates, by reason of the great Trade they drive to these and other parts.

The Countrey is exceeding populous, the People lusty and well proportioned; they are a subtile and ingenious sort of People, having idleness, yet they are much addicted to *Drink*: They were the first that were said to invent *Printing, Clocks, the Compass, Chariots, working of Pictures in Glass, Painting with Oyle Colours, and the first Inventors and makers of Tapestries, Saxes, Worsted, &c.*

And so much for Germany  
and Belgium.

## POLAND.

THE *Estates of the Crown of POLAND* ought to be considered in two sorts; the one called the *Estates of POLAND*; and the other the *Estates of LITHUANIA*: Poland and Lithuania having had heretofore their *Kings and Dukes* apart, and not having been united till within this 160 and odd years. The *Estates of Poland* shall be Poland, which we will divide into the higher and lower; or lesser and greater: and into the *Dutchys of Mazovia, and Prussia*. The *Estates of Lithuania* may be divided into *Lithuania, Volinia, and Podolia, all Dutchies*: but *Lithuania* much the greater, wherefore he who possesses them, is intituled himself, *Great Duke of Lithuania*.

All these *Estates of Poland, and Lithuania* taken together, extend from about the 48 degree of Latitude unto the 57, which are about 125 *French leagues, or 562500 Paces*; and from the 38th of Longitude unto the 61, which are 350 *French leagues, or 875000 Paces*, and have near as much Continent again as *France*. They are bounded on the East, for the most part by *Muscovy*, and part by the *Petit Tartars*; on the South, the *Mountains of Caprack*, and the *River Neister* divides them from *Hungaria, Transilvania; and Moldavia*; on the West, by *Germany*, and touch in part on the *Baltick Sea*; and on the North, they are bounded part by *Livonia*, which belongs to the *Crown of Sweden*, and part by *Muscovy*.

The ancient name of Poland, was *Sarmatia*, from its *Inhabitants the Sauromata*, afterwards by *Lechius*, the first Duke heretofore, in Anno 550, it was called *Poleland*, which signifies a *Plaine Land*; the Countrey being little involved with *Mountaines*: It was made a *Kingdome* by the *Emperour Otto the Third, Anno 1000*, *Boleslaus* being Duke; and hath ever had both its *Dukes and Kings* Elected by the *States*; who, by reason of their vicinity to the *Turks*, generally choose a *Warriour*.

The Countrey, as I said before, is plaine, it is well clothed with *Firrs*, and other *Timber Trees*; the *Aire* is so cold, that they have neither *Wine nor Grapes*, in stead of which, having store of *Barly*, they make use of the old drink of *England, Ale*. The Countrey is well furnished with

*Graines and Frunes*, but they are but lean. Their chief *Commodities* for Transportation, are *rich Furrs, Horses, Bow-staves, Ruff-birds, Ambergrice, Honey, Wax, Flax*, of which they make *Linnen Cloth, Masts* for Ships, *Cordage, Boards, Wainscot, Timber, Rosin, Tarr, and Pitch* of both kinds, *Match, Iron, Stock-fish, Salt* digged out of the Earth, *Pot-Ashes, Rye* in great abundance, for which it hath made *Danzicke* famous. It is well furnished with *Flesh, Fowle, and Fish*; and towards the *Carpathian Mountaines of Hungaria* are found *Mines of Gold, and Silver*, is also *Iron, and Brimstone*. These and the like *Commodities* they exchange at easie rates for *Silkes, Cloths, Spices, Drugges, and Wines*, &c. which are brought them, they not adding themselves to *Traffique*, neither are they very well provided with *Ships* for the same.

The People are ingenious, and much addicted to Languages; especially *Latin*; there being scarce a man, though of a mean condition, but understands it: according to their abilities, they are more inclining to prodigality, then liberality; the *Country* are free, but the *Peazants* or *Country People*, are no better then *Slaves*, so much are they in subjection to their *Lords*. They are esteemed good *Souldiers*, are proud, much given to costly *Apparell*, and delicious *Diet*; they use the *Slavonian Language*, in matters of *Religion* they are said to embrace all, so they have any thing of *Christianity* in them; some following the *Reformed Churches*, some embracing the *Doctrine of Calvin*, others of *Luther*, and some of *Angustine, Bohemian, and Helvetian* Confessions; and again, others are of the *Church of Rome*.

the ancient name, and how by and by a Kingdom.

The following commodities, and sale of Poland.

The ships belonging to the King of Poland.

so that there is a saying, That if any man hath lost his Religion, let him seek it at Poland: Written *Laws* they have but few, if any, *Customs* and *Temporary Edicts* being the rule both of their Government and Obedience.

The Revenue of the King is not great for so large a Country, and that which is, he receiveth from them quarterly, the Kingdom being divided into four parts, every one of which keepeth the King, and Court a quarter of the year, in allowance, and expences, as his occasions require; if War, the Marriage of his Daughters, or other occasions happen.

This Kingdom is divided throughout into *Palatinates*, and *Castlewicks*. POLONIA taken particularly, is divided into the higher and lower. The chief City in the higher, and indeed in all Poland, is Cracow, or Cracovia, seated in a Plain, on the Banks of the River *Vistula*, dignified with the residence of the King; it is in forme round, the houses faire and lofty, and built of free Stone; in the midst of the City is a large *Quadrangular-Market-House*, where is also seated the *Cathedral Church*, and the *Senate-house* for the *Citizens*, about which are several *Shops for Merchants*; the City is encompassed with two strong Walls of Stone, and a dry *Ditch*: on the East-side of the City is the *Kings Castle*, being faire, well built, and pleasantly seated on a Hill, as also the *Kings* and *Queens* lodgings, on the West a *Chappel*, where the *Kings* are Interred, and on the North-side, Lodgings for Entertainment, and Feasting; the southside being without Buildings. But This City is of small account in matters of Trade; however a word or two of its *Coyues*, as being the *Metropolitan City* of the Kingdom, which are as followeth, viz. *Groszes*, *Orts*, *Guilders* or *Florins*, *Duckets*, and *Rixdollers*. And 18 *Grosz* makes an *Ort*, also 22 *grosz* makes an *Ort*, 30 *Grosz* makes a *Guilder* or *Florin*, which is worth about 1 s. 6 d. Sterling. 6 *Guilders* makes a *Ducket*. 5 *Orts* of 18 *Grosz* makes a *Rixdoller*, and 4 *Orts* of 22 *Grosz* makes a *Rixdoller*, which is worth 4 s. 6 d. Sterling.

Also *Sendovers*, and *Lublin*, both chief Cities of their *Palatinates*, are in the higher Poland: In the lower are the Cities of *Posna* and *Gnesna*, dignified with the See of an *Arch-bishoprick*, who during the *Interregnum*, or absence of the King, holdeth the Supreme Authority and the Kingdom, and summoneth the *Dietts*.

The Province of RUSSIA NIGRA

(so called, to distinguish it from *Moscovy*, which is called *Russia Alba*) is esteemed to make a part of the higher Poland; its chief Cities, are 1. *Loewenberg*, in the *Palatinate of Leopolia*; then *Bels*, in the *Palatinate* so called, both *Palatinates*.

The *Palatinates* of the Lower POLAND, are those of *Posna*, *Kalsch*, *Sirad*, *Lencici*, *Dobrzin*, *Rava*, and *Ploczk*, whose chief places are so called, and where they have their seats. Besides which, there are several other Cities and Townes of good account, which I have at large noted in my *GEOGRAPHICAL TABLES*; as they are in their several *Palatinates*, to which I refer you, as also for the other parts of Poland.

*Cajavia* is esteemed to make part of this lower Poland, and its *Palatinates* are *Brzeski*, and *wladislaw*, whose chief places, or *Castlewicks*, are so called.

NAZOVIA hath onely one *Palatinate* at *Czersti*, under which is comprized several Cities, or *Castlewicks*, the chief of which is *Warsaw*, one of the fairest of the Kingdom, it oft-times being the residence of the Kings of Poland; and this City is noted amongst them for the good *Metheglin* here made.

PRUSSIA is considered in two parts, which are called *Royall* and *Ducall*. The *Royall* is immediately subject to the Crown of Poland, and hath its *Palatinates* in the Cities of 1. *Marienburgh*, the Seat of the *Masters of the Dutch Knights*. 2. *Dantzick*, the fairest, best, and of the greatest Trade of any in Prussia, seated on the River *Vistula*, which falls into the *Baltick-Sea*, and at the foot of a great *Mountain* which hangs over it. Through this City runneth a River which is very commodious to the *Inhabitants*, as having thereon many Mills for the grinding the *Corne*, which is here abounding in great plenty; as also a *Water-mill*, which conducts the Water through Pipes into their houses: and by reason of the great Trade that this City hath for *Corne* with *England*, and several other parts of *Europe*, they have a great many large and faire *Granaries* for the preservation of the *Corne*, which is thither sent them from all Poland.

Commodities here found, are those of Poland, as *Wheat*, *Rye*, *Oates*, *Crocut Canvas*, *Pot-ashes*, *Flax*, *Clap-boards*, and *Oars*, &c.

Commodities most vendable here from *England*, are, *Spanish* and *Suffolk Cloth*, *Serges*, *Perpetuanoes*, &c.

Their *Coyues Grosz* and *Pence*, of *Dollers*, the chief *Doller*, worth com is valued at 4 s. is worth 30 *Grosz*. A *Grosz* is worth *ling*, and 18 of the

They keep the *Grosz* and *Pence*.

Their *Weight* at *London*, makes sides a *Schipponnd* whereof 14 *Pound* 20 *Lispound* a *Sc* 3 *quarters*, and 10

Their *Measure* whereof doth ma

*Ells*. Their *Dry Mea* and the *Sheffel*, w a *Last*, which is t

3. *Elbing*, thos City, and indiffer the *English* *meas* is a *Channel* that the *Seat* of the J doth somewhat fa

Commodities he *Pot-ashes*, *Clapboar* *Deales*, *Shock Ta* *Waincoats*, *Surg*

Commodities in *England*, are, *Su* *Perpetuanoes*, *Serg* *Coyues* here cur those of *Dantzick*

Their common li, whereof to *flou* 400 li, which C.

Their *Measure* 8 *Ells* doth make

Their *Corne* taining 60 *Sheffel* quarter *English*.

4. *Thorne*, T nate, is esteem'd zick. And 5. C sia belongs to t bourg, who hold Poland; It hath *Koningsberg*, tha on an in-let of th by the River *Peg* famous *Marr*, an *fy*; and it is bet gather'd so great This *Ambergis*

The River  
of the  
King.

Palatinates  
Polonia,  
and in  
other Cit-  
ies.

The Coyues  
of Cracow.



Their *Coynes* are *Dollers*, *Guilders*, *Grosz* and *Pence*. They have several sorts of *Dollers*, the chief of which is the *Rix Dollar*, worth commonly 90 *Grosz*, which is valued at 4 s. 6 d. *Sterling*. A *Guilder* is worth 30 *Grosz*, which is 1 s. 6 d. *Sterling*: A *Grosz* is worth 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  of a *Faringh Sterling*, and 18 of the *Pence* makes a *Grosz*.

They keep their *Accounts* by *Guilders*, *Grosz* and *Pence*.

Their *Weights* is the *li*, whereof 116 *li*. at *London*, makes 100 *li*. They have besides a *Schipponnd*, a *Lispound*, and a *Pound*, whereof 14 *Pound* makes a *Lispound*, and 20 *Lispound* a *Schipponnd*, which is 100, 3 quarters, and 10 *li*. *English*.

Their *Measure* of length is an *Ell*, 100 whereof doth make at *London* about 49 *Ells*.

Their *Dry Measure* for *Corn* is the *Last*, and the *Sheffel*, whereof 60 *Sheffels* makes a *Last*, which is 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  quarter *English*.

3. *Elbing*, though but small, yet a fair *City*, and indifferently well frequented by the *English Merchants*; and from this *City* is a *Channel* that runneth to *Koningsberg*, the Seat of the *Duke of Prussia*, which doth somewhat facilitate its *Trade*.

*Commodities* here found is *Hemp*, *Flax*, *Pot-ashes*, *Clapboards*, *Aspen Oares*, *Spruce Deales*, *Shock Tarns*, *Pole Davus*, *Rye*, *Wainscots*, *Singpoom*, *Amber*, &c.

*Commodities* most vendible here from *England*, are, *Suffole* and *Spanish Cloths*, *Perpetuanes*, *Serges*, *Lead*, &c.

*Coynes* here currant, are the same with those of *Dantzick*.

Their common *Weights* is the *Stone* of 40 *li*, whereof 10 *stone* makes a *Schipponnd* of 400 *li*, which makes at *London* 3 $\frac{1}{2}$  C.

Their *Measure* of length is the *Ell*, and 8 *Ells* doth make 5 yards at *London*.

Their *Corne Measure* is the *Last*, containing 60 *Sheffels*, which makes 10 $\frac{1}{2}$  quarter *English*.

4. *Thorne*, Though it hath no *Palatinate*, is esteem'd by many next to *Dantzick*. And 5 *Culme*. The *Ducal Prussia* belongs to the *Marquess of Brandenburg*, who holds it from the *Crown of Poland*. It hath onely one *Palatinate* at *Koningsberg*, that is *Royal Memus*, seated on an In-let of the *Baltick Sea*, and washed by the *River Pegel*; it is a fair *City*, and a famous *Mart*, and here is a good *University*: and it is before its *Coast* that there is gather'd so great quantity of *Ambergryis*: This *Ambergryis* is the *juyce* of a *Stone*

growing like *Corral* on a *Rock* of the *North Sea*, continually cover'd with water, and thunn'd by *Mariners* at a great distance for fear of a *Wrack*: In the Months of *September* and *December* especialy, this *juyce* is by a violence of the *Sea*, rent from the *Rocks*, and cast into the *Havens* of the neighbouring *Country*: besides, its beauty, odour, quality of burning like *pitch*, and attracting like the *Adamant*; it is reported to be good for stopping the *blood*, *Falling Sicken's*, and other *Diseases*.

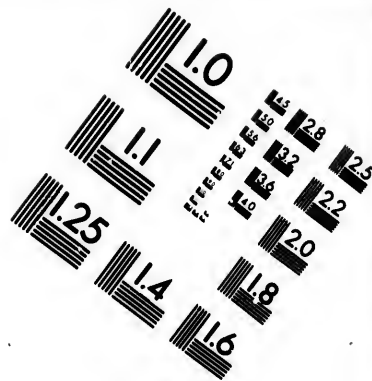
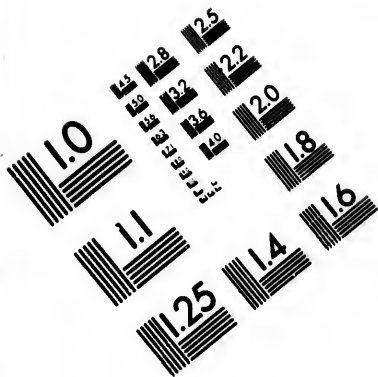
POLAZOTA is a small *Province* between the *Estates* of *Poland* and *Lithuania*, and seems to have belonged to *Mazovia*. *Biesk* is the *Seat* of its *Palatinate*, and hitherto we have the *Estates* of *Poland*: almost all on the *Vistula*, or the *Rivers* which fall into the *Vistula*, the three fairest *Cities* of these quarters being on this *River*, to wit *Cracow* towards its *Springs*, *Warsaw* towards the middle of its course, and *Dantzick* towards its principal mouth tating into the *Sea*.

LITHUANIA.

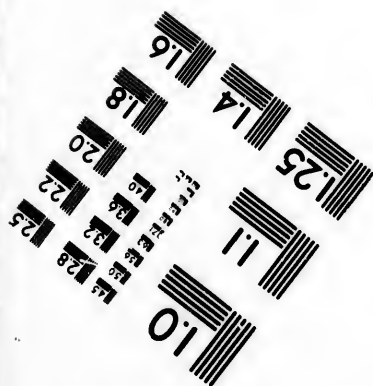
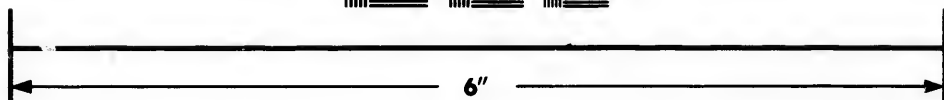
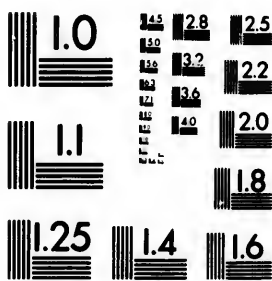
THE *Estates* of *LITHUANIA* are East of the *Estates* of *Poland*, and about the *Neiper*; they are divided into *Palatinates* like to *Poland's* the chief place is *Wilna*, an *University*, and the *Primmer Palatinate*; the other chief places are, *Troki*, *Braslaw*, *Minsk*, *Meislaw*, *Novogodeck*, *Polozek*, *Poloczok*, *Vitepsk*, and *Brisici*; this in the quarter which is call'd *Polesia*. *Samogitia* hath no *Palatinate*, *Rostina* is esteem'd its chief place, whole *Houies* are only built with *Mudd* and *Straw*. *Lusac* is the *Palatinate* of the higher *Volhynia*. *Kyow*, chief of all the *Province*, is likewise a *Palatinate* for the lower, as *Kamieniec* in *Kamieniec* is the *Metropolis* of all *Podolia*, and *Palatinate* of the higher, as *Braslaw* of the lower *Podolia*.

The *Turkes* are possess'd of *Oczacow* in the lower parts of *Podolia*, and on the *black Sea*; likewise *Dassau* in the lower parts of *Volhynia*, and on the *Borysthenes*: The *Swedes* have likewise within these few years taken all *Lithonia* from the *Polanders*. The *Dutchy* of *Carlande*, wherein is the *City* of *Mittau*, remaining only of all that *Province*, under the *Protection* of the *Crown* of *Poland*; and moreover the *Principality* of *Moldavia*, and sometimes likewise he of *Valachia* renders some duties to *Poland*. In *Lithuania* are divers *Dukesdomes*,





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18 20 22 25  
E E E E  
E E E E

10  
01  
E E E E  
E E E E

as of *Slusk*, *Neswies*, *Birga*, and others, whose *Princes* are powerful, and have great Priviledges. The *Dukedomes* of *Smolensko*, and of *Novogrodeck*, *Sewierski*, which have a great extent, and which run all along the Coast of *Lithuania* towards *Moscovia*, belong at present to the Crown of Poland, though they were formerly part of *Moscovy*.

Chief Rivers of Poland.

The Principal Rivers in Poland are the *Vistula*, the *Niemen*, the *Dovine*, the *Neiper*, or *Borysthenes*, and the *Neyster*. The *Vistula* begins in *Siletia*, under the Mountains *Crappates*, which divides *Siletia* and Poland from Hungary, passes to *Cracow*, and to *Sandomire* in the higher Poland; to *Warsaw* in *Mazovia*, to *Uladislaw* in the lower Poland; between *Warsaw* and *Uladislaw* receives the *Narew*, which brings with it the *Bog* or *Bug*; though this hath made twice or thrice the course of the other, yet the *Narew* receiving quantity of waters from *Prussia* side, is found the stronger. After *Uladislaw* the *Vistula* enters into *Prussia*, where it waters *Thorne*, *Culme*, &c. casts a branch to the right hand, which is called the *Nogat*, and which waters *Marckenburghs*; casts others also to the right and left, to wit, the two *Tyes*, and the *Muddelo*, between which it waters *Dirschou*, approaching the *Sea*; and above *Fort Vestung Henst*, it divides it self into two Channels, the one falling to the right hand, the other to the left; this last passes *Dantzick*, before it loses it self in the *Sea*; the other divides, and re-divides it self into many branches, which all lose themselves in the *Frisch Haffe*, that is, the *New Lake*, which disburthens not it self into the *Baltick Sea* till between the Point of *Nerung*, and that of *Pilau*, where the *Pregel* likewise discharges it self, having received a good part of the waters of *Prussia*, and passing by *Koningberg*, or *Mont Royal*.

The River Niemen.

The *NEIMEN*, called *Mommel* by the *Almanes*, hath its Springs in the very middle of *Lithuania*, not far from the *Dutchies* of *Slusck*, and *Neswies*, it passes to *Grodno*, then to *Knono*, where it receives the *Vilia*, which waters *Vilna*, the chief City of *Lithuania*; a little below *Tilsa*, the *Niemen* divides it self into two or three principal branches, which subdivide themselves into many others. The *Russe* alone which makes the right Arm, hath 10 or 12 Mouths to the *Sea*, and all falls into the *Curish Haff*, or *Lake of Curon*, which is every where bounded from the *Sea* by the Peninsula *Curishnerung*, and hath but one

passage into the *Baltick Sea*, towards the City of *Memel*, which bears the same name with the Rivers, as standing at its mouth.

WE shall here say nothing of the *Dovine*, or *Dunes*, contenting our selves with what we have said in *Moscovy*, that we may have the larger scope to speak of the others that remain.

The River Dovine.

The *NEIPER* which answers to the *Borysthenes* of the Antients, is one of the greatest, and strongest Rivers of Europe: It is formed of two Rivers almost equal in length and force, the one the *Neiper*, the other the *Prepice*, or *Pripace*; and because that this, in regard of the other, hath its spring more advanced towards the South (in the 51 degree of Latitude) and the other more towards the North (in the 55 degree of Latitude) the *Neiper* is esteem'd the Northern *Borysthenes*, and the *Pripace* the Southern *Borysthenes* of *Ptolomy*. Though it were better to speak them towards the West, and East, the *Pripace* being at 48 degrees, 26 minutes and the *Neiper* at 62 degrees, and 40 minutes of Longitude; this difference being more sensible than the other.

The River Neiper.

The *NEIPER* hath its spring in *Moscovy*, and not far from the City of *Mosca*, passes by *Dnipersko*, *Smolensko*, *Orssa*, *Mohilow*, and *Robalsow*, receives on the right hand the *Berezina*, esteem'd by some the true *Borysthenes* of the Antients, and that with some reasons, since the names and positions of its Springs answer better with the descriptions given by *Ptolomy*, than those of *Neiper*: the *Neiper* after having received the *Berezina*, passes to *Rzeczica*, and receives the *Prepice*, which we have esteem'd the Southern *Borysthenes*.

This *PRICEPE* hath its Springs in *Russia Nigra*, on the confines of the higher *Volhinia*, and *Polesia*, where it waters *Pinsk*, the Residence of an *Uladice* or *Greek Bishop*, washes *Mazy* in *Lithuania*, *Czernobel* in *Volhinia*; and a little below the last loses it self in the *Neiper*, which is rich in the spoiles of its Companions, is here found very great; descends to *Kyovia*, or *Kyoff*, the chief City of *Volhinia*, and receives on the other side of this place the *Dzielsa*, or *Diena*, a River very considerable, since it hath more than 100 leagues course, and passes by *Novogrodeck Sewierski*. After *Kyoff* or *Kyon* the *Neiper* washes the *VValls of Czircasia* a famous and strong place, from which to the mouth of *Neiper* are nothing but desert Fields, subject to the Incursions of the

The River Pripace.

Turks,



owards the  
same name  
its mouth,  
of the *De-*  
felves with  
hat we may  
k of the o-

The River  
Dnieper.

s to the *Bo-*  
one of the  
of *Europe* :  
most equal in  
*Neiper*, the  
and because  
ner, hath its  
s the South  
(*le*) and the  
th (in the  
*Neiper* is e-  
nes, and the  
nes of *Ptolo-*  
er to speak  
d East; the  
minutes and  
minutes of  
ng more sen-

The River  
Neiper.

ring in *Mos-*  
city of *Mosco,*  
*to, Orffa, Mo-*  
on the right  
by some the  
nts, and that  
ames and pe-  
better with  
*tolomy*, then  
after having  
to *Rzezzisa,*  
ich we have  
hemes.

brings in *Ruf-*  
of the higher  
ere it waters  
n *Mladice* or  
n *Lithuania*;  
a little below  
*Neiper*, which  
Companions,  
descends to  
city of *Valbi-*  
r side of this  
a River very  
ore then 100  
*Novogrodeck*  
now the *Nei-*  
*kirassisi* a fa-  
which to the  
g but defart  
lions of the  
*Turks*,

The River  
Dnieper.

# SEPTENTRION GLACICK



Ils of Shetland



Ils of Orkney



PART  
OF

SCOT-  
LAND

PART  
OF  
ENG-  
LAND

Sownast  
Dunrobbie head  
Cathes  
Tarbartnell  
Philorth Cape  
Aberdene  
Red head  
St. Abs head  
Barwick

Linmouth haven

Berghes  
Staffinger

Lundes Xee



Masfroom  
Worey

Ruff

Tram Oogh

Nyrtigeland

Weg

Stora

Irondehn

Novabehn

Alfons

Salvage

Walden

Staffinger

Philorth Cape

Aberdene

Red head

St. Abs head

Barwick

Linmouth haven

Lundes Xee

Staffinger

Philorth Cape

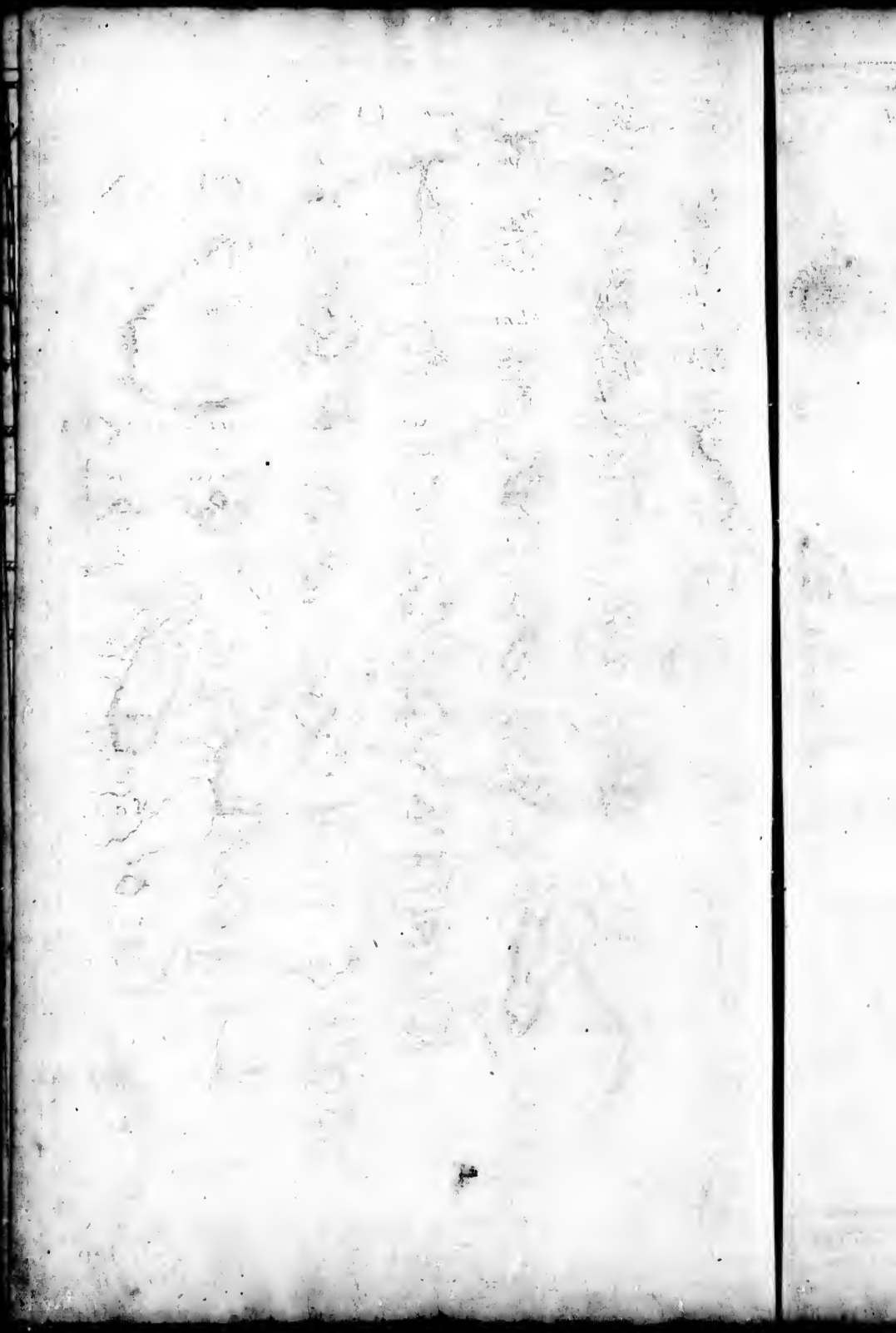
Aberdene

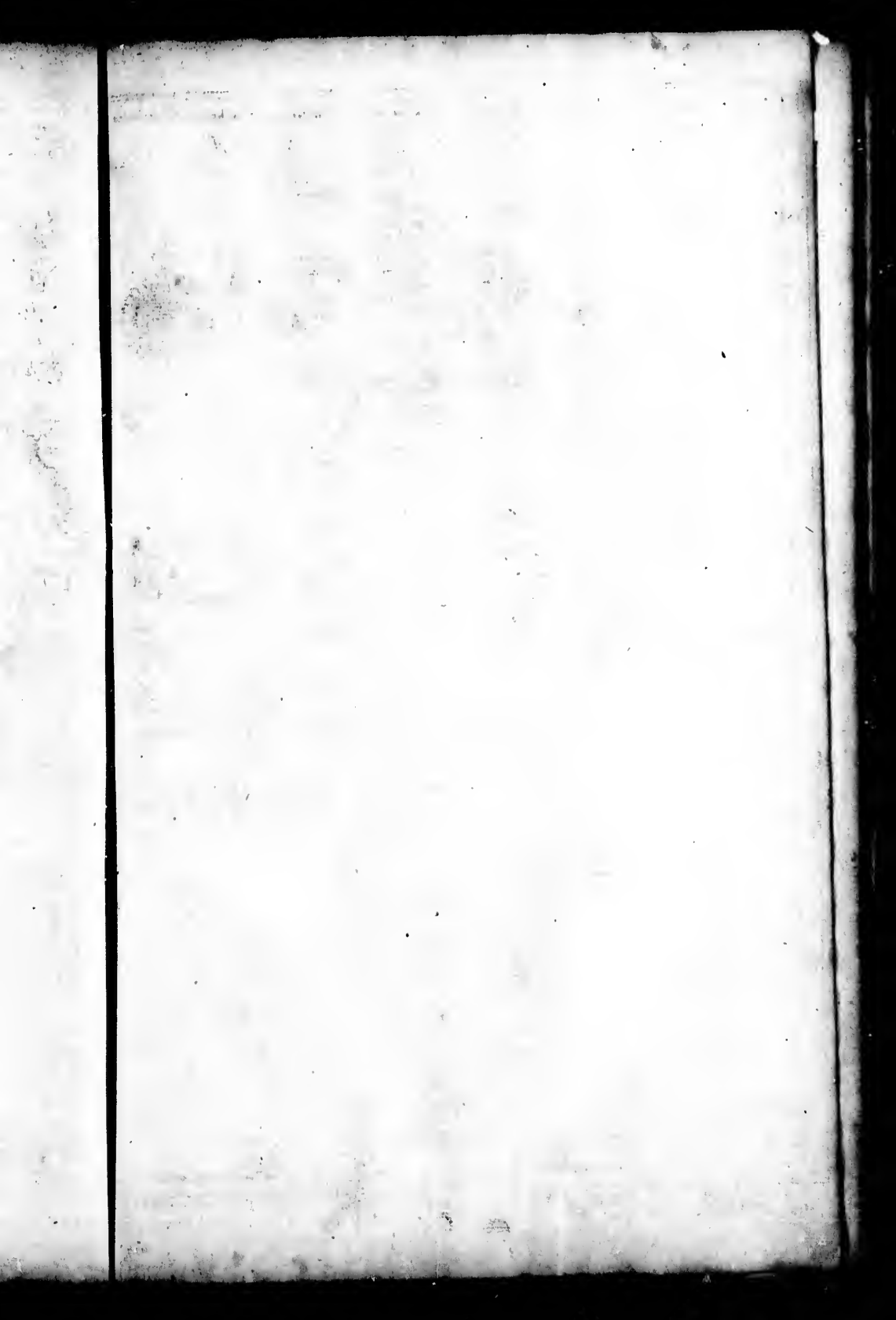
Red head

A Generall Mappe of SCANDINAVIA. Where are the Kingdomes of SWEDEN, DENMARK, NORWAY, and the Kingdom of ICELAND. Designed by Monsieur Sanson Geographer to the French King, and Red into English by Richard Blome by his Majesties Command. London and



are the Kingdoms of Denmark, Norway, and Sweden.  
 each King, dressed into English and Enlarged with part of the Isles of Great Brittain.  
 London and sold for Richard Blome Anno Dom. 1669







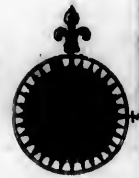
THE NORTH SEA

OR  
GERMAN

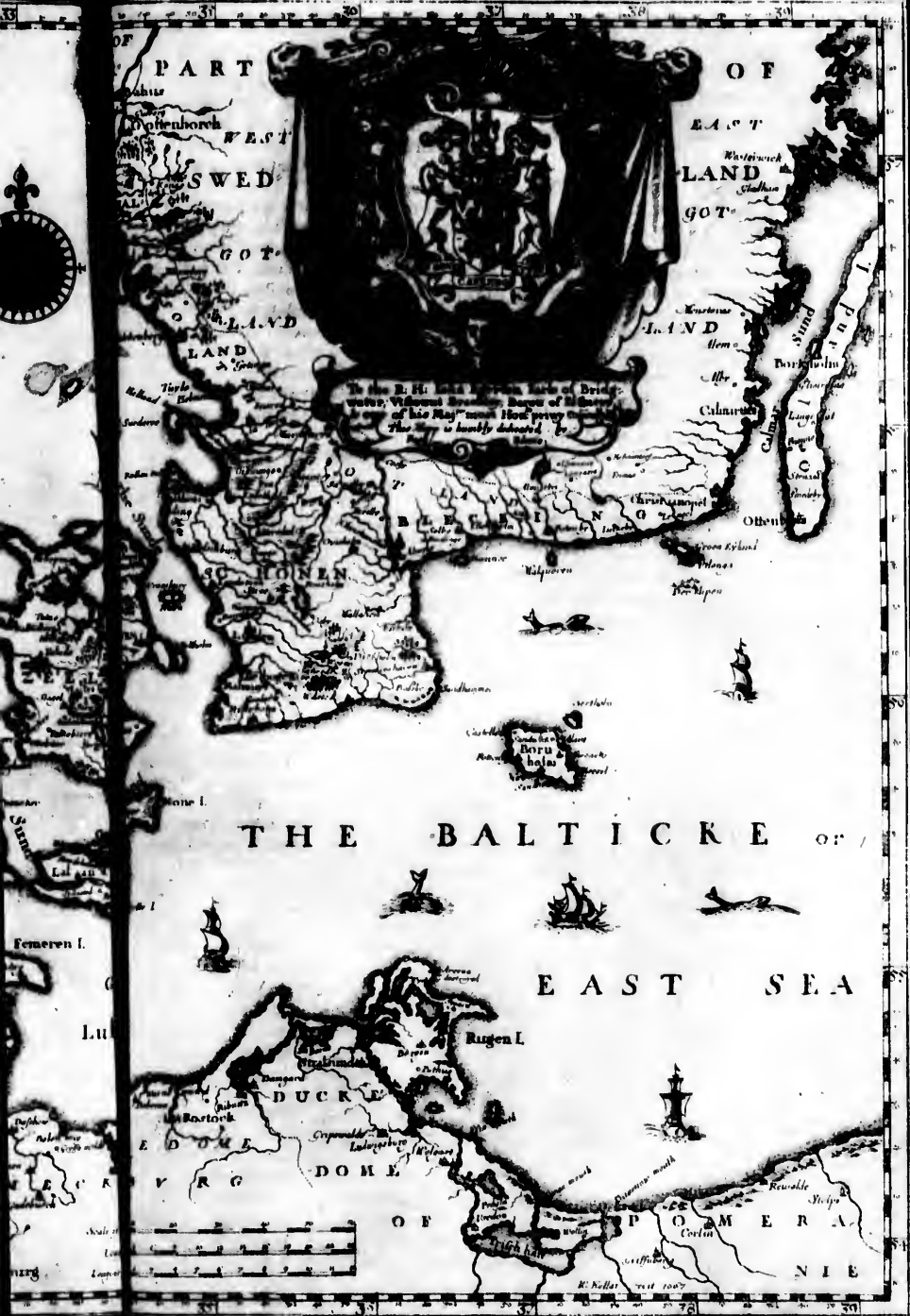
MAN  
West

Cambricke  
OCEAN

Sea  
AN



A MAP OF THE KINGDOME OF DENMARKE, WITH ITS SEVERALL ISLES OR PROVINCES, AS THEY ARE CALLED IN THE DANISH OR SWEDISH TONGUE, & rendered into English, & Illustrated by Richard Blome.



THE BALTICKE or

EAST SEA

SEVERALL ISLES OR PROVINCES, DESIGNED BY MONSIEUR SANSON, GEOG. & Ed. Blome, by his especial Command. London Printed for Richard Blome, 1687.



Turks, Tar  
meeting of  
and beyond  
ject to the  
is in the G  
cus Chersan

The N  
siderable bu  
Leagues, an  
the Estates  
and Bessarab  
is the most  
and waters A  
via, leaves  
dolia a little  
the Mountai  
the Enxine  
place belong

And

SCANDI  
DI  
are the  
MA  
DES

SCANDI  
onely a  
self fro  
ude, unto or  
near 400 Lea  
and from the  
the 45 on the  
unto the 53, b  
not have in its  
Leagues, fin  
South and No

SCAND  
the North a  
Ocean, and or  
Baltick Sea:  
rains dividing  
parts, of whic  
the other on a  
the King of I  
King of Swed

And thoug  
and Sweden co  
and Iles abou  
Baltick Sea, ye  
Scandinavia, 2

Turks, Tartars, and Casjaques. At the meeting of the *Bog* and *Neiper* is *Dassaw*, and beyond the *Bog*, *Oczacoa*, places subject to the *Turks*: the mouth of *Neiper* is in the Gulf of *Ismien* near the *Tauricu Cberfensiu*.

The *NIESTER* hath nothing considerable but its length, which is of 200 Leagues, and that it separates *Podolia*, and the Estates of *Poland* from *Moldavia*, and *Bessarabia*: it begins in *Pocutia*, which is the most Southern part of *Russia Nigra*, and waters *Halitz*, then *Choern* of *Moldavia*, leaves *Camencee* the chief City of *Podolia* a little on the left hand, and towards the *Mountains*, and finisheth its course in the *Euxine Sea* at *Biolograd* or *Moncastro*, a place belonging to the *Turks*.

And thus much for *Poland*.

SCANDIA, or SCANDINAVIA, wherein are the Estates of DENMARK and SWEDEN.

SCANDIA, or SCANDINAVIA is only a Peninsula, which extends itself from the 56 degree of Latitude, unto or beyond the 71, which are near 400 Leagues from North to South, and from the 26 degree of Longitude unto the 45 on the *Baltick Sea*, and on the *Ocean* unto the 53. but this Mass of Land cannot have in its greatest breadth above 150 Leagues, finishing in two points towards South and North.

SCANDINAVIA is bounded on the North and West by the *Northern Ocean*, and on the South and East by the *Baltick Sea*: a continual chain of Mountains dividing it into two almost equal parts, of which one is on the *Baltick Sea*, the other on the *Ocean*, this possessed by the King of *Denmark*, the other by the King of *Sweden*.

And though the Estates of *Denmark* and *Sweden* contain divers other Peninsulas and Isles about *Scandinavia*, and on the *Baltick Sea*, yet will we describe them with *Scandinavia*, and say that

The Estates of DENMARK.

Contain two Kingdomes, to wit, DENMARK and NORWAY. DENMARK is between the Ocean and the *Baltick Sea*, composed of a Peninsula, contiguous to *Germany*, of a Coast contiguous to *Sweden*, and of divers Isles which are between the Peninsula, and Coast, some likewise in the middle of the *Baltick Sea*, and near *Livonia*.

It is situate partly in the Northern temperate Zone, and partly within the *Arctic circle*: extending from the 55 degree of Latitude, or the middle parallel of the tenth climate, where it joyneth to *Germany*, as far as the 71 degree, where it is bounded by the *frozen Ocean*; the longest day in the most Southern parts being 17 hours; but in the most Northern parts they have no night for almost three Moneths, whereas on the other side, when the Sun is in the other *Topick* and most remote from them, they have no day for the like time. This Countrey is very cold, and consequently not over-fertile; nor affording good fruits. The Commodities that this Kingdom affordeth are fish, hides, tallow, furniture for shipping as pitch, tar, cordage, masts, &c. also firs, boards, wainscote, several sorts of armour, &c.

The Inhabitants for the most part are of a good Stature, and of a good Complexion, very healthful, ingenious, and of a ready wit, very punctual in performing their Promises, proud and high conceited of their own worth, lovers of Learning, as may appear by those famous men it hath bred, viz. the famous Mathematician, *Ticbo Brahe*; *John Cluverus*; the noted Historian; *Baribahnni* the renowned Philosopher and Physician, &c. also famous for *Godfrey Gortriew* that stout Warriour, who not onely settled the Government of this Kingdom, but also took the Realm of *France*; likewise *Waldemars*, *Christiern* the second and fourth, *Canutus* and *Sweno*, which two last were the Conquerours of *England*. They are great punishers of Offenders, especially Theft, and Piracy; their Women are of a comely grace, exceeding fair, and as fruitful in Children, discreet and sober.

The Peninsula is called *FUITLAND*, once *Cimbrica*, *Cberfensiu*, from the *Cimbrians*

brians its antients Inhabitants. It is divided into North *Frisland*, and South *Frisland*, which is also subdivided into two *Dukedoms*, to wit, *Holsatia* or *Holstein*, and *Sleswick* or *Slesia*.

The Duce  
of  
Holsatia  
and in  
Slesia

The *Dukedom* of *HOLSATIA*, or *Holstein* is a woody, low, and marshie Countrey; and contains the Provinces of *Stormarie*, or *Stormarsh*, *Wagrie*, *Holsatia* especially so called, and *Dismarsh*.

Province of  
Stormarie,  
and in  
Slesia

*STORMARIE* Southwest of *Wagrie*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Hamburgh* an antient City built by the *Saxons*, since made an *Imperial* City, and now enjoying the Priviledges of a *Hanse town*; it is seated in a large Plain among rich and fat Pastures, a Place of great strength as well by nature as art, being well fortified and encompassed with a deep *Ditch*, and on the East and North sides with a double *Ditch* and *Wall*, on the South-side it is washed with the River *Elbe*, a branch of which entreth the City, the *haven* is guarded and shut up with an *Iron chain*, the buildings for the most part are of Brick, among which are many fair and beautiful Structures, of which the *Senate* or *Council-house*, which is adorned with the Statues of the *Nine Worthies*, &c. and the *Exchange*, or meeting places for *Merchants* are the chief; the *Streets* are but narrow, except one which is called *Broad-street*; the *Citizens* and *Merchants* are Masters of many large *Ships*, which brings them in great Riches, being a place of great traffique, well resorted by *Merchants*, and *Factors* of several Nations, especially by the *English*, it is very populous, and large, containing nine Churches. 2. *Krempe* seated on a River of the same name, which empieth it self in the *Styre*, a strong and well fortified town, being reckoned for one of the *Keys* of this Kingdom. 3. *Bredenberg* a town of great strength, belonging to the *Ranzovers*. 4. *Glosh-Stadt* seated on a Bay or Creek of the *German Ocean*, and therefore well fortified to command the passage up the *Elb*, and 5. *Tychenberg* seated on the River *Elb*, being so well fortified, that it is now held the strongest town in this Kingdom.

*WAGRIE* hath for its chief places, 1. *Lubeck* esteemed an *Imperial* and *free City*; enjoying the Priviledges of a *Hanse-Town*. It is pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Billew* and the *Grave*, which empty themselves into the *Baltick Sea* after their course of five *Italian miles*. The River is capable to receive *Ships* of

great burthen, which they lade and unlade at *Tremurtn*, which is the marie to this City, from which it is distant *three miles*, and seated on the *Baltick Sea*. It is built on all sides upon a rising Hill, on the *summit* whereof is placed a fair and beautiful Church called *S. Marys*, being the *Cathedral*, from whence (on an easie descent) there are *Streets* which lead to all the *Gates* of the City, which afford a fair Prospect to the Eye, besides which, it is adorned with nine other Churches; one whereof being a decayed *Monastery*, they have converted to an *Armorie*, where they keep their *Ammunition for War*. It is beautified with many fair buildings all of Brick, and of a handsome uniform, for the most part every house being served with Water, which is conveyed to them through Pipes from their publick *Conduits*. The *Streets* are streight and fair. The City is fortified with a *Ditch* and double *Wall*, being in circuit about six miles, very populous, and well inhabited by *Merchants* and *Citizens*, who drive a good trade on the *Baltick Seas*, being Masters of a great many *Ships*, and most of a considerable burthen. This City is worthy of commendation for their courteous behaviour, civility to Strangers, and strict execution of Justice without Partiality. And it is of some note for the *Beer* here brewed, which is transported to other Countreys, who use it medicinally. But this City, as also *Hamburgh*, is esteemed to be rather in the *Lower Saxony* in *Germany*, and accounted as *Imperial* Cities, where I have also treated of them. The other Towns in this Province are *Niested*, *Oldesse*, *Plaene*, *Segeberg*, and *Oldenberg*.

*HOLSATIA* or *NOLSTEIN*, especially so called, hath for its chief Places, 1. *Rendesberg* said to be the strongest Town in all this Province. 2. *Ryel* seated on a navigable Arm of the *Baltick Sea*, where it hath a large *haven*, being a Town of a good trade, and well frequented by *Ships*. 3. *Wylster*, and 4. *Nienmünster*.

*DITMARCE* is the last Province in this Dukedom, and hath for its chief Places, 1. *Meldrop* the chief of this Province, seated on the sea, and of some account. 2. *Heide*, and 3. *Lunden* a lively Town situate on the River *Eider*, which rising in this *Peninsula*; here emptieth it self into the *Ocean*.

The *Dukedom* of *SLESWICK* is Southwards of *Holsatia*. The Countrey for the most part is level, and hath fertile fields,

fields, w  
by reas  
which re  
is well p  
*Baltick Sea*  
for *Merc*  
*Dukedom*  
*River Sles*  
where it  
frequente  
chief of  
with an  
Queen of  
on the *Ger*  
mouth of  
*berg*, the  
venmour  
for  
*derleben*, f  
*Baltick Sea*  
fair *Castle*.  
*Baltick* (hor  
ving a *Port*  
*Ships* do la  
houles; an  
strong *Fort*  
*Duke* of s  
a large *Bay*  
*Customs-hou*  
where there  
sent to *Ger*  
*land*.

**NORTH**  
to four *Bishop*  
*Alboug* and  
Southern bo  
*wick*, and on  
The *Dio*  
taineth 32 *P*  
term them)  
and five *Ca*  
1. *Arhusen*, s  
ving a comm  
*Port*, and dig  
and a *Kalle*  
large *Bay*, re  
the high hill  
which by th  
*Samsøe*, *Hiar*  
are *Horsens*,  
and *Hobro*.

The *Dioce*  
thirty *Presb*  
Towns, and  
are, 1. *Ripen*, s  
the chief plac  
sted with an  
seated on a *C*  
3. *Wool*. 4.  
6. *Hafstro*.



fields, which yields good *Corn* and *Pasture*, by reason of their over-flowing them, which renders them very rich and fat. It is well provided with good *Bays* on the *Baltick Sea*, which are found commodious for *Merchants*. The chief places in this Dukedom are, 1. *Sleswick*, seated on the River *Slea* (which falls into the *Baltick sea*) where it hath a commodious *haven*, well frequented, being a fair *Town*, and the chief of this Dukedom, and honoured with an *Episcopal See*, built by *Hetbe*, a Queen of that Nation. 2. *Hussen*, seated on the *German Ocean*, not farre from the mouth of the River *Eydore*. 3. *Sternberg*, the ordinary residence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*. 4. *Haderloben*, seated on a navigable inlet of the *Baltick Sea*, and fortified with a strong and fair *Castle*. 5. *Flemborg*, situate on the *Baltick shore*, among high Mountains, having a Port so commodious and deep, that *Ships* do lade and unlade close to their houses; and 6. *Gutrop*, where there is a strong Fort or *Castle* belonging to the Duke of *Sleswick*, seated at the end of a large Bay of the *Baltick*, of note for the *Custom-house*, or *Toll-house* there erected, where there is *toll* paid every year for *Oxen* sent to *Germany* out of North *Frisland*.

**NORTH JUTLAND** is divided into four *Bishopricks*, viz. *Arhusen*, *Ripen*, *Alborg* and *Wibourg*, and hath for its Southern bounds the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, and on all other sides the *Sea*.

The Diocese of **ARTHUSEN** containeth 31 *Prefectures* or *Herets* (as they term them) seven *Cities* or walled *Towns*, and five *Castles*. Its chief places are, 1. *Arhusen*, situate on the *Baltick Sea*, having a commodious and well frequented Port, and dignified with an *Episcopal See*; and 2. *Kalla*, a strong Place, seated in a large Bay, reaching two Dutch miles, to the high hill of *Elemanberg*, opposite to which lie the *Iles* of *Hilgonis*, *Tuen*, *Samsøe*, *Hiarnoe*, *Hiolm*, &c. its other places are *Horsens*, *Randerfen*, *Ebelto*, *Grimastad*, and *Hobro*.

The Diocese of **RIPEN** containeth thirty *Prefectures*, seven *Cities* or walled *Towns*, and ten *Castles*; Its chief Places are, 1. *Ripen*, seated near the *German Ocean*, the chief place of this Diocese, and dignified with an *Episcopal See*. 2. *Kolding*, seated on a Creek of the *Baltick Sea*. 3. *Wael*. 4. *Warde*. 5. *Rinkoping*. and 6. *Hofebro*.

The Diocese of **ALBOUR** which is divided into four parts, viz. 1. *Thyland*, lying southward of the bay of *Limsford*, its chief town is *Albergh*, seated on the said Bay, which opening into the *Baltick sea*, extendeth it self westwards through the main Land almost as far as the *German Ocean*. 2. *Hanheret*, on the North-west of the bay of *Limsford*, containing four *Prefectures*, its chief town is *Thylad*. 3. *Mofee*, lying on the Ocean, contains three *Prefectures*, the *Ile* of *Ageroe*, the *Town* of *Pikoping*, and the *Castle* of *Lunsteads*; and 4. *Vensjssel*, according to *Merccator*, *Vandalorum sedes*, or the seat of the *Vandals*, containing six *Prefectures*, three *Towns*, and one *Castle*, 1. *Sely*, 2. *Seagen*, and 3. *Hirring*.

The Diocese of **WIBOURG** Northwards of *Arhusen*, contains sixteen *Prefectures*, the *Iles* of *Egholm*, *Hansholm*, *Bodum*, *Fagen*, *Cislan*, and *Ofholm*, also it hath three *Castles* and as many *Cities* or walled *Towns*. Its chief *City* bearing the name of the *Province*, being dignified with an *Episcopal See*, and the Courts of *Judicature* for both the *Frislands*. The point of *Seagen*, or of *Seean* ends this *Peninsula* towards the North. Its other places are *Lemwick* and *Holcker*.

#### THE BALTICK ISLANDS.

Those *ISLANDS* which are between *Frisland* and the *Coast*, and farther in the *Baltick Sea*, are in number thirty five, and are so called as being dispersed in these *Seas*. It beginneth at the narrow passage called the *Sound*, and interlacing the *Countrys* of *Denmark*, *Poland*, *Germany* and *Swedeland*, extendeth to *Livonia* and *Lithuania*. The Reason (according to the opinion of many) why this *Sea* (which is so large) doth neither *ebb* nor *flow*, may be as well from its Northern Situation, whereby the Celestial influences have the less predominancy, as also from the narrowness of the Strait which receiveth the *Ocean*. The chief of these *Iles* are, 1. *Zeland*, 2. *Fionie*, 3. *Borgholme*, 4. *Fimers*, 5. *Allen*, 6. *Falster*, 7. *Tufinge*, 8. *Laland*, 9. *Aria*, 10. *Langeland*, and 11. *Gotland*.

**ZELAND** or **SELANDUNIA** is in length 64 miles, and in breadth 52. It was antiently called *Codanonia* from the *Codani* its inhabitants: the *Ile* is very fertile, and the greatest in the *Baltick Seas*, and by reason of its situation, which is not above three miles from the main land of *Scandia*, (which narrow Strait or fretum is called the *Sound*,) is of great importance

rance to the King of Denmark, being a Strait through which all Ships must pass that have any trade or commerce in the *Baltick Seas*, which are a very great number every day, all which pay a certain *imposition* or *toll* to the King, according to their bigness or *bills* of lading, by which ariseth his greatest revenue, and for the security of this passage there are built two exceeding strong *Castles*, the one in this Isle called *Cronenberg*, and the other in *Scandia*, called *Hilsemberg*, of which more anon; it contains seven strong *Castles* belonging to the King, and thirteen Cities or walled *Towns*, whereof the chief are, *Haffen* or *Hafnia* the Metropolis of this Island, as also of the whole Kingdom, known to other Nations by the name of *Copenhagen*, that is, *Mercator: m Portus*, or the Merchants haven: it is seated near the Sea, with a commodious *Port*, the City is of a round form, of good strength, being fortified with a strong Castle built of Stone, but its houses meanly built, affording no beauty or delight to the eye of the beholder, being built for the most part of timber and clay, yet it hath a spacious *Market-place*, and is dignified with the residence of the King for the Winter season, (whose *Royal Palace* is built of free-stone, *quadrangular*, but of no great splendor or magnificence,) as also with the only *Universty* in all this Kingdom.

Commodities here found are *hides*, *tallow*, *Stock-fish*, and other *salt-fish*, all sorts of *Armenr*, *furniture* for *Shipping*, as *Cordage*, *Masts*, *Tar*, and *Pitch*, also *Firre-boards* and *wainscot*, *Buck-skins*, &c.

Commodities vendable here are *woollen-cloaths*, *Cotton*, *Perpetuanes*, *Lead*, *Tin*, *Pewter*, *Hatts*, *Stockings*, &c.

Coyns here currant are the *Doller* and the *Shilling*; two *shillings* of which makes one of *Lubeck*, and 66 *shillings* of Denmark makes a *Rix dollar*, which is five *shillings* sterling.

They keep their *Accounts* by *Marks* of 16 *shillings* Danish.

Their *Exchanges* are made by the *Rix dollers*, which is the currant *Coyne* of this Kingdom.

Their *Weights* are found to differ in many places, but generally in most places of Denmark, as in this City, &c. they have a great and a small hundred, viz. one of 112 *li.* and another of 120 *li.* to the hundred, which they divide into 12 parts or stones at 10 *li.* per stone. They have a *Skipponnd*, 32 stones of 10 *li.* per stone,

or 20 *Lipponnds* of 16 mark pounds is a *Skipponnd*; so that their *Skipponnd* is 320 *li.* and it is observed that 100 *li.* English hath made here, at *Elfsnour*, *Wild*, and elsewhere 92 *li.* Danish.

And as their *Weights* are found to differ, so do their *Measures*, which is the *Ell*, whereof it hath been observed that in several places of this Kingdom 100 yards English doth make 160, 163, and 166 *Ells*, and in some places not so much.

2. *Helsingora* or *Elfsnour* seated on the sea-side, of it self but a poor Village, were it not for the great resort of Seamen in their Passage through the *Sound* into the *Baltick Sea*, where they pay their *Toll*; and in this Village is the stately and well fortified Castle of *Cronenburg*, built in the very Ocean, and bravely resisting the fury of its Waves: now the ordinary residence of the King, being a pleasant Prospect to all men, where one may discern every Ship that passes through the *Sound*, but especially to the King, by reason that every Ship addeth to his *treasury*: On the South side of this Castle is a large and commodious Road for *Shipping*, and this Castle on this side, commands the Streight of the *Sound*, (which is as it were the Key of the *Baltick Sea*.) as the Castle of *Hilsemberg* on the side of *Scandia* doth the other side to which it is opposite, and not above three miles distance, 3ly further, within the land of this Island is *Roschils* once a rich City, now onely famous for being the Sepulcher of the Danish Kings, where, in the *Cathedral Church*, they have their Tombs, which for the most part are very mean: as also dignified with an *Episcopal See*, whose *Bishops* had the honour of crowning the Kings of Denmark. 4. *Fredricksbourg*, a Fortress built in a pleasant Plain, often visited by the King in his retirement, where he hath a delightful house seated in a *Park*. Its other chief Places are *Warbourg*, *Kege*, *Ringsede*, *Halbeck*, *Slages*, *Carlsruer*, *Presloe*, *Schelfshora* and *Westwede*.

30 as it were the Key of the *Baltick Sea*.) as the Castle of *Hilsemberg* on the side of *Scandia* doth the other side to which it is opposite, and not above three miles distance, 3ly further, within the land of this Island is *Roschils* once a rich City, now onely famous for being the Sepulcher of the Danish Kings, where, in the *Cathedral Church*, they have their Tombs, which for the most part are very mean: as also dignified with an *Episcopal See*, whose *Bishops* had the honour of crowning the Kings of Denmark. 4. *Fredricksbourg*, a Fortress built in a pleasant Plain, often visited by the King in his retirement, where he hath a delightful house seated in a *Park*. Its other chief Places are *Warbourg*, *Kege*, *Ringsede*, *Halbeck*, *Slages*, *Carlsruer*, *Presloe*, *Schelfshora* and *Westwede*.

FIONIA or FIUNEN, seated betwixt *Zeland* and *Fuinland*, from which last it is separated by a narrow streight, called *Middle-far-sound*, almost joyning to the Mainland. It is accounted the second Isle in all the *Baltick Seas*, of a fertile soil, and pleasant situation; it is in length 12 Dutch miles, and four in breadth, containing therein 8 Towns, besides Villages, and 5 Castles: Its chief place is *Oscl*, or *Ottiniam*,

The City of Copenhagen, built in 1473, and destroyed 1659.

In Comm. de res. and trade.

In Coyne.

In his part of the world.

nium, so founded he is feared in which the stance, whi for Traffick but likewise way, Flana not very la Churches, a Buildings; considerable some convey other chief Woborg, Alsens.

BORNH Cobland, is feeding about (together with supply the Isles: It is Towns and Vianneckier, &c.

FIMERA, pled Isle; a Brache, the far artificial Town Mathematical is Petersborne, King of Denmark.

ALSEN, the Dukedom exceeding popul and 4 Towns, v Norbarch and the residence of

FALSTER, Corns, distant from its chief place situation.

TUSINGE, great account situation; It Niburg and As

LALAND, very plentiful freighting the An Island very containing the

ARIA, a fe the Dukedom Towns, the chiefed with a CALANGEL, being about chief Town is

nium, so call'd from *Otho* the Great, who founded here an *Episcopal See*: the Town is seated in the middle of the *Island*, from which the other Towns are of an equal distance, which renders it very commodious for Traffick, not only with the *Baltick Sea*, but likewise with *Sweden, Germany, Norway, Flanders and Russia*; It is a Town not very large, but adorn'd with 2 fair Churches, and beautified with many neat Buildings; the other Towns are not very considerable, but most of them placed on some convenient *Creeke or Haven*: Its other chief places are, *Niborg, Swinborg, Woborg, Ascens, Kartemunde, and Bownens*.

**BORNHOLME**, seated not far from *Gotland*, is an *Isle* exceeding fertile, feeding abundance of *Cattel*, with which (together with the *Butter and Cheese*); they supply the defects of the neighbouring *Isles*: It is provided with many good Towns and Villages, as *Nex, Kattstoby, Sunantckier, &c.*

**FIMERA**, a very fertile and well Peopled *Isle*; and here it was that *Ticho Brache*, the famous *Mathematician* built an artificial *Tower*, in which are many rare *Mathematical Instruments*; Its chief Town is *Petersborne*, of some importance to the King of *Denmark*.

**ALSEN**, a small *Isle*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, an *Island* exceeding populous, containing 13 Parishes, and 4 Towns, viz. *Osterholme, Gammelgard, Norbarch and Sunderburg*, dignified with the residence of the Dukes of *Sleswick*.

**FALSTER**, a small *Isle*, fertile in *Corn*, distant from *Germany* 7 Dutch miles, its chief place is *Nikoping*, of a pleasant situation.

**TUSINGE**, a very small *Isle*, and of no great account by reason of its dangerous situation; It hath for its chief places, *Niburg and Ascens*.

**LALAND**, not far distant from *Zeland*, very plentiful in *Corn and Chefnuts*, freighting therewith many *Ships* yearly; An *Island* very populous for the bigness, containing these 3 Towns, viz. *Nasce, Maribo, and Rosby*, besides a great many Villages, and some Castles.

**ARIA**, a small *Island*, belonging to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*; containing 3 Towns, the chief whereof is *Koping*, fortified with a *Castle* so called.

**LANGELAND**, an indifferent large *Isle*, being about 21 miles in length, its chief Town is called *Aukoping*, besides

which it hath some others, together with many Villages.

**GOTHLAND**, is larger then any of these last, and yields a white *Stone*, which is of excellent use for Building: The *City of Visby* in this *Island* was once so famous for Traffique, that it gave maritime Laws to the *Baltick Sea*, in the middle of which the *Isle* is situate; this *Isle* is now in the possession of the *Swedes*.

That which the *Kings of Denmark* possess, as particularly belonging to that Crown, on the Coast of *SCANDINAVIA*, is part of the ancient *Gothia*, or *Gotland*; and some imagine, that from the Southern part of this Coast being called *Schonen*, came the name of *Scandia*, or *Scandinavia*, which was given to the whole *Peninsula*; the most Southern of which that we are now treating of, is divided into 3 Provinces, viz. *Hollandia, Schononia* or *Scania*, and *Bleisida*.

**HALLANDIA**, now in the possession of the *Swedes*, hath on the North *Swedeland*, on the South *Scania*, on the East the wild Woods that parts it from *Gotland*, and on the West, the *Sea*, which separates it from *Fustland*. This *Country*, or *Province* (as *Helsyn* obserueth) for fertility of Soil, sweetness of *Aire*, store of *Fish*, plenty of *Lead and Brass* Mines, and thicknes of Towns and Villages, all well inhabited with civil people, is not inferior to any. Its chief places are, 1. *Wasborg*, seated on the *Sea-side*, and defended by a strong *Castle*, built on the summit of a Hill, so that it hath a great command over the *Country*. 2. *Laholm*. 3. *Hollandia*, or *Katzerop*. 4. *Helmstad*, and 5. *Falkenberg*.

**SCANIA, SCHONIA, or SCONEN**, hath on the North *Hollandia*, and on all other parts the *Sea*: It is 72 miles long, and 48 broad; the pleasantest *Country* in all *Denmarke*, most abundant in *Fruits*, and richest in *Merchandize*; and on the *Sea-side* are sometimes such great shoales of *Herrings*, that *Ships* are scarce able with *Wind and Oare* to break through them, and get out of *Harbour*. This *Province* may be compared to *Hollandia* for fertility, and thicknes of Towns, &c. Its chief places are, 1. *Lunden*, an in-land *City*, dignified with the sole of *Metropolitan Arch-bishoprick of Denmark*. The chiefest beauty in this *City* is the *Cathedral Church*, being a Magnificent Structure, beautified with excellent pieces of *Art*, the chief whereof are the *Clock* and

Island of  
Gotland  
described.

Province of  
Hallandia.

The Province of  
Scania,  
with its  
chief places.

lands is a  
is 320 li.  
liff hath  
elsewhere

to differ,  
the Ell,  
that in fe-  
co yards  
166 Ells,

ed on the  
r Village,  
ort of Sea-  
the Sound  
y pay their  
the stately

*Cronenburg*,  
bravely  
ow the or-  
ing a plea-  
re one may  
es through  
the King,  
eth to his

of this *Castle*  
Road for  
side, com-  
und, (which  
altick Sea.)  
on the side  
le to which  
three miles  
in the land  
a rich City,  
ng the *Se-*  
s, where, in  
have their  
part are very  
an *Episcopal*  
honour of

ark. 4. *Fre-*  
in a plea-  
the King in  
h a delight-  
Its other  
*Koge, Ring-*  
*ers, Presloe,*

ated betwixt  
hich last it is  
called *Mid-*  
to the *Main-*  
second *Isle* in  
ile soil, and  
th 12 Dutch  
containing  
Villages, and  
*osel, or Otte-*  
*nium,*

7th of King  
with  
chief  
places.

A Clock  
and Dial  
of excellent  
workman-  
ship.

the *Dial*, the *Clock* being so composed and framed by artificial *Engines* (as an eminent Traveller relates) that whensoever it striketh, 2 *Horsemen* encounter, giving one another as many blows as the *Clock* striketh times. Also upon the opening of a Door, there is represented a *Theatre*, where the *Virgin Mary* is seated on a Throne, with *Christ* in her *Armes*, to

whom the 3 *Kings* with their several trains come in order, and with reverence present their *Gifts* to her; during which time 2 *Trumpeters* do continually sound. And next the *Dial*, where the *year*, *month*, *week*, *day*, and *hour* of the day throughout the *Year*, as also the motions of the *Sun* and *Moon* through each degree of the *Zodiack*; the moveable and fixed *Feasts*, &c. are to be distinctly seen, being neatly set forth in variety of delightful Colours.

2. *Helsingborg*, fortified with an impregnable *Castle*, and one of the *Fortes* defending the *Sound*. 3. *Christiania*, a place of great strength; and 4. *Malbogen*, or *Ellbogen*, a Port-Town, opposite to *Copenhagen*. This Province is now also in the hands of the *Swedes*.

Province of  
Helsingborg  
described.

BLEKINGEA, or BLEKINGE, or BLUKER, also the *Swedes*; hath on the North *Swedland*, on the East and South the *Baltick Sea*, and on the West a little *Sea-gullet*, which divides it from *Scania*: It is a Mountainous and barren Country. Its chief places are, 1. *Malinogia*, the Birth-place of the famous *Mathematician Gaspar Bartholinus*, who was said to be the *Inventor* and maker of the aforesaid *Clock* and *Dial*: And 2. *Colmar*, an important *Fortress* against the *Swedes*, until they gain'd the *Province*.

Communi-  
ties of  
Denmark.

The *Danes* are for the most part good *Souldiers* both by *Sea* and *Land*, but much fitter for the first than last. The *Soil* is naturally better for *Pasture* than *Tillage*, and feeds such multitudes of *Oxen*, that 50000 are said to be yearly sent hence into *Germany*. Their other *Commodities* are *Fish*, *Tallow*, *Furniture* for *Shipping*, *Fishing*, *Armour*, *Oxe-hides*, *Buck-skins*, *Wainscot*, *Fir-wood*, *Furrs*, *Pipe-Staves*, *Copper*, *Wheat*, *Rie*, &c.

## NORWAY.

In Scania  
1600.

NORWAY is bounded on the North with *Lippia*, on the East with the *Defrine Mountains*, which divides it from *Swedland*, and on all other sides with the

*Sea*: on which, with a disproportionate breadth, it stretches its *Coast* for 1300 miles in length.

The *Countrey* is extremely cold, being partly under the *Frozen Zone*, and partly to near it, that it all suffers under the inclemency of bitter cold: It is for the most part *Mountainous*, full of vast *Woods*, and of a *Soil* so barren and ungrateful to the *Husbandman*, affording so little *Corn*, that in many places the *People* live on dried *Fish* in stead of *Bread*, (known to us by the name of *Stock-Fish*) but the richer sort of *People* buy *Corn* of such *Merchants* as come to *Trade* with them.

The principal *Commodities* that this *Countrey* affordeth, is great plenty of *Fir*, *Deale Boards*, *Timber*, *Tarr*, *Masts*, and *furniture* for *Shipping*; also *Stock-Fish*, *Train-Oyle*, rich *Furrs*, but not many, *Copper*, *Pipe Staves*, &c. which the *Inhabitants* exchange for *Corn*, *Cloths*, *Kerseys*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Stoatings*, *Wine*, with several *Commodities* useful for their *Houses*.

*Coynes* here current, are, *Rix-dollers*, *Stett-dollers*, which is less than a *Rix-doller*; *Marks*, and *Skillings*. *Lybks Skilling*, which is the 1/2 part of a *Rix-doller*; and *Skillings Dansk*, which is the 96 part of a *Rix-doller*. There is no *Exchange* in *Norway*, and so a *Rix-doller* there hath its *Standard*, and will pass equal with an *English Crown*, a *Cross-doller* 2; less.

Their *Weights* is the *Pound*, whereof 92 *li*. maketh 100 *li*. *English*.

The *Shippund* is 320 *li*. *English*.

The *Lispund* is the 20 part of a *Shippund*.

The *Bismerpund* is a *pound weight* of 16 *ounces*.

The *Lispund* is 16 *li*. *weight*.

They have a *Weight* which they call a *Vogbe*, of 16 *li*. used in the North part of this *Countrey*, as at *Bergen*, and *Dronson*.

Their *Measures* of length is the *Siallands Ell*, which maketh 2 *foot English*.

There is also a *Measure* for *Timber*, called the *Sconu Ell*, and is accounted 22 *inches English*.

Their *Dry Measure* is the *Tun*, which is reckoned 4 *Bushels English*.

Their smaller *Measures* for liquids, are *Canns*, of which 4 *Pots* goeth to one, each being near a *Wine quart*.

The *Countrey* is exceedingly annoyed with certain small *Beasts* about the bigness of a *Mouse*, by which they called *Lommers*; which at a certain time are so innumerable, that

that like  
dure of the  
dye in hea  
and obnoxi  
*Air*; and  
*Whales*,  
just dealer  
vices, and  
*Warriors*.

This *Ri-  
ments*, whi  
places whe  
which the  
the House  
followeth,

1. *BAH-  
victorious S  
The chief  
where the  
of Bahus,  
of Congel  
Trade; and  
Islands, of  
Herrings he*

2. *AGG-  
the North  
whose chief  
and is the r  
which these  
viz. 1. *Ap  
with an *Ep  
Courts of J  
account for  
And 3. *Fri****

3. *MARG-  
third Govern  
called, digni  
the residen  
famous Cit  
tient Mart  
reason of its  
a deep Arm  
them) *Car  
modious Po  
chants; wh  
Meat, Wine  
like *Comm  
and in excha  
Deales, *Fir  
Ships, &c.****

4. *TRO-  
Trander*, is  
chief place,  
nor residen  
with the *Me  
Norway*, on  
Seat of their  
Masters of t  
ced this City

that like *Locust* they devour all the verdure of the Earth; and, at a certain time dye in heaps, which proves very noisome and obnoxious to the *People*, infecting the *Air*; and the *Sea* is as bad troubled with *Whales*: The *Inhabitants* are said to be just dealers, punishers of *Theft* and other vices, and were accounted formerly great *Warriers*.

This *Kingdom* is divided into 5 *Governments*, which take their names from the places where the *Governors* reside: in all which the *Towns* are exceeding thin, and the *Houses* as poor: the 5 parts are as followeth,

1. *BAHUS*, now belonging to the victorious *Swedes*, is the most Southward; The chief place of this *Government*, and where the *Governor* resideth, is the *Castle* of *Bahus*, to which are subject the *Towns* of *Congel* seated on the *Sea*, and of some *Trade*; and *Marstrand*, seated in a *Demisland*, of note for the great quantity of *Herrings* here caught.

2. *AGGERHUS*, mourning towards the North, is the second *Government*, whose chief place or *Castle* is so called, and is the residence of the *Governor*; to which these *Towns* following are subject, viz. 1. *Apoja*, *Anso* or *opso*, dignified with an *Episcopal See*, as also with the *Courts of Judicature*. 2. *Schow*, of good account for its *Mines of Copper and Iron*: And 3. *Fridersfad*.

3. *BURGENHUS*, or *BERGEN*, is the third *Government*, whose chief place is so called, dignified with an *Episcopal See*, and the residence of the *Governor*'s, once a famous *City of Trade*, and one of the ancient *Mar-Towns* of *Europe*; yet still, by reason of its situation at the bottom of a deep *Arme* of the *Ocean*, called (by them) *Carmesund*, where it hath a commodious *Port*, is well frequented by *Merchants*, who bring them *Corn*, *Bread*, *Meat*, *Wine*, *Beer*, *Apiviva*, and the like *Commodities*; to supply their wants; and in exchange, take *Stock-Fish*, *Purrs*, *Deales*, *Firrs*, *Cordage*, *Pitch*, *Mast* for *ships*, &c.

4. *TRONDENHUS*, formerly called *Trondey*, is the fourth *Government*, whose chief place, and *Castle* where the *Governor* resideth is so called; it is dignified with the *Metropolitan Arch-bishoprick* of all *Norway*; once a fair *City*, as being the *Seat* of their *Kings*; till the *Danes* became *Masters* of this *Country*, who have reduced this *City* to a small *Town*.

5. *WARDHUS* is the fifth and last *Government* of *Norway*, lying beyond *Cape Norr*, which is the most Northern Point of *Europe*. Its chief place and *Castle*, where the *Governor* resideth, except during the absence of the *Sun*, which is for about three *Moneths* in the year. This *Town* is serviceable to the *King*, because it awes the *Lappians* their neighbours, as also commandeth the *Natives*; and profitable, because all the *ships* going to *Moscovy* must of necessity touch here.

And so much for Denmark and Norway.

## SWEDE N.

THE *Estates* of the *SWEDE* are all on the *Baltick sea*, and occupy all those *Regions* and *Provinces* which are on the West, East, and North of this *Sea*; and is Southward of *Poland*, *Germany* and *Denmark*.

The *Estates* of the *Swede* are bounded on the West and North by the *Estates* of *Denmark*; on the East by those of *Moscovy*; and on the South, by the *Baltick sea* in part, and in part by *Poland* and *Denmark*.

They comprehend 4 principal *Regions*, viz. *Gubland*, *Swedeland*, *Finland*, and *Livonia*, and likewise part of *Lapland*, to wit, the most Southern, which is on the *Baltick sea*; the other two parts of *Lapponia* belonging, the most Northern, or that lying on the *Septentrional Ocean*, to the *King* of *Denmark* as *King* of *Norway*; the most Eastern, and towards the *White sea*, to the *Muscovite*. *Ingria*, at the bottom of the *Gulf* of *Finland*, and which hath been taken from *Moscovy* may make a sixth part.

*GOTHLAND* and *SWEDELAND* possess that which is on the West of the *Baltick sea*; *Finland* and *Livonia* that which is on the East. *Gothland* is subdivided into *Ostrogothland*, and *Westrogothland*, that is, the Land of the *Eastern*, and the Land of the *Western* *Goths*; and from hence came the names of *Ostrogoths*, and *Wistgoths*. *Swedeland* is subdivided into *Suonia*, and *Norland*, that is, the Land of the North. *Finland* into *Finland*, and the Lands adjacent. *Livonia* into *Esten* or *Estonia*, and *Letten*, or *Lettonia*.

Y y GOTH-

The Government of Wardhus

Swedeland bounded with the parts of Regions.

1711



The Province of Gothland described.

**GOTHLAND** is the best and richest Province of the North; and is so called from the *Goths* its ancient Inhabitants, The Soil very fertile for *Corn* or *Cattel*, affordeth plenty of *Mines*, and its *Sea* and *Rivers* store of *Fish*. It is divided into *Island* and *Continent*; the *Isle* we have spoke of in the *Estates* of *Denmark*; The *Continent* is that part of *Scandia* which lies adjacent to the *Territories* of *Denmark*, and is that which is subdivided into *Ostrogothland*, and *Westrogothland*; In it is the famous Lake *Wenir*, which receiving 24 *Rivers*, disburthens it self at one mouth, and that with such noise and fury, that it beareth the name of the *Devils-head*. Places of most note in this Province, are, 1. *Lodvisa*, or *Gothsburg*, a *Town* of great *Trade*, by reason of its *Fair*, and *Commodious Haven*. 2. *Dalebourg*, a fair *Town*, well fortified with a strong *Castle*. 3. *Tinvalle*, of note for its *Iron-Workes* and *Mines*. 4. *Calmar*, on the *Confines* of *Denmark*, a large *City*, seated on the *Baltick Sea*, a place of good *Trade*, having a *Commodious Port*, defended by a strong and beautiful *Castle*: This place is famous for the *Suedes* embarking here to invade *Denmark*. 5. *Linkoping*. 6. *Scara*. 7. *Vexio*, all three *Episcopal Sees*. 8. *Wadstein*, seated on the *Lake*; and 9. *Westerwick*, commodiously seated on the *Baltick Sea*.

The Province of Sweden described.

**SWEDEN** (principally so called) hath on the East *Sinnus Bodicus*, on the West the *Defrine Hills*, on the North *Lappia*, and on the South *Gothland*: It contains the ancient *Sueconia* and *Norland*, wherein are several *Provinces*. The *Country* is very fruitful, and delicious, unless in some places, where the cragginess of the *Mountains* make it more barren, and less pleasant, as also in other places the great *Marishes* yet undrained, and the vast *Woods* yet standing; so that considering the whole, it is not so fertile as *Gothland*. Places of most note in this *Provinces*, are,

In this place.

1. *Stockholme*, seated in a watry *Marsh*, in part upon the *Lake Moller*, and in part on the *East Sea*, out of which the great *Trade* for *Shipping* to this *City* doth come, entering by a deep but narrow *Channel*, yet commodious for *Ships* of the greatest burthen, and its *Port* so capacious and safe, that about 300 sail of fair *Ships* may ride at one time, and without *Anchor*: And for the security of this *Channel*, there are placed in the narrowest place opposite to each other, two strong *Forts*, the one cal-

led *Digne*, and the other *Waxholme*, so that no *Ship* dares to enter without their permission. And besides these two *Forts* the *City* is defended by an impregnable *Castle*, wherein are found about 400 pieces of *Brass Artillery*, with all sorts of other *Ammunition* answerable to it. This *City* being the residence of the *King*, as the chief of the *Kingdom*, (whose *Palace* is more renown'd for *Antiquity*, then *Magnificence*) makes it be a place of a considerable *Trade*, and well frequented.

2. *Upsall*, seated not far from the *Bay* of *Bodner*, dignified with the *See* of an *Arch-bishop*, so famous, that it gives the name of *Archiepiscopus Upsallensis* to all the adjacent *Territory*: as also with an *University*, and beautified with a *Cathedral Church*, no less large then fair, formerly the burial place of the *Swedish Kings*.

3. *Nikoping*, a *Maritime Town* of good strength.

4. *Coperdoh*, famous for its abundance of *Brass*.

5. *Strengnes*, an *Episcopal See*.

6. *Vesteras*, or *Arosia*, famous for its rich *Mines* of *Silver*, which are found exceeding profitable to the *King*.

7. *Hudrick*, seated on the *Sea* or *Golfe* of *Botnia*.

8. *Hernofand*, seated on the said *Golfe*.

9. *Idra*, re-guarding *Norway*.

**FINLAND** hath on the East *Sinnus Fimicus*, on the South the *Baltick Sea*, or *Mare Suevicum*; on the West *Sinnus Bodicus*, and on the North *Bodia*: It had its name from the *Finni*, or *Fenni*, a People here inhabiting, whom *Tacitus* thus Characterizes, *Finni mira feritas, fada paupertas, non arma, non equi, non penates, vitui herba, vestium pelles, cubile humas, sola in sagittis spes*: Which may be thus read in *English*, the *Finnes* (saith he) are exceeding barbarous *People*, very poor, being destitute of *Armes*, *Horse*, or *Household Goods*; contenting themselves with *Herbes* for their *Food*, the *Skins* of *beasts* for their *Clothing*, and the ground for their *Bed*; Armed only with their *Arrows*, in which they put their trust. And this Character agreeth very well with the present *Finlanders*, especially those of *Sericfinnia*, and *Finnarchie*, not to well reclaimed to civility as the others. This *Finland* is very populous, containing 1433 *Parishes*, in many of which may be numbered about 1000 *Families*. Its chief places are

1. *Abu*, situated of *Finland*, from *Livon* *Bishop*. 2. *I* near to *wh* *Molcorv*, and of *Fiburg* a which stands thousand *D* places are, *Bi* *Ulla* and *Ny* The *Lanc*

comprehend *finnia*. *BO* *Serickfinnia*, West the *l* *Gulph* hence the *East* *finn* *covy*. This *C* in *grains* or *hath* great *v* afford the *inh* *Furrs*, for *wh* *ons* as they reason of the the said *bay*, Its chief *Plac* *singa*, honoure dom.

**SCRICKF** *Bodia*, and then *Lapland*, and th miserably cold their name fr *Dutch* word *fi* no use of *mon* the *King* of *S* which they *h* take in *hunting* thin, if any, an *sea-shore*, and *tenting* them *beds*.

**LAPPIA** most Northern part which be *Sweden* is situa the North, *S* *Dofrine hills* of *dian* on the *E* name onely fro (for so the *barbarous*, void *laters*, *soverers*, place is famous but strong and with which the *hunting*, *devou* themselves with

From the Finnic Tribes.

*1. Abo*, situate at the bottome of the bay of *Finland*, which separates this *Province* from *Livonia*: dignified with the See of a *Bishop*. 2. *Borgo*, a place of great strength, near to which, within the Confines of *Moscovy*, are the two strong frontier Towns of *Viburg* and *Rivallia*, the keeping of which stands the *King of Sweden* in 100 thousand *Dollers* yearly, its other chief places are, *Biernborg*, *Castelholme*, *Tavastru*, *Ula*, and *Nyflot*.

The Lands adjacent to *Finland* may be comprehended under *Bodia* and *Scrickfinnia*. *BODIA* hath on the North *Scrickfinnia*, on the South *Finland*, on the West the large and capacious bay or Gulph hence called *sinus Bodicus*, and on the East *sinus Finnicus*, and part of *Moscovy*. This Countrey is not over fertile in grains or fruits, but in recompence hath great variety of wild beasts, which afford the inhabitants abundance of rich *Furs*, for which they have such provisions as they have occasion of; and by reason of the commodious situation on the said bay, it is well furnished with fish. Its chief Places are, *Virtis*, *Viska*, and *Helsinga*, honoured with the title of a *Duke*-*dom*.

*SCRICKFINNIA* hath on its South *Bodia*, and thence stretcheth it self between *Lapland*, and the *Frozen Ocean*; a Countrey miserably cold, and whose people take their name from *Finni* and *Skriken*, a *Dutch* word signifying *sliding*. They have no use of money, but pay their tribute to the *King of Sweden* in *skins* and *furs*, of which they have great plenty, which they take in *hunting*. Towns here are very thin, if any, and those that are on the sea-shore, and very poor, the Natives contenting themselves with *Cabbins* and *sheds*.

*LAPPIA* or *LAPLAND* is the most Northern part of all *Scandia*. That part which belongeth to the *King of Sweden* is situate between *Scrickfinnia* on the North, *Sweden* on the South, the *Desirine hills* on the West, and *sinus Bodicus* on the East: the people had their name onely from their blockish behaviour (for so the word signifies,) being *rude*, *barbarous*, void of *arts* or *letters*, great *idolaters*, *sorcerers*, and *witches*, for which the place is famous: Of stature they are low, but strong and active, expert in the Bow, with which they kill their wild beasts in hunting, devouring the *flesh*, and clothing themselves with the *skins*, which they tye,

or wrap about them all over, to preserve them from the piercing cold which here reignes, *Towns* they are said to have but few, contenting themselves with *sheds* and *cabbins*, which they remove from place to place, as occasion serves; except in *Finmarch* a part of *Lapland*, which borders on *Norway*, and where the Natives are more civilized; as also on the sea, or Gulph of *Botnie*, on which is seated *Torne*, *Kimi*, *Lula*, *Pitha*, and *Uma*.

*LIVONIA* is bounded on the East with *Moscovy*, on the South with *Lithuania*, on the West with the *Baltick Sea*, and on the North with *Finland*. It reaches in length 500 miles, and in breadth 160: a Countrey extremely mountainous, and fenny, but yet so abundantly fruitful, that it supplies with *Corn* the defects of other Countreys. Its chief places are, 1. *Riga*, an *Archbishops See*, a town of great commerce. Commodities here found are *hemp*, *flax* called *ofens*, and *spring flax*, *hemp* both *Rine* and *Pass*, *clapboards*, *waincoats*, *ears*, *pot-ashes*, &c. and the chief Commodities which find vent from *England* are *cloth*, and *Perpetuanoes*.

*Coyns* here most currant, and by which they keep their accounts are *Rix Dollers*, and a *Rix Daller* is 90 *grofs*, or 3 *guldens*, and a *gulder* is 1 s. 6 d. *sterling*.

Their *Weight* is the *Pound*, whereof 20 *li*. makes a *Lisponnd*, and 20 *Lisponnd* a *Schipponnd*, which is 3 C; *Englisch*.

Their *Measure* of length is the *Ell*, whereof 166; *Ells* doth make 100 yards *Englisch*.

2. *Derpt*, a town also of trade, it is divided into two parts, *viz. Esten*, or *Estonic*, and *Letten*, and these again are subdivided into several quarters, as *Eften*, *Vickeland*, *Harneland*, *Wirland*, *Alantack*, *Kikeland*, *Fervenland*, and West South, and East *Letten*.

*INGRIA* is a small *Province* bordering upon *Livonia*, not many years since taken from the *Knez*, or great *Dukes of Mosco*, by the *Kings of Sweden*, who have likewise robbed *Germany* of the best part of *Pemtrania*; and *Denmark* of the *Provinces* of *Schouen*, *Scamia*, *Halandia*, *Blekingea*, *Bahus*, *Gotland*, *Oestlia*, *Herredalia*, and *Femptia*.

In *Scandinavia*, or the *Estates* of *DENMARK*, and *SWEDELAND*, are many *Rivers*, among which, some are very large, but not famous: The *Lakes* and *Gulphs* which are in great number, obscure the *Rivers*, and make the commerce one-

The Countrey of Livonia.

Commodities of Livonia.

Their Coyns.

Their Weight and Measure.

Provinces of Ingria.

Lakes and Rivers in Denmark and Swede-land.

... to  
... but their  
... two Parts  
... regnable  
... 400 pie-  
... lerts of  
... it. This  
... King, as  
... se Palace  
... men Mag-  
... f a consti-  
... quented.  
... n the Bay  
... See of an  
... gives the  
... lliensis to  
... so with an  
... a Cath-  
... men fair, for-  
... ne Swedish  
... on of good  
... abundance  
... ne.  
... ous for its  
... found ex-  
... sea or Golfe  
... the said  
... East Sinus  
... altick Sea,  
... West Sinus  
... dia: It had  
... enia Peo-  
... acium thus  
... riam, fada  
... an penates,  
... ble humus,  
... may bethus  
... (saith he)  
... very poor,  
... e, or How-  
... selves with  
... ins of beasts  
... ground for  
... their Arrows,  
... And this  
... ith the pre-  
... of Scrick-  
... ll reclaimed  
... Finland is  
... 33 Parisbes  
... bred about  
... places are  
... 1. Al

ly on the Coast. The Rivers of *Uma*, *Pitba*, *Lula*, *Terne*, and *Kimi* give their names to the Marches of *Lepponia* subject to the King of *Swede*. That of *Dalecarlia* traverses *Dalicarlie* a Province of the same name, bounds *Gestrícia*, *Westmania* and *Uplande*, and falls into the *Baltick Sea*. The most famous *Lakes* of *Sweden* are *Meler*, which embraces many *Isles*, on one of which, and near its mouth towards the *Baltick Sea* is *Stockholme*, the residence of the *Swedish Kings*; on the other side is the *Wener*, which runs by the River *Trolhette*, into that part of the *Baltick Sea* which is beyond the Strait of the *Sound*, and towards the *Ocean*. *Trolhette* waters *Babus* one of the five *Governments* of *Norway*, and divides it self into two principal Branches, of which one embraces *Maerstrand* of *Norway*, the other waters *Gothsbure* the onely place the *Swedes* have on this side, and which divides *Denmark* from *Norway*. The *Lake Veter* makes the River of *Motala*, which washes *Lincoping* in *Sweden*, and others. The *Meler* runs, and takes its course from West to East, the *Wener* on the contrary from East to West, the *Peter* from North to South.

There was once proposed a conjugation of the *Lakes* of *Meler* and *Wener*, by the Rivers which fall into the one and the other lake; and this conjugation would have given a great advantage to the *Swede*, to communicate the commerce of the *Baltick Sea* with the *Ocean*, without passing by the *Sound*, or Strait of *Bels* in *Denmark*.

The principal Mountains in *Scandinavia* are the *Dofrine hills*, which is a vast and continual ridge of Mountains, and these Hills divide *Swedeland* from *Denmark*.

The Soil of *Swedeland* is so fruitful in most places, that it is a hard matter to see a begger; and the air so pure and healthful, that it is ordinary to see men of 120 or 140 years of age. The Countrey aboundeth with Mines of *Silver*, *Copper*, *Lead*, *Tin*, *Blas*, and other *Metals*, which are transported into other Nations, together with *Ox-hides*, *Goat* and *Beck-skins*, *Tallow*, *lar*, *costly furs* and *skins*, *Honey*, *Allome*, *Malt*, *Barley*, *Wheat*, and other grains, *Herris*, and the like *Commodities*.

The People are naturally strong, active, stout, good *Souldiers* both on foot and horseback, they are very industrious, laborious and ingenious, especially in *Mechanical Arts*; very courteous to strangers, &c.

the *Women* are very discreet and modest. The *Christian Faith* was first planted among them by *Angelarius* Archbishop of *Breme*, the general Apostle of the North.

The Revenues of the Crown of *Sweden* must needs be great, there being three ways allowed him for the receiving it, as, First, the *Tenhs* out of all encrease of *Commodities*, as well those of growth, as otherwise. Secondly, *Costomes* upon all goods either exported, or imported in all his *haven* towns. And thirdly, the revenue of the *Church* which was seized on, and incorporated to the Crown, by *Custavus Ericus*, which were very large, out of which there is yet allowance to the *Bishops* and *Clergy*. And besides these ways, he hath power of imposing of *Taxes*, in the times of War, more or less, according to the urgency of his occasions. Also upon the *Marriage* of a *Daughter*, the Kingdóm is to provide her portion, which of late times hath been settled to a certain summe, to wit, 100000 *Dollers*, besides *plate* and *moveables*. All which amounteth to a vast revenue.

In his forces both by *Sea* and *Land*, he is very strong and powerful, being able to put out to *sea* about 100 sail of *Men of War*, and by *Land* to raise an army of a very considerable body, as by the Army that *Custavus Adolphus* brought into *Germany*, consisting of about 34000 foot, and 1200 horse. His *Souldiers* are brought up to great hardiness, are very obedient to their Commanders, and ready to venture their lives, though upon never so dangerous a design, nor is the King slack in his favours to them, according to their deserts, giving them victuals on free cost, besides their pay, also if a *hirsman* looeth his *horse* in service, the King provideth him with another, and if any *Souldier* is taken prisoner the King gives his ransom.

As to the deciding of *Controversies*, &c. every *Territory* hath its *Vicount*, every *Province* its *Lamen*, and every *Parish* its *Lanasmán* or *Consul*; to decide their *Controversies*: and there lyeth an Appeal from the *Lanasmán* to the *Vicount*, and from the *Vicount* to the *Lamen*, who if they be suspected to be bribed, or to give an unjust Sentence, there the Appeal lieth to the *Council*, and from the *Council* of *Estate* to the King, who alone decideth the same.

And thus much for *Swedeland*.

MOSCO-

and modest.  
rated among  
of *Breme*,  
th.

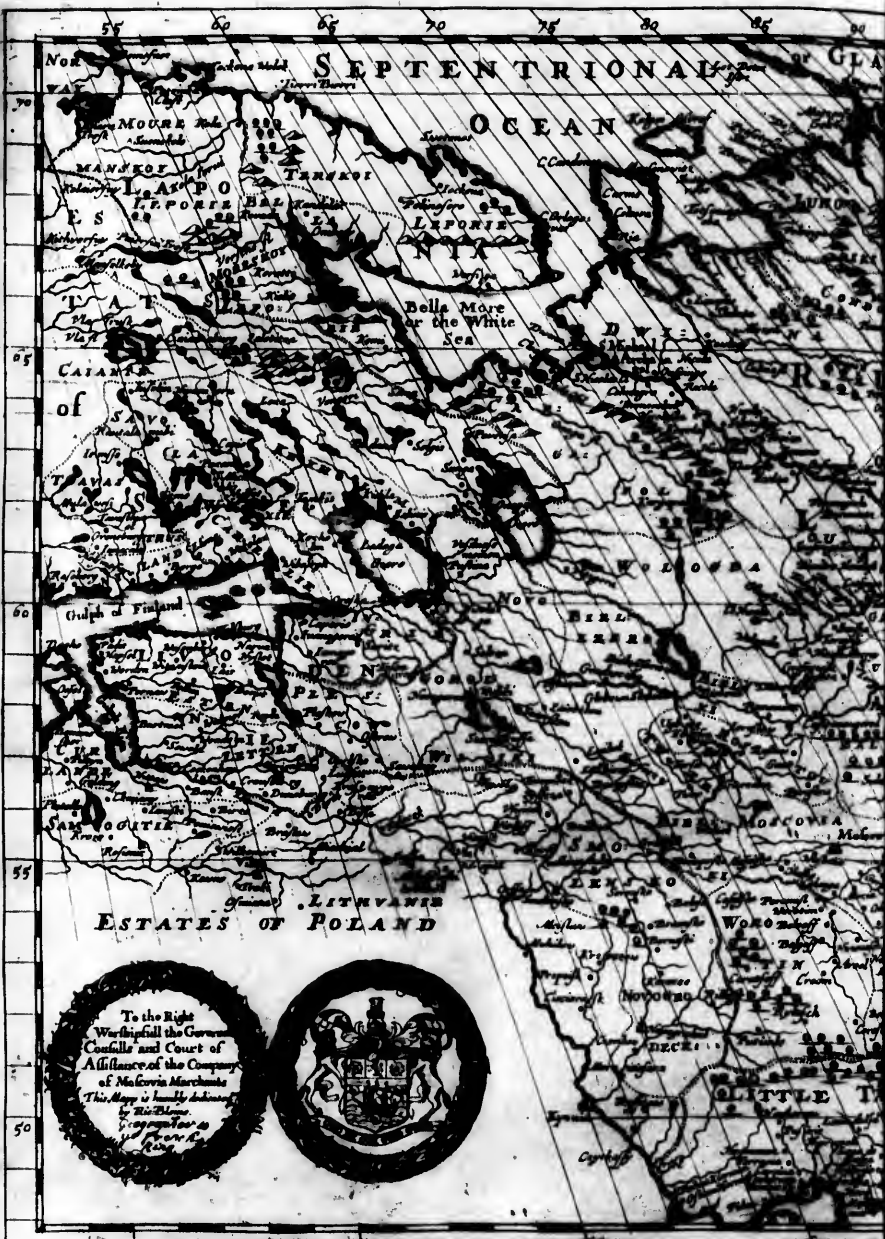
of *Sweden* The King  
has of the  
King his  
resid.  
being three  
ceiving it,  
all encrease  
growth, as  
upon all  
sorted in all  
the revenue  
on, and in-  
*Custavus*  
ge, out of  
to the *Bi*-  
these ways,  
of *Taxes*, in  
s, according  
sions. Also  
ughter, the  
ortion, which  
led to a cer-  
*Dollers*, be-  
All which

and *Land*, he is  
being able to  
all of *Men* of  
an *army* of a  
by the *Army*  
ight into *Ger*-  
34000 foot,  
s are brought  
y obedient to  
dy to venture  
ver so dange-  
ng slack in his  
to their de-  
on free cost,  
*seman* looseth  
ing provideth  
ny *Souldier* is  
ives his ran-

Controversies,  
*Pitants*, every  
very *Pitish* its  
de their *Con*-  
h an *Appeal*  
*Pitants*, and  
*amen*, who if  
bribed, or to  
there the *Ap*-  
and from the  
ng, who alone

Swedeland.

MOSCO-



A MAP OF THE ESTATES, OF THE GREAT DUKESIA, BY  
 Sanfon, Geographer to the French King; and Rendred into English by J. Blome.





T DUK...SSIA, BLANCH, OR MOSCOVIA, Designed by Mounce  
 d into En...ic: Blome. By his Majesties Espetial Command. London Printed for Ric...  
 1675

RUS

**M**OSCOW  
a Province of  
*Sarmatia* of  
vided into  
*matia Asiatica*  
*Moscorum* in  
Western to  
hath made  
esteem *Moscow*  
in *Europe* -  
either all in  
rather in *Europe*  
part of all is  
*Russia*, or *Catharica*  
that side este  
that if *Moscow*  
*Europe*, *Europe* w  
of the two  
nent.

The *Est*  
prehend *Th*  
*Dutchies*, or *F*  
*People*, or *N*  
*Communitie*  
populous as  
frequented by  
not give so  
*vinces* and  
word or two  
with *Moscow*

1. T... D  
*COPIA*, et  
the largest *P*  
seated in the  
called from  
seated on a R  
the *Imperial*  
the *Patriarch*  
accounted 9  
in *Anno* 1571  
now it is not  
with 16 Ch  
are made of  
of the *Houfes*  
*Palace* of the  
heart of the C  
fortified with

MOSCOVIA,  
OR,  
RUSSIA ALBA.

**M**OSCOVY, or RUSSIA ALBA (so called by this last name to distinguish it from *Russia nigra*, a Province of Poland) answers for the whole *Sarmatia* of the Ancients, which they divided into *Sarmatia Europiana*, and *Sarmatia Asiatia*; The more Eastern part of *Moscovy* answering to this last, and the more Western to the former. This distinction hath made some moderna Authors to esteem *Moscovy* partly in *Asia*, and partly in *Europe*: but the most able esteem it either all in *Asia*, or all in *Europe*, and rather in *Europe*, either because the best part of all is on *Europe* side, or because the *Kaiz*, or *Czar* of that Country resides on that side esteemed in *Europe*, or because, that if *Moscovy* were separated from *Europe*, *Europe* would be too unequal in regard of the two other parts of our Continent.

The Estates of *MOSCOVY* comprehend Three Kingdoms, about Thirty *Dutchies*, or *Provinces*, and about Twenty *Peoples*, or *Nations*, who live by *Herds* or *Commodities*. This Country is not so populous as spacious, neither is it much frequented by strangers, therefore I cannot give so ample an account of its *Provinces* and *Nations* as I would: but a word or two of some of the chief, and first with *Moscovia*.

1. The Dutchy or Province of *MOSCOVIA*, especially so called, is one of the largest *Provinces* in all *Asia*, and seated in the midst of this large Estate, so called from *Mosco* its Metropolis: City, seated on a River so called, dignified with the *Imperial seat*, as also with the *See* of the *Patriarch*. This City formerly was accounted 9 or 10 miles in circuit, but in *Anno 1571*, the *Tartar* fired it, so that now it is not above five miles, it is adorned with 26 Churches, of which about half are made of Wood and Dirt, as are most of the Houses: it is very populous. The *Palace* of the great *Duke* is seated in the heart of the City, a large Structure well fortified with 17 *Turrets*, and three great

*Talwarks*, which are always guarded with about 3000 souldiers, which with two *Castles* seated in the outward parts of this City is its onely defence, being without a Wall or Ditch. The *Commodities* of this City are the product of the Kingdom or Empire, of which more anon.

*Commodities* most vendible here are, *Cloth*, *Stuffs*, *Kerfies*, with all sorts of

10 *English Commodities* in small quantities.

*Coyns* here currant is a *Cuppeck*; which is worth a *silver stamish*. 10 *Cuppecks* is a *Grevene*, which is of the same value with a *shilling sterling*. 10 *Grevenes* is a *Rubbe*, which is 10 *shill. English*, and 3 *Cuppecks* make an *Altine*, and by these *Coyns* they keep their *Accounts*. But of late the Empire of *Russia* hath lessned his Standard, so that now their *Cuppeck* is not worth an

20 *English penny*, nor their *Rubbe* above 8 *shill. sterling*.

Their *Weight* is a *Zlotneck*, of which 96 make a *Pound*, and 40 li. make a *Food*, and 10 *Food* a *Berrevet*, so that their *Food* is 35 li. *English*.

Their *Measure* of length is called an *Archine*, which is about 27 *Inches* in circa, so that 200 *Archines* are found to make about 75 yards *English*. Its other chief Places are *Nitro*, *Slaboda*, and *Osther*.

2. The Dutchy of *WOLODOMIRE* is very fertile in *Corn*; its chief City being so called, once dignified with the Residence of the great *Duke* till removed to *Mosco*, from which it is 36 Leagues distant: now dignified with an *Episcopal See*, and more towards the *Volga*.

3. The Province of *DIVINA* is of a large extent, but very barren, the chief place in this Province is called *Dwine*, seated on a River so called, which falls into the Northern Ocean. And on the mouth of the said River, on the sea-side, and in this Province is the City of *S<sup>t</sup> Michael*, (commonly called *Archangel*;) a place famous for its trade of rich *furs*, *Caviars*, and other *Commodities* found in this Estate, as hereafter I shall have occasion to speak of; a place well known by the *English Merchants*, where they have fixed their Staple for these parts.

4. The Province of *NOVOGRODECK* is neither so hot, nor fertile as that of *Moscovia*, by reason of its Northern situation, it is a Province of a large extent, its chief place bears the same name, situate on the River *Naf*, dignified with an *Episcopal See*; a City which for saltness and largeness, (by some said to be as big

as Rome) may compare with any in *Russia*, or other Northern Countreys, once of great repute, being one of the four ancient *Metropolises* of Europe for the trade of *Moscowia*, but of late much decayed, since the finding out of a North-East Passage to the *Town* or Port of *S. Nicholas*, which is found more convenient for the *Moscowian* trade.

5. The *Dutchy* of *PLESCOW* is said to be about 350 *Italian* miles in length, and 230 in breadth: its chief City takes its name from the *Province* being so called, a large, fair, and the only walled City in this Empire, seated on a Lake of the same name, a place of great strength, very populous, and dignified with an *Episcopal* See.

6. The *Province* of *TIVER*, is a fair and fertile Countrey, lying on Banks of the River *Volga*, and exceeding populous: its chief place being so called, dignified with the See of a *Bishop*, which for Beauty and largeness may compare with *Moscow*, from which it is distant about 140 miles.

7. The *Dutchy* of *REZAN* is so fertile that its fellow cannot be found in all these parts, yielding Corn to admiration, also plenty of the best fruits of all *Russia*; together with good store of *Fish* and *Fowl*. Its chief City also bears the same name, seated on the River *Occa*, dignified with an *Episcopal* See. The whole *Province* is very populous, and well inhabited; its other places are *Coloma*, *Casira*, *Odojon* and *Colaga*, places of some account.

8. The *Province* of *WOROTIN*, so called from its chief City, seated on the River *Occa*, defended by a strong *Castle*.

9. 10. The *Dutchy* of *RESCHOWA* also takes its name from its chief City, as doth the *Dutchy* of *Bielki* from *Bielka*.

11. The *Province* of *PERMIE* is of a large extent; its chief City bears the same name, and is seated on the River of *Vishara*, which after 15 Leagues course, disburthens it self in the *Kam*.

12. The *Province* of *WIATHKA* is a barren and woody Countrey, and much pestered with the incursions of the *Crimen Tartars*. Its chief place also beareth the name of the *Province*.

13. The *Province* or *Dutchy* of *SMOLENSKO* is so called from its chief City, which is seated on the River *Nisiper*, on whose banks is a *Citadel*, strongly fortified with good *Ditches*, great *chains*, &c. which renders it a place of great strength.

14. The *Province* of *PETZORA* is seated on all sides by lofty Mountains and Rocks. Its chief place takes its name from the *Province*, seated on a River so called, near its fall into the Sea. And on these Mountains are found excellent *Hanks* and *Sables* which bring some profit to the inhabitants.

15. The *Province* of *OBODORIE* is called from the River *Oby*, on both sides of whose banks it lyeth, some towns here are, but those that are, are not worth the naming, the inhabitants, who are barbarous and idolaters, contenting themselves with sheds or small cottages.

The other *Provinces* in this Empire are *FAROSLAW*, *ROSTHOW*, *SUSDAL*, *BIELEFEZBRO*, *USTINGHA*, *NISNOGORED*, *OSTINGA*, &c. whose chief Cities bear the same name with their *Province*.

Besides these *Provinces* the grand Duke of *Moscow* holds at present towards *Asia* the Kingdoms of *CASAN*, *BULGARIA* and *ASTRACAN*.

*Casan* a Kingdom in *Tartaria* deserta, whose chief place is so called, being seated upon the River *Volga*, now dignified with the Seat of a *Bishop*, as is the Kingdom of *Bulgaria*, whose chief place is so called.

*Astracan* South-East of *Casan*, lying on the River *Volga*, which after its course of about 2000 *Italian* miles dividing it self into more than 70 branches, discharges it self in the *Caspian* Sea. Its chief *Town* taking its name of the Kingdom, a place of great trade, especially by the *Armenians*, by reason of its commodious situation on one of the branches of the River *Volga*, about 20 *Italian* miles from the *Caspian* Sea.

The whole Estate of the great Duke of *Moscow* is of a larger extent than any other in *Europe*; stretching it self 5 or 600 Leagues, and sometimes more in breadth and length: reaching from the 48 degree of *Latitude* unto the 70 or 71; and from the 50<sup>th</sup> of *Longitude* unto the 100<sup>th</sup> and sometimes to the 120<sup>th</sup>.

*Moscow* hath its Estates bounded on the East all along by the Great *Tartaria* which is in *Asia*, & beyond the Rivers *Volga* & *Oby*: on the South with the *Caspian* sea, and divers people which are between the *Caspian* and the *Euxine* or *Black* sea, to wit, the *Circassi*, the *Patigori*; and then the *Peit Tartars* which are about the sea of *Zabague*: on the North by the *Septentrional* or *Frozen* Ocean, which is called

*Maurice*  
*zuke-mor*  
*Niaren-m*  
Vest it  
longs to  
by the E

The Count  
eth for M  
ny sorts, as  
Squirrels,  
Black Fox  
Hemp, Fl  
and other  
Fine Lin  
Pitch, Ca  
morfe-Tre  
Raw-hides,  
rich Pastur  
with many  
the Count  
Stags, Bea  
Linxes, Hal  
as Pheasants,  
Geese, and  
Thrushes, L  
Small Birds  
most sorts o  
lent Fruit  
Plums, Cher  
Melons, Cow  
lick, Aspar  
&c.

The Air is  
in the Wind  
great frosts,  
take off the  
serv'd from  
and in other  
and in Trav  
Horses on t  
so with Clo  
And as the  
Summer is a  
Sun being a  
Horizon.

The Coun  
Lakes, and th  
in Europe;  
*Bielka*, *Osera*,  
North, the  
now-Osera,  
South.

Here are  
the most re  
so well clo  
the rays o  
through a  
of wild Bea  
tations.

Maur-

ZORA Mountains its name River so And on sent Hawks of to the ORIE both sides of ns here are, th the na- barbarous selves with Empire are SUSDAL, A, NISI- &c. whose name with grand Duke towards Asia HUNGARIA ria deserta, being seated Kingdom of o called. Casan, lying er its course dividing it hes, dischar- ca. Its chief Kingdom, a y by the Ar- commodious si- es of the Ri- tiles from the e great Duke ent than any it self 5 or nes more in ng from the he 70 or 72; ide unto the 110<sup>th</sup>. ounded on the araria which Volga & Ob: sea, and dis- in the Caspian , to wit, the men the Pen the sea of Za- e Septentrio- ick is called Naure-

Manremankoi more, towards Norway, Pet- zike-more, on the Coast of Moscovy, and Naren-more towards Tartary: And on the VWest it is bounded by Norway, which be- longs to the King of Denmark, and then by the ERates of Sweden and Poland.

The Commodities that this Empire yield- eth for Merchandize, are, rich Furrs of ma- ny sorts, as Sables, Otters, Martins, Ermines, Squirrels, Beavers, Minikins, Red, White and Black Foxes, &c. Also Pot-ashes, store of Hemp, Flax, Honey, Wax, Cable, Tarne, and other Cordage, Feathers, Course and Fine Linnen Cloth, Train-Oyle, Resin, Pitch, Caviare, Tallow, Iron, Salt, Sea- morse-Teeth, Astracan-hides, Tan-d-Hides, Ram-hides, Dry-d-Fish, also in many places rich Pastures, and great increase of Grains, with many other good Commodities. All the Country hath many Cattel, Elkes, Stags, Beares, Walvets, Venison, Tigers, Linxes, Hares, &c. Also all sorts of Fowle, as Pheasants, Partridges, Heath-cocks, Wild- Geese, and Ducks, Swans, Herons, Quails, Thrushes, Larkes, with abundance of other small Birds in great plenty. They have most sorts of Fish except Carps and excel- lent Fruit and Rootes, as Apples, Pears, Plums, Cherries, Gooseberries, Strawberriest, Melons, Cucumbers, Gourds, Onions, Gar- lick, Asparagus, Potherbes, and Rootes, &c.

The Air is exceeding sharp and piercing in the Winter, and subject to excessive great frosts, which (as some say) would take off their Noses, were they not pre- serv'd from the piercing cold by furs; and in other houses they make use of stoves; and in Travelling, of Sledges drawn by Horses on the Ice, covering themselves so with Cloths, that they feel no cold. And as their Winter is thus cold, their Summer is as hot and troublesome, the Sun being always as it were above their Horizon.

The Country hath every where many Lakes, and those of as large an extent as any in Europe; as those of Ladoga, Omega, Nela, Osera, Ilmen, and others towards the North, those of Resanshy-Osera, of Ima- non-Osera, and others towards the South.

Here are many Forests, among which the most renowned is that of Epiphanon, so well clothed with Timber-trees, that the rays of the Sun can scarce dart through; and in these Forests abundance of wild Beasts and Fowle have their habi- tations.

Mountaines here are but few, except those of Roglowi, between Tana and Volga, and those of Camenopii, or Stolp, that is the Pillars of the World: which are towards Pitkora, between the Divine and the Obys; and these are esteemed to be the ancient Mountaines Rhipi, which according to the supposition of the anti- ents bounded the World on one side, as Atlas did on the other.

This Country (according to some) is called the Mother of Rivers, among which the Volga, the Don, or Tana, and the Di- vine, or Divine are the most famous.

The VOLGA is the greatest and noblest River in all Europe, both for its course, and the force of its Waters; it runs for 7 or 800 leagues, receives abundance of other Rivers, as the Occa and Kama, &c. which having wandred 3 or 400 leagues more from their Spring-heads, pay it the Tribute of their VVaters; and before the Volga falls into the Caspian Sea, it di- vides and subdivides it self into so many branches, that there are counted 60 or more: in its course it washes the Cities of Twer and Jaroslaw, where it is half a league wide, also the City of Nis-Novogorod, where it receives the Occa; and is more then a league in breadth, and continues still enlarging it self between Casan and Bulgar, which are not far distant from its streames. It receives the Kama, begins to di- vide it self near Sarisa into divers branch- es, and the City of Astracan is scituate in an Island made by one of the branches of the Volga.

The DON, or TANA of old Tanais, famous, because esteemed by the anti- ents to divide Europe from Asia; it makes the one half of its course from West to East, and the other from East to West; it comes so near the Volga, about the mid- dle of its course, which is the farthest it stretcheth Eastward, that it is not a- bove 12 or 15 leagues from the one and the other; and here is scituate Fosse Ka- monz. It takes its spring from Imanon- Osera, that is, the Lake of John, whence it is not above 200 leagues in a right line, to its mouth; yet takes it 6 or 700 leagues course: It waters no place of note except Asac, or Aloff of old Tanais, which it embraces in an Isle it makes near the place where it disburthens it self into the Sea of Zabaque, of old Palm Mauides. Among those Rivers which it receives is the little Don, or Doners Sewerski, which divides Moscovy from the Pers Tur- tars.

Mountains.

The River Volga.

The River Don.



The River  
Dovine.

The *DOVINE* is formed of 2 Rivers, *Suchana* and *Fuga*, the first begins and passes to *Vologda*, the other falls into the *Suchana* at *Ofinga*, a place of some Trade, where both losing their names, take that of *Dovine*, which signifies *Gods*: they receive likewise the *Witzogda*, which descends from the *Fozgorien Mountains*, washes *St. Michael the Archangel*, where they divide, and glide by 6 or 7 branches into the *Bellamore*, or the *White sea*, which we sometimes call the *Golfe* of *St. Nicholas*, the *City* of that name being at one of the Mouths.

Another  
Lovius.

There is another *DOVINE*, whose higher part only is in *Moscovia*, the middle in *Lithuania* which belongs to *Poland*; and the last in *Livonia*. Its spring is near that of the *Volga*, and not far from that of the *Nieper*: The *Volga* turns towards the East, as this *Dovine* doth towards the VWest, passing by *Vitepsk*, *Polosk*, *Dunen- burg*, and ending at *Danemunde*, that is the mouth of the *Dnue* below *Riga*; a *City* of the greatest commerce of all *Lithuania*.

It was once proposed, to joyne the River *Dovine* with that of *Volga*, and *Volga* with *Tana*, which is very facile, and would open a Communication of the Northern Ocean, with the *Caspian* or *Black-sea*, and facilitate the Commerce of the VWest with the East, and North within Land; but there were yet found divers reasons to obstruct it.

Moscovia  
is not ab-  
solute.

*MOSCOWIA* for the most part is ill inhabited, and particularly towards the North and East; these quarters being cold, full of *Forrests*, and some of their People *Idolaters*. That which is towards *Sweden* and *Poland* is more frequented, more civilized, and its *Cities* better built, though for the most part only of *Wood* and *Earth*. That part which lies towards the South, and in all likelihood should be the best, is partly *Mahometan*, and often infected by the *Petit Tartars*: But a word or two as to the People in (and about) *Mosca*, which by reason of its being the habitation of the *Great Duke*, are supposed to be the most civilized and ingenious, &c.

The *People* are naturally ingenious enough, yet they addict themselves neither to *Arts* or *Sciences*, but chiefly to *Traffick* and *Husbandry*, in which they are very subtle; they are observed to be great *Lyers*, very perfidious, treacherous, distrustful, great *Broakers*, crafty, malicious and re-

vengeful, are quarrelsome, sowing scurrilous Language, and if they come to fighting, it is with their *st*, or *switches*, and the height of their fury is kicking; seldom or never making use of *Sword* or *Pistol*, so that it is rare to hear of men kill'd in Duels, as in other *Countrys*. Their Civility at the best is rude, they are very proud, especially if advanced to Honours; they are not addicted to study the *Arts* and *Sciences*, nor inquire into the *Affaires* of *Forrain Princes*, but on the contrary, much addict themselves to *VWomen* and *Strong Drink*, as do the *Women*, but *Tobacco* is forbidden among them. They are by some esteemed good *Souldiers*: their Houses are but mean, and all furnished; the *Master* and *Mistris*, *Children* and *Servants*, contenting themselves to lye together on *Mats* in stead of *Beds*, sometimes upon *Straw*, in the cold VWinter they lye upon their *Stoves*, and in the heat of *Summer* on *Benches*, or *Tables*. And as their *lodging* is homely, so is their *Dyer*, though they have wherewithal to feed deliciously: they sleep after *Dinner*, and make often use of *Stoves* and *Bathing-houses*; both *VWomen* and *Men* are not ashamed to shew their *Privities* to *strangers*, not caring to hide them, in their going in to the *Stoves*, which are common to *Men* and *VWomen* of all sorts. The *Persons* of *Quality* are known by their *Retime*, *Habit*, and *Expence*, as in other *Nations*; they keep many *Slaves*, most of the poorer sort being no better, nor knowing what *Liberty* is.

Their *Habit* (which they never change) is much the same with the ancient *Greeks*, wearing long *Robes* of *Cloth*, *Sattin*, *Silke*, *Cloth* of *Gold* and *Silver*, which is beset with *Pearles*, according to the quality of the *Person*, under which they wear close *Coates*, which reach down to their knees, and under them *Drawers*; their *Sleeves* are made close to their *Armes*, they girt their *VVaste* about with a piece of *Silk*; on their *Legs* they wear *Bushkins*, and on their heads *Caps* adorned with *Pearles* and *precious Stones*, in stead of *Hats*, which in their *Salutations* they move not, onely bow their *Bodies*. They are for the most part fat and corpulent, esteeming great *Bellies*, and long, broad and great *Beards*; they are strong of *Body*, and of a good proportion. The *VWomen*, though in different handfom, yet make use of *Paint*.

In the performance of their *Nuptial Rites*

The name  
of the  
River of  
Dovine  
copy.

Rites th  
are larg  
in a Bo  
Travels  
Descript  
faith, T  
debarred  
son of t  
allowing  
Streets, o  
especially  
pens, tha  
the Pare  
those tha  
fire to M  
to their li  
his Paren  
business;  
the young  
admitted  
Wedding  
before the  
to his Bri  
things, as  
a Looking  
a *Combe*, a  
there are  
one on the  
ther on the  
take order  
Bed, &c. w  
on 40 Shea  
and compa  
barrels fille  
and *Oates*.  
the *Bridges*  
in the eve  
Friends and  
who is to M  
to the *Brid*  
followers a  
being seate  
are brought  
then, after  
brought in  
for that S  
who places  
to prevent  
sides the  
are parted  
which is he  
the said wo  
Hair in two  
neatly mad  
habits her  
other wom  
Paints the  
a doing, t  
and sing fe

Rites they use many Ceremonies (which are largely treated of by Adam Olearius, in a Book, Entitled, *The Embassadors Travels into Moscow and Persia*) whose Description I shall make use of, wherein he saith, That young Men and Maids, being debarred the society of each other, by reason of the Custom of the Countrey, not allowing Maidens the liberty of the Streets, or sight of young Men at home, especially to converse together; it happens, that no *Marriages* are made but by the Parents; so that the Parents of those that have Daughters which they desire to Marry, seek out a young Man to their liking, which done, they repair to his Parents (if living) and consult the business; and if they agree, they acquaint the young people with it, but they are not admitted the sight of each other. The Wedding day being appointed, the night before the said day, the young Man sends to his Bride some *Cloths* and necessary things, as a *Cabinet* wherein are *Jewels*, a *Looking Glass*, a *bag* for her *Night-Cloths*, a *Combe*, and a *Fur'd Coif*. He saith that there are two *Women* appointed by them, one on the Bridegroom's side, and the other on the Brides, who are jointly to take order for the making of the *Nuptial-Bed*, &c. which Bed he saith is made upon 40 Sheaves of *Rye*, which are ranced and compassed about with a great many barrels filled with Corn, as *Wheat*, *Barly* and *Oates*. All things being made ready, the *Bridegroom* goes from his House late in the evening, accompanied by all his Friends and Relations, having the *Priest* who is to Marry him riding before them, to the *Brides* house, where he and all his followers are kept, and receiv'd in, and being seated at a *Table*, 3 Dishes of *Meat* are brought; but none eates of them; then, after some Ceremonies, the *Bride* is brought in, richly clad, in a fitting dress for that Solemnity by the said *Woman*, who places her by the *Bridegroom*; and to prevent their seeing one another, besides the *Veil* over the *Brides* face, they are parted by a piece of *Crimson Taffety*, which is held by two Youths; which done, the said woman comes to her, tyes up her Hair in two knots, paints her, puts a Crown neatly made and gilded on her head, and habits her like a Married woman; the other woman which was chosen by them, Paints the *Bridegroom*; and whilst this is a doing, the women get up on Benches, and sing several Songs. Then, after se-

veral ridiculous Ceremonies, they go to the *Church*, and before the *Priest* gives them the *Benediction*, he carries them to the *Offering*, which consists of *Fur'd Meats*, *Fish* and *Pastry*: The *Benediction* is given by holding *Images* over their heads, and the *Priest* taking the *Bridegroom* by the right hand, and the *Bride* by the left at one time, and asking them three times, whether they will love one another as *Man* and *Wife* ought to do, and whether it be with their consent, both saying yes, all the Peop'e joyn hands, and Dance, whilst they and the *Priest* sing the 128. *Psalme*, which ended, he puts a Garland of *Rue* about their Heads or *Sho ldrs*, saying, *Increase and multiply*; and then consummating the Marriage, saith, *Whom God hath joyn'd together, let no Man separate*: which words being pronounced, several *Wax Candles* are lighted, and the *Priest* is presented with a *Glass* of *Claret*, and being pledg'd by the Married Couple, he throws down the *Glass*, and he and the *Bride* treads it under their feet, and breaks it in pieces, saying, *May they thus fall at our feet, and be trodden to pieces, wh. shall endeavour to sow discontent between us*. Then after several Ceremonies, the *Bride* is put in a *Sledge*, and drawn to the *Bridegrooms* house, where the wedding is kept, and he following her on horseback, and as soon as they are come, the said *Woman* conducts the *Bride* to her Chamber, undresses her, and layes her in Bed; during which time the *Bridegroom* and his friends are seated at a *Table* well-furnished with Meate, the *Bride* being laid in her bed, the *Woman* doth fetch the *Bridegroom* from the *Table*, who is accompanied with about 8 young men, bearing in their hands lighted *Torches*, to conduct him to the Chamber, which being entred, they put them in the said Barrels of *Corne*, and void the Room, being each of them presented with a *Martins Skins*, the *Bride* perceiving him coming gets out of the Bed, putting a *Gown* about her, and receives him very submissively, and this is the first time he hath the sight of her face: Then they sit down at a *Table*, and having eaten, they go to Bed; all quitting the Room; and at the door is placed one of the old Servants, who often comes to the door, and demands whether the Business be done, and when he saith it is, the *Timbrels*, *Trumpets*, &c. (waiting for that word) Play, till such time as the *Stoves* are made ready; where they bathe themselves, but a-

part; and the two next dayes are spent in *dancing, Entertainments,* and pleasant Re-creations, and these, or the like, are the *Ceremonies* observed by the greater sort, but for *Citizens and Persons* of a meaner degree, less *Ceremonies* are used, and those with less state and cost.

The *wedding* being past, the Bride betakes her self to a retired condition, being not often permitted the liberty of the Streets: neither do their Husbands (especially the richer sort,) care they should be brought up to *Honour*, so that they bestow their time in idleness, and playing with their Maids, as (swinging on *Ropes*, tumbling up and down, and the like sports, with which their Husbands are well pleased; And as some say, they are not well contented, unless their Husbands give them beating, being like *Spaniels*, the more they are beaten, the better they love.

*Divorcements* are frequent amongst them, for when they have a desire to part, they accuse her of *adultery*, or want of *Devotion*, by suborning of false witnesses, by which they are condemned, without answering for themselves.

Their *Religion* is of the same with the *Greek Church*, of which they are a member, but it is full of abundance of superstition, as considering the *Virgin Mary*, the *Evangelists*, the *Apostles*, with abundance of other *Saints*, not onely as simple intercessors, but also co-operators, and causes of their *Salvation*, giving to their *Saints* and *Images* the same honour as is due onely unto *God*. They differ from the *Romish* and *Reformed Churches* in several points, as, 1. Forbidding extream *Uction*, *Confirmation*, and fourth *Marriages*. 2. Denying the *holy Ghost* to proceed from the *Father* and the *Son*. 3. Denying *Purgatory*, but allowing of *Praying* for the *Dead*. 4. They hold it unlawful to fast on *Saturdays*. 5. They reject graven or carved *Images*, but allow of the painted. 6. They observe four *Lents* every year. 7. Communicating in both kinds, but mixing warm water with the *Wine*, and using leavened *Bread*, which they distribute both together with a *Spoon*. 8. They admit of *Children* of seven years of age to come to the *Sacrament*. 9. They admit of none to *Orders*, but such as are married, and forbidding the same to those that are in *equal Orders*, and 10. believing that holy men before the *Resurrection*, enjoy not the presence of *God*. And for these, and the like tenents, there is a great feud

and hatred between them and the *Papists*.

The *Moscovites* suffer all *Nations* to live amongst them in quietness, giving *Toleration* to all sorts of *Religions*, except *Jews* and *Papists*, whom they will not permit amongst them.

They are great Observers of *Festival days*, of which they have abundance; there being scarce a day that comes but is the particular *feast* of some *Saints*, and sometimes of two or three, all which are not observed, save by the *Priests*, who are obliged to say the *Office* of that day. But their great *Festival-days* are strictly observed, as also *Sundays*, on which days they go to *Church* thrice a day, their Service consisteth in reading of *Chapters* and *Psalms* out of the *Bible*, saying, or rather singing, of certain *Prayers*, *S Athanasius's Creed*, together with a Homily out of *S' Chrysostome*. They are such great adorners of the *Cross*, that they will undertake no business, neither eat nor drink, before they have first made the sign of the *Cross*; also they are as great Worshippers of painted *Images*, there being scarce a family that hath them not in their houses, and which to their greater *Devotion*, they place about the Walls of their Churches, directing their *Prayers* to them, as if there were something of *Divinity* in them. And these *Images* are adorned with *Pearls* and *precious Stones*, according to the quality of the Person that oweth it; and if it happen that any Person is excommunicated, both he and his *Images* are not allowed the liberty of the Churches, which they account as holy, not admitting strangers to enter into them, for fear of prophaning them; their Churches are round and vaulted like a *Dove-house*, imitating *Heaven*, in which they have neither seat nor bench, their *Devotion* being performed either standing or kneeling, and over the *Door* of their Churches are also placed *Images*. In their *Communions* they hold *Transubstantiation*.

They are very strict observers of *Fasts*, of which they have a great many, besides every *Wednesday* and *Friday* throughout the year, on which days they will not eat any kind of *flesh*, nor that which comes from it.

The same Author saith, that in their *Funerals* they observe several *Ceremonies*, as, so soon as the sick person is deceased, they send for all his *Relations* and *Friends*, who come and stand by him, and lament his loss, in a howling tone, demanding why he would die? whether he wanted any thing?

Divorcements.

Their Religion.

The Cree-  
monies ob-  
served in  
the Mos-  
covian

The first  
of which  
they use  
in Com-  
muni-  
on.

Their

Their

thing  
handfo  
like ri  
to the  
dromel  
soul of  
being e  
deceale  
him, as  
kins on  
Coffin,  
in their  
the prie  
then fol  
the near  
make a  
lows the  
all his F  
come to  
is unco  
certain P  
the Corps  
Friends k  
him in  
which the  
piece of F  
S' Peter,  
Metropol  
clared wh  
ence to th  
his Mouth  
red, and th  
always to  
ing their D  
return to t  
they Dine  
fort to th  
much of  
afflictions  
and for th  
ther of the  
fourty day  
three Feas  
ceased.  
Their B  
sists of a  
of the Chu  
hath unde  
Archbishops  
popes and P  
They h  
tance, info  
Children so  
mance of v  
Ceremonie  
the Church  
mothers w  
Church do  
and figs i

thing? whether his wife was young and handsome, or unconstant unto him? or the like ridiculous questions. Also they send to the *Priest* a present of *Aqua-vita*, *Hydromel*, and *Beer*, that he may pray for the soul of the deceased; their Lamentations being ended, they wash the body of the deceased, put a clean shift and shroud about him, as also a pair of new *Shoes* or *Buskins* on his feet, and then lay him in the *Coffin*, which is covered with a cloth, then in their carrying him to Church, first goes the *Priest* who bears the *Image* of his *Saint*, then follow four *Virgins* (as Mourners) of the nearest kin, which with their howling make a horrid noise; next to these follows the *Corps* carried by Six men, and then all his *Friends* and *Acquaintance*, being come to the grave (he saith) the *Coffin* is uncovered, and whilst the *Priest* saith certain Prayers, the said *Image* is held over the *Corps*, then his *Wife*, *Relations*, and *Friends* kissing him, take their farewell of him in grievous Lamentations: after which the *Priest* puts between his fingers a piece of *Paper*, which is a *Pais*, directed to *S<sup>t</sup>. Peter*, signed by the *Patriarch*, or the *Metropolitan* of the place, wherein is declared what he is, how he lived in obedience to the *Church*, &c. as also a *Peny* in his Mouth, after which the *Coffin* is covered, and the *Corps* interred, with his face always to the East: then the People doing their Devotions to the *Images*, they return to the house of the deceased, where they Dine, and in giving advice and comfort to the widow, oft-times take too much of the Creature, drowning their afflictions in *Aqua vita*, and *Hydromel*: and for the loss of a *Husband*, or any other of their *Relations*, they usually mourn forty days, in which time they make three *Fasts* for the *Friends* of the deceased.

Their Ecclesiastical Government consists of a *Patriarch*, which is the Head of the Church, and as it were *Pope*, who hath under him several *Metropolitans*, *Archbishops*, *Bishops*, *Archdeacons*, *Protopopes* and *Priests*.

They hold *Baptisme* of great importance, inasmuch that they baptize their *Children* so soon as born, in the performance of which they make use of many Ceremonies, first, the *Child* is carried to the Church by the *Godfathers* and *Godmothers* who answer for it, and at the Church door the *Priest* meets them, and signs it with the sign of the Cross

in the forehead, and gives it the *Benediction*, saying, *The Lord preserve thy coming in, and going out*. And being entered the Church, the *Godfathers* give the *Priest* nine wax *Candles*, which he lights and places about the *Font* cross-wise; then he consecrates the water, and uses many Ceremonies, going round about the *Font* three times with the *Godfathers*, who carry wax *Lights* in their hands, before whom goes the *Clark* bearing the *Image* of *Saint John*, during which time he reads certain things fit for the occasion out of a *Book*; then he demands the *Child*: Name of the *Godfathers*, who delivers it to him in Writing, and after he hath asked them several questions, as Whether they promise to bring him up in the true *Greek Religion*, whether the *child* forsakes the *devil* and his works, or the like questions; he takes the *child*, being naked, in his arms, and dips him three times into the water, saying, *I baptise thee in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Ghost*. Then he puts a corn of *Salt* in its mouth, and makes the sign of the Cross in the forehead, as also upon the breast, hands and back, with consecrated *Oyle*, onely for that use, and after he hath put a clean Shift on the *child*, saying, *Thou art as clean and as clear from thy Original sin* (which they believe all children to be born with) as *this Shirt*: he ties about its Neck a little *Cross* of *Silver*, *Gold*, or *Lead*, according to the Parents ability: the wearing of which is so strictly charged that those who are found without it, when they are dead, are denied *Christian burial*. And lastly, the *Priest* assigns the *child* a particular *Saint*, the *Image* of which he delivers to the *Godfathers*, with charge, that they instruct the *child* to have a devotion to his *Saint*: and if it happen that through weakness the *child* cannot be brought to the Church, then they christen it at the Parents house, but not in the same room it was born in.

The Grand Duke of *Moscovia* is absolute Lord both of the *Lives* and *Estates* of his *Subjects*, whom he treats no better than *Slaves*, his chiefest aim being for what he can get, more than the good and welfare of his people; he is not subject to *Laws*, but onely makes them, which are so well obeyed, (though never so tyrannical) that none offers to oppose him; he alone hath the power to make *War* or *Peace* with other Nations, yet he will seem to take advice from his *Knez* and *Bojares*,

e *Papists*.  
Nations to  
is, giving  
ons, except  
y will not

of *Festival*  
ance; there  
but is the  
and some-  
ich are not  
who are ob-  
t day. But  
tly obser-  
days they  
their Service  
apters and  
ng, or rather  
Athanasius's  
mly out of  
h great ad-  
ill undertake  
drink, before  
of the *Cross*,  
ostlappers of  
g scarce a fa-  
their houses,  
er Devotion,  
alls of their  
ayers to them,  
of Divinity in  
are adorned  
ones, according  
on that oweth  
any Person is  
and his *Images*  
the Churches,  
not admitting  
m, for fear of  
Churches are  
ove-house, imi-  
ey have neither  
tion being per-  
kneeling, and  
urches are also  
Communion

on.  
rveys of *Fasts*,  
many, besides  
throughout the  
will not eat any  
comes from it.  
that in their  
al Ceremonies,  
on is deceased,  
as and *Friends*,  
ign, and lament  
emanding why  
he wanted any  
thing?

The Cer-  
emony is  
performed  
in the  
Church

The form  
of which  
is used in  
the Church

The  
Ceremony

The  
Ceremony

The  
Ceremony

The Grand  
Duke  
power  
to levy  
taxes, &c.

Rojares, who are as his Privy Council: he appoints *Governours, Magistrates, and Lieutenants* for the *Provinces*, for the administration of *Justice, &c.* whom he deposes, or punishes at his pleasure; he confers *honour* to such as please him, or merits it by some noble, eminent or good service: His *Revenues and Riches* cannot but be exceeding much, as well because of the gold, silver, precious stones, &c. carried thither (all which are brought into this *Country*) which he possesses, and preserves in his *Treasury*; as because he disposes absolutely of the *Goods and Estates* of his *Subjects*, by illegal *Taxes*, besides his just *Revenue in Lands*, besides that which ariseth by *Customs, &c.*

He is *Apparelled* like a *King* and a *Bishop*, wearing with the *Royal Robes*, a *Miter*, and a *Crozier Staff*, and observeth a great deal of *State* in his attendance, having abundance of several *Officers* as other *Princes* have.

And thus much for *Moscovia*.

The BRITISH ISLES,  
wherein are the Kingdoms  
of ENGLAND,  
SCOTLAND, and  
IRELAND.

THE BRITISH ISLES under one and the same name, form a body of many and divers *Isles*, situate in the *Ocean*, between the Northern and Western parts of *Europe*. Of these *Isles*, there is one very large, another of a less extent, and a great many small ones; the greatest was first called *ALBION*, ab *alpis inipibus*, from its white Cliffs, afterwards for its excellency *BRITANIA MAJOR*, and now *GREAT BRITAIN*; and the next or lesser was first called *HIVERNIA*, and now *IRELAND*.

The Greatest comprehends two Kingdoms, viz. *ENGLAND* and *SCOTLAND*, this making the most Northern part of the *Ile*. that the most Southern,

and approacheth so near to *France*, that from *Dover* to *Calais* its passage is not above seven or eight *Leagues*; and all the Southern Coast of *England* not distant from *Picardy, Normandy, and Bretagne* above 15, 20, or 25 *Leagues*.

*IRELAND* is West of *Great Britain*, and makes one Kingdom. The little neighbouring *Isles* are comprehended under one or the other of the three Kingdoms, according to the contiguity with them.

All these *Isles* have received great changes in their *Governments* since they were first known. They were possessed by divers *people* independant the one upon the other, before the *Romans* set foot here, who possessed themselves of the most Southern part of *Great Britain*, now called *England*, and sometimes of a part of *Scotland*, but never had any thing to do in *Ireland*.

After the *Romans*, the *English Saxons* seized that better part which had been possessed by the *Romans*, and established seven Kingdoms, to wit,

1. The Kingdom of *KENT*, where is onely the County of *Kent*.

2. The Kingdom of the *SOUTH SAXONS*, which contained the Counties of *Surrey* and *Suffex*.

3. The Kingdom of the *EAST-ANGLES*, which contained the Counties of *Norfolk, Suffok, and Cambridge-shire*.

4. The Kingdom of the *EAST-SAXONS*, which contained the Counties of *Essex, Middlesex, and Hertford-shire*.

5. The Kingdom of the *WEST-SAXONS*, which contained the Counties of *Cornwall, Devon-shire, Somerset-shire, Wilt-shire, Hamp-shire, Dorset-shire, Berkshire*.

6. The Kingdom of the *NORTHUMBERS*, which contained the Counties of *Tork-shire, Lancashire, Durham, Cumberland, Westmorland, and Northumberland*.

7. The Kingdom of *MERCIA*, which contained the Counties of *Huntington-shire, Buckingham-shire, Bedford-shire, Rutland-shire, Northampton-shire, Leicestershire, Lincoln-shire, Nottingham-shire, Derby-shire, Oxford-shire, Gloucester-shire, Worcester-shire, Warwick-shire, Stafford-shire, Cheshire, Shropshire, and Hereford-shire*.

*EGBERT* the 15<sup>th</sup> King of these *WEST-SAXONS* having subdued the principal Kingdoms of the *Saxons Heptarchy*, styled himself the first *Monarch*, and

The Government of these Isles is not divided into great changes.

The division of these Kingdoms is not to be taken as a permanent division.

Source of England and Scotland.

The source of the English.



ance, that  
age is not  
and all  
not di-  
, and Bre-  
gues.

eat Britain,  
The little  
hended un-  
three King-  
iguity with

ceived great  
since they  
e possessed  
e one upon  
ns set foot  
ves of the  
Britain, now  
es of a part  
ny thing to

The Ge-  
vements  
of the  
lles & se  
received  
great  
changes.

nglish Saxons  
h had been  
d established

The date  
of the  
according  
to the  
Saxon  
History.

NT, where is

e SOUTH  
the Counties

the EAST-  
the Counties  
bridge-shire.

the EAST-  
the Counties  
ford-shire.

the WEST-  
the Counties  
Somerset-shire,  
ts-shire, Berk-

NORTHUM-  
e Counties of  
rham, Cum-  
Northumber-

ERCIA, which  
of Huntingdon-  
ford-shire, Rut-  
shire, Leicesters-  
ham-shire, Dar-  
ter-shire, War-  
Stafford-shire,  
Leicestershire.

King of these  
ing subdued the  
e Saxons Hep-  
first Monarch,  
and

The De-  
scent  
from  
England



A  
**GENERALL MAPP  
 OF THE ISLES OF GREAT  
 BRITTAINE, DESIGNED  
 BY MONSIEUR SANSON,  
 GEOGRAPHER TO THE  
 FRENCH KING. & RENDERED  
 INTO ENGLIS<sup>H</sup> & ILLUSTRATE<sup>D</sup>  
 BY RIC. BLOME. BY HIS  
 MAIESTIS ESPECIAL  
 COMMAND.**

London.  
*Printed for Ric Blome  
 1663*

To the most August, Charles the 2<sup>d</sup> by the grace of God  
 King of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland,  
 defender of the Faith; &c  
*this Mapp with all humility is Consecrated  
 by your Majestes Obedient subject & Servant  
 Ric: Blome*

T A L



T H E

O C I

D E N

S E

Barra  
 Barra M  
 S<sup>t</sup> Kild

Berry  
 Erck

COUN  
 Rannald  
 Rapho  
 DERNAGALL  
 COUN OF TY  
 FERMANAGH  
 LE COUN  
 SLECO  
 TRIM  
 OF CAVAN

59

58

57

56

55



# SEPTEN



# THE











OCEAN

T

G

M

# ISLES of SCHETLAND

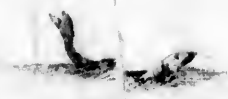


Fayre I

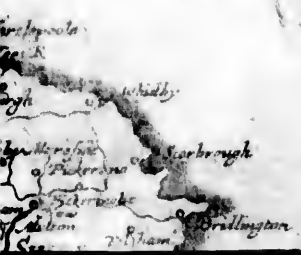
# T H E



# G E R



# M A I N



defendor of the Faith; &c  
this Mapp with all humility is Consecrated  
by your Majesties Obedient subject & Servant  
Ric: Blome

55

T A L

54

O C E A N

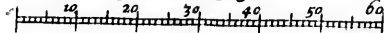
52

51

50

5

A Scale of 60. English Miles



Francis Lamb Sculp

6

7

8

9

10

11

12









**THE** The Gulf of Man

**IRISH**

**SEA**

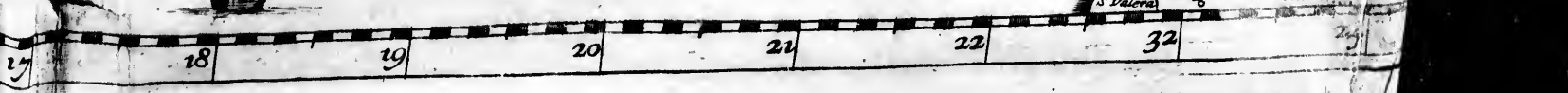
**THE**

12 13 14 15 16 17 18





# THE BRITISH SEA





and co  
 Britan  
 English  
 ed. S  
 the Da  
 upon th  
 were of  
 storie  
 sby of  
 held by  
 Saxons  
 ed the  
 continu  
 The a  
 lings  
 part of  
 the Pr  
 had the  
 defende  
 but wer  
 Quarter  
 united i  
 dest Sor  
 hath ev  
 dest Sor  
 ENG  
 land by  
 Line be  
 other  
 with W  
 from th  
 ceter to  
 of Son  
 breadth  
 about  
 parts ab  
 ing near  
 It ma  
 qual pa  
 WALE  
 by the  
 River  
 ticular  
 (which  
 were  
 where  
 sea) S  
 of the  
 of the  
 time of  
 past  
 EN  
 into ac



A CATALOGUE of the ARCH-BISHOPS, and BISHOPS of ENGLAND and WALES, together with what COUNTIES are under their Jurisdiction, and what PARISHES are in each DIOCESS.

NAMES of the present BISHOPS. Anno 1668. Counties under their Jurisdiction. Parishes in each Diocess. Appropriations in each Diocess.

1. Right Reverend Father in God Dr. Gilbert Sheldon, Lord Arch-Bishop of Canterbury,	hath	Canterbury, and part of Kent.	377	140
2. (Y.) R. Reverend Dr. Richard Starke, Lord Arch-Bishop of York,	hath	Yorkshire, and Nottinghamshire.	582	336
3. R. Reverend Dr. Humphrey Hinchman, Lord Bishop of London,	hath	Essex, Middlesex, & part of Hertfordshire.	623	109
4. (Y.) R. Reverend Dr. John Cossen, Lord Bishop of Durham.	hath	Durham, Northumberland, Isle of Man.	135	87
5. R. Reverend Dr. George Morley, Lord Bishop of Winchester,	hath	Hampshire, Surrey, Isles of Wight, Guernsey and Jersey.	368	131
6. R. Reverend Dr. William Pieffe, Lord Bishop of Bath and Wells,	hath	Somersetshire.	388	160
7. R. Reverend Dr. Walter Blanford, Lord Bishop of Oxford,	hath	Oxfordshire.	195	88
8. R. Reverend Dr. Robert Morgan, Lord Bishop of Bangor,	hath	Carnarvonshire, Isle of Anglesey, Merionethshire, and Denbighshire in part.	107	36
9. R. Reverend Dr. John Dolbin, Lord Bishop of Rochester,	hath	Kent part.	98	36
10. R. Reverend Dr. Ben. Lany, Lord Bishop of Ely,	hath	Cambridgeshire, Isle of Ely.	141	75
11. R. Reverend Dr. Henry King, Lord Bishop of Chichester,	hath	Suffex, and part of Hertfordshire.	290	121
12. R. Reverend Dr. Seth Ward, Lord Bishop of Salisbury,	hath	Wiltshire, and Berkshire.	448	109
13. Right Reverend Dr. Robert Skinner, Lord Bishop of Worcester,	hath	Worcestershire, and part of Warwickshire.	241	76
14. R. Reverend Dr. William Fuller, Lord Bishop of Lincoln,	hath	Lincolnshire, Leicestershire, Huntingdonshire, Bedfordshire, Buckinghamshire, and Hertfordshire in part.	259	577
15. R. Reverend Dr. Henry Glanham, Lord Bishop of St. Asaph,	hath	Part of Flintshire, and part of Denbighshire.	121	19
16. R. Reverend Dr. William Lucy, Lord Bishop of St. David's,	hath	Pembrookshire, and Carmarthenshire.	308	120

NAMES BISHO  
 15. R. Rev  
 16. R. Rev  
 17. (Y.)  
 18. R. Rev  
 19. R. Rev  
 20. R. Rev  
 21. R. Rev  
 22. R. Rev  
 23. R. Rev  
 24. R. Rev  
 Besides Peculi  
 Accord  
 and Wal  
 ccess 92  
 3845 Im  
 Engla  
 happy co  
 his full  
 Gentry c  
 ple, in g  
 Masters  
 Labours  
 that few  
 ther is  
 man La  
 keepeth  
 Municip  
 for this  
 As co  
 they ma  
 to wit,  
 mixt of  
 prehend  
 The  
 Bical Af



NAMES of the present BISHOPS, An. 1668.	Counties under their Jurisdiction.	Parishes in each Diocesi.	Appropriations in each Diocesi.
15. R. Reverend Dr. Joseph Hewson, Lord Bishop of Peterborough.	Northamptonshire, and Rutlandshire.	293	91
16. R. Reverend Dr. Francis Davin, Lord Bishop of Landaff.	Glamorganshire, Monmouthshire, Brecknockshire, and Radnorshire in part.	177	98
17. (Y.) R. Reverend Dr. Edward Rainbow, Lord Bishop of Carlisle.	Cumberland, and part of Westmerland.	93	18
18. R. Reverend Dr. Anthony Sparrow, Lord Bishop of Exeter.	Devonshire, Exeter City, and Cornwall.	604	339
19. R. Reverend Dr. Withins, Lord Bishop of Chester.	Cheshire, Richmondshire, Lancashire, Flintsh. in part, & Cumberland part.	256	101
20. R. Reverend Dr. Gilbert Trenchard, Lord Bishop of Bristol.	Bristol City, and Wiltshire.	236	54
21. R. Reverend Dr. Edward Reynolds, Lord Bishop of Norwich.	Norfolk, and Suffolke.	1121	335
22. R. Reverend Dr. William Nicholson, Lord Bishop of Gloucester.	Gloucestershire.	267	125
23. R. Reverend Dr. Herbert Crofts, Lord Bishop of Hereford.	Herefordshire, Shropshire, Worcester-shire and Radnorshire in part.	313	160
24. R. Reverend Dr. John Hackett, Lord Bishop of Litchfield.	Staffordshire, Derbyshire, Warwickshire and Shropshire in part.	557	250
Besides Peculiar in the Diocesi of Canterbury		57	14

According to this Division of England and Wales there are in the aforesaid Dioceses 924 Parishes, of which there are 3845 Improvements.

England is a Kingdom of a perfect and happy composition, wherein the King hath his full Prerogative, the Nobility and Gentry civil, and due respect, and the People, in general, happy, in that they are Masters of the Estates they can by their Labours and Endeavours get; a blessing that few Countreys can boast of. Neither is it subject to the Imperial or Roman Laws, as other Countreys are, but keepeth her ancient Laws, which is a Municipal or Common-Law, and proper for this Nation.

As concerning the Courts of Judicature, they may be comprehended under 3 heads, to wit, Ecclesiastical, Temporal, and one mixt of both, and under these 3 are comprehended all the Courts of Judicature.

The two principal Courts for Ecclesiastical Affairs, are, 1. The Synode, or Con-

vocation of the Clergy, and this is in the times of Parliament; and 2. The Provincial Synode, and is kept in both Provinces or Arch-bishopricks, to wit, Canterbury and York. Next to these 2 are the Courts belonging to the Arch-bishop of Canterbury, viz, the Court of the Arches, the Court of Audience, the Court of Faculties, the Prerogative Court, and the Court of Faculties.

The Courts for Temporal Affairs are of two kinds, viz for Law, and such are the Courts of Kings-Bench, Common-Pleas, Exchequer, Assizes, Court of Admiralty, &c. to all which belong peculiar Judges, with divers sub-Officers to each Court, 2. For Equity, and such are the Courts of Chancery, Exchequer, Requests, &c. to which do also appertain peculiar Judges, and likewise have their sub-officers.

The next and last of the 3 sorts, and mixt of both, is the greatest, and most eminent and powerful, and is the High-Court

Temporal Courts of Common-Law and Equity.



High Court of Parliament.

Court of Parliament, consisting of the King, the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and of the Commons which are elect Knights and Burgesses, which States represent the Body of all England. And this High Court hath Sovereign and Sacred Authority in Repealing, Expounding, Making and Confirming Laws, and in briefe, in all Causes which may concerne either the safety and welfare of the Nation, or any private person, of what degree or quality soever. And this Court of Parliament is not held at set and certain times, but it is summoned by the King by Writ at his pleasure, and as oft as occasion doth require for the good and peace of the Nation.

The Air, and Temperature of England.

ENGLAND is blest with a sweet and temperate Air, the Summers (by reason of continual and gentle winds) to abating the heat, and the thickness of the Air, with frequen Showers in the Winter, so affwaging the cold, that neither the one nor the other are obnoxious to its Inhabitants, the Summer not scorching, nor the Winter benumbing them.

In Fertility and Productions.

Corn.

Cattle.

Fowls.

Fish.

Minerals.

The whole Countrey is extremely fertile, abounding with several sorts of Graines, as Wheat, Rye, Barly, Oates, Pease, Beans, Tares, &c. also in rich Pastures, with innumerable quantities of Cattle, as Beef and Mutton, in so much that the English are observed to eat more Flesh than any Nation in the World. Here is great increase and plenty of divers sorts of Fowls, both tame and wilde, as Pullaine, Geese, Turkeys, Pigeons, Ducks, Teale, Pheasants, Partridges, Woodcocks, Snipes, Blackbirds, with hundreds of other sots too tedious to name. Its Swines is this esteemed good, delicate, and wholesome as well in Summer as in Winter, though not accounted so in the hot season. Its Seas and Rivers are sufficiently provided with variety of excellent Fish, as Salmon, Carps, Trouts, Pikes, Tench, Eells, Flounders and Smelts; also Whittings, Place, Soles, Mackarel, Lobsters, Prawnes, Oysters, fresh Codd; and lastly Herrings and Pilchers, which bring a great and considerable profit to the Kingdome, it being a Staple Commodity, and finds good vent in Spain, Italy, and other Countreys, for which we receive in exchange sundry good and Staple Commodities. In the bowels of the Earth are stores of rich Mines, of Lead, Tinn, Iron, Copper, Sea-cole, and some of Silver; and from these Mines, especially from those of Lead, Tinn and Coale, exceeding great pro-

fit is drawn. Great advantage is made by Butter and Cheese. The whole Isle is well furnished with Orchards and Gardens, in which are excellent Fruits, as Apricocks, Peaches, Nectarons, Plums, Cherries, Grapes, Apples and Pears, &c. from which two last excellent Stair and Perry is made, both Drinks of a grateful Taste to the Pallate. Also Mellons, Strawberries, Raspberries, Gooseberries, &c. Its Rootes and Plants are many, and very good, amongst which are Sparagus, Carrots, Turnips, Parsnips, Hartshoaks, Colliflowers, Cabbages, &c.

10

20

30

40

50

The Commodities that this Island produceth, are, Hops, Honey, Wax, Linnen Cloth, Tallow, Hides, Leather, Calvers skins, Cony skins, Iron, Lead, Tin and Pewter, both wrought and unwrought, Stockins, Saffron, Wood, Grains, Butter, Cheese, Herrings, Pilchers, and other Fish; but its chief Commodity is Wool, prized not only for its fineness, but for its plenty, which affords Clothing for several Nations. The Perpetuanes, Serges, Bayes, Coyes skins, Fustians, Worstedes, Kerfits, and the like Manufactures made thereof are esteemed very good, as well abroad, as by us at home.

The Inhabitants of this Isle are for the most part of a comely feature, beautiful, and of an excellent constitution, in their demeanour courteous, pleasant and bountiful; in matters of War they are very couragious, and of an undaunted spirit, which hath been sufficiently shewed in most Kingdomes in Europe. In advice and counsel sound and speedy. And without austentation the English may be held no wayes inferior to any other Nation in the World, either for ingenuity, policy, the knowledge of Arts and Sciences, the Secrets of Nature, or what else belongeth to the completing of a Gentleman: And as for the Women, they are of a ready wit and apprehension, of a good disposition, and naturally loving and constant to their Husband, good Housewives, and generally more handsome than in other Countreys, which makes them so much esteemed, so that England is termed a Paradise for Women.

The Degrees of Honour here observed, according to which they take place, may be comprehended under these two heads, viz. Nobiles Minores, and such are Gentlemen, Esquires and Knights; and Nobiles Majores, and such are Barons, Bishops, Counts, Earles Marquesses and Dukes; and as Supreme, His Sacred Majesty, who is the fountain of Honour.

Eng.

EN things : it had World ; sessor a than in the first Supreme and the Anti-Ch there are ses, tha which Game. the Ship to the 2 gers.

The 850 and thofe of But bef view of England cording the first Kent.

The K the K

KE an Soils, other G not on Sea, wh there p This first K ving a that n neither but yie their A that of

This and E with 2 Kings Pately safe A and 2 Twa

The Author and Printer of this

ENGLAND may boast of many things above other Nations, viz. That it had the first Christian King in the World; That here hath been more Confessors and Martyrs of Kings and Princes than in any Kingdome in Europe; That the first King which renouced the Popes Supremacy, was King Henry the Eighth; and the first that Wrote to prove the Pope Anti-Christ, was King James. That there are more Parkes, Forests, and Chafers, than in any Kingdome in Europe, in which are excellent Deere, and other Game. But, above all, its Wooden Wall, the Ships; which are not onely a safety to the Nation, but a terror unto Strangers.

The Bridges of England are said to be 850 and odd, the chiefe of which are those of London, Rochester and Bristol. But before we pass further, let us take a view of the several Counties, or Shires of England, as afore laid down, and that according to the Saxon Heptarchy; and then the first will be the antient Kingdome of Kent.

The KINGDOME of KENT, where is onely the COUNTY of KENT.

KENT, a County of a large extent; and generally of a rich and fertile Soile, plentifully provided of Corno and other Grains, Cattel, Fowls, and Fish; not onely in its Rivers, but also in the Sea, which washeth its Eastern and Northern parts.

This County may boast, in being the first Kingdome of the Heptarchy, and having a peculiar King to its self, a thing that no other County in England had; neither was it ever subdued by Conquest, but yielded upon Articles, and to keep their Antient Customes, one of which is that of the Garvel-kind.

This County is enriched with a Cities and Episcopa Seas; it is strengthened with 27 Castles; graced with 4 of the Kings Houses; beautified with many lately Edifices; well replenished with safe Roads, and sure Harbours for Ships; and every where garnished with faire Townes. It is a place of good Trading,

well frequented and inhabited; and the more, by reason of its vicinity to France.

As to its chief places, I shall first treat of those that are seated on, or high the River Thames, then with those on the Sea, and so conclude with those within Land. And then the first shall be *Depisford*, which is a Town populous, and well frequented by Seamen and Merchants, and of most account for its Dock where the Kings Ships are built, and old ones repaired; as also for its store-houses for Amunition for the Navy. 2. *Greenwich*, a place of great delight, a fair and large Town, well frequented by Genrey, and adorned with a (once noble and stately) Palace of the Kings, which is now a repairing; adjoining to which is a pleasant Parke, where once stood a small Castle, but more for delight then strength; and here it was that Queen Elizabeth receivied her first Breath. 3. *Dartford*, seated on the River *Dartus*, not far from the Thames, a large and well frequented Market-Town. 4. *Gravesend*, a well-known Town; being the common landing-place for Seamen and Strangers, before they come to London, as likewise the usual place of taking Shipping; and here is seated the Block-houses, the one on this side, and the other in *Essex*, which commands and secures the Passage into the River. 5. *Sandwich*, one of the Cinque Port-Townes, is a place of good strength, but not much frequented by reason of the ill-commodiousness of its Harbour. 6. *Dover*, a place of great strength, as well by Nature as Art, being seated betwix high Cliffs, and defended by a strong Castle, and other Fortifications, loftily seated, Commanding both Sea and Countrey there adjoining: It is most famous for the commodiousness of its Haven, strength of the Town; for its being one of the Cinque-Ports, and for its ready and short passage into France, then for its Elegancy and Trade, being well frequented and inhabited. 7. *Hull*, in times past a noted place, being one of the Cinque-ports; but now not much frequented, its Haven being choaked up. 8. *Ramsey*, an antient Town, and another of the Cinque-Ports, seated in a Marsh so called, of about 14 Miles in length, and 8 in breadth, now more famous for the fertility of the Marsh, then for the goodness of the place, by reason of the late unkindness the Sea shewed it, as also for its unhealthfulness; and these are the chief places which

Cccc may

ntage is made by whole Isle is well and Gardens, in ts, as Apricocks, Cherries, Grapes, from which two rry is made, both e to the Pallate, es; Raspberies, es and Plants are onght which are Parsnips, Harti- ges; &c. this Island pro- PPax, Linnen er, Calves skins, Tin and Pewter, ight; Stockins, Butter, Cheese, her Fish; but its prized not only its plenty, which l Nations. The e, Seyes, Cottons, er, and the like of are esteemed bad, as by us at

is Isle are for the ture, beautiful, tution; in their ezant and bound- they are very undaunted spirit, ntly shewed in e. In advice and And without may be held no r Nation in the vity, policy, the sciences, the Se- e belongeth to eleman: And as e of a ready wit d disposition, and nt to their Hus- and generally ther Countreys; th esteemed; so a Paradise for

ere observed, ke place, may ese two heads, ch are Gentle- s and Nobles ts, Barons, Vis- d Dukes, and as ty, who is the Eng.

here quality of  
the chief parts.  
Sandwich  
Dover  
Ramsey

may be termed *Sea, or Port-Towns*. Now follows those within-Land; and first with *Canterbury*, an antient, and once famous City, it is beautified with a stately Cathedral, (although it hath lost much of its pristine beauty, by reason of the late unhappy War) seated in the midst of the City, and within its bounds are several faire Edifices, belonging to the *Deans and Prebends*. The City is encompassed with a *Moat and Wall*, on which is several *Citadels*, or *Watch-Towers*, built of *Free-stone*; its *Suburbs* are indifferently large, in which, and within the *Wall* are 15 or 16 *Parish-Churches*.

It is Dignified with an *Archi-Bisepal See*, and Governed by a *Major and Court of Aldermen*, who are clothed in *Scarlet*; and for the convenience of the *Inhabitants*, besides what is daily sold by *Shopkeepers*, there are weekly two *Markets*. 2. *Wye*. 3. *Alford*, both good *Market-Towns*, and seated on the *River Stour*. 4. *Cranbrook*. 5. *Sittingborne*. 6. *Milton*, all *Market-Towns*. 7. *Rochester*, an antient (but not large) City, seated on the *River Medway*, over which it hath a stately *Stone-Bridge*. It is dignified with an *Episcopal See*, and Governed by a *Mayor*, and other *Officers*. And not far distant from this City is *Chatham*, seated on the said *River*, of chief note for being the Station for the *Navy-Royal*, and where there is a stately *Dock* for the building and repairing of His *Majesties Ships*. And not far distant from this place is the *Ile of Shepey*, so made by the said *River Medway*, which, with the *Sea* encompasseth it. It is an *Ile* of about 21 Miles Circuit, is exceeding fertile, and feedeth great Flocks of *Sheep*, from whence it took its name; it is garnished with several *Towns*, and here is *Quinborough Castle* built by *King Edward the Third*, and so called in Honour to his *Queen*. 8. *Maldstone*, also seated on the *River Medway*, a large, fair, sweet, populous, and well frequented *Market Town*, enjoying several *Priviledges*; and the more frequented, as being a *Shir-town*, and where they keep the *Stees and Sessons* for the *County*. And 9. *Tunbridge*, so called from its many *Bridges*, of chief note for its healthful waters. In this *County* is reckoned the *Ile of THANET*, about 8 Miles long, and 4 broad, is of a fertile *Soile*, and its *Inhabitants* very industrious and expert, as well in *Maritime Affairs*, as in *Husbandry*.

This *County* is of a large extent, and is

divided into 5 *Laths*, which are again subdivided into 68 *Hundreds*, in which are 398 *Parishes*, of which 17 are *Market-Towns*.

### The Kingdom of the South-SAXONS, which contained the Countyes of SURREY and SUSSEX.

SURREY, a *County* of a different *Soile*, and not over-fertile, neither of a large extent, yet well inhabited with *Towns*, the chief of which, are, 1. *Southwarke*, or the *Burrough of Southwarke*, situate opposite to the City of *London*, from which it is severed by the *River Thames*, but joyned together by a stately *Stone-Bridge*; and is a Member of the said City, being so annexed by *King Edward the Sixth*, but still it enjoyeth several *Priviledges* peculiar to it self; it is a place, which for greatness, may be ranked with those that are called *Cities*, is very populous, and of a great *Trade*. 2. *Guildford*, a fair and well-built *Market-Town*, well frequented, and full of *Inns*; it is seated on the *River Wey*, and defended by a *Castle*. 3. *Farnham*, a good *Market Town*, and also defended by a *Castle*. 4. *Croydon*, a large *Market Town*, seated in a bottom, and one over-pleasant, nor much inhabited by *Gentry*, yet the *Arch-Bishop of Canterbury* hath a fair House, and here is an *Hospital* for the relief of the *Poor*, as also a *Free-School* for the Education of youth. 5. *Kingstone*, an antient, faire, large, and well-frequented *Market-Town*, seated on the *Thames*, over which it hath a *Bridge*; and here, upon a *Stage*, in the open *Market-place*, *Athelstan*, *Ethelred*, and *Edwin* were *Crowned Kings*. 6. *Richmond*, a fair *Town*, pleasantly seated on the *Thames*, on an easie ascent, and dignified with a (once) stately and magnificent *Pallace* of the *Kings*, but now reduced to ruins by the late *Usurpers*, as is *Newbuck* and *Oatlands*, two other noble Structures of the *Kings*. And along the *River of Thames* as it takes its course to *London*, are seated several well frequented *Towns* for *Gentry*, as *Mareslack*, *Barnes*, *Putey*, *Wandsworth*,

*Wandsworth River*) positive with the *terbury*,

This C in which Market 2 *Soile*, the Northern place ning and *Bars*, &c this mak

but few *gerousness* and the *Roads*, *Downes*, *Road* for *And*, for are several which *far* *cessaries* a *MonComb*, *ral other* the *securit* *ced* several *Land* here are *green*, 2. *Hasting* a high *Cl* *Hill Land* *ed* in length each of wh *ven* is *fed* *counted* the *next* is *Rhi* *hath* a *com* *quented*, *h* *Normandy* *antient*, an *Winchelsey* *vers*, the *cl* *Arms*, and *Noce*, are, *built* *City*, and *encom* *Levant*, wh *eth* it *self* *bout*, to *w* and as *mar* *Market-plac* and is a *fair* an *Episcopal* to this *City* *ther* a *Peni* *Cockles* and

Count of

Surrey

Surrey

Rochester.

Ile of Shepey.

Ile of Thanet.

Wandsworth, (but some distance from the River) Battersey, and lastly Lambeth, opposite to Westminster, being dignified with the Palace of the Arch-Bishop of Canterbury, and where he resides.

This County is divided into 13 Hundreds, in which are 140 Parishes, of which 7 are Market Towns.

SUSSEX, a large County, of a different Soile, the middle being the most fertile, the Northern side Woody: Here are in several places Store of Iron Mines, for the fining and making of which into Guns, Bars, &c. they have great Furnaces, and this maketh great waste of Wood. Its hath but few Harbours, by reason of the dangerousness of Shoals, and therefore rough, and the Shore also full of Rocks. Its chief Roads, Havens and Ports, are, 1. The Downes, a large, safe, and commodious Road for Shipping, and much frequented: And, for the more commodiousness there are several Towns seated on the Sea-shore, which furnish the Seamen with such necessaries as they require, as Wyke, and Manscomb, both Market Towns, with several other Towns and Hamlets; and for the security of the Shipping, there are placed several Castles along the shore. The Land here lyeth very high, and the Hills are green, and the ground exceeding fertile.

2. Hastings, a Town conched between a high Cliffe Sea-wards, and as high an Hill Land-ward; it hath a streets, extended in length from North to South, in each of which is a Parish Church, the Haven is fed by a small River, and this is accounted the first of the Cinque Ports. The next is Rye, another of the Cinque Ports, hath a commodious Haven, and is well frequented, here being the usual passage to Normandy. And nigh to this place is the ancient, and now almost decayed City of Winchelsey: It is well-watered with Rivers, the chief of which is the Levant, the Aron, and the Rother. Its other places of Note, are, 1. Chichester, a faire and well built City, seated in a Champane Plaine, and encompassed almost with the River Levant, which not far distance discharges it self into the Sea. It is walled about, to which are 4 Gates for entrance, and as many Streets which leade to the Market-place, which is seated in the mid'st, and is a fair building: It is dignified with an Episcopal See, and seat of a Bishop. Nigh to this City is SELSEY, an Isle, or rather a Peninsula, of chief note for its good Cockles and Lobsters. 2. Lewes, seated

every way on an eminence, and for its fairness, populousness, and greatness, containing 6 Parish-Churches, is esteemed one of the best Townes in this County, it is seated on the River Aron. 3. Steving, a well frequented Market-Town, the noble House of Patward, belonging to the Earl of Northumberland, the Castles of Bonian and Amberley, and the Forests of Albdowne and Waterdowne are in this County. And according to my Division, there are in this County 6 Rapes, which are again divided into 65 Hundreds, in which are 312 Parishes, of which 18 are Market-Townes.

The KINGDOME of the EAST-ANGLES, which contained the Countries of NORFOLKE, SUFFOLKE, and CAMBRIDGE-SHIRE.

NORFOLKE, a large spacious County, in a manner all Champane, yet not without some small Hills of a gentle ascent, the Soile is of a different nature, but fertile especially Southwards: It is well stored with Sheep and Cowses, and water'd with many Rivers, besides the commodiousness of the Sea on which it lyeth; It is generally very populous, full of Towns and Villages, numbering more then any other in all England, and inhabited by Gentrey.

Its chief places, are, 1. Norwich, a good City, scituate on the River Tare, which falls into Tarmouth; it is in length 11 Mile, and about halfe so much in breadth, being encompassed with a Wall (except on the side, which is seated on the River) on which are many Towers. This City hath for entrance 12 Gates, it hath 32 Parish Churches, besides Chappels, it is a place of great Wealth, and very populous, caused by several Manufactures of Stuffs that are here made, which find vent not onely in all parts of England, but also in divers places beyond the Seas. Its chief Buildings are, the Cathedral, a fair Structure, then the Bishops Palace, the Palace of the Duke of Norfolk, the Market.

again sub- which are Market-

SOUTH- ick con- tryes of d SUS-

ifferent Soile, neither of a habited with ith Townes, ishmarke, or scituate op- from which Thames, but Stone-Bridge, d City, being the Sixth, but ledges peculi- ch for great- hose that are ous, and of a fair and well- quered, and on the River le. 3. Farn- and also de- dan, a large come, and are inhabited by of Canterbu- ere is an Me- or, as also a ion of youth- ire, large, and e, seated on ath a Bridge, he open Mar- d, and Edwin Richmond, a n the Thames, nified with a ent Pallace of to ruines by ch and Out- ures of the er of Thames don, are seat- Towns for nas, Putney, Wandsworth,

Curry of

Shut

Curry

Somab

10

30

40

50

Norfolk

By Chief places, N. 1. Norwich.

ket-house and *Croft*; also here is an *Hospital* for the relief of 100 Poor Men and Women: 2. *Tarmonth* a very convenient haven Town, by reason of which it is very populous, and of some *trade*, especially for *fish*: it is a fair town, and of great strength as well by nature as art. 3. *Lynn* a large town, well inhabited, hath fair houses, is a place of good *trade*, and well frequented by *Merchants*. It is encompassed with a *Wall* and *Ditch*, and through the town runs two small rivers, over which there is about fifteen *Bridges*, nigh to this town, on the other side of the *Ouse* is a little *Marish* Country called *Marishland*, which is of a fertile soil, and feedeth abundance of *sheep*. 4. *Worsted* of note for its *Worsted* which was here first made. 5. *Hickling*. 6. *Thetford*, &c.

This County is divided into one and thirty *Hundreds*, in which are about 660 *Parish Churches*, amongst which are 27 *Market towns*.

**SUFFOLK** a large and fertile County, bearing good *Corn*, and having rich *Pastures*, which feed store of *Cattle*, and here is made abundance of *Butter* and *Cheese*. It is well watered with *Rivers*: it is very populous, and full of *towns*, the chief of which are, 1. *S' Edmondsbury*, or *Bury* a fair and large town, containing two *Parish Churches*, is of great antiquity, pleasantly seated in a wholesome *air*, which makes it to be much frequented by *Gentry*; its *Houses* are neat, and well built. 2. *Ipswich* a large and fair town, and of great antiquity, resembling a *City*, containing twelve *Parish Churches*, and is the chief of the County; it is adorned with fair *buildings*, is well inhabited, and by reason of its *haven* (which is commodious enough) is well frequented, and of a good *trade*, being sufficiently provided both with *wares* and *shipping*; and is a place of good strength, and here was born *Cardinal Wolsey*. 3. *Woodbridge* beautified with fair houses. 4. *Aldisburg* well frequented by *Sailers* and *Fishermen*. 5. *Dunwich* seated on the *Sea*. 6. *Sudbury* of note for its clothing here (as in many other places of this County) made: and 7. *Newmarket* of no long continuance, seated in a large Heath so called, well known, and frequented by *Gentry*, as being a place for *Races*, and here in this *heath* is a *ditch*, called by the *Inhabitants*, the *devils Dike*, most of which aforesaid places are *market towns*.

This County is divided into 22 *hun-*

*ds*, in which are 575 *Parishes*, amongst which are twenty eight *market towns*.

**CAMBRIDGE-SHIRE** a County well watered with *Rivers*, in which are store of *fish*, the chief of which are the *Ouse* (which from *East* to *West* traveth the County, and sends forth several little *Rivulets*;) and the *Cam*. The County is of a different *soil*, the lower and Southern part of this County is almost on a level, is well manured, fertile, and beareth excellent *Barley*, of which they make great store of *Malt*, which the *Inhabitants* supply other Counties with; and here is gathered good quantity of *Saffron*. And the upper or Southern part is *Fenish*, which is cauled through the over-flowings of the several *Rivers*, which forms, as it were, several *Isles*, and is called the *Isle of ELY*, and here are good *Pastures* always in their verdure.

This County is famous for *fish* and *soil*, but chiefly for its *University* or *Seminary* of true Learning in *Cambridge*, sufficiently known: the *town* is pleasantly seated on the river *Cam*, which separates it in two parts, but joynd together by a *Bridge*; it is a fair well built town, and adorned with several good structures, amongst which its *Colleges*, which are in number sixteen, may be esteemed the chief, by reason of which the *town* is very populous, rich, and well frequented, nigh to which and near unto *Sture* a small brook, is yearly kept the greatest Fair of all *England* (called *Starbridge-Fair*) which begins on the eighth of *October*, and continues about a fortnight: a Fair of so great resort, and so well furnished with *Commodities*, that nothing can be desired but what it hath. 2. *Ely* seated in the *Isle* so called, and in a *fenny* place, which renders it unhealthful to the *Inhabitants*, nevertheless it is a pretty Town or *City*, and dignified with the *See* of a *Bishop*. 3. *Littleport*. 4. *Wisbeche*. 5. *S' Ides*, one of the famousst *markets* of *England*, serving to several *Counties*. In this *Shire* is *Witlemers*, which is a Lake or place of water of a large extent: nigh to which is another, but of a less extent is *Ramsfeymers*, in both which are store of *fish*.

This County is divided into seventeen *Hundreds*, in which are 163 *Parishes*, of which eight are *Market-towns*.

The

to talk  
agreed

To be  
class.

To be  
with

Cambridge  
shire  
shire

the de  
proed.

to the  
place.

to be  
lun.

to be  
like

TH  
E S  
hath  
Woods  
and he  
ters, w  
fords g  
great p  
its East  
of her  
trety, ou  
streams,  
those ex  
Officers  
For t  
ces in th  
those tha  
on an Ar  
and so c  
and first  
town, w  
2. Colche  
pleasantl  
six miles  
of a Hill  
beautified  
and sever  
a good  
the like  
likewise  
here resi  
have their  
great an  
Sea, abou  
Main, bet  
led Worsh  
modious  
ness (hav  
length) an  
of the fir  
yer of for  
called, s  
good ma  
nigh unto



The Kingdom of the EAST-SAXONS, which contained the Counties of ESSEX, MIDDLESEX, and HERTFORDSHIRE.

ESSEX a County of a large extent, of a fertile soil, abounding in grain, hath rich pastures, is well furnished with Woods and Parks, blest with a temperate and healthful air, except towards the waters, which are somewhat aguish; it affords good commodities, amongst which great plenty of Saffron: the Sea which is its Eastern bounds sendeth forth several of her branches or arms into the Country, out of which issue forth divers fresh streams, as the Stoure, Black-water, (where they are excellent oysters, called Walsfleet oysters are caught) Cromb, Ley, &c.

For the Description of the chief places in this County, I shall first begin with those that are seated on the Sea-shore, or on an Arm thereof, then on the Thames; and so end with those more within land: and first with Harwich, a strong haven-town, well frequented and inhabited: 2. Colchester, a city of good antiquity, pleasantly seated on the river Coln, about six miles from the Sea, and on the ascent of a Hill; and begirt with a Wall, and beautified with fifteen Parish Churches, and several fair buildings; it is a place of a good trade for Saxes, Bayes, and other the like Draperies which are here made; likewise it affordeth excellent Oysters, and here reside abundance of Dutch, who have their Church. 3. Malden a town of great antiquity, seated on an Arm of the Sea, about six or seven miles from the Main, before which lie two little Isles called Worthey and Osey; its Haven is commodious enough, the town for its largeness (having one Street about a mile in length) and for its number of Inhabitants may deservedly be numbered with those of the first rank. 4. Leigh a small town, yet of some note by reason of its road so called. 5. Barkin. 6. Ramsford, both good market towns, especially the last, nigh unto which is Haovering an antient

retiring place of the Kings. 7. Walden, or Saffron-Walden, a fair and well frequented town, of note for its Saffron here growing. 8. Walsham, adjoining to which is a large Forest so called, well stored with Deer.

This County is divided into twenty Hundreds, in which are 415 Parishes, of which 21 are market-towns.

MIDDLESEX a County of a small extent, being not above twenty miles in length, and in some places twelve in breadth; yet for its populousness exceedeth all others, and that by reason of the famous City of London, Metropolis of England, as of the British Isles, which is seated in it, (of which more anon,) It is blest with a sweet and temperate air, and for its fertility of soil may compare with any Shire in England.

It is every where garnished with delightful houses, which are inhabited by Nobility and Gentry, and with fair towns, the chief of which, according to my Method I shall name, concluding with London: and 1. with Uxbridge a well frequented market-town, seated on the road to Oxford, and is well furnished with Inns.

2. Stanes another Market-town, seated on the Thames, over which (by reason of its being a thorough-fair) it hath a Bridge.

3. Hampton seated on the Thames, dignified with a royal and magnificent Palace of the Kings called Hampton-Court, first built by Cardinal Wolsey, in ostentation of his great riches, and afterwards enlarged by King Henry the eighth, now containing within it five several large inner Courts, encompassed with fair Buildings, and pleasantly seated by two Parks, the one for Deer, and the other for Hares: nigh unto which is Kingston a noted market town, seated in Surry, already spoken of.

4. Twittenham. 5. Thistleworth, both pretty towns seated on the Thames, and well inhabited by Gentry. 6. Brentford consisting of the old and the new, both which do make a large Town, though some small distance betwixt them, and 50 of these the new is the best, and where there is a Market well provided of Commodities kept every Tuesday, nigh unto which is Sion a stately House now belonging to the Earl of Northumberland, which in former times was a Monastery.

7. Cheswick. 8. Hamersmith. 9. Fulham. 10. Chelsey, all pleasantly seated on the Thames, and well frequented and inhabited by Nobility and Gentry, and where they

Dddd have

mongst  
ny well  
store of  
the onse  
feth the  
ral little  
Country is  
Southern  
a level,  
rareth ex-  
ake great  
ants sup-  
here is ga-  
And the  
b, which is  
ags of the  
as it were,  
As of ELT,  
ays in their  
sh and fowl,  
or Seminary  
sufficiently  
ly seated on  
es it in two  
y a Bridge,  
and adorned  
es, amongst  
re in number  
the chief, by  
s very popu-  
ated, nigh to  
a small brook,  
t Fair of all  
Fair) which  
Offsher, and  
c: a Fair of  
urnished with  
can be desired  
seated in the  
e place, which  
e Inhabitants,  
Town or City,  
e of a Bishop,  
s. S. Ides,  
ts of England,  
In this Shier  
ake or place of  
igh to which is  
ent is Ramsf-  
re of sh.  
into seventeen  
63 Parishes, of  
ws.

The

have fair and delightful Houses. And besides these there are several others, not much, if at all, inferiour unto them, although not seated on the *Thames*, as *Kennington*, *Highgate*, *Hamsted*, *Hornsey*, *Hackney*, *Islington*, &c. all which by reason of their vicinity to *London*, are well inhabited and frequented, and beautified with fair Houses: but to proceed to *London*.

City of London described.

*London* the *Metropolitan* City of all *England*, of so great antiquity and fame in other Countries, that it wanteth no mans commendations, yet let me not rudely pass it over, without giving a small glance upon it, and to begin. It is seated no less pleasantly than commodiously on the River of *Thames*, which in its hasty course towards the *Sea* saluterh its walls, and payeth its duty to her, dividing it in two but unequal parts, which are again joyned together by a stately *Stone Bridge*, sustained by nineteen great *Archer*, and so furnished or covered with Houses, that passing it, it seemeth rather a *Street* than a *Bridge*, the City is seated on an easie ascent, which with its Suburbs, which are now exceeding large, runneth from West to East along the *Thames*, which by a safe and deep channel beyond the *Bridge* gives entertainment to Ships of considerable Burthens, which daily bring in their rich Ladings from all known parts of the World.

London for 400000 persons may compare with any City in Europe.

And if we consider its *Riches*, its *Jurisdiction* and *Bounds*, being about twelve or fifteen miles in compass, its populousness scarce containing less than four or 50000 souls, and in Term time many more, yet notwithstanding it is so well governed that those disorders that are frequent in *Paris* and other great Cities beyond *Sea*, are here seldom found. Again, the *Religion*, *Civility*, and *Ingeniuty* of its *Inhabitants* in *Letters*, *Arts*, *Sciences*, and *Manufactures*, together with their skill in *Martial* affairs. Then for its strength and power, being able to bring into the Field about 50000 stout fighting men, and so provided with all sorts of Ammunition both for *Sea* and *Land*, that it is able to bid defiance to the stoutest foe. Then for its antiquity being said to be built by *Brutus*. And for these, and divers other reasons it may deservedly be numbered with those Cities of the first rank in any *Kingdom* whatsoever.

The City it self is begun with a *Wall*, first built, as 'tis reported, by *Constantine*

the Great, at the request of his mother *Helena*, to which for entrance are seven *Gates*, and from these *Gates* are spacious *Suburbs* expanded forth, especially *Eastwards* and *Westwards*: that *Eastwards* hath the meanest buildings, and is inhabited for the most part by such as have relation to the *Sea*; that *Westwards* including within it the City of *Westminster*, is the noblest, and is taken up by the *King*, the *Nobility*, *Gentry*, and such as depend thereon, and is beautified with many stately *Structures*, as well publique as private, as, 1. The *Palaces* of the *King*, *White-hall* and *St James's*, to which is joyned a small but pleasant Park so called, nigh to which is *Hide Park*, a place well known unto the *Gentry*, the first being the residence of His sacred Majesty, and the second of his Royal Highness the *Duke of York*. 2. The *Courts of Judicature*, and *Houses of Parliament*. 3. The *Collegiate Church of Westminster*, renowned for the *Chappel* adjoining to it, built by *King Henry* the seventh, being a most magnificent and curious Edifice, beautified with the stately *Tombs* of the *Kings* and *Queens*, with many of the *Nobility* of *England*, and renowned for the inauguration of our *Kings*. 4. The *Palace* of the *Queen Mother*, called *Somerst-houfe*, a stately building. 5. The *Houses* of the *Nobility*. 6. The *Inns* of *Court*, which are twelve, of which four are large, and belong to the *Court of Judicature*. And besides these places, in the North part of the *Suburbs* are several good *Structures*, amongst which is *St Pauls Hospital*, a fair and large building, being one of the noblest *Hospitals* in *England*, being the intire gift of one *Sutton*, whose name it beareth, in which are well kept eighty ancient men, and forty boys, who are well educated, and according to their capacities are disposed of, either to the *Universities*, or to *Trades*, and this number is not to be exceeded, nor diminished.

The City within the walls hath also fair buildings, as well publique as private, as, 1. The *Royal Exchange* built by *St Thomas* *Cresham*, a worthy Member of the City, and is a stately *Structure*, round which are *Walkes* paved with *free-stone* for the accommodation of *Merchants*, in wet weather, which are sustained by *Round Pillars*, over which in several *Niches* are curiously placed the *Statues* of the *Kings* and *Queens* of *England* in *Stone*, resembling the dead life: and above this

Exchange

Exchange being a found moditie Hostlers, hab, a of Fwa Lord M to conti in one kept a Hospital ledge, w and Grep by the f create of fors of 1 Geometry Liberal pain in upon the of Learning is well ob 5. Its Fr several C cation to fique. 7 Gentry an of St, Pas through Times, an Ruines: bu ing at the intention f stre. The ure is 230 height 34 Steeple, fro yards 3, an large exte encompass are stately Ditch, whi nished wit Warlike And acco some, the lace, a Pri drop, and resemble This an under the Romans, a Dams, at but Alfre ONS, ha bro one and again the custo

this moeth  
are seven  
are spacious  
ially East-  
Eastwards  
and is inha-  
uch as have  
Eastwards in-  
Westminster,  
by the King,  
as depend  
with many  
publique as  
t the King,  
to which is  
Park so cal-  
ark, a place  
ry, the first  
cred Majesty,  
Highness the  
urts of Judic-  
ent. 3. The  
er, renowned  
is, built by  
being a most  
sifice, beauti-  
of the Kings  
f the Nobility  
or the inaugu-  
The Palace of  
owerst-house,  
Houses of the  
Court, which  
are large, and  
dicant. And  
North part of  
od Structures,  
Hospital, a fine  
ne of the no-  
being the, in-  
hose some it  
l kept eighty  
, who are well  
their capaci-  
to the Univer-  
number is not  
hed.  
alls hath also  
as private,  
uilt by St The-  
ember of the  
ulture, round  
with free-stone  
Merchants in  
sustained by  
Several Niches  
Statues of the  
nd in Stone, round  
above this  
Exchange

Exchange may be called another Exchange, being a place filled with shops, which are found to vend several sorts of rich Commodities, but most by Milliners, Sewers, Hofters, and such like Trades. 2. Guild-hall, a large Building, where their Courts of Judicature are kept, and where the Lord Major and Court of Aldermen meet, to consult about the City Affaires; and in one part of it, called Blackwell-Hall, is kept a great Market for Cloth. 3. Its Hospitals. 4. Its Colledges, as Sion-Colledge, where there is a gallant Library; and Gresham-Colledge, given to the City by the said Sir Thomas, who for the encrease of Learning instituted their Professors of Divinity, Law, Physick, Astronomy, Geometry and Musick, with allowance of Liberal Stipends and Salaries, for their pain in Studying and Reading Lectures upon the said Sciences, to the advantage of Learning amongst the Citizens, which is well observed to this day by able Men. 5. Its Free-Schools. 6. Its Halls for the several Companies, which I have had occasion to speak of in the Treatise of Traffique. 7. Its private Buildings for the Gentry and Merchants. 8. Its Cathedral of St. Pauls, once a stately building, but through the perniciousness of the late Times, and late Fire, is almost reduced to Ruines: but at present it is slowly a repairing at the Charge of the Churchmen, with intention to be restored to its Pristine lustre. The length of this Noble Structure is 230 yards, its breadth about 46, its height 34, and the Stone-work of the Steeple, from the Basis to the Somet is 174 yards, and lastly the Tower, a place of a large extent, and of great strength, being encompassed with thick Walls (on which are stately Turrets) fenced with a broad Ditch, which receives the Tides; and furnished with an Armory and Magazine of Warlike Munition both for Sea and Land. And according to the observations of some, the Tower containeth a Kings Palace, a Prison, a Mint, an Armory, a War-dropt, and an Artillery; and for buildings resembleth a Town.

This ancient and famous City, when under the Government of the Britains, Romans, and Saxons, was destroyed by the Danes, and left as a desolate Widow, but Alfred, King of the WEST-SAXONS, having reduced this whole Realme into one Monarchy, honourably repaired it, and again re-peopled it, and committed the custody thereof to his Son-in-Law

Alfred, Earl of Mercia; after whose decease, the City, with all other the possessions belonging to the said Earl, returned to King Edward, surnamed the Elder, &c. and so remained in the Kings hands, being governed under him by Portgraves, or Postreves, that is, Guardians, Governors, or Keepers thereof. These Portgraves are in divers Records called Vice-comites, Vice-Counties, or Sheriffs, as being under an Earle, as are at this day the Sheriffs of London.

In the first Year of King Richard the First, the Citizens of London obtained to be Governed by two Bailiffs, or Sheriffs; and after that they obtained to have a Major to be their principal Governour, the first of whom was Henry Fitz Alwin, by Profession a Draper, who was appointed by the said King Richard, and continued Major, from the first of King Richard the First, until the 15th of King John, which was 24 years.

And now the City within the Walls and Freedome is divided into 26 Wards, and the Government thereof committed to the care of as many Grave Citizens of good repute and Estates, which are Aldermen, each of whom have the overseeing of his several Ward: and besides these Aldermen there are 2 Sheriffs which are annually chosen; as also a Lord Major, which, according to his degree and antiquity of being Alderman after Sheriff, is also yearly elected, and these are clothed in Scarlet Gownes, and wear Gold Chaines: And besides these, as Co-adjutors, every Alderman hath his Deputy of the Ward, as also Common-Councilmen, and these are the Governours of the City, who by the City-Charter have Power to make Acts and Ordinances, so as they are not repugnant to the Law of the Nation, and detriment of the Kings; and having by all succeeding Kings had large Privileges and Immunities granted unto them.

This City, for the benefit of their divine-service had 125 Parish-Churches, many of which are superb Structures.

This Honourable City beareth for its Coat-Armour, in a Field Argent, St. Georges Cross; in the Dexter Canton a Dagger Gules. This Coat was borne without a Dagger, as the Mistress or chief City of England, until Richard the second, for the gallant and eminent Service performed by Sir William Wallworth; in killing that Arch-Rebel Wyatt-Tyler, and vanquishing his whole Army, contr'd the Augmentation of the said Dagger. Thus

How Ca-  
voted.

The Co-  
vernours of  
the City.

The Coat  
of Armes  
belonging  
to the City.

The Coat  
of Armes  
belonging  
to the City.

This was the Pristine Beauty of this famous City, but now it is much Eclipsed by the late dreadful Fire, which happened the Second Day of SEPTEMBER 1666, which, in the Space of Three Days Consumed Two Thirds of the said City within the Walls and Freedom; but is now a re-building, with faire hopes of a better lustre then before.

The chief Trade of England being here found, I shall give a glance thereon, as to the Commodities, Coynes, VVeightes and Measures, being generally found the same throughout all England, of which in order.

In Com-  
dities and  
Trade.

The Commodities here found are not only those aforesaid, but also several Manufactures, also Hats, Stockings, Ribbons, Shoes, Guns, Shot, with several other Commodities.

Commodities Imported, are, Oyles, Wines, Spices, Calicoes, Drugs, Precious stones, Pearle, Gold, Silver, Swets, Musk, Salt-Peter, Turkey-Carpetts, Gramams, and several other Indian, Turkish, and Persian Commodities, also raw and wrought Silk, Satins, Diaper, Cambricks, Hollands, Hops, Sape, Pot-ashes, Furrs, Deale, Mastts, Cordage, Pitch, Tarr, Resin, Clapboards, Iron, Laine, Steel, Flax, Hemp, Wax, Tallow, Furrs, Hides, Caviare, Glass, Glasses, Paper, Allame, Rice, Aniseeds, with abundance of other Commodities, too tedious to name; which our Merchants again transport to other places, serving one Country with the Commodities of another.

The Coyne

The Coynes here, and throughout all England, as well Gold as Silver, are several, and of a different value, but all reduced to Pounds, Shillings, Pence and Farthings; 4 Farthings making a Penny, 12 Pence a shilling, and 20 shillings a Pound; here is also Imaginary coyne, as Markes and Nobles, 13 s. 4. d. making a Marke, and 6 s. 8 d. making a Noble.

The VVeight

The VVeightes are two, viz. Troy, and Haverdupis; by the Troy is weighed Gold, Silver, Pearl, EleGnaries, Silke, Bread, &c. and this Weight is reduced into several Denominations, as Pounds, Ounces, Penny-weights, and Graines, where note, that 24 Graines maketh a Penny-weight, 20 Penny-weight an Ounce, and 12 Ounces a Pound. From this pound Troy Wet Measures are derived, where note that a Pint is a Pound. By the Haverdupis weight, are weighed, Lead, Tin, Iron, Flax, Fleish, Butter, Cheese, VVool, Sugar, Spices, and generally all gar-

bled Commodities. And this VVeight is reduced into several Denominations, as tons, hundreds, quarters, pounds and ounces; where note, that 16 ounces makes a li. 28 li. a Quarter, 4 Quarters a Hundred, or 112 li. 5 Hundred a Hoghead, and 20 Hundred a Tun.

The Measures are three, to wit, Dry, VVet, and Long: The dry Measures are those, in which any kind of dry Goods are Measured, as Corne, Coale, Sals, &c. of which  $\frac{1}{2}$  of a Pint may be termed the least; 2 pints make a Quart; 2 quarts a Pottle, 2 pottles a Gallon, or  $\frac{1}{2}$  Peck; 2 Gallons a Peck, 4 Pecks a Bushel Land Measure, and 5 Pecks a Bushel VVater Measure; 8 Bushels a Quarter, 4 quarters a Chaldron, 5 Quarters a VVey, and 10 quarters a Last.

Liquid Measures are those, in which all Liquid substances are measured, as Wine, Oyle, Beer, Ale, &c. of which  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a Pint may also be accounted the least; 2 pints make a quart, 2 quarts a pottle, 2 pottles a gallon, 8 gallons a firkin of Ale, and 9 gallons a firkin of Beer; 2 firkins a Kilderkin, 2 Kilderkins a Barrel, which is 36 Gallons; 42 gallons a Tierce, 63 gallons a Hoghead, 2 hogheads a Butt, or Pipe, and 2 Butts a Tun.

Long Measures are those by which all Cloth, Timber, Stone, Land, &c. is Measured, of which an Inch, which is held to be the length of 3 Barly Cornes, may be accounted the least: 12 Inches make a Foot, 3 foot a Yard, which may be divided into 16 parts, or nayles: 3 foot 9 Inches make an Ell; 6 Foot a Fathom; 5 $\frac{1}{2}$  yards, or 16 $\frac{1}{2}$  Foot makes a Rod, Perch, or Pole, 40 Rod, Perch, or Pole, make a Furlong, and 8 Furlongs a Mile English, which is 320 Poles, or 1760 yards, or 1056 Paces, at 4 Foot to each pace, or 5280 Feet, or 63360 Inches.

### Of Weights and Measures used in particular Commodities, viz.

A Fodder of Lead is 19; Hundred, a Load is 36 Formels, or 175 stone and a stone is 5 $\frac{1}{2}$  li.

A Fagot of steel is 120 li. A Barrel of Gadsteel is 180 li.

A stone of glass is 5 li. 24 stone, or 120 li. is a scame.

A

A L  
ry 12 an  
berrings

A Laz  
Firkin y  
Firkin y

A Lo  
timber,

length, a  
ness, A  
height, a

A Fag  
14 Inches

A Bid  
Inches in  
be 7; In  
Inches ab  
Inches ab

nicked wit  
the Biller  
of the mj

A full  
bushels.

Of Fur  
Fitches, 8  
Of Lamb  
Five score

10 Hid  
Last.

A Rom  
20 Quir

Reame is a  
Ling, Co  
to the Hun

A Lath  
inch thick.

A plain tr  
6; inches  
thickness,

in length,  
portion of

A Brick  
and 2 inch

A Pan, o  
square, and

HERTF  
ty, yielding

Meadows an  
Wood, wate

are in a he  
Towner the  
land that ca

room.  
Its chief  
on the Rive  
quity, is th  
name to the  
the said Riv  
and for a R

A *Last* of *Herrings* is 12 *Barrels*, every 12 an *Hundred*, and every *Hundred* 120 *herrings*.

A *Last* of *powder* is 24 *Firkins*, every *Firkin* weighing 100 *li*, and the empty *Firkin* 12 *li*.

A *Load* of *timber* is 50 *foot* of square *timber*, that is a *foot*, or 12 *Inches* in length, and as much in breadth and thickness. A *Stack* of *Wood* is 3: *foot* in height, and 12 in length.

A *Fagot* is to be 3 *foot* in length, and 14 *Inches* about.

A *Billet* ought to be 3 *foot* and 4 *Inches* in length, the single *Billet* must be 7: *Inches* about, the *Cast Billets* 10 *Inches* about, and the 2 *Cast Billets* 14 *Inches* about. *Billets* of a *cast* must be nicked within 4 *inches* of the ends and the *Billers* of two *casts* within 6 *inches* of the middle.

A full *sack* of *Charcoal* should be 4 *buishels*.

Of *Furs*, as *Martins*, *Sables*, *Fenets*, *Fitches*, &c. 40 *skins* make a *Timber*: Of *Lambs*, *Cats*, *Conceys*, *Kids*, &c. Five score make the hundred.

10 *Hides* are a *Dicker*, and 20 *Dickers* a *Last*.

A *Roole* of *Parchment* is 5 *dozen*. 20 *Quires* of *Paper* is a *Reame*, and 10 *Reame* is a *Bale*.

*Ling*, *Cod-fish*, *Haberdine*, &c. are 124 to the *Hundred*.

A *Lath* should be 2 *inches* broad, and an *inch* thick, and 5 *foot* long.

A *plain tile* must be 10: *inches* in length, 6: *inches* in breadth, and 1: of an *inch* in thickness. *Rose tiles* must be 13 *inches* in length, with a good and equal proportion of breadth and thickness.

A *Brick* must be 9 *inches* long, 4 broad, and 2 *inches* thick.

A *Pan*, or *paving tile*, must be 10 *inches* square, and about 1: *inch* thick.

HERTFORDSHIRE, a fertile County, yielding plenty of *Grain*, hath rich *Meadows* and *Pastures*, is well clothed with *Wood*, watered with fresh *streames*, situate in a healthful *Aire*, and for ancient *Townes* there is scarce its fellow in *England* that can shew so many, and in so little roome.

Its chief *places* are, 1. *Hertford*, seated on the *River Lea*, a *Town* of great *Antiquity*, is the chief *Shire Town*, and gives name to the *County*. 2. *Ware*, seated on the said *River*, of note, for its great *Bed*, and for a *River* from thence cut to *Lon-*

*don*, where it serveth divers *Families*, as being conveyed to them through the *Streets* by *Pipes*. 3. *St. Albons*, a fair *Town*, and of great *Antiquity*, so called from one *Alban*, a *Citizen*, who suffered *Martyrdom* in the time when *Dioclesian* went about to *Extirpe* the *Chri-*stian *Religion* out of this *Land*; It is dignified with an *Earldome*. 4. *Royston*, seated on the confines of *Cambridgeshire*, and is a large and well frequented *Market Town*, and more especially by reason of the *Malt* here made. 5. *Husfield*, once dignified with a *House* of the *Kings*, which now belongs to the *Earl of Salisbury*, being a place of great delight, as seated amongst *Parkes*. 6. *Walsford*, a large and well-frequented *Market-Town*. 7. *Berwet*, pleasantly seated in a sweet *Aire*, is a fair and well frequented *Market-Town*, and is of note for its good *Waters*. 8. *Stadsdon*, a fair *Market-Town*, not far from whence is the *Stately House* of *Theoballs*, most pleasantly seated amongst delightful *Walks*, *Gardens*, *Orchards*, and *Groves*. 9. *Bishops-Stratford*, another *Market-Town*, on the confines of *Essex*. 10. *Baldoc*, and 11. *Hitching*, both *Market-Towns*, and seated in a fertile *Soile*, and well inhabited by *Farmers*.

This *County* is divided into 8 *Hundreds*, in which are 120 *Parishes*, of which 18 are *Market-Townes*.

The Kingdom of the WEST-SAXONS, which contained the Counties of CORNWALL, DEVONSHIRE, SOMERSETSHIRE, WILTSHIRE, HANTSHIRE, DORSETSHIRE, and BARKSHIRE.

CORNWALL of old CORNUBIA, and so called from its waxing smaller and smaller, in manner of a *Horn*, and running forth into the *Sea* with little *Promontories* on every side like

Eccc little

Country of Cornwall described.

Weights is  
tions, as  
and ounces;  
akes a li.  
s a Hun-  
thead, and  
  
wit, Dry,  
asures are  
Goods are  
le, &c. of  
rmed the  
2 quarts a  
1 Peck; 2  
Land Mea-  
Water Mea-  
quarters a  
nd 10 quar-  
  
in which all  
d, as Wine,  
Of a Pint  
east; 2 pints  
e, 2 pottles 2  
e, and 9 gal-  
ins a Kilder-  
ch is 36 Gal-  
63 gallons a  
or Pipe, and  
  
by which all  
&c. is Meas-  
ch is held to  
rnes, may be  
hes make a  
may be divi-  
es: 3 foot 9  
or a Fathom;  
s a Rod, Perch,  
ole, make a  
mile English,  
60 yards; or  
ach pace; or  
  
Measures  
Commo-  
  
Hundred, a  
or 175 Stone,  
A Barrel of  
4 Stone; or 120  
A



In chief place.

little *horn*. This County is Mountainous and barren, yet by the industry of the *Husbandman* is found to afford plenty of *grain*, and the *Valleys* feed store of *Cattel*; In the *bowels* of the *earth* are rich *Mines* of *Tin*, and some of *Silver*, and from those of *Tin* the *Inhabitants* draw a very considerable profit, also their *Sea-Coasts* are very profitable unto them, out of which they take abundance of *Herrings* and *Pilchers*, which being salted, &c. they transport to *Spain*, *France*, *Italy*, and other parts. This County is encompassed with the *Sea*, except towards the East by *Devonshire*, and is well accommodated with commodious *Bays*, *Havens*, and *Sea-ports*, the chief of which, are, 1. *Foy*, a *Sea-port-Town*, of good antiquity. 2. *Trewarath*, seated on a large *Bay*. 3. *Port Lunny*, in *Guindraith Bay*. 4. *Falmouth Haven*, a place so commodious and large, that 100 Sail of *Ships* may safely ride at one time, and free from the fury of the *Seas*; it is also a place of great strength, as well by *Nature*, as made so by *Art*; more Westwards is the *Lizard*, a place well noted by *Seamen*. 5. *Mtunts-bay*, a safe and commodious *Bay* for *Shipping*, on which are seated several *Towns* as are *Falmouth*, and the rest; and nigh to this *Bay* is *Gedolphin Hill*, of note, for its plentiful *Mines* of *Tin*; and farther Westwards is the *Promontory*, named the *Lands-end*, so called, as being the utmost extent of *England*. 6. *St. Ithes-bay*, which is very large, and good for *shipping*. 7. *Padstow*, a fine *Town*, seated conveniently for *Traffic* with *Ireland*, from which it is not above 24 *hours sail*; its haven is good, and besides these afore-named, there are abundance of *Sea-port-Towns*, very commodious for *Shipping*. And within *Land* also great plenty, as 1. *Truro*, a *Town* of good account, being a *Mayor-town*, and endowed with divers *priviledges*, as *Coyage* of *tin*; 2. *Bodwan*. 3. *Camelford*. 4. *Launston*, &c.

Westward

The Lead. etc.

This County is divided into 9 *Hundreds*, in which are 161 *Parishes*, of which 23 are *Market towns*.  
 DEVONSHIRE, rich in *Veines* of *tin*, but in many places of a *Barren* nature, and very ungrateful to the *Husbandman*, without great paines and charges in *Manuring* it, which they do, by putting thereon a certain *Sand*, which they have from the *Sea-shore*: It is well watered with *Rivers*, and by reason of the commodiousness of the *Sea* is well inhabited, gar-

County of Devon. three parts.

In chief place.

nished with *Towns* both *Maritime* and *Inland*, the chief of which, are, 1. *Excester*, a fair *City*, pleasantly seated upon a little *Hill*, of an easie *Ascent*, and on the *Banks* of the *River Ex*, of a considerable *trade*, and well frequented by *Merchants* and others; It is environed with deep *Ditches*, and a strong *Wall*, which is in circuit about 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> *Mile*, besides its *Suburbs*, the whole *City* containing 15 *Parish Churches*, besides the *Minster*, a fair and beautiful *Structure*. Near the *East-Gate* is a *Castle* called *Rugemont*, which commands the whole *City*, and *Territory* round about it, and hath a pleasant *Prospect* into the *Sea*. It is dignified with the *See* of a *Bishop*, and is Governed by a *Lord Major*, and 14 *Aldermen*, as is *London*. 2. *Plimouth*, seated on the *River Plime*, which from a poor *Fisher-Village*, is now become (by reason of its commodious *Haven*, and excellent *Port*) a fair *Town*, well frequented, and is a place of great importance to *England*, not only for His *Majesty*, but for *Merchant ships* to *Anchor* in, and free from the danger of the *Sea* and *Enemies*, and therefore made a place of great *Strength*, being defended by a powerful *Castle*, besides strong *Fortifications* about its *Haven*, which for further security hath a *Chain* to *Lock* over as need requireth. The *Town* is divided into 4 *parts*, or *Wards*, and Governed by a *Mayor* ordained by *King Henry the Sixth*. 3. *Dartmouth*, a *Port-town*, hath a commodious *haven*, furnished with good *Shipping*, and well frequented by *Merchants*, is a place of good strength, being defended by two *Castles*, and Governed by a *Major*, by grant by *King Edward the third*. 4. *Truro*, seated by the *River Ex*, a *Town* in former times of greater *Account* then now, yet it is of some esteem for its *Clothings* there made. And 5. *Bedford*, a well frequented *Town*, having a fine *Stone-bridge*, made of *Arched-work*, over the *T. Ex*.

10

20

30

40

50

This County is divided into 32 *Hundreds*, in which are 324 *Parishes*, of which 40 are *Market-Towns*.

SOMERSETSHIRE, a large and wealthy *County*, of a fertile *Soile* both for *Pasture* and *Corn*, yet not without *Stony Hills*; it is blest with a sweet and healthful *Aire*, is exceeding populous, and well frequented, and more especially by reason of its commodious *Havens* and *Sea-port-towns*: it hath rich *Lead-mines*,

The County of Somerset.

'tis a C Summer reason of caufeth

Its

1. Brif which i

fended it is bea

and its of the c

that no

habitant

river as

two diff

counted

other, h

ing of its

is exce

frequent

2. Bath a

low, in a

Hills, o

springs

to it. It

clothing,

inal Bat

found to

ring man

in mans b

small Cie

are fair a

many pu

a large

5. Tann

santly Ce

for its C

are found

Bristol-  
far from

Abby of

the body

terr'd.

This

two Ha

38; Par

Market-  
WILL

County.

its north

well clo

rich val

sheep. I

Dike, w

for man

of some

by the



and much frequented by shipping. 4. *Basingstoke* a well frequented Market town. 5. *Silchester* an ancient City once of good account, but now reduced to ruins.

This County is divided into 37 hundreds, in which are 153 *Parishes*, of which 18 are *Market towns*, and in this County is *New Forest*, well provided with *Venison*.

**DORSETSHIRE** of a fertile soil, and breedeth great store of *sheeps* the north part is hilly, and indifferently clothed with *wood*, but intermixed with delectable *valleys*. It is throughout replenished with abundance of good *towns*, and on its *Sea Coasts* are commodious *havens*, *ports*, and *bays*, the chief of which are, 1. *Weymouth*, though but a small town, yet by reason of its good *haven*, is a place well frequented. 2. *Portland* a small Isle of about seven miles compass, not over-fertile, nor well inhabited, on the North side it is defended by a *Castle*, built by *K. Henry* the eighth. 3. *Lime* a small town, situate on a steep Hill, frequented by *Fisher-men*. 4. *Biriport* seated between two small *rivers*, its soil yeeldeth excellent *Hemp*, of which its *Inhabitants* make *Ropes* and *Cables*. 5. *Waxham* strongly seated on every side, except Westward, with the river *Trent*, *Frome* and the *Sea*. 6. *Sbirburn* a Town or *Castle* pleasantly seated, nigh a *Forest*, well frequented, and of good antiquity. 7. *Shaftsbury* a town of great antiquity, and pleasantly seated on an Hill, but very defective of *Water*. 8. *Poole* beautified with fair *houses*, and its *Inhabitants* wealthy, and lastly *Dorchester* a fair town consisting of three *Parish Churches*, and is a place of good account.

This County is divided into five *Divisions*, which are subdivided into 34 hundreds, in which are 248 *Parishes*, of which 18 are *Market towns*.

**BERKSHIRE** indifferently fertile, is well watered with *Rivers*, the chief of which is the *Isis*, which after takes the name of *Thames*. Its chief places are, 1. *Windsor* situate near the banks of the *Thames*, dignified with a *Royal Castle*, and House of the *Kings*, so pleasantly seated upon an Hill, that it hath a most delectable prospect round about, and is a place of such delight, that our *Kings* have oftentimes resided here, and many of which have been here interr'd, and here it is that the Ceremony of the *Knights* of the No-

ble Order of the *Garter* is solemnized on *St. George's day* in great pomp and Majesty. Nigh to this *Town* is another of greater antiquity, though not of so much splendor, called old *Windsor*, nigh unto which is a *Park* and *Forest* so called, being places of great delight, wherein are found variety of Game both for *Hawk* and *Hound*. Northwards of new *Windsor* is 10 *Eaton* seated on the *Thames* but on the other side, over which there is a *Bridge* for convenience of Passengers: This place is of great note for its fair *College*, and famous *School* of good Literature, founded by King *Henry* the sixth, wherein are besides the *Provost*, 8 *Fellows*, and the singing *Christians*, 60 *Scholars*, which in due time are sent to the *University of Cambridge*. 2. *Reading*, a fair, large *Town*, containing three *Parish Churches*, seated on the Banks of the *Thames*, which with several other smaller *Rivers* take their courses through it, over which for the convenience of the *Inhabitants* are placed *Bridges*: It is a *Town* of great resort and trading, and the more for its several *Manufactures* of *Clab*, &c. here made. 3. *Newbery* an ancient town, and of good trade for *clothing*. 4. *Abington* a fair town, and of good antiquity. 5. *Ockenham*, &c. 6. *Wallingford*, and 7. *Maidenhead* seated on the *Thames*, all three good *Market-towns*.

This County is divided into 20 hundreds, in which are 140 *Parishes*, of which 11 are *Market towns*.

**The KINGDOM of the NORTHUMBERS, which contained the Counties of YORKSHIRE, LANCASHIRE, DURHAM, CUMBERLAND, WEST-MORLAND, and NORTHUMBERLAND.**

**YORKSHIRE** of a large extent, being accounted the greatest County

Copy of  
Windsor  
were de-  
fined.

In chief  
places.

Copy of  
Windsor  
devised.

In chief  
places.

Copy of  
Yorkshire  
devised  
in

in Eng-  
ference  
nerality  
the gro-  
another  
if it is  
another  
through  
sides of  
parts,  
are fou-  
known  
The  
parts, v-  
ters of t-  
as lying  
reguard  
Riding  
which a  
first wis-

The divi-  
of  
Yorkshire.

It is  
1177  
1770.

In chief  
towns.

This  
(as lying  
York) is  
*Darwen*  
course to  
Places is  
upon *H*  
*River H*  
place of  
and frec-  
ording  
well furn-  
a place  
bid defi-  
an *Army*  
*houses*, &  
Its *houses*  
peved, o-  
street in  
ing a pla-  
cessary  
*Tar*, &c.  
porate  
*Sheriff*  
taken g-  
which t-  
ley, a lar-  
towne.  
which g-  
adjoinin-  
*lington*  
rough, n-  
called *F*  
a place  
diously  
the main  
pleasanc

in England, extending it self in circumference about 380 miles, and for the generality of a fertile soil, for if in one place the ground is barren, stony, or sandy, in another place it is deep, and fruitful; and if it is defective in one place of wood, in another place that defect is supplied; It is throughout well watered with Rivers, besides the sea which washeth its Eastern parts. The Inhabitants of this County are found to make abundance of Cloth, known by the name of *Torkshier cloth*.

The whole Shire is divided into three parts, which according to the three quarters of the world are called the *East-Riding*, as lying Eastwards; the *North-Riding*, as regarding the North; and the *West-Riding* as being westwards, in each of which there are abundance of towns: and first with the *East-Riding*.

*The East-Riding.*

This Part called the *EAST-RIDING* (as lying Eastwards from the City of *Tork*) is parted from the rest by the River *Darwent*, which after a long and crooked course falleth into the *Humber*. The chief Places in this part are, 1. *Hull*, or *Kingston* upon *Hull*, commodiously seated on the River *Humber*, by reason of which it is a place of good Traffique, well inhabited and frequented by Merchants, and affording store of good Merchandise, being well furnished with shipping. The town is a place of great strength, being able to bid defiance both to a Navy by Sea, or an Army by Land, by reason of its *Block-houses*, *Castles*, *Forts*, *Wall*, and *Trenches*. Its houses are fair and well built, its streets paved, one of which resembling *Thames-street* in *London* towards the *Bridge*, it being a place where are vendd all things necessary for Ships, as *Cordage*, *Sails*, *Pitch*, *Tar*, &c. This town is a County incorporate by it self, having a *Mayor* and a *Sheriff*. In the adjoining seas are yearly taken great quantities of *Herrings*, from which they gain good profit. 2. *Beverley*, a large, populous, and well frequented town. 3. *Howden* a good market town, which gives name to a small territory adjoining called *Howdenshires*. 4. *Bridlington* a well known town. 5. *Flamborough*, nigh unto which is a Promontory called *Flamborough head*, and 6. *Patrington* a place of good antiquity, being commodiously seated between the *Humber*, and the *main sea*, into both which it hath a pleasant prospect: and here is *Stanford*

*Bridge*, or *Battle-bridge*, of note for the great *Battel* there fought.

*The North-Riding.*

This part of *Torkshire* called the *NORTH-RIDING* is of a large extent, comprehending within it the County of *RICHMOND*, which is its western part.

*The North-Riding* is a County of *Richmond* which is its western part.

The chief places in this part in the particular of *Torkshire* are, 1. *Malton*, a well known, and frequented *Market-town*, for *corn*, *fish*, *horses*, and for several *Wainfels* for *Husbandry*. 2. *Pickering* a fair town belonging to the *Dutchy of Lancaster*, and to this town do belong several small villages, which as it were to encompass it, that the adjacent Country is called *Pickering-Lith*, the Forest of *Pickering*, and Liberty of *Pickering*; it is seated on a hill, and fortified with an old *Castle*.

3. *Kirby-Mosside* a noted and well frequented market town. 4. *Tare* a good *Market town*. 5. *Skengrave* a small town seated on the *sea-shore*, but well frequented by *Fishermen* in the season for taking of *Herrings*. Near unto *Hunt-cliff*, and not far from the shore, there appeareth at a low water Rocks about which the *seal-fish* (a fish so called) come in great shoals, and lie sunning themselves and sleeping, who, as 'tis reported, have one of them to watch as a *Sentinel* for a time, to look that they be not taken sleeping, so that if any danger approacheth them, they use to awaken the rest by flinging themselves into the water, and making a noise, by which means the rest may make their escape. On this shore there is a Bay, which they call *Robin-hoods-bay*, and on this shore is found *black Amber*, or *Fer*, and here is *Scarborough Castle*, nigh unto which is the town of *Walgrave* seated on the sea. And 6. *Guburgh* a town of a delightful situation. In this part is the vale of *Rhidall*, a fertile and pleasant place, wherein are twenty and three *Parish Churches*.

The other part of this Shire which maketh up the *North-Riding* is *RICHMOND-SHIRE*, so called from a *Castle*. It lieth very high, being mountainous and rockie, in which are good Mines of *Lead*, *Copper*, and *Pit-coal*, being interlaced with fertile valleys.

*Richmondshire* is a County of *Richmond* which is its western part.

Its chief places are, 1. *Richmond* a fair, large town, being walled and fortified with a *Castle*, well inhabited, and frequented. 2. *Bedale*, 3. *Wens*. And 4. *Mashaw*. And

FFF

*The East-Riding*

*Richmond*

*Richmond*

*Richmond*

mized on  
and Ma-  
another of  
of so much  
nigh unto  
dled, being  
are found  
*Hawk* and  
*Windsor* is  
es but on  
there is a  
Passengers  
ool for its  
ool of good  
*Henry* the  
the *Provek*,  
*Christfers*,  
e sent to  
3. *Reading*,  
three *Parish*-  
anks of the  
other smaller  
ough it, over  
f the Inhabi-  
is a *Town* of  
the more for  
*Ab*, &c. here  
rent town, and  
4. *Abington*  
d antiquity.  
*Kingford*, and  
the *Thames*,  
into 20 *hundreds*, of which  
*M* of the  
*BERS*,  
e *Counies*  
*HIRE*,  
*HIRE*,  
*CUM*-  
*WEST*-  
*D*, and  
*ABER*.

large extent  
great Country

*Richmond*

11

in this part of *Yorkshire* there are several *Castles*.

*The West-Riding.*

This part of *Yorkshire* called the *WETS-RIDING* is of a large extent, well watered with *Rivers*, and populous. Its chief places are, 1. *Tork*, a fair, large, and beautiful *City*, adorned with many splendid *buildings* both publick and private. It is pleasantly seated on the *River* *10* *Onfe*, or *Ure*, which separates it into two parts, but joynd together by a fair *Stone-bridge*, sustained by several *Arches*, and of these parts that towards the East is most populous, the *houses* standing thicker, and the *streets* narrower. It is a *City* of great antiquity, being esteemed the second of all *England*, is very populous, well frequented, and of a good *trade*. It is dignified with an *Episcopal See*, and the *Courts* of *Judicature*, held for the neighbouring *Marshes*, according to that of *Ludlow*. It is a place of great strength, well fortified, and enclosed with a fair *Wall* and the *River*. its *Cathedral* which is dedicated to *S<sup>t</sup> Peter* is a very stately and magnificent structure, near unto which is the *Princes house*, commonly called the *Manner*: This *City* is famous for giving birth to *Constantine* the Great, as also for being the Burial place of the Emperor *Severus*, where he had his *Palace*. 2. *Halifax* seated in a barren soil, yet by reason of the Industry of its *Inhabitants* in their making of *Cloth*, by which they gain good riches, it is a place of good account, large, numbering 14 *Chappels*; whereof two are *Parish Churches*, very populous, and well frequented. It is a *town* of good antiquity, and of note for its custom in beheading of *Malefactors*. 3. *Wakefield*, a well frequented *market-town*, of good antiquity, well known for its clothing there made. It is a large *town*, and beautified with neat *buildings*, and where there is a fair *Bridge*, upon which *King Edward* the fourth erected a splendid *Chappel*, in remembrance of those who there lost their lives in *Battel*. 4. *Pontiffraff* seated very delightfully, adorned with fair *buildings*, and defended by a strong *Castle* seated on a *Rock*, and fortified with *Ditches* and *Bulwarks*; and here groweth *Liquorice* and *Skinworts* in great plenty. 5. *Sheffield* a *town* of good note for the great quantity of *Smiths* there inhabiting, who make divers sorts of *Tools*; and other things of *iron*, as also *Knives* called *Sheffield blades*. It is defended by a *Castle* of good anti-

The West-Riding described.

City of York.

Halifax.

quity. 6. *Doncaster* an ancient *town*, where there is a fair *Church* dedicated to *S<sup>t</sup> George*. 7. *Tickhill* an ancient *town*, defended by an old *Castle*. 8. *Rotherham* of note for giving Birth to that wise man *Tho. Rotherham* Archbishop of *York*. 9. *Leeds* a *town* of good riches, by reason of its clothing here made. 10. *Shirburn* a small, but well inhabited, *town*. 11. *Rippon* beautified with a fair *Church*, which hath three lofty *Spire-Steeple*: and 12. *Selby* a small *town* but well inhabited and frequented; and here it was that *K. Hen.* the first was born.

In this part of *Yorkshire* is *Hatfield chase*, a place of great game and delight, where there is store of *Red Deer*. Likewise in this part there are several *Castles*, some of which I have named.

This large *County* is divided into 32 *Hundreds*, in which are 459 *Parish Churches*, under which are many *Chappels* of ease, which for quantity of *Inhabitants* are equal to many *Parishes*, and amongst these *Parishes* are 43 *market towns*. Besides in that part which passeth under the name of *Richmondshire* there are 104 *Parish Churches*; besides *Chappels* of ease, which maketh in all 567.

30 *LANCASHIRE*, or the *County Palatine* of *LANCASTER* is large, populous, mountainous, and well clothed with *wood*, and where the ground is plain, and champion, it is very grateful to the *husbandman*, except some moist and unwholsome places, which they call *Messes*, and in recompence of that defect, the *Inhabitants* are supplied with a sort of fowel called *Peas*, which is a very good fowl, and in these 40 *Messes* are dug up good *Timber trees*. The *Cattle* that are here bred, are fair, large, and well proportioned. Amongst the *Hills* or *Mountains* in this *Shire*, that of *Penden hill* may be esteemed the chief, which for height seemeth to overtop the *clouds*. It is well watered with *Rivers*, in which as also in the *sea*, the *Inhabitants* are furnished with store of *fish*, from which, as also from its *Forests*, which are spacious, they are plentifully supplied with *fowl* and *game*.

The chief places in this *Shire* are, 1. *Lancaster* a *City*; but of no great account, being slenderly inhabited, and frequented, yet is it the chief of the *County*. It is seated on the river *Lune* or *Lone*, over which it hath a fair *Bridge*, and on the ascent of a *hill*, on which the *Church* standeth, as also a *Castle* which is of good strength.

County of Lancashire described.

City of Lancaster.

streng  
and w  
town of  
town, c  
Yorkshir  
Market  
River  
Market  
River  
Manche  
beauty,  
Linn  
is beauti  
and a fa  
towne in  
Burgesse  
10. Linn  
sey, to ca  
eth it fel  
reason of  
conveni  
much fre  
who pass  
This C  
in which a  
great man  
15 Market  
DURHAM  
Durham, i  
stem par  
Wood, as a  
some ferti  
the Mount  
the contra  
fertile Soil  
man, is ple  
and hath  
digg out of  
Its chief  
on an easie  
sed with  
standeth.  
some Acco  
ed with fa  
is the Cath  
the Market  
to which is  
others. It  
being forti  
which stand  
between a  
Wall it ha  
Churches.  
sied with  
pole, comm  
hath a goo  
which mak  
ally by Fij  
ket-Town, w



strength. 2. *Preston*, a large faire town, and well-inhabited. 3. *Kirkham*, a town of some account. 4. *Colne*, a good town, on the edge of this shire, towards *Yorkshire*. 5. *Blackborne*, a well-known Market-town. 6. *Rochdale*, seated on the River *Roch*, and is also a well-frequented Market-town. 7. *Bolton*, seated on the River *Irwell*, another Market-town. 8. *Manchester*, a Town of great Antiquity, beauty, resort and trade, by reason of the *Linnen* and *Woollen Cloth* here made; It is beautified with a fair Church, a Colledge, and a fair Market-place. 9. *Wiggings*, a town incorporated, having a Mayor and Burgesses, and where is kept a Fair. And 10. *Litherspole*, seated on the River *Mersy*, so called of the Water, which spreadeth it self like a Pool. This place, by reason of its commodious situation, and convenient passage over to *Ireland*, is much frequented by Merchants and others, who pass these Seas.

This County is divided into 6 Hundreds, in which are 36 Parish-Churches, besides a great many Chappels, amongst which are 15 Market-Towns.

**DURHAM**, called the *Bishoprick of Durham*, is of a different Soile, the Western part being hilly, barren, and thin of Wood, as also of Townes, but not without some fertile Valleys; and in the Bowels of the Mountains are Mines of Iron, &c. On the contrary, the Eastern part is of a fertile Soile, and grateful to the Husbandman, is plentifully garnished with Townes, and hath store of Pit-coale, which they digg out of the Earth.

Its chief places are, 1. *Durham*, seated on an easie ascent, and almost encompassed with the River *Wore*, on which it standeth. It is a faire large Town, of some Account, well inhabited, beautified with fair Buildings, amongst which is the Cathedral Church, a lofty structure, the Market-place, which is spacious, nigh to which is *St. Nicholas Church*, and some others. It is a place of good strength, being fortified with a Wall, and a Castle, which standeth in the midst, and as it were between a Stone-bridges, and without the Wall it hath suburbs, where are other Churches. This Town or City is dignified with an *Episcopal See*. 2. *Harlespole*, commodiously seated on the Sea, hath a good and safe Harbour for ships, which makes it well frequented, especially by Fishermen. 3. *Stayndrap*, a Market-Town, where there is a Collegiat Church,

4. *Darlington*, a well frequented Market Town, beautified with a fair Church. 5. *Ankland*, so called of Oakes thereabouts, it is beautified with a fair Bridge, and the Pallace of the Bishop. 6. *Gateshead*, a Town of good note, seated nigh unto *New-Castle*: And 7. *Farrow*, the Native Soile of the venerable *Bede*, where in ancient time flourished a little Monastery.

In this Bishoprick are 118 Parish Churches, among which are 6 Market Townes.

**CUMBERLAND**, which, by reason of its Northern Scituation, is inclined to much cold; it is Mountainous and Hilly, wherein are Mines of Lead, Copper and Brajs, and some of Silver, which causeth much sterility; nevertheless it is not without fertile Valleys, which bear good Corne, and feed store of Sheep, and other Cattel. It is well watered with several Rivers, which empty themselves, either alone, or conjoynd with others into the Sea, which walsheth one part of it: Here are also several large Meeres, which not only furnish the Inhabitants with store of Fish, but also with great plenty of sundry sorts of Wilde-Fowle. And this Shire, of others in England, sheweth the most Roman Antiquities.

Its chiefe places are, 1. *Carlisle*, an ancient City, no less pleasantly, than commodiously seated at the influx, or meeting of several Rivers, which do encompass it, except towards the South; for, on the East it hath the River *Peteril*, on the West the River *Caud*; and on the North the Channel *Eden*, which receiveth the others; and after it hath run a small course, it dischargeth it self into the *Eden*, or rather an Arme of the Sea, so called. And besides this Scituation, for its further strength and security, (as lying nigh to *Scotland*) it is fortified with a strong Castle, which is seated on the West-side of the City, together with a no less strong Cittadel, and divers Bulwarks on the East-side; and to add to its further strength, it is begirt with a strong Wall: The City is faire, and beautified with a Cathedral Church, seated in the midst, which exalting it self to a good height, adds no small Splendor to the City, being a structure of curious Workmanship: It is dignified with an *Episcopal-See*. 2. *Brampton*, a Market-Town, nigh unto the *Pitts Wall*. 3. *Ferby*, a well frequented Market Town. 4. *Cokermouth*, scituate on the River *Cooker*, somewhat low, and between 2 Hills,

County of Cumber-land described.

See Bur-tons Com-ment on Antonine by Strabo. Page 11.

In chiefe Part of Carlisle.

County of Lancashire described.

In chiefe Part of Lancashire.

2 Hills, upon one of which is seated the Church, and upon the other a strong Castle; the Town is fair, well built, and hath a Market, which is well frequented. 5. *Winkington*, seated on the Sea, a place noted for the taking of *Salmons*. 6. *Egremont*, seated on a fair River, and not far from the Sea. 7. *Ravenglass*, situated on the Sea, and between 2 Rivers, and is a Road, or Harbour for ships: And 8. *Penrith*, a well frequented Market Towne, beautified with a fair Church, and large Market place, and is defended by a Castle.

This Shire is not divided into *Hundreds* as others are, but hath 58 *Parishes*, amongst which are 9 *Market-Towns*.

WESTMORELAND, a Moorish, Hilly, and barren Country; yet the Southern part, which lieth between the River *Lone*, and *Winander Mere*, is indifferent fertile in the *Valleys*, but hath many *Felles*, with rough and stony *Rocks*, which are always bare, and without *Grass*; and this part is called the *Barony* of *Kendale* and *Candale*; that is, the *Dale* by *Can*, so called from the River *Can*, which runneth through it. It is well watered with *Rivers*.

The chief places in this Shire, are, 1. *Kendale*, seated on the River *Can*, built in forme of a *Cross*, having 2 long *Streets* overthwarting one another; is a *Town* of great *Resort*, *Trade* and *Riches*, by reason of *Woollen-Cloths* that are here made, which find vent through all parts of *England*. 2. *Kirby-Lonsdale* on the River *Lone*, to which all the *People* there adjacent repair, both to *Church*, and to *Market*. 3. *Apleby*, of more *Antiquity* than beauty, being slenderly inhabited, and its *Buildings* meane; its chief beauty lying in one broad *Street*, in the upper part whereof standeth a *Castle*, which is wholly encompassed with the *Eden*, and in the lower part are seated the *Church* and *Schools*; The *Castle* at present serveth as the common *Goal* for *Offenders*, where the *Sessions* and *Assises* are kept; And 4. *Kirby-Stephens*, a well frequented *Market-Town*. And in this *County*, for its defence, are several *Castles*.

This Shire is not divided into *Hundreds* as others are; it hath 26 *Parishes*, among which are 4 *Market-Towns*.

NORTHUMBERLAND, plentifully furnished with *Pits* of *Coale*, from which the *Inhabitants* draw great profit. The Land is more inclined to *Sterility* than *Fertility*, yet towards the *Sea*, through

the industry of good *Husbandry*, it is indifferent fertile.

The chief places in this *County*, are, 1. *New-Castle*, commodiously seated on the *Tine*, where it hath a deep and good *Haven*, by reason of which it is a place of great *Traffique*, especially for *Sea-coale*, from whence many hundred of *Ships* do annually receive their *Lading*, which they unlade at *London*, and elsewhere, (this place being their *Store-House* for *Coales*) which hath added no small *Wealth* to the *Town*. They have also a considerable *Trade* with the *Germanys*, and other *Nations*; The *Town* is large, numbring 4 *Churches*, is very populous, and well frequented; its *Houses* are fair, is a place of great strength, being begirt with a strong *Wall*, on which are many *Turrets*, and for entrance hath 7 *Gates*; and besides the *Wall* it is further strengthened and defended by a strong *Castle*. 2. *Barwick*, seated on the utmost confines of *England*, is a *town* of great strength, as well by *Nature* as *Art*, being almost encompassed by the *Sea*, and the River *Tweed*, on which it is begirt with a *Wall*, and is strongly *Fortified*, being a place of great *Importance*. 3. *Alnwick*, or *Anwick*, a *town* of some note for the *Victory* here obtained by the *English* against the *Scots*, and is fortified with a strong *Castle*. 4. *Morpeth*, seated on the River *Westsbeck*, and is a place of some account and strength, being also defended by a *Castle*: And 5. *Otterburne*, of note for the *Battel* here fought between the *English* and the *Scots*; the *English* under the Conduct of *Sir Henry Percy*, and the *Scots* under the Command of *William Douglas*.

Upon the West-part of this Shire did run the *Pills Wall*, some of which is yet standing, and of a good height. This *Wall* was built by *Severus* the *Emperour*, to secure the Northern part of *England*, or the *Romane Empire* from the *Incurfions* of the *Pills*, which were a *Barbarous* and *troublesome People*; and this was of great strength, being made of *Stone*, and of a great height and thickness, and having at every *Miles* end a *Watch-tower* where the *Sentinels* stood, which, upon any occasion were to give notice thereof.

This Shire is not divided as yet into *Hundreds*; it hath 47 *Parish-Churches*, of which 5 are *Market-towns*.

County of Westmoreland described.

In this Shire.

The County of Northumberland described.

The  
M  
er  
H  
B  
B  
L  
T  
L  
L  
N  
D  
G  
W  
W  
FC  
S  
I  
and

H  
b  
for Tilla  
ched with  
and is v  
chief of  
it self in  
the Sou  
Its ch  
pleasant  
which in  
towns is  
is well  
ing the  
cheffer,  
a rich  
store of  
Onse, op  
it is not  
among w  
and Far  
England.  
4. St. N  
one New

The KINGDOME of  
 MERCIA, which contain-  
 ed the COUNTIES of  
 HUNTINGTON,  
 BUCKINGHAM,  
 BEDFORD, RUT-  
 LAND, NOR-  
 THAMPTON,  
 LEICESTER,  
 LINCOLNE,  
 NOTTINGHAM,  
 DARBY, OXFORD,  
 GLOCESTER,  
 WORCESTER,  
 WARWICK, STAF-  
 FORD, CHESHIRE,  
 SHROPSHIRE,  
 and HEREFORD.

HUNTINGTONSHIRE, a small,  
 but fertile and rich County, both  
 for Tillage and Pasturage; it is well clo-  
 thed with Wood, and hath store of Parks,  
 and is well watered with Rivers, the  
 chief of which is the *Ouse*, which divides  
 it self into several streames, and waters  
 the Southern part of the County.

Its chief places are, 1. *Huntington*,  
 pleasantly seated on the River *Ouse*, over  
 which it hath a fair Stone-Bridge; the  
 town is large, containing 4 *Parish-Churches*,  
 is well frequented and inhabited, as be-  
 ing the chief *Shire-town*. 2. *Goodman-*  
*chester*, a large Country-Town, seated in  
 a rich and fertile Soile, yielding great  
 store of *Corn*; and on the other side the  
*Ouse*, opposite to *Huntington*, from which  
 it is not far distant, it is well frequented,  
 among which there are more able *Yeomen*  
 and *Farmers*: then in any Town in all  
*England*. 3. *Ainsbury*, a good town,  
 4. *St. Neots*, or *St. Needs*, so called from  
 one *Neotus*, a man no less holy then learned.

5. *St. Ives*, a fair Town, seated on the  
*Ouse*, so called, from one *Ivo*, a *Persian*  
*Bishop*, who, as 'tis reported, about the  
 Year 600, Travelled through *England*,  
 Preaching the *Gospel*, and here ended his  
 dayes. And 6. *Kimbolton*: And here  
 is the Wealthy Abby of *Ramsay* of anti-  
 ent note.

This County is divided into 4 *Hun-*  
*dreds*, in which are 78 *Parishes*, of which  
 6 are *Market-towns*.

BUCKINGHAMSHIRE for the most  
 part of a rich Soile; fruitful in *Corn*, well  
 inhabited, and the People are much adict-  
 ed to Grasing of *Cattel*, by which they  
 get good *Estates*.

Its chief places are, 1. *Buckingham*,  
 seated on the River *Ouse*. 2. *Ailesbury*,  
 a faire *Market-town*, encompassed with  
 many rich *Meadows* and *Pastures*, lying in  
 the *Vale*, called the *Vale of Ailesbury*.  
 3. *Stony-Stratford*, so named from its *Sto-*  
*mines*, and its Foord. 4. *Marlow*, seated  
 on the *Thames*, a pretty town, and here is  
 great quantity of *marle*, or *chalk*, with  
 which the *Husbandmen* use to Manure  
 their Ground, which addeeth great *Ferti-*  
*lity*: And 5. *High-Wickham*, which for  
 largeness and fairness of *Houses*, is not  
 inferior to any in the County, being  
 likewise a *Mayor-town*.

This County is divided into 8 *Hun-*  
*dreds*, in which are 185 *Parishes*, of which  
 11 are *Market-towns*.

BEDFORDSHIRE, of a different  
 Soile, but well watered with fresh streams,  
 the East-part is dry ground, and bare of  
 Wood; and the South part is more fer-  
 tile.

Its chief places are, 1. *Bedford*, a fair  
 town, containing 5 *Parish-Churches*, plea-  
 santly seated, the River *Ouse* taking its  
 course through the midst thereof; It is of  
 great antiquity, well frequented, and is the  
 chief town of the *shire*. 2. *Potton*, a  
 small *Market-town*. 3. *Hockley in the*  
*Hole*, so named from the *Mire-ways* in the  
 Winter Season, which are found excee-  
 ding troublesome to *travellers*: And  
 4. *Dunstable*, seated in a Chalky-ground,  
 well inhabited, full of *Inns*, and hath four  
*Streets*, which answer the 4 *Cardinal winds*:  
 in every one of which is a large *Pond* of  
 standing water for the conveniency of the  
*Inhabitants*.

This County is divided into 9 *Hundreds*,  
 in which are 116 *Parishes*, of which 10 are  
*Market-towns*.

Gggg

RUT-

y, it is in-  
 any, are, <sup>In chief</sup>  
 seated on <sup>Platts</sup>  
 and good <sup>Castles</sup>  
 is a place  
 Sea-coale,  
 of Ships do  
 which they  
 here, (this  
 for Coales)  
 Wealth to  
 a considera-  
 and other  
 numbring 4  
 and well fre-  
 is a place of  
 with a strong  
 Turrets, and  
 and besides  
 thned and de-  
 2. *Barwic*,  
 is of *England*,  
 as well by  
 it incompat-  
 Twerd, on  
 Wall, and is  
 place of great  
 or *Anwick*, a  
 Victory here  
 inst the *Scots*,  
 ng Castle. 4.  
 ver *Wesbeek*,  
 et and strength,  
 Castle: And  
 r the Bloody  
 en the *English*  
 ists under the  
 erey, and the  
 nd of *William*  
 this *Shire* did  
 of which is yet  
 height. This  
 the Emperour,  
 re of *England*,  
 m the Incursi-  
 ere a Barbarous  
 and this was of  
 de of *Stone*, and  
 ickness, and ha-  
 a *Watch-tower*  
 d, which, upon  
 e notice there-  
 ided as yet into  
 rish-Churches, of  
 s.

The

County of Rutland described.

RUTLANDSHIRE, so called, according to the opinion of some, from the redness of the Earth, It is the least County of England, is well watered with Rivers, and is of a fertile Soile.

In chief places.

Its chief places are, 1. Uppingham, seated on an eminence, is a well frequented Market-town, and hath a Free-School. 2. Okeham, seated in a no less pleasant then fruitful Vale, called the Vale of Camose, a place well clothed with Wood, it is a good Market-town, and hath also a Free-School. 3. Burley. 4. Briggaster. And 5. Ribah.

County of Northampton described.

This small County is divided into 5 Hundreds, in which are 48 Parishes, amongst which are 2 Market-towns.

NORTHAMPTONSHIRE, a Champaign Countrey, of a fat Soile both for Tillage and Pasturage, which feed store of Sheep, It is very populous, and so full of townes, that in many places one may number 20 or 30 Steeples or Towers, which present themselves in view at once.

In chief places.

Its chief places are, 1. Northampton, seated in the middle of the County, and on the North-bank of the River Nufon, It is a fair and large City, containing 7 Churches within its Walls, from whence it hath a goodly prospect; it is beautified with fair Houses, and dignified with an Earldome. 2. Peterborough, seated on the Nen, a fair City, dignified with an Episcopal See, with an Earldome, as also with an antique Monastery, which was dedicated to St. Peter. 3. Osndle, seated also on the River Nen, a good and well frequented Market-town, beautified with a fair Church, a Free-School, and an Almes-house. 4. Kettering, another well frequented Market-town: And 5. Deventrey, a thorough-fair Town, and well accommodated with Inns. In this County is Fotheringhay-Castle, where Mary Queen of Scots was Beheaded.

County of Leicester described.

This Shire is divided into 10 Hundreds, in which are 326 Parishes, among which are 10 Market-towns.

LEICESTERSHIRE, a Champaign Countrey, of a Fertile Soile, abounding in Corne, especially in Pease and Beanes, hath good Pasturage, and feeds abundance of Sheep, whose Wool is very fine.

In chief places.

The chief places in this County are, 1. Leicester, seated on the Soar, and in a rich and pleasant Soile; It is a place more famous for its antiquity then beauty, having lost much of its former splendor. 2. Harborough, of note, for its great Fair for Cattel. 3. Bosworth, an ancient

Market-town; and here it was, in the Fields, that King Richard the Third in a Pitch'd-Battel, was slain, and Henry, Earl of Richmond, Proclaimed King in the Field amongst the dead. 4. Cole-Overtton, or Orton, of note for its Cole-mines. 5. Lutterworth, beautified with a fair Church: And 6. Burton-Laxers, so called from a famous Hospital which was founded for Cure of Leprous People.

This County is divided into 6 Hundreds, in which are 200 Parishes, among which are 12 Market-towns.

LINCOLNESHIRE, a large County, generally of a fertile Soile both for Corne and Grass, feeding many Cattel, it is well watered with Rivers, besides the Sea, which washeth one part of it; by reason of which it affordeth great plenty of Fowle and Fish. The whole Shire is divided into 3 parts, Lindsey, Holland, and Kesteven, in which are many well inhabited Townes.

The chief places in the part of Lindsey are, 1. Lincoln, pleasantly seated on the side of a Hill, and on the River Witham, which divideth it self into 3 small streams and watereth its Lower part; It is a faire and large City, containing 14 Churches, is of great antiquity and fame in former times, is beautified with many fair Buildings, the chief of which is the Minster, which is the best of all England: The City is dignified with an Episcopal See, is a place of a considerable Trade, and well frequented and inhabited. 2. Gainsborough, seated on the River Trent, a good Market-Town. 3. Wainfleet. 4. Alford. 5. Grimby, on the Sea, at the entrance of the Humber, all 3 Market Towns.

The next part is Holland, which may be divided into the higher and lower: In the higher are the Townes of, 1. Boston, seated on both sides of the River Witham, over which it hath a fair Bridge, full of Wood, and is not far from the Sea, and by reason of its haven is well frequented; its Market-place is fair and large; as also its Church, whose Tower exaltech it selfe to a great height, and serveth as a Land-marke to Sailers. 2. Kirmis, so called from its Church, which is a fair Structure: And 3. Dunnington. In the Lower are the Townes of, 1. Crowland, or Croxland; 2. Town of good note among the Pease-people, it is seated very low and waterifit, so that there is no access to it but by narrow Causeways; it hath 3 Steepes, which are severed by Waters running between, and

County of Lincoln described.

Holland, and its chief places.

Holland, and its chief places.

and on preferiv The ch by the inhabit which i habited compaf The whose c on the beautifical fair is a pl and end 2. Gran and bea Spire exp and 3. This dreds, in and hath NOTI rent foil, fertile, w Trem and ter cha part is the keth up clothed w Deer, Stag earth of perature clayish, Its chi pleasantly side of a The town Churches, ket-place is fenced wi field a 3. Warbur Lignorice another ge This C in which 8 market- DARE the East and well West and Derwent, hilly, or c recompan Iron, and Its chi

and on the banks (which are raised up, and preserved by *Dikes*) are set *without trees*. The chiefest riches of this town is gained by the *fish and wool* here taken, which the *inhabitants* sell to their great profit, which is the chief cause of its being inhabited: and 2. *Spalding* a fair town encompassed about with *Rivers*.

The next and last part of this Shire is *WESTEVEN* westwards, and within land, whose chief places are, 1. *Stanford* seated on the river *Welland* a fair and large town beautified with seven *Churches*, and several fair *buildings*, it is begirt with a *Wall*, is a place well inhabited, frequented, and endowed with several *Immunities*. 2. *Grantham* a town of some account, and beautified with a fair *Church*, whose *Spire* exalteth it self to a great eminence: and 3. *Nottingham*.

This County is divided into 35 *hundreds*, in which are 630 *Parish Churches*, and hath the conveniency of 30 *market towns*.

**NOTTINGHAMSHIRE** of a different soil, the South-east part being most fertile, which is occasion'd by the river *Trent* and other fresh streams, which water that part: the other and Western part is the *Forest of Sherwood*, which taketh up a good part, and is sufficiently clothed with wood, and provided with *Deer, Stags*, and other game; and the earth of this part is of a sandy temperature, whereas the other is of a clayish.

Its chief places are, 1. *Nottingham* pleasantly and conveniently seated on the side of a Hill, and on the River *Trent*. The town is large containing three *Parish Churches*; its *houses* are well built, its *market-place* is spacious, beautiful, and defended with a very strong *Castle*. 2. *Mansfield* a well frequented *market-town*. 3. *Worksop* a town well known for the *Liquorice* which here groweth: and 4. *Blyth* another good *market-town*.

This County is divided into 8 *hundreds*, in which are 168 *Parishes*, of which are 8 *market-towns*.

**DARBYSHIRE** of a different soil, the East and South parts being fertile, and well furnished with *Parks*, and the West and North parts beyond the river *Derwent*, which is called the *Peak*, is stony, hilly, or craggy, and more barren, but in recompence hath rich mines of *Lead, Iron, and Coals*.

Its chief places are, 1. *Darby* the chief

*town* of the *Shire*, and where the *Sizes* are kept: it is seated on the river *Derwent* over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*: the *town* is large containing five *Churches*, among which that of *St. Alballows* is the fairest; it is beautified with fair *buildings*. is a place of a good *trade*, and well frequented, especially during the time of the *Affices*. 2. *Chesterfield* a market town, and dignified with the title of an *Earldom*. 3. *Buxton* a town of some note for its *Bath*, which cureth many distempers in the body of *man*: here are two *springs* of *water* within about a foot of one another, and of an exceeding different nature; the one being very *hot*, whereas the other is as cold as *Ice*: here is also the *Peak* abounding in *Lead*, and under the *Castle* in the *Peak* there is a *hole* or *cave* within the ground called the *Devils arse* of *Peak*, being reckoned amongst the wonders of *England*; and within the *Peak Forest* there is a place called *Elden-hole* as great a wonder, being a *pit* or *hole* about 200 *yards* deep, 30 long, and about 15 broad.

This County is divided into 6 *hundreds*, in which are 106 *Parish Churches*, among which are 8 *Market-towns*.

**OXFORDSHIRE** fertile in *corn* and *fruits*, hath rich pastures, pleasant hills well clothed with *woods*, wherein are found variety of Game both for *Hawk* and *Hound*, and is well watered with *Rivers*.

Its chief places are, 1. *Oxford*, a fair, pleasant, and large City containing fourteen *Parish Churches*, it is commodiously seated on the River *Isis*, which divides it into two parts, but joynd together by a fair *Stone bridge*: it is adorned with stately and magnificent *edifices*, the chief of which are the *Cathedral*, the *King's Palace*, now the *Manner house*, with several fair *Structures* belonging to the *University*, as 16 *Colledges*, 8 *Halls*, &c. a place sufficiently famous for the nursery of *wise learning*. 2. *Banbury* a fair, large town; seated on the river *Ouse*, of chief note for its 30 *Cakes* and *Cheese*. 3. *Woodstock* a town of no great account, save onely for the *Bow* there adjoining, where *King Henry* the second kept *Rosamund Clifford*: the fair *Lady*, on whom he so much doted. 4. *Durchester* a town of more antiquity than beauty: and 5. *Henly* upon *Thames*: a large town, the *Inhabitants* of which are for the most part *Watermen* or *Barge-men*, and gain their livelihood by transporting

in the third in a ... Earl the Field ... or ... Church: ... ed from a ... dded for ... dreds, ... ng which

ge County, ... for Corne ... it is well ... the Sea ... by reason ... plenty of ... hire is divi ... land, and ... well inhabi-

of ... ed on the ... es ... small streams ... is a faire ... Churches, is ... in former ... fair ... the Minister ... land: The ... pal See, is a ... and well fre ... row seated ... r-Town. 3. ... rimbby, on ... the Hamber,

which may ... d lower: In ... of, 1. ... River Wi ... air Bridge, ... the Sea, and ... l frequented ... large; as also ... lteeth it self ... h as a Land ... on, so called ... air Structure: ... Lower are the ... Croyland; a ... e Penno ... waterish, fo ... e but by nar ... trects, which ... ng between ... and

Edven. ... ching ... pice.

County of Lincoln described.

land. ... and ... ed place ... d.

any of ... d.

of ... d.

Holland, ... and ... ching ... ed place ... d.

of ... d.

of ... d.

The Peak.

County of Oxford described.

In chief places, Oxford.



porting of goods to and fro to London, upon which account it is a town of a good trade.

This County is divided into 14 hundreds, in which are 280 Parish Churches, of which 10 are Market towns.

County of Gloucester

GLoucester a pleasant and fertile Country yielding corn and fruits, even in the hedge-ways; it hath rich pastures which feed abundance of Cattle and Sheep, especially about Cireswold, whose wool is so much esteemed by strangers. It is watered with many Rivers, many of which yield store of Salmon and other fish, and chiefly the Severn; it is well clothed with wood, especially in the Forest of Dean, which takes its name from a town so called near adjacent.

Chief place, Gloucester.

It is well stored with Towns, the chief of which are, 1. Gloucester, a fair City, and of good antiquity, seated on the River Severn, beautified with many fine buildings, and is well inhabited and frequented. 2. Stroud a well built town, and of note for making and dying of cloths. 3. Avenon seated on the Severn. 4. Tewksbury a fair and large town, situate by three Rivers, viz. the Avon, the Severn, and another, over each of which there is a bridge. It is also a place of good account for making of Cloths, and for the best Mustard. 5. Cotswold, of note for its Sheep which yield the fine wool. 6. Campden a well frequented town. 7. Berkley honoured with a Castle so called. 8. Winchelcomb a large, and well peopled town. 9. Cirencester a great Market town for Corn on Mondays, and for Wool and Tarn on Fridays.

County of Worcester

This County is divided into 30 hundreds, in which are 280 Parish Churches, and is accommodated with 25 Market towns.

WORCESTERSHIRE a healthful, fertile County, and every where watered with fresh streams among which the Severn and the Avon are the chief; and here are found many salt pits.

Chief place, Worcester.

The chief places in this County are, 1. Worcester a fair and ancient City, seated on an easie ascent, and on the banks of the Severn, over which it hath a fair bridge, with a Tower. Its Cathedral is a stately Structure, wherein are several Monuments or Tombs; it is dignified with the See of a Bishop. 2. Kidderminster a fair and well frequented Market town affording several good Commodities; it is separated by the river Stour, which runneth through it,

and is beautified with a fair Church. 3. Evesham seated on a Hill, arising from a River, well known for the vale under it, called the vale of Evesham, a place of an exceeding fertile soil. 4. Droitwich of note for its salt-pits, of which in many furnaces, placed round about, they buy, and make excellent white salt from Mid-summer to Mid-winter, and 5. Upton a good Market town.

10

This Shire is divided into 7 hundreds, in which are 152 Parishes, of which 7 are Market towns.

County of Warwick

WARWICKSHIRE may be divided into two parts, the one called Feldon, and the other Woodland, that is into a plain Champain, and a woody Countrey; and these parts are in a manner separated by the river Avon, which in a crooked passage runneth through the County.

30

The chief places in the part called WOODLAND are, 1. Coventry a fair, large, and neat City, commodiously seated for an Inland town, is well inhabited, and frequented, and the more by reason of the great quantity of cloths there made; its streets and houses are fair and well ordered, and beautified with two Churches of neat workmanship; and for its defence is begirt with a strong Wall. 2. Henly a pretty Market town. 3. Wrexhall where Hugh de batton founded a small Priory. 4. Kilington of chief note for its Castle, which is strong and fair, and pleasantly seated, being encompassed about with Parks. 5. Bromicham a fair town, and well inhabited, among which are many Smiths, and 6. Sutton Coldfield seated in an excellent air, and between woods, which yields pleasure to its Inhabitants; but in a barren soil.

40

The chief places in the other part called FELDON, are, 1. Warwick the chief of the County, pleasantly seated on the Avon, upon a high rock, and in a dry and fertile soil, having rich Meadows on the South side, and delightful Groves on the North: It is fortified by a strong Castle, and adorned with fair houses. 2. Stratford upon Avon, where there is a Stone-bridge supported by 14 Arches. And 3. Ancester a well frequented Market town, and where there is a good fair for Corn. In this County is Edgbill of note for the bloody batel there fought between the King and the rebellious Confederates of the Parliament in the late unhappy wars.

This Shire is divided into 5 hundreds,

In chief place, Coventry.

Warwick

Edgbill

County of Stafford

in which hath the

towns. STA... soil, the the mic... Meadow. Trent: and in t... of Coals is plentiful for the r... and affor...

Its cl... ancient C... a River; Bridges... fair Cath... of Prebe... 2. Staffo... Counry hampton

4. Tamw... tended b... beautified well frequ... called tre... there ren... Trent a fi... tified wit... stained by... beset with... chafe, in w... near to th...

This C... dreds, in... 12 are M... CHES... of Provid... brams... Cheese, ... all Engla... situation try.

The... 1. Chesse... seated on... vided wit... fant pro... count an... gular, an... compas... strength... Cardinal... trance. Castle fe... and here... Assizes... tified wi...

in which are 158 Parish Churches : and hath the conveniency of 15 Market-towns.

STAFFORDSHIRE of a different soil, the north part hilly, and so less fertile, the middle fruitful in Corn, hath rich Meadows, and watered with the River Trent : the South part is likewise fertile, and in the bowels of the earth are mines of Coals and Iron : and the whole County is plentifully furnished with Rivers, It is for the most part well clothed with Wood, and affordeth salt-pits.

Its chief places are, 1. Litchfield an ancient City separated into two parts by a River, but joyned together by two Bridges : it was once beautified with a fair Cathedral, a Bishops Palace, and houses of Prebendaries, but now much ruined, 2. Stafford the now chief town of the County seated on the Sow. 3. Wolverhampton a well frequented Market-town, 4. Tamworth situate in two shires, and defended by a Castle. 5. Burton upon Trent beautified with a fair Cathedral, and is a well frequented Market-town. 6. Wall, so called from the reliques of an old wall there remaining. And 7. Burton upon Trent a famous Market-place, and beautified with a Bridge composed of or sustained by 38 Arches. This Shire is well beset with bushes, and here is Pensneth-chase, in which are several coal-pits, lying near to the ruins of Dudley-Castle.

This County is divided into 5 Hundreds, in which are 130 Parishes, of which 12 are Market-towns.

CHESHIRE abounding in all kinds of Provision for mans use, and its Inhabitants make abundance of excellent Cheese, which findeth vent throughout all England. It is a Country of a pleasant situation, and well inhabited with Country.

The chief places in this Shire are, 1. Chester, or West-chester, commodiously seated on the river Dee, (plentifully provided with Salmon) which affords a pleasant prospect. It is a City of good account and antiquity. It is built quadrangular, and taketh up about two miles in compass, and enclosed with a wall of good strength, to which according to the four Cardinal winds hath four gates for entrance. It is also defended by a strong Castle seated on a rocky hill near the river: and here the Counts Palatine, and the Assizes are kept twice a year: It is beautified with several fair buildings, and hath

an antient Cathedral, besides eleven Parish Churches. The streets are large, and well ordered, and along the chief streets are Galleries, or Rows (as they call them) having on both sides shops, through which one may walk (though in the greatest showre) free from rain from one end to the other. This City is well inhabited and frequented, and the more as being the common place of taking shipping for the English to go to Ireland, as likewise the landing place from Ireland to England, and by reason of its intercourse of people, is a place of a considerable trade. It is dignified with the See of a Bishop. Northwest-wards from this City shooteth forth a Promontory or Lanquet of Land into the Sea, which on the South side is enclosed by the Dee, and on the North side by the river Mersey, and in the utmost extent of this Promontory is situate nigh the shore a small sandy and barren Iste called Ilbre, which had in it sometime since a little Cell of Monks. The second place of note in this County is Nantwich seated on the river Weaver, a fair, large, and well frequented town, and is of note for its salt-pits, or Saltwich, where is made excellent white salt, and is beautified with a fair Church. 3. Middlewich, on the river Crok, and near unto the Confluence of the river Dan, of note for its salt-pits, and making of salt. 4. Northwich on the river Weaver, of good account also for its salt pits, and making of salt. 5. Macclesfield, seated on the river Bolin, a very fair and large town, nigh unto a spacious Forest so called. 6. Congleton a noted and large Market-town, and where are made great quantities of Leather, Gloves, Pursets, and Points, and yet it hath but a Chappel: its mother Church being about two miles distant at Astbury, which is a fair building: and 7. Holme Chappel a town well known to waifairing men

At Chester (as 'tis said) King Edgar in a triumphant manner, to shew his great power and glory over the British Kings, was rowed in a Barge along the River Dee, as he sat in state, by Kennadie King of the Scots, Madeline King of Cumberland, Macon King of Mann and of the Islands, with all the Princes of Wales, which were thither brought to do homage, who like Watermen worked at the oar, to his great glory, and the rejoicing of the beholders.

This County is divided into nine H h h h H h h

Church. sing from under it, face of an itwisch of in many. they boy! from Mid-on a good hundreds, which 7 are e divided County of W... of... Eldon, and into a plain troy, and parated by a crooked County. part called In it of plain. County. troy a fair, dully seated habited, and y reason of here made, r and well wo Churches its defence 2. Heny a xhall where mall Priory. or its Castle, d pleasantly about with town, and ch are many old seated in woods, which ants, but in a her part cal- Wick the chief seated on the in a dry and ndows on the Groves on the strong Castle, s, 2. Strat- is a Stone- arches. And Market town, fair for Corn, f note for the between the onfederates of late unhappy to 5 hundreds, in

No Edgare rowed in place in the river Dee, by divers King and Princes

*Hundreds*, in which are 68 *Parish-churches*, amongst which are 13 *Market-towns*.

**SHROPSHIRE**, on every side well replenished with *Castles* and *Towns*, by reason of the repelling and over-awing the *Welsh* in the *Marches* bordering thereupon; it is indifferent fertile, and replenished with *Rivers*.

Its chief places are, 1. *Shrewsbury*, pleasantly seated on an *esie* ascent, and on the Banks of the *Severn*, over which it hath a faire *Bridges*, which said *River* doth so encompass the *City*, that were it not for a small Bank of Land, it might pass for an *Island*: It is a place strengthened and fortified with a *Wall*, where the *Water* cometh not; 2. also with a strong *Castle*, and other *Fortifications*: It is a goodly *City*, adorned with fair *Buildings*, well frequented, of a great *Trade*; and by reason of the *Clubs*, *Cottons* and *Frimas* here made, and the variety of *Commodities* here found, the *Citizens* are very rich, furnishing the *Welsh* with their *Commodities*, and receiving theirs; and this intercourse of *Trade* causeth it to be inhabited as well by the *Welsh* as *English*. 2. *Burghmuise*, strongly seated on the *Severn*, fortified with *Walls*, a *Ditch*, and a stately *Castle*, seated on a *Rock*. 3. *Ludlow*, a faire *Town*, and of great resort, occasioned by the *Court* and *Council* of the *Marches* here kept, for the ease and benefit of the *Welsh*, and bordering *People*, in their *Law-suits*; It is fortified and beautified with a strong *Castle*, as also with many fair *Edifices*, among which the *Palace* of the *President* of *Wales* is the chief: And 4. *Oswestre*, a strong *Town*, fortified with a *Ditch*, a *Wall*, and a *Castle*, and is a place of a good *Trade* for *Welsh Cottons*.

This *County* is divided into 15 *hundreds*, in which are 170 *Parishes*, and hath the accommodation of 13 *Market-towns*.

**HEREFORDSHIRE**, exceeding fertile in *Grain*, hath rich *Pastures*, which feed store of *Cattel*, especially *Sheep*, of which they make great profit by the *Wool*; it is every where plentifully stored with *Fruit-trees*, and of their *Apples* and *Pears* they make great quantity of *Sider* and *Perry*. This *County* for 3 *W. W. W.* viz. *Wheat*, *Wool* and *Water*, is said to yield to none in *England* for goodness.

Its Chief places are, 1. *Hereford*, the chief *City* of this *County*, seated in a fertile *Soile*, almost encompassed with 3

*Rivers*, to wit the *VVye*, and two others of no name; it is a place well inhabited and frequented, and honoured with the *See* of a *Bishop*. 2. *Lumfer*, seated on the river *Lay*, noted for its fine *Wall*, and *Flower*, and is a *Market Town* very well frequented: And 3. *VVebley*, of somerepute for its *Ale*.

This *County* is divided into 11 *Hundreds*, in which are 176 *Parishes*, and hath the convenience of 8 *Market towns*.

Having thus briefly run over the *shires* of *ENGLAND*, in the next place it will be necessary to speak of those of *WALES*, as being comprehended under the Government thereof, and part of the said *Kingdome*; which may likewise be divided into 4 *Circuits*, for the Administration of *Justice*.

W A L E S.

**WALES**, bounded on all sides with the *Sea* except towards *England*, from which it is separated by the *River Dee*, and a *Line* drawn to the *River VVye*, but antiently it extended to the *River Severn* Eastwards, till *Offa* King of the *Mercians* forced them to leave the *Plaine-Country* beyond *Offa's River*, and betake themselves to the *Mountaines*, which he caused to be separated from *England* by a great *Ditch*, called *Offa's-Dike*, in *VVesh* *Claudd* *Offa*; which *Dike* beginning at the influx of the *VVye* into the *Severn*, reacheth unto *Chester* for 84 *miles*, where the *Dee* entereth into the *Sea*: and over this *Dike*, by a *Law* made by *Harald*, no *VVelehman* was to pass with a *weapon*, on pain of losing his right *Hand*.

The whole *Country* is *Mountainous*, and for the most part barren, yet it breedeth abundance of *Cattel*, which they furnish *England* with, as also with *Butter* and *Cheese*; the other *Commodities* that this *Country* yieldeth, are, *VVollen Claubs*, called *VVelch Frimcs*, *Cottons*, *Flanels*, *Bays*, &c. also *Hides*, *Calver-shins*, *Honey*, *VVax*, *Stockings*, *White* and *Red Murrings*, and the *Country* is well stored with *Quarries* of *Free-Stone* for *Building*, and *Mill-stones*, also with *Mines* of *Silver*: (though but poor) *Lead*, *Lead-ore*, *Coale*, and some of *Tin*; and these *Commodities* are commonly brought to *Oswestry* in *Shropshire*, the chief place of *Trading* with *VVales*, there vended, and thence dispersed into *England*, and elsewhere.

Its *Inhabitants* are of a faithful courage one to another, especially in strange *Con-*

County of Shropshire described.

In chief parts Shropshire.

County of Hereford described.

In chief parts Hereford.

Wales bounded.

County of Wales.

County of Wales.

County of Wales.

County of Wales.

County of Wales.

the use is of to min in  
divi  
stra  
con  
Den  
Rad  
tho  
broo  
nar  
A  
a pa  
SOU  
ties  
NA  
RIO  
doth  
the  
BRE  
BRO  
MOE  
make  
right  
this  
Coun  
tion  
time  
Wales  
here.  
FL  
it is  
place  
mem  
frid  
and a  
VVel  
Mof  
there  
wich  
distan  
this  
Stanc  
adjoy  
wher  
of th  
cut  
T

two others of  
habited and  
th the See of  
on the river  
d Flower, and  
frequent  
te for its Ale,  
11 Hundreds,  
and hath the  
W.

over the shires  
xt place it will  
of WALES,  
nder the Go-  
rt of the said  
wife be divi-  
Adminiftrati-

S.

on all sides with  
towards Eng-  
parated by the  
own to the Ri-  
it extended to  
wards, till Offa  
ed them to leave  
of the River,  
the Mountains,  
separated from  
, called Offa's  
, which Dike  
f the *VVye* into  
unto *Chester* for  
ntereth into the  
by a Law made  
was to pass with  
his right Hand,  
s Mountainous,  
en, yet it breed-  
which they fur-  
o with Butter and  
codities that this  
*VVollen Clobs*,  
atons, Flannels,  
lube-shins, Honey,  
nd Red Mornings,  
stord with Quar-  
uilding, and Mill-  
f Silver. (though  
e, Coale, and some  
codities are com-  
try in *Shropshire*,  
ing with *VVales*,  
ce dispersed into

a faithful counge  
y in strange Coun-  
tries,

treys, but much given to *Choller*; they use a particular *Language*, or *Speech*, which is very harsh, and displeasing to the Eares of any except themselves; it is esteemed to be very antient, and hath the least mixture with Forreign *Languages* of any in *Europe*.

This Lan-  
guage

Wales  
divi-

WALES, like unto *England*, may be divided into 4 *Circuits* for the Administration of *Justice*; and then the first shall contain the *Shires* or *Counties* of *Flint*, *Denbigh* and *Mongemery*; the 2 those of *Radnor*, *Glamorgan* and *Brecknock*; the 3 those of *Cardigan*, *Caernarshen*, and *Pembrooke*; and the 4 those of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvan*, and the *Ile of Anglesey*.

Again, WALES may be divided into 2 parts, to wit NOR (H-WALES); and SOUTH-WALES: and then the Counties of FLINT, DENBIGH, CAR-  
NARVAN, Isle of ANGLESEY, M  
RIONETH, and MONGEMERY doth make NORTH-WALES: And the Counties or shires of RADNOR, BRECKNOCK, CARDIGAN, PEMBROOK, CARMARDEN, and MORGAN and MONMOTH, doth make up SOUTH-WALES. But by right I should not place *Monmouthshire* in this *Division*, it being now an *English* County; but having followed the *Division* of the *Saxon Heptarchy*, at which time *Monmouthshire* was in this part of *Wales*, for Method-sake I still place it here.

NORTH-WALES.

Wales  
divi-

FLINTSHIRE, not over Hilly, inter-  
laced with indifferent fertile *Valleys*; it is famous for *St. VVinifrids-well*; a place much frequented by *Pilgrims* in memorial of the *Christian Virgin VVinifrid*, who by a Tyrant was first Ravished, and afterwards Beheaded: and out of this *Well*, or *Fountain*, (where groweth *Moss* of a most sweet and pleasant smell) there gusheth forth a Brook among *stones*, with so rapid a streame; that at a small distance it is able to drive a *Mill*: over this well there standeth a *Chappel* built of *Stone*, of curious *workmanship*, whereto adjoyneth a small *Church*, in a window whereof is lively portrayed the History of the said *VVinifride*; how her head was cut off, and set on again by *St. Benno*.

In Wine  
this Well

Dr In-  
stant.

The chief places in this *Shire*, are, 1.

*Flint*, which gives name to the *County*; commodiously seated on the River *Dee*, is a place of good account, and is fortified with a strong *Castle*: And 2. *St. Asaph*, seated on the River *Clwyd*, a *City* dignified with an *Bishopical See*.

This *County* is divided into 5 *Hundreds*, in which are 28 *Parish Churches*; and for the accommodation of the *Inhabitants* hath 3 *Market-towns*.

DENBIGHSHIRE, stored with *Mines* of *Lead*; it is a place of a different *Soile*; the middle (where it lyeth flat in a *Valley*) is fertile: the West-part, much inclining to sterility, and thinly inhabited, except the part which lyeth towards the *Sea*; and the Eastern part beyond the *valley* is the most ungrateful to the *husbandman*.

Dr In-  
stant.

Its chief places are, 1. *Denbigh*, seated on the banks of the River *Istrad*, and at the foot of a *Hill*, on which the old *Town* stood; It is a fair *Town*, well frequented and inhabited, and of a good *Trade*. 2. *Ruthyn*, seated on the banks of the river *Clwyd*, and in the South-part of the *Vale of Clwyd* (which runneth in length 17 miles, and 5 in breadth, every where fertile and pleasant to behold, being garnished with green *Meadows*, *Corn-fields*, fair *Houses*, *Villages* and *Townes*) and is the greatest *Market-town* in all the *vale*, being large, well inhabited, and frequented: And 3. *Wharsham*, a *Market-town* of some account, and beautified with a fair *Church*.

In chief  
places

In this *Shire* are 12 *Hundreds*, in which are 57 *Parish Churches*, and hath 3 *Market-towns*.

40 CARNARVANSHERE, exceeding *Mountainous*, and therefore not over fertile, especially Eastwards.

Carnar-  
vanthire  
described.

Its chief places are, 1. *Carnarvan*, the principal or *Shire-town*, seated opposite to the *Ile of Anglesey*, from which it is not far distant; It is a *Town* or *City* of good account (but not large) well Walled, and defended by a strong *Castle*; It is famous for being built by King *Edward the First*, as also for giving birth to King *Edward the Second*, who of the *English-line* was the first Prince of *Wales*. 2. *Bangor*, seated also on the same narrow *Sea*, more Northwards, and opposite to the *Ile of Anglesey*, once a large place, and of good account (being dignified with the *See* of a *Bishop*, and had an antient and famous *Monastery* of the *Brittaines*, now decayed) but at present it is

H h h a but

but small: Nigh unto this place is *Penmaen-mau*, a very high and steep *Rock*, which at *Lust-Sea* so hangeth over, that it affordeth but a very narrow passage; having on the one side great *stones* which hangeth over their heads, as seeming ready to fall; and on the other side the furious *Sea*, which lieth of an exceeding steep depth under it: And 3. *Aber-Conway*, seated on the mouth of the River *Conway*, a place of good strength, as well by Nature as Art, being fenced about with *Walls*, and defended by a strong *Castle*, and, according to some deserves rather the name of a *City* than a *Town*.

This *Shire* is divided into 6 *Hundreds*, where are found for the Worship of God 68 *Parish-Churches*, and hath 5 *Market-Town*s.

ISLE OF ANGLESEY, situate opposite to *Carnarvanshire* (from which it was not far distant) and in the *Irish-Sea*, it is in length about 20 *Miles*, and 17 in breadth; an *Island* so fertile in all things, that the *Welsh* call it *Mam-cymy* that is, the Mother of *Wales*: it is very populous, once containing 360 *Towns* and *Villages*, which at present are reduced to 74.

The chief places in this *Isle* now remaining, are, 1. *Beaumaris*, seated on the East side of the *Isle*, and not far from *Bangor* in *Carnarvanshire*: this *Town* was built by King *Edward the First*, the better to secure his Conquest: It is also seated on a flat ground, hath a commodious and safe *Harbour*, and well reformed unto, especially by those who are bound to *Ireland* or *England*, and is a place of some strength. 2. *Newburg*, once of good account. 3. *Holy-head*, of some note: And 4. *Aberfraw*, once the *Seate* of a *King*, but at present a small *village*.

This *Isle*, or *County* is divided into 6 *Hundreds*, in which are 74 *Parish-churches*, and hath 3 *Market-Towns*.

MERIONETHSHIRE, very unpleasant, rough, and mountainous, and therefore much inclined to sterility, yet is it found to Graze good *Flocks* of *Sheep*: and it is observed that these *Mountains* exalt themselves to so great an eminence, with peaked tops, that in many places two *Men* may stand and *Discourse* together, the one upon one *Mountain*, and the other upon another, but before they can meet they must travel some *Miles*: And as the *County* is thus mountainous and barren, so is it destitute of *Townes*, the chief of which, are,

1. *Bala*, Seated on the River *Dee*, as <sup>its chief place</sup> also on the edge of the *Meare*, called *Pmble-Mear*, from both which the *Inhabitants* catch store of *Salmons* and other *Fish*; it is a *Market-town* of no great extent, yet well frequented, and endowed with many emunices. 2. *Dolgeltle* on the River *Avon*, another *Market-town*, and the chief of these parts: And 3. *Harlech*, seated on the *Sea shore*, and is a place of some account.

In this *County* there are 6 *Hundreds*, where are 37 *Parish-Churches*, and it hath 3 *Market-towns*.

MONTGOMERYSHIRE, Hilly, but interlaced with fertile *vallies*, and well watered with *Rivers*, the chief of which is the *Severne*, which sendeth forth many *Streams*; it hath its *Spring-head* out of the *Plimilliman-Hill*, a very high *Mountain*.

Its chief places are, 1. *Montgomery*, the chief *Shire-town*, being fair, large, well frequented and inhabited. 2. *Welb-pool*, seated on the *Severne*: a fair *Town*, and of good resort. 3. *Newtowne*, also seated on the *Severne*: And 4. *Mach-nel*, of some account.

This *Shire* is divided into 7 *hundreds*, in which are 47 *Parishes*, and hath 6 *Market-towns*.

## SOUTH-WALES.

RADNORSHIRE, of an indifferent fertile *Soile*, and well watered; Its chief places are, 1. *Radnor*, fairly built, after their manner of building, and is the chief *Town* of the *County*. 2. *Prestaine*, which from a small *village* is now become a fair, large, and well frequented *Market Town*, and is a great impediment to the Lustre of *Radnor*. 3. *Kingston* (not inferior to *Prestaine*) nigh unto which runeth *offa's Dike*: And 4. *Raya-dergow*, a *Town* of some account, seated in the *Western* part of the *shire*.

This *County* is divided into 6 *Hundreds*, in which are 52 *Parish-Churches*, and hath the conveniency of 5 *Market-towns*.

BRECKNOCKSHIRE, of a fertile soile, well clothed with wood, and watered with *Rivers*.

Its chief places are, 1. *Brecknock* the *Shire-town*, of good note, well frequented, and seated on the River *Ush*; About a *Miles* from this place there is a large *Poole* or *Meare*, so called, some *Miles* in compass, and is a place which breedeth excellent *Fish*. 2. *Hay*, seated on the

Isle of Anglesey

In chief place

Merionethshire

its chief place

10

20

30

Carton

Montgomeryshire

In chief place

Radnorshire

In chief place

40

50

In chief place

river W  
river M  
pleasant  
with a  
well fre  
This  
dred, is  
3 Mark  
CAR  
Soile, e  
being pl  
and the  
Mountai  
Lioncity.  
Its ch  
chief Sh  
the River  
to the S  
strength,  
ed. 2.  
ed on t  
count, b  
and prov  
of note  
Tregam  
ket-Tow  
Troy.  
This  
in which  
4 Market  
PEMB  
passed by  
Troy Bay  
cording  
fertile So  
Pastures,  
watered  
which fr  
store of  
Pit-coale,  
and well  
of which  
the Easter  
ford-Hav  
of good  
habited,  
gaining a  
It is a T  
a Mayor  
Milford-  
in all E  
oufnels,  
to about  
and to r  
from oo  
and vari  
Bayer f  
within it



river *Wye*, and in a place of good antiquity: And 3. *Beath*, also situate on the river *Wye*, more Northwards, and very pleasantly among *Woods*; it is fortified with a *Castle*, and is a fair, noted, and well frequented *Market-Town*.

This *County* is divided into 6 *Hundreds*, in which are 61 *Parishes*, and hath 3 *Market-Towns*.

**CARDIGANSHIRE**, of a different *Soile*, the Southern and Western parts being plain, *Champaine*, and very fertile; and the Northern and Eastern parts *Mountainous*, and more inclining to sterility.

Its chief places are, 1. *Cardigan*, the chief *Shire-town*, conveniently seated on the *River Tivy*, not far from its influx into the *Sea*; It is a fair *Town*, of good strength, and well inhabited and frequented. 2. *Aber-y-ffwith*, commodiously seated on the *Sea*, is a place of good account, being populous, well frequented, and provided with all necessaries. 3. *Ros*, of note for its great *Faire* for *Cattel*. 4. *Tregaron*: And 5. *Lanbeder*, both *Market-Towns*, and seated on the *River Tivy*.

This *Shire* is divided into 5 *Hundreds*, in which are 64 *Parish-Churches*, and hath 4 *Market-towns*.

**PEMBROOKSHIRE**, almost encompassed by the *Sea* (which thrusts forth many *Bays* and *Inlets*) This *Shire* (according to a *Learned Writer*) is of a fertile *Soile*, apt to bear *Corn*, hath rich *Pastures*, is stored with *Cattel*, plentifully watered with *Rivers*, besides the *Sea*, which furnisheth the *Inhabitants* with store of excellent *Fish*, hath plenty of *Pit-coale*, is blest with a wholesome *Aire*, and well garnished with *Towns*, the chief of which are, 1. *Pembroke*, seated upon the Eastern, or innermost *Creeke* of *Milford-Haven*; it is the chief *Shire-town*, of good account, well frequented and inhabited; being a fair large *Town*, containing 2 *Parish-Churches* within its *Walls*: It is a *Town Corporate*, and Governed by a *Mayor*, *Bayliffs* and *Burgesses*. This *Milford-Haven* is esteemed to be the best in all *England*, not onely for its capacity, being fit to give entertainment to about 1000 *Saile* of *Ships* at one time, and to ride secure, and at a good distance from one another; but also for its depth, and variety of safe *Creeks*, and nooked *Bays*: for *Ships* to Harbour in, having within it 13 *Roads*, 16 *Creeks*, and 5 *Bays*,

all which are known by their several names. 2. *Tenby*, seated on the *Sea-shore*, where it hath a *Commodious haven* or *Road* for *Ships*, which is much frequented, but chiefly by *Fishermen*: The *Town* is faire, well built, strongly walled towards the *Land*, well inhabited, and Governed by a *Mayor*, and *Bayliffe*. 3. *Hartford-Weſt*, seated on a faire *River*, which loſeth it self in *Milford-haven*, and on the side of a *Hill*, it is a faire *Towne*, of great resort, and Governed by a *Mayor*, a *Sheriff*, and 2 *Bayliffs*. 4. *St. Davids*, seated on the *Sea-shore*, and on a *Promontory*, called *St. Davids Land*; It was once a *City* of good account, and dignified with the *See* of an *Arch-Bishop*; but now it is meane, and small, having nothing to boast of but a fair *Cathedral* Dedicated to *St. Andrew* and *David*, nigh to which standeth the *Bishops Palace*, and several fair *Houses* belonging to the *Church-men*. Nigh unto this shore are several small *Iſles*, called the *Bishop* and his *Clerkes*, as one being far greater than the rest, and is called *Ramsſey Iſle*; then *Sylimmes Iſle*, *Stockholme Iſle*, &c. And from this *Promontory* in a clear day *Ireland* may be discerned. 5. *Newport*, at the foot of a high *Mountaine*, and by the *River Neverne*, not far from the *Sea*, a place of some note. 6. *Kilgarran*, seated on the *River Tivy*, chiefly famous for the plentifulness of *Salmons* taken in the said *River*; And 7. *Dogwachs*, situate also on the said *River*, but more towards the *Sea*, and likewise well furnished with *Salmons*.

This *County* is divided into 7 *Hundreds*, in which are 145 *Parish-Churches*, and hath 5 *Market-towns*.

**CARMARDENSHIRE**, of a fertile *Soile*, plentifully stored with *Cattel*, in many places well provided of *Coal-pits*, which serve the *Inhabitants* for *Fuel*, and is every where well watered with *Rivers*, which pay their *Duty* to the *Sea*.

Its chief places are, 1. *Carmarden*, the chief *Town* or *City* of the *Shire*, and of good antiquity; It is no less pleasantly then commodiously seated on the famous and large *River Tovy*, not far from its influx into the *Sea*, where it hath a good *Haven*, known by the name of *Tovy Haven*; It is a place of good strength, fair, and well-frequented. 2. *Kidwelly*, seated commodions enough on the *Sea*, with a faire *Haven*, which now is choaked up, and

I i i therefore

... as chief places. called Inhabited other extent, with major river A- the chief d on the account. hundreds, d it bath

... illy, but and well of which orth ma-head out ery high

... omery, the ge, well- W. lch- air Town, allo . Machen- hundreds, ath 6 Mar-

ES.

... indifferent ntered; Its airly built, and is the Prefature, is now be- frequented at impedi-

... 3. King- nigh unto nd 4. Raya- ont, seated Shire.

... 6 Hundreds, hes, and hath -towns. of a fertile and watered

... reeknock the l frequented, k; About a e is a large ome Miles in ich breedeth eated on the river

Cardigan

Cardigan

Monna. northward described.

Cardigan

Pembroke

Radnorshire described.

Cardigan

Cardigan

Cardigan

Cardigan

therefore of no great account nor use: And 3. *Llanimbrefry*, also seated on the River *Towy*, and of some account.

This *Shire* is divided into 6 *Hundreds*, in which are 87 *Parish-churches*, and for the conveniency of the *Inhabitants* hath 6 *Market-towns*.

Glouc.  
parish  
describ'd.

GLAMORGANSHIRE, of a different *Soile* and *Situation*, the Northern part being Mountainous, *sterile*, and ill-<sup>10</sup> *Inhabited*, and the Southern part being more upon a *Level*, *Fertile*, and better *Inhabited*.

In chief  
Place.

Its chief places are, 1. *Landaff*, situate on the *Taff*, upon a low ground; It is a small *City*, but dignified with the *See* of a *Bishop*, and adorn'd with a *Cathedral Church*. 2. *Cardiffe*, also seated on the River *Taff*, a *Town* of good account, having a commodious *Haven* for *Shipping*, and fortified with a *Castle*, nigh unto the *Shire*. And not far from *Cardiffe* ly two small, but pleasant *Iles*, the greatest of which is called *Bery*, from one *Baruch* a Holy Man that was there inter'd. 3. *Combridge*, a well frequented *Market-town*. 4. *Neath*, seated on a river to called, a well-known and frequented *Town*. 5. *Aber-Avon*, another *Market-town*, at the mouth of the river *Avon*, and nigh unto the *Sea*: And 6 *Swansey*, commodiously seated on the *Sea-shore*, and at the influx of the river *Tairye*, a *Town* of good note.

This *County* is divided into 10 *Hundreds*, in which are 118 *Parish Churches*, and for the conveniency of the *Inhabitants* hath 6 *Market-towns*.

Monmoth-  
shire  
describ'd.

MONMOTHSIRE, on the confines of *England*, or rather of *Wales*, as being now conjoyn'd to, and made an *English County*, as before I have took occasion to speak of. This *County* is of a different *Soile* and temperature, the Eastern part having good *Pasture* or *Meadow grounds*, and well clothed with *Wood*, and the Western part being somewhat *hilly* and *stony*, yet not ungrateful to the *Husbandman*.

In chief  
Place  
Monmoth.

Its chief places are, 1. *Monmoth*, situate at the Mouth of the River *Munow*, which falleth into the *Wye*, and in a manner encompasseth it, save on the North-side, where it is fortified with a *Wall* and *Ditch*, and in the middle of the *Town* by the *Market-place* is seated a *Castle*, built, as 'tis said, by *John Burew* of *Monmoth*; and this place is of note for giving birth to *King Henry the Fifth*. 2. *Chepstow*, a

*Town* of good account, and well resorted unto, seated on the Banks of the river *Wye*, over which there is a *Bridge*, and not far from the *Severne*; it is fortified round about with a *Wall* of a large circuit, which includes within it both the *Fishes* and *Orchards*; and is also defended by a *Strong Castle*: And 4. *Sudbrooke*, situate 60 near the *Sea*, that its chief Church, called *Trinity Chappel*, hath by its impetuous *Waves* lost a good part of its *Church-yard*. Here is a *Morsh*, or *Moore* for several *Miles* together, being low ground, and subject to the overflowings of the *Severne Sea*.

This *County* is divided into 6 *hundreds*, in which are 127 *Parishes*, and hath for its accommodation of the *People* 6 *Market-towns*.

<sup>20</sup> In these 13 *Shires* or *Counties* are numbered 1143 *Parish-churches*, of which 64 are *Market-towns*, and are for the most part *walled*. In these *Shires* are 41 *Castles*, 230 *Rivers*, (many of which are very fair and large) 99 *Bridges*, 36 *Parishes*, 13 *Forests*, and 1 *Chafe*: Also these *Hills* are famous for their height, viz. *Snowden*, *Plinillimon*, *Brechin*, *Moynodan*, *Brethen*, *Caddoridric*, *Rardourars*, *Monuch-denny*, and the *Black Mountain*.

## SCOTLAND.

<sup>40</sup> SCOTLAND maketh the Northern part of *Great Britain*; and is divided from *England* by the Rivers *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the *Cheviot Hills*: It extendeth it self in length about 480 *miles*, but is of a much disproportionable breadth, there being no place 60 *miles* from the *Sea*.

It is supposed to have been called *Scythia*, from the *Scoti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a *People* of *Germany*, over whose Northern limits the name of *Scythia* did extend; though many will have it so called from *Sewa*, Daughter to an *Egyptian Pharaoh*.

The *Country*, according to the *Habitacion* of the *People*, is divided into *Highland* and *Lowland*, or *North* and *South*. The *People* of the former live either on the *Western Coast* of *Scotland*, and are very rude, and having much of the

nature a  
wilde  
utterly b  
to *Civili*  
on the *E*  
*ons*, *Civili*  
*English*  
ed of th  
by the *I*  
*Scoti*, and  
the *Engli*  
- *Agan*,  
ation of i  
divided in  
and on th  
the antien  
Eastwards  
River *Tay*  
*Kingdome*  
dance of *A*

SCOTL  
*England*, e  
the *Roman*  
not excell  
have abund  
much *Cattle*  
are course  
*Ours*. *Feash*  
*Salt-peter*,  
*Hops*, *Wool*  
*Tallow*, &c.

The *King*  
*England*, c  
*Gentry* and  
*Lords Spirit*  
*ament*, as c  
ther by *W*  
*land*: And  
fidence in *E*  
at the said  
fore in *stea*  
sendeth on  
who is calle  
a one is the  
*Roths*.

As to the  
peculiar to  
the chief  
*College of*  
*dent*, 14 *Se*  
many of th  
terwards a  
of the chief,  
as many *A*  
*nations* - *Sc*  
thus instit  
*Anno 1553*  
*ament* of *A*  
*minister* *J*

In Name  
only fo  
called.

In Page  
and Chap

nature

nature and disposition of the *Tories*, or *wild Irish*, or in the out-*Iles*, and are utterly barbarous, and not to be reduced to Civility. The *Lowlander*, bordering on the East, have much of the *Dispositions*, *Civility*, *Language* and *Habit* of the *English*; and are thought to be descended of the *Saxons*; which is confirmed by the *Highlanders*, who are the true *Scots*, and called both the *Lowlanders*, and the *English Saxons*.

Again, *Scotland* according to the scituation of its parts, or *Provinces*, may be divided into two parts, to wit Southwards, and on this side the *Tay*, and which made the ancient Kingdom of the *Picts*: And Eastwards, Northwards; and beyond the River *Tay*, and which made the ancient Kingdom of the *Scots*: besides abundance of *Iles* lying round about.

*SCOTLAND* is far more barren than *England*, especially beyond the limits of the *Roman Province*. Their *Fruits* are not excellent, nor very plentiful: they have abundance of *Fish* and *Fowls*, not much *Cattel*: Their chief *Commodities* are coarse *Cloths*, *Fretzes*, *Fish*, *Lead Ore*, *Feathers*, *Sea-seals*, *Allome*, *Iron*, *Salt-peter*, *Linnen-cloth*, *Train-oyle*, *Hops*, *Wool*, *Alabaster*, some *Hides*, and *Tallow*, &c.

The Kingdom of *Scotland*, like unto *England*, consisteth of a *King*, *Nobility*, *Gentry* and *Commons*, and these, with the *Lords Spiritual* assemble together in *Parliament*, as often as they are called together by *Writ* from the *King*, as in *England*: And by reason of His Majesty's residence in *England*, so that he is not here at the said *Sessions of Parliament*, therefore in stead thereof he constituteth, and sendeth one to act as *Vice-Roy* under him, who is called *Lord Commissioner*, and such a one is the Right Honourable the *Earl of Rothes*.

As to their *Courts of Justice* they are peculiar to themselves, and are several; the chief among which is the *Session*, or *College of Justice*, consisting of a *President*, 14 *Senators*, 7 of the *Clergy*, and as many of the *Layty* (unto whom was afterwards adjoyned the *Chancellor*, who is the chief, and 5 other *Senators*) besides as many *Advocates* and *Clarks* as the *Senators* see convenient. And this was thus instituted by *King James the Fifth*, Anno 1532, after the Forme of the *Parliament of Paris*: And these Sit and Administer *Justice* every day (except *Sun-*

*dayes* and *Mundayes*) from the first of *November* to the 15th of *March*, and from *Trinity Sunday* to the first *Calends of August*, And all the time between (as being either *Steed-time*, or *Harvest-time*) it is *Vacation*.

And besides this *Court* there are in every *Shire*, or *County*, inferior *Civil Judicatories*, or *Courts* kept, wherein the *Sheriff* of the *Shire*, or his *Deputy* decideth *Controversies* and *Law-suits*; but oftentimes there are *Appeales* to the *Sessions*, or *Higher Court of Equity*.

There are likewise *Judicatories*, which they call *Commisariats*, and these have to do with *Ecclesiastical Affaires*, as *Wills* and *Testaments*, *Divorcements*, *Tithes*, &c. and the Chief of these *Courts* is held at *Edinburgh*.

The ancient *People* of this Kingdom were first the *Gadens*, and contained the *Countries*, or *Shires of Lothian, Fvidale, and Merch*. Secondly, the *SELGOVÆ*, or *Countries of Liddisdale, Esfisdale, Efhedale, Anandale, and Niddisdale*. Thirdly, the *NOVANTES*, or *shires of Galloway, Carrick, Kyle, Cunningham and Arran*. Fourthly, the *DAMNII*, or *shires of Clydesdale, Strivelling, Lennox, Menzies and Fife*. Fifthly, the *CALDEDONII*, or *Countries of Strathern, Argile, Cantire, Albany, Lorne, Perth, Athol, and Angus*. Sixthly, the *VERMINES*, or *shires of Merins and Marri*. Seventhly, the *TALZALI*, or *Country of Buchanan*. Eightly, the *VACOMAGI*, or *shire of Loquabre and Murray*. Ninthly, the *CANTÆ*, or *Countries of Ross and Sutherland*. Tenthly, the *CATINI*, or *shire of Cathness*: And lastly *CORNUBII*, or *Country, or shire of Strathnaver*, which is the utmost Northern Land of all *Brittany*.

These partes are again (according to their *Civil Government*) divided into *Sheriffdomes*, *Stewartries* and *Bailiwicks*, viz.

The *COUNTIES* or *SHERIFFDOMES* of *Edinburgh, Lynythio, Selkirk, Roxburgh, Peebles, Berwick, Lanark, Renfrew, Dunfreis, Wigtown, Aire, Bute, Argyle, Tarbet, Dunbarton, Perth, Clackmannan, Kinross, Fife, Kincardin, Forfar, Aberdeen, Banff, Elgin, Furrer, Narnes, Inverness, Cromartie, Orkney and Sutherland*.

The *STEWARTIES* of *Menzies, Kircudbright, Strathern, and Anandale*.

The *BAILIWICKS* of *Kilo, Carricks and Cunningham*: and as to the *Ecclesiastical Government*, it is divided into two *Arch-Bishopricks*, viz. *S. Andrews* and *Glasco*,

The anti- and inhabi- tants of Scotland.

Scotland divided into Sheriffdomes.

Stewartries

Bailiwicks

l resort-  
the river  
, and not  
ed round  
ie, which  
s and Or-  
a strong  
citate so  
urch, cal-  
b impetu-  
art of its  
or Moore  
being low  
erflowings  
hundreds,  
d hat' for  
ple 6 Ma-  
es are num-  
f which 62  
or the most  
are 41 Co-  
hich are 76-  
36 Parkes,  
Also these  
eight, viz.  
Noptudian,  
vants, Mo-  
mountain,  
D.  
e Northern  
and is divided  
s Toward and  
ills: It ex-  
et 480 miles;  
able breadth,  
les from the  
en called Sco-  
Scots, a Peo-  
e Northern  
did extend;  
o called from  
gyptian Pho-  
y to the Ha-  
divided into  
North and  
e former live  
t of Scotland,  
g much of the  
ature

20  
30  
40  
50

*Glasco*, under whom are several *Suffragan Bishops*.

Thus much in briefe, as to the *Situation, Magnitude, Name, Division, Fertility, Commodities, People, Government, ancient Inhabitants, &c. of Scotland*. In the next place I shall treat of its *Chief places*, as they lye in each part, *Countrey, Province, or shire*; and first with those in *Lothien*.

Lothien.

**LOTHIEN**, which for the fertility of its *Earth*, and the civility of its *Inhabitants* is esteemed the *Flower of all Scotland*: Its chief places are, 1. *Edinburch*, of old *Castrum Alatum*, and is the Metropolitan *City* of this Kingdom; Its *Situation* is high, and in a wholesome *Aire*, and fertile *soile*; and by reason of its commodious *Haven*, called *Leith Haven*, not above a mile distant, is a place of good trade. This *City* chiefly consisteth of one street, which is about a Mile in length, out of which run many petty *Streets* and *lanes*, so that its *Circuit* may be about 3 Miles; which is strongly begirt with a *Wall*; and at the West-end of the *City* is seated, on the top of a *Rock*, a fair and strong *Castle*, with many *Towers* which Commands the *Town*, and is esteemed in a manner impregnable: It belonged once to the *English*, till in 960 the *Scots* took it from them, when oppressed with the *Danish tyrannies*. It is adorned with many fair *Edifices*; as well *Publick* as *Private*, among which is the *Palace of the Kings*, a faire Structure: and its private *Houses* are generally faire, lofty, and built with *Free-stone*, and so well inhabited, that seven Families inhabit in one *House*: It is dignified with the *Courts of Judicature*, *High Courts of Parliament*, and with an *University*.

As to the *Coynes, Weights and Measures of Scotland*, I shall treat of them here, as being the chief *City*, and place of trade in this Kingdom.

Their Coyne

As to their *Coynes*, note, that 13; d sterling makes a *Mark*, or 13 sh. 4 d. scotch. 6½ d sterling is a scotch *Noble*: 20 d sterling, is 20 sh. or a scotch *l.* and 20 sh. sterling is 18 scotch *Markes*.

Their Weights

Their *Weights* used in *Merchandize* is the *li.* of 16 ounces, 100 of which make their *Quintal*, or *C.* and is found to make in *London* 208 *li.* *Haverdupois*.

Their Measures

Their *Measures* for length is the *Ell*, and is about 4 per cent. greater than the *English Ell*.

Their *Liquid Measures* are such as in

*England*, but of a double content, a *Pint* being an *English Quart*, a quart two quarts, and so answerable.

Their *Dry Measures* are also the same with those of *England*, but of a bigger content.

The next places of note in this *shire*; are, 1. *Haddington*, seated in a wide and broad *Plain*, a place of good account, and which the *English* fortified with a deep and large *Ditch*, with other *Fortifications*. 2. *Dunbar*, seated on the *Seashore*. 3. *Dryton*. 4. *Dalkeith*: And 5. *Linton*.

**TEIFIDALE**, that is, the *Vale* by the River *Tevie*, or *Tevia*, adjoining to *England*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Roxburg*, which gives name to a Territory adjoining, once a place of good strength; and here it was that King *James the Second of Scotland* was unfortunately slain by the breaking of a *Canon* at the *Siege*. 2. *Tedburgh*, seated near the confluence of the Rivers *Tevia* and *Ted*, a place well inhabited and frequented. 3. *Pebble*: And 4. *Selkirk*.

**MERCH**, so called as being a *March*; it is wholly on the *German Ocean*, and hath for its chief places, 1. *Coldingham*, a place of great antiquity for its chaste *Nuns*. 2. *Ham*. And 3. *Kelfo*.

**LIDDESDALE**, a small Territory, which takes its name from a River which passeth through it; its chief place being *Harley*, and *Branksby*.

**ESKEDALE**, another small Territory, so called from a River which passeth through it; whose chief place is *Sefton*.

**EUSDALE**, likewise another small Territory, also so called from a River which watereth it.

**ANNANDALE**, that is the *Vale* by the River *Annan*, on which its Mouth is seated, *Annandale* being its chief *Town*. Its next place of note is *Lochmabain*, nigh unto which is a strong *Castel*.

**NIDISDALE**, so named from the River *Nid*, which watereth it; and this Territory is of a fertile *Soile*, and beareth good *Corn*; its chief places are, 1. *Dunfries*, seated near the mouth of the River *Nid*, between two hills, the chief *Town* of this Territory, and of note for making of *Woolen clothes*. 2. *Solway*. 3. *Morris*; And 4. *Corda*.

**GALLOWAY**, so called of the *Irish* who once inhabited here; it is much inclined

incl  
for  
whic  
store  
brigh  
on t  
Town  
streng

4. W  
CA  
is wel  
from  
are,  
quity

KIL  
inhabit  
Aire, t  
a place  
Uchiltra  
sords

CUN  
dious th  
places  
a River  
but now

2. Larg  
ARR  
ham, and  
hath for  
say.

CLU  
river Clu  
quo, pleas  
over which  
place of  
and of fo

Arch-bishe  
Reinfrans  
so called.

4. Hamilt  
STRIV

a fertile  
here is the  
which Ea  
Frith, thro

Land, our  
separated  
chief place  
of a place

with a stro  
of the birth-p  
of Scotland  
Britain:

LENNO  
and stored  
its chief pl  
great streng

in all Scotla  
And 2.



inclined to Hills, which renders it more fit for *grazing than vilage*; and the Sea, by which it is washed, affords the inhabitants store of *Fish*: Its chief places are *Kircoubricht*; the most commodious Port-Tow. on this Coast. 2. *Wigton*, a haven-Town. 3. *Cardinefs*, a place of great strength, as well by nature as art: And 4. *Witherne*.

CARRICKT hath good *Pastures*, and is well furnished with all necessaries, both from the land and sea; Its chief places are, 1. *Bargeney*, a place of great antiquity: And 2. *Blagphan*.

KILE, a fertile Country, and well inhabited; its chief places being, 1. *Aire*, seated on a river so called, and is a place of some account and trade. 2. *Uchiltre*. 3. *Cefnock*: And 4. *Cunfords*.

CUNNINGHAM, no less commodious than pleasant; hath for its chief places: 1. *Trinis*, seated at the mouth of a River so called, where it hath a Haven, but now is choaked up, and of small use. 2. *Largie*: And 4. *Andiffan*.

ARRAN, an Isle nigh unto *Cunningham*, and among many other other Isles, hath for its chief places *Arran* and *Rothsay*.

CLUDISDALE, so called from the river *Clud*; its chief places are, 1. *Glasgo*, pleasantly situate on the River *Clud*, over which it hath a fair *Bridge*, and is a place of good account, well frequented, and of some trade, is dignified with an *Arch-bishops See*, and an *University*. 2. *Reinfray*, which gives name to a *Barony* so called. 3. *Douglafs*, or *Douglafsdale*. 4. *Hamiltown*: And 5. *Lawrie*.

STRIVELING, or STERLING, of a fertile *soile*, and well inhabited, and here is that narrow *Land*, or *streight*, by which *Edenborough Frith*, and *Dunbriton Frith*, thrusing themselves far into the Land, out of the East and West seas, are separated from meeting together; the chief places in this tract, are, 1. *Stirling*, a place of good strength, and fortified with a strong *Castle*, and dignified with the birth-place of King *James the Sixth of Scotland*, the First Monarch of *Great Britain*: And 2. *Elphieington*.

LENNOX, a Country well watered, and stored with variety of *Fish*; hath for its chief places, 1. *Dunbriton*, a place of great strength, having the strongest *Castle* in all *Scotland* both by nature and art: And 2. *Al-Clud*, of good antiquity.

MENTEITH, so called from the River *Teith*; its chief places are *Dunblain*, and *Clackmannan*.

FIFE, a fertile Country in *Corne* and *Pasturage*, hath *Pit-coale*, and the sea affordeth store of *Oysters* and other *fish*; its chief places are, 1. *St. Andrews*, of old *Fanum Regalis*, which hath a fair prospect into the sea, near the fall of the *Ethan*; it is fortified with a fair and strong *Castle*, and dignified with an *Archiepiscopal-see*, and the Metropolitan of all *Scotland*. 2. *Kinghorne*, seated near the *Forth*. 3. *Falkland*, pleafantly seated for *Hunting*, for which the King hath here a retiring house. 4. *Disert*: And 5. *Cupre*.

STRATHERNE, that is the Vale along the River *Ern*, hath for its chief place *Abergyn*, seated on the river *Tan*, once a place of good account.

ARGILE, well furnished with *Fish-Pooles*, in which, *Leffides* in the sea by which it is washed, are taken good *Fish*; it hath for its chief place *Dunwin*.

CANTIRE, that is, the *Lands-head*, hath for its chief places *Swin*, and *Sandel*.

ALBANIE, or BRAIB-ALBIN is the highest part of *Scotland*; and the People that inhabit in these parts are called the *Highlanders*, which are a kind of rude and Warlike People; It hath for its chief place *Enverlathca*.

LORNE, of a soile excellent for bearing *Barley*, hath for it chief places 1. *Dunslafage*, once dignified with a house of the Kings. 2. *Tarbart*, where King *James the Fourth* ordained a *Sheriff*, and a *Justice*, to administer Justice to the Inhabitants of the out-Isles: and 3. *Bergonum*.

PERTH, a large and fertile Country, its chief places are, 1. *Perch*, or *St. Johns Town*, a place of good account, being pleasantly seated on the river *Tay*, and between two *Greens*, its chief Church is *St. Johns*. 2. *Dunkeldes*, dignified by King *David* with an *Episcopal see*: And 3. *Scow*, seated on the farther side of the *Tay*, honoured with the Inauguration of the *Scotch Kings*, before their Union to *England*; where now *Westminster* is the place; and where the Chair in which the Kings were formerly *Crowned* is, which is yet made use of.

ATHOL, indifferent fertile, and well clothed with *Wood*, but infamous for *Witches*, its chief place is *Blair*.

K k k k. ANGUIS;



**ANGUIS**, a fertile *Countrey*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Dundee*, seated at the mouth of the River *Tay*, a noted and well frequented place by reason of its *Port*; 2. *Brechin*, dignified by King *David* with an *Episcopal see*. 3. *Montrose*. 4. *Glamis*: And 5. *Forfar*.

**MERNIS**, a small, but plain, fertile, and champagne *Countrey*, shooting on the *German Ocean*; Its chief places are, 1. *Dumnotyr*, defended by a strong *Castle* which looketh into the *sea*: And 2. *Fordon*, seated not far from the *sea*.

**MARRIA**, or *MAR*, somewhat inclined to *Mountains*; its chief places are, 1. *Aberdeen*, seated at the mouth of the River *Don*, dignified with an *Episcopal see*, and an *University*, and is of note for taking of *Salmons*: And 2. *Kildrummy*.

**BUCQUHAN** hath good Pasturage to feed *sheep*, whose *wool* is excellent: and its *Rivers* breed store of *Salmons*; its chief places are *Rothensay*, and *Stanes*.

**LOQUABREA**, well stored with *Rivers* and *Woods*, hath good Pastures, and in the bowels of the Earth are *Iron-Mines*; its chief places are, 1. *Innerlethey*, once a place of good account, well frequented, and of a good trade: And 2. *Kynsale*.

**MURRAY**, a fertile and pleasant *Countrey*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Inverness*. 2. *Elgin*. 3. *Forres*. 4. *Rothis*. 5. *Beau*. 6. *Narden*: And 7. *Budgenoth*.

**ROSSE**, a large *Countrey*, watered on both sides with the *sea*, its chief places are, 1. *Lochet*. 2. *Cawony*. 3. *Cromarty*: And 4. *Skyraffin*.

**SUTHERLAND**, regarding the *Ocean*, is more fit to breed *Cattel*, then for *Tillage*; hath for its chief places *Dunrobin*, and *Dorno*.

**CATHANES**, washed with the *Eastern sea*, hath for its chief places *Girnegs*, and *Wick*.

**STRATHNAVERNE**, which is the utmost Coast of all *Britain*, of a cold Temperature, much inclined to sterility, and ill inhabited; its chief places are, 1. *Strathbaster*: and 2. *Tenage*. In this Tract are 3 *Promontories*, to wit, *Urdehead*, of old *Berberium*. 2. *Dunlsy*, or *Dunleubay*, of old *Firvedrum*: and 3. *Houburn*, of old *Arca*.

and so much for Scotland.

## I R E L A N D.

**I R E L A N D** is environed on all sides with the *sea*; it standeth West of *Britain*, and next to it is the biggest: It is by some called *Iverna*, or *Ferna*; but by the Natives *Erin*, which signifieth Westward, as lying most Westwards of *Europe*. The *Soile* is generally exceeding fertile, abounding in great store of *Cattel*; but in many places hath unprofitable and unwholsome *Marshes* and *Boggs*. It hath an *Aire* so temperate and good, that it neither breedeth nor suffereth any venomous *beast*, *serpent*, or *insect* to live, though brought from other *Countreys*. But it is (and hath been) much troubled with *Wolves*: It contains in length about 240 *Miles*, and in breadth 120, situate under the 10th or 12th *Climates*, the longest day being about 16 *hours*. It is an *Island* of great strength, as well by *nature* as *art*, by reason of its situation in such dangerous *Seas*, and the several *Fortifications* and *Castles* that the *English* have built since they were Masters of it.

In this *Iste* are several great *Rivers*, the chief among which are those of 1. *Shannon*, being about 60 *miles* Navigable, and after its course of 200 *miles* it loseth it self in the *Western Ocean*. 2. *Liff*. 3. *Shannon*. 4. *Avon*. 5. *Shannon*: and 6. *Siene*, &c. And besides these *Rivers* there are several *Lakes*, among which *Lough-erne* is the greatest, being about 30 *miles* in length, and 15 in breadth, in which are several small *Istes*. And this, as all other of its *Lakes*, are well stored with *Fish*.

Its *Inhabitants* were extremely barbarous, till civilized by the *English*; but yet retain several of their absurd and ridiculous *Customes*. The *Christian Faith* was first here planted by *St. Patrick*.

The *Countrey*, or *Island* may be divided into 4 several *Provinces*, which have formerly been so many *Kingdoms*, to wit *ULSTER*, *MUNSTER*, *CONNAUGHT*, and *LEINSTER*: And the whole *Iste* is now divided into 32 *Counties*, of which I shall speak when I come to treat of each *Province* in which they lie.

As to the *Ecclesiastical Government* of this

this /  
the c  
are r

The

dome,  
hath

pream

Englan

tenant

who se

Inferio

to whol

cil. Th

Right

Lord R

Privy S

The

responde

have lik

sice, as

Kings-be

Supreme

the chief

Peace in

The C

death, are

furnish E

Tallow, B

they mak

staves, as

Seas yield

rings, Pilch

profit, and

Mines of A

produceth

ries, as Hol

Linnen-clar

time to ha

with *Wolfe*

Pro

1. The

large exten

places being

which woul

red, it hath

as also divers

south Meas

ther partes t

Counties of

en, Colrane,

magh, Monag

of these a v

places, &c.

The Cou

CONNEL,

the Sea, w

vens; Its c

this *Iste*, or *Kingdome*, it is committed to the care of 4 *Arch-bishops*, under whom are 19 *Suffragan Bishops*.

The *Temporal Government* of this *Kingdome*, since the *English* were Masters of it, hath most commonly been by one *supream Officer*, sent over by the King of *England*, and who is called the *Lord Lieutenant*, or *Lord Deputy of Ireland's* and who for *Majesty, State and Power* is not inferior to any *Vice-roy* in *Christendome*. to whose assistance there is a *Privy-council*. The present *Lord Lieutenant* is the *Right Honourable and truly Noble John Lord Roberts, Baron of Truro*, late *L. Privy Seal*.

The *Laws* of this *Kingdome* have correspondency with those of *England*, and have likewise their several *Courts of Justice*, as the *Chancery, Common-Pleas, Kings-bench, Exchequer, &c.* Also the *Supreme Court of Parliament* which is the *Chief*, likewise they have *Justices of Peace* in every County.

The *Commodities* that this *Island* affordeth, are store of *Cattel*, with which they furnish *England*, as also with their *Hides, Tallow, Butter, Cheese and Wool*, of which they make *Cloth*, and several *Manufactures*, as *Frises, Rugs, Mantles, &c.* Its *Seas* yield great plenty of *Codfish, Herrings, Pilchers*, and other *fish* to their great profit, and in the *bowls* of the *Earth* *Mines of Lead, Tin and Iron*, likewise it produceth several other good *Commodities*, as *Honey, Wax, Furs, Salt, Hemp, Linnen-cloth, Pipe-staves, &c.* But it is time to haste to its *Provinces*, and first with *Ulster*.

Province of ULSTER.

1. The *Province of ULSTER*, of a large extent, and different *Soile*, some places being fertile, and others barren, which would be otherwise if well manured; it hath many thick and shady *Woods*, as also divers large *Lakes*: It hath on the south *Meath*, and *Connangh*, and on all other partes the *Sea*; It is divided into the Counties of *Dunagal*, or *Tyrconnel, Tyroen, Colrane, Antrim, Downe, Louth, Armagh, Monaghan, Cavan, and Fermanagh*, of these a word or two, as to their chief places, &c. and first of *Dunagal*.

The County of *DUNAGAL*, or *TYRCONNEL*, is *Champaine*, and washed by the *Sea*, which affordeth it several *Havens*; Its chief places are, 1. *Donegal*,

which gives name to the County, it is seated not far from the mouth of *Lough-Earne*, 2. *Derry*, & *Londen-Derry*, a Colony of the *Citizens of London*, a faire, and well-built place. 3. *Robogh*: And 4. *Calebog*, seated on the *Sea*, and hath a commodious *Haven*: here are the *Promontories of Faire Foreland, Rams-head, and St. Helens-head*, as also *St. Patricks Purgatory*.

10 *TYROEN*, a large County, and divided by the *Mountains* called *Sliew Gallen*, into the upper and lower *Tyroen*; its chief places are, 1. *Dungannon*, the ancient residence of the *O Neales*. 2. *Clogher*, dignified with a *Bishoprick*. 3. *Sirebane*: and 4. *Charlemont*. In this County is the *Lake Neaugh*, of a large extent, well stored with *Fish*.

20 *COLRANE*, watered with the *River Band*, which carrieth a proud streame into the *Sea*, and of note for its breeding of abundance of *Salmons*; its chief place gives name to the County: and 2. *Glan-colkil*, seated amongst dangerous *Boggs*, and thick and shady *Woods*.

*ANTRIM*, situate between the Bay of *Knock-fergus, Lough-Nhaugh*, and the *River Band*; Its chief places are, 1. *Knockfergus*, that is the *Rock of Fergus*, seated on a large Bay, where there is a commodious *Port* of good strength, well inhabited, and better frequented than other places on this Coast. 2. *Antrim*: and 3. *Nether-Clanc-boy*.

*DOWNE*, a large and fertile County, extending it self as far as the *Sea*, it hath for its chief places, 1. *Downe*, of good antiquity, and dignified with an *Episcopal-see*, as also with the *Tombe* of *St. Patrick, St. Brigid, and St. Columbe*. 2. *Strangford*, hath a safe harbour; and here the *River Coyne* with a great streame lofeth it self in the *Sea*. 3. *Arglas*, where, as 'tis said, *St. Patrick* founded a *Church*. 4. *Corner*, or *Conerath*, an *Episcopal-see*. 5. *Kilwols*: and 6. *Kilwarry*, much annoyed with *Boggs*, and full of *Woods*.

50 *LOUTH*, of a fertile *Soile*, and very grateful to the *Husbandman*; this County lyeth beyond *Meath*, and the mouth of the *River Boyne*, which turning full upon the *Sea*, runneth out with a shore, much winding towards the *North*; Its chief places are, 1. *Tredagh*, seated near the mouth of the *Boyne*, which divideth it, over which it hath a *Bridge*, and where it hath a commodious *Haven*; it is a good *Town*, well frequented, and inhabited. 2. *Dundalke*,

D.

all sides  
West of  
na; but  
signifieth  
towards of  
y exceed-  
tore of  
h unpro-  
spheres and  
perate and  
nor suffer-  
or infect  
om other  
ath been )  
It contains  
in breadth  
or 1200 Cl-  
; about 16  
t strength,  
ason of its  
eas, and the  
les that the  
were Ma-

Rivers, the  
of 7. Shan-  
avigable, and  
it lofeth it  
s. 2. Liff.  
s. Slanie:  
es these R-  
among which  
being about  
breadth, in  
And this,  
well stored

ely bar-  
English; but  
urd and ridi-  
ristian Faith.  
Patrick.  
y be divided  
ch have for-  
ms. to wit  
1. CON-  
NSTER:  
divided into  
shall speak  
ach Province  
overnment of  
this

Ireland.  
disfranchi-  
ed and  
name.

County  
of  
Tyroen.

County  
of  
Colrane.

County  
of  
Antrim.

County  
of  
Downe.

County  
of  
Louth.



account, well inhabited, frequented, and of some trade: It is encompassed with a Wall, and hath for its Chief Magistrate a Major.

**WATERFORD**, a pleasant and fertile County, washed with the Sea; hath for its Chief places, 1. *Waterford*, seated on the River *Shannon*, on which it hath a commodious, and capacious Port, where a thousand saile of Ships may safely ride; It is a fair place, well inhabited, and of a good trade, being esteemed the second City of Ireland; and is dignified with the See of a Bishop. 2. *Dungarvan*, a well fortified Town on the Sea, where it hath a good Road for Ships, which makes it of some account: And 3. *Ardmore*, also seated on the Sea.

This Province of Munster is said to have about 60 Castles for its defence.

Province of CONNAUGHT.

3. The Province of CONNAUGHT, (as others are) is Woody, and full of Bogs; it hath on the East the Province of Meath, on the South Munster; on the West the Sea, where it hath many commodious Bays, Creeks, and Navigable Rivers; and on the North Ulster. It is divided into the Counties of Mayo, Sligo, Galloway, Clare or Twomond, Roscommon, and Lerryim; of which in order.

**MAYO**, a pleasant and fertile County, and well stored with Cattel and Deere; hath for its chief places Mayo, Bellemore, and Newca; and here is the Lake Lough-Meik, of a large extent, and well stored with fish.

**SLIGO**, parted in twain by the River See; it is a Country that hath rich Pastures, breedeth abundance of Cattel, and washed by the Sea; which affordeth the Inhabitants good plenty of fish. Its chief place beares the same name with the County, and is seated on the Sea, where it hath a commodious Road for Ships, and is defended with a Castle.

**GALLOWAY**, a fertile County both for Tillage and Pasturage, and the Western part is washed by the Sea, which thrusteth forth several armies, its chief places are, 1. *Galloway*, a fair, large, and strong City, seated near the great Lake of Carus, where it dischargeth it self into the Western Ocean; and by reason of

its commodious Haven or Road for Ships, is a place well inhabited, frequented, and of a good trade; it is dignified with the See of a Bishop. 2. *Ashmoy*, encompassed with a Wall of a good circuit, but not overburthened with Inhabitants. 3. *Team*, an Episcopal See. 4. *Kilmacullo*; And 5. *Clenford*.

**CLARE, or TWOMOND**, shooteth it self out into the Sea, towards the west, with a great Promontory; which, as it approacheth the sea, so it waxeth narrower and narrower; It is a Country well provided of all things; and hath for its chief places, 1. *Clare*, seated on a Creeke, which floweth out of the River *Shannon*, which is its Southern bounds, and where are several small Isles. 2. *Bunaroy*. 3. *Kilfennerogh*: And 4. *Kyaloe*.

**ROSCOMAN**, a long but narrow County, very fertile, and breedeth store of Cattel; but Northwards, where the Carlew Mountaines are, it is inclined to sterility; its chief places are, 1. *Roscommon*, once of good account. 2. *Ashlen*, defended by a Castle, and beautified by a fair Bridge of hewen Stone: And 3. *Boyle*.

**LERRYIM**, fit to breed Cattel; its chief places are, 1. *Lerryim*, seated in a fertile soile, of note for an unfortunate and great defeat the English received in the Rebellion of *Thowen*: And 2. *Acherry*. And in this County the famous River *Shannon* hath its spring-head.

This Province for its defence hath about 34 Castles.

Province of LEINSTER.

4. The Province of LEINSTER is generally of a fertile soile, and very fruitful, of a temperate aire, and well inhabited by civil People; it is bounded on the East and South with the sea which regards England; on the West, with the Province of Connaught; and on the North with the Province of Meath. It is divided into the Counties of Dublin, Kildare, Kings-County, Queens-County, Kewlough, Weighford, and Kilkenny, of which in order.

**DUBLIN**, washed with the Sea, a fertile County, but ill provided with Wood, and by reason of its City Dublin the Metropolis of all Ireland, is very well furnished

LIII with

with *towns*; among which are those of  
 1. *Wicklo*, seated on the *sea*, where, over the narrow *Haven* there standeth a rock enclosed with a strong *Wall* in stead of a *Castle*, serving for a place of defence. 2. *New-castle*, which regardeth the *sea*, where are the shelves of Sand, which they call *the grounds*; which reach a great way in length, between which and the shore is said to be about 7 fathome deep of water. 3. *Howth*, in a manner enclosed with the *sea*. 4. *Fingal*. 5. *Malchid*; And 6. *Dublin*, the Metropolitan *City* of this Kingdom, of good antiquity; It is pleasantly seated on the River *Liffie*, (which after a small course emptieth it self into the *sea*) where it hath a commodious *haven*, and having on the East a fair and pleasant prospect into the *sea*; on the South delightful *Hills*; and for recreation hath several *Parkes* well stored with *Deere*, and other Game. It is a *City* dignified and enriched with the Residence of the *Lord Deputy* for the King of *England*; as also with the see of an *Arch-Bishop*; with an *University*, and *Courts of Judicature*; by reason of which, as also for its commodious *haven*, is a place of good *Traffique*, well frequented, and inhabited; It is beautified with many faire *Buildings*, as well publick as private, the chief of which besides those afore-named, are, the *Lord Deputys Palace*, a faire Structure, the *Cathedral-Church* dedicated to St. *Patrick*, nigh to which is the *Arch-bishops Palace*; both which are without the *City*, in the Suburb called St. *Patricks* suburb; then the *Collegiate-Church*, consecrated to the *Holy-Trinity*, commonly called *Christ-Church*, seated in the midst of the *City*, nigh to which is the *Town-Hall*, called *Fale-fale*; a fair Stone-building, in forme quadrangular, and here the *Mayor* and *Citizens* assemble for the ordering the Affairs of the *City*, as also to hear *Causess*; and hold *Sessions*. Then a beautiful *College*, with several other fair *Buildings*; It is a *City* of a large extent, and good strength, having a strong *Wall* which giveth entrance at six *Gates*, from whence run *suburbs* of a good length. This *City* was said to be built by *Harald Havgager*, the first King of *Norway*, and after the Conquest of the *English* Peopled by a *Colony* of *British-men*. As touching the trade

City of Dublin.

City of Du Lin de sribid.

of *Ireland*, I shall include it under this *City*, as being the chief place of  *Traffick*.

The *Commodities* of this *City* are the product of the whole *Kingdome*, which I have already treated of.

The *Commodities* most vendible here are all sorts of *English Commodities*, as also those of other *Nations*.

Its *Cojnes*, by reason of it being under the Jurisdiction of *England*, carry correspondency therewith, and are here found; yet in distinction of the real worth are thus found, the *Pound Irish* doth consist of 20 *sh. Irish*, yet is accounted but for 15 *sh. Sterling*, and their *Shilling* but 9 *d. Sterling*.

As to their *Weights* and *Measures* they are found to agree with those of *England*, where see further.

**EAST-MEATH**, watered with the Noble River *Boyn*; hath for its chief places, 1. *Trim*, a *Town* of good account, seated on the River *Boyn*. 2. *Abboy*, another *Town* of note, also seated on the *Boyn*. 3. *Slane*. 4. *Gallrim*: And 5. *Dunsury*.

**WEST-MEATH**, so called, as lying Westwards, as the other is for lying Eastwards; hath for its chief places, 1. *Molingar*, which by Authority of *Parliament* was made the Chief *Town* of the *Shire*, as lying in the midst. 2. *Delwin*. 3. *Kerkerry*: And 4. *Newca*.

**LONGFORD**, watered with the famous River *Shannon*, whose chief place beareth the same name.

**KILDARE**, a rich and fertile *County*; its chief places are, 1. *Kildare*, a faire In-land *town*, well frequented, dignified with an *Episcopal-see*, and defended by a *Castle*. 2. *Maimoth*, a *Market-Town* of some account, being defended by a *Castle*. 3. *Arble*, seated on the River *Barrow*: And 4. *Carbre*.

**KINGS-COUNTY**, so called in honour to *Phillip King of Spain*, Husband to *Mary Queen of England*; hath for its chief place *Phillips-town*, a place of some account, being the chief of the *County*; and next *Lee*.

**QUEENS-COUNTY**, so called, in honour of *Queen Mary*, it is but a small *County*, very *Woody*, and full of *Bogges*; Its chief places are, 1. *Mary-burgh*. 2. *Abbeban*, once a *City*, but at present of small account: And 3. *Bracteca*.

**CATERLOUGH**, a fertile *County*, and well clothed with *Wood*; hath for its

In Triu

Teth Coy.

Their Weight Measures.

County of E. D. Meath.

County of West. Meath.

County of Longford.

County of Kildare.

Kings County.

Queens County.

County of Caterlough.

its  
 Bel  
 Bar  
 3.  
 cop  
 Fer  
 ed  
 1.  
 Riv  
 the  
 of E  
 2. E  
 ne, a  
 3. F  
 sec.  
 K  
 and  
 which  
 on the  
 Burro  
 midla  
 divide  
 town  
 side by  
 the 17  
 greate  
 micks  
 chief  
 Thom  
 Neuro  
 Callan  
 sher B  
 And  
 which  
 vast nu  
 may be  
 nomina  
 may be  
 heads,  
 the Sar  
 the Spa  
 The  
 NET ar  
 ate aga  
 land, fro  
 narrow  
 Isles are  
 26 mile  
 and is at  
 Tim; it  
 Mainela  
 Kirkmal  
 dignific  
 2. H  
 com.  
 3. H  
 4. S  
 Scutish L



under this  
e of af-  
ity are the  
me, which I  
ddible here  
modities, as  
t being un-  
land, carry  
nd are here  
of the real  
Pound Irish  
yet is ac-  
g, and they  
seafares they  
ote of Eng-  
ed with the  
for its chief  
of good ac-  
2. A-  
also seated  
4. Galtrim:  
lled, as lying  
is for lying  
chief places, 1.  
rity of Par-  
chief Town of  
midst. 2. Del-  
Newca.  
with the fa-  
se chief place  
fertile Coun-  
1. Kildare, a  
equented, dig-  
re, and defend-  
sh, a Market-  
being defended  
on the Ri-  
re.  
o called in ho-  
ain, Husband  
nd, hath for  
on, a place of  
e chief of the  
so called, in  
is but a small  
full of Boges;  
ary-burgh. 2.  
at present of  
Bractea.  
errile Country,  
ood, hath for  
its

Count of Wicklow

Count of Kildare

County of Wick

County of Londonderry

County of Kildare

Dr. Dr.

County of Londonderry

County of Wick

County of Londonderry

County of Londonderry

its chief places, 1. *Caterlagh*; And 2. *Bellingham*, both seated on the River *Barrow*, and of good account and strength. 3. *Leighlin*, once dignified with an *Episcopal see*, which now is joyaed to that of *Fernes*; And 4. *Tullo*.

*WEISHFORD*, or *WEXFORD*, washed with the *Sea*, hath for its chief places 1. *Weishford*, seated at the mouth of the River *Slane*, of some note for its being the first town that embraced a Colony of *English*, as also for the *Herring-fishing*. 2. *Eniscowry*, also seated on the River *Slane*, a Burrough, and Incorporate town; and 3. *Fernes*, dignified with an *Episcopal see*.

*KILKENNY*, a very fertile *County*, and well graced with townes, among which are those of, 1. *Kilkenny*, seated on the River *Neuro*, a faire and wealthy *Burrough-towne*, far exceeding all other midland *Burroughs* in this *Island*: It is divided into the *English* and the *Irish-townes*, the *English* fenced on the West side by a *Wall*, and defended by a *Castle*, the *Irish*, as it were the *Suburbs*, is of greater *Antiquity*, hath in it the *Cannocks Churches*, and honoured with the chief seat of the *Bishop of Ossery*. 2. *Thomas-towne*, seated beneath the River *Neuro*, a small walled town; And 3. *Callan*, seated on a River so called, another *Burrough-towne*.

And thus much for *Ireland*, besides which and *Great Brittain*, there are a vast number of lesser *Islands*, which may be comprehended under the denomination of the *British Isles*; and may be considered under four sorts or heads, viz. the *Orcaes*, the *Hebrides*, the *Sorlings*, or the *Isles of Silly*, and the *Sprades*.

The *ORCAES*, or *Isles of ORKNEY* are in number 32, and are scituate against the Northern *Cape of Scotland*, from which it is separated by some narrow *Streights*, the chief of these *Isles* are, 1. *POMONIA*, being about 26 miles in length, and 6 in breadth; and is an *Isle* well stored with *Lead* and *Tin*; it is by the *Inhabitants* called *Maineland*; its chief Town is called *Kirkwall*, fortified with two *Castles*, and dignified with the *See of a Bishop*.

2. *HETHIE*, called by *Ptolomy Orcada*.

3. *HEY*.

4. *SHETLAND*, also under the *Scottish Dominion*, seated about a dayes

saile, more Northward from the *Isles* aforesaid, and much oppressed with cold weather; and the more, as lying on every side open to the bitter storms of the Northern *Ocean*; and therefore it is by many (though falsely) esteemed the *Thule* of the ancients. The *Inhabitants* of this *Isle*, as of others hereabouts, use, in stead of *Bread-Corne*, dried *Stockfish*, beaten as it were to *Powdret*.

5. *FARNE*, encompassed with craggy *Cliffs*, and seated not far distant from the shore of *Northumberland*.

6. *COQUET*, not far from the shore, hath a plentiful *Veine of Sea-cole*.

THE *HEBRIDES*, *HEBUDES*, or *WESTERNE Isles*, because seated in the West of *Scotland*, are in number 44, the chief of which are.

1. *ILA*, about 24 miles long, and 16 broad, plentifully stored with *Cattel*, *Heards of Red Deere*, and *Corne*.

2. *JONA*, whose chief place is *Sadore*, famous for the *Sepulchers of the Scottish Kings*.

3. *MULA*, about 35 miles bigger then *Ila*, not over fertile, but affords mines of *Lead* and *Tin*.

4. *LEVISSA*, or *LEUNES*, the largest of all these *Isles*, being said to be about 60 miles in length, and 30 in breadth.

5. *SKYE*, well stored in its *Creeks* with *Sea-Calves*.

6. *RACLZYNE*.

7. *HYRTHA*, All the rest are small, or of no account, being either stony, and very barren, or else inaccessible, by reason of the *Craggy Cliffs*, so that there is no considerable profit gained by them, nevertheless the *Scotch* bought them of the *Norwegians* with their ready *Money*; as considering them to be (when in the possession of the *Norwegians*) somewhat dangerous, and troublesome to their Kingdom. And the *People* in all these *Isles*, as well in *Language* as *Behaviour*, resemble the *Wild-Irish*, and are called *Redshankes*, being a *People* utterly rude and barbarous.

The *SORLINGS*, so called by the *Dutch*, and by the *English* *SCILLY*, are scituate against the most Western *Cape of Cornhill*, from which they are about 24 miles distant; and are 145 in number; of which only these following are of most esteeme, to wit,

1. *ARMATH*.

Farne

Coquet

The Hebrides, westerne Isles

111

Jona

Mula

Levissa

Skye

Raclzyne  
Hyrtia

The Sorlings, or Scilly Isles

A. smoth:  
Agnes.  
Sampson.  
Scilly.  
Befar.  
Rusco.  
St. Hellens  
S. Martins.  
Arthur.  
St. Maries

1. ARMATH.
2. AGNES.
3. SAMPSON.
4. SCILLY; which communicates its name to the rest.
5. BREFAR.
6. RUSCO.
7. St. HELLENS.
8. St. MARTINS.
9. ARTHUR.

And 10. St. MARIES, largest of all, and strengthened with a *Castle*, called *Stella Maria*, built by Queen *Elizabeth*, being about 8 miles in compass, enjoying a large and commodious *Harbour*. This Isle, as also most of the rest, are very fertile in *Pastures* and *Corn*, well stored with *Cowes*, *Swans*, *Cranes*, and most sorts of *Wild-fowls*; and in the Bowels of the Earth hath Mines of *Ltad*.

The Sporades, or Isles of

Under the name of the SPORADES I comprehend several Islands lying singly about the *British Seas*, and first with,

Isle of Man.

1. MAN, situate against the southern part of *Cumberland*, from which it is distant about 35 Miles; it is in length 30 miles, and in breadth, where broadest, 15; and where narrowest 8: It is of a fertile soile, abounding in *Wheat*, and other *Grains*; but especially *Oats*, of which the inhabitants make most of their *Bread*; it hath fresh *Pastures*, which feed; and breed good flocks of *Sheep*, and herds of *Cattel*, which for smallness resemble those of *Ireland*, as indeed do the *Inhabitants*, as to their *Language* and *Manners*; It is very defective, and ill provided of *Wood*, which makes them use *Peats* for *Fuel*, which they digg out of the Earth: it also affordeth *Flax* and *Hemp* in great abundance; And from this Isle the defects of *Scotland*, and most of the *Western Isles*; of which this is a member, are supplied. It containeth at present 17 *Parish Churches*, the chief of which are, 1. *Duglass*, the best Peopled *Town*, and of the greatest resort, because of its commodious *Haven*, unto which the *French* and others come to *Traffick* with them, bringing them *Salt*, and other necessaries; and receiving from them *Powdred Beefe*, *Leather*, *Wood*, &c. 2. *Rafsin*, or *Castletown*, where, within a small Isle Pope *Gregory* the *Fourth* instituted an *Episcopal see*: And 3. *Bali-curi*, seated

In chief places, and trade.

on the south-side of the Isle; where also is the *Fyfe*, that is the *Blackhouse*, where there is a garrison kept. This Isle in the midst is hilly, amongst which is one called *Seagull*, which exalteth it self above all the others, and on the Summit of which, in a clear day, a man may discern *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*. And this Isle belongs to the *Stanleys*, Earles of *Darby*, who are stiled *Kings of Man*.

10

2. JERSEY, about 30 miles in compass, and is a place of good strength, as well by nature as art, being fenced about with *Shelbes* and *Barks*, and defended by *Castles*; it is of a fertile soile, and the more by reason of their rich manuring it, bearing store of *Corn* and other *Graines*, and breeding great Flocks of *Sheep*, and other *Cattel*; it is ill clothed with *Wood*, in stead of which they use for fuel a kind of *Sea-Wood*, which they call *Uraie*, which being dried they burne, and with the *ashes* they manure their Land. This Isle is blest with a sweet, temperate, and wholesome *air*: It hath 13 *Parish Churches*, and every where furnished with commodious *Creeks* and *Havens*; Its chief places are, 1. *St. Malo*, 2. *St. Albans*; And 3. *St. Hillary*, between which two last *Towns* is the safest Harbour in the Isle, which hath also a small Isle belonging to it, fortified with a strong *Garrison*: and this *Town* of *St. Hillary* is the chief of the Isle, where the *Courts of Justice* are kept.

Isle of Jersey defended.

30

The *Inhabitants* of this Isle are addicted to *Fishing*, and the Women to make *Stockings*, which find good vent in *England*, and elsewhere.

40

3. GARNSEY, about 20 miles distant from *Fersey*; is also a good Isle, yet not so large nor fruitful as *Fersey*; nevertheless, for several reasons, may be preferred before it, as for its greater strength, more commodious *Havens*, and better trade, being well frequented by *Merchants*; It hath 10 *Parish Churches*, the chief of which is *St. Peters*, commodiously seated on the said *Haven*, which makes it well frequented by *Merchants*; the entry into this *Haven* is Rocky, and well fortified on both sides with *Castles*, as also with *Black-houses*, which at every high-water are encompassed with the *Sea*, and here are *Garrison-Soldiers* kept to secure it, and is well provided with all

Isle of Guernsey defended.

50

forts  
town  
side  
the  
and  
replen  
The  
seated  
Britta  
Winche  
manner  
Govern  
Kings  
tants o  
sy to  
(as th  
the Fr  
of their  
A. V  
of whi  
it is di  
Isle is  
in bread  
well by  
craggy  
of its I  
and Cap  
Tarmen  
Sea; an  
(the sad  
of ever  
is a Mag  
The  
to the  
Pasturag  
and Cap  
Conies ar  
other B  
and Fow  
ny Deers  
Oysters, a  
In thi  
and Vill  
Newport,  
an Aime  
the very  
trade, and  
seated on  
a convent  
by a *Cast*  
*Town*.  
ton.  
This I  
is under  
but, as to  
*Bishoprick*  
5. *Por*  
miles cor  
County o

Island.

forts

sorts of ammunition for war, and in this  
1000 the Government for the most part re-  
sideth: on the West part of the Isle near  
the Sea, there is a Lake of about a mile  
and a halfe in compass, which is well  
replenished with Fish, especially Carpes.

This Isle, as also that of Jersey, is  
seated on the Coast of Normandy, and  
Britain, and both under the Diocess of  
Winchester, they have both the same  
manner of Civil Government, and their  
Governours are sent them over by the  
Kings of England: And the Inhabit-  
ants of both, by reason of their vicini-  
ty to France, from whence they were  
(as tis said) originally descended, speak  
the French Language, and have much  
of their Manners.

4. WIGHT, opposite to Hampshire,  
of which this is a part, and from which  
it is divided by a narrow passage, the  
Isle is about 20 miles in length, and 12  
in breadth, It is of great strength, as  
well by reason of its situation among  
craggy rocks, as by the Art and Industry  
of its Inhabitants, by their Fortifications  
and Castles, among which are those at  
Yarmouth, Cowes, and Sandhead on the  
Sea, and within land that of Carisbrooke  
(the sad Prison of King Charles the First  
of ever blessed Memory) where there  
is a Magazine of 50000 Armes.

The Soile is very fertile and grateful  
to the Husbandman both in Corne and  
Pasturage, which breeds store of Sheep  
and Cattel, here is also great plenty of  
Conies and Hares, store of Partridges and  
other Birds, for recreation of Hawking  
and Fowling, in two Parkes a great ma-  
ny Deere, and in the Sea abundance of  
Oysters, and other excellent Fish.

In this Isle are numbred 36 Towns  
and Villages, the chief of which are, 1.  
Newport, the chief of the Isle, seated on  
an Arme of the Sea, receiving Ships to  
the very Key, and is a place of a good  
trade, and well inhabited. 2. Yarmouth,  
seated on the North-west of the Isle, on  
a convenient haven, which is defended  
by a Castle. 3. Brading, a good Market  
Town. 4. Sharpnour, And 5. New-  
ton.

This Isle, as to its civil Government,  
is under the jurisdiction of Hampshire;  
but, as to Ecclesiastical Affaires, under the  
Bishoprick of Winchester.

5. Portland, a small Isle, of about 7  
miles compass, adjoining now to the  
County of Dorset, to which it is part;

of which (see in Devonshire).  
And besides these there are di-  
vers others which may not so properly  
be ranged under those 4 heads aforesaid,  
and such are those of, 1. LONDAY, Londay.  
seated over against Devonshire, about  
2 miles in length, and as much in  
breadth, very fertile, and strong, whose  
chief place beares the same name.

2. CHALDEY, Chaldey.  
And 3. DENNOY, all in the Se-  
verne Sea, Dennoy.

Also SHEPPEY, and THANET, Shep-  
pey. Thanet.  
near Kent, which I have already treated  
of in my Description of Kent, And  
lastly, HOLY-FARNE, and COCKEY, Holy-farne  
Cockey.  
on the Coast of Northumberland, which  
being of no account I omit.

As to the Coyes, Weights and Mea-  
sures of these Islands, being the same  
with those of England, or Scotland, un-  
der whose obedience they are, I think  
it unnecessary to name, having so large-  
ly treated of them already.

But before we leave the British Isles,  
let us give a glance upon its chief Ri-  
vers, of which there are but few of  
any long course, yet some do with large  
Mouthes disburthen themselves into the  
Sea, and carry great Vessels far into the  
Land, and such are the Thames, the  
Severne, and the Humber: The Thames  
Waters the most Southerne part of  
England; its Spring-head is not far  
from the mouth of the Severne, but it  
turnes another way, taking its course  
from East to West, washes the Uni-  
versity of Oxford, and London the Me-  
tropolitan City of England, and empti-  
eth it self into the Germane Ocean, op-  
posite to the Netherlands. SEVERNE,  
is in the Westerne part of England, ta-  
king its beginning in the middle of the  
Principality of Wales, at the foot of the  
famous Plinlimmon Hill; its course  
makes almost the 3 quarters of a cir-  
cle, passes by Shrewsbury, Worcester and  
Glocester, and disburthens it self into the  
Sea, between the Principality of Wales,  
Cornwall and Devonshire; its mouth  
makes the greatest Golfe in England,  
and regards Ireland. HUMBER is  
only a Golfe made by two Rivers, the  
Ouse and the Trent: The OUSE is  
called at the beginning Ure, passes by  
Torke, and receives all the Rivers of  
this County, which is the greatest of  
England. TRENT hath its Springs  
about the middle of England, receives

M m m m many

where  
about,  
This  
which  
exalteth  
and on  
near day,  
Scotland,  
longs to  
who are  
miles in  
of good  
art, be-  
ad Banks,  
of a fertile  
of their  
of Corne  
ing great  
steel; it is  
of which  
on Wood,  
being dri-  
ashes they  
le is black  
wholesome  
ches, and  
sumodious  
chief places  
ans; And  
ch two last  
in the Isle,  
elonging to  
Prison: and  
the chief of  
of Justice  
Isle are ad-  
Women to  
ood vent in  
0 miles di-  
good Isle,  
as Jersey,  
alons, may  
or its great-  
odious Ha-  
ng well fa-  
ath to Pa-  
which is St.  
ed on the  
it well fre-  
entry into  
well fortifi-  
Sea, as also  
every high-  
the Sea, and  
kept to fel-  
led with all  
fortts

No of Jersey  
No of Wight de  
No of High  
No of  
No of  
No of

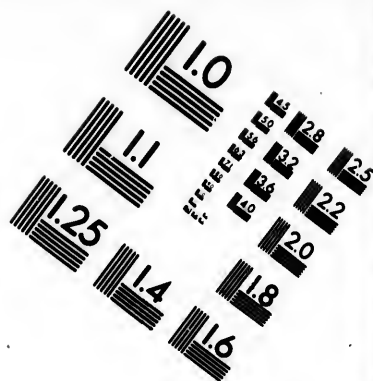
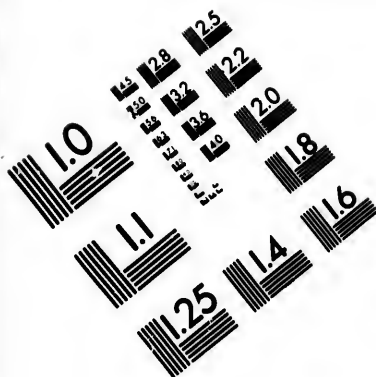
Londay.  
Chaldey.  
Dennoy.  
Shep-  
pey.  
Thanet.  
Holy-farne  
Cockey.  
The chief  
Rivers of  
Britain.  
River  
Thames.  
River  
Severne.  
River  
Humber.  
Ouse  
Trent



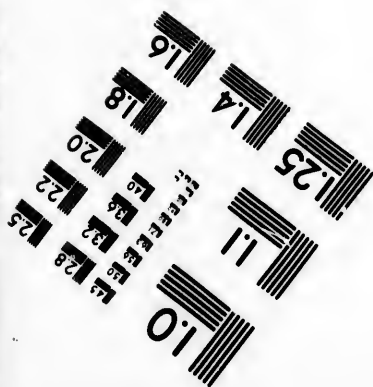
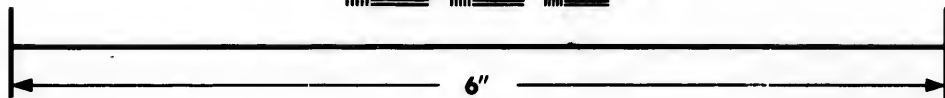
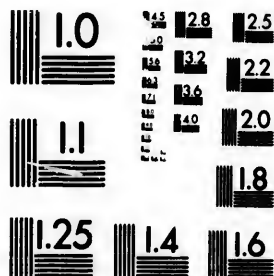








**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0

1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0















# AMERICA: The fourth Part.



AVING already treated of three Parts of the World; viz. *ASIA*, *AFRICA*, and *EUROPE*, contained in our *Continent*, we come now to this New world, now called *AMERICA*, which according to the common Division makes the Fourth and Last Part.

*AMERICA* is a Continent different from that wherein we inhabit, or which we call *Ours*, for the surface of the *Globe* being described in two *Hemispheres*, divided by the first *Meridian*, *America* is in that *Hemisphere* which is opposite to ours.

In 1492, and some succeeding years, *Christopher Columbus a Genoese*, for and in the name of *Ferdinand King of Arragon*, and *Isabella Queen of Castile*, made divers Voyages into the *Islands* which are before this *CONTINENT*, and discovered part of the Coasts of the *Continent*. In 1501, *Alonso Cabral*, for and in the name of *Emmanuel King of Portugal*, Navigating along the Coast of *Africa*, on a voyage to the *East-Indies*, some Easterne Windes carried him so far to the West, that he discovered the Coast of

a main Land, which was afterwards called *Brazil*, where a little after *Americus Vesputius a Florentine* was expressly sent, with particular charge to discover this Country: In which he was so happy, that his name was given to that part of the Coast, which he discovered, and in fine, to the whole *Continent*. From these Voyages of *Columbus*, *Cabral*, and *Americus Vesputius*, the *Spaniards* pretend to be the first who discovered, or caused to be discovered, and gave knowledge of this *Continent*.

But the *Greeks* and *Latines* have given fair testimonies that the Antients have had some knowledge of *America*. *Plato* in his *Timæa*, and in his *Critias*, calls it the *Atlantique Isle*, and esteems it as great, or greater then *Asia*, and *Africa* together: It seems that *Plato* (or *Solon*, or the *Priest of Egypt*, &c.) had knowledge of the greatness, situation, and form of the two parts of *America*; so well they agree to *Asia* and *Africa*: the Northern *America* with *Asia*, the Southern with *Africa*.

*America* is almost divided into two parts, of which one is between the *Equator* and the North; the other, in regard of us, is towards the South, and part under the *Equator*. So all *Asia* is between the *Equator* and the North; *Africa* advanceth towards the South, and is seated about the *Equator*: likewise *Asia* and *Africa* touch not but by the *Isthmus of Suez*, which is between the *Red* and the *Mediterranean Seas*, as the two parts of *America* touch only by the *Isthmus of*

ANNA PANAMA,

America known by the Antients.

America bounded.

81, 82  
130  
85  
134  
Vicoma. 69  
135  
137  
139  
141  
111  
110  
103  
111  
90  
145  
118  
77  
66  
104  
71  
119  
71  
76  
65  
89  
111  
104  
119  
110  
110  
119  
71  
71  
76  
104  
141  
130  
108  
108  
102

X.  
X.  
Y.  
Z.

112  
104, 117  
118  
113  
113  
116  
113  
61  
119  
68  
110

10  
11, 12  
61  
81  
81  
10  
10  
20  
69  
68  
68  
71  
46  
68

FINIS.

Panama, which is between the Seas of the North and South,

After *Plato*, *Theopompus*, either in his Treatise of *Wonders*, or in his *History* (but we have the passage in the divers readings of *Alian*, lib. 3. cap. 18. where are the discourses of *Silenus* and *Midas*) makes mention of another *Continent* besides ours, and touches divers particulars: Among others that its greatness is so vast, that it was not wholly known, that its *Men* were greater, stronger, and lived longer then we; that they had *Gold* and *Silver* in so great quantity, that they made less account of it then we do of *Iron*: That they had a great number of *Cities*, and, among others, two very great ones, and of *customs* much different; the principal of the one being to *Warr*, and the other to *Religion*; whence he calls one *Ensebes*, that is, *Religious*; and the other *Machimos*, that is, *Warlike*: and which I esteem agreeing with *Cusco*, and *Mexico*; which we have so found when first known to us: *Mexico* more inclined to *Warr*, and *Cusco* to the Adoration of its *Divinities*.

It is very much to be noted that our *America* was called by *Plato* the *Atlantique Isle*; and that he observes some parts on this side which he sets with its greatness, position, and form: to see *Theopompus* call it the other *Continent*; and observe some *Customs* of its *Inhabitants*; and some *Cities*: And we cannot from hence doubt but this is likewise that main Land, and one of those new *Worlds*, which *Strabo* in his *Metax* one day hopes might be discovered in the *Ocean*.

<i>Venient Annis</i>	<i>Patent Tellus</i>
<i>Secula Seris</i>	<i>Typisque Novus</i>
<i>Quibus Oceanus</i>	<i>Delegat Orbes</i>
<i>Vincula Kerum</i>	<i>Nec erit Terris</i>
<i>Laxet, &amp; Ingens</i>	<i>Ultima Thule</i>

Now can we doubt this to be the Country of those *Indians*, of which *Seneca* the *Philosopher* makes mention in the Preface of his *Natural Questions*: and saith that from the utmost Coasts of *Spain* unto those *Indies* were but few dayes sayl; *Quantum enim est, quod ab ultimis Hispania, Litoribus usq; ad Indas interjeat e Paucissimorum dierum Spatio; si novem suis convenis impleverit.*

Without staying further on what the *Ancients* have said of *America*, we may observe, that at present, in speaking, we may use the same terms which they did; with *Theopompus*, we call the other *Continent*, the main Land and new *World*, with *Seneca* the *Philosopher*, its *Inhabitants* *Indians*: And those *Indians*, which were discovered at the Coasts of *Germany*, and

with the King of the *Sueves* presented to *Quintus Metellus Proconsul* of the *Gauls*, could not but be of *America Septentrionalis*: And whilst the *English*, *Danes*, *Hollanders*, and other Northern people call it *West-Indies*, it is only to distinguish this which is West of us, from the other and true *India*, which is in *Asia*, and Eastward from us.

*America* having been known to the *Antients*, under divers names, and all these names preserved till now, there remains to know from whence the people of this *America* should descend; whether from *Europe*, *Asia*, or *Africa*.

It is to be believed that the first of our *Continent* which were carried into *America*, were so either by chance, or by force; the Eastern Winds having driven them from the Coast of *Africa* or *Lybia*, where they sayled, and carried them so far into the West, that they have found these *Lands*.

And it is likewise to be believed, that of those which have been so carried, some have been unfurnished of *vivants* for so long and unimpeded a voyage, and so have been constrained to eat some among them to preserve the rest, as others since have done: And thus *America* may have been peopled by divers *Nations*, and at divers times, and according to the parts from whence they were, according to the hunger and necessity they suffered upon the Sea, they became more or less barbarous.

That some have been carried by chance, or force from our *Continent* to the other, we may judge both by *Ancient* and *Modern Histories*. *Diodorus Siculus* makes mention of certain *Phonicians*, (*Aristotle* had said almost the same before of the *Carthaginians*) who sayling along the Coast of *Africa* or *Lybia*, were carried far into the *Occidental Ocean*, where they found a very great *Isle* distant from our main Land many dayes sayl, and the Country as beautiful as that of *Tuscany*; so that some of *Carthage* would here have settled; but that the Republicque prohibited any more to pass, fearing lest it should weaken their Estate, commanding those which were passed to retire, and abolishing as much as they could the knowledge of the Country, yet with design to retire thither, if they should become so unfortunate as to fall under the *Romans* subjection. Those particulars which *Authors* apply to this *Isle*, agree better with *America Meridionalis*, which is almost an *Isle*, than with the *Isles* on this side it.

Besides these *Authorities* of the *Ancients*, the accident which arrived to *Alonso Zaucha* de *Chelva* in *Adelasse*, or what ever other *Isle* he was, who landing at the *Madera*, where

*America*, called the West-Indies.

*Theopompus* his relations of *America*.

*How the first people were carried to America.*

was *Christ* he had been which he returned, happened ready say how the to other Nations Ocean: and *Breton* the *Ocean* and *Tyrrh* because be *Brides*. or and easily from East to turne course: A ferent thing

*See revocatus anas Hoc opus*

Underst. *Continent* is the lower, from that higher: the culey, not and after he sayed all of themselves which some who about be held, the other: An return from Since, fo our *Continent* other *Continent* that is tof that some *Fern*, and *Chinois*, or *peans*, or

But this die, let us speak a w neral, befo AME dy, is part Equator: grees bey more on degrees o





bles hath divided this *America Septentrionalis* into *Canadians*, and *Mexicana*. Under the name of *Canadians* is understood that part of *America* which is about *Canada*, where the *English*, *French*, *Hollanders*, *Danes* and *Swedes* have divers Colonies: And under the name of *Mexicana*, that part of *America* which the King of *Spain* doth almost alone possess, and where he hath established abundance of Colonies, subdividing *Canadians* into the *Arctick Lands*, and *Canada* or new *France*, and *Mexicana* into new *Mexico*, and *Mexico* or new *Spain*.

In this  
country  
is  
seen  
the  
Sun  
in  
the  
Year

Of these four parts, *Mexico* or new *Spain* is the most advanced towards the *Equator* and the South, the *Arctick Lands* towards the North, the two other parts rest in the middle, *Canada* or new *France* towards the East, and new *Mexico* towards the West: The first is under, and about the *Tropic of Cancer*, the second under, or about the *Polar Circle*, the two others lye from 25 or 30 unto 60 degrees of *Latitude*, so that the first is within or very near the *Torrid Zone*, the second within, or near the *Frozen Zone*, and the two in the middle quite in the *Temperate Zone*.

In this  
country

The first and most Southernly ought to be called *Mexico* or new *Spain*, *Mexico*, because *Mexico* is by much the fairest City, and the Dominion of the ancient Kings of *Mexico* extended over the best part of it: *New-Spain*, because the King of *Spain* possesseth near all of it, having established a great many Colonies, a *Viceroy*, divers *Archbishops*, *Bishops*, *Audiencies*, and *Governments*: the *Natives* of the Country, that are left, being almost all *Tributaries* to him.

Arctick  
Lands

The second may be called the *Arctick Lands*, because it approaches the *Arctick Pole*, and is for the most part comprehended within the *Arctick Circle*: These are but little known, We understand well that they are divided by some *Streights*, and that it apparently consists, in many and divers *Isles*, which hath been the cause a passage hath been sought to go this way to *China*, and the *East-Indies*. The *Natives* do here enjoy a full and entire liberty, the people of *Europe* not thinking it worth their pains to establish Colonies.

Canada, or  
new France

Of the two middle parts, the most Easterly, and nearest to *Europe*, ought to be esteemed under the general name of *Canada*, or *New France*: of *Canada*, because in that particular Region the *Europeans* first landed, of *New France*, because the *French* did first establish themselves here, before any other *Europeans*. The most Western and farthest from *Europe* may in general be called *New Mexico*, because the *Spaniards* of *Mexico*

or *New Spain*, discovered it not till after they had been sometime settled in this other.

Of these four parts of *America Septentrionalis*, to wit, *Mexico* or *New Spain*, *New Mexico*, *Canada* or *New France*, and *America Arctica*, *New Spain* is washed by *Mer del Nord*, and *Mer del Sud*, *America Arctica* likewise by both Seas, *New France* onely by *Mer del Nord*, and *New Mexico* onely by *Mer del Sud*.

These four great parts are subdivided into many less, which we call *Regions*, *Peoples*, *Provinces*, &c. We will observe the chief of them, the most clearly and succinctly as possibly we can; but because *New Spain* touches on *America Meridionalis*, we will begin our *America Septentrionalis* by the *Arctick* and *New France*; so proceeding to the one and the other *Mexico*, that we may pass in order to the parts bordering on *America Meridionalis*.

And likewise, because the *Arctick Lands* of *America* are very little known, and that we cannot judge to make a particular discourse of them, we will content our selves to speak something here, before we pass to the other parts.

That part of *America* which is comprised for the most part between the *Arctick Pole*, and *Circle*, or which at most descends unto the sixtieth or fifty fifth degree of *Latitude*, is named, according to our method *America Arctica*. In all this part we know only some *Coasts*, and *Gulfs* of that which is most towards *Europe*: There we have the *Isles of Iceland* and *Greenland*, we might likewise put *Shetland*, which we know not whether *Isle*, or parts of the new *Continents*, as we are likewise ignorant of all the rest of *America Arctica*.

*ISELAND*, subject to the King of *Denmark*, is 150 Leagues long, and little less then 100 broad. Its *Inhabitants* are very lusty, and live above a 100 years; they scarce add themselves to any thing but the feeding of their *Beasts*, and *Fishing*. The *Coast* towards the South is much better, and best inhabited: The *Merchants* of *Hamburg*, *Lubeck*, *Breme*, *Copenhagen*, *Dantzick*, *Riga*, &c. trade hither, carrying them *Flour*, *Bisquets*, *Beer*, *Wine*, *Linnen* and *Woollen-cloth*, *Iron*, *Copper*, &c. for which they bring back dried *Fish*, *Whales-oyle*, *Butter*, *Tallow*, *Sulphure*, *Oxt-hides*, *Fox* and *Sheep-skins*. The *Governor* of the *Island* resides at *Bellefod* on the *Coast* *Scallbold* and *Holden*, which in *Land* are *Bishop-seas*. The *Mountains* of *Hails* and *Helga* often vomit *Fire*, though the *Circle* of the *Pole* *Arctick* passes over this *Island*, and incloses part of it in the *Frozen Zone*, leaving the other in the *Temperate*, if that can possibly be, which

lies so  
yet doth  
many rare  
Lands, in  
Beasts, and  
judgment  
the Antient

GROEN  
hath been  
and Norway  
wald, and  
into Iceland  
Island, Erri  
tle after im  
blished some  
same History  
bats with the  
tive Inhabi  
those of New  
East-Coast  
keeping the  
that what th  
in Greenland  
that there w  
several Lord  
no knowledge

They say  
lands there  
Wheat as an  
Cheestnuts so  
as Apples; th  
of all sorts of  
flures is good  
and small Cal  
Wolves, Fox  
Beavers, M

That the S  
Wolves, Dog  
Whales; that  
the Sea then  
Black ones f  
ones do on F  
little Whales  
thy between  
them where  
their Fish M  
strong and lo  
pieces the W  
Elephant: an  
of the same g  
hath the fan  
here esteem

The Norw  
since have  
That the La  
different from  
that there is  
end either fr

In 1636 th  
Trade, de.n

lies so contiguous and near to the *Froze*, yet doth it not hinder them from enjoying many rare things in their *Mountains*, in their *Lands*, in their *Fountains* and *Rivers*, in their *Beasts*, and in their *Fish*. *Island* doth in my judgment apparently answer to the *Thule* of the Antients.

**GROENLANDT**, that is **GREENLAND**, hath been long known to those of *Island*, and *Norway*. Account is made, that one *Torwald*, and his Son *Errick* of *Norway* passed into *Island* about the year 800, and that from *Island*, *Errick* and his Son *Liffie* passed a little after into *Groenlandt*, where they established some *Colonies* of *Norwegians*: and the same History saith, that *Liffie* had some Combats with the Ancient *Schreglinges*, and Native Inhabitants of the Country, and that those of *Norway* held but a small part in the East-Coast of *Groenlandt*, the *Schreglinges* keeping the rest within the Country, and that what the *Norwegians* possessed and knew in *Groenlandt*, was not the hundredth part, but that there were divers people governed by several Lords, of which the *Norwegians* had no knowledge.

They say that in several parts of *Groenlandt* there are Lands which bear as good *Wheat* as any ground in the World; and *Chestnuts* so large, that their kernels are as big as *Apples*; that the Mountains yield *Marble* of all sorts of colours; that the Grats for *Rafures* is good, and feeds quantities of great and small *Cattel*, that there are *Horses*, *Stags*, *Wolves*, *Foxes*, *Black* and *White*, *Bears*, *Beavers*, *Mariles*, &c.

That the *Sea* is full of great *Fishes*, as *Sea-Wolves*, *Dogs*, and *Calves*, but above all of *Whales*; that the *White Bears* live more on the *Sea* than on the *Land*, and that as the *Black* ones feed only on *Fish*, the *White* ones do on *Fish*, and are especially greedy of little *Whales*, which causes a great Antipathy between them and *Whales*, who pursue them where ever they can scent them; that their *Fish* *Marbrel* carrieth a *Tooth* or *Horn* so strong and long, that it fights against and pierces the *Whale*, as the *Rhinoceros* doth the *Elephant*: and they assure us that the *Horn* is of the same greatness, form, and matter, and hath the same properties as those which we here esteem in the *Pnicornes*.

The *Norwegians* and *Danes* who sometime since have passed into *Groenlandt*, say, That the Language of its Inhabitants is so different from that of *Norway* or *Dennmark*, that there is little appearance they could descend either from the one or the other.

In 1636 the *Danes* which went thither to Trade, demanded by signes if beyond that

ridge of Mountains there were any Men; the *Savages* made them to understand, that they were innumerable, higher and stronger then they; and that they used great *Bowes* and *Arrows*, and would not have any commerce, nor suffer the sight of Strangers. The habits of those with whom the *Danes* traded, were of skins of wild *Beasts*, their *Shirts* of the Entrails of *Fish*, and their *Wastcoats* of the skins of *Birds* with their *Feathers*.

Canada, or New-France.

Under the name of **CANADA**, or **New France**, we esteem that which is on both sides the great River of *Canada*, or *St. Laurence*, with the *Isles* that are before its Mouth, unto, and so far as this River is known, and from the *Gulfs* and *Streights* of *Davis* and *Hudson* unto *New-Spain* or *Mexico*. In this extent of Country, we have the *Isles* of *New found-Land*, *Terra di Labrador*, *Canada*, which communicates its Name to the rest, *Acadia*, *Saguenay*, the *Iroquois*, the *Hurons*, the *Algonquins*, with about a hundred other sorts of People, whose names are known.

The *Isles* of **NEW-FOYND-LAND**, or, according to the *Biscains*, of *Bacallaos*, that is of *Codfish*, are so called by reason of these *Fishes* here found in such great quantity, that sometimes they seem to hinder the sailing of *Ships*, in like manner as they do in the *Gulf* or *Bay* of *St. Laurence*: besides the *Codfish*, here are other sorts of *Fish* in great plenty, as *Thornback*, *Ling*, *Salmons*, *Oysters*, &c.

The greatest of these *Isles*, and which commonly takes the name of *New-found-land* is of a large extent. A County inhabited toward the East and South; the inhabitants being retired farther within Land, and the *English* have settled some Colonies to maintain their *Fishing* Trade.

For in the 21 of *K. James* in *Anno* 1623, *Sir George Calvert* Knight (then Principal Secretary of State, and afterward Lord *Baltimore*, &c.) obtained for him, and his heirs a Patent for part of this *New-found-Land*, with all the Royalties and Jurisdictions of a County-Palatine belonging to it; which was by the said Patent erected into a Province, and called *Avalon*: in pursuance whereof he soon settled a *Plantation* there, and caused a fair Houfe and Fort to be built at *Ferryland* in the said Province; and in the Year 1627 made a Voyage thither, Transporting himself and Family, where he continued for some time, having expended above 20000 *l.* upon that *Plantation*, which upon his death

descended upon his Son and Heir the Right Honourable Cecil Lord *Baltimore*, the now Possessor of the said *Province*.

The Natives are of a reasonable good Stature, and well-proportion'd, but full-ey'd, broad-faced, beardless, and of an Oker complexion, nor over-ingenious, their houses are very mean, and their Apparel and Furniture worse. The Country would be fertile if well cultivated, and yield good *Grains*. It hath many *Fowls*, much *Fruit*, and *Fish*, and indifferently well stored with *Cattel* and *Beasts*, some of which yields them good *Furrs*. The *Aire* inclines to cold, but healthful; the Coast hath many good *Ports* and *Harbours*.

East of *New-found land*, is a great *Bank*, a thing as remarkable as any in all *Canada*. This *Bank* is much different from those which are covered with *Water* when the *Sea* is high, uncovered, and dry, on an Ebb. *Sailors* must shun such *Banks* like death; This of which we now speak is like a *Country* overflow'd, always covered with the *Sea*, and having at least 20, 30, or 40 Fathom water, for the depth is unequal. Off from this bank on all sides, the *Sea* is no less than 200 Fathom deep, and yet this *Bank* is 200 Leagues long, 10, 15, and sometimes 30 broad. It is on this *Bank* that the *New-found-landers* (that is, those *Ships* that go to Fish for *Cods* of *New-found-land*) do for the most part *keep*, and make their *stays*.

About this great *Bank*, and more towards the main-*Land* than the *Ocean*, there are some others much less, but of the same nature. It is almost incredible how many *Nations*, and of each how many sail of *Ships* go yearly to Fish for these *Cods*, with the prodigious quantity they take, a *Man* being able to take 100 of them in the space of an hour. They Fish with hookes, which are no sooner thrown into the *Sea*, but the greedy *Fish* snapping the bait, is taken by the hook, and drawn on ship-board, they lay him presently on a *Plank*, One cuts off his head, another *Guts*, and takes out his biggest *Bones*, another salts and barrels it, Or *VV*hich being thus ordered, is hence transported by the *English* and other *European Nations* into all parts of *Europe*, and elsewhere. They Fish onely in the day-time, nor doth this *Fishing* last all seasons, but begins a little before *summer*, and ends with *September*: In *VVinter* the *Fish* retires to the bottom of the deep sea, where *Stormes* and *Tempests* have no power.

Near *New-found-land*, there is another

kind of *fishing* for the same *fish*, which they call *dried fish*, as the other *green fish*. The *ships* retire into some *Ports*, and every morning send forth their *Shallops* one, two, or three Leagues into the *Sea*, which sail not to have their load by *Noon*, or a little after; they bring them to *Land*, lay them on *Tables* or *Planks*, and order it as the other; but after the *fish* hath been some dayes in salt, they take it forth, exposing it to the *Air* and *Wind*, lay it again in heap, and return it from time to time to the open air, till it be dry. That this *fish* may be good, it must be dried in a good and temperate *Air*, *Mists* moisten it, and make it rot; the *Sun* hardens it, and makes it yellow.

At the same time that they fish for *Cods* green or dry, the *Fishers* have the pleasure of taking *Fowls*, without going forth of their *Vessels*. They take them with a *Line* as they do *Fish*, baiting the hook with the *Cods liver*, these *Fowls* being so greedy, that they come by *sticks*, and fight who shall get the bait first, which soon proves its death; and one taken, the hook is no sooner thrown out again, but another is caught in the like nature.

*CANADA* taken particularly, is on the right hand, and towards the lower part of the great *Rivers* and its name is communicated both to the *River* and *Neighbouring-Country*. This *River* is the largest of *America septentrionalis*, and one of the fairest in the *World*: It is about 200 Fathom deep, and at its *Mouth* 30 Leagues broad. Its course according to the report of those of the *Country*, is already known, for 4 or 500 Leagues; and there is some likelihood that we may in the end discover that the *Lake* which seems to be its head, Spring disburthens it self into the *Sea* by two or three different courses: one towards us, which is that of *Canada*, another towards the *West*, and above *California*; the third towards the *North*, and into the *Christian-Sea*; and that the mouth of this may shew us the way we have so long sought, to go to the *East-Indies* by the *West*.

The people with whom the *French* trade here are the *Canadians*, the *Hurons*, the *Algonquins*, the *Attigameques*, *Nipisiriciens*, *Montagnets*, those of *Saguenay*, of *Acadia*, &c. And to this purpose they have divers *Colonies* on the great *River* at *Padouac*, at *Quebec*, at *Three-Rivers*, at *Sillery*, at *Richelieu*, at *Montreal*, and without the *Bay* of *Chaleur*, at *Mison*, at *Port-Royal*, &c. This *Trade* is onely managed by *Exchange*; they give the skins of *Beavers*, *Oters*, *Marles*, *Sea-Wolfs*,

*Wolfs*, *Kittles*, *Pinches* in *Ch*rious and refinary chief or *North* or *TE* *Hudson* land of *tany*, *France*, full of *urs*, most pl *fruits*, & *lage*.

*South* *LAND* *VIRGI* *NEW-B* port of *C* coast, wh of *Savage* some of w 500 sail o and *Wind* of the sev which lye mous of t parts are t *nobsc*, *lan* *Nation*, wh are more c their neigh *sw*, sea an their riches of *Beavers*, excellenc which we ca red to *Virgi* more fruit good comm ceeding be the *English* many power of the *Com* good *Town* *New Plimo* *tando* seated *flow*, more upon the *Se* *Furs*, which *English*, with modities her port of *Tras* *Fish*, *Fleish*, they make B



Wolfs, &c. for Bread, Pease, Beans, Plumbs, Kettles, Cauldrons, Hatchets, Arrow-heads, Pinchers, Cov-<sup>ers</sup> &c. But, to instruct them in Christi-<sup>an</sup> any Ecclesiasticks of Religious Orders, have had divers disbursements, and residences; likewise an Hospital and Seminary of *Ursulines*: The *Jesuites* have the chief care of these Houses.

North of Canada is *ESTOTTILAND*, or *TERRA DE LABRADOR* near to *Hudsons* Streight, it is called sometimes the land of *Cortreal*, and sometimes *New Britany*; however, I esteem it a part of *New France*, the Country is mountainous, woody, full of wilde *Crafs*, well furnished with *Rivers*, rich in *Metals*, of a fertile soil in most places, and would produce *grains*, *fruits*, &c. if its Inhabitants would give it til-  
lage.

South of Canada, are *NEW-ENG-* LAND, the *LOW-COUNTRIES*, and *VIRGINIA* advancing unto *Florida*. *NEW-ENGLAND*, according to the report of *Captain Smith*, hath 70 miles of Sea-coast, where are more then 150 habitations of *Savages*; a quantity of good *Havens*, some of which are capable to harbour above 500 sail of *Ships*, from the fury of the Sea and *Winds*, by reason of the Interposition of the several *Iles*, (to the number of 200) which lye about this Coast: The most famous of the people that inhabit about these parts are the *Bessabes*, about the River *Pennobscot*, farther, are the *Masachusets*, a great Nation, who have 15 or 20 habitations: they are more civilized, and traffique more then their neighbours; they have much *cattell* and *fish*, sea and river *Fish*, and till the earth; their riches consists in their *furs*, and *skins* of *Beavers*, *Otters*, *Black Foxes*, &c. they have excellenc *Masts* for *Ships*. The Country which we call *New England* may be compared to *Virginia*, as *Scotland* to *England*, but more fruitful and fertile producing many good commodities, and the air is found exceeding healthful, and very agreeable to the *English*, which makes them here possess many potent Colonies; and all the Sea-coast of the Country: Where they have several good Towns, the chief whereof is *Boston*. *New Plimouth* in about 42 degrees of *Latitude* seated in a capacious Bay, next *Bristow*, more North than *Plimouth*, also seated upon the Sea; also *Narstable*, and *S. Georges Fers*, which was the first Plantation of the *English*, with some others of less note, Commodities here found of most note for the support of Traffick are rich *Furs*, many sorts of *Fish*, *Flesh*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, and *Corn* of which they make *Biskets*, also *Flax*, *Linnen*, *Iron*,

*Cables*, *Pitch*, *Tar*, *Masts*, and *Timber* fit to build *Ships*, they have store of wild and tame Beasts and Fowl. This Country by reason of these good commodities, but especially of the industry of the *English* who here reside, is become a place of great traffick, to which place there yearly goes from *England*, a great many *Ships* who bring them in exchange for their commodities all sorts of wearing-clothes and apparel, several *utensils* for their houses, &c. And this place is observed to furnish the *Caribbe Islands*, especially *Barbadoes*, with food, as *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Flour*, *Biskets*, and *Flesh* and *Fish* salted, and barrell'd up. The *Natives* are for the most part ingenious, well disposed, and with little pains would be brought to leave their *Idolatrous* courses and imbrace *Christianity*.

As to the *Coins*, *Weights*, and *Measures* of *New England*, they are the same with those of *London*, the *Metropolis* of *England*, under whose jurisdiction it is, to which place I shall refer the Reader; and note also, that the *Coins*, *Weights* and *Measures*, of all other Countries, Kingdoms, or *Isles* in *America* that have been subdued by the *Europeans*, do correspond and agree with those of that Nation that conquered it, and are masters of it. As for example, the *Coins*, *Weights* and *Measures* of *Sevil* in *Spain*, are found currant at *Mexico* or *New Spain*, as also in *Guadalajara*, *Pern*, and other places, which you shall find are subject to the *Spaniards*. Also those of *Lisbon* in *Portugal*, at *Brasil*, &c. Likewise those at *Virginia*, *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, &c. agree with those of *London* in *England*. Also those that the *French*, *Hollanders*, or other Nations that have any thing to do in any part of this new World, have their *Coins*, *Weights* and *Measures* currant there; therefore I shall not insert them, but refer the Reader to them.

*NEW NETHERLAND*, or the *New-Low-countries*; is between *New-England* and *Virginia*; so named from the *Netherlanders*, or *Hollanders*, who began a Plantation here in *Anno 1614*. where they settled many Colonies: Among others, *new Amsterdam* and *Orange*. They observe two fair Rivers, which they call of the North and South, and both descend from North to South, one having its mouth more towards the North, the other towards the South. There are many *Isles* between the *Islands* of *Matowax* and the main Land; all the Country is good and fertile, yielding much *Fruits*, *Plants*, *Herbes*, *Grains*, as *Wheat*, *Pulse*, and *Maye*; in great abundance. The Country is well clothed with *Woods*, which are sufficiently filled with  
Deer



Deer and other wild Beasts, and Fowle, and the Rivers and Sea are well stored with varietie of Fish: but this Country by the usurpation and encroachments of the Dutch, was unjustly taken from the English, whose right it was, which in Anno 1664, was by the valour of the English, by the command of the Illustrious James Duke of York retaken, and the Dutch quite driven out: so that now there may be said to be no such Country, it lying part in New-England, and part in Virginia.

VIRGINIA received its Name from the English, because it was more particularly known under the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, where there are now many Colonies. Great account is made of this Country for its goodness, fertility, store of provisions for Food, Fruits, and the conveniency of its great and strong Rivers, which almost all descend into the Gulf or Channel of Chesapeak, which situate North to South is 75 Leagues long, and 5 or 6 broad, and 12 or 15 Braces, or at least 6 or 7 Fathoms deep: Navigable for the space of 50 or 60 Leagues. Its opening to the South, and between Cape Henry, and Cape Charles, is 10 or 12 Leagues wide. The principal of which are called *Panhatan*, *Nansamund*, *Apamatuck*, *Chikahamania*, *Tappahanock*, *Patanxut*, *Patawomeck*, *Pamanuck*, with several others of less note, in all which are found abundance of excellent Fish, nigh to which or upon the banks of the said Rivers, or on most of them, are the English seated. They have also several Towns, the chief whereof is *James-Town*, nigh to the River *Chikahamania*, and here it is that the Governour resideth, and where they keep their Courts of Judicature. Next is *Henries Town* about 18 Miles from *James Town*: also *Dales Gist*, from its being built at the expence of Sir *Thomas Dale*, *Ketoughtan*, a noted Port, and much frequented by the English *Wicocomoco* neer *Panhatan*, *Bermada* with several others. The Country is full of pleasant Hills, which are well clothed with Woods, and the Valleys with Fruits; the soil so fruitful, that an Acre of ground will yield 200 bushels of Corn: it is rich in Veins of *Allome*, *Pitch*, *Tar*, *Rosen*, *Turpentine*; hath Mines of *Iron*, and *Copper*; they have plenty of sweet *Gumms*, several sorts of Plants used by *Dyers*, they have abundance of *Cattel*, and Tame and Wilde Beasts, as *Cows*, *Sheep*, *Goats*, *Swine*, whose Flesh is excellent: Also *Lions*, *Bears*, *Leopards*, *Elks*, whose flesh is as good as *Beef*, and of their skins they make good *Buff*. They are greater then large *Oxen*, they bring two Calves at a time, and their

Horns are six Foot wide; plenty of *Deer*, *Foxes*, *Wilde Cats*, *Roccones* as good meat as *Lamb*, *Passannes* a little Beast that hath a little bagg under her belly, which upon any danger of being taken, her young ones creep in, and so she saveth them. They have two sorts of *Squirrells*, one of which hath a certain loofe skin, which she spreads like a *Batt*, and so flies a good way. They have *Musk-Rats*; also *Hares*, *Beavers*, *Otters*, *Woolfs*, *Martins*, *Poule-cats*, *Minks*, *Wesels*; but these vermine are found no ways hurtful to their *Poukry*, or their Eggs. They have *Dogs* in shape like a *Woolf*, and bark not: They have abundance of Fowle and small Birds, as *Eagles*, *Hawks* of several kinds, *Hens*, *Geese*, *Ducks*, *Brams*, *Widgeons*, *Dottersels*, *Ox-eyes*, *Heathcocks*, *Swans*, *Cranes*, *Wild-Turkeys*, which ordinarily weigh 50 or 60 pound weight; *Partridges*, *Pigions*, *Black-birds*, *Thrushes*, *Owles*, *Crows*, *Red-birds* that sing rarely: and a Bird called a *Mack-bird*, for that it counterfeits all other Birds notes. They have also variety of Fish, as *Cods*, *Basses*, *Drumms* 6 Foot long, *Sheeps-heads* which make broath like that of Mutton, *Congers Eelt*, *Trouts*, *Plaice*, *Mulletts*, *Sturgeons* 10 Foot long, *Grampus*, *Porpus*, *Scales*, *Shads*, *Stringraes*, *Conny-fish*, *Rock-fish*, *Lampres*, *Craw-fish* *Creey-fish*, *White Salmon*, *Sales*, *Herrings*, *Perches*, *Cookbs*, *Oysters*, *Shrimps*, *Cockles*, *Mussels*, &c. They have several sorts of Fruits, which for their pleasant tast, and fair shew may compare with those of *Italy*, as *Strawberries*, *Goose-berries*, *Rasberries*, *Musk-mellons*, *Marcocok's*, *Puchamines*, *Apricocks*, *Peaches*, *Quinces*, *Apples*, *Pears*, *Plumbs*, &c. and these in such plenty, that they may be had for only gathering, growing in the Woods. They have several sorts of Roots, as *Potatoes*, *Carrets*, *Turnips*, *Artichokes*, *Onions*, *Sparagus*; several sorts of garden herbs, as well *Physical*, as for other uses, Besides English grain, which groweth here in great plenty, here is *Maize* or *Indian Wheate*, which makes good Bread, is excellent to fat *Cattel* and *Fowle*, and serves instead of *Malt*. They have store of *Bees* which brings them plenty of *Honey* and *Wax*; *Hemp*, and *Flax* would thrive well here, they make *Pitch* and *Tar*. They have abundance of *Mulberry* Trees, which grows in the Woods, which is the natural food for *Silk-worms*; and the Climate is held every way fit for them. Also there are great store of *Vines*, of which good Wine may be made: but the present gain, which they draw from their *Tobacco* hindreth them from either making of *Silke* or *Wine*, which would be many degrees more profitable unto them.

But

In chief Rivers.

In chief Towns.

In Trade.

In Land.

In Trade.

In Trade.

But they are unwilling to lose a certainty, for (as they say) an uncertainty, having not wherewithal to subsist, until it be brought to perfection, without a publick encouragement. Here are divers kinds of *Drugs, Gums, Dyes, and Paints*, that the *Indians* use, which are very excellent: There is a kind of *Flax* which is called *Silk-grass*, of which the *Indians* make *threads and strings*, and is good to make *Linnen Cloth*, as also *Stuffs*; all sorts of *Tradesmen*, especially *Handicrafts*, find here good encouragement; and for these commodities, the *English* who have the sole trade, bring them all sorts of *Apparel, Wine, Strong waters*, all manner of *Utensils* belonging to *Household-stuff, &c.* But its chiefest Revenue is *Tobacco*, with which it is observed to lade above 30 Ships yearly, and which brought home doth not a little increase the King of *England's* Custome.

North-ward of *Virginia* is *MARY-LAND*, which is held to be as fruitful to the fall, as *Virginia* is, and more healthful, and affords the same commodities. It was first planted in *Anno 1633*, by the Right Honourable *Cecil Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, who is absolute Lord, and Proprietary of the said Country, and hath jurisdiction of a *Count Palatine* there, who holds it (to him and his heirs) of the King of *England*, as his Sovereign Lord, and in acknowledgment pays in a way of Tribute, two *Indian arrows* at *Windsor Castle*, annually every Tuesday in Easter-week.

In all these parts, which we have passed under the name of *CANADA*, the people are very barbarous, having neither *Religion*, nor *Learning*, not understanding how from our World by the means of a little Paper, and a few Characters, may be understood in theirs what is here done. Divers people have diversity of Languages: they count their years by the course of the *Sun*, their months by that of the *Moon*, their four Seasons by any remarkable thing hapning in them. In cold weather they cover themselves with the skins of *Bears, Elks, or Bears*, almost in the manner that the *Ancients* painted *Hercules*, or as we now do *S. John Baptist* in the Desert: they wear great stockings, or boots, in the Winter; their head never covered, except with their hair, which is black, or of a dark colour, never light or red; they are of a middle stature, well proportioned, disposed to running and swimming, of an olive or tawny colour, because they go for the most part naked, often anointing themselves with a certain Oyl to hinder the Flies from tickling them; they wear few Ornaments on their bodies, though their Women do, making themselves *Necklaces, Bracelets and Scarfs*.

formerly of *Fishes, Shells, Porcelain, &c.* now of *Glass, Crystal*, and other *Toys*, carried hence.

They make Feasts at their Marriages, at their Victories, at the reception of their friends, and take much *Tobacco*, from whence I believ they call these Rejoycings *Tabagies*: They eat sometimes the flesh of their enemies which they have taken in the War, and fed well before, whom they kill with excessive cruelties. In these Feasts, or rejoycings, they paint their bodies with fine colours, dancing and singing to the praise of their Captains or *Sagamos*, who have done some great exploit, and killed many of their enemies; they use Bows and Arrows, in which they are very expert.

Custome observed among them.

Florida.

**F**LORIDA may be esteemed a part of *New France*, since the *French* were the first that established there any Colony, by the consent of the people of the Country. It may likewise be esteemed part of *New Spain*, since at present the *Castilians* have two Colonies under the Jurisdiction of the Audience of *S. Domingo*, one of the four Audiences of *New Spain*; but these two Colonies are so weak, and so near the one to the other; and the Country is so large, that that is not considerable. We may say, that *Florida* is between *New France*, and *New Spain*, and that it extends it self from the River of *Palmat*, which bounds it from the Province of *Panuco* in *New Spain* unto the River *Jordan*, which divides it from *Virginia*, which I have esteemed in *Canada* or *New France*.

The greatest part of its coast is on the gulf of *Mexico*, which flows on its South: Another part on *Mer del Nord*, which washes it on the East: Between this gulf and the *Sea*, *Florida* stretches out a *Peninsula* towards the South, where the *Cape of Florida*, is not distant from the Port of *Matanzas* in the Isle of *Cuba*, above 35 or 40 Leagues. The more western coast of *Florida*, reaches 450 Leagues, the Eastern 150; the *Peninsula* between both, advancing 150 Leagues from the coast; and not being above 60 or 75 Leagues broad, makes yet another coast of 350 Leagues; so that all *Florida* hath not much less than a 1000 Leagues of coast on the *Sea*.

The *Castilians* have no Colony on the Gulf of *Mexico*, nor on the Coast, where the *French* have formerly been. Those two Colonies they have here, are *St Augustine*, and *St Matthew*, fifteen or sixteen Leagues

C c c c one

of Deer, and meat that hath upon any ones deep have two hath a cer- like a Batt, have Musk- rs, Woolfs, Vesels, but is hurtful to have Dogs not: They kill Birds, as terns, Geese, els, Ox-eyes, Wild-Turkeys, 60 pound Black-birds, birds that sing rock-bird, for Birds notes. Fish, as Cods, Sheeps-heads e of Mutton, Mullett, Star- Porpus, Scales, ssb, Rock-fsb, sb, White Sal- Crabs, Oysters, &c. They have h for their plea- compare with s, Goose-berries, avocoks, Pacha- Quinces, Apples, se in such plen- only gathering, they have several Carrets, Tur- Sparagus, several ell Physical, as for sb grain, which y, here is Mayze makes good Bread, and Fowle, and they have store of earty of Honey and would thrive well d Tur. They have ees, which grows the natural food for mate is held every o there are great good Wine may e gain, which they indreth them from Wine, which would osticable unto them. But

Trade

her land

Trade

Trade

Trade

Trade

one from the other, on the Eastern Coast of the Peninsula, and there where it approaches the Coast, where the French had settled: the North and West of Florida is enclosed with Mountains, which divides it from New France, and New Mexico. St Augustine which is the best, and strongest of the two Colonies, was taken and pillaged by Sir Francis Drake in Anno 1585.

Florida first discovered by the English

FLORIDA was first discovered in 1496 by the English, under the conduct of Sebastian Gabott, whom Henry the seventh King of England sent to seek by the West a passage to fall into the East: he contented himself to have seen the Country yet unknown, and to make report thereof to his Master; afterwards better searched into by John de Ponce de Leon, who in 1512 would have established a Colony for his Master the King of Castile, were it not for the resistance the Country made against him, who often times made him retreat, and at last forced him to return to Puerto Ricco of which place he was Governour; where, on a desperate wound in his last encounter, which he there received, he ended his life. In 1524 Lucas Vasques of Ailbon, and some other Spaniards, landed divers times at Florida, with no other design then to take away its Inhabitants, whom they transported to Hispaniola and Cuba to work in their Mines, wherein they had already consumed the greatest part of its inhabitants. Pamphilus Narvases was likewise there in 1528, who traversed it as far as the Mountains of Apalachi, where he hoped to finde Gold.

Also by John de Ponce and others.

The most famous landing that the Spaniards have ever made in Florida was in 1534, under the conduct of Ferdinand Soto; who being rich with the spoils he had gained, in his conquest of Peru, led hither three hundred and fifty Horse, and nine hundred Foot, with which force he traversed Florida almost on all sides, without endeavouring to bind a Colony; much molesting those of the Country, by whom he was in like manner turnoyled, during the many years he coasted it; till in the end, not finding those riches he expected, he died with grief, and was buried at the bottom of a River, for fear lest his body should fall into the hands of his Enemies. His people returned in 1543, there remaining about thirty Horse, and three hundred Foot. All the advantage Soto received by his travel, was, the giving the name of Florida to the Country, either because he arrived there the day of the Pasqua Florida; or because that, landing, he found the herbs and flowers in their prime and verdure.

Verdant Soto the landing here.

In 1549 the Emperor Charles the fifth,

and the Council of the Indies thought it not good to send any more armed men, but rather some religious persons, to sweeten the fierce humours of these barbarous people, Lewis of Barbastre, of the Order of St Benedict went with some other Fathers, but presently those of the Country seized and massacred him, with his two Companions, stealing them, and hanging their skins at the doors of the Cabanes; the rest saved themselves, by retiring into those Ships that brought them.

Lewis of Barbastre a Benedictine massacred here.

The French were not in Florida, save under the reign of Charles the ninth. Francis Ribaut was sent in 1562. He made alliance with those of the Country, and built the Fort Caroline on the River May. Ribaut being returned to France, with promise to bring thither more people: but too long delaying his return, his men grew diffident and mutinous, and built a strange kind of Vessel, and with the small stock of provisions they could stow in her, put to Sea, where they endured so great wants, that they were forced to cast lots to eat one another; which fell first on him who had been the cause of their discord.

Rene Landoniere returned in 1564. restored the Fort Caroline; but the Castilians, jealous to see this establishment near their New Spain, resolved to drive them thence: they landed with shew of no design against the French, but their intentions were otherwise, for in the end they surprized the Fort, out of which Landoniere could scarce save himself, took Ribaut on the Sea, who had before been shipwreck'd, hanged the Souldiers, and fled Ribaut, as Lescaubots saith.

De Cayenne of the Spaniards.

In 1567 Dominic de Gourgues, a Gascon, and of Mont de Marsan, made an attempt of his own head to revenge this Affront: he put to Sea at his own expence, with a hundred and fifty Souldiers, and eighty Mariners, landed in Florida, and with the aid of those of the Country, who affected the French, retook Caroline from the Spaniards, with two other Forts which they had new built; caused them to be hanged on the same trees whereon they had hanged the French; razed the Fort, and returned into France in 1568, where he had no small trouble to clear himself for his exploit.

Another Mont de Marsan.

Florida being between the twenty fifth, or thirtieth and fortieth degrees of Septentrional Latitude, the Country cannot chuse but be good, their Woods and Forests are well clothed with trees, as lofty Cedars, large Oaks, Cypress and Bayes-trees of a large proportion, also great store of that wood called

by

by the called are an especie Forrest Beasts with Cherries It is en but in by the Stream Fish, in they eat Venison Olive-c tioned; very lon adjacent makes t their sh in that t afterwar Beasts, e belish w they eye to their k and thei other pa are stain not to be great om some reve are accou revengefu Arms are the Amer their Her lours; th Woods; part near they rish them, th bands die on his S marrying cover the great ple bread, w year: th publick p mily as o Their ning and dare not covered leaps up his time nostrils; though

by the *French Sassafras*; as also another tree called *Esquine*, the Bark of which trees are an excellent remedy for many distempers, especially the *French Disease*: And in these Forests and Woods are found all sorts of *Beasts and Fowl*; the Country is well stored with several sorts of *Fruits*, as *Grapes, Cherries, Plumbs, Mulberries, Chestnuts, &c.* It is enriched with Mines of *Gold and Silver*, but in no great plenty, nor much regarded by the Natives. It is well watered with fresh Streams, which are stored with variety of *Fish*, in which are found *Crocodiles*, which they eat; they have all sorts of *Fowl and Venison* as we have. The People are of an *Olive-colour*, great stature, but well proportioned; their hair is black, which they wear very long; their women do far exceed other adjacent Nations in handsomness, which makes them much desired by Strangers, and their shape and beauty is more discernable in that they go naked till their *Purgations*, and afterwards only they make use of *Skins of Beasts*, taken in hunting, which they embellish with *feathers* of divers colours, which they tie about their waists, and hang down to their knees, onely to hide their *Privities*, and their *Arms, Back, Breast, Knees*, and other parts, which are exposed to sight, are stained with several sorts of *Paintings*, not to be washed off, which is esteemed a great ornament among them. They bear some reverence to the *Sun and Moon*; they are accounted very *crafty, cunning, deceitful, revengefull*, and much addicted to war; their Arms are *Bow and Arrows*, as are almost all the *Americans*; they know the nature of their *Herbs*, and have *Flowers* of fine colours; they pass a part of the year in the Woods; where they live on *Hunting*; and part near the *Lakes, Rivers and Sea* where they *Fish*. They have a Custom among them, that is, the *Women* when their *Husbands* die, do cut of their hair, and strew it on his *Sepulcher*, and are restrained from marrying again till their hair is long enough to cover their *Shoulders*. The Countrey yields great plenty of *Mayz*, which is their natural bread, which they sow and reap twice in one year: this *Grain* they gather, and put into publick places, and distribute it to every Family as occasion requires.

Their *Whale Fishing* is made with a cunning and boldness, which those of *Europe* dare not attempt. The *Fisher*man having discovered one, enters into his *Canott*, then leaps upon his back, and there riding takes his time to plunge a stick into one of his nostrils; and what ever endeavour he uses, though he plunge under water, he holds fast;

and expecting his rising, fastens another stick on the other side, and then retires with a cord fastned to these sticks; the *Whale* not able to breathe, grows weak, and then by little and little, he draws it to the shore, where assisted by his *Companions*, he cuts it in pieces, drying it to make *Flowre*, and of that *Flowre Bread*, which lasts a long time.

The people of *Florida* are governed by their *Paraouffis*, who lead them to War, where they kill the men, but preserve the women and children; they have their *Fovonads*, or *Sacrificers*, who serve as *Physicians*, and to whom they bear honour. Their *Paraouffis* being dead, are interred with many *Ceremonies*; living, are much feared and obeyed. They have many wives, among which one is esteemed the chief, whose children may hope for the charge and dignity of their Father.

The House of *Paraouffis Ovade* (when *Captain Albert* was there to beg of him some provisions, besides divers moveables and ornaments) was hung as high as a *Pikes* length with *Tapestry*, made of rare *Feathers*, and of most beautiful colours, composed of such rich Artifice, that they were worth the most part of ours. The *Coverlid* of his Bed was white, tissued in divers compartments, and with a fringe of *Scarlet* about it.

Rivers of most note in *Florida* are: 1. *Rio de Flores*, 2. *Rio de Spirito Sancto*, 3. *Rio de Neives*, 4. *Rio Grande*, 5. *Rio Secco*, 6. *Rio Garunna*, 7. *Rio Charente*, 8. *Rio Axona*, and some others.

Chief Towns (or rather Cottages) in *Florida*, are: 1. *St Helens*, on a promontory so named, 2. *Port Royal*, a good and well frequented Haven, seated on the mouth of a River so named, 3. *St Matthews*, 4. *St Augustine*, 5. *St Philip*, 6. *St Fago*, once (if not at present) possessed and fortified by the *Spaniards*, with some others of less note.

The Isles of Bermudas.

East of *Virginia* and *Florida* we have the Isles of *BERMUDAS*, so called from *John Bermudes* a *Spaniard*, by whom it was first discovered; also called the *Summer-Islands*, from the Shipwrack which one *Sir George Summers*, an *Englishman*, there suffered; it is about *Fifteen* or *sixteen* hundred Leagues from *England*, One thousand, or twelve hundred from *Madera*, Four hundred from *Hispaniola*, and onely Three hundred from the nearest *Coast* of *Virginia* and *Florida*.

ht it not  
rather  
the fierce.  
Lewis  
Benedict  
present-  
massa-  
s, fleeing  
the doors  
emfelves,  
brought  
save un-  
Francis  
alliance  
built the  
ibants being  
to bring  
g delaying  
and muti-  
Vessel, and  
they could  
they endu-  
re forced to  
which sell first  
use of their  
1564. resto-  
the Castilians,  
at near their  
them thence:  
esign against  
s were other-  
ized the Fort,  
d scarce save  
Sea, who had  
hanged the  
as *Lescarbot*  
a *Gasco*, and  
mpt of his own  
e put to Sea at  
dred and fifty  
ers, landed in  
those of the  
*French*, retook  
with two other  
built; caused  
le trees where-  
sch, razed the  
ance in 1568,  
e to clear him-  
e twenty fifth,  
es of *Septentri-*  
cannot chuse but  
Forests are well  
y *Cedars*, large  
of a large pro-  
hat wood called  
by

Mexico, or New-Spain.

10 *Part.* rida. Of these Isles the greatest is five or six Leagues long, and almost throughout not above a quarter, third, or half a League broad: the others are much less. All together make a body which form a Cressant, and inclose very good Ports; as those of Southampton, Harrington, and Pagets.

10 *Part.* The air is almost always serene, sometimes moist and hot, but very healthful, agreeing well with the English bodies, who have here at divers times settled and established a fair and powerful Colony, there being at present no less than four or five thousand English, who have strongly fortified the approaches, which are present are very difficult, and the earth is exceeding fertile, yielding two crops a year, their *Mayz* they gather in July and December, they have excellent fruits, as Oranges, Dates, Mulberries, &c. They have plenty of Tortoises, which is their ordinary food, and their Hogs which the Spaniards formerly carried thither are excellent; they have many Sea-birds, and other Fowl; they have no fresh water for their occasions, but that of Wells, there being neither fountain nor stream in these Islands. They have no venomous beasts here, their Spiders not being poisonous, but of sundry and various colours; and in the hot weather, they make their webbs so strong, that oft-times birds are entangled and catched in them. *Cocham* and *Tobacco*; with some Pearls and Amber, are their principal riches, for which they have a good trade. Their Governor is sent them by the King of England, who governs them by our English Laws as his Subjects, whom they also own as their Supream.

The Earth fertile.

No venomous beasts here.

In chief Commodities.

Mexico, or New Spain.

MEXICO, or new Spain is the fairest, and most famous part of America Septentrionalis, and sometimes the Spaniards comprehended under this name all that America: We may esteem that which belongs to the Catholick King for the greatest parts, in which we shall have several Provinces, and all comprised under four Audiences or Courts of Parliament: *Viz.* that of St. Domingo, of Mexico, which bears the particular name of new Spain; of Guadaluajara, or Nova Galicia; and of Guatimala.

In Audiencia.

The Audiencia of St. Domingo.

The Audience of St. DOMINGO hath under it all those Islands which are before the gulf of Mexico, then Florida which is North-West of them, and in America Septentrionalis; and Venezuela, new Andalusia, and Rio del Hacha, which are towards the

South of them, and in America Meridionalis.

The Audience of MEXICO, hath the Provinces of Mexico, Panuco, Mechoacan, Tlascala, Guaxaca, Tavasco, and Fucatan. That of Panuco is North of Mexico, Mechoacan, West; Tlascala, East; Guaxaca, Tavasco, and Fucatan continuing likewise towards the East. The two last lie wholly upon Mer del Nort; Guaxaca, and Tlascala, on the two Seas of North and South; Mexico, and Mechoacan onely on that of the South, and Panuco on that of the North.

The Audience of Mexico, had in the ancient times.

The Audience of GUADALAJARA or of New Galicia, contains the Provinces of Guadaluajara, of Xalisco, of Los Zacatecas, of Chiamatlan, of Cinaloa: some add new Biscany, and others likewise Cibola, Quivira, Anian, California, &c. New-Biscany, and Los Zacatecas, touch not the Seas Guadaluajara, little; to wit; between Xalisco, and Chiamatlan: and these begin on Mer del Sud. Others advance themselves far into that which they call Mer Vermijo or the Red Sea, the Isle of California being on the other side.

The Audience of Guadaluajara, lies, and is Province.

The Audience of GUATIMALA South East of that of Mexico, continues between the Seas del Nort, and del Sud, advancing towards America Meridionalis.

There are under it the Provinces of Guatimala, of Soconusco, of Chiapia, of Vera Pax, of Honduras, of Nicaragua, and of Costarica: these two last lie on both Seas; Honduras, and Vera Pax on the Gulf of Honduras towards the Mer del Nort; Chiapia within Land; Guatimala, and Soconusco, on the Mer del Sud.

The Audience of Guatimala, lies, and is Province.

40 The Audience of MEXICO, so called from its principal City, now known by the name of Nova Hispania, whence the Kings of Spain style themselves Hispaniarum Reges; and by this City of Mexico the Spaniards began to make themselves absolute Lords of all these quarters. Which before their arrival was very populous; but in the space of 16 or 17 years, destroyed above six Millions of its Inhabitants, by cruel and unchristianlike deaths; as roasting some, cutting off the Members of others, putting out the eyes of others, casting others alive to be torn in pieces, and devoured by wild Beasts; and the like horrid deaths, and only to act their Tyranny over them, rather then to reduce them to obedience, which might have been otherwise obtained, without shedding so much blood. This City was called by its Ancient Inhabitants Tenochtitlan, or Tenuchtitlan, and likewise Themistitan; It was the residence

The Audience of Vera Pax, lies, and is Province.

The Audience of Chiapia, lies, and is Province.

refide the fa of a and 7 Circu but by the W long, and a h was by made All thi another fresh, 45 or 5 to be a to row, bout 50 whereo Cities: the othe been Fa Crowns Four T Thousan having k sand.) Jurisdic Towns, more the Thousan all Five busaries. of Amer Arch-Bish Justice o it hath a and Fift other Se Ancient at presen Maria th bastian, lulco. the faire house of Audienc In this C which v haste, th Materia which h Idols, B houses Angusti Colledge cher pu and Bea are rem their A



Meridians, hath the The Antient Province of Mexico and its Frontiers. **Mexicoan**, and **Fucatan**, **Mexico**, **Mexaxaca**, **Talikewise** to lie wholly and **Tlafcala**, and South; on that of that of the

**AFARA** The Antient Province of Guaxala, Ixta, and its Frontiers. the Province of **Los Zaminalea**: some **Cihola**, &c. New-pouch not the between **Xahese** begin on themselves **Vermejo** **California** being

**ALA** South The Antient Province of Guaxala, Ixta, and its Frontiers. continues between and, advancing

**CO**, so called known by the Kings **Spaniarum Reges**: **Spaniards** be- solute Lords of before their arri- in the space of ve six Millions and unchristian- cutting off the out the eyes of to be torn in ld Beasts; and only to act their then to reduce might have been out shedding so was called by its **ilan**, or **Tenuch- atan**; It was the residence

residence of their Kings, and is at present the fairest of all *America*, seated in the midst of a *Lake*, in some places 10 Leagues long, and 7 or 8 broad, having 25 or 30 Leagues Circuit: it is not joynd to the main Land; but by 3 *Cauf*-ways, of which that towards the West, is but three-quarters of a League long, that towards the North a League and a half, and the last three Leagues. It was by this last that *Cortez* and the *Spaniards* made their approaches and took the City. All this *Lake* is salt; but there falls into it another almost of the same bigness, which is fresh, and good to drink; both together are 45 or 50 Leagues Circuit, in which are said to be about 5000 *Wherries* continually seen to row, and carry Passengers; They have about 50 *Burges* or *Towns* on their Banks, whereof some have once been esteemed great Cities: the salt *Lake* yields quantity of *Salt*, the other so much *Fish*, that its *Fishing* hath been Farmed for One Hundred Thousand Crowns yearly. In this City, may be found Four Thousand natural *Spaniards*, Thirty Thousand *Indians*, or *Americans* ( there having been formerly Two Hundred Thousand ) Twenty Thousand *Negros*; and its Jurisdiction contains Two Hundred and Fifty *Towns*, of which some have their *Schools*, more then Three Thousand ( some say Six Thousand ) *Estancia's*, that is *Farms*, and in all Five Hundred Thousand *Americans*, *Tributaries*. It is the residence of the *Vice-Roy* of *America Septentrionalis*, as also of an *Arch-Bishop*, and many other *Officers* of *Justice* of the *Mint*, and of the *Inquisition*; it hath a famous *Academy*, One Hundred and Fifty *Monasteries* for the one and the other *Sex*; it is distinguished as under its *Ancient Kings* into these quarters; which at present are called that of *St. John*, of *St. Maria the Round*, of *St. Paul*, and of *St. Sebastian*, and of *St. James*, formerly *Tlacululco*. In this last, which is very great, and the fairest, is the *Palace* of the *Vice-Roy*; the house of the *Arch-Bishop*, the *Court* of *Audience*, the *Mint*, and other *Offices*. In this City of *Mexico* is a *Cathedral Church*, which was begun by *Cortez*, with so much haste, that to raise two Columns for want of *Materials*, they made use of the *Stones* which had made part of the *Statues* of the *Idols*. Here is also a *Printing-house*; several houses of *Jesuits*, *Dominicans*, *Franciscans*, *Augustinians*, & other *Religious Orders*; some *Colleges*, abundance of *Hospitals*, and other publique *Buildings*, all of great *State* and *Beauty*. They have here four things which are remarkable for *Beauty*, *viz.* their *Women*, their *Apparel*, their *Horses*, and their *Streets*.

In *October* 1629, the City of *Mexico* received a great *Damage*, the waters having broken the *Cause-ways*, which susteyned the higher of the two *Lakes*; which is the *Fresh*, which deluge had like to have overwhelmed this fair City. The *Palace* of the *Vice Roy* suffered much; a great number of persons were drowned, quantity of good moveables lost, or spoiled: This happen'd by their fault, who ought to have kept the *Banks*; or *Cause-ways*; or by their fault who ought to have given wherewith to maintain them;

Among those places which are, or have been, on the two *Lakes* of *Mexico*, *Chulula* is reckoned one of the fairest; scarce excepting that of *Mexico*; with which it in times past contended as well for *State* as bigness, once containing near Twenty Thousand Houses, and beautified with so many *Temples* as there are days in the year. The people were said to be so addicted to *Idolatry*, and so barbarous in their bloody *sacrifices*; that it sacrificed yearly no less then Five Thousand *Infants* of both *Sexes* on its *Altars* before its *Idols*. The *Magistrate* was elected by the people, and could do nothing till he had consulted their *Gods*, and taken counsel of six of the chief of their *Estate*, and six of their *Priests*. *Texcoco* once twice as great as *Sevill* in *Spain*; seated on the *Lake* of *Mexico* from which it is distant but six Leagues: its *Streets* fair and large, its Houses stately and Beautiful; and adorned with many *Conduits* and *Aquaducts* which furnished them with fresh water; though seated on the brinks of a *Salt-Lake*. *Quilavaca* built on divers little *Islands* like to *Venice*, was joynd to the *Continent* by a *Cauf-way* made of *Flint stones* of about a League long, but narrow; called by the *Spaniards* *Venezuela*, containing about Two Thousand Houses. *Tetlalpalapa* seated part on the *Lake*, and part on the *Banks*, with a paved way to *Mexico*, from which it is distant 2 Leagues: once a large City having no less then Ten Thousand well built houses, which were plentifully supplied with fresh waters, from its many ponds, as well as its beautiful *Fountains*. *Queretaro* hath two *Fountains*, of which one is so hot, that its waters at first burn, being cold, fatten *Cattel*; the other runs four whole years continually, and ceases other four whole years; having likewise this propriety that it increases in dry, and diminishes in moist and rainy weather. *Mexitlan* once of good repute, containing about Thirty Thousand *Inhabitants*, seated on an high hill, begirt about with pleasant *groves*, and fertile *Plains*, which affords excellent

Chulula, d. f. r. d.

Intabulans,

Texcoco d. f. r. d.

Quilavaca d. f. r. d.

Tetlalpalapa d. f. r. d.

Queretaro d. f. r. d.

Two Towns d. f. r. d.

Mexitlan, d. f. r. d.

Cuyo an, and Mexi- calzingo described.

A Spanish City d.

In Trade.

The air of Mexico.

In Fert.

Mines in Mexico.

cellent *Fruits*, and very good *Grains*. *Cuyo- can* of about Five thousand *Houfes*, and *Mexicalzingo* of about four thousand, both upon the *Lake*, were in times of *Paganism* adorned with many beautiful *Temples*, so rich that at a distance they seemed to be made of *Silver*; but now their lustre are decayed, most of them being converted to *Monasteries* and *Religiou* *Houfes*: *Acapulco*, a *City*, and *Port* on *Mer del Sud*, seated on a safe and spacious *Bay*, full of convenient places, or *Docks* for *Ships* to ride in, so that it is said to be the safest *Haven* of all those *Seas*; it is distant from *Mexico* an hundred *Leagues*; the *Mexicans* keep here some *Vessels*, and trade to the *Philippines*, and to *China*, from whence they are distant three thousand *Leagues*; they carry several commodities of *Europe* and *Mexico*, and bring back *Wares* proper for *Mexico* and *Europe*; by which they gain so great profit, that in two or three years their stock is eight or ten times augmented.

The air of *Mexico* is sweet and temperate, though situate under the *Torrid zone*, the heats thereof much qualified by the cooling blasts which rise from the *Sea* on three sides of it; as also by the frequent refreshing showers, which always falls in *June*, *July*, and *August*, which is their hottest season of the year. The soil so fertile that they gather their crop twice a year, yet want they good *Wine*, and good *Oyl*, by reason of the *Summer-rains*. It is believed that no *Country* in the world feeds so much *Cattel*, some private persons having forty thousand *Oxen*, or *Cows*, others one hundred and fiftie thousand *Sheep*, &c. and an infinite number of tame *Fowl*, as *Hens*, *Turkies*, &c. whence it comes that *Oxen*, *Sheep*, *Goats*, *Hoggs*, and tame *Fowl* are hardly worth the buying, by reason of their cheapness they often killing them only for their skins: their *Horses* are excellent, the race coming from the best of *Spain*.

There are few *Mines* of *Gold*, though many of *Silver* about *Mexico*, as those of *Comana*, not above seven *Leagues* distant; those of *Fuchuo*, fourteen, of *Archibica*, and *Temoacaltepeque*, eighteen; of *Zacualpa*, twenty; of *Tasco*, *Imiquilpo*, and *San Tepeque*, twenty two; of *Talpa*, twenty four; of *Zampango*, forty; of *Guanaxnath*, sixty; and others.

These *Mines* are not so rich as those of *Peru*, but easier wrought, and with less expence, and loss of men.

The *Principal Riches* of the *Country* after their *Silver*, *Gold*, *Iron*, and *Copper*, are their *Grains*; as *Wheat*, *Barley*, *Pulse*, and *Mays*, which are here found in great plenty. Also

their *Fruits*, as *Pomegranats*, *Oranges*, *Lemons*, *Citrons*, *Malcoons*, *Cherries*, *Pears*, *Apples*, *Figs*, *Cocoanuts*, &c. with variety of *Plants*, *Herbs*, and *Roots*, as well for the *Kitchen*, as the *Garden*: They have also *Wool*, *Cotton*, *Sugar*, *Silk*, *Cochenel*; which comes from certain *Worms*, which sprinkled on the leaves of an *Indian fig-tree*; cover themselves with a very delicate skin, and being taken off, and dried in the *Sun*, makes the *Cochenel*; they export likewise the grain of *Scarlet*, *Feathers*, *Hony*, *Balm*, *Amber*, *Salt*, *Yellow*, *Hides*, *Tobacco*, *Ginger*, and divers *Medicinal Drugs*, so that few *Vessels* return empty, which sometimes happens at *Peru*, nor is *Spain* less enriched by one then the other.

The *Inhabitants* and *Natives* of this *Country* are more ingenious then the rest of the *Savages*, and are much civilized since the *Spaniards* had to do here; they are excellent in many *Mechanical Arts*, especially in making fine *Pictures* with the *feathers* of their *Fincoons*, which is a little *Bird* living only on *Dew*, and place their *colours* so well that the best *Painters* of *Europe* admire the delicacy; they far exceeding a piece of *Painting*. They have some *memoires* of their *Histories*, make use of certain *Characters* in stead of *Letters* of our *Alphabet*; their tongue was extended so far as they could extend their *Dominion*, though in divers *Provinces* there were diversity of *Languages*; They are excellent in refining of *Metals*, expert *Goldsmiths*, and curious in *painting* upon *Cotton*.

Among their *Rarities* of this *Country*, there is a most admirable *Plant*, called *Maguey*, from which they extract several things, it hath on it about *Forty* kinds of leaves, which are fit for several uses, for when they are tender, they make of them, *Paper*, *Flax*, *Thread*, *Cordage*, *Girdles*, *Shoes*, *Mats*, *Mantles*, *Stuffs*, &c. upon them grow prickles, so strong and sharp, that they make use of them instead of *Saws*, also they serve for *Needles*: The *Bark* if it be roasted, maketh an excellent plaster for *Wounds*; from the top *Branches* comes a kind of *Gum*, which is a sovereign *Amidre* against *Poison*; from the top of the *Tree* cometh a *Juice* like *Syrup*, which if seethed, will become *Hony*, if purified, *Sugar*; they make also *Wine* and *Pinegor* of it; and it affordeth good wood to build with.

In this *Country* are two *Mountains*, one which vomits *Stains* of *Fire* like *Arms*, and another in the *Province* of *Guanaco*, which sendeth forth two burning streams, the one of *Black pitch*, and the other of *Red*.

The *Kings* of *Mexico* were rich and powerful

The Fine and Com- modities of Mexico.

The Kings of Mexico.

In Lake.

The Mountains of Mexico.

ful in re- lets then their own to raise Footy Kings, could at their RE of all ce Artificial participat- bour, ar Their P within th of the Ki lived in g of their S being ad- ous Stone- that of a great Pon- sacrifices most part- fures the- with man- which we- crifers, di- ers to v- Honor, o- cording to- them, the- stinguish- called the- Thurd the- things, we- in Cotton, themselves things are- Moreov- ded not f- the Coun- had their unlikely fr- The- ner how t- divers tim- the other- they last- Ceremoni- name of t- somewhat of the Hebr- of Promis- sters of A- vernment- tezamba in- the Coun- The Y- Mama-O- a human,

ful in regard of their Neighbour, having no less than Two or Three Thousand men, for their ordinary guard; and having been able to raise Two or Three Hundred Thousand Foot, among the Twenty Five or Thirty Kings, which were his Tributaries, some could arm One Hundred Thousand Men, their Revenues vast, which they raised out of all comodities, as well of Natural, as Artificial, which the King received in kind, participating of the Fruits of all Mens Labour, and sharing with them in their Riches. Their Palaces were magnificent, both that within the City, and those in divers parts of the Kingdom, they kept great attendance, lived in great Pomp, were much Reverenced of their Subjects, in their Vestments stately, being adorned with Gold, Pearl, and Precious Stones; wearing a Rich Crown resembling that of a Duke, their Coronations held with great Pomp, at which times they used bloody sacrifices of Men and Children, which for the most part were their Enemies, but sometimes their own, their Temples were stately with many Idols whom they worshiped, which were attended with abundance of Sacrificers, or Priests; and to excite their Soldiers to valour, they used Three degrees of Honor, or Orders of Knighthood, which according to their merit were confer'd upon them, the first (as Heylin noteth) was distinguished by a Red Ribband, the second called the Tiger or Lyon-Knight, and the Third the Gray-Knight; which among other things, were privileged to apparel themselves in Cotton, in a different habit, and to adorn themselves with Gold and Silver, which things are prohibited to others.

Moreover the present Mexicans descended not from the Ancient Inhabitants of the Country, but from divers people, which had their residence in the North, and not unlikely from that which we call New-Mexico. The History they produce of the manner how they came from these quarters at divers times, of the time which the one, and the other, and particularly of him whom they last employed in their Voyages, those Ceremonies they observed, and likewise the name of their chief Mexi, seems to accord somewhat with the Voyage of Moses and the Hebrews, when he led them to the Land of Promise. These people becoming Masters of Mexico, formed a considerable Government, and gave it divers Kings. Motecuzuma under whom Ferdinand Cortez entered the Country, was but the ninth in number.

The Taca-Mango-Capac, and his Wife Coyá Mama-Oelbo were the first, that led them to a human, and civil life, they made themselves

be believed to be Brother and Sister; Children of the Sun and Moon; and that they had been sent here below for the good of Men: and with this belief, they withdrew them from the Mountains, Caves and Forests; and gave them the first knowledge of the Law of Nature. The Taca-Mango-Capac taught Men how to till the Earth, to graft Plants, to feed Flocks, to gather the best Fruits, to Build Houses and Cities, &c. CoyáMama-Oelbo, learnt Women how to Spin Weave, Sow, make Habits, &c. and above all instructed that their principal care ought to be to serve and obey their Husbands, and feed, and instruct their Children.

And these people finding themselves in a better and more reasonable way of living then before, easily submitted themselves to the Government of these Taca's, added themselves to the Religion they taught them, which was to adore the Sun, as that Star which above all the rest, did most visible good to Men, Beasts, Graines, Fruits, Plants, &c. and so soon as these Taca's knew the affection of the people, they raised Arms, assembled Troops, and reduced to the same Government, and the same Religion, many neighbouring people, but still more by sweetness, than force; and in the end composed an Estate, or Empire, which for its greatness, and riches, and likewise for its Laws was one of the most considerable of the World.

And if we should put in paralel the Politiques of the Taca's of Peru, or of those of Mexico, with them of the Greeks and Romans, Acosta maintains that these would have the advantage: And that the Taca's had so great a care of the good, and repose of their Subjects, that there cannot be found in all History any King or Emperer that ever bore himself with so much sweetness, freedom, and liberality towards his people, as did the Taca's Kings of Peru and Mexico. He saith likewise that they ought rather to be called Fathers then Kings of their Subjects.

So soon as a Province entered under their Obedience, they made Channels every where to water the Lands; and that these Lands might be the more commodious for Tillage, they caused to be laid Level what was unequal, evening by degrees what was steep, the Lands proper for Tillage were divided into Three parts, viz. For the Sun, for the King, and for the Inhabitants of the Country; and if these were in so great number, that the third part of the Land was not sufficient for their food, so much taken from the Third of the Sun, and of the King as was needful.

The

ages, Lem-  
es, Pears;  
with variety,  
well for the  
have also  
eel; which  
sprinkled  
ree; cover  
the skin, and  
Sun, makes  
life the grain  
Am, Amber,  
eger, and di-  
few Vessels  
happens at  
by one then

The Fruit  
and Crust  
and his  
beak.

The Riches  
they  
the  
the  
the

In Lat  
am.

of this Coun-  
rest of the  
ed since the  
ry are excel-  
especially in  
e feathers of  
bird living on  
tious so well  
to admire the  
; a piece of  
memoires of  
certain Char-  
Alphabet;  
so far as they  
though in di-  
erity of Lan-  
in refining of  
nd curious in

this Country,  
called Mag-  
several things,  
nds of leaves,  
for when they  
Paper, Flux,  
Shoes; Mats,  
grow prickles,  
y make use of  
they serve for  
roasted; ma-  
Wounds; from  
of Gum, which  
Poyson; from  
ayce like Sirap,  
Hony, if purify-  
and Pinegar of  
to build with  
Mountains, one  
like Atma, and  
Guazua, which  
reans, the one  
of Red;  
rich and power-  
ful

The  
Mace  
any

The  
Mace  
any

The story of  
the Taca-  
Mango-  
Capac, and  
his Wife  
Coyá Ma-  
ma-Oelbo

The Lands being equally parted according to the ability of every Family, the labor began with those of the *Orphans, Widows*, the old and impotent, and *Souldiers* when they were in War; after these, every one laboured and cultivated his own; then those of the *Curaca's* or *Governors*, which were to be after the private persons: those of the *King*, and of the *Sun*, were the last. And this Order was so religiously observed, that a *Governor* having caused the field of a Kinsman of his to be tilled, before that of a poor *Widow*, was hanged in the field he caused to be tilled before its degrees, so careful were they of the Poor.

Besides this Labour for the Tillage of the Lands of the *Sun*, and the *Tuca's*, private persons were obliged to make *Clothes, Hoses, Shoes*, and *Arms* for the *Souldiers*, as also for those whom Age or Sickness made incapable of Travail or Labour. The *Wool*, or *Cotten* was taken from the *Flocks*, and on the Lands belonging to the *Sun*, and the *Tuca's*: and each Province gave only what was easy, and common; and each private person only his labour: young Men under Twenty five years, Men above Fifty, Women, and lame people were exempt from these Tributes.

They made no account of *Gold, Silver*, or *Precious Stones*, but for their adornment, Beauty, and Splendor; nor needing wherewith to buy *vissuals* or *cloths*; their Lands, and ordinary Occupation, yielding and furnishing them with what ever was necessary. Yet if at their hours of leasure, they could discover any, they made a Present of it to their *Curaca's*; these, to the *Tuca*, when they went to salute him at *Cusco*; or when the *Tuca* visited his Estates; and then it was employed either for the Ornaments of the *Royal house*, or the *Temples* of the *Sun*.

The *Temple* of the *Sun* at *Cusco* was so stately, and enriched with so much *Gold, Silver*, and *Precious Stones*, that it is incredible. In this *Temple*, besides the principal Apartment which was for the *Sun*, there was others for the *Moon, Stars, Lightning, Thunder, Thunderbolt, and Rainbow*, which was the device of the *Tuca's*. They esteemed the *Stars* as waiting-Maids, which followed the *Moon*, and all the rest executioners of the Justice of the *Sun*; to whom alone they sacrificed *Sheep, Lambs, Rabbits, Fowls, Spices, Herbs, Habits*, &c. besides *Men* and *Children*, as was said before.

The *Priests* of this *Temple* were all Descendants of the *Tuca's*. In the *Temples* of other Provinces it sufficed that they were descendants of the Priviledged *Tuca's, Curaca's*, or

*Governors* of those Provinces. They called Priviledged, those to whom the *Tuca Mango Capac* had communicated this title, for them and their children; but ordinarily the great *Priest* was *Uncle, Brother*, or one of the nearest kin to the *Tuca*.

To make appear the Riches, in some respect, of this *Temple*; that which inclosed the divers apartments of the *Sun, Moon, Stars*, &c. were all wainscotted with *Plates of Gold*. The *Sun*, placed on his *Alter* towards the East, was of one *Plate of Gold*, much thicker than the others, and the Figure in the same manner as our *Painters* here describe it, viz. A round visage, environed with *Rayes*, and *Flames*. At the taking of *Cusco*, this Piece, or Image of the *Sun*, fell to *Mancajerra de Lequisano*, a *Castilian*, who being a great *Gamester*, lost it one night at play: which made it to be said, that he had plaid away, and lost the *Sun* in a dark night, long before it was day.

On the two sides of the *Sun* were the bodies of the *Kings, or Tuca's*, deceased, ranged according to their times, and embalm'd in such manner, that they appeared living, they were seated in *Thrones of Gold*, raised upon *Plates* of the same, and accommodated in degrees or ascents; the bodies of the *Queens* were according to the same order in the apartment, and on both sides the Figure of the *Moon*, where all the *Ornaments, Doors, Wainscots, Thrones*, &c. were of *Silver*.

Neer this *Temple* was a *Garden*, where the *Herbs, Plants, Flowers, Trees*, and where *Beasts* of all sorts, as also *Birds*, even to *Butterflies* and *Flies*, were of *Gold*, and *Silver*; and so lively represented that they seemed *Natural*. And there were likewise of these *Gardens*, near the *Palace* of the *Tuca's*, and near the *Houses* of the *Virgins*, vowed to the *Sun*. In all the Provinces there were *Temples* of the *Sun*, built after the model of those of *Cusco*, but not so rich: here the *Virgins*, that vowed to the *Sun*, were taken from the *Curaca's*, or the fairest in the Province: Of these the *Tuca*, or *King*, might make use; but not of those of *Cusco*, being reserved only for the *Sun*, and which the *Tuca* himself might not see.

Though these *Tuca's*, and their People, adored not, nor made any Sacrifice, but to the *Sun*; yet, the most knowing among them, esteemed, much beyond the *Sun*, the *Pachacamac*; that is, the *Author* of the *Universe*, but whom, not seeing, they contented themselves to adore in their inward parts: They had likewise some knowledge of

No account  
of Gold,  
Silver, or  
precious  
Stones, but  
for their ad-  
ornment.

The Temples  
of the Sun  
at Cusco.

Their Sa-  
crifices.

Their  
Temple.

The rich-  
ness of the  
Temple.

of the  
could n  
revive.  
dicted t  
cared li  
or *Astro*  
the *Solst*  
ger of t  
ness of t  
ed her l  
*Poesies* w  
*Comedies*  
of human  
umphs of  
But we  
The *Tuca*  
Subject to  
recount al  
ent Govern  
established  
that was i  
what was i  
be raised,  
ed's, or *Gov*  
or for the  
*Magazines* f  
touching th  
in their *Fea*  
their mourn  
of their *King*  
of their *Colo*  
*Posthouses* o  
built so statel  
like.

But, as h  
*Laws*, and  
*Spaniards* be  
adding, tha  
thereign of  
*niards* broug  
first; the *In*  
the most par  
for life, wh  
rendred the  
contented th  
had reaped, a  
ness of the *C*  
The ranfo  
*Cusco*, and the  
ards made int  
of twenty M  
and *Almage*  
which conqu  
*tabualpa*; an  
wife brothers  
with the *Go*  
cruelly cover  
all, they beg  
happy War  
hanged, stran

The  
and Tem



of the *Deluge*, believing that the Souls could not die, and that the *Bodies* should revive. Their *Amantia's*, or *Philosophers*, addicted their principal study to the *Morals*, cared little for the *Metaphysics*, *Medicine*, or *Astronomy*, yet observed the *Equinoxes*, the *Solstices*, and called the *Eclipses* the anger of the *Sun*, and the sickness, or sleepiness of the *Moon*, from which they wakened her by making great noises. Their *Poësies* were on divers honest Subjects; their *Comedies* and *Tragedies*, on divers accidents of humane life, or on the Victories and Triumphs of their *Tuca's* or *Curaca's*.

But we are entred too far into this matter: The *Tuca G. de la Vega*, saith, that there is Subject to make many volums, if we would recount all observable and good in the ancient Government of *Peru*, touching the order established, to know the number of persons that was in each City, and each Province; what was its Revenue; what Forces might be raised; touching the *Judges*, the *Curaca's*, or *Governor*, and other Officers of *policy*, or for the *Justice*; touching the Publick Magazines for *Provisions*, *Cloths*, and *Arms*; touching their *Ceremonies* in their *Sacrifices*, in their *Fests*, in their *Funeral Poms*; in their mourning a whole year after the death of their *Kings*; likewise in the establishment of their *Colonies*; of their *Schools*; of their *Posthouses* on great Roads, which they had built so stately, that the *Romans* had not the like.

But, as he saith, the best of these good *Laws*, and *Policy*, was abolished when the *Spaniards* became Masters of the Country; adding, that if there were *Barbarism* before the reign of the *Tuca's*, after them the *Spaniards* brought in another worse than the first; the Inhabitants of the Country, for the most part, not having what was necessary for life, whatever labour, or service they rendered their Masters, who ought to have contented themselves with the riches they had reaped, and may yet reap, from the goodnes of the Country.

The ransom of *Atahualpa*, the pillage of *Cusco*, and the first incursion which the *Spaniards* made into *Peru*, yielded them the value of twenty Millions of *Ducats*; but *Pizarre* and *Almagre*, the two first *Spanish Chiefs*, which conquered *Peru*, and put to death *Atahualpa*; and in likelihood *Guaſcar*, likewise brothers, and *Tuca's*, were so blinded with the *Gold* they found, and became so cruelly covetous, that each seeking to have all, they began between themselves an unhappy War; and in the end murdered, hanged, strangled, and beheaded one ano-

ther, till there was not left one of them; their children, or brothers, &c. By which God seemed not onely to have chastised their unbridled ambition, and insatiable avarice; but to revenge the blood of the *Tuca's* they had unjustly slain, and their ill treating the *Indians*.

The Province of *PANUCO* is a hundred Leagues long, and as many broad, divided by a River, of the same name, into two almost equal parts: That which is Southward, and towards *Mexico*, is the most fertile, and best tilled, the other towards the North, and *Florida*, being worse. Likewise, that which approaches the Sea is worth much more then that within Land. The *Castilians* have established onely three Colonies, of which *St Stevan del Puerto* is the Metropolis, seated on a River of the same name, and twelve Leagues from the Sea, the greatest Town of Traffick in this Province, built by *Ferdinando Cortez*, in the place, and out of the ruins of *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province, till destroyed by him. Next *St Jago de los Valles*, thirty or forty Leagues from *St Stevan del Puerto*, or *Panuco*, towards the West, and likewise on the same River, scituate on an open Country, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth. And thirdly, *St Lewis de Tempico*, seated on the North Banks of the River *Panuco*, from which it is distant twelve Leagues, and, near the Coast of the *Gulf of Mexico*, at the Mouth of this River, hath a very large Haven, but so choaked with Sands, that no Ship of any considerable burthen can ride, or sail there; otherwise so deep, that Ships of Four or five hundred Tuns might sail sixty Leagues in it. These Colonies are so weakened by the incursions of the Inhabitants, who now knock one on the head, and then another, that the best had not above sixty Native *Spaniards* An. 1600. They have Mines of *Gold* in the Country, which are not wrought; good *Salt-pits*, out of which they draw the greatest profit, &c.

The Province and Bishoprick of *MHECOACAN*, between those of *Mexico*, and new *Gallicia*, stretches on the Coast of *Mer del Sud* near a hundred Leagues, advances within Land from that Coast to the *Zacatecas*, near a hundred and fifty Leagues. Places of most note, are, 1. *Colima*, seated ten Leagues from the Sea, built by *Gonsalvo de Sandoval* in the year 1522. 2. *Zacatula*, on the *Mer del Sud*, and at the Mouth of a River of the same name. 3. *Mechuacan*, the Metropolis, which takes its name from the Province, so called; now the Seat of the Archbishop. 4. *Zimacana*, once the Seat of

called  
Mango  
or them  
great  
near-

some re-  
enclosed  
Moon,  
Plates  
Alter  
of Gold,  
the Fi-  
Painters  
environ-  
taking of  
sun, fell to  
ian, who  
one night  
l, that he  
in a dark

ere the bo-  
sed; ranged  
abolished in  
ered living;  
Gold, raised  
accommoda-  
odies of the  
ame order in  
ides the Fi-  
Ornaments,  
c. were of

n, where the  
and where  
eds, even to  
old, and Sil-  
ed that they  
were likewise  
place of the  
f the *Virgins*,  
ovinces there  
uilt after the  
not so rich:  
to the *Sun*,  
or the fairest  
the *Tuca*, or  
ot of those of  
for the *Sun*,  
lf, might not

their People,  
sacrifice, but to  
nowing among  
d the *Sun*, the  
Author of the  
ing, they con-  
in their inward  
me knowledge  
of

The rich  
mst of the  
Temple.

Province of  
Panuco,  
and 11/12  
leagues.

In Colima,  
good chief  
places in-  
habited.

The Pro-  
vince of  
Mehu-  
acan and  
chief places  
described  
see.

1. Colima.

2. Zaca-  
tula.

3. Mechu-  
acan.

4. Zimou-  
ca.



the Kings of *Mexico*, 5. *Panama*, once the Seat of the *Bishop*, distant from *Mexico* forty seven Leagues, 6. *Panadolis*, seated near a large *Lake*; by some, said to be as large as that of *Mexico*. This *Lake*, besides the benefit it bringeth to the Inhabitants by the great plenty of *Fish* here taken, yieldeth them the opportunity of several pleasures and recreations, which they enjoy in Boats upon the water, which are here in an exceeding great number. It is of a large Circuit, once the Seat of the *Arch-Bishop*, till removed to *Mexhuacan*, 7. *La Concepcion de Salaga*, seventeen Leagues from *Panadolis*, 8. *St. Michael*, distant about Forty Leagues from *Mexico*, built by *Lewis de Velasco* then *Vice-Roy* of *Mexico*, 9. *St. Philip*, built by the said *Velasco* at the same time; to assure the way going from *Mexhuacan* or *Mexico* to the *Silver mines* of *Zacatecas*: this way being often pestered and frequented by the *Chichimeques*, *Otomites*, *Tarasques*, and other barbarous and as yet unconquered people, who greatly perplex and annoy the people that border upon them. Some place likewise in this Province, the Cities of *Lomb*, of *Zamora*, of *Villade Lagos*, and One Hundred, or One Hundred and twenty Towns of which Ninety have their *Schools*.

The soil of this Province is very different, but every where fertile, and in most places yields such great increase of all sorts of *Grains*, *Fruits*, &c. that it hardly hath its fellow in the whole World. It produceth likewise, *Cotton*, *Ambrogosse*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Coppers* soft and hard, of the soft, they make vessels, of the hard, Instruments instead of *Iron*. They have *Black Stones*, so shining that they serve them instead of *Looking-Glasses*: They have store of *Plants*, *Medicinal Herbs*, *Mulberry-trees*, *Silk*, *Honey*, *Wax*, &c. The Country is said to be so healthfull, and of so sweet an air, that sick people come hither to recover their health: It is well stored with *Rivers* and *Springs* of fresh water, which makes their pastures exceeding rich, and fat: *Cattel* and *Fowl* are here found in great plenty, and their *Rivers*, and *Lakes* afford store of *Fish*.

The people are of a good stature, strong and active, very ingenious, and expert in many curious *Manufactures*; do embrace *Christianity*, are civil, and learn good manners from the *Spaniards*.

Between *COLIMA* and *ACATELAN* is found the plant *Cocometeath* or *Olcacacum*, which takes blood-heat from the eyes, preserves the strength of the body, or restores it to the weak, cures the tooth, and head-ach, resists all poisons; and in fine, is most excel-

lent against all diseases: Those of the Country will judge of the event of any sickness whatsoever it be, when they apply the Leaf on the party: If they fasten easily, they soon hope a cure; but if they resist, or fall off, they expect nothing but a great and long sickness, or death.

*THASCALA*, or *LOS ANGELOS* is between *Mexico*, and the gulf of *Mexico*, from whence it advances unto the *Mer del Sud*, stretching it self on the coast of this Sea twenty five Leagues; on the other seventy five, or eighty: Places of most note are, First, *Thascala*, which gives name to this Province, once the seat of a *Bishop*, and once governed in form of a Commonwealth; it was said to be so populous before the *Spaniards* had to do in these parts, that it could number about three hundred thousand inhabitants: It had four principal streets or quarters, which, in time of War, were each of them governed by a Captain, and in the midst of these streets it had a spacious market-place, large enough (as some Authors affirm) to hold thirty thousand persons; which was always thronged with people, for the negotiating of their affairs, it is situate on an easie ascent betwixt two Rivers, encompassed with a large, pleasant, and fruitful plain, about twenty Leagues in compass: Secondly, *Los Angeles*, (or the City of *Angels*) a fair City, built by *Sebastian Ramirez*; Anno 1531, distant from *Mexico* twenty two Leagues, now the *Bishops* Seat. Thirdly, *Vera Cruz*, built by the said *Cortez*, being a place of great conourse, by reason of its near situation unto the gulf, from whence it is a through-fair to the City of *Mexico*, which is distant from it sixty Leagues. Its Port of *St. Joan de Ulua*, though but bad, is in some esteem, being the best on the *Mer del Nort*, and held more commodious than that of *Mexico*. Fourthly, *Zempallan*, seated on a River of the same name, the Inhabitants whereof did *Ferdinando Cortez* good service in his conquest of *Mexico*. Beside those Towns or Cities, they count in this *Bishoprick* or Province, two hundred Towns, one thousand Villages, and two hundred and fifty thousand *Indians* under its jurisdiction, which are exempted from all extraordinary charge and imposition; because of their assisting the said *Cortez* in his conquest of *Mexico*.

The Country is more hot then cold, fruitful in corn, maize, sugar, wine, fruits, feeds much cattel full of rich pastures, well watered with fresh streams, In the Valley of *S. Paul* was a Countryman possessor of forty thousand Sheep, which were the product of only

two

5 Pascu-  
oico.

6. Valla-  
dolis.

7. La Con-  
ception  
de Salaga.  
8. St. Mi-  
chael.

9. Philip.

The soil of  
this Pro-  
vince is  
Commodi-  
ous.

Dr. Au.

Dr. Propri.

The Form  
of the Plant  
Cocomete-  
ath.

two, wh  
The Inf  
and cor  
said.

GH

Nort an

on the I

the two

timala, t

The plain

whose for

tle more

*Bishoprick*

ted its sta

the valle

stately bi

nificant c

are of Ma

thickness.

ley of Ne

*Ilefonso* o

*Zapoteca*.

ter, and c

the sea d

for a Laby

of a Rock

venient Po

and frequ

Merchand

ru, a place

those two

*Yndish*, b

cest, there i

and as man

are inhabi

try, which

The d

are all ferti

fruits, Cook

well stored

other Met

stream dow

of *Almond*

make use

very health

and impatie

they gain n

people wou

they only c

is only nece

ous, of a go

instructions

*Touasco*

Leagues lon

can, scarce

tween the P

The Count

wards the co

the mountai

two, which were brought him from Spain. The Inhabitants are much of the same nature and condition with those of Mexico aforesaid.

**GUAXACA** is between the *Mer del Nord* and *Sud*, on the West, touches onely on the Province of *los Angeles*; on the East, on those of *Texasco*, *Chiapa*, and *Socumasco*; the two last being of the Audience of *Guatemala*, the others all under that of Mexico; 10 The plain of the Province makes a Lozenge, whose four sides are each 7 Leagues, or little more. Its Cities are, 1. *Ansequera*, a *Bishoprick*, and which sometime communicated its name to the Province: It is seated in the valley of *Guaxaca*, and adorned with stately buildings, and beautified with a magnificent *Cathedral Church*, whose Columns are of Marble, and of a prodigious height and thickness. 2. *St. Fago*, seated in the valley of *Nexapa*, but upon a lofty hill. 3. *St. Ilesonso* on a Mountain in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 4. *Spiritu Sancto* in the Quarter, and on the *River of Guaxacoalco*, near the *Mer del Nord*. 5. *Cuerlavaca*, of note for a Labyrinth, not far distant, hewed out of a Rock. 6. *Aguasalco*, a noted and convenient Port on the *Mer del Sud*, well known and frequented by those who transport the Merchandizes of *Europe* and *Mexico*, to *Pe-* 30 *ru*, a place of great Riches, till plundered by those two eminent Travellers *Drake* and *Cavendish*; both *Englishmen*, besides those places, there is said to be three hundred Towns, and as many *Espancias* or *Hamlets*, which are inhabited by the Natives of the Country, which pay tribute to the *Spaniards*.

The divers Quarters of this Province are all fertile, not only in *grains*, but also in *fruits*, *Cochameil*, *Silk*, *Cassia*; and the Earth well stored with Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, and other *Metals*, and almost all the *Rivers* stream down *sand-gold*; Here is also a kind of *Almond*, which they call *Cacao*, which they make use of instead of *money*, the air is very healthful; the people are very slothful, and impatient of labour, by reason of which they gain not the riches which industrious people would get, by cultivating their Land, they only contenting themselves with what is only necessary; yet they are very ingenious, of a good nature, and willing to receive instructions from any that will teach them.

*Texasco* is only a coast of an hundred Leagues long, between *Guaxaco* and *Fucatan*, scarce twenty five Leagues broad, between the Province of *Chiapa* and the Sea; The Country is full of *Pools* and *Marshes*, towards the coast, Wood, and Forests towards the mountains; and the Rains being continu-

al for eight or nine months in the year, the air is very humid; and its situation being much under the *Torrid Zone*, it engenders an infinite number of *vermin*, *gnats*, and *insects*; yet the soil is excellent, abundant in *Mayz* and *Cacao*, which is their principal riches; but which they can scarce preserve from the *Apes* and *Squirrels*, which eat and spoil them when they are ripe: They have *Vines*, *Figtrees*, *Oranges*, and *Citrons*, besides those *Fruits* which are particular unto them, and which have their divers properties: they feed a great quantity of *Cattel*, and *Fowl* of all sorts, and besides the wild *Beasts*, have great plenty of *Birds* in their Woods.

There is observable here but one Colony of the *Spaniards*, which they call *Villa de Nuestra Señora de la victoria*, so called because of the Victory, *Cortez* gained in 1519 against those of the Country, when he went to the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Mexico*; It was called *Potonchan* when it was besieged, taken, and sacked by *Cortez*; and it is observed, this was the first City in *America*, which defended it self, and which suffered under the *Spaniards* sword.

**FUCATAN** is the last Province of the Audience of *Mexico* towards the East: It is a *Peninsula* of about Four Hundred Leagues Circuit, situate between the Gulfs of *Mexico*, and *Honduras*: The *Isthmus* which joyns it to the mainland, is not above Twenty five or Thirty Leagues over, from whence the Country continues enlarging it self, from Fifty, to Seventy five Leagues breadth, and ends at *Cape de Cotoche*, which regards, towards the East *Cape*, *St. Anthony* in the Isle of *Cuba*, at the distance of Sixty; and 40 old Leagues.

The Coasts of *FUCATAN* are very much cumbered with little Isles, which often proves dangerous for Ships; but covered with abundance of *Sea-Fowl*, which those of the Neighbouring, and far distant Countries come to chase. The Isle of *Coxumel*, or *Acoxumel* to the East, hath formerly been famous, for its *Idol Coxumel*, which all the people of the Neighbouring Continent went to adore. And it was in this Isle, or the Continent neer unto it, that *Baldivino* unfortunately saved himself; having been Ship-wracked neer *Jamaica*, he had taken a little Boat, like to those used by *Fisher-men*, wherein going with about Twenty of his men, he was brought hither by the Sea, but no sooner had he set foot on Land, but he and his Men were seized by the Natives, who immediately led them to the *Temple* of their *Idols*, where they presently offered up, or 50 *sacrificed*.

Country  
nefs what-  
Leaf on  
or fall off,  
and long

ANGE-  
the gulf of  
s unto the  
n the coast  
on the o-  
nces of most  
gives name  
of a Bishop.  
Common-  
opulous be-  
these parts,  
ree hundred  
our principal  
ne of Warr,  
a Captain,  
ers it had a  
ugh (as some  
housand per-  
ed with peo-  
eir affairs, it  
between two  
ge, pleasant,  
y Leagues in  
relax, (or the  
uilt by *Seba-*  
distant from  
now the *Bi-*  
ux, built by  
of great con-  
sitation un-  
a through-fair  
is distant from  
of *St. Joan de*  
some esteem  
*Nord*, and held  
t of *Mexico*.  
ona River of  
itans whereof  
service in his  
those Towns  
*Bishoprick* or  
one thousand  
and fifty thou-  
dion, which are  
ary charge and  
sisting the said  
sico.  
then cold, fruit-  
e, fruits, feeds  
es, well watered  
alley of *S. Paul*  
of forty thou-  
product of on-  
two

The Pro-  
vince of  
Guaxaca  
is in the  
west of  
Mexico  
The Pro-  
vince of  
Fucatan  
is in the  
east of  
Mexico  
The Pro-  
vince of  
Coxumel  
is in the  
east of  
Mexico  
The Pro-  
vince of  
Jamaica  
is in the  
east of  
Mexico

Its fertility  
and commerce  
diver.

Its chief  
City.

The Pro-  
vince of Ju-  
catan,  
with its  
chief city  
described.

The Isle of  
Coxumel.

The Mi-  
serable  
that killed  
Baldivino  
here.

sacrificed, and eat him and four of his Men, and the rest they reserved till another time. Among these, *Aquilar* who had seen the Ceremony, escaping with some others, fled to a *Cacique*, who treated him courteously for many years, during which time some dyed, others married in the Country. *Aquilar* in the end was fetched thence by *Cortez*, who was of no small use unto him in his Conquest of *Mexico*, because that he had learned their Tongue.

The Air of

*JUCATAN* is hot, the Country hath scarce any Rivers, yet wants no water, being supplied every where with Wells; within the middle of the Land are to be seen quantity of Scales, and Shells of Sea-fish, which hath made some believe the Country hath been over-flowed: They have scarce any of the Corn or Fruits of Europe, but some others of the Country, and quantity of Wild Beasts, principally *Stags*, and Wild Bears, and among their Fowls, Peacocks. They have yet found no Gold, much less Latten: which makes it appear, that it is not true, that the Spaniards found here Crosses of Latten, there being none in all America.

Was it

The Cities of *Jucatan* are four; *Merida* once *Mayapan*, *Valladolid*, *Campeche* or *St Francisco de Campech*, and *Salamanca*.  
 1. *Merida*, is the Metropolis, being the Seat of the Bishop, and Governor, for *Tavasco* and *Jucatan*; distant from the Sea, on each side, twelve Leagues; the City is adorned with great and ancient Edifices of Stone, with many Figures of men cut in the Stones; and because they were resembling those which are at *Merida* in Spain, that name was given it. 2. *Valladolid*, thirty Leagues from *Merida*, is beautified with a very fair Monastery of *Franciscans*, and more than Forty thousand *Barbarians* under its Jurisdiction. 3. *Campeche*, situate on the shore of the Gulf, a fair City of about Three thousand Houses, and adorned with many stately and rich Structures, which in 1596 was surpris'd, and pillaged by the English, under the Command of Captain *Parker*; who carried away with him the Governor, the Riches of the City, and many Prisoners; besides, a great Ship, laden with Honey, Wax, *Campeche-wood*, and other Rich Commodities.

1. Merida.

2. Vallad.

3. Campe.

The conquest of the Kingdom of *Mexico* was much easier to the *Castilians*, than that of *Peru*, the Kingdom of *Peru* being Hereditary, and its *Tuea's* loved, and almost adored by their Subjects; the Kingdom of *Mexico* being Elective, and its Kings hated, if not by those of *Mexico*, yet by all the neigh-

bouring Estates, and envied by those might aspire to the Royalty. This diversity was the cause that *Moteczuma* died, and the City of *Mexico* taken, there was nothing more to do, or fear, as to that Estate. In *Peru*, after the death of *Guscar*, and *Atabalipa*, and some other *Tuea's*, the Spaniards could not believe themselves safe, so long as there was any remainder of the Race of these *Tuea's*; which made them under divers pretexts persecute, banish, and put them to death. And so much for *Mexico*, or *New-Spain*.

## The Audience of GUADALAJARA, or New-GALLICIA.

THE Audience of *GUADALAJARA*, or Kingdom of *New-Gallicia*, makes the most Occidental part of *New-Spain*, and contains the Provinces of *Guadalupe*, *Xalisco*, *Los Zocattos*, *Chiametlan*, *Caliscan*, and *New-Biscany*; some others add *Cibola*, and others likewise *California*, *Quivira*, *Antan*, &c. that is, the *Castilians* pretend to extend their power to the farthest part of this new World.

The Province of *Guadalajara*, hath only two Cities, or Colonies, of Spaniards, viz. *Guadalajara*, and *Santa Maria de los Lagos*, of which, the first is the chief of the Kingdom or Province, built in 1531, by *Nonnez de Guzman*, after he had finished his Conquest: It is the residence of the Kings Treasurers, dignified with the Courts of Judicature; the See of a Bishop, which was first established at *Camposeca*, and from thence transferred hither in 1570; beautified with a fair Cathedral Church; a Convent of *Augustine Friers*, and another of *Franciscans*: it is situate in a pleasant, and fruitful Plain, and watered with divers Fountains, and little Torrents, not far from the River *Baranja*, the neighbouring Mountains, having furnished them with materials for their buildings. *Santa Maria de los Lagos* is forty or fifty Leagues from *Guadalajara*, and seventy five from *Mexico*; it was builded by the same *Guzman*, and made a place of great strength, onely to hinder the incursions of the *Chichimeques*, who are a barbarous, and untamed sort of people, who border upon them, towards the North-East; who live upon the spoils of other people; harboring in thick Woods; and private Caves, for the better obtaining their prey; which said Town keeps them in such aw, that they dare not molest them.

The

The and sermer, wThe perally thvery doin which they are pleasures bit for th which t fasten ab good S subject the Plag dred year Gnats, ar Mountain Mines, c gaffies, d the plain dred for o one of M Olive-tre the Am; Pies are m such quan tle time, t have Citra Peaches, a are here f goodness Pastures li dance of C The Ri this quarre cipal brand about M Frontier of Province d one Chan makes a C Guadalajar South Sea the Provin In the Cities the Provin 1531. on Guadalaja barren, the either for advantage to be foc City, b seated ne Sea-side. the Provin stroyed by

The Air of this Province is temperate, and serene; except it be in their Summer, which is much troubled with Rains. The people of this Province, as generally throughout all *Galicia*, are crafty, very docile, even in matters of Religion, in which they are inconstant, and wavering, they are impatient of labour, much given to pleasures, delight in strong drinks; their habit for the most part is a shirt of Cotton, over which they wear a Mantle, which they fasten about their Shoulders: They are of a good Stature, and well proportioned, little subject to sickness, nor knowing what the Plague is, they ordinarily living a hundred years; they are much troubled with Gnats, and Vermine. The Country is rather Mountainous then plain, well furnished with Mines, of Silver, Copper, Lead, and Margasit, &c. but none of Gold, Iron, or Steel: the plains tilled, yeilds ordinarily One Hundred for one of Corn, and Two Hundred for one of *Mayze*; they have much Pulse, many Olive-trees, whose fruit is often spoyled by the Ants; as their Grains are by Pigs: These Pigs are no bigger then our Sparrows, but in such quantity, that where there alight, in a little time, they devour the whole crop. They have Citrons, Oranges, Figs, Apples, Pears, Peaches, and almost all the Fruits of Europe are here found in great plenty, which for goodness surpasss those of Spain. Their Pastures likewise are rich, and feed abundance of Cattel.

The River of *Baranja*, is the strongest of this quarter, it forms it self into two principal branches, of which one descends from about *Mexico*, and the other from the Frontier of the *Zacatecas*; and joyn in the Province of *Mechocacan*: from whence in one Channel it passes to *N. St. de los Lagos*, makes a *Cataract* of ten Fathom high near *Guadalajara*, and disburthens it self into the South Sea below *Cemiquipaque*, between the Provinces of *Xalisco*, and *Chiametlan*.

In the Province of *XALISCO*, are the Cities of *Compostella* the Metropolis of the Province, built by the said *Guzman*, in 1531. once a *Bishops* See, till removed to *Guadalajara*; built in a Plain, but so barren, that it will scarce produce food either for man or beast, and with the disadvantage of so bad an Aire, that made it to be soon left. *La Purification* a small City, built also by the said *Guzman*, seated near the Port of *Natividad*, on the Sea-side. And lastly *Xalisco*, so called from the Province, once of some account till destroyed by the said *Guzman*.

North-East of *Guadalajara*, and *Xalisco*, are the Provinces of *CHIAMETLAN*, whose chief City is *St. Sebastian*, seated on a River of the same name, nigh to which are many rich Silver Mines. The Province of *Culiacan* whose chief Cities are *St. Michael*, seated on the River of *Women*, built by *Guzman*, and *Piastla* seated on a River so called, about two days Journey from the Sea, well built, and of good esteem, till the great damage it received from the Spaniards in their Conquest. And lastly the Province of *Cinaloa*, whose chief City is *St. John*, an ancient Colony of Spaniards. There are every where rich Mines of Silver, plenty of Provisions, Fruits, *Mayze*, Pulse, and Cotton: their Inhabitants are great, strong, and warlike, and particularly in *Cinaloa*, where they have made the Spaniards abandon the City of *St. John*, who have rebuilt other-where that of *St. Philip* and *Jacob*.

North of *Guadalajara*, are the Provinces of *LOS ZACATECAS*, and now *BISCANT*. Account is made of four Colonies in *Los Zacatecas*. Thirty Towns, and Four famous Lodges near the Mines: of which the principal are, *Los Zacatecas*, (of which the Province took its name) inhabited by Spaniards, who have here a Convent of Franciscans, *Avino*, *Sombrarino*, *St. Martin*, and possibly *St. Luke*. The Cities are *Xeres de Frontera*, *Erena*, *Numero de Dios*, besides that in the *Isthmus of Panaman*, and *Durango*. There are no Cities spoken of in *New Biscany*; but only excellent Mines of silver, at *S. John*, *Santa Barbara*, and at *Endes* which they esteem the best, built only for the benefit of the Silver Mines which the Spaniards enjoy.

The *Zacateca's* want both water and food, except towards *Durango*, and *Nombro de Dios*: *New Biscany* hath Cattel and Grain. All these Provinces hitherto are not only of the Audience, but likewise of the Bishoprick of *Guadalajara*.

Above, and North-ward of *New Galicia*, and the Audience of *Guadalajara*, we have quantity of people, and Provinces little known: we call them in general, *New Mexico*; because esteeming these quarters likewise under the name of *Mexico*, they make that part of *Mexico* latest known, others pass them all under the name of *New Granada*, and place here, the City of *Granada*, which *Herrera* makes in *Cinaloa*, others in *Cibola*, and others in the Kingdom of *Mexico* taken particularly: so little affu-

FFf  
rance

The Province of Chiametlan, with its chief City Santa Sebastian, is a little Province of St. Culiacan, whose chief Cities are St. Michael and Piastla described.

The Province of Cinaloa, with its chief City St. John, is described.

The Province of Los Zacatecas, and New Biscany, with their chief Towns described.

The Province of Los Zacatecas, and New Biscany, with their chief Towns described.

ose might  
erity was  
the City  
g more to  
ern, after  
alipa, and  
could not  
there was  
se Tusa's;  
pretends  
to death.  
pain.

AD A  
Cew-

AL A F A  
ro-Galicia,  
t of New-  
ers of Guada-  
Chiametlan,  
ome others  
California,  
the Castili-  
ower to the

, hath one-  
Spaniards,  
Maria de los  
chief of the  
in 1531, by  
had finished  
ence of the  
h the Courts  
shop, which  
lla, and from  
o; beautifi-  
; a Convent  
her of Fran-  
nt, and fruit-  
ers Fountains,  
on the River  
ountains, ha-  
rials for their  
Lagos is forty  
a, and seven-  
ided by the  
place of great  
incursions of  
barbarous, and  
o border upon  
ast; who live  
le; harboring  
Caves, for the  
s which said  
that they dare

The



rance is there, of the Relations of these quarters.

However here is observed divers people very different in their languages, manners, and customes, some having fixed and settled habitations; others wandering after their Flocks; among the first, there are some that have many Cities, some containing in them about thirty, forty, or fifty thousand Inhabitants, and in these Cities the houses are built of Stone, several stories high. New Mexico taken particularly hath ten or twelve of these Cities, whose Houses have their Chambers, Halls, Parlors, and other Conveniences, very populous; among which, the City called new Mexico is the chief, distant from old Mexico about five hundred Leagues, being the residence of the Governour, where the Spaniards keep a Garrison, and have changed its name to St Fegie. Cibola hath seven Cities, each of three, four, or five hundred Families, and, with those which remain in the field, may make likewise eight or ten thousand men: All these inhabitants are addicted to War, their Country tilled, and abounding in all Victuals; though the air be very hot in Summer, and in Winter very cold, these Countries may export Salt, Crystal, Turquoises, and Emeralds; they have Mines of Silver, neer the Pascaguates, and elsewhere.

QUIVIRA hath not many houses, nor overflored with people, and those that do inhabit here are very rude and barbarous, the men cover their bodies with the skin of an Ox ill accommodated; the women only with their hair, which they wear so long, that it serveth them in stead of a Veil to hide their nakedness: they live almost altogether on raw flesh, which they devour rather then eat, swallowing it without any chewing; they live in *hoards* or *troops*, resembling those of the *Tartars*; not having any certain abode, but remove from one place to another, staying where they find good pasture for their *Cattel*; their *Cows* and *Bulls* are as great as ours, but in all things much different; their *Horns* are little, their *hair* inclining to *Sheeps Wool*, very long towards the head and shoulders, and which shortens more and more towards their hinder parts: they have a great boss on the middle of their back, their feet short before, a great beard hanging under their throats, their *tail* long, and ruffed towards the end, there is in this Animal something of a *Lion*, *Camel*, *Goat* and *Sheep*, but more of the *Ox*; their head and face is to ugly, that *Horses* will not come neer them, and these *Beasts* in their fury are

stronger then our *Horses*: They are the chief Riches of the Country; their *skin* is the ordinary food of the Inhabitants; their skins serves them for clothing, as also covers their habitations; their *hair* serves them for *threads*, of their *nerves* and *sinews* they make *cords*, *bow-strings*, or the like; of their *Bones*, *Nails*, *Boards*, &c. of their *Horns*, *Trumpets* and *Horns*; of their *Bladders* vessels to keep water in, their *blood* they drink, their *skin* they eat, and their *dung*, when dried, serves them for *fire*, because they have but little wood.

Besides these *Beasts* they have *Sheep* as big as our *Asses*, *Doges*, so strong, that they serve for many uses instead of *Horses*.

ANIAN is yet poorer then *Quivira*: the Spaniards have long since over-run both the one and the other, but finding nothing of worth, neglected them; but after all there are opinions much contrary, touching the temperature, fertility, and situation of these two Provinces; some making them cold and barren; others temperate and good: This contrariety is nothing in regard of the Position; the same region may have quarters very excellent, and others very bad, but the situation must be either on the one, or the other side: Yet some place these two Provinces in that part of *America*, most advanced towards *Asia*, which must be Westward of new Mexico; others place them Eastward of new Mexico, and stretching towards *Florida*, and *Canada*, which is quite opposite to the former Position, yet this last is most likely, by the way of those which passed from these quarters into *Panuco* of new Spain.

CALIFORNIA hath a long time been esteemed to be only a *Peninsula*; The *Hollanders* having taken on these Seas a *Spanish* vessel, which had rounded it, and made the *Chart* of it, who saw that it was but an *Ile*, which extends it self from South East to North West, and from the Twenty third *Degree* of *Latitude*, to beyond the Forty sixth, lying along the West side of *America*. Its length is of Seven or Eight Hundred Leagues. Its breadth under the *Tropique* of *Cancer*, not above Twenty, or Twenty five Leagues, from whence it still enlarges it self unto One Hundred and Fifty Leagues, towards the Fortieth *Degree* of *Latitude*. The Aire hath been found cold, though in a situation which ought to render it more hot then temperate. The the Country ill peopled, they *Fish* for *Pearls* in *Mer Vermee*, and on the East of the Coasts of *California*, and likewise along, and on the Coasts of *New Granada*, or *New Mexico*.

Mark

New Mexi-  
co descri-  
bed.

Produce of  
Cibola.

Commodi-  
ties found  
in these  
parts.

The Pro-  
vince of  
Quivira  
described.

Its Inhabi-  
tants.

Their Cu-  
stoms differ  
from ours,  
and of an  
ugly sort.

Mark  
age into  
turn rec-  
and und-  
their he-  
divers P  
Houses  
with Tu  
chief Ci  
co: Th  
and Tom  
erful.

The  
doza vi-  
Cornada  
out the  
riches h  
naked,  
some Ci  
but sadl  
Kingdom  
so much  
nary: 2  
which th  
Marata  
ly Town  
gared  
land mor  
bucite the  
higher, a  
people:  
not that  
Governm  
retic, w  
ing the C  
ces of 2  
see how  
come fro  
whatever  
or what  
or what  
truth.

The A

The A  
is be  
and betw  
Land, wh  
ly part of  
vinces ar  
Vera-Pax  
and Vera  
GUA  
CO are o  
Land, V  
del Nor  
gna on





which they esteem one of the principal riches of all *New-Spain*; it serves for divers uses, both for meat, and drink, making Beverages of it, mingled with *Spices*: they use it likewise instead of *Money*. The Country is more inclining to Mountains, than Plains, but well watered with *Rivers*. The people (according to the relations of some that have been there) are pusillanimous and fearful; the men are expert at the Bow, and the women at the Distaff: they are more civil, and embrace *Christianity* more than their neighbouring Countries do, and are willing to receive advice from the *Spaniards* who are their Masters.

In Labi-  
tanti.

The Pro-  
vince of  
Socunusco  
deprived.

*SOCUNUSCO* hath onely the little City of *Guevetlan* on the Coast, and nothing of particular, or worthy to be noted in it; onely, it hath some *Grains*, feeds some *Cattel*, its Rivers hath *Fish*, and its people more barbarous, and rude.

The Pro-  
vince of  
Chiapa di-  
tribid,  
with its  
Candides

*CHIAPA* is not over-fertile in *Grains*, nor *Fruits*, but the Country well clothed with lofty Trees, as *Pines*, *Cedars*, *Oaks*, *Cypresses*, *Walnut-trees*; and some of their Trees yield *Rosin*, others *Precious Gums*, and others bear *Leaves*, that when they are dryed into Powder, make a sovereign Plaster for sores. The Country is full of *Snakes*, and other venomous creatures, some of which are about twenty foot long.

In chief  
Place.

Places of most note in this Province, are,  
1. *Ciudad-Real*, built by the *Spaniards*, situate in a round Plain, at the foot of a Hill, and begirt with Mountains, resembling an *Amphitheater*; now the Residence of a *Bishop*, and governed by City-Magistrates, by them called *Alcaides*. 2. *Chiapa*, seated in the fruitfulest Valley of the whole Country; yielding *Fruits*, *Wheat*, and *Mayz*. 3. *St Bartholomews*, remarkable for having near it a great Pit, or opening of the Earth, into which, if any one casts a stone, though never so small, it makes a noise, so great, and terrible, as a clap of Thunder. 4. *Casapualca*, a small Town, but famous also, for a Well it hath, whose waters are observed to rise and fall, according to the flowing and ebbing of the Sea.

Some wa-  
rable  
armies of  
Bartholo-  
mew de  
las Casas  
Bishop of  
Chiapa.

Among the *Bishops* of *Chiapa*, one was, *Bartholomew de las Casas*, of the order of *St. Dominique*, who having seen the cruelties with which the *Spaniards* treated the people of *America*, endeavoured by divers Remonstrances to hinder it for the future; but not getting any satisfaction there, came into *Spain*, and addressed himself to *Dom. Phillip*, son of *Charls* the Fifth, and after Second of that name, King of *Spain*: To whom

he represented the inhumanities, and cruelties with which the *Spaniards* tyrannised over these poor people; but finding the business delayed, and a difficulty made of remedying it, as if he did contest the right, and absolute power, which the Kings of *Castile* say, they have in those parts, and over these people, made him resolve in 1542, to print his Treatise in *Sevil*, without taking the permission of the Inquisition; which is a hardy attempt in *Spain*. He presented it to *Charls* the Fifth, and gave many to divers persons. The Kings Council presently commanded this Book to be suppressed, fearing lest these barbarousnesses should come to light, and make the *Spaniards* the hatred and abomination of all Nations in the World; but some Copies were saved, and transported out of *Spain*; which were reprinted in *Italy*, the *Low-Countries*, and other Places; and translated into *Italian*, *Flemish*, and *French*.

There are in this Relation things that can scarce enter into the belief of man; he makes account, that in divers parts of *America*, and its *Isles*, the *Spaniards* had put to death in his time (which was fifty years after their invasion of it) twelve or fifteen millions of persons, by several cruel, and *nachristian*-like deaths, as by *Fire*, *Hunger*, *Boiling* of them; impaling them; by the *Halber*, and *Sword*, as also in excessive labours in the working in their *Mines*, in carrying of heavy burthens, like *Horses*, and the like cruelties. He also saith, that they treated those that remained worse than *Slaves*, nay, worse than *Beasts*; cutting off the *Ears* of some, others *Noses*, or *Hands*, sometimes cutting them alive into pieces, and quarters, to feed their *Dogs*, and learn them to devour these poor *Americans*; and if they found one of these *Dogs* killed, or a *Spaniard* knock't on the head in the field, they would hang up a dozen of these miserable people, in honour (as they said) of the Twelve *Apostles*, or else put the neighbouring Country to *Fire* and *Sword*.

He saith, that it was ordinary with them, to abuse *Boys*, to deflower *Virgins*, and to ravish *Women*, whom they sold afterwards for a *Cbeeze*: and oft-times a hundred *Men* and *Women*, and sometimes five hundred, and more, for an *Ass*, or a *Horse*. He observes, that a certain *Chacique*, having escaped out of *Hispaniola* into *Cuba*, to shun the cruelty of the *Spaniards*, they becoming after Masters of *Cuba*, and this poor *Chacique*, falling into their hands; they condemned him to the *Fire*, where being incited by a

Fryer,

Fryer  
this li-  
when I  
that t  
not be  
he drea  
affires  
Volum  
passed  
affirms  
ders; B  
tarily d  
themfel  
might a  
and gen  
concern

Neer  
have som  
which ri  
and ebbi  
it, and n  
it. Anoth  
increases,  
rain; and  
though th  
tinus fro  
Another t  
& rises in d  
*Birds* and  
those sick  
But we sh  
speak of all

HOND  
are two gre  
then two H  
one hundre

Honduras  
Gulf which  
places are  
Natives is  
equal distan  
in a pleasur  
banks of the  
ai dios situ  
Leagues  
near the ri  
and serveth  
that work  
vages. 3.  
once a famo  
it was pil  
Newport;  
Anthony S  
since it be  
bitants ma  
situation is  
illo seated  
twixt two  
with the be

Fryer to turn *Christian*, that at least after this life, he might be saved in *Paradise*; when he understood that it was a place that the *Spaniards* went unto, he would not be a *Christian*, nor go thither, so much he dreaded them. Nay this *De las Casas* assures us, that he could make whole Volumes, if he would report all that passed of this nature in *America*; and affirms that the most part of these *Murders*, *Bunnings*, and *Pillages* were voluntarily done, to terrify others, and make themselves absolutely obeyed; which they might as well have gained by fair means, and gentle usage: But let us return to what concerns our Audience.

Neer *Chiapa* are several *Fountains*, which have some singularities: as Thataforesaid, which rises, and falls, with the flowing, and ebbing of the Sea, though far from it, and not having any communication with it. Another, that for three years together increaseth, though there be never so little rain; and for three years after diminisheth, though there be never so much: and so continues from three years, to three years. Another there is that falls in rainy weather, & rises in dry. And there is another that kills *Birds* and *Beasts* that drink of it, yet cures those sick which demand violent remedies. But we should swel too large, if we should speak of all singularities found in *America*.

**HONDURAS** and **NICARAGUA** are two great Provinces, *Honduras* is more than two Hundred Leagues long, and neer one hundred broad. *Nicaragua* little less: *Honduras* communicates its name to the *Gulf* which lies on *Mer del Nort*: its chief places are, 1. *Valladolid*, which by the Natives is called *Comayagua*, of neer an equal distance between the two Seas, situate in a pleasant and fruitful valley, and on the banks of the River *Chamalucon*. 2. *Gracias a dios* situate on a high ground, thirty Leagues Westward of *Valladolid*, and neer the rich Mines of gold, of *St Pedro*, and serveth for a place of defence, for those that work in the Mines, against the *Savages*. 3. *St Juan del porto de los Cavallos*, once a famous Port, till in the year 1591. it was pillaged by Caprain *Christopher Newport*; as also in Anno 1596. by *Sir Anthony Sherley*, who so ruined it, that since it became uninhabited; the Inhabitants making use of *Amatica*, whose situation is more advantagious. 4. *Truxillo* seated on the ascent of a little hill, betwixt two Rivers, in a rich and fruitful soil, with the benefit of an excellent Port; once

pillaged by the *English*. 5. *St George de Olancho*, seated in the valley of *Olancho*, heretofore noted for the *Golden Sands*, that the River *Guayape* which is in it, was said to yield. The *Bishops See* of the Province, was first at *Truxillo*, which in 1588 was transferred to *Valladolid*, where now it resideth.

The Country hath pleasant hills, and fruitful valleys, affording *Wheat*, *Mayze*, and other grains, hath fruits, rich pastures. It is well furnished with Rivers, hath Mines of Gold and Silver, but its greatest profit is made by Wool, which it transports to other places.

**NICARAGUA**, or the new Kingdom of *Leon*, hath five Colonies of *Spaniards*; the Country is destitute of Rivers, except that part which is towards *Pera-gua*, called *Costa Rica*; the want whereof is supplied by a great Lake which ebbs and flows like the Sea: Upon its Banks are seated many pleasant Cities and Villages, which are inhabited by the *Spaniards* and *Indians*; a Lake well stored with *Fish*, and as full of *Crocodiles*; it begins within eight or ten Leagues of *Mer del Sud*, yet for an hundred and fittie Leagues goes to seek the North Sea by a great mouth, where are some Isles, and the port of *St Juan*.

The Air of the Country is healthful though hot, the soil fruitful and pleasant, it hath Fruits, Cows, Hogs, Sheep, Turkeys, Pullain, and so many *Parroquets* that they are plentiful: it yieldeth not much grain, it hath plenty of Cotton-Wool, and Sugar-canes, and towards *Segovia* are some Mines of Gold and Silver. Its Inhabitants are of a good stature, active; very conformable to the *Spaniards*, as well in behaviour, as apparel; having abandoned many of their barbarous customs.

Its chief places are, 1. *Leon*, situate on the aforesaid Lake, in a sandie soil, but begirt with Woods; it is the residence of the Governour, as also the Seat of a Bishop. 2. *Grenada* on the same Lake, beautified with a fair Church, and a strong Castle, seated in a fruitful soil, and well stored with Sugar-canes, which by workmen are here refined. 3. *Faen*, seated at the end of the said Lake. 4. *Segovia* the new is farther within land, rich in veins of silver. 5. *Realejo*, neer the *Mer del Sud*, having the benefit of a good Port, by reason of which, it is inhabited for the most part by *Shipwrights*, *Marriners*, and those that depend upon Naval affairs; there was once a design to make a Channel from *Mer del Nort*.

The fertility of the Province was its communication

The Province of Nicaragua desirabil.

In fertility, in its Fruits, Cattle, Wool, &c.

In habit.

In chief place.

to that of *del Sud*, between *Realejo*, and the Lake of *Nicaragua*; but it was not effected, possibly because they found the South Sea, much higher then the North, as we shall say in another place, which being, it was to be feared, that all the lower quarters might have received great prejudice by it.

The Province of *Costarica* described with its Cities.

*COSTARICA* and *VERAGUA* are the two most Eastern Provinces of the Audience of *Guatemala*. In *COSTARICA* are the Cities of *Carthage*, seated between two Seas, where there are some places; which serve it for Ports: *Aranjuez* and *Nicoya* are on the *Mer del Sud*, *Castro de Austria* within land.

The Province of *Veragua*, with its chief Cities described.

*VERAGUA*, hath towards the East the *Isthmus of Panama*, and was once under the Chamber of *Panama*; though this City be esteemed in *America Meridionalis*, and *Veragua* in the *Septentrionalis*: There are placed in this Province four or five Cities of *Spaniards*, viz. 1. *La Concepcion*, seated on the *Mer del Nord*, an is the residence of the Governour. 2. *La Trinidad* seated also on the said Sea, six Leagues Eastwards from *La Concepcion*. 3. *Santa Fe* within Land, being the place where the *Spaniards* melt, refine, and cast their *Gold* into Bars and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, seated on the *Mer del Sud*. And 5. *Parita* seated on the said Sea.

The Country both of the one, and the other Province, is rude, mountainous, and little fertile, only for *Moyze*, and Pot-herbs. In supply thereof, they have exceeding rich Mines of *Gold* and *Silver* in their Mountains, and *Sand-gold* in their Rivers; but there remaine yet some Natives in these quarters, who still molest and annoy the *Spaniards*, killing and eating them when they can catch them.

The Isles ANTILLES, or CAMERCANES.

Between the two *Americas Septentrionalis*, and *Meridionalis*, and before the Gulf of *Mexico*, are abundance of Islands of different greatness, *HISPANIOLA*, and *Cuba* are the greatest; *Jamaica*, *Boriquen*, and others, of the middle sort; the rest, much less.

Hispaniola.

*HISPANIOLA* with its Inhabitants, call'd *Quisqueya*, that is, all or Main-Land, and *Ayiti*, that is *Austerity*, is in the

middle of these Isles: near two Hundred Leagues from West to East, and fifty or sixty from South to North, *Christopher Columbus* was the first that made discovery of this Isle, in his first voyage that he made in 1492, being conducted thither by some of the Inhabitants of *Cuba*; who landing there, by his gentle deportment, gained leave of their King to build a Fortres there, in which he left some few of his men thinking to keep possession, till such time as he returned thither, with a greater supply of men: but, at his return, he found them all destroyed, and the place ruinated, which he soon recovered making himself Master of the whole Island, and calling it *Hispaniola*, where they have settled many potent Colonies, peopled with more then forty thousand natural *Spaniards*, but at present there are many less, the most part being disperfed in the main Land; at the same time other Countrys were discovered, where they had hopes of new, and better profit.

Yet there remains ten Colonies, of which *St Domingo* (built by *Bartholomew*, brother to *Christopher Columbus*) is the chief, pleasantly seated, its houses well built, which for the most part are of Stone, its haven is large and safe for Ships to ride in, it is enriched by the residence of the Governour, the Court of Audience, the See of an Arch Bishop, the Chamber of Accounts, the Treasury Court, and, besides many Convents of Religious Houses, an Hospital endowed with a large yearly Revenue, a place of great trade, till the taking of *Mexico*, and the discovery of *Peru*; since which time it hath much decayed, nor hath it yet recovered it self, of the great loss and damage it sustained by *Sir Francis Drake* in Anno 1586. It now being Inhabited by not above two Thousand families, of which about six Hundred are Natural *Spaniards*, the rest *Mestiz*, *Mulatts*, *Negroes*, and *Canaries*. *Porto de la Plata* hold the second place by reason of its Commerce, it is forty Leagues from *St Domingo*, on the Northern shore, and well seated on a commodious Bay. Then *St Fago de los Cavalieros*, for the beauty of its situation, *El Colony* for its gold Mines, *Salvalem de Tney* for its *Sugars* and *Pastures*. *Acaia* likewise for its *Sugars*, being a noted Haven. *St. Maria del Puerto* for its *Cassia*, *Monte Christo* for its *Salt*. *La Concepcion de la Vega*, the foundation of *Christopher Columbus*, for whose sake it was made an *Episcopal See*, which at present

Christo. pher Co. lumbs first discovery of this Isle.

Dr. Col. m. St. Domingo.

1. Porto de la Plata 2. El Colony 3. St. Fago de los Cavalieros 4. Salvalem de Tney 5. Acaia 6. St. Maria del Puerto 7. Monte Christo 8. La Concepcion de la Vega

the Isle of Cuba described.

the Coast of Cuba. The last of the Indies. The Beasts grew being their profit flourish Meadow ry: an space of and root ripeness, and other longer w sumed at most par Country. Isles. Before the, and those of Concy dia, and eat during their Inf most dar rooted; it self, the flesh. The Cuck eyes and so bright write by their Fish able, wh twenty f above a h catch oti by fastnin on its ba furnished found Sa. The I straight

Hundred  
fifty or  
Christopher  
discovery  
that he  
thither  
ba; who  
deport-  
to build  
some few  
possession,  
ther, with  
his return,  
and the  
recovered  
hole Island,  
e they have  
s, peopled  
natural Spa-  
many Isls,  
in the main  
r Country's  
ad hopes of

Colonies, of  
Bartholomew,  
nus) is the  
houses well  
part are of  
and safe for  
ched by the  
the Court of  
h Bishop, the  
reasury Courts,  
of Religious  
d with a large  
reat trade, till  
the discovery  
it hath much  
covered it self,  
ge it sustained  
anno 1586. It  
be above two  
ch about six  
ards, the rest  
and Canaries,  
second place by  
forty Leagues  
Northern shore,  
modious Bay,  
Lieras, for the  
Colony for its  
ey for its Sugars  
e for its Sugars,  
Maria del Puerto  
sso for its Salt.  
the foundation  
for whose sake  
See, which at  
present

12a Con-  
tion de  
isega,  
de El Ze-  
no

Christo-  
pher Co-  
lumbus  
first dis-  
covery of  
this Isle.

13a The  
Isle by  
the Span-  
iards

14a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

15a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

16a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

17a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

18a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

19a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

20a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

21a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

22a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

23a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

24a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

25a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

26a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

27a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

28a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

29a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

30a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

31a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

32a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

33a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

34a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

35a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

36a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

37a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

38a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

39a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

40a The  
Isle and  
the Sea

present is united to *St Domingo*; and the last of the ten Colonies is *El Zebo* seated on the Sea shore, but of small account.

So soon as the Spaniards were masters of this Island, they caused to be brought from *Spain*, *Grains*, *Fruits*, and *Beasts* of all sorts. The *Grains* would not thrive in the Plains, by reason of the richness of the soyl, the stalks taking away all the force of the seed; but when they found out the reason, they sowed them on hills, and there where the land was lean; so that then they yielded a very great increase. The *Fruits* became excellent; and the *Beasts* multiplied in such manner, that they grew wild for want of proper owners, being hunted to death by any one, only for their skins. The *Sugar-canes* brought from the *Canaries* yielded exceeding great profit. The Country for the most part flourishing, and beautiful, the *Trees* and *Meadows* being always in their summer livery: and the soyl so fertile, that in the space of sixteen or eighteen daies, *herbs*, and *roots* will come to their perfection and ripeness, but the Mines of *Gold*, *Copper*, and other *Metals* which remained, are no longer wrought; the *Spaniards* having consumed and perished in them, not only the most part of the ancient Inhabitants of this Country, but likewise of the Neighbouring Isles.

Before the Landing of *Columbus* in this Isle, there were but few four footed *Beasts*, and those very little, the most part a kind of *Coneys*, which we call *Coneys of India*, and *dogs*, which the *Spaniards* did eat during the famine. At present among their *Insects*, and *vermine*, the *Nigraa* is most dangerous to those that walk bare-footed; it leapes like a *sea*, and piercing it self, till it lodge between the skin and the flesh, is very troublesome to get out. The *Cucugo* a kind of *Snayle*, that hath its eyes and Flanks, when it opens its wings, so bright, that it may serve to read or write by, in the darkest night. Among their *Fish*, the *Manati* is the most remarkable, which is a kind of *Sea-Calf*, about twenty foot long, and their young not above a hand long, which taken serves to catch other *Fish*, both great and small, by fastning on others the Thorns it carries on its back. The Country is exceedingly furnished with Rivers in many of which are found *Sand-gold*.

The Isle of *Cuba* is longer and straighter than *Hispaniola*, near three hun-

dred Leagues from West to East, and from South to North, only twenty five or thirty almost every where, so that in Continent, these two Isles are almost equal, their qualities are likewise in many things correspondent, as in their *Grains*, *Cattel*, and *Fruits*. The Aire of *Cuba* is healthful, and its Forrests furnished with the best wood, for building of *Ships*: It feeds store of *Pullein*, *Pigeons*, *Tortells*, *Partridges*, *Flamengo's*, whose feathers are white when little, and of many colours, when grown great. Its Rivers stream down more *Gold*, then those of *Hispaniola*: Its Ports likewise greater and more safe; but yet there are more Rocks and banks about *Cuba* than *Hispaniola*.

For the greatness of the Isle, it hath but few Cities, the chief whereof are *St Fago* which was built in 1514, which was about twenty and odd years, after *Columbus* had discovered this Island, seated in the bottom of a capacious Bay, about two Leagues from the Sea, whose port is esteemed one of the best of all *America*, being the seat of a *Bishop*, who holds from the *Arch Bishop of St Domingo*; and beautified with a *Cathedral Church*, and some *Religious houses* near the City, and from the *Sierra de Cobre*, they fetch *Copper*, yet the City is much ruined, and hath little trade, Towards *Barracoa*, its mountains yield *Ebonie* and *Brasle*; it hath this inconveniency that its Port cannot receive great Vessels. The goodness of the air, the fertility of the soyl, and a pleasant plain hath made *St Salvador* the best place of the Island, where they have a great trade; though off from the Coast, between *St Salvador* and *St James* there is a valley covered with an innumerable many *Flints*, *Stones*, and of divers bignesse, which nature hath made so round, that they may serve for *Bullets* for all sorts of *Cannon*: Near *Porto del Principe*, a Haven-Town in the North parts of the *Isle*; there are *Fountains of Bitumen* which they make use of in stead of *Pitch* to caulk their *Ships*, and the *Indians* for divers Medicines.

The Port of *Havana*, or *St Christopher Havana*, having its entrance threight and deep, receives the Ocean in form of a *gulf*, capable to receive a thousand *Vessels*, and secure them from the fury of the *Sea*, or *Winds*. The two *Capes* which inclose it, have their *Cattles* to defend the entrance, and a third joyning to the City regards the opening of the Port; the *Ships* which return from *new Spain* into *Europe*, assemble together

11a Fowls.

12a chief  
places de  
habitation  
de la  
ville de  
St Fago

10

20

30

40

50



together at *Havana*, where they are furnished with all things necessary either for food or war, and dispose themselves to depart by the month of *September*, passing by the Channel of *Bahame*, which carries them into the Ocean.

Twenty five leagues from *Havana*, and towards the East, is the Port of *Matanzas*; that is, *Massacres*, for that once those of the Country here slew some *Spaniards*. In 1628 *Pieters Heyn*, General for the *West India Company*, surprized the Fleet returning to *Spain*, and carried it in to the *West India Company*: It was laden with *Silver, Silk, Cochenill, Hides, Cassonade, or powder Sugar*, and divers other Merchandizes all of great value: This Prize was esteemed worth seven millions of crowns; yet this great service was but very ill recompenced by the *Governors* of the said Company.

*JAMAICA* South of *Cuba*, and West of *Hispaniola*, is distant from the first twenty five Leagues, and from the other thirty or thirty five: Its Climate is betwixt the Tropick in 17 and 18 degrees of Northern Latitude, and therefore twice every year subjected to the perpendicular beams of the Sun. But though it is thus seated under the *Torrid Zone*, yet the heat is so qualified with the fresh breezes that come from the Sea, that it may truly be called temperate: Its air so healthful, that people live to a great age, and free from diseases; its soil is rich, and fertile, plentifully provided of all things necessary; as *Maize*, and some other grains, *Potatoes, Tawmes*, and other *American Provisions*: It is well stocked with *Cattel*, as *Hoggs, Beeves, Deer, &c.* Its Woods well stored with *Fowl*, and its *Rivers* with *Fish*. It yields great increase of all things that it produceth, as *Sugar-canes, Cotton-wool, Indico, Tobacco, &c.* Their Fruits are excellent, and of sundry sorts, as *Oranges, Lymes, Guavars, Pomegranats, Plantanes*, and *Cocoa trees*, of whose kernels they make the *Chocoletta*, with abundance of other Fruits too tedious to name. It hath good pastures, the grass being always green and springing, and the *Trees and Plants* being never dil-robed of their Summer Liveries, every Mouth being to them an *April* or *May*.

Places of most note in this Island are, *Sevilla*, seated on the North part of the Island, beautified with a Collegiate Church whose Chief bore the Title of *Abba*: Among whom was *Peter Martyr*, who described the History of the *West Indies* by

*Decades*. 2. *Mellila*, where *Columbus* mended his Ships at his return from *Vergagna*, where he was near shipwreck; and these two places regard *Cuba* towards the North: As 3. *Oristan* regards the main Land towards the South, where there are near two hundred Leagues of Sea, in which there are many rocks, and among their Banks some Isles; as *Serrana*, where *Augustin Pedro Serrana* lost his Vessel, but saved only himself, where he passed away three years alone; at the end of which a *Marriner* likewise alone of another shipwreck, saved himself there, where he remained four years, which were seven years in all in *Serrana*: At last a ship passing near the Island, perceiving some men there, sent their skiff to them, and took them into their ship. This Island hath many good Harbors: among which, that at Point *Cagway* is the chief; wherein about a thousand Ships of a considerable Burthen may safely ride at one time, and all sufficiently sheltered from the fury of the Sea, or Winds; and upon this Point or sandie Bay, (since the *English* are become Masters of this Island) they have built about five hundred Houses, which are well inhabited by the *English*, and is become a place of some trade; the entrance into this Harbour is defended by a powerful Fort which the *English* built: The others are called *Old Harbor*, which is likewise very good, serving as a Harbor or Haven to the ancient (and once famous) City of *St Fago de la Vega*, till ruined by General *Venables*; so that of about two thousand Houses, and sixteen Churches, there now remains not above five or six hundred Houses; and the ruines of two Churches, of which Houses some are very fair, and yet habitable. And about fourteen Leagues to windward there is another Port, called *Porto Morant*, about which there is a potent Colony of *English* seated.

This Island is of considerable importance to the *Spaniards*, by reason that all his *Plate-Fleet* which comes from *Carthagina*, steer directly for *St Domingo* in *Hispaniola*, and from thence must pass by one of the ends of this Isle to recover *Havana*, which is the common Rendezvous of this whole Armado, before it returns home through the gulf of *Florida*; nor is there any other way, whereby to miss this Island, because he cannot in any reasonable time turn it up to the windward of *Hispaniola*; which though with great difficulty it might be performed, yet by this means he would lose the security of his said united Fleet, which

A Prize taken by Pieters Heyn.

Jamaica described.

The fertility of its soil, its height, Fowl, Fish, Commodities, and Fruits.

Chief places in this Isle.

The Isle Serrana.

St. Fago de la Vega, ruined by General Venables.

The Plate-Fleet, which comes from Carthagina, and steers for St. Domingo.

The Plate-Fleet, which comes from Carthagina, and steers for St. Domingo.

which need of the Bay and elsewhere home.

*Boriquen* little less than the *Fam* the Reside It hath an communic: *El Arriob* main are hath few P of Mount: East; here they use their Ships Candles; ments, for Gold, Sugar, Salt-March greatest, at rest are considered un and *Caribe* *Cuba*, and is the chief northernly to the *Cha* and *Florida* despite of from *Sout* *South-We* is the first vered near *Salvador*, to have be men, in the find no La

THE *B A* and advan *America* from the *Spaniards*, th mous are, 3. *Santa* *nisque*, 6. *lante*, 9. 11. *Mont* *cent*, and two of so *B A R* fiderable of; in w

which meet at *Havana*, from all the parts of the Bay of *Mexico*, *Nombre de Dios*, and elsewhere, accompanying each other home.

*Boriquen*, or *St Juan del Puerto Rico*, is little less either in Circuit, or Fruitfulness than *Jamaica*. *St Juan del Puerto Rico* is the Residence of a *Bishop*, and a *Governor*: It hath an excellent *Port*, which sometimes communicates its name to the Island: *El Arribo*, and *Guadianilla* or *St Germain* are the other Cities; all the *Isle* hath few *Ports*, it is traversed by a Chain of Mountains, which cut it from West to East; here is found a *white Gum*, which they use instead of *Pitch*, to caulk their *Ships*; and instead of *Tallow*, to make *Candles*; and for want of other *Medicaments*, for *Wounds* and *Sores*: besides its *Gold*, *Sugar*, and *Goyac*; it hath many *Salt-Marches*. These four *Isles* are the greatest, and chiefest of the *Amilles*; the rest are numerous, and ought to be considered under the names of the *Lucayo* and *Caribes*. The *Lucayos* are North of *Cuba*, and *Hispaniola*; of which, *Lucayon* is the chief, the greatest, and the most northerly of all; *Bahama* gives its name to the Channel, which is between the *Isles* and *Florida*; a Channel so rapid, that, in despite of the Winds, it carries *Ships* from South to North, or rather from South-West, to North-East, *Guanahani* is the first Land which *Columbus* discovered near *America*, and named it *St. Salvador*, because he had been in danger to have been cast into the Sea by his own men, in the fear they had, that they should find no Land.

cuit ( being accounted not above nine Leagues in length, and three in breadth where broadest, being of an oval form ) the *English* have at divers times established so potent a Colony, that they are able on any occasion to Arm ten thousand fighting men. It hath several times been assaulted by the *Spaniards*, but in vain; In this *Island* there are seven *Parishes*, among which its chief Town is *Indian Bride*, a fair and large Town consisting of about four or five hundred well built houses. It is very populous, by reason of its being the residence of the *Governour*, the place of *Judicature*, and the residence of most of the *Merchants*, and *Factors* in the *Isle*, who have here for the better negotiating of their affairs, *Store-houses* for their *Commodities*, as also for those that are brought them from *England*, or else where: and many of these *Store-houses* may be termed *Shops*, to which the *Inhabitants* of the *Isle* come and buy what they have occasion for, giving in exchange *Sugar*, *Indico*, or such other of their goods, as they agree for. This *Isle* is exceeding fertile, bearing its crops all the year long, and its Trees being always clothed in their summer livery, and the Fields and Woods in their verdure, renders it very delightful to the *Inhabitants*. The chief *Commodities* that it yieldeth are *Sugars*, *Indico*, *Cotton-Wool*, *Ginger*, and *Tobacco*, and those in such great plenty; that it may be admired at, being observed to give loading to about One Hundred sail of *Ships* every year. Its *Fruits* are the same with those found in other places of *America*. Here are abundance of *Swine*, and *Pollain*, and its Woods yield plenty of *Fowle*. The *Commodities* that are sent them, are all sorts of things used for the back or belly, as also several *Manufactures* and *utensills*, of *Iron*, *Copper*, *Lead*, *Tin*, *Brass*, also several things belonging to *House-hold-stuff*, &c. And it is observed, that the best of any *Commodity* is soonest vendid. There is a *River* which the *Inhabitants* call the *Taigh River*, from the top of whose waters is gathered an *oyle* which they use to burn in *Lamps*.

2. *SAIN T CHRISTOPHER*, about six miles long, and four broad; the *Isle* Mountainous, and not over fertile its chief *Commodity* being *Tobacco*, which is held excellent. This was once the chiefest amongst these *Isles* for the *Catholic King*; but now the *English*, and *Hollanders* possess the greatest part of the *Isle*.

H h h h 3 *SAN-*

The Caribe Isles.

THE *CARIBBS*, or *CANIBALS* Islands, are East of *Boriquen*, and advance in a Demy-Circle towards *America Meridionalis*; the name was taken from the *Inhabitants*, being *Caribes*, or *Caniballs*, that is, *Men-eaters*. The most famous are, 1. *Barbados*, 2. *St Christoph*, 3. *Santa Cruz*, 4. *Guadaloupe*, 5. *Martinique*, 6. *Grenado*, 7. *Tabago*, 8. *Marigante*, 9. *Santa Aloufia*, 10. *Torungo*, 11. *Monserrat*, 12. *Nieves*, 13. *St. Vincent*, and 14. *Antego*. Of which a word or two of some of the chief,

*BARBADOS* is one of the most considerable Islands the *English* are Masters of; in which, though but of a small Cir-

commodities, woods, and fruit, &c.

The Isles of St Christoph.

Columbus from Venezuela; and towards the main there are in which their Banks' gustin Pe-aved only three years triner like-ck, saved four years, a Serrana: and, per- air skiff to ship. This is among the chief; of a consi- one time, in the fury in this Point fish are be- they have, which are and is be- the entrance a powerful The others is likewise or Haven ous) City of by General ro thousand there now- hundred Hon- churches, of air, and yet- ten Leagues r Port, call- there is a d.

the importance all his Plate- bagina, ster- paniola, and of the ends a, which is this whole me through ere any other and, because time turn it iola; which it might be ns he would nited Fleet, which

St. Jago de la Vega named by General Venabur.

the importance of this Plate-bagina, ster-paniola, and of the ends a, which is this whole me through ere any other and, because time turn it iola; which it might be ns he would nited Fleet, which

3. **SANTAGENA**, Inhabited by the French; the Isle is woody, and mountainous, and not well provided with fresh waters, and of no considerable note.

4. **GUADALOUPE**, about three Leagues in length, possessed by the French, of good Anchorage in most parts of the adjoining Sea, and of some note for its fresh water, which it furnisheth Ships with in their necessity, to finish their voyages.

5. **GRBNADO** but a small Isle (being not above six miles in length) in form of a *Crescent*, the two horns being not above a mile asunder, it is possessed by the French, said to be of a fertile soil, and well clothed with Woods, and hath a commodious haven.

6. **NIEVES**, in the possession of the English, said to be about fifteen miles in compass, pleasantly watered, well wooded, in which are store of Deer, and other Beasts for hunting, and indifferent fertile in many of the American commodities.

7. **SAINTE VINCENT**, about six Leagues in Circuit, of a fertile soil, yielding abundance of Sugar-canes, well watered with many fresh and pleasant Rivers, and full of safe and convenient Bays for shipping, possessed by the Dutch.

8. **ANTEGO** possessed by the English, about seven Leagues in length, and as much in breadth, not well provided with fresh water, but well clothed with woods, and of a difficult access. The rest of the Isles are less considerable.

And now I shall be bold to say that *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, and the neighbouring Isles, answer to the *Hesperides* of the Ancients. All agree that the *Hesperides* were forty daies sail from the *Gorgades*, and the *Gorgades* only two from the Coast of *Africa*. The Isles of *Cape Verde* answer to the *Gorgades*, as we have made appear in *Africa*. From these Isles to those of *Hispaniola*, and *Cuba*, is at present twenty five or thirty daies sail, which may well be forty of the Ancients, and moreover there is no Isles in the *Atlantic Ocean* beyond these. And when the Ancients place these *Hesperides* in one Gulf alone, as *Capella* doth, or in more, as *Solinus* doth, they seem to mean the Gulf of *Mexico*, which contains many other lesser. And if *Pliny* seems to make account but of two *Hesperides*; and others of many more, *Pliny* understands *Hispaniola*, and *Cuba* alone, in regard of which, the rest are little considerable; *Solinus* and *Capella*

intend in general the body of these Islands: But let us proceed to *America Meridionalis*.

### *America Meridionalis*.

**A M E R I C A M E R I D I O N A L I S** is the most Southern part, or Peninsula of *America*; which extends itself from about the twelfth degree on this side of the *Equator*, unto the fifty fourth beyond it, which are sixty six degrees of *Latitude*: and from the two hundred ninety one, or ninety two, where is *Porto Viejo*, unto about the three hundredth and fiftieth; where there is *Cape St Augustin*, which are fifty seven or fifty eight degrees of *Longitude*. It reaches then from South to North, one thousand six hundred and fifty Leagues; from West to East, little less than fourteen hundred.

Its bounds on the North and East, are the *Mer del Nord*: of which the parts are the North Sea, and that of *Brazil*, towards the South, the *Magellanic Sea* whose parts are those of *Paraguay*, the *Magellanic Sea*, particularly, and that of *Chili*. On the West, the *Mer del Sud*, or *Pacificque Sea*, of which the Sea of *Peru* makes a part.

Its Form approaches near a Triangle, whose sides are almost equal, from *Porto Viejo* to *Cape St Augustin* are fourteen hundred Leagues; from *Cape St Augustin*, to *Cape Froward* in the middle of the stright of *Magellan*, are fifteen hundred Leagues, and from that *Cape* to *Porto Belo* sixteen hundred.

Its situation for the most part is under the *Torrid Zone*, part under the *Antarctic temperate Zone*, of that which is under the *Torrid Zone*, the greatest part is beyond the *Equator*, the less on this side; so that the greatest part of these people have their seasons contrary to ours: The Coasts of this Country are all known more or less, the Inlands very little.

*Sanson* in his *Geographical Table* hath divided this **A M E R I C A M E R I D I O N A L I S** into **P E R U V I A N A**, and **B R A S I L I A N A**, subdividing *Peruviana* into *Terra Firma*, and *Peru*; and *Brasiliana*, into *Brazil*, and *Paraguay*; the first division is taken by a line which from the mouth of the *Amazona*, goes to seek the utmost part of *Chili* towards the South, and this line divides *America Meridionalis* into two equal parts; the one belonging almost wholly to the *Castilians* alone, and the other for the most part to the *Portugals*: These

The degree of Latitude, and Longitude of America Meridionalis.

1650.

1650.

America Meridionalis, divided into parts.

the Islands  
occidental.  
alis.

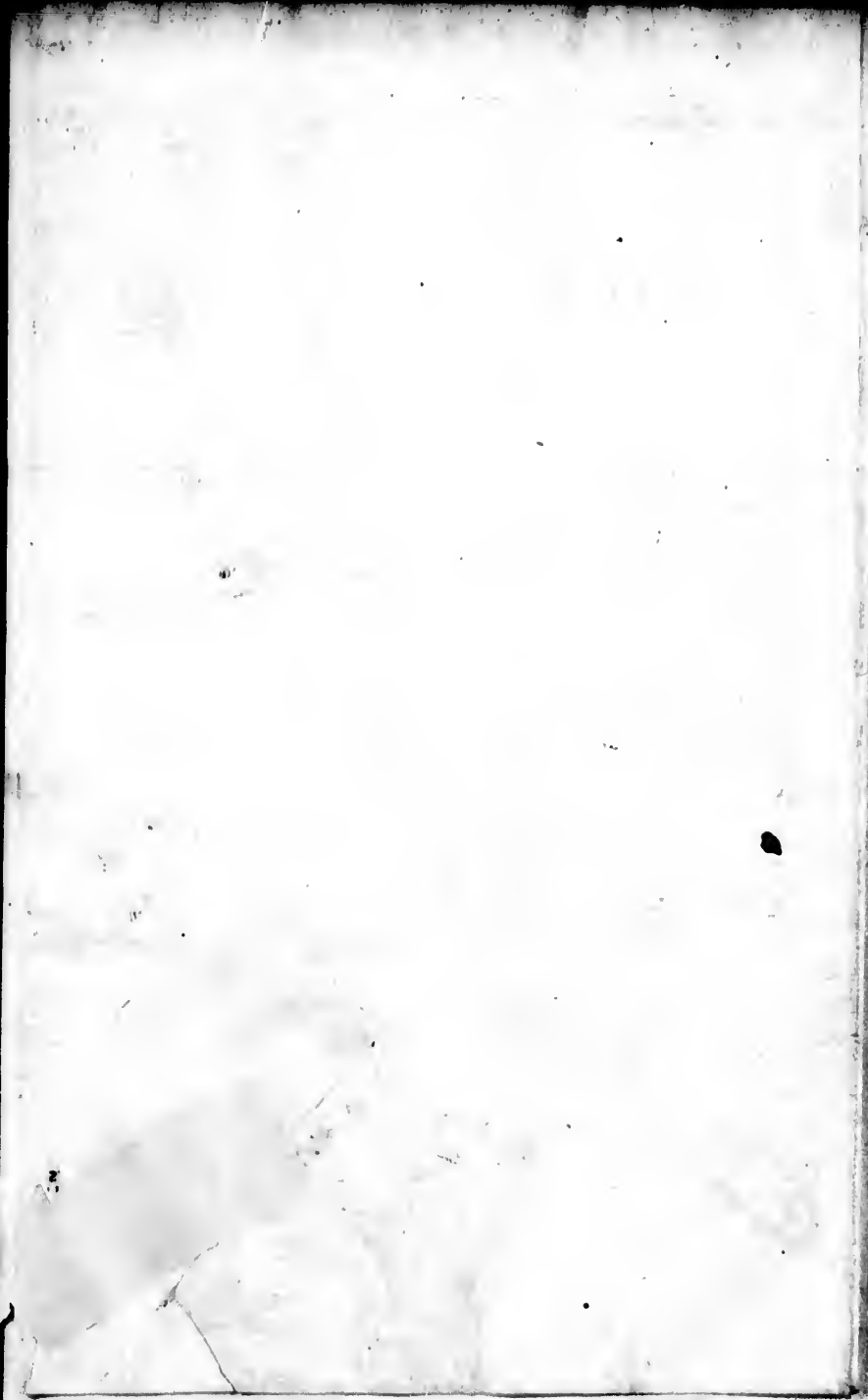
**DIONA**  
part, or  
extends it  
ree on this  
fifty fourth  
degrees of  
dred ninety  
*Pisje*, unto  
nd fiftieth;  
which are  
of *Longi-*  
a South to  
ed and fifty  
little leis  
nd East, are  
e parts are  
*Brasil*, to  
ck Sea whose  
*Magellanick*  
*Chili*. On  
or *Pacificus*  
akes a part,  
a Triangle,  
from *Porto*  
urteen hun-  
*Angulin*, to  
the streight  
ed Leagues,  
*Belo* sixteen  
part is under  
the *Antar-*  
which is un-  
est part is be  
this side;  
these people  
ours: The  
known more  
le hath divi-  
**DIONA**  
nd **BRAS-**  
na into *Ter-*  
*Alanta*, into  
st division is  
the mouth  
the utmost  
th, and this  
is into two  
ing; almost  
and the o-  
*Portugals*:  
These

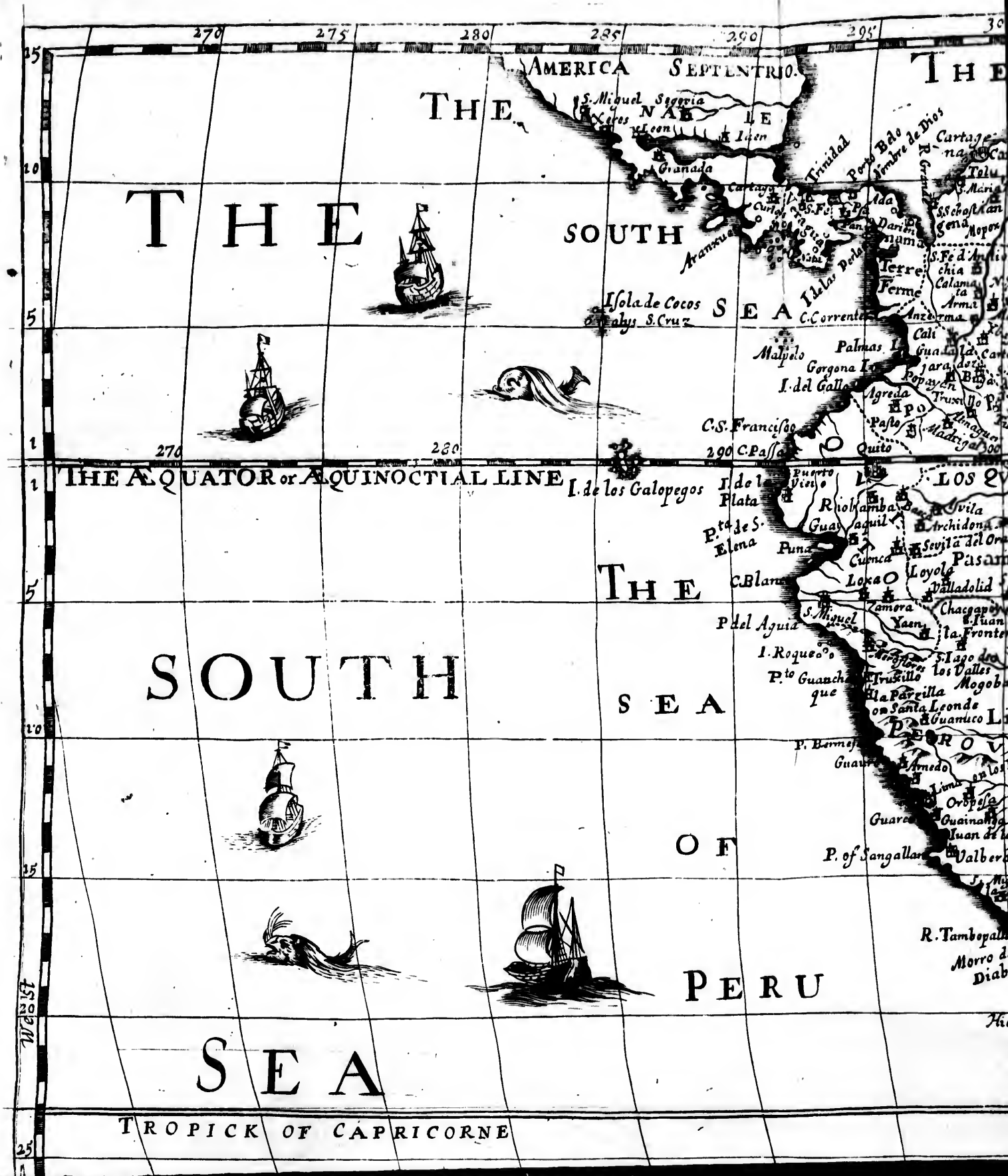
The degree  
of Latitude  
is 40. and  
Longitude  
of America  
Meridiana  
is 110.

is 170.

is 170.

America  
Meridiana  
is 110. and  
Longitude  
is 170.





270 275 280 285 290 295 300  
 15  
 10  
 5  
 1  
 1  
 5  
 10  
 15  
 20  
 25  
 25  
 20  
 15  
 10  
 5  
 0  
 5  
 10  
 15  
 20  
 25  
 30  
 THE SOUTH SEA  
 SEA OF PERU  
 PERU  
 TROPICK OF CAPRICORNE  
 THE EQUATOR or EQUINOCTIAL LINE  
 AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS  
 THE SOUTH SEA  
 SEA OF PERU  
 PERU  
 TROPICK OF CAPRICORNE





295 300 305 310 North 320 325 330



THE NORTH SEA

Cap Vela, Cofocoquibocao, Aruba, Cuyasao, Orichilla, Blanca, Margarita, Granada, Tabago, I. of Trinidad, Amacourou R., C. Nassau, Ottoma I., Caytini R., Maravini I., C. Orange, C. Nord

LAKE OF PARIMA, Arawacas, Epuremei, Arowacas, Ape, Para, Comata, Para, Ma

LOS QVIXOS, PASAMORES, Yaguaguazu, Xarayes, Tapapecocies, Yguata River, Gorpotocues, Zipatalaguars, Moconios, CHA Tama, Tabbares, Guayacurves, Agay, Cacoves

LOS PLAT, LA SIERRA, Chiri: guanes, Mayay, Chiru: mate, N.D. de Lorette, Ciudad Real or Oliveros, Villa Rica, los Archano, Francois, Xabvier, Toca



330 335 340 345 350 355 360 365



T H E

Isles of Cape Verde  
R. Verde  
Broue  
S. Jacques  
I. de Feu  
Cape Verde  
Camba  
C. S. Mano  
C. Rex

THE AQUATOR or EQUINOCTIAL LINE

N O R T H

O R

B R A S I L I A N

S E A

TROPICK OF CAPRICORNE



C. Orange

C. Nord

Povado de S. Pedro

340

350

360

Para Comata

Maranhão

S. Iago

S. Iago

R. Grande

Paraíba

Pernambuco

Bahia de todos os Santos

R. Paraiba

Taboara

S. Francisco

R. Real

R. das Pedras

Los Ilheos

Pto Seguro

Aymures

Spiritu Santo

Molo

Rio Janeiro

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

Abrolho

I. de Fernando de Noronha

Cap of S. Augustin

S. Francisco

Arceipe del Rey

Vasabans

R. Real

R. das Pedras

S. Salvador

Los Ilheos

R. Patipe

Porto Seguro

I. Seco

Abrolhos

I. de Tiburen

I. of Trinidad

S. Maria Agosta

I. of Martin Vaz

I. dos Rios

Villa Rica

les Archangels

S. Francois

Xabovia

Pories

Miray

Munars

S. Vincente

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

Molo

Rio Janeiro

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo

S. Vincente

S. Paulo



# SEA

TROPICK OF CAPRICORNE

15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

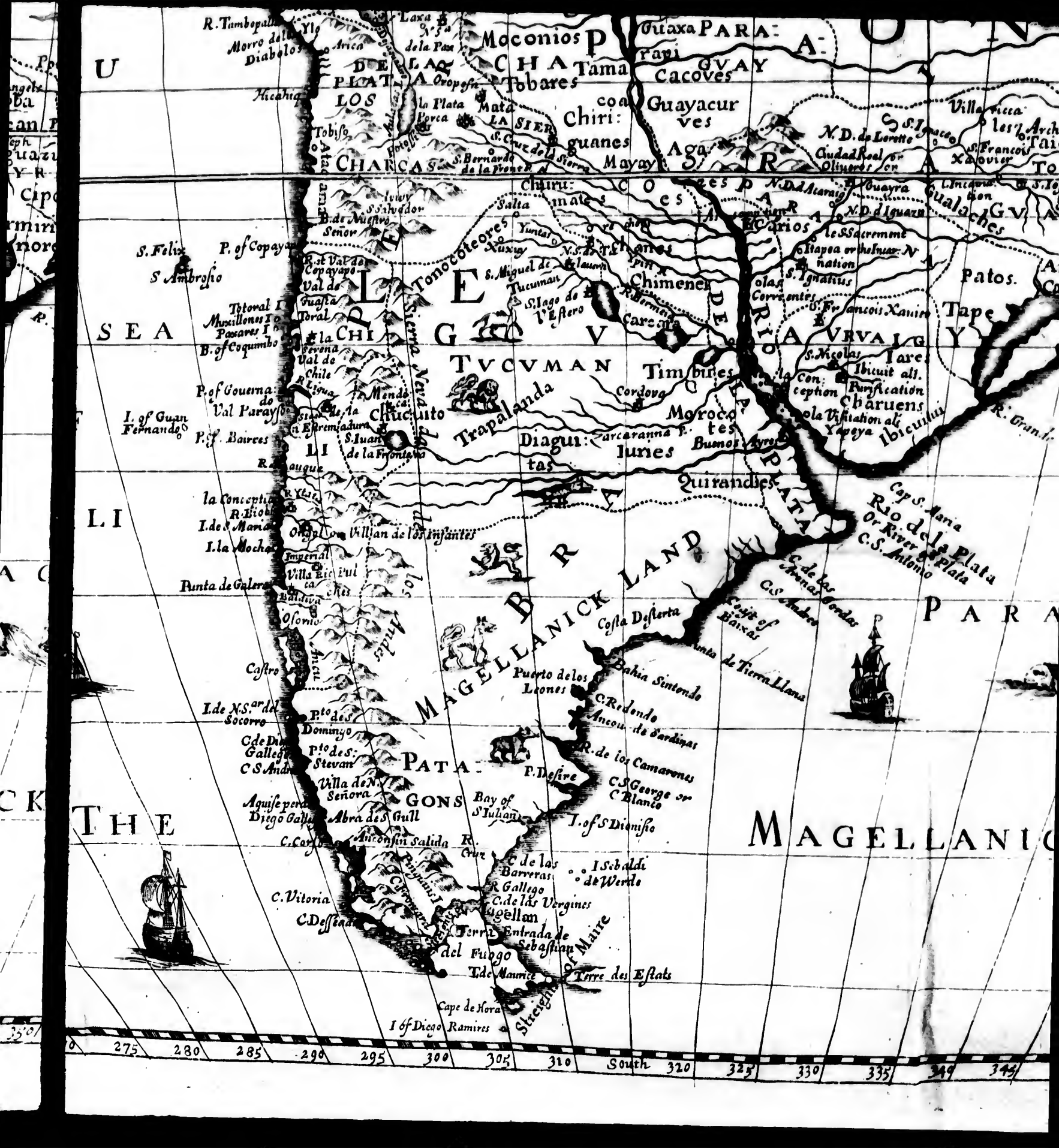


To y<sup>e</sup> Right noble  
George Duke of  
Albemarle, Earle of  
Torrington, Baron Montagu  
of Potheridge, Beauchamp,  
and Torrington, Captaine Generall  
of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> land forces, & of y<sup>e</sup> most  
noble order of y<sup>e</sup> Garter; as one  
of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> most Honourable privy  
Councellors. This Mapp in  
all humility is consecrated  
to your Lordships  
Patronage by your  
Lordships most humble  
and devoted servant  
Richard Blome









R. Tambopala  
Morro de los  
Diablos

Moconios P  
CHATA  
Tobares

Guayacurves  
Cacoves

U

S. Felix  
P. of Copayacu  
S. Ambrosio

TONOCOTEORES  
Yuntao  
S. Miguel de  
Tucuman

Guayacurves  
Mayay

SEA

Totoral I  
Muscillonos I  
Pasajes I  
B. of Coquimbo

TUCUMAN  
Trapalanda

Chimenes  
Caracas

L.I

P. of Gouverna  
do Val Parayso  
P. of Baivres

CHUCUITO  
Mendo  
S. Juan  
de la Frontera

Timbites  
Morocotes

Cap. S. Maria  
Rio de la Plata  
C. S. Antonio

MAGELLANIC LAND  
Costa Desierta  
Bahia Sintodo  
C. Redondo  
Ancou de Sardinas

la Concepcion  
R. Rio de  
I. de S. Maria  
I. la Mocha

PATA  
GONS

Costa Desierta  
Bahia Sintodo

THE

I. de N. S. ar del  
Socorro  
C. de Diego  
Gallejo  
C. S. Ande

Bay of  
S. Juan

P. Desire  
C. S. George or  
C. Blanco

MAGELLANIC



Aquisepeña  
Diego Gall  
C. Carlos

R. de los  
Barveras  
R. Gallego  
C. de las Vergines

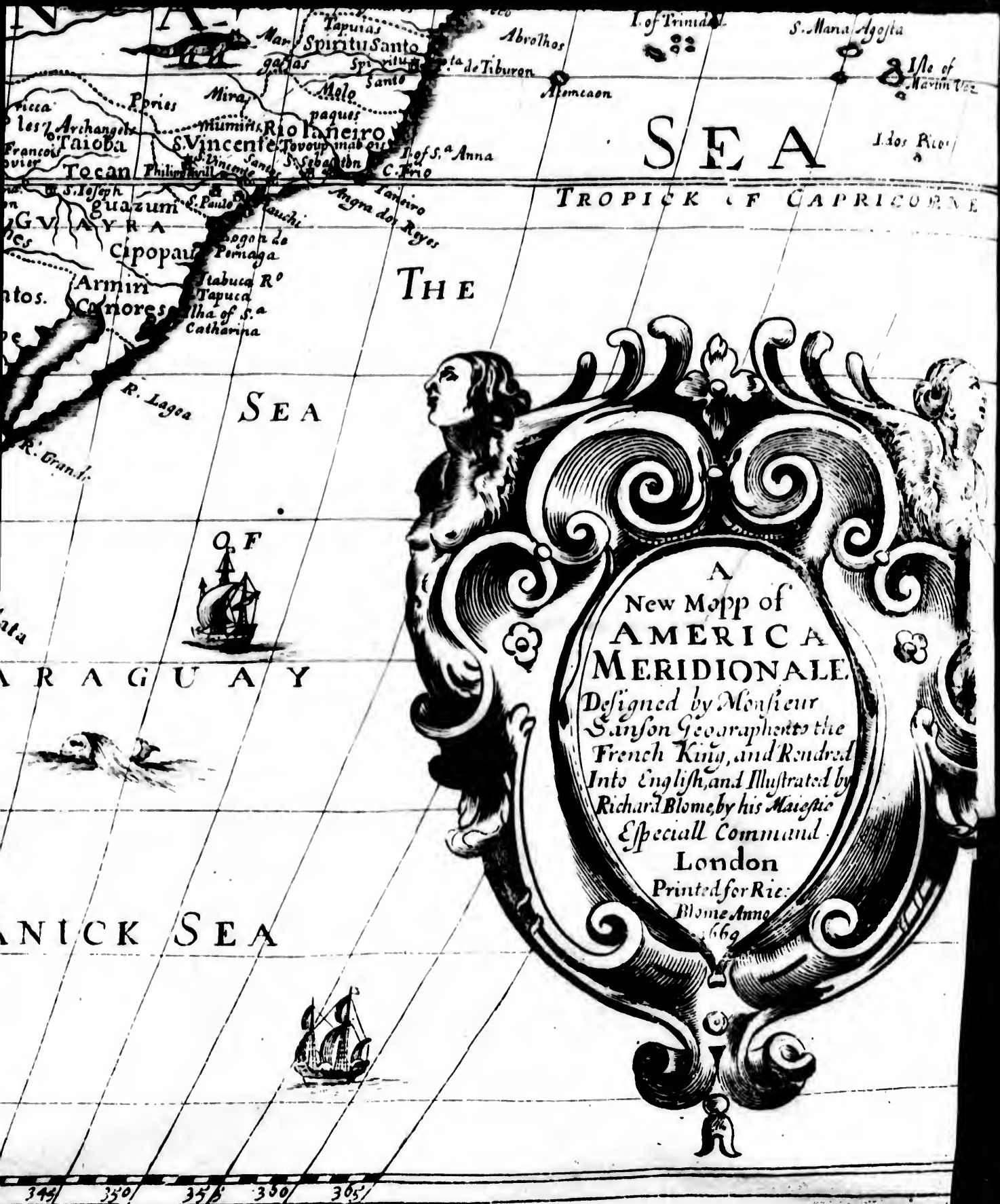
J. of S. Dionisio

Cape de Hora  
I. of Diego Ramires

Entrada de  
Sebastian Maite

Torre des Estats

275 280 285 290 295 300 305 310 South 320 325 330 335 340 345



SEA

TROPICK OF CAPRICORNE

THE

SEA

PARAGUAY

ANICK SEA

A  
New Mapp of  
AMERICA  
MERIDIONALE.

Designed by Monsieur  
Sanfon Geographerto the  
French King, and Rendred  
Into English, and Illustrated by  
Richard Blome, by his Maiesie  
Especiall Command.

London

Printed for Ric:

Blome Anno

1669

345 350 355 360 365

36  
APR  
C. R. 100

Th  
a ca  
alm  
zile  
is, t  
in th  
V  
into  
Pern  
Bras  
guay  
land  
O  
posse  
Firm  
the I  
lands  
South  
the V  
guay.

LIN

Text ref-  
erred by the  
editors.

The  
Firma  
Pern  
del Su  
mount  
resides  
Kings  
possets  
Etc, for  
diences  
cular ar  
ments

J

The Arch-  
bishops and  
the King

The  
Lai Rey  
and of  
of Gran  
de las  
shops of  
le, and  
bishop  
Bishops  
Sierra,  
Fago de  
in Rio de  
tion in  
Castilla  
and the  
shop of  
nada, he  
Popayan  
in their

SE

E

In the  
and Bil  
Parishes  
The An  
Convenc  
sole Pro  
four ;  
in the

Text  
ref-  
erred  
by the  
editors

These have their *Vice-Roy* in *St Salvador*, a capital City in the Bay of *All-Saints*, and almost in the middle of the coast of *Brazile*; the other in *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, that is, the Kings, at present a capital City, and in the middle of the coast of *Peru*.

We may yet divide the *Terra Firma*, into *Terra Firma*, and *Guiana*; *Peru* into *Peru* and *Chili*; *Brazile* into the coast of *Brazile*, and main land of *Brazile*; *Paraguay* into *Paraguay*, and the *Magellanick lands*.

Of this *America Meridionalis*, *Brazile* possesses all that is towards the East, *Terra Firma*, and *Guiana*, that which is towards the North; *Paraguay* and the *Magellanick lands*, that which advanceth towards the South; and *Peru* and *Chili*, are towards the West, in regard of *Brazile* and *Paraguay*.

The *Castilians* possess almost all *Terra Firma*, nothing at all in *Guiana*; they hold *Peru* and *Chili* between the *Andes*, and *Mer del Sud*, scarce any thing beyond those mountains, besides their *Vice-Roy*, who resides at *Lima* or *Los Reyes*, that is, the Kings, they have established in what they possess many *Archbishopsricks*, *Bishopsricks*, &c. for the rule of the Church; many *Audiences*, and *Seats of Justice*, for the Secular and Civil Power; and many Govern-  
ments for the Militia.

The *Archbishops* are those of *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, in *Peru* de la *Plata*; in *Los Charcas* and of *St Fe de Bogota*, in the new Kingdom of *Granada*: The *Archbishop* of *Lima*, or de *los Reyes*, hath for *Suffragans*, the *Bishops* of *Cusco*, *Quito*, *Arzquipa*, *Truxilla*, and *Gnamanga*, all in *Peru*: The *Archbishop* of *la Plata* hath for *Suffragans*, the *Bishops* of *Baranca*, or *Santa Cruz* in *La Sierra*, *Ciudad della Paz* in *Chiquiaco*, *St Fago del Estero* in *Cocuman*, *Buenos Ayres* in *Rio della Plata*, *Nuestra Sacra de l' Assumpcion* in *Paraguay*, *Panama* in *Terra Firma*, or *Castilla del oro*, *St Fago del Estremadura*, and the *Imperial* in *Chili*: The *Archbishop* of *Santa Fe de Bogota*, in new *Granada*, hath for *Suffragans*, the *Bishops* of *Popayan*, of *Carthagena*, and of *St Marthas* in their *Provinces* of the same name.

In the *Diocesses* of the *Archbishops*, and *Bishops*, are a very great number of *Parishes*, *Chappels*, &c. *Monasteries*, &c. The *Augustine Fryers* have here many *Convents*, comprehended once under one sole *Province*, but at present divided into four; They have thirty seven *Convents* in the *Province* which hath retained the

name of *Peru*, thirteen in that of *Quito*, twelve and the *Administration* of fifteen *Parishes* in the new Kingdom or *Granada*, twenty five or thirty in the *Province* of *Chili*, which are about one hundred *Convents*, or houses.

Twelve *Fryers* of this Order entered into *Peru*, in 1558, where they preached the Faith publicly: and it is observed that *Bishop didac Ortiz*, of their Order, was the first, who here suffered *Martyrdom* in 1568, which was the same year the *Jesuits* entered into *Peru*: These have at present three *Provinces*, viz. *Peru*, *Paraguay*, and the New Kingdom of *Granada*; and in these three *Provinces*, twenty eight *Colleges*, or *Residences*, &c. other Orders have divers *Provinces*, and in each many *Houses*.

The *Audience* under the *Vice-Roy* of *Peru* have formerly been those of *Panama* in *Terra Firma*, of *Santa Fe de Bogota*, in the new Kingdom of *Granada*; of *Quito* and *Lima* in *Peru* de la *Plata*; in *Los Charcas*; and de *St Fago de Estremadura* in *Chili*: That of *Panama* and of *Chili*, subsist no longer, but are reduced into *Governments*.

Of these *Governments* there are here eleven, viz. *Panama*, *Carthagena*, *St Marthas*, *Popayan*, the new Kingdom of *Granada*, *los Quixos*, *Passamoyes*, *los Charcas*, *Tucuman*, *Chili*, and *Rio de la Plata*, *Peru* wherein are *Lima*, *Quito*, and *Cusco*, is not among these *Governments*, but depends immediately on the *Vice-Roy*.

The *Crown* of *Portugal* hath established in *Brazile* a *Vice-Roy*, one *Bishop* only suffragan to the *Arch-Bishop* of *Lisbon* in *Portugal*, and fourteen *Capitaines* or *Governments*; there are likewise abundance of *Convents*; and *Monasteries* of divers orders.

But whilst we are here on these *Archbishopsricks*, *Bishopsricks*, and *Monasteries* of *America Meridionalis*, and that we have said nothing of them in the other part of *America*, which is *Septentrionalis*; let us here take occasion to speak a word. There are two *Archbishops*, many *Bishops*, and a great many of *Parishes*, and *Monasteries*, as in this part of *America*.

The *Arch-Bishops*, are those of *Mexico*, in *New-Spain*, and of *St Domingo*, in *Hispaniola*. The *Suffragan Bishops* of the *Arch-Bishop* of *Mexico*, are those, de *Puebla de los Angeles*, in *Tlascalla*; of *Valladolid*, in *Mechoacan*; of *Amtaquera*, in *Guaxaca*; of *Chalchicomula*, in *New-Gallitia*; of *St Fago* in *Guatemala*.

The Arch-Bishop and Bishops of America Septentrionalis, with the Convents, Monasteries, &c. of the Jesuits, Augustines Dominicans, &c.

36  
APR  
C. R. 100

LIN

1000  
1000  
1000

1000  
1000  
1000

E

1000  
1000  
1000



remala; of *Merida*, in *Yucatan*; of *Chiapa*, or of *Chiudad Realy*, in *Chiapa*; of *Truxillo*, in *Honduras*; of *Vera-Pax*, in the Province of the same name; and of *Leon*, in *Nicaragua*. The *Suffragan Bishops* of *St Domingo*, are those, of *St Juan*, in the Isle of *Puerto Rico*; of *St Fago*, in the Isle of *Cuba*; and of *Coro*, in *Venezuela*.

And as in *America Meridionalis*, so are there here in the Dioceses of the *Arch-Bishops*; and *Bishops*; abundance of *Parishes*, *Chappels* of ease; *Monasteries*, &c. And long since a great many of *Fryers*, of divers Orders, have passed into the one, and the other part of *America*, to instruct these people in *Christianity*, to wit, *Dominicans*; *Francoiscans*; *Augustines*; *Jesuits*; *Mendicant-Fryers*; and bare-footed *Carmelites*.

Each Order hath divers Provinces, and in each Province many Houses; Fryer *Augustine Labina* Priest, Preacher, and Chorographer of his Order, which was of *St Augustine*, hath designed to publish *Charts* of all the Provinces, and of all the Houses of his Order, with a particular Treatise, or succinct History of each Province: Which Order had in the Province of *Mexico*, sixty eight *Convents*, and five *Kicarages*; in the Province of *Mechoacan*, thirty three *Convents*, and four *Vicarages*, which are one hundred and ten houses; in the four Provinces of *Quino*, the new Kingdom of *Granada*, *Peru* and *Chili*, about an hundred, as we have already noted.

The *Jesuites* have but one Province in all *Mexico*, and in that Province but one House of *Professors*, ten *Colledges*, and three *Residencies*, which are fourteen Houses. In their three Provinces of *Peru*, *Paraguay*, and the new Kingdom of *Granada*, twenty eight, or thirty houses, and nineteen or twenty in *Braziles*, so the other Orders have divers Provinces, and in each Province many Houses.

Of these *Monasteries* those which are very rich, as likewise the *Cures*, and other *Benefices*, and the *Hospitals*. The *Inca Garcilasso de la Vega*, observes in the History of *Peru*, that his father being Governour of *Cusco*, he proposed to build an Hospital for the *Spaniards*; and that Father *Juan Gallego*, a religious *Recollect*, having enterprized it, and published his design in a Sermon, he bought a house to build this Hospital, having onely two or three hundred Ducats in his hands, but between the Monday and Thursday of the same week, he received an Alms of twenty or twenty five thousand Ducats; and if he would have

received what was presented him on the last dayes, he might have received as much more.

A little after Father *Anthony de St Michael*; Preaching in Lent proposed to make another for the *Indians*, declaring that that day in the afternoon, the Governor and himself went in quest for the founding, building, and furnishing this Hospital: whose words to took with them; that there was received that mornoon thirty or thirty five thousand Ducats, in almes; and in few daies after neer one hundred thousand, which was yet farther augmented, after the *Spaniards* and *Indians* contributing.

But before we leave *America Meridionalis*, let us speak a word or two touching that part which is towards *Mer del Sud*; there is found a great diversity between that neer this Sea, and that within Land; that which is neerest the Coast is for the most part plain, and above the Plains, are many hills, or rather Mountains; after these Mountains there are other Plains, and beautiful Valleys, and then Mountains almost inaccessible, which are those that bound *Chili*, and *Peru* towards the East. It scarce rains in the Plains, often in the first Mountains, sometimes between the two ranks of Mountains; and snows often between the two last Mountains: the soil of the Plains, of the first Mountains, and of those between the two ranks of Mountains are fruitful and pleasant: the last are only Rocks, barren, extremely cold, both in Winter and Summer; and almost always covered with snow. And that which is observable, these Mountains beginning neer the Streight of *Magellan*, make two branches; which one in the sight of the other, traverse all the length of *America Meridionalis*; and so they are in the same parallel, yet of quality, and Temperament so different, that each Region hath its *Beasts*, *Grains*, and *Fruits* unlike, nay the men transported from the one, can scarcely live in the other. But let us proceed to its parts.

## TERRA-FIRMA.

Under the name of *TERRA-FIRMA* taken in general, we understand that part of *AMERICA MERIDIONALIS*, most advanced towards the North, and which touches *AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS* by the *Isthmus* of *Panama*. This name of *Terra-Firma* is taken from *Christopher Columbus*, not having discovered

Another for the Indians.

any  
in h  
of  
Ma  
I  
nam  
a th  
two  
whi  
two  
Lea  
ing  
caus  
ma  
iden  
belo  
Eas  
hand  
havin  
the c  
the fi  
this a  
Th  
Firma  
of Sa  
River  
Venice  
follow  
Sea C  
pagan,  
are wit  
The  
which  
Firma  
Seas:  
the tw  
Count  
rainou  
fit to b  
eth.  
Cattel  
of wh  
is very  
heats  
Its  
takes  
chief,  
honou  
fragan  
Courts  
three  
Fesui  
is a p  
dios o  
off suc  
twixt  
hithe  
to Pa  
ped

An Histi  
rel built for  
the Span  
ards by  
Drief.

The Ge  
nment of  
Spain  
Hydrog.

to his  
part

Terra  
firma,  
Chili  
part of  
Terra

any but Isles in his first and second voyage; in his third and fourth he made a good part of these Coasts, which judging to be Main Land; that name was given it.

It extends it self from the Isthmus of Panama, unto the mouth of the Amazon; neer a thousand Leagues; its breadth, between the Mer del Nort, and the Estates which are along the Amazon, is not above two hundred, or two hundred and fifty Leagues, or little more. This breadth being only the quarter of the length is the cause that we have divided this Terra-Firma into two parts, of which the most Occidental, and the best for the most part belonging to the King of Spain; the most Eastern, and the least, is almost all in the hands of the Natives; some Europeans having only settled some Habitacions on the coast, and this may be called Guiana, the first is five or six hundred Leagues long, this about four hundred.

The Spaniards have established in Terra-Firma, that is Main-Land, of Carthagena, of Sancta Martha, of Rio de la Haches Or; River of lights, of Venezuela, or little Venice, and of Paria or Nueva Andaloxia, follow in order from East to West on the Sea Coast of Mer del Nort; those of Popayan, and the new Kingdom of Granada are within Land, or on the Pacificque Sea.

The Government of PANAMA, and which particularly takes the name of Terra-Firma, is between the North, and South Seas: placed in the Isthmus, which joyns the two parts of America together. The Country is either low and miery, or mountainous and barren, and therefore very unfit to bear Corn, only some Mayze it yieldeth. Yet here is found good pasturage for Cattel, it is well watered with Rivers, some of which streams down Sand-gold. Its air is very unhealthful, by reason of the great heats and foggs it is subject unto.

Its chief places are, 1. Panama, which takes its name from the Province, as the chief; being the residence of the Governour, honoured with a Bishops See, which is suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of Lima, and the Courts of Judicature, and beautified with three fair Monasteries, as also a Colledge of Jesuits. It is seated on the Sea shore, and is a place of great resort. 2. Nombre de dios once famous, being made the Staple of of such commodities that were trucked betwixt Peru and Spain, which were brought hither by Sea, and so conveyed by Land to Panama, from whence they were shipped for Peru; and the like was done for

those Goods sent from Peru to Spain: but by reason of the unhealthfulness, as also lying too open to the invasions of the English or other Nations, it was removed to Porto Belo, a place of great strength, built for that purpose by Philip the second, King of Spain, seated on the North Sea, distant from Panama sixteen or twenty Leagues, which makes this passage have a great trade between Peru and Mexico.

It was once proposed to cut this Isthmus to make a communication between the one and the other Sea, but the Pacificque Sea being found higher then Mer del Nort, this proposition vanished: that the Mer del Sud is higher then that del Nort, may be judged by the eye; the Lake of Nicaragua, the Rivers of Paria or Orinoque, of the Amazons, together with abundance of others, having their springs neer Mer del Sud, and discharging themselves into that del Nort, after a long course, which could not be but with a great declension.

At the opening of the Gulf of Panama, are the Isles of Pearls once famous; the Pearls of Gubagua, & de la Margarita being at most not above eight or ten Carrats; there was found in these Isles from twenty five to thirty, both round, oval, and in pearls, all excellent; whereas among the others few were found well formed, or without spot.

Oxenham, an Englishman, being in these parts in 1572, left his Ship in the Mer del Nort, and built another in that del Sud, where he surprized, one after another, two Ships laden, one with sixty thousand Crowns of gold, and quantity of excellent Wines and the other with one hundred thousand Pezos in Silver, with quantity of other valuable Commodities: he got likewise from the Islanders, great store of Pearls; but whilst he disagreed with his men about sharing this rich booty, as also seeking Negroes to transport it into his vessel, the Spaniards seized it, and took him, and put to death most of his men.

Besides the Cities above mentioned, Darien, seated on the Gulf of Urraba, hath once been so famous, that it had a Bishop transferred to Panama, in 1519.

East of the Government of Terra-Firma; is that of Carthagena, then beyond the River Madelaine, that of Sancta Martha; the one and the other have their names common with the names of their principal Cities.

CARTHAGENA is a Peninsula joyning

the last  
is much  
St Mi  
to make  
that that  
error and  
founding;  
al: whole  
there was  
or thirty  
and in few  
land, which  
er the Spa

Meridiona-  
o touching  
er del Sud;  
y between  
thin Land;  
st is for the  
Plains, are  
, after these  
ins, and bea-  
ine almost in-  
that bound  
st. It scarce  
e first Moun-  
two ranks of  
between the  
of the Plains,  
of those be-  
Mountains are  
last are only  
cold, both in  
almost always  
at which is ob-  
inning neer the  
two branches;  
the other, tra-  
ca Meridionalis  
parallel, yet of  
t so differant,  
Beasts, Grains,  
men transpor-  
ocely live in the  
its parts.

TERRA-FIRMA.

TERRA-FIRMA  
understand that  
RIDIONALIS,  
the North, and  
A SEPTENTRI-  
nus of Panama.  
ma is taken from  
having discovered  
any

Immo.

Its Co-  
honour of  
Panama  
Hydro.

Is Sep  
Panama

Terra  
ma, si  
culo  
Civita  
Pant  
tibus

Confere  
ne d  
ter

TORRE-FORMA.

ing to the firm Land, by a cause-way of two hundred and fifty paces, all sandie: It is a place of great strength, especially since the damage it received by Sir Francis Drake, in 1585. Its Port is one of the most famous of America, where the Spanish Fleet that goes to the West Indies by Order puts in here, which makes it be of a great resort, and become very rich: Its houses are well built, and beautified with a Cathedral Church, and three Monasteries. The other Cities of this government are, *St. Fago de los Cavalleros* of old, *Tola*, not above four Leagues distant from *Carthagena*: worthy of Note, for the most soveraign Balsome of all these parts, little inferiour to that of *Egypt*. *Mopoz* near the confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalen*; *Sancta Maria*, & *la Conception*.

The air of this Government is moist, scarce healthful, the best is near *Tola*; there is brought from these quarters *Gold*, *Jang-  
Pepper*, *Dragons Blood*, excellent *Balm*, *Emeralds*, and *Slaves*; for there remains many people who have a cruel war with the *Castilians*, and earing them when they fall into their hands. In exchange when the *Castilians* take them, they keep them *Slaves*, making them work in the Mines, or sell them to distant Countries.

*SANCTA MARTHA*, so called from its chief City, is a Country unfit for tillage, being mountainous, and barren, yet some they have; it yields good *Fruits*, as *Oranges*, *Lemons*, *Pomegranats*, and such like Spanish *Fruits*; in recompence here is found *Gold*, *Sapphires*, *Emeralds*, *Jasper*, *Cassidons*, *Brazile-wood*, and the Sea yields *Pearls*. It is indifferently well furnished with *Rivers*, and those stored with *Fish*; the air of the Country in the mid-land parts, by reason of the vicinity of mountains, which are always covered with snow, is very cold, and on the Sea-coasts, as hot and scorching. Its chief places are;

1. *St Martha*, scituate on the Sea-shore, neighboured by a convenient and safe Haven, which is defended from the fury of the winds by an high mountain near unto it; it is honoured with an *Episcopal See*, 50 but still laments the ruines it suffered from the *English* by Sir *Francis Drake*, and Sir *Anthony Shirley* in Anno 1595 and 96.
2. *TENERIFFE* seated on the Banks of the River *Magdalen*.
3. *Tamslameque*, by the Spaniards called *Villa de los Palmas*.
4. *Los Reyes* or *Vary*, scituate in the Vale of *Upar*, on the banks of a rapid and deep River, called *Guataperi*.

5. *La Ramada* or *Sulamunca*, seated in the same vale of *Upar*; about which are several veins of *Beals*: And 6. *Deanna*, or *St Anna*, seated on the River *Casar*.

Among the Governments of *America Meridionalis*, those of *Rio de la Hacha*, of *Venezuela*, and of *Paria*, are of the Audience of *St Domingo*, in the Isle of *Hispaniola*; which is of *America Septentrionalis*; yet their scituation makes us describe them here.

*RIO DE LA Hacha* is East of *St Martha*, of whose Bishoprick it depends: This Government hath only the City of *Nuestra Señora de la Nieves*, or *de los Remedios*, and sometimes also *Rio de la Hacha*: It yields *Gold*, *precious Stones*, *Salt*, and its soil is fertile; that part most exposed to the North advances a point to the East, which they call *Cape de Coquiboca*; and another towards the West called *Cape de la Vela*; this is the most Northern part of all *America Aequidantal*.

*VENEZUELA* had its name so given, for its being built on many little Isles, and in a Lake, as *Venice* is; it is likewise called *Curo*: Its air is sweet and healthfull, and the soil so fertile in all sorts of *grain*, of *fruits*, and so well stocked with *Cattel*, that it is termed by other Countries a *granarie*, as indeed they finde it so, it supplying their wants. It is well watered with *Rivers*, in which are excellent *Fish*; here is also wild *beasts* for hunting; and in the bowels of its earth are rich mines of *Gold*, and other *Metals*: The other Cities are, *Nuestra Señora de Cavallada* seated upon the Sea, but its Haven is very unsafe; nigh to this City there are Hills whose tops are said for heichte to equalize those of *Tenariffa*. *St Fago de Leon*, *Valenza la Nueva*, *Xeres la nueva*, *Segovia la nueva*, *Tuenyo*, and *Nuestra Señora della Pax*. *Segovia la Nueva*, is more advanced towards the *Barbarian* people of any, its soil is lean, but in recompence feeds many *Cattel*, and *Panison*. The Lake of *Manacabo* of near an hundred leagues circuit, is esteemed in this Province.

*PARIA*, or new *Andalusis* on the River *Paria*, or *Orinoque*, and is likewise called *Serpa* and *Comana*, from the name of its principal Citie, which they call *Nuevos Cordova*; they fish many *Pearls* along this coast; before which are the Isles of *Sabago*, *Margarita*, and the *Trinity* or *Trinidad*, formerly so famous for this *Fishing*. It is observed that these *Pearls* at the beginning were found more about *Cuba*, then other

In Com-  
dies and  
Trade.

St. Mar-  
tha de-  
fines, with  
its limits,  
command-  
ers, &c.

In chief  
places.

Rio de la  
Hacha de-  
fines, with  
its Com-  
mand-  
ers.

Venezuela  
describ-  
ed.

In this  
C.

In this  
C.

Paria de-  
fines.

other  
rived  
ding,  
ed, the  
ra; an  
the T  
ther of  
of the  
only to  
ly of a  
bitions  
some h  
are ver  
for its  
plied f  
made th  
as the f

The  
and the  
wards  
two part  
ber of th  
other to  
The at  
full, and  
rains,  
fruits an  
as in all  
are liken  
Metals.

The  
the new  
but have  
Antiqui  
de Anzo  
near the  
five wen  
Plata, S  
and Bill  
transport  
others all  
all wars  
Pixer, a  
tamed.

The  
peyan  
ber of  
hath its  
of the C  
in the r  
fidence  
of a Bi  
and a M  
the foot  
of a Ri  
a plain,  
are upo  
Sancta

other places, but that the Ships which arrived there, or at their departure after landing, shot so many Cannon, that, affrighted, they fled about the Island of *Margarita*; and so for the same reason retired to the *Trinity* and other places, but it is rather to be believed that the insatiable avarice of the *Spaniards* hath ruined the race of the *Mother-Pearls*, by not being content only to take the greatest; but indifferently of all sizes, notwithstanding all prohibitions, and hazard of their heads, which some have payed for doing so. These Isles are very barren, scarce affording sustenance for its Inhabitants, which defect is supplied from the adjacent Countreys, which made the *Spaniards* abandon them so soon as the said *Fishing* left them.

The Governments of *POPAYAN*, and the new Kingdom of *Granada*, are towards *Peru*: that of *Popayan* is divided into two parts, the one answering to the Chamber of the new Kingdom of *Granada*, the other to that of *Quito* or *Peru*.

The aire of all *Popayan*, is generally healthfull, and very fresh by reason of the Mountains. The Land is more proper for *fruits* and *pasture*, then for *grains*; and, as in all the neighbouring Countreys, here are likewise many Mines of *gold*, and other *Metals*.

The Cities of *Popayan* which answer to the new Kingdom of *Granada* are five; but have formerly been ten, *Santa Fe de Antequera*, *Caramanta*, *Armas*, *Santa Anna de Anzerman*, and *Cartago*; all upon or neer the River of *Santa Martha*, the other five were *Antioquia*, *St Sebastian de la Plata*, *St Vincent de los Payezes*, *Neyva*, and *Villa de los Angeles*. The first was transported to *Santa Fe de Antequera*, the others abandoned by reason of the continual wars, made upon them by the *Paczes*, *Pixos*, and *Manipás*, who could not be tamed.

The Cities of the Government of *Popayan*; which answer to the Chamber of *Quito*, are nine. *Popayan* which hath its name Common with the name of the Country, seated on a pleasant River, in the mid ft of a rich plain, being the residence of the Governor, as also the See of a *Bishop*, and adorned with a *Cathedral*, and a *Monastery of Fryers*. *Cali* seated at the foot of a high Mountain, on the banks of a River; and *Almaguer* on the sides of a plain, but barren Mountain: these three are upon, or neer the River of *Cauca*, or *Santa Martha*: *Timana*, *St. Juan de*

*Truxillo*, othetwise *Isane*, and *Guadaluja*, of *Buga* advance towards the East. *Madrigall* othetwise *Chapanchica*. *St Juan de Pasfo*, and *Ayreda*, or *Malaga* towards the West, and approaching neer the *Mer del Sud*.

The new Kingdom of *Granada*, lies almost all on the River *Magdelane*, and from its springs to the middle of its course, are found a great many Cities, as *Santa Fe de Bogata* the Metropolis of this Kingdom of *Granada*, the residence of the Governor, and the Sea of an *Arch-bishop*, a City well inhabited by *Spaniards*, as well as the *Natives*. *St Michael*, or *Villetta*, de *Santa Fe* about 12 Leagues from *Santa Fe de Bogata*. *Tocayma*, seated on the banks of the River *Pati*. *La Palma de los Colimas*, a Town built by the *Spaniards*. *Tunia* built on the top of a hill, being now a place of great strength, serving for a Fortrefs against the *Savages*; it is also a wealthy Town enjoying a good trade. *La Trinidad de los Musos*, seated on a River, of some note by reason of the veins of *Crystal*, *Emeralds*, and *Adamants*, that are in its adjacent fields. *St John de los Lianos*, seated in a corner full of veins of *gold*, also *Velez*, *Tbagua*, *Mariquita*, and *Nucetra*, *Sennora de los Remedios*, and these four last are on the left hand of the River, the other seven on the right; distant from this River, and between the Governments of *Santa Martha*, and *Venezuela*, are likewise *Pampelona*, rich in Mines of *gold*, *Cattel*, and *Herbs*. *Merida* and *St Christopher*: *Tudela* between the *Trinidad*, and the *Palma* hath been transported to *St John de los Lianos*.

In 1536 *Gonzalo Ximents* overrun a great part of this new Kingdom of *Granada*, and made booty of about two hundred and fifty thousand *Pezes* of *gold*, of which neer two hundred thousand were exceeding pure; and besides the *gold*, eighteen hundred *Emeralds* of divers sizes. In another Incurfion made by *Ferdinand Cortes* into these quarters, were found five *Emeraulds* of a vast price. They were cut into divers fashions; one into the form of a *Fish*, another into a *Bugle* or small *horn*, a third into a little *bird*, a fourth into a *bell*, whose clapper was a large *Pearl* fashioned like a *pear*, and the last into a *cup*; for which alone a *Genovese Lapidary* proffered forty thousand *Ducats*, with hopes of gaining great profit by it.

The air of this Province, or Government inclines to heat, the valleys have *grains* and *pastures*, but no *wine*, the Mountains have many rich Mines of *gold* and other *Metals*.

Granada with its Cities described.

Covalo Ximents, and Ferdinand Cortes, gained great riches out of these parts.

Many rich  
Mines of  
Gold, Sil-  
ver, and  
other Me-  
tals.

A rich  
Mine of  
Emeralds.

*Metals, the Silver Mines of St Agatha* are rich, those *de las Remedios* have store of gold, and there are twelve or fifteen thousand *Negroes* which labour in them. Those of *Musos* near *la Trinity*, and those of *Pampilona, St Christopher*, and *Merida*, are likewise of some esteem: but above all, the Mine of *Emeralds* near *la Trinity*, where there is a rock full: It was from hence that an *Indian* brought to *Philip* the second, and to the *Infanta Clara Eugenia* his daughter, an *Emerald*, so large, that the *Jewellers* could not value it, this stone was put into the *Treasure of the Escorial*, and the *Indian* gained his liberty, together with a good reward.

## GUIANA.

**G**UIANA, taken in general, comprehends all that is found between the Rivers of *Orinoque*, and of the *Amazons*; from the Mountains which are above the Lake of *Parime*, unto the *Mer del Nord*. These Mountains towards the South divide it from what is above the River of *Amazons*; *Orinoque* divides it from *Terra-Firma*, or, new *Andaloufia*, on the West, and the River of *Amazons* from *Brazile* on the East.

The Inhabitants  
of Guiana.

The length of this *Guiana* is near Four hundred Leagues, the breadth One hundred and fifty, and in some places Two hundred; and if we would divide *Guiana* into *Guiana* and *Caribane*, this last would possess all the Coast, and *Guiana* the parts within Land. The Coast hath at divers times been frequented by the *Spaniards*, *English*, *Hollanders*, and *French*, who have all endeavoured to establish some Colonies, what in one place, what in another, and all with design to have commerce with those within the Country, where they hope to find a new *Peru*: I mean the Kingdom of *Manoa*, or *El Dorado*, which they esteem very rich in *Gold*.

Rivers in  
Guiana,  
with their  
Springs,  
Cataracts,  
length, and  
breadth.

And they have observed exactly the *Rivers*, *Gulfs*, and *Capes* which present themselves on this Coast. Among these *Rivers*, the fairest and greatest are, *Essequibe*, *Brebice*, *Corretine*, *Marruvine*, *Cayanna*, the *Apurruvaca*, or *Cape ruvaca*, and the *Viapoco*.

The Es-  
sequibe.

The Spring of the *Essequibe*, according to the report of its Inhabitants, is not above a dayes journey distant from the famous Lake of *Parima*, and thence takes its course for twenty dayes journey to the Sea,

into which it discharges it self; It is interrupted by divers *Cataracts*, which hinders its being navigable for any considerable way, which causes the Inland Countrey not to be so perfectly discovered, as it might be were it otherwise.

The *Brebice* and *Corretine* have little less course then the *Essequibe*, and no fewer *Cataracts*; the last hath its mouth to the Sea very large, but not deep.

The *Marruvine* is no less then Four or five thousand *Geometrical paces* broad at its mouth, and the length of its course is esteemed to be thirty or forty dayes journey. The *English* who have mounted this River farther then any others, have observed abundance of *Rivers*, which lose themselves in it; and say, that here is found the *Sensitive Plant*, or *Herb*, which hath this natural propriety, to close, if never so little touched; and to shut up its *Flowers*, and fade, if the least sprig be took from it, not opening its leaves till a good while after. All these *Rivers*, for the most part, have their *Cataracts* under the same *Parallel*, within four or five degrees of *Latitude* on this side the *Equator*, which may make us judge that there is some ridge of Mountains, or at least a continued eminence, which makes these Countries within Land of a higher situation then those Parts neighboured by the Sea.

*Cayanna* hath likewise in it those Mountains, which are near the Lake of *Parima*; and from its Spring to the Sea, is no less then a hundred Leagues, in a freight line, and twice as much according to its course; it embraces an *Iste*, where the *French* have endeavoured to settle a Colony, which in time may come to good effect.

*Apurruvaca* or *Caperuvaca* hath a longer course then *Cayanna*; It forms a great Lake, not far from its Spring, and embraces an *Island* near its Mouth. When *Harcourt*, an *Englishman*, was on this River, he found many people, and those much different from one another. *Keymish*, another *Englishman*, who was with the worthy *Sir Walter Rawleigh*, who took so much pains to finde out the Kingdom of *Manoa*, assures us, that in his time they could finde no such people; which makes it appear, that these people are sometimes on one Coast, and sometimes on another: There are here found *Paroquets*, and other very rare and beautifull *Birds*, with pretty *Apes* and *Monkeys*.

*Viapoco* hath a longer course then the *Cayanna*,

The Bre-  
bice, and  
Corretine.

The Mar-  
ruvine.

*Cayanna*  
like al-  
fall eip-  
Sea, v-  
Rivers  
Leagu-  
Cape d-  
along  
Sugar-  
yield o-  
have s-  
Beeves  
us (spe-  
ment,  
ters, in  
ordina-  
It is  
near the  
most w-  
Amazo-  
line, th-  
to the  
greatest  
fourth;  
degrees,  
the Tow-  
to be in  
Easterne  
ally blow-  
equal v-  
which re-  
great de-  
Mountai-  
etc. yie-  
Country  
be made  
best, an-  
they hav-  
their Su-  
their W-  
makes  
their W-  
Sun is in  
sharpest  
mouth  
month  
have al-  
Flowers  
their Tr-  
fruits (all  
the rate,  
and try  
live  
hundre  
hundre  
any dis-  
Pro-  
forts o-  
all for



*Cayana* shorter then the *Apurwaca*, and like all the others of this Coast, suffers a fall eighteen or twenty Leagues from the Sea; where it disburthens it self with other Rivers into a little *Gulf*, of seven or eight Leagues wide, leaving on the right hand *Cape de Condi*, or *D'Orange*. There is found along this River *Tobacco*, *Canes* from which *Sugar* may be extracted, and *Shrubs* which yield *Cotton*, and amongst the *Beasts*, they have *Stags*, *Wild-bores*, tame *Swine*, and *Beeves* which have no horns, &c. But let us speak a word or two, of the temperment, and quality of the soil of these quarters, in which there is some thing extraordinary.

It is true that *GUIANA* is under, or very near the *Equator*; that part which stretches most within land, and the nearest to the *Amazones*, is under the *Equator*: from that line, the Coast stretches on this side, unto the eighth degree of *Latitude*: yet the greatest part of this Coast lies under the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh of these degrees, which is almost in the middle of the *Torrid Zone*, and consequently seems to be in a climate extremely hot. But the *Easterne winds*, which do almost continually blow upon the Coast, the nights being equal with the *daies*, the large *Rivers* which refresh and water the Country, the great *dews* which fall, the height of their *Mountains*, the thickness of their *Forrests*, &c. yield such refreshments as renders this Country one of the most pleasant, and would be made (were it cultivated) one of the best, and richest Countries in all *America*: they have two *Summers*, and two *Winters*, their *Summers* during the *Equinoxes*, and their *Winters* during the *Solstices*; which makes their *Summers* much shorter then their *Winters*, particularly that when the Sun is in the *Solstice* of *Capricorn*: but the sharpest of their *Winters*, is like our month of *August*, the other like our month of *May*, and to speak truth they have always either Spring or Autumn, their *Flowers* being always in their beauty, their *Trees* always in their verdure, and their *fruits* (which are excellent) fit to gather all the year long. The *aire* is so temperate, and healthful, that those of the Country live commonly one hundred, or one hundred and twenty years, sometimes one hundred and fifty, without being subject to any disease, or sickness.

Provisions cost almost nothing, all sorts of *Game*, being had for only hunting, all sorts of *Fish* are here very plentiful,

they may pass without our *Corn*, for making *bread*, though being sowed, it comes to perfection in two months, and with a fuller *grain* then it doth with us. They content themselves with their *Manioc*, with which they can in less time and pains make their *bread*, which they call *Cassava*, which, when once accustomed unto it, is as good as ours.

Their *Venison* are *Stags*, *Bucks*, *Wild-boars*, &c. their *Fowl* and *Birds* are *Pullein*, which are larger, and more delicate then ours; also *Turkeys*, *Pheasants*, *Partridges*, *Wild-ducks*, *Parroquets* of many sorts, with abundance of small *birds*. Their *Fishes* are *Turbets*, *Reyes*, *Mulletts*, *Gold-heads*, more delicate then our *Seales*, the *Lamantin*, or *Sea-calfs*, better meat then our *Veale*, *Tortoises*, which they take in the night, by turning them on their backs, and sometimes only one of these *Tortoises* is sufficient to feed one hundred men for a whole day; yet at certain times, in one night, they will take five or six hundred, which they keep in pickle to use at need. Their *Fruits* are *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Ananas* greater and more delicious then the *Mellon*, *Dates*, *Bananes*, and an infinite number of other *Fruits*, whose names are unknown unto us; they make many sorts of *drinks*, and *Strongwaters*; they have store of *Sugar-canes*, the clefts of their *Trees* are oft filled with *Honey* and *Wax*, out of which they extract a very pleasant liquor.

To trade with them we carry *Instruments* and *Menstills* they have need of, as *Hatchets*, *Woodbills*, *Scythes*, *Hand-saws*, *Knives*, *Cizzars*, *Wimbles*, *Hooks*, *Anls*, *Bars Of Iron*, &c. also what serves to dress and adorn them, as *Rings of Latten*, *Beads of Glass*, and *Crystal* of divers colours, *Ear-rings*, *Pendants*, *Neck-laces*, *Looking-glasses*, *Needles*, *Pinns*, and all sorts of *Toyes* and *Haberdabery-ware*, which among us are little regarded, but are by them highly prized, giving in exchange abundance of several rich commodities, as *Cotton*, *Cotton-thread*, and *Hamacks* or *Beds of Cotton*, which are sold and exchanged in all the neighbouring Isles for *Tobacco*: and sometimes they have 300 or 200 pound of *Tobacco* for one *Hamack*, which they have for a *knife*, or a string of *beads* in *Guiana*: They have likewise *China-wood*, *green Ebony*, white and red *Sannidors*, *Dyers-wood*, *Brazile*, *Medicinal oyles*, *Jollop*, *Salsaparilla*, *Turkish Gayac*, *Gomme-gutte*, *Gum-Arabick*, *Gum-Eleni*. A *Balm* excellent against the *Gout*, *Torqueses*, *Emeralds*, *Stags-skins*, *Tigers*,  
Kkkk  
Ofters,

Their Venison, and Fish, in great plenty.

Tortoises very large.

Their fruits

The Trade of Guiana with all Commodities.

It is inter-  
ch hinders  
onsiderable  
Country  
ered, as it  
  
e little less  
The Bre-  
bles, and  
Corrines,  
  
d no fewer  
outh to the  
  
en Four or  
broad at its  
ts course is  
dayes jour-  
nounted this  
have obser-  
which lose  
that here is  
The Mar-  
stut.  
  
Herb, which  
close, if ne-  
p shut up its  
east spring be-  
s leaves till a  
ivers, for the  
ills under the  
five degrees  
uator, which  
here is more  
ast a continu-  
these Coun-  
ther situation  
ured by the  
  
e those Moun-  
ke of Parima;  
Sea, is no less  
a straight line,  
to its course;  
e French have  
olony, which  
fect.  
y hath a longer  
forms a great  
g, and imbra-  
outh. When  
was on this Ri-  
ole, and those  
ther. Keymish,  
was with the  
who took so  
e Kingdom of  
his time they  
s, which makes  
e are sometimes  
as on another;  
ettis, and other  
ds, with pretty  
  
ourse then the  
Cayanna,

The Bre-  
bles, and  
Corrines,

The Mar-  
stut.

Cayana

The Trade  
of Guiana  
with all  
Commodi-  
ties.

The Trade  
of Guiana  
with all  
Commodi-  
ties.

*Others*, and black *Foxes*, grains of *Musk*, taken from *Lizards*, *Munkeys*, *Apes*, and *Tamarins*, a little Beast of pleasure, so beautiful and joyful, that one alone hath been sold for five hundred crowns: The *Americans* themselves loving to play with them, and putting about their necks collers of *Pearls*, and *Pendants* of *Stones* in their *Eares*.

In the bowels of its earth are Mines of *Copper*, *Tin*, *Lead*, and *Iron*, which are very rare in *America*; and to all appearance there are Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*; here is also *Roche-Alum*, *Crystal* of the *Rock*, *Azuve*, and likewise *Dragons blood*, &c.

That part of *Guiana* most advanced within land, and which retains particularly the name of *Guiana*, is very little known; yet here should be the Kingdom and City of *Manoa* or *El Dorado*, of which some have formerly made such account, but not being found at present, is by most believed imaginary.

But some have assured us that this City is one of the greatest and fairest in the *World*, and that he who reigns here, descends from the *Inca's* of *Peru*, and hath no less *gold*, nor *jewels*, nor is less powerful than those *Inca's* were: Many Princes and an infinite number of people being retired hither from *Peru* when the *Castilians* seized it, and having brought hither their riches; and that moreover this Kingdome is seated very advantageously, bounded on all sides with very high mountains; and the *Lake* or *Sea* of *Parima*, in the middle of the Country, giving them the conveniency of an easie uniting their Forces.

These people have a pleasant custome in their *Festivals*, and in their most solemn *Ceremonies*; that is, they rub all their bodies over with *Oyle*, or an excellent *Balsome*, and on it strew *gold* powdered till it cover them; the fashion of these *clothes* costs less, but the *stuff* is worth more than most of ours.

## The AMAZONE.

THE River *AMAZONE* is the greatest and swiftest, either in the one, or other part of *America*; and it may be said the largest of both Continents: From its springs to its dis-burthenings into the *Sea*, is eight or nine hundred Leagues in a straight line, and according to its course eleven or twelve hundred, it receives both on the right and left, abundance of Rivers, of which some have one hundred, two hundred three hundred, others four, five, or six hundred Leagues course.

All the *Amazon* is inhabited by abundance of people, less barbarous than those of *Brazile*, nor yet so much civilized as those of *Peru* were; they eat not one another, for by their *hunting*, *fishing*, *fruits*, *corn*, and *roots*; they are furnished with what is needful either for *meat* or *drink*; they have some *Idols* particular to them, but pay them no adoration, contenting themselves to expose them to publick view, when they enterprize any affair.

The *Amazon* begins at the foot of the *Cordillier* mountains, eight or ten Leagues from *Quito* in *Peru*, pressing forward its streams from West to East: Its springs, and its mouths, are under or near the *Equator*; the middle of its course under the fourth or fifth degree of *Meridional Latitude*; the River, which fall on the left, or North-side, have not their springs removed from the *Equator*, above one or two degrees of *Septentrional Latitude*; of those which descend on the right hand, and from the South-ward begin some at ten, others at fifteen, the *Madera* or *Cayana*, at the one and twentieth degree of *Meridional Latitude*.

The breadth of its channel from *Fuma de los Rios*, which is sixty and odd Leagues from its springs, unto *Maranbon* is of one or two Leagues, and below *Maranbon*, two, three, or four, enlarging still as it approacheth the *Sea*, where it makes an opening of fifty or sixty Leagues between the *Capes de Novi*, and *Zapare*; this on the coast of *Brazile*, the other on the coast of *Guiana*: Its depth likewise from *Fuma los Rios* unto *Maranbon* is at least five or six fathom, in some places eight or ten: from *Maranbon* unto *Rio Negro*, ten, fifteen, or twenty, and from *Rio Negro* to the *Sea* thirty, forty, fifty, and sometimes much more, and that which is most convenient, it hath always a good depth near the banks, there being no banks of sand, except some near the *Sea*.

One *Francis Orithane* was the first that took any pains to know the course of this River. In 1540 he transported himself to *Fuma de los Rios*, where he caused to be built a Vessel proper to descend this River to the *Sea*: In 1541 he imbarqued himself with some Souldiers, had divers encounters in the way, but about the end of *August* he found the *Sea*, after which he hastned to *Spain* to make this discovery known unto the King. In 1549 he returned from *Spain* to the *Amazon*, where, after his spending a long time upon the great *Sea*, being sometimes beaten to and fro by the

The Am  
ton ish  
boundar  
prop.

Its begin  
month.

The be  
e. m. in  
mi.

Dr. 47

The  
the A  
zon  
found  
by Fran  
Orilla  
Pedro  
Orilla  
with the  
and a p  
form  
the Am

A pleasant  
custome ob-  
served by  
these People  
in their  
Festivals.

impe  
great  
calms  
great  
tred  
bours  
that  
moun  
havin  
bour  
some  
Orelha  
Aft  
was le  
time,  
ed it a  
bark o  
Maran  
Guana  
Le. u  
forty c  
hundr  
which  
this me  
voyage  
Orisa c  
his own  
of the  
Sea by  
Trinity  
fed for  
In 15  
discove  
maye, w  
two con  
made w  
ther in  
but a fe  
Chonche  
this exp  
escaped  
of Mala  
amazon  
years af  
In 1  
this def  
others  
he mig  
age: b  
great  
Friars  
selves i  
the Riv  
the ch  
Crow  
news t  
Para.  
Tho  
the Ho

impetuosity of the winds which caused great Storms, then retained as long by calms, which together with the loss of a great many of his men, at length he entered into its mouth: yet after all these labours and miseries, he was so unhappy, that not finding the true channel to remount the *Amazone*, he died with grief, having gained nothing for all his travel, labour and expence, but the honour that some give his name to the River, calling it *Orelhane*.

After *Francis Orelhane*, the *Amazone* was let alone for a good continuance of time. In 1560 those of *Lima* in *Peru*, tried it another way: they caused some to embark on the River of *Xaxxa*, otherwise of *Maranbon*, which begins in *Peru*, below *Guanuca*, and about an hundred and fiftie Leagues from *Lima*, passes within thirty or forty of *Cusco*, and by a course of five or six hundred leagues descends into the *Amazone*, which hath scarce made three hundred, at this meeting, yet is found the larger: this voyage was likewise unhappy, for *Pedro de Orsua* chief of this expedition was slain by his own men, and *Lopez de Aguyre* chief of the sedition, finished to descend to the Sea by the *Orinoque*, and landed at *La Trinity*, where he was arrested, and chastised for his felony.

In 1566 those of *Cusco* tried again the discovery of the *Amazone* by the *Amarumayo*, which could not succeed, there being two competitors for this expedition, who made war, fought, and weakened each other in such manner, that there remained but a few to be knockt on the head by the *Chunches*: *Maldonado* one of the chiefs of this expedition, together with two *Fryers* escaped, and brought the news, after this of *Maldonado* no more discovery of the *Amazone* was attempted till sixty or seventy years after.

In 1635 *Fean de Palacios* re-attempted this design, transporting himself, with some others to *Annete*, to see with what means he might serve himself to make this voyage: but in 1636 he was killed, and the greatest part of his men returned, but two *Friers* and five or six *Souldiers*, put themselves in a Skiff, with a resolution to descend the River, and in the end arrived at *Para*, the chief Colonie of *Brazile* under the Crown of *Portugal*, where they told the news to *Piedro Texeira* Captain Major of *Para*.

Though *Brazile* was then in arms against the *Hollanders*, yet *Texeira* forbore not to

equip forty seven *barques*, caused to be embarked in them seventy *Portugalls*, with twelve hundred *Indians*, who knew how to manage *Armes*, and likewise eight hundred *Boyes* and *Women* to serve them: with these he departed in *October* 1637, remounted the River, and was so happy, that he finished his voyage even to *Peru*, left a part of his men there, where the River *Chevelus* falls into the *Amazone*; the rest he left at *Junta de los Rios*, except himself, with some few persons which came to *Quito*, where he made his report in *September*, 1638.

The news being brought to *Lima* to the Count of *Chinchan*, *Vice-Roy* of *Peru*, he gave order to furnish them with all things necessary for their return, and that the *Father Christopher d'Acogne*, a *Jesuite*, and his companion should goe with them to carry the news to *Spain*. They parted from *Peru* in *February* 1639, and arrived at *Peru* in *December* following, and soon after *Father Christopher d'Acogne* carried the news to *Spain*, arriving there in 1640, and exposed his relation to publick view.

These two last voyages of *Texeira* mounting and descending the River, have given us a more ample, and true knowledge of the *Amazone*, then all those before him could doe, and according to their report, all the Regions, which are about the *Amazone*, enjoy a temperate air. The Eastern *Winds* which blow all day, the nights equal to the daies, the annual *Inundations*, like to those of the *Nile*, the great quantity of *Trees*, and *Forrests*, which are upon, or near the River, yield much refreshment, and keeps them from being troubled with thousands of ugly *Insects*, which they are pestered with at *Peru*, and *Brazile*. They say that the leaves and fruits of the *Trees*, the verdure of their *herbes*, and the beauty of their *Flowers* gives delight to the Inhabitants all the year long.

The Country (by reason of the *Inundation* of the River) is very fertile in *grains*, hath rich *pastures*, and their *fruits*, *plants*, and *roots* are in great plenty, and may compare with any Country in all *America*; their *rivers* and *lakes* are well stored with *Fish*, among others, the *Sea-calfe*, and *Tortoise* are very large and delicate; that their *honey* is very good, and Medicinal; that they have *Balme* excellent for all sorts of *wounds*. They further say, that the Country is well clothed with woods, some trees being five or six fathoms about, and along

Texeira  
b. 1637 on  
the discovery  
of the  
course of  
the Ama-  
zone.

The Coun-  
try very  
fertile.

The Coun-  
try very  
fertile.

along the River may be built as great *Ships* as any that swim on the Ocean. That their *Ebony* and *Brazile* is grown to an inexhaustible quantity, that they have great store of *Cocoa*, and *Tobacco*, that they have plenty of *Sugar-canes*, which they might easily husband; the *Rivers*, and *woods* affording conveniencies for *Engines*, or *Sugar-mills*. They have *Rocon* with which *Scarlet* is dyed, and abundance of other *Commodities*, which they then knew of, and of which more might be discovered in time, without having regard to *gold*, *silver*, and other *metals* which are found there: and after all that, the Navigation of the *Amazon*, is very commodious, its stream facilitating the descent from West to East, and the Eastern winds assisting those that mount it from East to West.

Abundance of different Nations along the Amazon.

They have observed one hundred and fifty different Nations upon, and about the *Amazon*, the most part of these Nations so well peopled, and their villages so thick, that the last house of the one, may easily hear the noise, made in the first house of the other. These people the *Homages* are esteemed for their Manufactures of *Cotton-cloth*. The *Corosipares* for their earthen vessels. The *Surines* for their *Foyness-work*. The *Topinambes* for their *Power*; the *Bow* and *Favelin*, being their general and common *armes*: but they only make war to take *slaves*, which they make use of in things most laborious; which done they treat gently.

Rivers that fall into the Amazon.

Among the Rivers that fall into the *Amazon*, the *Napo*, the *Agarie*, the *Putumayo*, the *Fenopape*, and the *Coropatabe*, and with some others have their *Sands* mixt with *Gold*, below *Coropatabe* there are divers *Mines of Gold* in the Mountains of *Yaguare*, *Mines of Silver* in that of *Picory*, and of divers *stones* in that of *Paragache*, and of *Sulphur* in many others. The *Putumayo*, and *Caketa* are large, the last makes two branches, the one falling into the *Amazon*, under the name of *Rio Negro*, the other into the *Orinoque*, under the name of *Rio Grande*: on the other Coast are the *Maragnon*, the *Amarumayo*, the *Tapy*, the *Cana*, the *Cusignat*, the *Madera*, or *Cayana*, with some others all very great.

Upon the *Amazon* two hundred Leagues from the Sea, is a *Bosphorus*, only one thousand *Geometrical paces* in breadth, which is less then half a League, and thither the Sea flows, which may one day make it the key of all the Commerce made

upon the *Amazon*. But the *Portugals* holding already *Para*, on the Coast of *Brazile*, *Corupa*, and *Espero*, on the Coast of *Guiana*, and *Cogemine*, on the branches of the *Amazon*; if they should likewise fortifie some Place on the principal Mouth of the *Amazon*, be it in the Isle of the *Sun*, or in some other, it is to be believed, this trade must pass through their hands.

As for the *Amazonian Women*, and their Kingdom, from whence, it is pretended, this River took its name; many accounts have been made, and divers Relations given of it to *Quito*, *Cusco*, and other Places; and possibly those of the Country would have frighted the *Castilians* and *Portugals* which have been on this River. But it is no otherwise then that the Inhabitants of the Country being in *Arms*, there hath sometimes been some *Women*, so courageous, as to be in their Party; but there never was a whole Country, or Kingdom of these *Women*. And in fine, they seek them so far within the Country, that they cannot be on the *Amazon*; so those may turn to a Fable, as well as those which the *Greeks* have formerly recounted to us, of such wonders.

The Amazons Women.

Peru.

PERU is an Empire or Kingdom, so rich, and great, that all *America Meridionalis*, or at least the half of that *America*, sometimes takes the name of *Peruviana*. *Peru*, taken more precisely, extends it self, more or less, according to the diversity of Authors: It is for the most part between the *Equinoctial Line*, and the *Tropick of Capricorn*, where it hath more then Six hundred Leagues length, and if we add the Part of *Popayan*, which is on this side the Line, and which depends on the *Chamber of Quito*, in *Peru*; and that part of *Tucuman*, which is beyond the *Tropick of Capricorn*, and which depends on the *Chamber de la Plata*, in *Peru*; its length will not be much less then a thousand Leagues. Its breadth is likewise very diverse, esteeming what *Spaniards* more absolutely possess. Its breadth will not be above one hundred, or sometimes two or three hundred Leagues; if we add all the *Estates* that lie upon the *Amazon*, unto the *Confines of Brazile*, we may make account of Six or seven hundred Leagues of breadth. *Peru* hath for its Eastern bounds, that great

The great city of Peru.

Peru by the Spaniards.

gre  
des  
of  
Sw  
Co  
Au  
thru  
ano  
trie  
Hil  
at  
and  
thin  
the  
Hil  
And  
For  
with  
the S  
sandy  
Grain  
their  
eth ir  
have  
April  
This  
which  
brings  
Wind  
others  
and wh  
is obs  
and F  
rain co  
seldom  
ginnee  
so that  
ter wit  
obferv  
ney, m  
at his  
frozen  
heat.  
Th  
the M  
ardi  
Quito  
Plata  
Eima  
Andis  
holds  
Peru  
ros or  
las Sa  
Peru  
which  
up  
Provi

great ridge of Mountains, called, the *Andes*; for its Southern limits, the Kingdom of *Chili*; for its Western, the *Mer del Sud*; and for its Northern bounds, the Country of *Papayan*. According to some Authors, this Country is divided into three Parts, and all different from one another; which Parts are, the *Hill-Countries*, the *Andes*; and the *Plains*. The *Hill-Countries* are Twenty Leagues broad, at the narrowest, the *Andes*, as much, and the *Plains*, Ten Leagues, and something more; and each part extends it self the whole length of the Country. The *Hill-Countries* are bare and naked; the *Andes*, well clothed with Woods and Forrests; and the *Plains*, well furnished with Rivers, together with the benefit of the Sea; yet, in many places, the earth is sandy, and dry, which makes it unfit for Grains, or Fruits. In the *Hill-Countries*, their Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*, during which time they have fair weather; and from *September* to *April*, which is their Winter, it raineth: This Part is much subject to Windes, which it receiveth from the Coast, which bringeth a difference in the weather; some Windes bringing *Snow*, others *Thunder*, others *Rain*, and others *Fair Weather*; and where there falleth but little *Rain*, it is observed to be the more fertile in *Corn* and *Fruits*. On the *Andes*, it is said to rain continually; whereas, in the *Plains*, seldom, or never; and their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*, so that when it is Summer here, it is Winter with those in the *Hill-Countries*; And its observed, that a man, in one dayes journey, may see Summer and Winter, so that at his setting forth he may be, in a manner, frozen, and before night scorched with heat.

That part of *Peru*, best known, and on the *Mer del Sud*, hath been by the *Spaniards* divided into three *Audiencias*; viz. *Quito*, *Lima*, and *De la Plata*: That of *Quito* is the most Northern; that of *De la Plata*, the most Southern; and that of *Lima*, in the middle; and each of these *Audiencias* hath divers *Provinces*. *Quito* holds part of *Papayan*, part of the true *Peru*, *Los Quixos*, or *La Casala*, *Zamoras* or *Guallongo*, and likewise, *St Juan de las Salinas*. That of *Lima*, holds the true *Peru*, where there were several *Provinces*, which the name of *Peru* hath swallowed up. And the *Audiencia De la Plata* holds the *Provinces* of *Tucuman*, and *De los Charcos*,

and these *Provinces* comprehend abundance of other lesser ones, the knowledge of which is little necessary.

The *Audiencia* of *Quito* is about the *Equinoctial Line*, and is Two or three hundred Leagues long, and large. The Quarter of *Papayan*, subject to this *Chamber*, hath the Cities of *Papayan*, *Cali*, *Timana*, and others, which we have already treated of, with *Papayan*, in *Terra Firma*.

The Quarter of *Peru*, subject to *Quito*, hath the Cities of, 1. *St Francisco del Quito*, or simply *Quito*; was once one of the principal Cities of the *Tuca's* of *Peru*, being the Regal Seat of their Kings, where they had a magnificent *Palace*. It is seated on the declination of a Hill, its Streets are strait, broad, and well ordered, and its Houses well built; it is adorned with a fair *Cathedral Church*, two *Convents* of *Dominican* and *Franciscan Fryers*, as also with the *Courts* of *Judicature*: once very large, but, at present, it hath not above Five hundred Houses of natural *Spaniards*. Two or three thousand Houses inhabited by the *Natives*, and in its Territory near a hundred Villages, where the *Natives* also reside, since the *Spaniards* became Masters of *Peru*, they have made this a Place of good strength, being well fortified, and as well stored with *Ammunition*: 2. *Rio Bamba*, of no note, except for its ancient *Palace* of the Kings of *Peru*. 3. *Cuenca*, alias *Bamba*, seated in a Country well stored with Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Brass*, and Veins of *Sulphur*. 4. *Lexa*, alias *La Zarza*, seated in a sweet and pleasant Valley, between two Rivers, the Inhabitants are well furnished with *Horses* and *Armor*, which is the chiefest part of their Wealth. 5. *St Michael de Piura*, of no great account, except it be for its being the first Colony which the *Spaniards* planted in *Peru*. 6. *St Jago de Guayaquil*, alias *La Calata*, of some note; seated near the influx of the River *Guayaquil*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea. 7. *Castro de Vili*, another Colony of *Spaniards*. 8. *Porto Viejo*, seated not far from the Sea-shore; but of no account, by reason of the badness of its air; its Port Town is *Mama*, rich to which is a rich Vein of *Emeralds*. 9. *Fian*. And 10. *Zamora de los Arcades*, both so called, in reference to two Cities of those names in *Spain*; and these are the Cities, or Colonies, which the *Spaniards* possess in the *Audiencia* of *Quito*, which have been established, at divers times; and not long after the Conquest of *Peru*.

Portugali  
of Bra-  
Coast of  
anches of  
wife for-  
Mouth of  
the Sun,  
ved, this  
s.  
and their  
extended,  
accounts  
lations ge-  
velier Pla-  
County  
is and For-  
river. But  
nhabitants  
there hath  
so coura-  
but there  
Kingdom  
they seek  
that they  
those may  
which the  
d to us, of

Kingdom, so  
America Me-  
of that Ame-  
name of Pe-  
recifely, ex-  
according to  
It is for the  
inocial Line,  
where it hath  
agues length;  
Papayan, which  
and which de-  
Quito, in Peru,  
which is be-  
ern, and which  
de la Plata, in  
be much less  
Its breadth is  
ming what  
y possess. Its  
one hundred,  
three hundred  
the Estates that  
to the Confines  
the account of  
gues of breadth.  
bounds, that  
great

The part  
of Peru  
is divided  
into three  
Audien-  
cias, viz.  
Quito, Lima,  
and De la  
Plata.

By the  
Spaniards  
the true  
Peru, and  
the  
Audien-  
cia of  
Quito.

The Audiencia of Quito is about the Equinoctial Line.

In chief Cities.



The first Day of the Country.

Mines of Gold, Silver, and Iron.

The Province of Peru, with its Cities described.

The Province of Peru, with its Cities described.

The Audience of Lima, with its Cities described.

The air of the Country is sufficiently temperate, though under the Line, it is fertile in grains and fruits, well stored with cattel especially with sheep, and also plentifully furnished both with Fish and Fowl, but the fertility of the Country is most seen about, or near Quito, and Porto Viejo, near Lima and Camora are mines of Gold, near Cuenca Mines of Silver, Quich-silver, Copper and Iron: Near Porto Viejo Mines of Emeralds, and about Guayaquil is found Salsaparilla.

The Province or Country, DE LOS QUIXOS, otherwise de la Canella, is Eastward of Quito: Its chief Cities are, 1. Basfa, built in 1559 by Giles Ramirez, de Avila, Eastward of Quito about eighteen Leagues, now the residence of the Governour, 2. Archidona, twenty leagues, South-Eastwards of Basca, 3. Avila, so called in reference to Ramirez de Avila, and 4. Sevilla del Oro, all Colonies of Spaniards: The Country is mountainous, rude, and unsterile, yet produceth a Cinnamon-tree, which pruned, the tree, bark and leaves are Cinnamon, but the fruit is by much the best, and most perfect.

Pazamoras, South of de la Canella, hath three Cities, or Colonies of Spaniards, viz. 1. St. Juan de las Salinas, or Valladolid, 2. Leyala, or Cambinama, And 3. St. Fago de las Momanas: The air of the Country is said to be healthful, the soil indifferent fruitful, and feeds many Cattel, and also abounds in Mines of Gold. Las Quixos, and Pazamoras depend as to their Spiritual government on the Bishop of Quito.

The Audience of LIMA, or de los Reyes in Peru, is at present most famous of all, by reason of the Cities of Lima and Cusco, this having been formerly the Metropolis of the Empire of the Incas, and the other being the present residence of the Viceroy of Peru, and this Audience comprehends the true Peru, the chief depending Cities, besides Lima and Cusco, are, 1. Arnedo, seated in a valley among Vineyards, 2. La Sama, or La Parilla, seated in a valley, nigh to which are rich mines of Silver, 3. Traxilla, situate on the bank of a small, but pleasant River, about two Leagues from the Sea, where it hath a large, but unsafe Haven, and in a pleasant valley, the Town indifferently well built and large, and beautified with four Convents of several Orders, 4. Miraflores, about five Leagues from the Sea, in the valley of Zana, of some note for the abundance of Sugar-Canes that groweth there, 5. Chachapoyas, or St. Juan de la Frontera, of good account

in former times for furnishing the Kings of Peru with handsome women. 6. Leon de Guanaco, rich and pleasantly seated, and beautified with some Religious Houses, a Colledge of Jesuites, and in former time with a stately Palace of the Kings. 7. Ataquipa situate at the foot of a flaming mountain, in the valley of Quila, made happy by a flourishing soil, and temperate air, 8. Valverde seated in a valley of the same name, which yields plenty of Vines, from which they make good Wine, the Town is indifferent large, being inhabited by about five hundred Spaniards besides Natives, and beautified with a fair Church, an Hospital, and three Fryeries: The rest of the Towns are, St. Fago de las Valles, otherwise Magobamba, Guamanga, alias St. Juan de la Victoria, Oropesa, St. Francisco de la Victoria, alias Vilalamba, St. Juan del oro in Carabaya, and St. Michael de la Ribera.

The City of Lima is two Leagues long, and one broad, seated in a pleasant valley, being begirt with sweet Fields, and delightful Gardens, below which is its Port Callao, the one, and the other in the middle of all the coast of Peru: The Houses in this City are well built, its streets large, and so ordered that most of the chief take their rise from the Market-place, it is said to consist of ten thousand ordinary Families, besides Passengers, and those that come hither for trade, which are many, by reason the riches of Peru that yearly passe through this City to go to Spain, which hath not a little increased its wealth. Mortera reckons, besides twelve thousand women of divers Nations, and two thousand Negroes, and in the Precincts two thousand Families of those of the Country: The City incloses several fair Edifices and Churches, among which these following may not be forgotten: Viz. The Palaces of the Vice-Roy and Archbishop, then the Cathedral Church built after the Model of that of Sevil in Spain, and endowed with an annual Revenue of thirty thousand Ducats, also the Courts of Judicature, the Colledge, and Monasteries, also its four Hospitals, to wit, one for the Clergy, another for the Spaniards, a third for the Indians, and the fourth for the Mad-dows: The air about this Citie is healthful, temperate, always serene, and the soil the most fertile of all Peru.

Among the other Cities Cusco is the chief among those of the Provinces of the Mill-Counities, and the Andes, being by much the most famous, having been the residence of the Incas, or Peruvian Kings, who for the

The City Lima pro-forty pgs.

The House, Sumas, Rev

Hand me many h...

The City Cusco, with its...

the n their less t the g as well is p habu ards, Wom lace, eight Religie a starel several danc e situati usefal tains. The ful, the well sto bundanc and the with Ri s/b. Is Silver ab St. Ju and Qu Port de G are rich. The I Chachapo Peru. T gumber esteemed fifty tho sand in th munga, f and one h op of Ca thers wh wards, a far from is their and ease trap. The e can in Son of Capri three oct cas, de l is quite describe PA, with othen a Tropigu that is e times in balance

the more beautifying this City ordered all their Nobility to build each of them a Palace for their residence, at present it is of the greatest account in all this Country, as well for its beauty, and greatness, as for its populousness, being said to be the habitation of about three thousand Spaniards, and ten thousand Natives, besides Women and Children. Besides these Palaces, It is adorned with a Cathedral, and eight Parish-Churches, four Convents of Religious Orders, a Colledge of Jesuits, a stately Temple dedicated to the Sun, also several Baths about the City, and abundance of very fair houses in the fields. Its situation is betwixt two pleasant and useful Rivers, and begirt with Mountains.

The Country for the most part is fruitful, they have good pastures, which are well stocked with Cattel, they gather abundance of *Coca*, have excellent Venison, and the Country generally well furnished with Rivers, in which they take good fish. It yields many Mines of Gold and Silver about Cusco, and particularly of Gold at *St. Juan del oro*, at *Oropesa Vermillion*, and *Quichsilver*, between *Aracoto*, and *Port de Guajara*, and likewise at *Barranca* are rich salt-pits.

The Inhabitants of *Guano*, and of *Chachapoyas*, are the most civilized of Peru. There are yet every where a great number of these Indians, there being esteemed under the jurisdiction of *Truxillo*, fifty thousand Tributaries, thirty thousand in that of *Guano*, as many in *Guamanga*, fifty thousand in that of *Arequipa*, and one hundred thousand in the Jurisdiction of *Cusco*, &c. There are likewise others who yield no obedience to the Spaniards, among which are the *Manatims* not far from *Cusco*, who maintain themselves in their Mountains, who often butcher, and eat those Spaniards they can entrap.

The Province of *la Plata*, or *de las Charcas* in South of Peru, and under the Tropique of *Capricorn*. It is divided into two or three other lesser parts, so viz. *de las Charcas*, *de la Sierra*, and of *Tucuman*. This last is quite beyond the Tropique, and we will describe it with *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*, with which it shall best agree. The two others are for the most part on this side the Tropique. The chief City is *de la Plata*, that is of *Silver*, and this City gives sometimes its name to the Province, is the residence of an Archbishop, dignified with the

seat of the Governour, the Courts of Judicature, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, besides several Religious Houses. The City is seated in a pleasant and fruitful soil. Its houses well built, and so large, that within its walls are the habitations of eight hundred natural Spaniards, besides sixty thousand Natives Tributaries, under its Jurisdiction. Its Mines by reason of the incommodities of the waters were abandoned so soon as those of *Potosi* were discovered, which since this discovery from a small village is now become a very considerable and large Town, of two Leagues Circuit, being Inhabited by about four or five thousand Spaniards, besides about thirty thousand Natives, and others, that work in the Mines. It is seated below the Mountain, which bears the same name, from whence they have their Silver. A City esteemed free because of its large and ample privileges, the Officers for the Treasure of the Province residing here, being also much frequented by Merchants, which come hither to trade for their Silver, bringing them several commodities in exchange that they have need of, so that I may say, it is plentifully furnished with all commodities, as well for delight, as necessity. The other Cities are *Nuestra Señora de la Paz*, or *Palla nueva*, *Oropesa* and *Chicuito* a City of Indians, Then *Sancta Cruz de la Sierra*, and in *Tucuman* *St. Jago del Espera*, *Nuestra Señora de Talevera*, and *St. Michael* of *Tucuman*.

That which is most observable in this Province are the Silver Mines, *de la Plata*, *de Porco*, and above all those of *Potosi*, being the most famous in the world, though yielding nothing but Silver. It is observed of this Mine, that it hath four principal veins, the first which is called the rich, was registred the one and twentieth of April 1545. and the others in little time after. These Enregistres are made to take notice of the time granted to those which discover the Mines, to whom they belong, defraying the charge, and paying to the King the right of a fifth part. It is said that the rich Mine had its Metal out of the Earth, in fashion of a Rock or like a *Chaff* of three hundred foot long, twelve or fifteen broad, and ten or twelve deep.

And that which is likewise observable, is that all these Veins are towards the Sun rising, and not one towards its setting: they have now exhausted all that was the best, and easiest to take away, and the

The Province of *Potosi* is in Mines of Silver.

Mines

Kings  
Lion  
and  
Wes,  
time  
Aron-  
noun-  
happy  
te air.  
e same  
, from  
own is  
about  
atives,  
n Hospi-  
of the  
herwise  
Juan de  
de la Vi-  
ladora in  
74.  
e long,  
e valley,  
e delight-  
ort Coloa.  
de of all  
his City  
ge, and so  
take their  
is said to  
Families,  
hat come  
, by reason  
sse through  
h hath not a  
era reckons,  
ion of divers  
rows, and in  
Families of  
Cixie incloses  
chus, among  
ot be forgot-  
Vice-Roy and  
Church built  
evild in Spato,  
Revenue of  
the Courts of  
Monasteries,  
t, one for the  
iards, a third  
h for the Mid-  
ie is healthful,  
d the soil the  
isco is the chief  
es of the Hill-  
being by much  
on the residence  
Kings, who for  
the

Miners are descended into the Earth, some to Five hundred, others to Ten or twelve hundred Degrees of depth. The Rich-Vein yielded the moiety of good *Silver*; but now scarce will *Quintal* of Ore yield two Ounces of pure *Silver*; yet some will say, that the *Catholic King* receives, for his fifth part, near two millions of Crowns yearly.

Account is made of Twenty thousand men, working in these *Mines*, and of Fifty thousand *Indians*, which go and come to the City of *Iotosi*, to trade.

The Fertility of the Province.

The air of *de las Charcas* is generally cold, for the Climate, which proceeds from the height of the Mountains. The Soil of *Oropesa* yields *Wheat*, and *Mayz*; that *De la Paz*, *Wine*; and all the Province in general feeds a great quantity of Cattel.

*Santa Cruz de la Sierra*, or the Holy-Cross of the chief Mountain of its little Province, is East of *Potosi*, but inclosed with many barbarous Nations on the West and South; among others, the *Chiriguaguas*, which are a sort of People not to be reduced to order, though between *La Sierra* and *Tucuman*. The Country is hot, but sometimes oppressed with cold and sharp winds; the Land hath *Grains*, *Mayz*, and at present *Wine*, feeds much *Venison*, among others; *Ostriches*; who lay their Eggs to great, that one is a sufficient days food for twenty or thirty men.

The Riches at the Viceroyalty of Peru.

The *Tuca's Garcilasso de la Vega* hath given us a very fine History of *Peru*, of its *Tuca's*, or *Kings*, with their *Riches*, great *Revenues*, *Policies*, and *Forces*: as to their Wealth, it was shewed by the vast Treasures which the *Spaniards* became Masters of; all their moveables, besides Rooms full of several sorts of Images, being of *Gold* and *Silver*; together with several Rooms filled with Treasure. Their *Policy* was shewed in the management of their Affairs, and enlargement of their Territories, treating their Subjects kindly, and lovingly, and allowing them share in the spoils of other Countries, merely to endear them, and gain their affections; and by these, and the like means, they were much revered, & faithfully served by their Subjects. And lastly, as to their *Forces*, we may conclude them to have been great, if we look back upon their great and many victories they have gained, as also of the *Civil Wars* maintained between the first *Spanish Chiefs* that conquered this great *Empire*, though with no small pains, expences, and loss of men. The People are said to be of a strong and

See in 1688.

healthy constitution, courageous and warlike, great Dissemblers, ignorant of Letters, much given to *Drink*; were formerly so barbarous, that they adored only *Beasts*; or those inanimate things, which they might make use of, or which they feared might hurt them; sacrificing not only *Fruits* and *Beasts*, but likewise *Men* and *Women* taken in *War*, and sometimes their own Children. As for Food, they live indifferently, contenting themselves with *Fruits*, *Herbs*, *Roots*, *Pulse*, & such like things that the Earth produceth, without troubling themselves with Tillage. Their *Habits* are Mantles, which they wear down to their Feet; the *Women* are less esteemed here than in other places, being held no better than Slaves.

Among the rarities of this Country, here is a Plant, which, if put into the hands of a Sick Person, will immediately discover whether he shall die or recover, for, if he, at the putting it to his hand, look of a cheerful countenance, then it is a sign of his recovery; but if sad, and troubled, a sure sign of death. They have another Plant, of which the North-part, regarding the Mountains, beareth its *Fruits* only in Summer, and the Southern-parts, towards the Sea, in the Winter season only.

### Chili.

**C**HILI is between *Peru*, which is North of it, and the *Pacifick* which are on its South towards the Streight of *Magellan*, and between *Paraguay* and the *Magellanick-Land*, which are on the East of it, and the *Mer del Sud*, which washes it on the West; its length, from North to South, extends from the 26th Degree of Latitude unto the 46th, and reaches Five hundred Leagues. Its breadth, from West to East, is between the 296, and 302, and sometimes 305, 306, 307 Degrees of Latitude; and sometimes likewise stretches Five hundred Leagues. But the *Andes*, bounding it almost all along the East, these Mountains in some places advance so near the Sea, that they leave it but a small breadth.

*Chili* is divided into three Quarters, and these Quarters into thirteen Jurisdictions; one of the three Quarters retains the name of *Chili*, and contains the Jurisdictions of *Serena*, *Quillaca*, and *St Fago de Chili*, extending it self from the River of *Copapo*, unto

unto the *P*  
*bo*, w  
and o  
fel lac  
of *G*  
*wines*,  
the *R*  
and is  
princip  
part ar  
*Villa*  
*fantes*,  
*divia*,  
*Chilva*  
*Chilva*  
that o  
These  
*rial*, are  
*Andes*,  
last *Qu*  
the *Juri*  
*de la*  
take th  
ties, be  
But a w  
Cities in  
ed in a  
and neig  
ven. a  
Bay, by  
encompa  
a place o  
the resid  
hath a st  
better to  
therwise  
*rial*, situ  
*ren*, a pla  
fore the  
here; (as  
consisting  
men, whi  
the field  
well fort  
it one of  
and is th  
twenty fi  
and sixty  
ther *Col*  
seated in  
neighbour  
*ren*, as a  
Colonie  
have gain  
tifully st  
ed in a b  
Bay of  
tie Leag

unto that of *Maule*, where are on the coast the *Paris of Copiapo*, of *Guafo*, of *Coquimbo*, where Sir *Francis Drake* was repulled, and of *Valparaiso*, where he surprized a Vessel laden with twenty five thousand *Pezo's* of Gold of *Valdivia*, and a great quantity of *wines*. The second Quarter advances from the River of *Maule* unto that of *Gallegos*, and is called the *Imperial* from one of its principal Cities: The Jurisdictions of this part are those of *Conception*, of *Ongol* or *Villa Nueva* of the *Confines*, or *de los Infantes*, of the *Imperial*, of *Villarica*, of *Valdivia*, of *Osnoro*, and of *Castro de Ancud* or *Chilva*. The *Conception*, *Valdivia*, and *Chilva*, have their Ports of the same name; that of *Canten* serves for the *Imperial*: These two Quarters of *Chili* and the *Imperial*, are between the *Mer del Sud* and the *Andes*. Beyond these Mountains in the last Quarter *Chicuito* or *Cuyo*, where are the Jurisdictions of *Mendoza*, and *St. Juan de la Frontera*. All these Jurisdictions take their Names from the principal Cities, besides which they have some others: But a word or two of some of the chief Cities in *Chili*, and first of *Copiapo*, seated in a fertile valley of the same name, and neighboured by a good, but small Haven. 2. *Conception*, seated in a capacious Bay, by which, and the mountains which encompass it, which are well fortified, it is a place of good strength, so that it is made the residence of the Governour, where he hath a strong Garrison of *Spaniards*, the better to keep in awe the Natives, who otherwise would annoy them. 3. *L'Imperial*, situated on the banks of the River *Canten*, a place of great strength and power before the *Spaniards* planted themselves here, (as may appear by that great Army, consisting of about three hundred thousand men, which at one time they brought into the field against the *Araucans*) but now so well fortified by them, that they esteem it one of the strongest in this Country, and is the See of a Bishop. 4. *Villa Rica*, twenty five Leagues from the *Mer del Sud*, and sixteen from the *Imperial*, also another Colonie of *Spaniards*. 5. *Valdivia*, seated in the valley of *Guadalupe*, and neighboured by a capacious and safe Haven, as also by rich mines of Gold, another Colonie of *Spaniards* who from these mines have gained great riches. 6. *Osnoro* plentifully stored with mines of Gold, but seated in a barren soil. 7. *Castro* built on the Bay of *Ancud* in a fruitful Island, about sixtie Leagues in length, and nine or ten in

breadth. 8. *St. Fago*, seated on the banks of the River *Topocalma*, at the Mouth whereof is a noted Haven, called, *Valparaiso*. 9. *Serena*, situate on the Banks of *Rio de Coquimbo*, not far from its influx into the Sea; a Town, though but small, yet of good strength, especially, since it is become a Colony of *Spaniards*, rich also in Mines of Gold. And 10. *De la Frontera*, towards *Paraguay*, on the further side of the *Andes*.

*Chili*, or *Chille*, in their Language, signifies Cold, which in regard of the Mountains of *Sierra Nevada de los Andes*, are said to be extremely cold; and where reigns a certain Wind, so sharp, and piercing, that it insensibly extinguishes the natural heat, so that people often die in a moment; and then freezes, and hardens their bodies in such manner, that they corrupt not. This Relation was verified by one *Almagre*, who being the first of the *Castilians* which passed from *Peru* into *Chili*, was constrained to leave here many of his men; who some years after, upon some occasion, repassing these Mountains, he found them some on Horse-back, and others holding the Bridle of their Horses, which stood firm as well as the men, as if they had been alive.

The Valleys and the Plains nearest the Sea, are well inhabited, and have the Air healthfull, serene, and temperate; the soil excellent, and fertile; though not without some difference, according as it is nearer or further from the *Equator*. The Quarter of *Chili* ought to be hotter, and that of the *Imperial* as hot as *Spain*: but the vicinity of the Mountains on one side, and the Sea on the other, renders it a little colder than otherwise might be expected, as to the Climate; but yet hot enough to be one of the best Parts of *America*. The Valley of *Copiapo* yields sometimes Three hundred for one; those of *Guafo*, and *Coquimbo* are held no wayes inferior to it; that of *Chili* is so excellent, that it communicates its name to the Country. Above these Valleys are Mines of *Silver*, *Quick-silver*, *Copper*, *Lead*, and great plenty of *Gold*; and here, and throughout all *Chili*, so great quantity of *Sand-Gold*, which for the most part the Rivers stream down; that a certain Author hath been bold to say, that *Chili* was but a Plate of *Gold*.

*Valdivia*, who was here after *Almagre*, and who at the beginning succeeded better than his Predecessor had done, extracted a great quantity of *Gold* out of this Country.

M m m and

nd wait  
of Let-  
ormerly  
y Beasts;  
h they  
y feared  
not onely  
Men and  
nes their  
y live in-  
ves with  
ke things  
but trou-  
Their Ha-  
down to  
esteemed  
held no

Ther He-  
bit.

Country,  
the hands  
ely disco-  
ver, for, if  
id, look of  
is a sign of  
troubled, a  
ve another  
part, re-  
h its Fruits  
them-parts.  
inter season

There are  
Plants near  
ity of one.

Just  
on de-  
pud.

u, which is  
egans which  
Streight of  
way and the  
on the East of  
h washes it on  
m North to  
th Degree of  
h, from West  
and 302, and  
Degrees of La-  
rite stretches  
t the Andes,  
e East, these  
vance so near  
but a small

Chili  
d.

It  
and

Quarters, and  
Jurisdictions;  
ains the name  
Jurisdictions of  
ro de Chili, ex-  
er of Copiapo,  
unto

Chil  
did not  
there pe-  
ere an-  
any ju-  
what in-  
at over  
reputa-

Chili very  
cold.

A strange  
P'ster  
would exp.  
med here.

In fertility

Mines of  
Gold. Sh.  
very, and a  
very much

Valdivia  
ground great  
rich here.

and caused to be wrought several Mines of Gold, so rich, that each *Indian* rendred him thirty or forty *Ducats* daily; and when he had employed but twelve or fifteen *Indians* in this work, they would have yielded three or four hundred *Ducats* a day; and in a moneth, about Ten thousand; and in a year, about a hundred, or a hundred and twenty thousand *Ducats*. This agrees with what the *Fuca Garcilasso de la Vega* reports in his History, saying, that the Count *Valdivia* had for his Portion a part of *Chili*, and that his Subjects rendred him the yearly tribute of a hundred thousand *Pezos* of Gold. But the thirst after this *Metal* being insatiable, and *Valdivia*, the more he received, the more still he coveted, forced to work in these Mines those *Indians*, who, not accustomed to so hard a labour, nor to serve so cruel a Master, resolved to rid themselves of him, and to cast off their heavy yoke: In pursuance of which, those of *Arauco*, and thereabouts, began the revolt; and after divers encounters, slew and took a hundred and fifty of his *Horsemen*.

These *Araucques*, with their Neighbours, assembled themselves to a Body of Twelve or thirteen thousand men; who after having been divers times beaten by *Valdivia*, and in all likelihood of being quite subdued; at length, an old *Indian*, who in all possibility, had before observed the order which the *Spaniards* held in their *Battels*, advised them to divide their men into many Squadrons; and shewed them how each Squadron, one after another, must assault the *Spaniards*; and that the first Squadron being broken, must rally in the tail of the last; which succeeded so well, that in the end, they so wearied the *Spaniards*, and their *Horses*; that when they began to think of a retreat, they were prevented, and utterly defeated. Some say, that *Valdivia* being fallen into their hands, was fastened to a *Tree*, and his *Almouer* to another, so near together, that they might discourse together, and console one another's misfortunes. And that the *Araucques*, from time to time, (though contrary to their custom, to eat humane flesh) did cut off gobbets of flesh from their *Leggs*, *Thights*, and *Arms*, which they caused to be roasted, boyled, or broiled, according to their several Appetites, which they did eat in the sight of these poor tormented Creatures, whilst they were finishing their dayes in such a lingering death: Others say, that they took off the top of

his skull, and poured melted Gold into his brains, mouth, and ears; making afterwards a Goblet of his Head, and Trumpets of his Bones, &c.

After the death of *Valdivia*, the *Spaniards* had great disadvantages in *Chili*, till that *Gracias de Mendoza*, son to the *Vice-Roy* of *Peru*, had reduced part of these people to obedience, which continued for no long season; for in 1599, these people surprized the Citie of *Valdivia*, seized on the gates, and chief places, invested every house, to the end nothing might escape their hands, set fire through all, killed and took prisoners four or five hundred men, women and children; took the *Fort*, wherein were three hundred thousand *Pezos* of Gold, besides which they carried away with them all the *Arms*, *Ammunition*, and *Artillery*.

After the taking of *Valdivia*, the *Imperial* was besieged, which they stoutly defended and maintained for the space of twelve months, and would have done longer, were it not for the famine and sickness that so extremely reigned amongst them, that reduced their Forces, together with the Inhabitants of the City, to about twenty men, who no longer able to defend themselves, submitted to the mercy of the *Araucques*; So that in the end, of thirteen principal Cities which were in *Chili*, six or seven were ruined, *Viz. Valdivia, l'Imperial, Ongel, Chillian, St Cruz, la Concepcion, and Villarica: Oforno*, in time received relief: The men found in the taken Cities were knocked on the head; they permitted the ransome of women, one of whom they gave for a pair of *Spurs*, a pair of *stirrops*, or a *Horses* bridle, for a sword they would give half a dozen: but this commerce was soon prohibited by the *Vice-Roy* of *Peru*; that *Arms* serviceable for war might not be put into the hands of these *Barbarians*.

Of those which they had got by means of this commerce, or which they gained at the taking of so many Cities, and in divers defeats of the *Spaniards*, they after made use of, and became so dextrous, that they mounted on horseback, mannged the *Lance*, *Musket*, *Halberd*, &c. and continued the War from 1599 to 1641 when the *Marques* *Pajdex* made peace with them. During this War there hapned a thing worthy of observation; to wit: In 1614, a Ship of *Discey* bringing relief to the *Spaniards* that were in the Fort of *Araucque*, it unfortunately fell out that it suffered a shipwreck on the coast; so that the men fell

all

The Advantage of Valdivia proved to Arauco, and death.

The reason of their last revolt.

The City of Valdivia taken and destroyed by the Indians with a little.

The Cause of the destruction of Valdivia.

The Indians.

The fortification of the Country.

A field of battle in the Bay of Valdivia.

all in  
imane  
Trum  
same  
would  
which  
Th  
Th  
Spania  
the mo  
niards  
and chi  
petual  
them n  
yoke, b  
Und  
prehens  
tains at  
Puren;  
the Imp  
with the  
but the  
but the  
they hav  
Country  
the Citie

La C  
walls of  
the Gov  
(as I hav  
ingratefu  
nured, at  
that it  
abodes o  
elevated  
of Art.  
The j  
it more t  
are divid  
parts; t  
ny; Ofor  
del Chib  
ly, the o  
The  
part six  
strong, a  
they hav  
of a whic  
shagged  
most par  
Arms at  
The  
the soil  
mountain  
Sea-side  
Rivers;  
Wheat,  
also their  
hither, w



all into the hands of the *Araucques*, who immediately slew them all, save only the *Trumpeter*, who being about to pass the same Fate, with his fellows, thought he would ouce more sound before he died, which saved his life.

The reason of their last revolt

The reason of the last revolt of the *Araucques* was, that after having served the Spaniards for near fiftie years, and being for the most part become Christians, the Spaniards had yet taken some of their wives and children, and sold them away into a perpetual and cruel servitude, which made them not only resolve to cast off the Spanish yoke, but likewise to renounce Christianity.

Under the name of *Araucques* are comprehended the Inhabitants of the mountains and vallies of *Ayacu, Tucapel, and Puren*; which are between the *Conception*, the *Imperial* and *Ongol*. Peace being made with the people, there rested in *Chili* none but the *Pulches* as enemies to the Spaniards; but these *Pulches* being beyond the *Andes*, they have little to do with them; and the Country is restored to a good estate, and the Cities better rebuilt.

The *Conception* is at present walled with walls of stone, hath a *Citadel*; and because the Governour of the Province resides here (as I have already said) though the soil be ingrateful, the Inhabitants have tilled, manured, and so embellished it with Gardens, that it is become one of the pleasantest abodes of *Chili*. *Valdivia* is situated on an elevated ground, which with the addition of Art, is held one of the strongest in *Chili*.

The Jurisdiction of *St Fago* hath under it more then eighty thousand *Indians*, which are divided into twenty six *Partimientos*, or parts; that of the *Imperial* hath as many; *Osorno* two hundred thousand, *Castro del Chirvo* twelve or fifteen thousand only, the other *Jurisdiccions* more or less.

The Natives of *Chili* are for the most part six foot high, well proportioned, strong, active, warlike, and cruel when they have the advantage of their enemies; of a white complexion, with their foreheads shagged and hairy, their garments for the most part are skins of beasts; their common Arms are *Bows* and *Arrows*.

The Country is subject to *Earth-quakes*, the soil in the midland is for the most part mountainous, and unfruitful; towards the Sea-side, level, fertile, and well watered with Rivers, which makes it yeeld plenty of *Wheat, Mayz*, and other *Grains*; which as also their *Vines*, were transported from *Spain* hither, which now are so abundantly increas-

ed that they often furnish *Pern*; which is easily done by reason of the South-winds, which for a good part of the year reign on this coast; nor doth any Country in all *America* afford more *Cattel*, then this doth, their *Sheep* like those of *Pern*, are very large, they have here long *Pepper*, abundance of *Honey*, good *Fruits & Plants*, but their chiefest riches is drawn from the *Gold* and *Silver*.

Its Commodities

In the mountains of the *Andes*, though very cold, are twelve or fifteen *Vulcans*, which perpetually vomit fire: These *Vulcans* take their names from the Vallies where they have their rise, or from Cities or Towns there adjacent.

BRAZILE

**B**RAZILE is commonly taken for the most Eastern part of *America Meridionalis*. In 1501 *Alvarez Cabral* a Portugall sailing along the coasts of *Affrica*, in his passage to the *East Indies*, by a great Tempest (the wind blowing Easterly) he was driven into these parts, where he erected and left a Column whereon were affixed the Arms of *Portugal*, to remain to future ages, signifying that he took possession of it for the Crown of *Portugal*. A little after, *Americus Vesputius* was expressly sent to make a more particular discovery of it, which he well succeeded, that in a short time some Colonies of *Portugal* were here established, and the name of *América* was given it in honour to *Americus Vesputius*, which name was soon after communicated to all this new Continent; but this quarter particularly took the name of *Brazile*, by reason of the great abundance of that wood here found more then in other places.

A Column erected here by Alvarez Cabral, a Portugall, with his Majesties Arms thereon

**B**RAZILE, taken in its greatest extent, is one half of *America Meridionalis*, which some call *Brasiliana*; but which they divide into *Brazile*, and *Paraguay*: this *Brazile*, separated from *Paraguay*, begins at the River of *Amazones*, and extends it self to the Provinces of *Paraguay*; and though that be but from the first degree of Latitude which are six hundred Leagues; yet the Coast making a great *Demi-circle*, hath no less then twelve hundred Leagues. The *Mer del Nord* washes it on the North, South-East, and East; *Paraguay* and *Pern*, bounds the rest towards the South and West.

Brazile bounded.

The high Country is wholly unknown, and likewise part of the Coast. It hath every where abundance of *Barbarians*, who make war with, and eat one another;

Great part of Brazile unknown.

into his afterwards sets of his the Spa-Chili, till the Vice- these peo- for no se people seized on sted every ht escape killed and dred men, ori, where- Peco's of away with , and Ar- , the Im- stantly de- Space of e done lon- ne and sick- ed amongst es, together y, to about e to defend ery of the of thirteen Chili, six or ia, & Imperi- Conception, received re- taken Cities y permitted whom they r of stirraps, e they would mmerce was y of Pern ; r might not e Barbarians. ot by means and in divers y after made us, that they naged the and continu- when the with them, a thing wor- In 1614, a o the Spani- f Araucque, it suffered a the men fell all

The City of Valdivia, taken and destroyed by the Natives, with a loss

The Coast of Valdivia, as appears

The Inhabitants of Chili

The fertility of the Country

A full description of the City of Valdivia

nother; the divers relations hitherto given us, makes mention of more than one hundred of these peoples, yet these are few in regard of those yet unknown. The most famous, and best known, are the *Margajas*, *Topinambous*, *Ovetacas*, *Paraiabas*, *Petignares*, *Tapuyes*, *Cariges*, *Morpions*, *Tobajares*, &c.

The *Portugals* have only seized on what they found most commodious on the Coast, and have from time to time divers *Governments*, which they call *Capitanies*. The most ancient is that of *Tamaraca*, then of *Pernambuco*, now the most famous of all is that of the *Bay of All Saints*: they count fourteen in all, which following the Coast, from the River of *Amazones*, towards *Paraguay*, are, *Para*, *Maranhao*, *Ciara*, *Rio grande*, *Parayba*, *Tamaraca*, *Pernambuco*, *Seragippe*, *Baya de Todos los Santos*, *San Paulo*, *Porto Seguro*, *Spiritu Sancto*, *Rio Faniero*, and *St Vincent*.

Of these fourteen *Capitanies*, eight belong immediately to the King, the six others to particular *Lords*, who have conquered and peopled them at their own expence. These receive their *Governors* from them to whom they belong, but acknowledge the Sovereignty of the *Vicer-Roy*.

Each *Capitanie* hath depending on it, one or two more Colonies of *Portugals*. In the *Capitanie* of *SAINT VINCENT*, the principal is *Santos*, seated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, distant from the Main, about three Leagues, accommodated with a very good Port, capable to receive vessels of four hundred *Tunns*. This Town is inhabited with about two hundred families of *Portugals*, who have beautified it with a fair Church, and two *Convents* of *Fryers*; and since the assault that *Sir Thomas Cavendish* made upon it in 1591, they have environed it with a wall, and well fortified it with strong *Bastions*. The next is *St Vincent*, which hath not above one hundred houses of *Portugals*, but its Port little commodious. The third and fourth Cities are *Itanchin*, and *St Paul*, beyond the Mountains, and Forests, *Pernambucaba*, which are very difficult to cross, the way being cut through the trees: the City is seated on the Top of a little hill, and neighbored by some Mines of gold, found in the Mountains, a Town of about one hundred houses, and two hundred families, beautified with a Church, two *Convents*, and a *Colledge* of *Jesuits*. The site is good, and the Country agreeable,

opening it self on three sides, into faire and fertile plains, and having only the Mountain and Forrest of *Pernambucaba* which bounds it on the other side.

This *Capitany* wants *Salt*, *Wine*; and *Oyle*, but in recompence they have all sorts of *Fruits*; and many Mines of *Silver* about *St Paul*. Besides these four Cities, *Phillippe ville* is a habitation far within Land, and above *St Vincent* towards *Paraguay*. *Paratinga* was ruined by the *Barbarians* in 1600.

The *Capitany* of *RIO FANIERO*, takes its name from its River, so called, because it was entred into, in the month of *January*, by *John Diaz de Solis*, in 1515, but being neglected by the *Portugals*, the *French* having a design to establish a Colony here, they seized it, under the conduct of *Villegagnon* in 1555, and in 1558, the *Portugals* regained it, and put the *French* to the sword. They built the City *St Sebastian* at the mouth of the Gulf, which the River makes falling into the Sea; and fortified it with strong *Bulwarks*. And more to the West, they have likewise built the City of *Angra de los Reyes*, and made it a strong Colony. This *Capitany* hath much *Brazile-wood*, *Catons*, and all *Provisions*, but no *Sugar*. The *Topinambous* possessed these quarters when the *French* were here, but the *Portugals* becoming Masters, these people not able to accommodate themselves, dispersed themselves farther in *Brazile*, and some to about *Maranhao*. These two *Capitanies*, *Rio Faniero*, and *St Vincent*, are on this side and beyond, or rather under, the *Tropique* of *Capricorn*.

The *Capitanie* DEL *SPIRITU SANTO*, hath one of the best soils of all *Brazile*, well stored with *Cotton-wool*, but deficient in *Sugars*. Its River is called *Parayba* from a name common to three Rivers in *Brazile*; one is beyond *St Vincent*, the second this, and the last waters the *Capitany* of *Parayba*: that with waters *Spiritu Santo* is pleasant, but rapid. The City hath but two hundred and odd Families of *Portugals*. Its principal buildings are, a Church dedicated to *St Francis*, a *Colledge* of *Jesuits*, and a *Monastery* of *Benedictines*. The *Margajas*, and *Tapuyes* have made themselves known in the Country.

*PORTO SEGURO* belongs to the Duke of *Aviz*, and hath three Colonies, viz. 1. *St Amaro*, or *St Omira*, once of great account for making *Sugars*, where they

The ports  
best known.

The Govern-  
ment  
which the  
Portugals  
hold.

It is  
the  
Capitany  
of  
St Vincent  
described.

The  
Capitany  
of  
Rio  
Faniero  
with its  
chief place  
described,  
and its  
Commodi-  
ties.

The  
Capitany  
of  
Spiritu  
Santo  
is  
described.

A  
Dutch  
settled  
in the Bay  
by Peter  
Joris, a  
Dutchman.

Porto  
Seguro,  
and  
its  
Coun-  
try.

they had  
dering and  
*Portugals*  
the *Savon*  
not very  
harbour,  
above two  
some Ant  
a white c  
The soil  
Grains an  
neighbour  
Hollander  
Colony,  
Los Isl  
a *Portuga*  
small Riv  
Lake of r  
this River  
above one  
dred Fam  
time suffe  
almost los  
the most  
*Brazile*,  
own Cou  
which the  
(as a *Jesu*  
of *St Geo*  
seeing, th  
bravely r  
River wh  
or ten M  
The C  
*SANTO*  
or Gulf, v  
principal  
to the Sea  
its depth  
every whe  
the most  
This Bay  
fifteen or  
from whe  
*Sango*, *Ger*  
with their  
table for  
a *Dutchm*  
nited *Pro*  
*ny*, who in  
were 26  
which we  
the *Prote*  
who not  
received  
fell amo  
that he fu  
all, or mo  
only of th

they had five *Sugar Engines*, for the ordering and making it; but deserted by the *Portugalls*, for fear of the incursions of the *Savages*. 2. *Sanits Cruz*, a Town not very large, neither with a commodious harbour. 3. *Porto Seguro* containing not above two hundred houses; but held of some Antiquity. It is built on the top of a white cliff, which commands the haven. The soil of this *Capitany* is so fertile in *Grains* and *Fruits*, that it furnisheth its neighbours; It hath likewise *Sugar*. The *Hollanders* have several times assaulted this Colony, but in vain.

*Los Illes* belongs to *Don Luco Giraldo*, a *Portugal*; Its chief Town is seated on a small River, but neighboured by a great Lake of twelve Leagues circuit, from which this River takes its rise, and contains not above one hundred and fifty, or two hundred Families of *Portugals*. It hath a long time suffered persecution, and the Colonie almost lost by the *Guaymores*, a race of the most savage and barbarous people of *Brazile*, which being driven out of their own Country, fell into this *Præfecture*, which they had utterly ruined, had not (as a *Jesuite* tells us) some of the *Relicks* of *St George*: been brought hither, which seeing, the *Planters* re-took courage, and bravely repulsed these *Barbarians*: The River which waters this City turns eight or ten *Mills*, or *Sugar-Engines*.

The *Capitany* del *BAYA DE LOS SANTOS*, took its name from the *Bay* or *Gulf*, wherein is seated *St Salvador* its principal City: This *Bay* having its mouth to the Sea, eight or ten Leagues wide, and its depth twelve, fifteen, or twenty fathom every where, encloses many *Illes*, of which the most outward to the Sea is *Taperico*: This *Bay* makes likewise divers openings, fifteen or twenty Leagues within Land, from whence it receives the Rivers of *Pitanga*, *Corcoppo*, *Cachera*, and others, each with their little *gulf*: This *Bay* is memorable for the rash attempt of *Peter Heyns* a *Dutchman*, Admiral of a Fleet of the United Provinces for the *West India-Company*, who in 1627 entered this *Bay*, where there were 26 sail of *Spanish Ships*, four of which were men of *War*, all lying under the Protection of the *Castles* and *Forts*; who notwithstanding the shots that he received from the *Forts*, *Castles*, and *Ships*, fell amongst them with such boldness, that he sunk their *Vice-Admiral*, and took all, or most of the rest, with a condition only of their lives.

The *City* of *St Salvador*, is in the most Northern part of the *Gulf*, seated on a little Hill, and towards the Sea; it regards its Ports made in a demi-circle, whose two points, or extremities have each their *Castle*, *St Antonio* towards the Sea, and *Tapesse* towards the *Bay*. This *City*, all environed with a wall, is great and populous, and dignified with the Residence of the *Vice-roy* of *Brazile*, for the *Crown* of *Portugal*, as also with a *Bishops See*, together with divers *Officers*. It is beautified with many *Churches* and *Religious Houses*, but above all, the *Colledge* of the *Jesuites* is magnificent. In 1624, this *City* was taken by the *Low-Countries West-India Company*; in 1625 retaken again by the *Spaniards* and *Portugals*; and since taken and retaken divers times, and now remains in the hands of the *Portugals*.

This *Capitany* is best peopled, and the richest of all *Brazile*: It hath forty or fifty *Sugar-Mills*, the most of which are about this *Bay*; every where there is quantity of *Cotton*, and on the coast is found *Amber-grreece*.

The *Capitany SEREGIPPE DEL RET* hath only a little *City*, and *Olivera* is that alone which gives it a degree among the *Capitans* of *Brazile*; and here is esteemed to be some *Mines* of *Silver*.

The *Capitany* of *Fernambuco*, or *Fernambuck*, is one of the best of all *Brazile*, possessed by the *Albuquerque*s. The *Portugals* have here established thirteen Colonies, among which *Olanda* is the chief, being a fair and pleasant *City*, seated near the Sea-shore, but with no commodious Haven, only its entrance is defended by a *Castle* which is well fortified; Account hath been made of two thousand Families of *Portugals*, besides the *Clergy*, and the *slaves* which were in great number, which they employed in their *Sugar-mines*; and among the *Portugals* two hundred Families, which possessed each twenty five, thirty, forty, or fifty thousand *Cruzados*; and more; the chiefest ornament of this *City* is the *Colledge* of the *Jesuites*, built very rich, and magnificent, and endowed with many Houses in the *City*, many *Sugar-Engines*, and much *Cattel* in the field; also a *Collegiate Church*, with six or seven others, besides *Chappels*, several *Monasteries*, and *Hospitals*, &c.

From the *City* a *Tongue* of earth, advances to the Sea, at the end of which is *Recif*, a well-peopled *Town*, where the *Ships* load and unload their *Merchandises*:  
Nann This

The City of St Salvador is fair, and beautified with many Houses by Subjects

Seregippe del Ret, and its City.

The Capitany of Fernambuco with its Colonies, and Cities described.

Many people employed in their Sugar-mines, and Engines.

to faire  
sicaba  
; and  
all forts  
r about  
Phillippe  
, and a-  
Para-  
ians in  
  
IERO, The City  
of Rio  
with its  
chief place  
described,  
and its  
Commodi-  
dites.  
  
In Illes  
with its  
gulf  
the  
  
In the  
Sanctos  
described.  
  
The City  
of Sere-  
gippe  
del Ret  
and its  
City.  
  
The Cap-  
itany of  
Ferna-  
mbuco  
with its  
Colonies,  
and Cities  
described.  
  
Many peo-  
ple employ-  
ed in their  
Sugar-  
mines, and  
Engines.  
  
Porto Se-  
guro, and  
its Com-  
dities.

This place is become famous in our time, having been for many years disputed between the Portugals, and the Hollanders; but these have in the end been driven out by the other.

Its trade and Commodities.

Besides the Colonies, there are abundance of *Aldees* for the *Indians*; it is observed that every year there is laden from *Fernambuck* eighty, ninety, and sometimes a hundred *Ships*, the most part with *Sugars*, and some with *Brazile-wood*, and that only in the space of four years, which were 1620, 21, 22, and 23 there was transported from *Angola*, in *Ethiopia* unto this *Capitany* fifteen or sixteen thousand *Slaves* to work in their *Sugars*, and *Brazile*.

The Fertility of the Soil.

The Soil is fat and fertile, the *Sugar-canes* coming of themselves both on the *Hills*, and in the valleys, and the *Brazile-wood*, being brought in a prodigious quantity from the Forrest *Gran Mato* of *Brazile*, twenty Leagues from *Olinda*. All these conveniences, with the goodness of its *pastures* makes them call this *Capitany* the paradise of *Brazile*.

Olinda and St. Augustine, founded by the Dutch.

But in 1630, 31, 32, the *Dutch West-India Company* took, and ruined *Olinda*, and after it *St. Augustine*, and almost all the Fortresses, which the *Portugalls* held in this *Capitany*: and were not driven out till within nine or ten years, but from time to time molested.

The Capitany of Tamaraca, which is the chief place inhabited.

**TAMARACA** is the most ancient *Capitany*, but the smallest of all *Brazile*; that of *Fernambuck* enclosing it on one side, and *Parayba* on the other. *Pöbeliniers* saith, that the *French* once possessed it, and that the port *dos Françoises* retains yet their name: the *Portugalls* driving them out, built their Colony in an *Iste* only three or four Leagues long, and two or three broad. The *Capitany* not extending much out of the *Iste*, but its fertility is admirable, a place of no great note, but for its commodious *haven*, which is well defended by an impregnable *Castle*, which is seated on the top of an hill.

The Capitany of Parayba, which is the chief City.

The **CARATBA** of *Parayba*, had likewise its beginning from the *French* in 1584, which soon after was seized by the *Portugals*; and its principle City *Parayba* was called by them, *Phillippine*, or *Neustria* *Seignora da Nieves*; and by the *Hollanders* when they were Masters of it, *Frederickstadt*: It is two or three Leagues from the Sea; there where the River *Parayba* falls, having two *Castles*, on the two parts, which end it, and defend its entrance; that on

the right hand is *Cape Delo*, where is the Fort *St. Katherine*, the other *Cape del Nori*, where is the Fort of *St. Anthony*. This City is walled, and is seated on the banks of the said River; at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, not above three Leagues from the Ocean, but deep enough to bring ships (of an indifferent burthen) to the very City. It is said to be inhabited by not above five hundred *Portugals*, besides *Slaves* and *Negroes*, which they employ about their *Sugars*.

The Capitany of Rio Grande adjacent.

This *Capitany* on the North touches *Rio Grande*, on the South *Fernambuck*, enclosing that of *Tamaraca*, on the West: the River *Parayba* dividing it into two equal parts, the inhabitants adding themselves to till the fields, where they possess their *Heritages*, *Farm-houses*, and *Ingennos* which are magnificently built. These *Ingennos* are the *Mills* which serve to bruise the *Sugar-canes*; they are built along the River, where are the fields and closes, in which lye the *Cows* and some *Coppes* from whence they fetch wood to boyle the *Sugar*. And sometimes, these *Ingennos* are so great, and so ample, that they contain besides the house of the Master, which is well built, many others: either for the *Portugalls*, which serve them, or for those *Negroes* and *Slaves*, which belong unto them; and their number amounts to fifty, sixty, eighty, and sometimes to a hundred Families: There are a score of these *Ingennos* in the *Capitany* of *Parayba*.

The Land of the Capitany.

The Inhabitants of the Capitany of Sugar.

The Land is unequal being in *Mountains*, *Valleys* and *Plains*. The *Plains* are for the *Sugars*, the *Valleys* for *Tobacco*, *Mandioche* and *Fruits*, and the *Mountains* for *Wood*. The lands which are tilled yield one hundred for one, their *pastures* feeds many *Flocks* of *Beeves*, *Sheep*, *Goats*, *Hoges*, and *Horses*, which are strong and laborious: they have *Fowles* of all sorts excellent to eat, and among the rest *Turquettes*.

The Land of the Capitany.

The Inhabitants of the Capitany.

The Natives of the County have some *Aldees*, that is Villages, built after their mode, each Village having only four, five, or six houses, but very long like *halls*, where are four, five, or six hundred, sometimes a thousand, twelve hundred, or fifteen hundred Inhabitants; their moveables being only their *Hamacas*, which are their *Beds*, their *Bow* and *Arrows*, and some *Mandioche*.

The Inhabitants of the Capitany.

In each *Aldee* they have a *Captain*, which they choose among themselves, and

The Capitany of Rio Grande adjacent.

The Land of the Capitany.

The Inhabitants of the Capitany of Sugar.

The Land of the Capitany.

The Inhabitants of the Capitany.

The Capitany of Parayba, which is the chief place.

and the passes the Capital that three

The or of by the Canz with ciano rays forcing they w discover Copoob the Bar and Sile de Sile Portug or the Ri

The until o and fo stretch continually Capitans Para, e the No notial Capitans then th are wo

The Barbar frequen son of and ma found. Sugar, Sugar, though indult here mi gars, b laid.

The Isle, w Gulf, and br some, This l hath r parat five, French in this

and they give them a *Portugal* to see what passes: there are of these *Alders*, in all the *Capitanies* of the *Portugalls*, six principal ones in that of *Parayba*, as many in that of *Rio Janeiro*, three in *Tamaraca*, three in *Fernambuck*, and so in others.

The *Capitany* of *RIO GRANDE*; or of *Potengi*, was likewise once possessed by the *French*, after they had quitted *R. Canabara*: and here they made alliance with the *Petivares* in the year 1597. *Feliciano Ceca* of *Carovalasco*, Captain of *Parayba* came to assault them; but without forcing them away that time; in 1601 they were quite expelled. The *French* had discovered an excellent Mine of *Silver* at *Copoba*, and another of *Emeralds*, near the Bay of *Monconron*, between *Rio Grande*, and *Siara*, and rich *Salt-pits* near the Point of *Salinas*. The principal Fortresses that the *Portugalls* hold here, is *De los tres Reyes*, or the three *Kings*, on the right hand of the River.

The Coast of *Brazile* from *Cape de Frio*, until on this side of that of *St Augustine*, and so to the middle of the head of *Potengi*, stretches from South to North, and continually regards the East: The rest of this *Capitany*, and that of *Siara*, *Maranhan* and *Para*, extend from East to West, regarding the North, and are the nearest to the *Equinoctial Line*. The Coast of these four last *Capitanies* hath no less extent on the Sea, then that of all the others together, but are worth much less.

The *Capitany* of *SIARA* is among many Barbarous People, and therefore not much frequented; yet is of some trade, by reason of the *Cotton*, *Crystal*, *Precious-Stones*, and many sorts of *Wood*, which are here found. They have likewise many *Canes* of *Sugar*, which are of no use, there being no *Sugar Engines* in the Country: and it is thought, that if the *Portugalls* would be industrious in extirpating them quite out, here might be made great profit of the *Sugars*, besides the other Commodities afore-said.

The *Capitany* of *MARANHAN* is an Isle, which, with some others, is found in a *Gulf*, about twenty five Leagues long, and broad, and according to the belief of some, there is here no River of this name. This Isle hath forty five Leagues circuit, hath twenty seven Villages, of which *Funaparana* is the chief, and in each village four, five, or six hundred men; so that the *French* made account of Ten thousand men in this Island,

The Air serene, temperate, and healthfull; the Waters excellent: and which scarce ever corrupt on the Sea. The Land as fruitful as any in *America*, yielding *Brazil-wood*, *Saffron*, *Cotton*, *Red-dye*, *Lake*, or *Rose colour*, *Balm*, *Tobacco*, *Pepper*, & sometimes *Ambergrease* is gathered on its Coast. The Land is found proper for *Sugar*, and if it were tilled would produce grains; some say, it hath Mines of *Aspser*, and white and red *Crystal*, which for hardness surpasses the *Diamonds* of *Alencon*: It is well watered with fresh Rivers, and pleasant Streams, well clothed with *Woods*, in which are store of *Fowl*. The people are strong of body, live in good health, commonly dying with age; the women being fruitful till eighty years of age, both Sexes go naked until they are married, and then their apparel is onely from the *Waist* to the *Knees*, which is *Manufactures* of *Cotton*, or *Feather-works*, in which they are very industrious, and ingenious.

The *Tapony Tapere*, that is, the Country of the *Taponies*, is another Isle, East of *Maragnan*; at Full-sea it is an Isle; on the Ebb onely, Sands separate it from the Continent. The soil is yet better then that of *Maragnan*, it hath but fifteen Villages, the chief bearing the name of the Country; they are greater and better peopled then those of *Maranhan*.

West of *Tapony Tapere*, and on the firm Land, *Comma*, a City, River, and Country of the same name, is of no small value; its fifteen or sixteen Villages are as well peopled as those of *Tapony Tapere*. Between *Comma*, and *Cajetta*, which approaches *Para*, are divers people descending from the *Tupinambos*, as those of *Maranhan* and *Comma* descend from the *Taponyes*; but the first are leagued together, and make cruel wars upon the others.

The *French* were likewise divers times possessed of the Isle of *Maranhan*. *Ribaut* was here in 1594, *Revardiere* in 1612. This last chose a most commodious place in the Island, and built the Fort of *St Lewis*; the *Portugalls* drove them out in 1614, and built new Forts, *St Fago*, and *Nuestra Senora*. Among the Rivers that fall into the *Gulf* of *Maranhan*, *Miri* is the greatest, then *Tabouconron*.

The *Capitany* of *PARRA* hath a square Fort, seated on a Rock, raised four or five fadom from the neighbouring grounds, and well walled, except towards the River; it hath four or five hundred *Portugalls*, who gather

The fruitfulness of the Country, with its Commodities.

The Industry and Apparel.

The Country of the Taponies.

The Country and City of Comma.

The Capital of Parana.

The Capitany of Rio Grande divided.

The banks of the river.

In the islands of the coast.

The banks of the river.

The banks of the river.

The banks of the river.

The Capitany of Maranhão.



gather in the Country *Tobacco*, *Cotton*, and *Sugar*. This *Capitany* holds beyond the Mouth of the *Amazon*, *Corrupa*, and *Estero*, and among the Mouths of that River *Cogemine*.

*Brazile* hath an Air sweet, and temperate; though under the *Torrid Zone*, the dayes and nights being almost equal; the freshness of the *Sea*, *Rivers*, and ordinary *Dews* contributing much to its wholesomeness, they lie very subject to *Storms*, and *Thunder*; and if it lighten in the evening, it is without *Thunder*; if it *Thunder*, without *Flashes*. That which likewise proves the goodness of the *Air*, is, that their *Scorpions*, *Snakes*, *Toads*, &c. are not venomous, but often serve for food to the Inhabitants: yet the soil is more proper for the production of *Grains*, *Pastures*, and *Pulse*, than the *Grains*, or *Pines of Europe*. They carry them *Wine*, and *Flour*, *Corn* being subject to spoil on the *Sea*. The *Natives* use *Rice*, and *Mamjoche* to make their bread.

They have likewise quantity of *Pulse*, *Trees* which bear excellent *Fruits*, *Herbs*, *Four-footed-Beasts*, *Birds*, and *Fish* in great abundance, many of which are not known to us; many sorts of *Palm-trees*, which yield them great *Commodities*: they have some *Mines of Gold*, but more of *Silver*; but the riches of *Brazile* is drawn from the *Sugars*, and the *Brazile-wood*, which comes from their *Arabootan*, a mighty Tree, which bears no fruit. They have abundance of *Parroquets*, among their *Monkeys*; they have black ones, and of divers colours, the most part very pleasant. The skin of the *Tapirousson*, curried, becomes so hard, that it makes *Bucklers*, not to be pierced by the strongest shot arrow.

The *Brazilians* are of a mean stature, gross headed, large shouldered, of a reddish colour, their skin tawney; they live commonly to a hundred and fifty years, and free from diseases, caring for nothing, but war, or vengeance. They wander most part of their time in *Hunting*, *Fishing*, and *Feasting*; in which *Mamjoche* furnishes them with *Bread*; *Cumin-seed*, with *Drink*, and the *Flesh of Beasts*, or of their Enemies cut in gobbets, and some *Fish*, are their most excellent meats. The men are very cruel, forgetfull of courtesies received, and mindfull of injuries. The women are very lascivious, they are delivered with little or no pain, and immediately go about their affairs, and not observing the custom of a *Month* lying in, as is used among

us. They let their hair grow long, which ordinarily hangeth over their *Shoulders*; both *Sexes* go naked, especially, till married: They are esteemed excellent *Swimmers*; and *divers* being able to stay an hour together under water. They *Paint* themselves with divers colours, all over the body, on which they leave no hair, not so much as on their *Eye-lids*, but onely a *Crown* about their *Head*; and fasten a *Bone*, which is well polished, or some little *Stone*, which is esteemed amongst them, in their upper *Lip*, and *Cheeks*. Others cut their skin in *Figures*, and mixing a certain tincture, it never comes out. They make *Bonnets*, *Franchises*, *Ruffes*, *Bands*, *Cloaks*, *Girdles*, *Garters*, and *Bracelets*, with *Frashers*, of divers colours, which they work, (and mixe the colours together) very excellently. The *Brazilians*, which have stayed among the *Portugals*, are, for the most part, become *Christians*; the others wander without *Religion*.

There is a great diversity of *Tongues* among them; insomuch, that *Farric* affures us, that in his time he observed sixty different ones; and though they have no *Sciences*, yet have they some knowledge of the course of the *Sun*, *Moon*, and *Stars*, giving them divers names, and calling the *Eclipses* nights of the *Sun* and *Moon*.

All the *Wood of Brazile* belongs unto the *King of Portugal*, private persons not being permitted to trade in it. Their riches comes from *Whale-Oyl*, *Confects*, *Conferences*, *Tobacco*, *Silver*, *Hides*, and other *Commodities*; but principally from *Sugar*, no Country in the *World* exporting so much as *Brazile* doth. The *Isle Madera* hath but ten *Sugar-Engines*, the *Isle of St Thomas* possibly less; but *Brazile* Four or five hundred.

As for the names of *Mestiz*, and *Mulattes*, which divers times may have been met with; it is to be observed, that the *Portugals* being long since here established, and having from time to time caused to be transported a great many of *Negroes*, as well men as women, to serve them; This mixture of divers Nations, and divers colours, hath made them to distinguish their Children, and to call those who come from *Father* and *Mother* of the *Europeans*, *Mozombo*; those who came from an *European* and a *Brazilian*, *Mestiz*, or *Mamelacco*; those from an *European* and a *Negroes*, *Mulattes*; those from a *Brazilian* and a *Negroes*, *Cariboco*; those from the *Father* and *Mother* of *Ethiopian*, *Criolo*. Moreover, it hath

of a temperate air.

Scorpions, Toads, &c. are not venomous here.

of several, and Commodities.

The Inhabitants of Brazile, and whosoever they are admitted into, their Customs, &c.

their Hair.

Some say, the King, Mary, and Stars.

The name of Brazile.

All the wealth of France is comprehended in the Province of Paris.

The names of Mestiz, Mulattes, Criolo, &c. explained.

The River of Paris.

hath man ships the o Braz likew the o of-ti black Ethio the p skin a Bef Rocks contin but cer dischar that go farly b of-tim

PA

THE then th on the call Par ta, from may cor guay, or ing Prov Rivers s sider the wit, in P may ma that wh co, and 2 which d Parama, Rivers These ar Nov; t li; and t The h hath its the conf scending the end many of thers, Pa la Carz rana; a The a Gulf o tween th



The signification of Paraguay, and De la Plata.

This name of Paraguay is given by the Natives of the Country, and signifieth a River of Feathers, either because there are here found great quantities of Birds, whose Feathers are various, and of divers colours, or because those of the Country, dress and adorn themselves with those Feathers. The name of la Plata hath been given by the Spaniards, and signifieth Silver: because the first that came to them from Peru, came down this River.

Chaco defined, and its several Inhabitants.

CHACO hath its soil fat, fruitful, and enterlaced with many Rivers. It is inhabited by divers Nations, whose Idioms are very different. The Tobares have about fifty thousand souls. The Mathaguai's thirty thousand but not so valiant, as the Chiriguagnes, a Nation much esteemed, and which will not suffer the Spaniards to inhabit amongst them, they are in continual war with the Mathaguai's, making Slaves of as many as they can catch, which made these call the Spaniards to their aid. The Mocornos and Zipatalagars have no fewer people than the Tobares, and all so valiant in war, that the Chiriguagnes dare not assault them. There is likewise another Nation, whose Language, as they say, scarce yields to the Latine, but the beauty of the Orebons, is in the greatness of their Ears. The most part of these people are well-made, very tall, most of them being about six foot high, they are of an airy and lively spirit.

Tucuman bounded, and its extent.

TUCUMAN is very large, being no less than three hundred Leagues long and broad; yet it touches not the Sea on any side: la Plata bounds it on the East, Chili on the West, Peru and Chaco on the North, and the Magellanique land on the South. The Aire and soil should be excellent, this Country disingaging it self from the Torrid Zone, and advancing towards the middle of the Temperate Zone, and almost all the Rivers having their courses towards the East, which brings some refreshment. And moreover they have but two seasons in the year, each of six months: the Summer from about the twentieth of March, unto the twentieth of September, and the Winter, from September to March.

The Tucumans.

Among the people of these quarters, the Tucumans are the most famous, since they have given their name to the Province; then the Zurios, Diaguites, &c. The Castilians have established here divers Colonies, that the Provinces de la Plata might have communication with those

of Peru and Chili. St Fago del Estero formerly Varco, is in the midway between Buenos Ayres, and Potosi; two hundred and fifty Leagues from this, and little less from the other. This place is honoured with the seat of the Governour of the Province, as also with a Bishops See, and divers other Officers of the King. The Land is furnished with Wool, Cotton, Wood, with which they make and dye their Manufactures, Coucheneile, &c. which they carry to the neerest Capitancies of Brasile, making great profit by them.

After St Fago del Estero, there is likewise on the way to Peru, 1. St Michael de Tucuman, seated at the foot of a rocky Mountain, but neer a fertile soil, both for Corne and pasturage. 2. Nuestra Señora de Talavera, situate on the River Salado, in a fruitful soil, abounding plentifully in Cotton, of which the Inhabitants make several Manufactures, in which they are so industrious, that they have gained by their Trade (to the Mines of Potosi a hundred and forty Leagues distant, and other places) great riches. 3. Las Yuntas. 4. St Salvador. 5. Salta. 6. Corduba, on another side, and there where two great Waies meet, the one of Buenos Ayres, to Potosi by St Fago del Estero, and the other of Sancta Fe and Spiritu Sancto to St Fago del Estero in Chili by St Luyz, which makes this place of some consideration: Besides that the Aire is temperate, and the soil fruitful, and pleasant, and which yields grains, and fruits, it is well watered with fresh streams, in which are good fish. In their woods they have fowls, much Venison and other Beasts, they have Wine, Salt, and in their Mountains appearance of some Mines of Silver. The Colony is of three hundred, others say six hundred Spaniards. Their principal trade is on Peru and Chiliside. The Natives are much civilized both in habit, and manners, imitating the Spaniards from whom they are willing to receive instructions.

The Provinces of PARANA, GUAY, and VRAIG pass under the name of Paraguay, in the relations which the Fathers Jesuits gave us in 1636, and 37. It says, that these Fathers having long observed that there was an innumerable company of Souls, which might be converted to Christianity, they cast themselves among these Barbarians, learned their tongue, drew them from the Woods, Mountains, and hidden Caves; assembled them in

St Jago del Estero.

St Comandante.

General place of more in the way to Peru, described, with the Commendations, and fertility of the Country.

In habit and manners.

The Province of Parana, Guay, and Vraig.

In population, and the Art by the Fathers Jesuits.

The River of Parana.

divers them Tillage Mann music all inst and Pr

The made i a thou sides t receive to worl Habitac produce give the among declare are to o assigned ed in d kept; a among stands as

Of the St Ignati poa or th crament TERNAL Nativita The Y Cataract. The aire soule feed little pass fish, by r habitants and most

The Tropique unto Bra good colonies of vards, an of the P City, an Brasile. Country and St Xavier L the Tbag St Paul, wards Br Below separation and Guay ract, as This Riv high Ro

formerly in Jago del  
Buenos  
and fifty  
with the  
vince, as  
divers o-  
Land is  
pad, with  
Manufact-  
they carry  
le, make-

ere is like-  
Michael  
of a rocky  
oil, both  
hestra Sen-  
the River  
abounding  
the Inha-  
clares, in  
that they  
the Mines  
y Leagues  
eat riches.  
S. Sal-  
side, and  
iaies meet,  
mesti by  
r of Sancta  
del Estre-  
which makes  
tion: Be-  
te, and the  
which yields  
watered with  
ood fish. In  
uch Venison  
Wine, Salt,  
nce of some  
y is of three  
dred Spani-  
on Peru and  
much civili-  
s, imitating  
are willing

Several  
parts of  
near in La  
was to  
Terra, def-  
cribed, tho'  
with thro'  
Commod.  
1715, and  
frontiers of  
the Country.

General  
of  
the Province  
of  
Parana,  
and  
Guaay,  
is  
under  
the  
Tropique  
of  
Capricorn,  
ad-  
joining  
itself  
unto  
Brasile.

There hath  
been here,  
for  
a  
good  
continuance  
of  
time  
two  
or  
three  
Colonies  
of  
Castilians,  
Cruidad Real,  
or  
Omb-  
wards,  
and  
sometimes  
Guayr,  
alter  
the  
name  
of  
the  
Province,  
Villarica,  
or  
the  
right  
City,  
and  
St  
Paul,  
which  
some  
esteem  
in  
Brasile.

The  
habitations  
for  
those  
of  
the  
Country,  
are,  
Nuestra  
Senhora  
de  
Loreto,  
and  
Santiago  
on  
the  
Parana,  
St  
Francis  
Xavier,  
L  
Incarnation,  
and  
St  
Joseph  
on  
the  
Tibaguari,  
the  
Seven  
Arch-  
Angels,  
and  
St  
Paul,  
in  
the  
Land  
of  
great  
Tajoba,  
to-  
wards  
Brasile.

Below  
Cruidad  
Real,  
there  
where  
is  
the  
separation  
of  
the  
two  
Provinces  
of  
Parana,  
and  
Guaay,  
the  
River  
Parana  
makes  
a  
Cata-  
ract,  
as  
remarkable  
as  
any  
in  
the  
World.  
This  
River  
precipitating  
itself  
from  
a  
very  
high  
Rock,  
dives  
itself  
likewise  
engaged

among  
very  
high  
Rocks  
for  
the  
space  
of  
fifteen,  
or  
sixteen  
Leagues,  
where,  
with  
a  
great  
declension  
it  
strikes  
against  
some,  
traverfes  
others,  
divides  
its  
waters  
into  
many  
Branches,  
re-assembles  
them,  
and,  
after  
having  
been  
so  
long  
in  
foam,  
and  
froth,  
dis-  
engaged  
from  
these  
Rocks,  
it  
repasses;  
but  
in  
every  
hour  
of  
the  
day  
once  
onely  
is  
heard,  
at  
the  
bottom  
of  
the  
River,  
a  
certain  
Low-  
ing,  
which  
raisseth  
up  
the  
waters,  
but  
which  
endures  
but  
for  
a  
momant,  
and  
the  
Ri-  
ver  
retakes  
its  
ordinary  
course,  
which  
is  
Navigable  
above  
and  
below  
the  
Cata-  
ract.

The  
Province  
of  
Urvaig  
is  
on  
the  
Sea,  
and  
between  
Brasile,  
and  
the  
Mouth  
of  
the  
Paraguay,  
It  
takes  
its  
name  
from  
the  
River  
of  
Urvaig,  
that  
is,  
of  
Snails,  
by  
reason  
of  
the  
prodigious  
quantity  
here  
found.  
Its  
habitations  
are,  
La  
Conception,  
therewhere  
the  
Urvaig  
falls  
into  
the  
Para-  
guay,  
St  
Nicholas,  
on  
the  
River  
Piracion,  
St  
Francis  
Xavier,  
up  
within  
Land,  
and  
likewise  
on  
the  
Urvaig,  
Ibicuit,  
or  
the  
Fis-  
tation,  
on  
the  
Paraguay,  
and  
almost  
direct-  
ly  
opposite  
to  
Buenos  
Ayres,  
on  
the  
other  
side.

divers habitations, and by this means lead them to a sociable life, taught them first Tillage, and the most necessary Arts, and Manufactures; then to read and write, to music, singing, and dancing, but above all instructed them in the Christian Religion, and Piety.

These Habitations were for the most part made in 1626, and are composed of near a thousand families; and each family be- sides the Father, Mother, and the Children, receive often some aged person, not able to work, or some Orphan. So soon as a Habitation is established, the Fathers in- troduce the Government they are to follow, give them Magistrates and Officers, chosen among the most capable of their Body, declare to them the Policy and Rules they are to observe, take care that the fields assigned to each family, be tilled, and sow- ed in due time, that their stocks be well kept; and, if there happen any Contest among them, what the Fathers ordain stands as a sentence without revocation.

Of these Habitations, Parana hath six, St Ignatius on the River of Tibaguari, Itapoa or the Incarnation, and the Holy Sacrament on the River of Parana, N. D. de Teguazu on that of Ignazu, Acaraig or la Nairvua de N. D. likewise on the Parana. The Teguazu precipitates down a great Cataract, before it enters into the Parana. The air in all these habitations is good, the soil fertile, they have too much wood, little pasture, and near Teguazu little fish, by reason of the Cataract. The in- habitants of Itapoa are the most hardy, and most inclined to Arms.

The Province of Guayr is under the Tropique of Capricorn, adjoining it self unto Brasile. There hath been here, for a good continuance of time two or three Colonies of Castilians, Cruidad Real, or Omb-wards, and sometimes Guayr, alter the name of the Province, Villarica, or the right City, and St Paul, which some esteem in Brasile. The habitations for those of the Country, are, Nuestra Senhora de Loreto, and Santiago on the Parana, St Francis Xavier, L Incarnation, and St Joseph on the Tibaguari, the Seven Arch-Angels, and St Paul, in the Land of great Tajoba, to-wards Brasile.

Below Cruidad Real, there where is the separation of the two Provinces of Parana, and Guayr, the River Parana makes a Cata- ract, as remarkable as any in the World. This River precipitating it self from a very high Rock, dives it self likewise engaged

among very high Rocks for the space of fif- teen, or sixteen Leagues, where, with a great declension it strikes against some, traverfes others; divides its waters into many Branches, re-assembles them; and, after ha- ving been so long in foam, and froth, dis- engaged from these Rocks, it repasses; but in every hour of the day once onely is heard, at the bottom of the River, a certain Low- ing, which raisseth up the waters, but which endures but for a momant, and the Ri- ver retakes its ordinary course, which is Navigable above and below the Cata- ract.

The Province of Urvaig is on the Sea, and between Brasile, and the Mouth of the Paraguay; It takes its name from the River of Urvaig, that is, of Snails, by reason of the prodigious quantity here found. Its habitations are, La Conception, therewhere the Urvaig falls into the Para- guay, St Nicholas, on the River Piracion, St Francis Xavier, up within Land, and likewise on the Urvaig, Ibicuit, or the Fis- tation, on the Paraguay, and almost direct- ly opposite to Buenos Ayres, on the other side.

But there hath been no Relation of these Parts since those of 1626, and 1627, which were Printed in 1636 in Antwerp, and in 1637 in France. If these people have since inclined themselves to Christianity, as those Relations say they had begun to do, no doubt, but they are by this time, all, or the greatest part, Christians.

The Magellanick Land, and Island.

South of Chili, Tucuman, and Rio de la Plata, lies a great Region, and a great many of Isles, which we pass under the name of the M A G E L L A N I C K S. They make together the last, and most Southern part of America Meridionalis: washed on the East by the Mel del Nors, on the West by the Mer del Sud, or the Paci- ficque-Sea, on the South by the Magella- nick-Sea, which may in general be extend- ed over all the Coasts of these Magella- nick-Lands and Islands.

The Streight of Magellan only, formerly, rendred all these Quarters famous; because that the People of Europe, and particular- ly the Castilians, seeking a passage other then that of the Cape of good hope, to go to the Maluccoes, and East-Indies, Magel- lan,

The Pro-  
vince of  
Urvaig,  
with its  
chief  
Places de-  
scribed.

The Ma-  
gellanick  
Land  
described.

The  
Streight  
of  
Magellan  
first dis-  
covered  
by  
Magellan  
the Portu-  
gall.

Several  
parts of  
near in La  
was to  
Terra, def-  
cribed, tho'  
with thro'  
Commod.

The Pro-  
vince of  
Parana,  
and  
Guaay,  
is  
under  
the  
Tropique  
of  
Capricorn,  
ad-  
joining  
itself  
unto  
Brasile.

Below  
Cruidad  
Real,  
there  
where  
is  
the  
separation  
of  
the  
two  
Provinces  
of  
Parana,  
and  
Guaay,  
the  
River  
Parana  
makes  
a  
Cata-  
ract,  
as  
remarkable  
as  
any  
in  
the  
World.

The Magellanick Land, and Island.

lan, a Portugal Gentleman, but in the name and service of the King of Castile for some discontent he had received in the payment of his wages in Portugal, was the first that found this Streight at the extremity of America Meridionalis, and who passing from Mer del Nort, unto that Del Sud, between the 21 of October, and the 27, or 28 of November, in the year 1520, gave means, not onely to the Castilians, to pretend the discovery of the Molucco's, by the West, against the Portugals, who boasted to have first discovered them by the East: but likewise shewed a way to make the whole Circuit of the Terrestrial-Globe, which certainly had never before been done.

The two openings of our Streight, as well towards us, and the Mer del Nort, as on the other side, and towards the Mer del Sud, are between the 52, and 53 Degrees of Latitude, the middle descending unto the 54. And the two Capes of the first opening, are, that of the Virgins, on the right hand, and on the Continent, and that of St Severin, or of St Esprit, on the left, and in the Magellanick-Isles, or Terra del Fogo. The two Capes which end the other opening, are, Cape Victory, on the right hand, and Cape Desired, on the left.

The length of this Streight is near Two hundred Leagues, Its breadth onely two, three, six, ten Leagues, and sometimes more, incommodious for the most part, being subject to Whirl-Pools. The Waves of the Mer del Sud predominate for fifty and odd Leagues, the rest is beaten on by those of the Mer del Nort, and it is observed, that so long as the Mer del Sud predominates, the Streight is lockt between very high Mountains, and Rocks, always covered with Snow, and which seem to touch on the other, which makes the approaches difficult on this side, and withall, the Sea is exceeding deep. The bottom of that which is beaten by the Mer del Nort, is easily found, and the Fields and Valleys, according to the Season, are very pleasant, both on the one, and the other side. And moreover, here the Streights much enlarges itself, and hath store of commodious Ports, and Roads, not far distant from one another, where the waters likewise are good, and the Wood which is found in the Mountains, above the Coast, hath something of Cinna-mon, and being put in the fire, renders an agreeable Odour.

So soon as the discovery of this Streight

was known in Spain, the Castilians had a design to make themselves Masters of it, with an intent to hinder all other Nations from passing. In 1523 Dom, Gutieres Carvajal, Bishop of Plaisance, sent in the name of Charles the fifth, four Ships, to make it more particularly, but this Voyage proved very unfortunate, for three of the Ships perished in the Streight, and the fourth retired (with no small hurt) to Lima. In 1526 Garza de Loyosa was likewise here for the same intent, which proved also fatal, for the Admiral coming out of the Streight was lost; as also some of the Molucco's. In 1535 one Simon de Alcazova entered it, but the mutiny which was among his people was the cause of his loss, and ill success. Dom. Gutiers Carvajal, Bishop of Plaisance, sent other three Vessels, in 1539, of which the Admiral was lost, one returned back, and the third passed on. Some others there were which went (all of which were Castilians) some by the Coast of Spain, others by the Coast of Peru, but none could ever finde a way to feize this Streight, whereby to hinder a passage to others.

For in 1575 Sir Francis Drake, happily passed this Streight, came into the Mer del Sud, pillaged and burned along the Coast of Chili, and Peru, quantity of Spanish Vessels, and making a very rich Booty, he returned into England.

This course of the English very much alarm'd Peru, and was the cause that the Vice-Roy sent Dom. Pedro Sarmiento, to take full knowledge, and make report in Spain of all the Coasts, Harbours, Anchorages, and particularly of places where Forts might be built, and Colonies established in this Streight. This report made in Spain, Dom. Diego de Valdes was sent with twenty three vessels, and twenty five hundred men. But this voyage was likewise unhappy; for seven or eight Ships, with about seven or eight hundred men, were lost almost in sight of Spain, also some others of his Ships, with about three or four hundred men, likewise perished during the voyage; and Valdes returned into Spain, with seven or eight of his Ships, Sarmiento with four remaining was at this Streight, built Nombre de Jesus at the beginning of the Streight, and left there a hundred and fifty men, and began farther in the Ciudad del Rey Phillippe: but the want of many things, and the cold, too harsh for the Spaniards, made the last work cease, and the men be brought back to the first Colony. Pedro Sarmiento returning

The length and breadth of this Streight.

The Streight in many places is commodious

Commodious Ports, and Roads, in this Streight.

The Spanish vessels were destroyed by the Mutiny of the Streight.

Don Diego de Valdes was sent with twenty three vessels, and twenty five hundred men.

Don Diego de Valdes was sent with twenty three vessels, and twenty five hundred men.

turning the East and on and the Streight had left.

After Holland divers y happily time in the Sun returning.

But in gellan, I discovered more east this one the Streight, 55 and 56, of length is passed, there where be a Land it a third ra Austral-gelanic.

The In-gellan, M are very dangerous though it have neither born white Body red Painting Head to the sloping, else some They gather with Fish of which use likewise.

Among particular some call betwixt, at present are said, and we are that were fish and reached b

But it first expected above were advcretary o



turning into Spain, fell into the hands of the English, near the Coast of Brazil, and on the other side, Famine, Miseries, and the Cruelties of the Inhabitants of the Streight, soon destroyed the Colony he had left,

After Drake, many other English and Hollanders passed at divers times, and in divers years. Spilbergen in 1613, more happily then the rest, having taken his time in January and February, which is the Summer of these Quarters, the Sun returning from Capricorne.

But in 1617, a hundred years after Magellan, Isaac le Maire, a Hollander, having discovered another Streight incomparably more easie to pass then that of Magellan, this onely is now made use of, and called the Streight Dele Maire: It is between the 55 and 57 degrees of Septentrional Latitude. It hath throughout 10 or 12 Leagues of length and breadth, and so soon as it is passed, there is found a very great Sea, there where we have formerly believed to be a Land so great, that some would make it a third Continent under the name of Terra Australis or Terra Incognita, and Magellanica.

The Inhabitants of the Streights of Magellan, Maire, and the Magellanick Lands, are very barbarous, having very sharp and dangerous Teeth; they go almost naked, though in a Countrey very cold; they have neither Religion nor Policy; they are born white, but Paint some part of their Body red, and others black: And this Painting is a Band drawn straight from Head to Foot, or else crosses their Body, or sloping, the rest is in its natural colour, or else sometimes varied with divers colours. They garnish their Arrows and Javelins with Fish-bones, or with Stones very sharp, of which they make their Knives, they use likewise Clubs and Slings.

Among these People are the Patagons, a particular Nation in the Continent, which some call the Race of Toremou. If report be true, they are the greatest men, known at present in any part of the World: They are said to be no less then ten foot high, and we are assured, that the greatest men that were with Magellan, or with the English and Hollanders, that passed this Streight, reached but to their Girdle.

But it is time to leave America. The first expence made to go thither, was not of above 15 or 16000 Duckats, which were advanced by Lewis de St. Ange, Secretary of State, and not taken out of the

Treasuries of the Kings of Castile and Arragon, who then protested they had not so much money to expend; yet notwithstanding this little hath returned them infinite riches. Christopher Columbus seized on Hispaniola, and the Neighbouring Isles a little after 1492. Americus Vesputius of Brazil in 1497. Ferdinand Cortes took Mexico in 1519. Pizarro, Peru in 1529. So others have seized on divers parts of America, and still of those which are the best, and have brought thence so much Gold, Silver, and riches, that they have filled almost all Europe, and made those Estates, Lordships, and Commodities on this side, which before were valued but at Twenty pence, Twenty shillings, or Twenty thousand pounds worth, now a hundred times as much.

But we must confess, That these Discoveries, and these Conquests of new Lands hath cost Spain more of men, not so much in the War as on the Sea. In 1590, a hundred Spanish Ships laden with very great riches to return to Europe, passing in company near Florida, a Tempest surprized them, and cast them all away, save one, whom Linscot reports to have seen in Terra-cera; and this Author assures us, that at the same time divers other Tempests, or divers English Rovers took away or sunk another hundred of Spanish Ships; so that of 220 parted the year before from New Spain, St. Domingo, Havana, Cape Verde, Brazil, Guiney, and other places, not above 14 or 15 escaped shipwrack, or the English Rovers.

Likewise after, and at other times; sometimes the English, sometimes the Hollanders have not onely taken abundance of Spanish Vessels on the Sea, but likewise divers places on Lands, and sometimes whole Provinces and Islands. The Hollanders held not long since a good part of Brazil; the English hold at present Barbadoes, Famsica, and some other places in the Isles and Lands about it. And all those Isles which are on this side Hispaniola, are in the hands of the English, French, and Hollanders, who likewise establish divers Colonies on the Coast of Guiana; which if they subsist, those Isles are not already more troublesome Thorns to Mexico, and Terra-Firma, then these Colonies in Guiana will be to Terra-Firma, Peru, and Brazil.

To give a small touch of the Traffick of this New World, it is observed to give employment to many Ships of great burthen, P p p and

had a  
ers of le,  
Nations  
Car-  
he name  
make it  
proved  
the Ships  
fourth re-  
ima. In  
here for  
so fatal;  
Streight  
uco's. In  
edit; but  
his people  
all success.  
Plaisance,  
of which  
ned back,  
thers there  
were Casti-  
ain, others  
could ever  
; whereby

te, happily  
the Mer del  
g the Coast  
of Spanish  
Boory, he

ry much al-  
fe that the  
ormiento, to  
ke report in  
urs, Ancho-  
where Forts  
stablished in  
le in Spain,  
with twenty  
ve hundred  
ikewise un-  
Ships, with  
men, were  
also some  
but three or  
se perished  
des returned  
eight of his  
r remaining  
ndre de Jesus  
he, and left  
y Philippe:  
nd the cold,  
ade the last  
rought back  
ormiento re-  
turning

The Span-  
ish name  
of the  
Streight.

In Fran-  
cis De-  
Streight.

Don De-  
de velle  
and re-  
72 done  
Ship, and  
For use  
the  
French  
know.

the  
length  
of the  
Streight  
is about  
100 Le-  
gues.

the  
length  
of the  
Streight  
is about  
100 Le-  
gues.

the  
length  
of the  
Streight  
is about  
100 Le-  
gues.

The Span-  
ish name  
of the  
Streight  
is about  
100 Le-  
gues.

The Span-  
ish name  
of the  
Streight  
is about  
100 Le-  
gues.

The Span-  
ish name  
of the  
Streight  
is about  
100 Le-  
gues.

and that of several Nations, as well Europeans, as others, by which they have gained much riches; in which, England, Spain, France, Portugal, Holland, &c. have been large tharers. To sum up the rich staple Commodities that it produceth, as also what Commodities they receive in exchange, will not be unnecessary.

See Fruits  
and Com-  
m. Divers.

First then, Its Earth yieldeth Grains, excellent Fruits, Plants, Sugars, Indico, Tobacco, Ginger, Long Pepper, and other Spices: Several Medicinal Drugs, Cotton, of which, as also of the Feathers of their Birds, they make excellent and curious Manufactures. In the Bowels of the Earth lie hid, in abundance of Mines, Gold, Silver, Iron, Lead, Tin, and Copper; there is also plenty of Quick-silver, Amber, Precious Stones, Pearls, Bezoar, Amber-greece, Gum, Arabick, and several Precious Gums, Couchaneil, Saffran, Chrystal, excellent Balsom, Rozzin, Salt, Honey, Wax, Rich Furs, Ox-Hides, Tallow, Whale Oyl, Dried Fish, Pitch, Tar, Follop, Salsaparilla, Gayac, Turbit. Several excellent Woods, as, Campeche, Brazil, Lignum Vita, Green Ebony,

Cedar, Cypress, Firrs, and excellent Wood for building of Ships.

For these and several other rich Commodities they take in exchange, Beads, Necklaces, Bracelets, and the like Toys; as also Looking-Glasses, Ribbons, Needles, Pins, and all sorts of Haberdashery Ware; also Knives, Hatchets, Saws, Nails, Hammers, and other Instruments made of Iron; with several other of the like cheap Commodities.

We have thus comprised all that seemed most necessary concerning America: True it is, whole Volums might be made only touching the Nature and Propriety of their Grains, Herbs, Plants, Fruits, Fowl, Beasts, and Fish, which are all different from ours; yet those which have been carried from hence, have thrived and multiplied exceeding well, either in one place or another: But of all our Beasts, nothing so much astonished them as our Horses; and it was near a hundred years in Peru, and other parts of America, before those People would be persuaded to mount on them.

Commodi-  
ties sent  
them in  
exchange.

An

King

Note, that  
vinces, IA  
Capulo.  
Avarig.  
Am.  
Agra de

Ayrcda.  
Anger.  
ANZORE.  
AMERICA M  
ONALIS.  
Anlaloufa.  
Agra de los Reyes.  
Avian.  
Aucego.  
Antoquia.  
Aucquera.  
Aquatlico.  
Aranguas.  
Arangué.  
Archidona.  
Arequipa.  
Arma.  
Arudo.  
Assumption.  
Ailla.  
Ara.

B  
B Asea.  
Bahama.  
Bahia.  
Bahadon.  
Bastable.  
Bata de los Santos.  
Bellefied.  
Bermuda.  
Berquem.  
Bilow.  
BRAZIL.  
Cano: Ayrc.

AN

C  
Achapyu.  
Cagway.  
Call.  
California.  
Comora.  
Consecho.  
CANADA.

read  
John Combs did the most part of all the fair parts of the world  
In a Pea boat and ended the same voyage 29 1711 Edward Carr

ent Wood

h Commo-  
ds, Neck-  
ys, as al-  
dles, Pins,  
are, also  
Hammers,  
ron; with  
Commo-

that seem-  
America :  
ht be made  
Propriety  
s, Fruits,  
are all dif-  
which have  
thrived and  
ther in one  
Beasts, no-  
men as our  
red years in  
ica, before  
d to mount

# An Alphabetical Table

OF THE

Kingdoms, Countreys, Isles, Provinces, Cities, Towns, and Ports,

MENTIONED IN

# AMERICA.

Note, that the Places that are Printed in Italick, are Cities and Towns. Those in Roman, are Provinces, Isles, &c. And those in Capital Letters, are Kingdoms, &c. in America.

<p><b>A.</b></p> <p><b>A</b> Capulo. 29 Acaraiç. 55 Aca. 23 Agra de los Reyes. 48 Ayca. 35 Ayguer. 35 Amazone. 40 AMERICA MERIDI- ONALIS. 30 Azulofca. 31 Agra de los Reyes. 48 Anian. 12, 21 Anago. 30 Antioquia. 35 Antquera. 19 Ayualico. 19 Ayquaz. 26 Araque. 46 Arhidona. 41 Araquipa. 41 Arna. 35 Aruda. 42 Assumption. 53 Arilla. 43 Arca. 26</p> <p><b>B.</b></p> <p><b>B</b> Aca. 42 Bahama. 29 Bamba. 29 Barbadon. 29 Barstable. 7 Bata de los Santos. 49 Belefed. 4 Bermuda. 8 Bermudas. 11 Berquem. 29 Belin. 7 BRAZIL: Cianes Ajret. 53</p> <p><b>C.</b></p> <p><b>C</b> Achapaym. 42 Cagway. 18 Call. 35, 41 California. 21, 22 Camara. 42 Campecha. 30 CANADA. 5</p>	<p>Folio.</p> <p>Cannibale Islands. 29 Cape Defred. 56 Cape Victory. 50 Carabay. 50 Caramanta. 35 Caribes Isles. 29 Cartes. 26 Cartago. 35 Carthage. 26 Carthogena. 33 Cafapulca. 24 Castro de Anand. 45 Castro de Aullin. 41 Castro de Yrill. 54 CHACO. 11, 21 Chiamelan. 11, 24 Chiap. 43 CHILI. 44 Chibola. 23 Cibola. 12, 22 Cindola. 12, 21 Cividad Real. 55 Cividad del Rey Philippe. 56 Coguina. 52 Colina. 17 Collao. 48 Comma. 91 Compoftella. 21 Concepcion. 45 Coptaya. 45 Cochimbo. 45 Coraba. 54 Corrupa. 53 Cofarica. 12, 26 Coxumel. 19 Cubago. 34 Cuba. 27 Cuma. 41 Cuertucaco. 29 Cuidad Real. 24 Culiacan. 41 Cufca. 42 Cuyacan. 19</p> <p><b>D.</b></p> <p><b>D</b> Alet Giff. 8 Darica. 33 De la Frontera. 45 De la Paz. 44</p>	<p>Folio.</p> <p>De la Plata. 43, 53 De las Charcas. 44 De los Quiron. 42 De los tres Reyes. 51 Del spiritus Sancto. 48 Dos Franquet. 51 Durango. 21</p> <p><b>E.</b></p> <p><b>E</b> L Arricibo. 29 El Coto. 26 El Dorado. 38 El Zepho. 27 Ende. 21 Erena. 31 Eftiera. 52 ESTOTILAND. 7</p> <p><b>F.</b></p> <p><b>F</b> LORIDA. 9 Fernambuco. 49 Fort Caroline. 10</p> <p><b>G.</b></p> <p><b>G</b> Renada. 35 Grattas di Dios. 25 GREENLAND. 5 Granada. 25 Granado. 12, 30 Guadalajara. 22, 30 Guadianilla. 30 Guadalupe. 29 Guanahani. 29 Guanaco. 42 Guasco. 45 Guatemala. 12, 21 Guaxaca. 12, 19 Guayr. 55 Gucuetlan. 24 GUIANA. 36</p>	<p>Folio.</p> <p><b>I.</b></p> <p><b>I</b> Aca. 25 Jamaica. 28 JESSE. 8 Indian Bridge. 29 Iceland. 4 Isles Antilles. 26 Isle of Pearles. 33 Itambi. 48 Itapa. 55 Juan. 41 Juxatan. 22, 29 Jupanaran. 51</p> <p><b>K.</b></p> <p><b>K</b> Etoughan. 8</p> <p><b>L.</b></p> <p><b>L</b> A Conception. 28, 26 (14. 47. 55) L Imperial. 47 La Palma de los Colinas. 35 La Purification. 21 La Ramada. 34 La Sanha. 42 La Trinidad. 23, 26 La Trinidad de los Mufos. 35 Las Fuentes. 54 Las Siette Corrientes. 53 Leon. 18, 25 Leon Je Guanuco. 42 Limo. 41 Lona. 29 Los Angelos. 18 Los Ifcos. 49 Los Reyes. 34 Los Zacatucos. 12, 21 Loxa. 41 Loyola. 42 Lucayon. 29</p> <p><b>M.</b></p> <p><b>M</b> Adrigal. 35 Magellanick Ifles. 55 Manu. 41 Manoa. 31 Maragores. 48 Matanhan. 48</p>
--	---	---	--

AN

of the world  
Edward Carr

# A TABLE.

<p><b>M</b>aranhan. 51  <b>M</b>atata. 23  <b>M</b>argarita. 34  <b>M</b>arigalante. 29  <b>MIRILAND.</b>  <b>M</b>artinique. 29  <b>M</b>ariquita. 25  <b>M</b>atanzas. 12, 17  <b>M</b>e hoacan. 18  <b>M</b>ellila. 20, 35  <b>M</b>eritila. 13  <b>M</b>exico. 51  <b>M</b>iraflores. 26  <b>M</b>onte Christo. 29  <b>M</b>ontserrat. 34  <b>M</b>opez.</p>	<p><b>N</b>atividad. 21  <b>N</b>ueva Cordova. 34  <b>N</b>ew Blicany. 21  <b>NEW ENGLAND.</b> 2  <b>N</b>ew Mexico. 5  <b>NEW FOUNDLAND.</b> 7  <b>N</b>ew Plimoth. ibid.  <b>N</b>icaragua. 12, 25  <b>N</b>icoya. 26  <b>N</b>ieves. 30  <b>N</b>erva. 31  <b>N</b>ombre de Dios. 21, 32  <b>N</b>ombre de Fesus. 56  <b>N</b>uestra Señora. 51  <b>N</b>uestra Señora de Carvalledo. 34  <b>N</b>uestra Señora de Loreto. 51  <b>N</b>uestra Señora de la Nieve. 34, 50  <b>N</b>uestra Señora de la Paz. 14, 42  <b>N</b>uestra Señora de Talavera. 43, 54</p>	<p><b>O</b>canna. 34  <b>O</b>ld Harbour. 28  <b>O</b>landa. 49  <b>O</b>ngel. 45  <b>O</b>rilla. 28  <b>O</b>ropisa. 42, 43  <b>O</b>srno. 45</p>	<p><b>P</b>agete. 12  <b>P</b>ampelona. 35  <b>P</b>anama. 35  <b>P</b>anuco. 12, 17  <b>P</b>an. 19, 51  <b>PARAGUAY.</b> 51  <b>P</b>anaco. 54  <b>P</b>arrisinga. 48</p>	<p><b>Q</b>uercitara. 13  <b>Q</b>uito. 41  <b>Q</b>uila. 13  <b>Q</b>uivira. 11, 22</p>	<p><b>R</b>ecoleto. 25  <b>R</b>ecolif. 49  <b>R</b>io Bamba. 41  <b>R</b>io de la Hacha. 53, 54  <b>R</b>io del Hacha. 12  <b>R</b>io Grande. 51  <b>R</b>io Janiero. 48</p>	<p><b>S</b>alamanca. 20  <b>S</b>alta. 54  <b>S</b>alvalon de Tjany. 26  <b>S</b>ancta Alouia. 29  <b>S</b>t. Amaro. 48  <b>S</b>ancta Anna de Anzerma. 35  <b>S</b>t. Antonio. 49  <b>S</b>t. Anthony. 50  <b>S</b>t. Augustine. 9, 11, 50  <b>S</b>ancta Barbara. 21  <b>S</b>t. Bartholomeus. 24  <b>S</b>t. Christophers. 29, 35  <b>S</b>ancta Cruz. 30, 49  <b>S</b>ancta Cruz de la Sierra. 43, 44  <b>S</b>t. Domingo. 12, 26  <b>S</b>ancta Fee. 26, 52  <b>S</b>ancta Fee de Antequera. 35  <b>S</b>ancta Fee de Bogala. ibid.  <b>S</b>t. Francisco de la Villoria. 42  <b>S</b>t. Francisco del Quito. 41  <b>S</b>t. Francis Xavier. 35  <b>S</b>t. Francis Xavier l'Incarnat. 35  <b>S</b>t. George de Olancho. 15  <b>S</b>t. George Fort. 7  <b>S</b>ancta Helens. 11  <b>S</b>t. Jago. 11, 19, 23, 27, 45, 51</p>	<p><b>T</b>avaico. 41  <b>T</b>eneriffe. 23  <b>TERRA FIRMA.</b>  <b>T</b>ezcuco. 34  <b>T</b>imana. 43, 54  <b>T</b>lalcala. 12, 13  <b>T</b>ocayma. 27  <b>T</b>onteca. 55  <b>T</b>rinidad. 39  <b>T</b>olu. 18  <b>T</b>orungo. 25  <b>T</b>raxilla. 21  <b>TUCUMAN.</b> 15, 49  <b>T</b>ucuyo. 51  <b>T</b>ucula. 32  <b>T</b>unia. 42</p>	<p><b>V</b>aladolid. 18, 20, 25, 49  <b>V</b>aldivia. 45, 49  <b>V</b>alencia la Nueva. 30  <b>V</b>alparaiso. 34  <b>V</b>alverie. 40  <b>V</b>elez. 43  <b>V</b>alparaiso. 33, 34  <b>V</b>enezuela. 12, 33, 35  <b>V</b>era Cruz. 29  <b>V</b>ernaga. 20  <b>V</b>era Paz. 20  <b>V</b>illa de Lager. 18  <b>V</b>illa de Nuestra Señora de la Victoria. 18  <b>V</b>illa de los Angeles. 18  <b>V</b>illa Rica. 45  <b>VIRGINIA.</b>  <b>V</b>ista Union. 18  <b>V</b>raig. 18</p>	<p><b>W</b>icocomoco. 18</p>	<p><b>X</b>alisco. 18  <b>X</b>eres de Frontera. 11, 15  <b>X</b>eres la Nueva. 39</p>	<p><b>Y</b>agua. 18  <b>Y</b>guay. 15  <b>Y</b>talpalpa. 15</p>	<p><b>Z</b>acatal. 18  <b>Z</b>amora. 17  <b>Z</b>amora de los Arcades. 41  <b>Z</b>empallan. 41  <b>Z</b>intoula. 17</p>
--	---	--	---	--	---	--	---	--	------------------------------	--	---	---



T



be sup  
 wisdom  
 for wh  
 treys  
 of ov  
 a Ship  
 ans we  
 excelle  
 might  
 Seamen  
 Nei  
 Stoicks  
 mother  
 me, th  
 say th  
 that a  
 time i  
 Towns  
 if they

Travel

Folio  
252  
RA FIRMA.  
254  
253  
do.  
256  
255  
254  
253  
252  
251  
250  
249  
248  
247  
246  
245  
244  
243  
242  
241  
240  
239  
238  
237  
236  
235  
234  
233  
232  
231  
230  
229  
228  
227  
226  
225  
224  
223  
222  
221  
220  
219  
218  
217  
216  
215  
214  
213  
212  
211  
210  
209  
208  
207  
206  
205  
204  
203  
202  
201  
200  
199  
198  
197  
196  
195  
194  
193  
192  
191  
190  
189  
188  
187  
186  
185  
184  
183  
182  
181  
180  
179  
178  
177  
176  
175  
174  
173  
172  
171  
170  
169  
168  
167  
166  
165  
164  
163  
162  
161  
160  
159  
158  
157  
156  
155  
154  
153  
152  
151  
150  
149  
148  
147  
146  
145  
144  
143  
142  
141  
140  
139  
138  
137  
136  
135  
134  
133  
132  
131  
130  
129  
128  
127  
126  
125  
124  
123  
122  
121  
120  
119  
118  
117  
116  
115  
114  
113  
112  
111  
110  
109  
108  
107  
106  
105  
104  
103  
102  
101  
100  
99  
98  
97  
96  
95  
94  
93  
92  
91  
90  
89  
88  
87  
86  
85  
84  
83  
82  
81  
80  
79  
78  
77  
76  
75  
74  
73  
72  
71  
70  
69  
68  
67  
66  
65  
64  
63  
62  
61  
60  
59  
58  
57  
56  
55  
54  
53  
52  
51  
50  
49  
48  
47  
46  
45  
44  
43  
42  
41  
40  
39  
38  
37  
36  
35  
34  
33  
32  
31  
30  
29  
28  
27  
26  
25  
24  
23  
22  
21  
20  
19  
18  
17  
16  
15  
14  
13  
12  
11  
10  
9  
8  
7  
6  
5  
4  
3  
2  
1



# TRAVEL.



Hough I am not of the Humor of this Age I live in, who are of opinion, That such that Travel not, have scarce 10 *Liberal Education*; so that their Lameness can no way

a message, and were not able to deliver it, or bring home an answer.

But to wave these opinions, It is *Travel* which entertaineth the *Gentleman* with delight; it enricheth the *Minde* with variety of *Knowledge*; it rectifieth the *Judgment*, and encreaseth *Perfection*. And what an inward oblectation is it, to see the ruins of *Theaters*, *Obelisks*, *Temples*, have scarce 10 *Monasteries*, *Triumphal-Arches*, and the like places which do yet testify the *Virtues* of the *Ancient Worthies*;

*The Art of Travel.*

— & *Campos ubi Troja fuit.*

be supplied, or out-grown. I conceive *Wisdom* to be none of those *Merchandizes*, for which we *Traffick* onely in far *Countries*; nor do I take good *Manners* to be of so vast a bulk, to require the Freight of 20 a *Ship*. If change of *Climes* and *Meridians* were alone sufficient to produce those excellencies we aim at; what abilities might be expected from *Merchants* and *Seamen*?

Neither am I of the opinion of those *Stoicks*, who hold *Travel* to be the *Step-mother* of *Learning*, the *Imposture* of *Virtue*, the vey *Prodigality* of *time*; for it is, say they, observable of many *Novices*; 30 that at the best, they do but spend their time in gazing upon sensible objects, as *Towns*, *Pallaces*, *Bridges*, and the like; as if they were sent like silly *Messengers* upon

I must confes, that by Books of *Geography*, the understanding of *Maps*, the *Globes*, &c. one may arrive to great perfection, as to situation of *Countries* or *Cities*; of what *Climate* they are under; its *Fertility*, and *Commodities*; what its *People* are, and how inclined as to their *Religion*, *Laws*, *Morality*, and *Customs*, with the like things, largely treated of in the *Geographical description of the World*; yet this knowledge comes short of that which is gained by an *ocular* view; neither is it so satisfactory. But some are too old to *travel*, others young enough, but their occasions perhaps will not admit them the liberty, or their purses allow their expences: So that to those a *Sedentary Traveller* (as I said before) is necessary, it tending so much to the encrease of knowledge.

Aaaaa They

Travel



They know best, whose mindes soar highest, and become greater by beholding the Memorials of others in their glories and magnificence: But because reason bids us provide rather for the beautifying of the *minde*, which is the nobler part, than for the flattering of *sense*; the greatest delight is to feel, with *Solon*, *Senescere se multa indies addiscentem*; for although these Studies require rather retiredness, and immunity from those disquiets which *travelling* doth draw with it; yet let us know, that to this ornament of *knowledge* concurs not onely the sense of *seeing*, to converse in the monuments, and treasure of *Books*: but also of *hearing* and conferring with *men* excellent in every Profession, and associating themselves with divers natures and dispositions; for this variety of *Company* 20 bettereth the *Behaviour*, subtilizeth *Arts*, awakeneth the *Wit*, ripeneth *Judgement*, confirmeth *Wisedom*, and enriches the *Minde*, with many worthy and profitable observations; performing all these by so discrete a *working*, and insensible *alteration*, that one doth sooner acknowledge himself much abler, and experienced, than he can apprehend the means, but let your *Company* be such as is not vicious, and given to debaucheries.

The Mind  
the nobler  
part.

Good Com-  
pany very  
profitable.

In this Observation, as there are many general things, with which a *man* may trust himself; so there are as many particularities which are more specially to be observed, as most powerful to inspire us with a civil *Wisedom*, and enable our Judgment for any active employment. It will be our task to traverse most of them.

But before we proceed to lay down any *rules* or *directions* for the young *Traveller* abroad, it will be convenient to shew what *Education* he ought to have before he is esteemed fitting to take his journey into forraign parts.

Education  
of Youth  
very neces-  
sary.

*Education* is the Seafoner and Instructor of youth, in principles of *knowledge*, *discourse*, and *actions*.

Of all inferiour knowledges, there is none more behoveful than the knowledge of a Man's self, and of all Superiour, none more useful, nor divinely fruitful than the knowledge of God.

The first  
impressions  
lasting.

The first *impressions*, whether good or evil, are most permanent, and with least difficulty preserved: how necessary then is it, that an especial care be had therein, that choyce be made of such whose

modest and blameless conversations may inform the minority with serious fruitful *precepts* and *discourses*.

*Zycargus* brought two *Dogs*; the one savage, wilde, and cruel; the other trained, tame, and gentle; to let the People see the difference betwixt *men* brought up well, and rudely. Those whose untrained youth never received the impressions of a generous *education*, are such as were bred in the *Mountains*, and whose *conversations* are rude, their *behaviours* harsh and furious; and their *conditions* distempered and odious; for, *education* (which one calls the early custom) hath so wrought with them, that they approve of nought freely, affect nought freely, and intend nought purposely, save what the rudeness of *education* hath inured them unto. These mens aims are as far from atchieving of honour, as they are partakers of nothing which may have the least share in the purchase of it. And, as Nature is too strong to be forced, so *Education* (which is a second Nature) hath kept too long possession to be ejected: She it is, in some sort, that mouldeth our *actions* and *affections*, framing us to her own bent, as if we received all our *Discipline* from her, and by whom, we were first 30 nourished, and since tutored.

Sure I am, *Art* hath power over our *demons*, *Education* can produce no less effect from the inward *man*; for have we not read, how divers being naturally addicted to all licentious motions, by reading *moral Precepts*, and conversing with *Philosophers*, became absolute *Commanders* of their own affections.

Education  
changes  
the nature  
of man, and  
works up  
great ef-  
fects.

What then might we not imagine, may be obtained by long *education*, and continual practice, during the time of *infancy*, which, as the *Philosopher* saith, is the smooth and unwritten *Table*, apt to receive any impression, either of good, or evil; for which cause, as all times require instructions, so this time especially, as being subject to correction,

*Education* is a good and continual marning of the *minde*, the principal Fountain of all Human happiness, and as the *Soul* is the formal cause of our *Life*, so is this the efficient cause of a *good Life*: giving light to the *Understanding*, to know and follow *good*, and to forsake *vices*; It is a confinement to the *Will*, solely to perform it; a restraint to the growing, and disorder'd *Affections*, Government in *Actions*, and *ability* to the *Body*; without which,

men

men are burthens to themselves, and eyesores to the Kingdom.

Therefore among the many miscarriages of our times, there seems not any of greater importance, than the errors committed in the education of youth, which, when taken root by custom, are hard to be removed; therefore, seeing the good it planteth, and the vices it driveth away, Parents ought to be more careful in the discharge of a Duty, which is of greater importance than all the Fortunes they can leave them.

There is no nature so fierce, but may be tamed; nor no inclination so violent but may be checked, if timely care be had, before it takes head: but when grown old, our faults or vices learn to prescribe, and the Parents reproofs are answered with snarling and resistance; and if friends admonish, they take them for their enemies; Alas, good Precepts work upon a well-disposed mind, but a vicious person is a prejudicate auditor, and hath to sick a palate, that he cannot relish any thing that is good and wholesom.

Honest Company is like the change of good Air; for it is a thing of great consequence in young minds, which are pliable, and apt to be seasoned, either with virtuous, or wicked resolutions, and to receive the impression of any custom which their first Company shall (by the silent persuasions of their proper actions) impose upon them. And this is the reason why the qualities of the mind do commonly run (as I may say) in a blood, and become hereditary; insomuch that some Families retain proper Customs naturalized in them; as in Rome, the Pisos were frugal; the Metelli, religious; the Manlii, austere; the Lalii, wise; the Publicola, courteous, &c. Which qualities proceed not from the difference in temperature (for that doth vary by interchangeable Marriages) but of the diversities of Breeding, which I may properly call a second (or a better) Nature.

In restraining the humors which may feed the Vices, it is not good to aggravate small errors with terms of affected indignation: for 'tis a dangerous thing to use a medicine stronger than the nature of the disease. The best course in disposing generous minds, is, with milde reprehensions mixt with prayes: imitating wise Commanders, who seeing their Soldiers dismayed, do not upbraid them with the name of Cowardize, but by recording their honourable Services,

'Tis better to intreat by Persuasions; than to enforce by Commands, for, fear and servile restraint exasperates sweet Spirits, making them who would be outweighed by gentle persuasions, to cast away shame, and to persevere in faults; for every man desireth to have a commendation added to his actions, that they are natural, and not affected either for fear of punishment, or hope of reward.

But not to shoot at randome; the errors I observe in our vulgar Breeding are these.

I conceive, in outward Accomplishments, we study too early, and greedily to advance our Youth, and by such out-sides they are commonly valued; but as for just and sober Principles, the love of Vertue, and the restraint of Conscience, these goodly and fruitful Plants we neglect to cherish in them. Hence it happens that our best hopes are freedom from enormous vices, and a kind of a female vertue; but these footsteps of that ancient worth, that was in our Ancestors, are too much worn out; neither are the seeds of Knowledge so fertile in us as in many Heathens, who lived by the light of Reason, and Principles of Philosophy.

Some indeed there are that judiciously observe the difference betwixt a true foundation, and a curious paper-building, or painted balcony: but there perhaps they either think, by slackening the reins of Authority, to decoy and flatter their youth into duty; or else, by over-austerity, will needs precipitate it into perfection, and cutt down all vices, like great trees, with one stroak of the hatcher, or make vertue spring like mandragora. Both of these are erroneous; for the issue of Discipline and Time.

Our Education (in respect of Arts and Professions) seems much like the methodical Travels of the Germans in France, which, they say, consists in riding a certain tour or circuit, for Children are often put to School at a venture, where they are exposed to the fury of Pedants, and like Gally-slaves condemned to the oar, till dull experience proves them unfit for Learning, and perhaps renders them incapable of other courses. When they have learnt to construe Latin, though possibly not to understand it, they are either directed to some Trade, wherein that little which they have learnt is useles, and soon forgotten; or else they are sent to the Universities, Innes of Court,

Errors in the breeding of youth

Education through the manner of men, and through great of.

fit Com- pany of persons.

Such a person should be avoided.

itions may be fruitful

the one another train- at the Peo- men brought whose un- the impres- are such as and whose behaviours r conditions r, education (ustom) hath it they ap- ffect nought pofely, have hath inured ms are as far as they are may have the fit: And, as ceed, so Edu- (ature) hath b) be ejected: mouldeth our ing us to her all our Disci- , we were first

answer over out- duce no less ; for have we naturally ad- ons, by read- nversing with e Command-

imagine, may ion, and con- me of infancy, is the smooth o receive any l, or evils, for quire instructi- as being sub-

continual ma- nicipal Foun- ds, and as the our Life, fois good Life: gi- ing, to know e vices; It is a y to perform ng, and disor- ent in Actions, without which, men

Court, or to Travel, there to surfeit with Liberty, as starved Stomacks do with Plenty. Thus, skipping all degrees and method of Children, they become Men at a stride, and 'tis well if they prove not Senators.

Expedients against the errors in the breeding of Youth.

First.

I am not ignorant how much hath been written upon this Subject, nevertheless, it being a matter of so great importance, I shall adventure to offer some expedients of redress to those many mischiefs which proceed from erroneous Education.

First then, as the Husbandman, with much observation, proves the nature of the Soil, before that he resolves what Grain he will commit unto it; And, as the Architect designs several pieces of Wood for divers uses in Building; so let not Parents destine their Children to courses, without a diligent scrutiny of the inclination of their genius.

Experience teacheth us, That such as are not apt for the Liberal Arts, yet many times prove able Merchants of Mechanicks; and those that would never prove spruce Courtiers, become stout Soldiers; an aspiring genius will contemn mean Professions; airy Souls were not designed for sedentary Employments; nor excess of Melancholy for Action: he may prove an excellent Mathematician, that would never be a good Lawyer, the one depending upon the strength of Imagination, and the other of Reason; great Logicians are oft times but ill Orators; the one requires a strong, the other a fine, and courtly wit; some have a solid Judgement, and some a vast memory; some excell in Elocution, and some in the dexterity of their Pen; some have quickness of dispatch, and some have an invincible industry: every Creature is said to have its peculiar Vertue in some kinde or other; but the vast bulk of Learning, and general Ability is not to be grasped at, except by such wits, as are almost as rare as the Phoenix, or the Unicorn.

Secondly.

Secondly, Therefore let every Genius be directed solely, or chiefly to those Studies and Employments, to which Nature first designed them; for the Eye, which is intent and fixed, sees clearly; whereas variety of Objects dazes. That Water running in one great Channel, makes a navigable River, which being divided into little Streams, are no other than Ditches. I conceive, if this Rule were practised, Youth would not be so roared, and defeated in what they undertake, as now they

are: Whilst they attempt those Arts and Sciences, which are both for quantity too vast, and for quality too improper for them. Whatsoever the Stomach digests not, proves but crudity; and variety of imperfect notions, serves onely to puff men up with arrogance, and ostentation; producing at best but learned Ignorance, or confident Errors, whereas by this means every one would thrive in his Way, and the Common-wealth of Learning, which consists in the perfect knowledge of all Arts, would exceedingly flourish. The Jesuits chiefly, by pursuing this wise and accurate method, have advanced Literature, enlarged their own fame, and exalted their Colleges to the envy of all Universities.

Thirdly, Let not superficial Ornamentis so much be regarded, as solid Foundations; and let not the substance be placed in those things, which were meant onely for glosses, and shadows: for though all Accomplishments may be commended, and desired, yet not all equally, and alike; We should therefore prize Vertue and Innocency in Youth, far above all outward Ornamentis.

Fourthly, We should endeavour to season Youth with Ingenuity, and stir up the seeds of Emulation, that they may no longer act like Press-Soldiers, but like Volunteers; that Duty may be their Delight, and Knowledge the Subject of their Pride.

Fifthly, There should be a North-west passage found, for the attaining the Latin tongue, that we need not use such tedious ambages, as is in effect more barbarous than the tying of the Horses tail to the Plough; nor instead of a Fourney, which might be dispatched in few days, wander like the Children of Israel, 40 years in the Wilderness: For, in learning of Languages, which yet is but the Gate, or Avenue of Arts and Knowledge, we not onely lavish our Time, but waste that stock of Industry, which Nature indued us with, for higher and nobler designs; so as being harassed with drudgery, we have little vigour left us to attempt Philosophy or human Learning. And let no Man object, that our early years are not capable of such Improvements; for, why should we doubt, but that the Mathematicks, History, and even Morality, in some degree, may be insinuated into us, when we are young, since Invention even in Youth is a strong Faculty.

Sixthly.

Seventhly.

Seffell  
you  
mor  
mar  
cies  
that  
upo  
adm  
of c  
with  
to fe  
bein  
as m  
do,  
ble  
Se  
direc  
shoul  
with  
elect  
shoul  
Age  
future  
due re  
ments  
to ab  
as th  
ges m  
to th  
bring  
In the  
ing e  
portio  
of lea  
Gover  
nor b  
end c  
bly to  
wife  
them  
pence  
them  
rance,  
that  
and li  
as just  
Indus  
are fr  
perour  
Legat  
Phill  
vice  
by al  
their  
even  
looks  
As fo  
dued

Sixthly, The Learned and able Professors of *Arts*, and *Sciences*, should endeavour to render them more clear and demonstrative, by vindicating them from many of those *uncertainties*, and *intricacies* wherewith they are now entangled, that our knowledge be no longer built upon such *Hypothesis*, that are more easily admitted, then proved; so that many of our Foundations being blown away, with one blast of denial, we are as far to seek, as if we had never studied; and being once beaten from *Aristotle*, stand as mute as an ignorant *Catholic* would do, if he were driven from his impregnable Citadel, The *Church*.

Seven. by.

Seventhly, Those Persons, to whose directions youths Conduct is committed, should not be taken at random, but with the same prudence, and choice as we elect *Magistrates*, or *Delegates*; and they should know how much, both the present Age expects from their *fidelity*, and the future times from their *Vertue*; as well by due regard of their *Persons*, as encouragements of their *labours*, but alas our Age so abounds in loathsome *Pedantrie*, that as the contempt of the calling discourages many worthy *men* from professing it, so the contemptibleness of the *persons*, brings the calling into greater contempt. In the last place there should not be wanting encouragements and rewards proportionable to the number, and merits of learned and excellent *men*. And wise *Governors* should study to distribute them, not by chance, but by true desert. The end of planting of *Nurseries* is seasonably to convert them into *Orchards*, otherwise the Plauter is commonly loser by them; where therefore there is no recompence expected, *men* will rather content themselves with ease, and thrifty ignorance. Hence I fear, it partly happens, that such amongst us as have free fortunes, and live of their own, account themselves, as justly exempt from *Study*, and ingenious *Industrie*, as in some *Countrys*. *Gentlemen* are from paying of *Taxes*. That wise *Emperour Charles* the Fifth in his excellent Legacy of *Politick instructions* to his Son *Phillip* advising him to purchase the service of able *men* at any rates, bids him, by all means to seek such out; for as their *Vertues* teaches them *Modesty*, so even their *Modesty* hath its *Pride*, and looks that *Preferment* should court it. As for those that believe the *Soul* is endued with all *Sciences* and *Knowledge* at

the instant of its Creation, which the presence of *Objects* doth afterwards only awaken, and stir up in our memories; they doe very much derogate from the merits of *Vertue*, which acquires them through much labour.

'Tis no small skill that must separate the *Cockle* from the pure *grains*; because that *vertues* created with us, are as the World before *God* had unravelled the Confusion: where the *Elements* (though *Enemies*) lay mixed together; and their qualities, which makes the harmony of the whole *body*, whose contraries makes us behold the vicissitude of productions, accorded them together in one *Mass*, which hid and concealed the difference of their *Beings*; even so, before that reason hath purified the qualities of our souls, we find *vertues* confounded together with *vices*; the *spirit* swimming in the *blood*, and the *senses* disputing for mastery with the *will*, until time and truth comes to separate this mixture, and prescribe each party its *function* *devoir*, and *rank*; before which, we can only assert it tenderly, and bear with its imperfections.

To make a clearer passage through all these Difficulties, I find it convenient to set down these following *Maxims*.

Several Maxims to be observed. As First.

1. To make good use of natural *inclinations*, and turn them to good.

Secondly.

2. That his *Governour* must endeavour to win him to embrace *virtue* out of a principle of affection, and not fear; together with the means to practise it.

Thirdly.

3. That he must gain the love of him he governs, and also love him tenderly again.

To these *Maxims* it will be convenient to add some *Instructions* for the education of *Children*, and the Helps towards natural *generosity*, and *nobility*.

Some Instructions.

1. Provide them betimes with honest, prudent, and learned *Governours*, not humorous, nor *Pedantick*, but such as know what belongs to noble *Conversation*, and *Nobility*.

First.

2. They must be taught as it were *playing*, and encouraged by *gifts* and *rewards*; but rarely by rude *Correction*; and let those things which are given to others out of necessity, be bestowed upon them as recompences.

Secondly.

3. Let them by no means be brought up too tenderly and choysely, either in *Bed*, or at *board*.

Thirdly.

4. Their *inclinations* must be warily sifted and found out, and by no means applied

Fourthly.

B b b b b

plied

Sixthly.

plied to any study contrary to their *Genius* and *Inclinations*.

Exhib.

5. They must not be overcharged, or toyed with too much exercise, or study, but let them often recreate their *Spirits* by refreshment and their *Bodies* by Exercise: sloth and idleness dulls the *Senses* and is an enemy to learning.

Subst.

6. They must be spur'd on by emulation, praising some others in their presence, that have done better then themselves. *Solitary* studies seldom succeed; the *Spirits of Children*, are either benumbed; or grow vain or proud by a false persuasion of being learned.

Summ.

7. A too grand subjection makes them start out into debauchments, like wild Colts newly broke loose, when they begin to enjoy their own liberty, and have the elbow room to act their own desires.

Having thus laid down several *Rules, Directions, and Precepts* for the education of youth, and fitting them for *Travel*; In the next place I shall proceed to such things as are necessarily to be observed by him in his *Travels*; and abode in foreign parts; and first,

It is requisite that our young *Traveller* should be stedfastly grounded, and fixed in his *Religion*, with such lively *Characters* as will not easily be defaced: for *Travellers* seldom meet with those that *Catch* them. Many *Objects* indeed they have to distract and alienate, but few or none to persuade and encourage them in the ways of true *godliness*; also, it is good to be experienced in the *Controversies* betwixt us and other

Religion the subject being well grounded.

40 *Churches*, whereby their errors will appear, that so when you shall see the bold *Prophanes*, *irreverencies*, *indecencies*, or the like, used in some *Churches*; as again in others the several *Fantastick forms* which are crept into the solemn *Worship of God*, as the *Adoration of Saints, Images, &c.* (though never so remote from your *Parents or Friends*, whose *Instructions*, and *Advice* would not be amiss) you may

Our Pass is not carried in vain.

50 like a *Rampire* withstand the greatest storm, pass under the *Torrid Zone* without scorching, or like the *River Danube* which seems to mingle with the muddy streams of *Sava*, though they run both in one *Channel*; for expect *assaults* either by insinuations, allurements, or otherwise. And our *Religion* being prohibited as to the publique exercise in most *Countries*, as in *Spain, Italy, Turkey, &c.* except in the houses of *Ambassadors, and Consuls*,

so that your *Closet* must be your place of *devotion*, it is necessary to be provided with some good and choise books of *Divinity* for your *Souls* health, and as our *Religion* is debarred us, so be careful as to the private exercise of it, and shun *disputes*: neither goe about to persuade any one to be converted from their error, for so doing (if known) oft proves your undoing if not the loss of your life.

Next it is convenient that before he *Travels* into a strange *Country*, he should be well acquainted in the *Topography, Government* and *History* of his own, whereby he may be able to satisfie a *Stranger* in any thing, as to the State of his own *Country*, and not to be as too many are found, *viz. Eagles* abroad, and *Buzzards* at home; to which end it is good to read, and be vers in *books* of the same subject.

The knowledge of the Principles of Geography.

The young *Traveller* ought to be experienced in *Maps*, and the *Globe*, not only for the finding the *situation of places*, but also their *Latitudes, and Longitude* what *Climate* they are under, &c. So that when he shall first see *France* or some other *Country*, he shall not think that he discovers a new world, and be so surprized with the Novelty of *Objects*, as if he saw not *Men* but *Theaters*, and when he changeth *Stations* he shifteth *Scenes*.

The knowledge of the Climate, Maps &c.

It is requisite, that such as intend to *Travel*, should be of years of discretion, and to be able to make enquiry into things of *importance*, and to distinguish good *Customs* from bad ones. Also, it is necessary, that he make choyce of a *Tutor* or *grave Servant*, and chiefly such a one as hath been in the *Country* or *Countries* before; understandeth the *Language* or *Languages*, and is able to acquaint the young *Traveller* with what *Curiosities* and *pieces of Antiquity*, are worthy to be seen in the *Country* where he goeth; Also, what *Acquaintance* he is to seek, what *exercise* or *discipline* the Place affordeth, or the like.

Not to Travel before 20 years of age.

A young *Gentleman* before he *travels*, should have *Civil, and Liberal Education*; otherwise they will both shame themselves, their *Friends*, and *Country*, and will seem to travel like *Barbarians* into *Greece*; not so much to learn the *Arts*, and *Ornaments* of other *Countries*, as to discover the nakedness of their own.

Civil and liberal Education is necessary.

He ought not to be attainted with *Vices*, which in *Travelling* increaseth like *Spomballs*; and above all, let him be armed with

To be free from vices.

Learning is the key to knowledge.

None of us make more of it.

Learn to do.

Things are done by themselves in every Country.

with bit  
one  
Clin  
of h  
I  
natu  
for 2  
nor d  
do w  
Coun  
Mett.  
H  
with  
tricul  
velling  
lays r  
and d  
at or  
know  
good  
it will  
ges, c  
may in  
elegan  
will al  
know  
are ver  
is know  
and Me  
graphy  
were)  
World  
sification  
and inst  
be exp  
a good  
a disce  
eing is  
found  
Drawin  
tends t  
ation u  
that do  
it is bu  
orname  
hath a  
for it w  
Discou  
For  
of any  
cessary  
followi  
The  
Govern  
In th  
suation  
whethe  
nent,



with Temperance, and free from the habit of Tipling; else the novelty of *delicious Fruits*, and *pleasant Wines* in Southern *Climates*, will debauch him to the hazard of his *health, wits, and reputation*.

Let him be endued with undemeing and natural parts, at least more than vulgar; for *Travelling* is a Trade not to be set up, nor driven without a good Stock; neither do we endeavour to *enamel, or polish* the *Common Flint*, but reserve our labour for *Metalls, and Jewels* of greater Excellency.

He should be competently furnished with *Human Learning*, and at least matriculated in *Philosophy*, for, though *Travelling* may perhaps build, yet certainly it lays no Foundation. There are *methods and degrees of Breeding*, and no man ever at once vaulted into Perfection: The knowledge of *terms and things* must in good order precede the study of *men*, else it will resemble those that learn *Languages*, only by the *ear*, without *rules*, who may indeed speak intelligibly, but scarce elegantly; and their want of *Orthography* will always discover their lameness. The knowledge of many of the *Mathematicks* are very useful, as *Arithmetick*, by which is known the valuation of *Coyns, Weights, and Measures*; next, *Cosmography and Geography* so perfectly, that he may (as it were) be able to carry a *Map of the World* in his Head; then the *Art of Fortification*, with all the *inventions, engines, and instruments of War*. It is also good to be experienced in *Musick*, which will be a good Companion, and pass away many a discontented thought; Likewise *Fencing* is not to be neglected, it being often found the Preserver of a Man's life: as for *Drawing and Painting*, if his Inclinations tends that way, it would be a great recreation unto him. And for *Poetry*, 'tis a thing that doth not misbecome a *Cavalier*, when it is but an accessory thing in him, and an ornament to his other *Vertues*; and if he hath any *Genius* to it, let it not be *sifted*, for it will whet his *Wits*, and cause a free Discourse.

For the better information in the State of any *Prince or Countrey*, it shall be necessary for the *Traveller* to observe these following Directions, *viz.*

The *Countrey, the People, the Policy, and Government.*

In the *Countrey*, he is to observe its *Situation, and People. As to its Scituation*, whether it be an *Island*, or on the *Continent*, near or remote from the *Sea*; whe-

ther it be *plain*, or *hilly*, full or scarce of *Rivers*; then its *length, breadth, circumference, form*, what *Climate* it is under; Its *Fertility*, and *Trade*; what *Commodities* it produceth, and what are most vendible there; also, how it confineth with other *Countreys*, and what they are as to their *Strength, riches, &c.* and whether *Friends, or Enemies*. Likewise, its *deserts or wants* are to be considered, and how, and from whence they are supplied; then its *Strength* both offensive, and defensive, either by *Sea, or Land*, and what *Ports, Forts, and Havens* it hath.

The *Traveller* ought to know its chief *Mountains, Rivers, Marshes, and Woods*, as to their Name, Nature, Form, Bigness, and Scituation; and as concerning *Art*, what *Cities, Towns, Castles, Palaces, Temples, Churches, Nunneries, Pieces of Antiquity, &c.* it hath either within *Land*, or upon the *Frontiers*; and how they are *fortified, peopled, or endowed*; and in what *Latitude, and Longitude* they are: Also, what *Universities, or Places of Learning* it hath; and of what *Foundation, and Revenue*; and how the *Countrey or Kingdom* is divided-as into *Parts, Dukedoms, Earldoms, or Provinces*; and how they are inhabited.

The *People* are to be considered as to their *quantity*, as to number, whether few or many; and to their *quality*, as to their Trade and kinde of Life whereunto they addict themselves; whether by exercising of *Mechanical arts; Merchandize, Husbandry, Arms, &c.* what their *dispositions and qualifications* are, their *kinde and degrees*, whether *noble or ignoble*, *Natives or Strangers*, how they are affected to their *Prince*, the form of *Government*, and by whom administr'd; also their *Religion, gifts of body and minde*, as their *Vertues, Vices, Studies, Exercises, Profession* of life, their *Revenues*. It is also convenient to have knowledge of those that are Officers of State; such as are in favour or disfavour with the *Prince or People*, and for what cause. As to the *Nobility*, the number, their *qualities, degrees, places of Residence, their Names, Titles of Dignity, Alliances, Off-springs, Genealogies, &c.* are to be considered.

Furthermore, the *Policy and Government* ought to be understood; by which is considered,

The *Laws* whereby it is governed, whether *Civil, Canon, or Municipal*, and their conformity with the nature of the *People*.

Them

The Knowledge of the Traveller's own Countrey is necessary.

Learning is necessary.

The Knowledge of the Climates, Maps, &c. is necessary.

Many of the Mathematicks are very useful.

Not to Travel till 19 years of age.

Many good.

Civil and liberal Education is necessary.

Things to be observed by Travellers in every Country.

To be known.

Things to be observed.

ce of  
with  
vinity  
ligion  
e pri-  
: nei-  
one to  
so do-  
doing  
  
ore he  
should  
y, Go-  
hereby  
in any  
Count-  
ny are  
d Buz-  
is good  
ne fame  
  
h to be ex-  
ces, not  
of places,  
ade what  
at when  
e other  
e he dis-  
urpised  
as if he  
when he  
mes,  
intend to  
scretion,  
pro things  
hish good  
it is ne-  
a Tutor or  
h a one as  
ntreys be-  
e or Lan-  
he young  
and pieces  
een in the  
what Ac-  
t exercise  
n, or the  
  
e travels,  
Education;  
hemselves,  
will seem  
reeds; not  
Ornaments  
er the na-  
  
with Pieces,  
like Snow-  
be armed  
with

Then the Persons that govern, as Sovereign and Subalternal.

Concerning  
Sovereigns.

The Sovereign is either one as a Monarchy, or two, as *Optimates* or *Magnates*, or popular. In the former, may be comprehended, First, the means whereby he attained the same, whether by *Sovereignty*, as *Succession*, *election*, or *usurpation*. Secondly, How he doth deport himself in the administration thereof, where may be observed his *Courts*, his *Council*, and *Wisdom*, his *Inclinations* whether to *War* or *Peace*, how he is beloved and feared of his *People* and *Neighbours*. Thirdly, His *designments*, and *enterprises*; what is his *disposition*, and to what *exercises* and *studies* he is inclined unto. Fourthly, His *Favourites*, and the confidence, or distrust he hath in his *Subjects*.

In the things that concern his *Estate*, fall chiefly to be considered, First, His *Revenues* ordinary and extraordinary, both abroad and at home. Secondly, Who are his *Friends* and *Confederates*, and how, and upon what respects they are leagued with him, and what *help*, *succour*, and *commodities* he hath had, hath, or expecteth to have, from them. Thirdly, His *power* and *strength* for offence, and defence, either by *Land* or *Sea*. And Fourthly, The *Wars* he hath made in times past, or at present doth make, or the *Wars* that have been, or are brought against him, in which are to be considered the *cause*, the *time*, and the *success*.

Their Ma-  
jestrates.

The Subaltern Magistrates are either *Ecclesiastical*, or *Civil*, under the Title of *Ecclesiastical*, are to be considered, First, the *Religion* publicly professed, with the *form* and *government* of the *Church*. And Secondly, The *Persons* therein employed, as *Archbishops*, *Bishops*, *Deans*, &c. wherein may be observed, their *number*, *degrees*, *offices*, *qualities*, and *revenues*.

The *Civil Magistrates* subalternal, are those which under the *Sovereign* have administration of *state*, and *Justice*.

Among the *Magistrates* which have the management of *State-affairs*, are chiefly to be considered, the *Council of Estate*, ordinary, and extraordinary; Ordinary, attending on the *Prince's Person*, as the *Privy Council*, *Cabinet-Council*, and the like, Extraordinary, as the *Estates of Parliament*, wherein are to be considered their *number*, *quality*, *place*, and *authority*.

Their Chief  
officers.

The *Traveller* is also to take notice of the *Lieutenants*, *Deputies*, and *Gover-*

nors of *Provinces*, *Cities*, *Castles*, *Forts*, &c. either at home or abroad; also the *Chief Officers* of the *Admiralty* and *Militia*; likewise the *Ambassadors*, *Public Ministers*, and *Intelligences*, employed by *Princes* or *Common-wealths*.

In the Administration of the *Justice* of a *Country* is to be considered, First, The *Order* and *Form* observed in *Causes*, whether *Civil* or *Criminal*: Secondly, The *Persons* of the *Presidents*, whether *Confederates*, or *Advocates*.

Besides these, occur many other things for the *Traveller* to observe, as the *Mint*, valuation of *Coyns*, *Exchanges*, with many other *Particularities*, which, in our further process, we shall discourse of more at large.

And because in *foreign Countreys* there are many peculiar *Vices*, covered with the specious resemblance of *Humanity*, which having born long sway, and grown into *Custom*, unworthily finde not only *Pardon*, but also *Commendations*; and the *Traveller's* weakness is prone to participate of those evil habits, which either flatter him with *Novelty*, or deceive him with a glorious shew of *Virtue*, therefore he must observe such *Rules* as may make him shun their *Vices*: to which end it is good to observe their *Forms* and *Ceremonies*.

The *Traveller* is to have his *Diary* always in use, to observe such things as he meets with, which are worthy of notes, as the *Courts* of *Princes*, when they give *Audience* to *Ambassadors*, the *Courts* of *Judicature* when they hear *causes*, likewise he is to take notice of the *Consistories Ecclesiastick*; the *Churches* and *Monasteries*, with their *Monuments*; also the *Walls*, *Fortifications*, *Havens*, *Forts*, *Armies*, *Armories*, and *Magazines* of *Cities* or *Towns*, together with their *Libraries*, *Colleges*, *Pallaces*, *Exchanges*, *Play-houses*, *places* of *Exercise*, *Amaduffs*, *Ruines* of *places*, things of *Antiquity*, with whatsoever else are remarkable in the places where he goeth.

It will be very convenient for the *Traveller* to write to his *Friends*, from the most eminent places he arrives at every *Post*, or at least once a *Month*, whereby they may know where, and in what condition he is in, For *Letters* are the *Idea's*, and truest mirror of the mind, shewing the *inside* of a *Man*, and of all kind of humane meditations, those of ones absent *Friends* are the most pleasing, especially when they

Written  
Letters of  
great use  
to Friends.

Letter of  
a country  
best good.

are en-  
dence  
ed the  
ting it  
writes  
he mig  
and in  
keeps  
which  
sificat  
tage as

The Latin  
letter of  
great use.

'Tis  
conver  
pert,  
ledge at  
The  
the La  
speech,  
coyn in  
cessary,  
of Birr  
fect all  
Latinto  
ed Won  
out wh  
silly Mu  
charity  
from the  
and Fre  
branches  
obtained  
affection  
great dis  
ceeding  
veller.

A Diary of  
travels.

Diary a-  
low Reli-  
gion, dan-  
gerous.

He on  
Religion  
guard to  
disturb  
S  
nerly, n  
used abro

He is  
jury in a  
by, than

It is v  
with Ch  
descriptio  
he intend  
good key  
distance

One very  
dful.

Upon  
ther, it  
procure  
of quality  
to which  
nance of  
vantage  
Stranger.

In Ma

are

are endeared, and nourished by correspond-  
ence of Letters, and not writing is deem-  
ed the height of ingratitude: and in writ-  
ing it is good to be very cautious what he  
writes, lest if his Letters should miscarry,  
he might either injure himself or his friends,  
and in this case it were not amiss, if he  
keeps Copies of the Letters he sends, which  
may serve in some respect for a justifi-  
cation, as also may be of some advantage  
as to his affairs.

'Tis very beneficial for a Traveller to  
converse with such as are cunning and ex-  
pert, which will much add to his know-  
ledge and welfare.

The Traveller ought to be perfect in  
the Latin tongue, not only for pen, but  
speech, which in travelling is as current  
coin in trades, and in some respect more ne-  
cessary, it being not to be supplied in way  
of Barter, the Loadstone hath made in ef-  
fect all the World one Continent, and the  
Latin tongue cements, at least, all the learn-  
ed World, as it were, into one Nation, with-  
out which, Travellers are sometimes such  
silly Mutes, that it rests in the Companies  
charity to think that they have reason, And  
from the Latin tongue, the Italian, Spanish,  
and French are computed, being as it were  
branches of the same tree, and having once  
obtained the good-will of the Mother, the  
affections of the Daughters will be with no  
great difficulty obtained, which are ex-  
ceeding useful and beneficial to the Tra-  
veller.

He ought to shun Disputes concerning  
Religion, to keep his zeal chained for a  
guard to his own Conscience, and not to  
disturb Strangers, for it is neither man-  
nerly, nor safe to discommend any thing  
used abroad.

He is also to avoid Quarrels, for an In-  
jury in a foreign Country, is cheaper paid  
by, than revenged.

It is very necessary, that he be provided  
with Charts or Books of the Topographical  
description of such Places through which  
he intendeth to travel, which will be a  
good key to his Inquiry, and to know the  
distance from one place to another.

Upon his remove from one place to ano-  
ther, it would be convenient for him to  
procure recommendations from one Person  
of quality to another, residing in the Place  
to which he removeth, for the counte-  
nance of a Person of quality is a great ad-  
vantage unto any one, especially unto a  
Stranger.

In Manners, the young Traveller is not

to be caught with Novelties, nor infected  
with Customs, which maketh us to keep  
our own ill graces, and participate of those  
we see every day, nor given to Affliction,  
which is a general fault amongst our English  
Travellers, and is both displeasing and ri-  
diculous.

His choicest and best way to attain  
Knowledge is Observation, and not the  
length of his Journey, nor to see much with-  
out regard, but, noting the coherence of  
causes, effects, counsels, and success, with  
the proportion, and likewise between na-  
ture and nature, fortune and fortune, action  
and action, state and state, time past and time  
present.

Let not the Traveller abide long in one  
City or Town, but more or less, accord-  
ing to the deserts of the Place, neither is  
it convenient to make his abode in one  
place, but to change his Lodgings from  
one end, or part, of the City or Town, to  
the other, which bringeth Acquaintance,  
which is very profitable (provided they be  
civil and honest;) but be sure to frequent  
no mean Company, those that are most  
advantageous to a Traveller are such as  
are Favourites, or Servants to the Prince,  
the Servants or Attendants of Ambassa-  
dors, or the like.

To Travelling, especially of great Per-  
sons, there must be a plentiful, and hon-  
ourable allowance of Expence, without  
which they do as it were travel on foot.  
Indeed too much expence is the Mother of  
Idleness, Vanity, and Folly; but a Medi-  
um between both should be afforded to e-  
very one that pretends to travel for his ad-  
vantage, whereby he may be able to ac-  
company himself with those of the better  
fort; for 'tis to be supposed, few or none  
travell to save money, but to increase  
his knowledge, yet my advice is, Not to  
carry too much money along with him,  
for fear of robbing; or many other incon-  
veniences; but to have a supply by Bills  
of Exchange, according to your or your  
Friends direction, Money is to Travellers, as  
wings to Birds; they have no other Friend  
past port; nothing else that can commend  
or address them to Society, for they  
must buy their Acquaintance, almost as  
they do that which they eat, drink, or  
wear.

It will be great wisdom in the Traveller  
to know what is worthy of his Obser-  
vation, and what to pass over; as surely  
in the Great Turk, though we have no-  
thing to do with him, yet his Discipline

CCCC in

ots,  
o the  
Mili-  
Pub-  
im-  
ms.  
vice of  
The  
whe-  
The  
Confe-

things  
e Mint,  
th ma-  
in our  
of more

ys there  
with the  
y which  
own into  
ely Par-  
and the  
participate  
er flatter  
un with a  
he must  
him shun  
with their  
od to ob-

Diary al-  
ings as he  
of notes  
they give  
e Courts  
ses, like  
onfessories  
Monaste-  
also the  
orts, Ar-  
s of Cities  
Libraries,  
es, Play-  
quadrants,  
Antiquity,  
able in the

the Tra-  
from the  
at every  
whereby  
what con-  
the Idea's,  
bewing the  
of humane  
nt Friends  
when they  
are

The Latin  
tongue of  
great use.

It is use-  
ful to be ac-  
quainted with  
Latin, Italian,  
Spanish, and  
French.

A Diary of  
great use.

Disputes  
concerning  
Religion,  
are to be  
avoided.

It is very  
necessary  
to be pro-  
vided with  
Charts.

It is of  
great use  
to be ac-  
quainted  
with the  
Manners  
of the  
Country.

Knowledge  
is to be  
acquired  
by  
Observation.

Observation  
is the best  
way to  
acquire  
Knowledge.

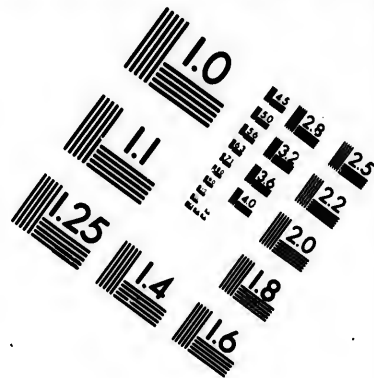
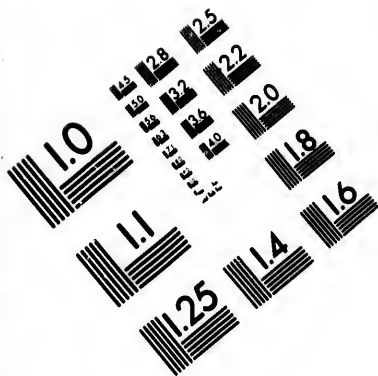
Good Ac-  
quaintance  
is to be  
sought.

A good  
allowance  
of money  
is necessary  
for  
Travelling.

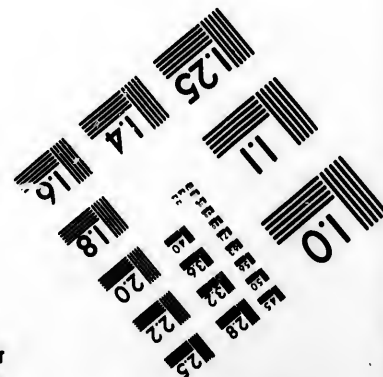
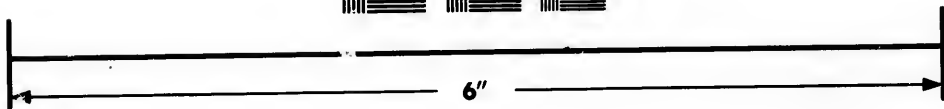
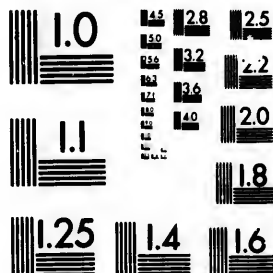
Money is  
to Travellers  
as wings  
to Birds.

It is of  
great use  
to be ac-  
quainted  
with the  
Manners  
of the  
Country.





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
3.6 3.2 2.8  
4.5 4.0 3.6

10 11  
1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
3.6 3.2 2.8  
4.5 4.0 3.6

in matters of *Warr*, *Policy in Government*, &c. *propter se*, are worthy to be observed, which that *learned Gentleman*, and *accomplished Traveller*, *Sir Henry Blunt*, in his voyage to the *Levant*, hath so well treated of: nay, even in *China*, their good *Laws*, and *Customs* are to be observed; but the knowledge of their *Power* is of little purpose for us, since it can neither advantage, nor hinder us. But the *Traveller* is more concerned in the knowing of these, and the like things in the neighbouring *Countreys* or *Kingdoms*, as to their *State*, *Condition*, *People*, &c. as I have already noted; among which, he should first rightly understand *France*, as being the first *Countrey* that our *English Gentry* visit; next, *Italy*; then, *Spain*, *Germany*, *Flanders*, the *Low Countreys*, &c.

*The life of a Traveller*

If we truly consider the life of a *Travel-ler*, it is spent either in *Reading*, *Meditation*, or *Discourse*: By the first, he converseth with the *Dead*; by the second, with *Himself*; and by the last, with the *Living*.

Among other *Particulars*, a *Travel-ler* should observe the likeness and sympathy of distant *Nations*, as the *Spaniards*, with the *Irish*; the *French*, with the *Poles*; the *German* (especially the *Holstein-men*) with the *English*, &c.

*The Italian must be familiar with Discourse.*

Let the *Traveller* ascertain himself of this, that if any *Foreigner* is to be imitated in matter or manner of *Discourse* or *Complement*, it is the *Italian*, who may be said to be a *Medium* betwixt the gravity of the *Spaniards*; the levity of the *French*; and heaviness of the *Dutch*; for he seems to ally the one, and quicken the other two.

*Several helps necessary.*

He ought to make use of external helps and necessities as appertain, and are pertinent, to the knowledge of *Places* and *Howres*, such as are *Itineraries*, *Diaries*, *Tables*, and other *Chorographical* and *Gnomonical Instruments*.

In *Adversity*, it is good to be courageous, yet not so as to be either rash, or fearful; and in *Prosperity* to be temperate and chaste, not addicted to *Wine*, *Laciviousness* or *Luxury*.

*Not good to speak much.*

It is not good to speak much of his *Country*, or *Friends*, but more especially in the way of *Offentation*, or *Comparison*; neither is it good too much to exercise the *Tongue*, especially in matter of *State* or *Controversie*; but as it were to be decently and civilly *Deaf and Dumb*.

He ought to be very circumspect in the choyce of *Innes* upon the road, and fresh *Acquaintances*, both which oft times prove very dangerous: and it is good to deport himself humbly, and respectfully towards his *Host*, his *Landlord*, his *Companions*, and *Chamber-fellows*; also be civil to *Domestical Servants*, *Strangers*, and such *People* as he shall meet withal in his *Travels*; and not to be given to *Jeering*, for the exercising his *Witt*; which may (as oft times it doth) prove his *ruine*.

*Great care in the choyce of Innes, and Acquaintance, and to be courteous.*

*Secondly, Thirdly,*

He ought to be skilfull in *Swimming*, as being that which may save his *life*.

*Swimming is a good thing.*

When he travels betimes, it is good to have such *Cordials*, and useful things in a *readiness*, as may corroborate his *Spirits*, for the better performing his *Journey*.

*Not to travel fasting.*

It is good to be sparing, and cautious in his *Diet*, and more especially at *Dinner*, lest crudities being raised by his too much exercise, produce the effects of grievous *Diseases*.

*To be sparing in Diet.*

It is not good for him to expose himself presently into the cold, when he is hot; but rather to bring his *Body* to a good temper, by a continual motion, or moderate stirring; his *Body* being hot, to abstain from sleeping (in the day-time) on the *Grasse*, or the like dangerous places.

*Fourthly,*

It is convenient that he *Travel* well armed for his defence against *Robbers*, or *fuddain* invasions.

*To meet well armed.*

In the heat of *Summer*, it is good to *Travel* in the *Morning*; and in the *Winter*, as he discerns the *weather*, so let him set forward his *journey*, and let him shun late hours, but especially if he perceives himself subject to *Cataracts*; or if he intend to avoid the danger of *Thieves*, and the like ill *Conveniences* that pursue late hours.

*Best time to travel.*

In his *habit*, it is not good to be too sumptuous nor too mean; but civil, and fashionable according to the *Country* where he is.

*His Habit.*

Having hitherto discoursed of such things which concern a *journey*, in the next place I shall say something of his staying at places; concerning which there are several *precepts* to be observed.

*Things to be observed in his stay at places.*

1. That in those places where he is certain to tarry, he be diligent to observe whatsoever is worthy of his care or eye; and accordingly make an observation of it in his *diary*.

*First.*

2. That

war  
fenc  
3  
oth  
him  
com  
grea  
Lan  
mult  
of B  
Cou  
Geog  
as hi  
frequ  
caden  
be for  
that  
Recre  
great  
but b  
cise, i  
or oth  
4  
Fornai  
into.  
5. A  
pany be  
much f  
and cor  
extrav  
free and  
a sweet  
cheerfu  
discour  
and ser  
wit, an  
Epigram  
Tales, y  
may ex  
nent en  
try.  
6. B  
the clo  
Religion  
riage,  
among  
wherein  
there is  
want of  
nish him  
which l  
young o  
for ever  
7. L  
frivolou  
ned men  
age acc  
tions,



themselves; and behold every where great examples to instruct them: therefore he that frequents many kinds of people, and of different humours, and spirits, learns the *Police* and *Orders of Cities*, as to their *Language*, *Laws*, *Customs*, &c. which must of necessity be a great advantage unto him; for 'tis *travel* that weans him from the false love of his own *Country*, and makes him a *Citizen of the whole World*, or at least brings him easily to comply with every one, and to know himself the better.

The species of Travel are.

Grammatical Travel.

Topographical Travel.

Next, we are to consider the *Species* and *forms of Travel*.

1. There is a *Grammatical Peregrination*, or *Travel*; and this is undertaken for the knowledge of *foreign Languages*.

2. A *Topographical Travel*, and this chiefly concerned in the right knowledge of places, the end of which *travel* is not only *Theorick*, but also *Practick*; for it is not enough to know the *distances*, *scituations*, and *figures of Places*, unless the *Traveller* refer this knowledge of *Places* to a certain profession of life, that is, either *historically*, *astronomically*, *mercantily*, or otherwise; for what a sad account would it be, that if at his return (although he had seen all the *World*) he should be only able to say, *I have seen nothing but Mountains, Valleys, Fields, Woods, Rivers, Cities, Towns, &c.* alas these he might have seen before in his own *Country*: certain, it is such a *Theory of Travels* will not countervail his great *expences*, besides the hazard of his *Person* by *Sea & Land*: no, this will not doe, he must refer his *Travel* to a more worthy use, as I have said before.

Pragmatick Travel.

3. A *Pragmatick Travel*, and this is taken out of a curiosity of the knowledge of such *rarities* as are to be seen in *strange Countries*; either the various works of *Nature* or *Art*, whether *Inanimate* or *Animate*, as *Men, Beasts, Serpents, Fowls, Plants, &c.* whether good, or hurtful in their *kinds*, or the like.

An Ethick Travel.

4. There's an *Ethick Peregrination*, and this is undertaken for the learning of good *manners*: for he that takes a long *journey*, and hath made no inquisition of the *vertues*, and good *qualifications* of the *people*, doth no more then if he imagined, that the mutation of *place*, and the sight of *Strangers*, were enough to gain him *Vertue*.

Military Travel.

5. There's a *Military*, or *Martial Travel*, and this is not taken up without the

command of *Princes* or *Superiours*; and to this end, or purpose, that he that *fights* with an *Enemy* in a *Foreign Country*, may nevertheles at the same time be said to defend his own.

6. There's a *Travel for Health*; and this is prescribed by *Physitians*, for the removing the disease.

7. There's a *Religious peregrination*, and this is commonly appointed for the Conversion of *people* in *strange Countries* that are ignorant of the *Gospel*; and this is either *lawful*, or *unlawful*. *Lawfull* when he professeth that *Religion* in another *Country*, that he is not suffered to exercise in his own; or to convert *Heathens* to the true *Worship of God*. *Unlawful*, when he *Travels* into the *Holy Land*, to *Rome &c.* as an *Idolater* to see and worship *Sepulchers, Temples* dedicated to *Saints*, to the *Virgin* at *Loretto*, or the like; and such a *Travel* is not allowable, first, because they are undertaken without any allowance from the *Word of God*, and were never commanded; and secondly because there is attributed to them a *merit* of purchasing *Eternal life*, which we can only acknowledge to *Christ* our *Saviour*.

Hitherto we have treated of such things that are to be observed by *youth*, before they are fitting to *Travel*; then of such things as they ought to observe in their *Travels* and abode in *places*, and what they ought to shun, and what to observe; our next work shall be (in the way of caution) to offer, or lay down (to our returning *Travellers*) such fantastick, or ridiculous *Actions*, and *Departments* as are too commonly seen in our returned *Travellers*, which he ought carefully to avoid, as

1. That he be not so affected with the *a-la-modes* and *salbions* of other *Countries*, as at his Return to despise his own; or to pronounce and speak the *Languages* abroad, as to forget his *Mother-tongue*, left contrary to his expectation of being admired, he be laughed at by his *Country-men*.

2. That he do not prate his *experience*, and *observations* in every *place*, and to every one but to consider in what *place* he discourses, at what *time*, and before *whom*; but in his *discourse*, let him rather be advised in his *Answers*, then forwards to tell *stories*, that it may appear that he hath not changed his *Country* and *manners* for those of *Foreign parts*.

3. How ill-favoured is it, to see a *young Gentleman* come home full of *disguise*.

guisem  
the F  
hamm  
Feet  
singin  
which  
their  
where  
mind,  
notabl  
come.  
4.  
as they  
and all  
magnit  
ting fr  
Mr. H  
young  
strange  
sent th  
ing gl  
strange  
wichall  
them in  
sooner  
prove it  
temper  
Gentlem  
of Plat  
more I  
nest wor

imby.

Things to be observed at the Travellers return.

1. A.

Secondy.

Thirdy.

guisements, not only of apparel, but of the Face, strouting gate, bending in the hamms; and shoulders, looking upon their Feet and Legs, together with their singing and frisking as they goe along, which do speak them Travellers, as though their credit consisted upon the outside; whereas it is in the right informing of the mind, with those things that are most notable in those places in which they come.

4. Some there are that strive as much as they can to degenerate from Englishmen and all their talke is still forraign, and magnifying other Countrys, and derogating from their own: others there are (as Mr. Howell noteth; in his instructions to young Travellers) that are always relating strange things and wonders, and do so present them to the hearers through multiplying glasses, that they make them more strange and far greater then they are; and withall they have so much wit to relate them in places far enough, that they may sooner believe it, then go about to disprove it; others he saith are of another temper and will say, that there is not a Gentleman in France, but carries his box of Plaisters about him; that Paris hath more Ladies of pleasure, then London honest women; that there is not a Woman in

Italy but wears an Iron girale next her skin, in the absence of her husband; and that for a Pistol one may enjoy any Mans wife there: that there are but few Dons in Spain, which eat Flesh once a week, or that keepeth not his Last besides his Wife; that in Germany once a day, every one hath a Rouse in his noddle; that Portugal hath as many Jews as Christians, with a thousand of the like falsities, too tedious to name: and such Travellers or rather Land-Lopers, as these are not only a shame to their Country abroad, but a disgrace to their Parents and Friends at home; and instead of bringing home the Oyle of Ophir, their return is empty, or worth nothing, being fraughted, as I have noted, with ridiculous and fantastick Actions, Gestures, Strange stories, &c.

To conclude; our Traveller being returned home to his native soil, his best course would be to think of some seled condition, as in the Inns of Court, for the obtaining the knowledg of the Common Laws of England, the knowledg of which will be of great advantage unto him, as to the Government of himself, and the management of his Estate; then, as occasion offers, he may betake himself to a married condition, seek for some preferment at Court, or the like.

urs; and  
he thar  
ign Coun-  
e time be

ation; and  
the Con-  
ntrys that  
and this is  
vfull when  
n another  
to exercise  
ens to the  
l, when he  
Rome &c.  
Sepulchers,  
the Virgin  
ch a Travel  
e they are  
vance from  
never com-  
se there is  
purchasing  
ly acknow-

such things  
with, before  
hen of such  
ve in their  
and what  
to observe;  
way of cau-  
(to our re-  
ntastick, or  
ortments as  
ur returned  
carefully to

ed with the  
er Countrys,  
own, or so  
anguages a-  
tongue, lest  
being admi-  
ntry-men.  
experience,  
and to every  
place he dis-  
fore whom;  
ther be ad-  
forwards to  
ear that he  
end manners

t, to see a  
full of dis-  
guise.

1m. 15.

10

30

The Court  
deput.

Things to  
be observed  
at the Trav-  
ellers re-  
turn

10. 1.

Second.

Dddd.

Traffi.





use,  
for, v  
flouri  
est c  
may  
how  
*Cities*  
dow  
their  
There  
use ar  
nition  
some  
those

The great  
flourish  
of America  
ought to be  
understood  
well.

A  
to be  
play  
barter  
reign  
by im  
ing c  
his D



## Traffick or Commerce.



I will not be necessary to speak of the antiquity of **T R A F F I C K**, it being by all so generally known to be anti-ent, as may appear by holy Writ: Neither, of the great

use, and benefit that doth accrew by it; for, what *Nation* or *City* is more rich and flourishing than those who enjoy the greatest *Commerce*? Among which, *England* may be esteemed in the first rank: and how many rich, potent, and flourishing *Cities* have been ruined, and like a *Widow* left desolate, when they have lost their *Commerce* with other *Nations*: Therefore seeing that *Traffick* is of so great use and benefit, I shall first give the definition of a *Merchant*, and then proceed to some Particulars in way of direction to those who are unexperienced therein.

A *Merchant* (as one wisely saith) ought to be such a one as is always busie and employing himself in buying, selling, and bartering of *Commodities*, as well in foreign *Countreys*, as here at home, and by employing of *Factors* for the negotiating of his *Affairs*; he ought to be just in his *Dealings*, without fraud, and no Ex-

The small  
Business  
of a Merchant  
ought to be  
managed  
well.

tortioner; to have experience in the *Mathematicks*, especially in *Arithmetick*, for the better methodizing, and keeping his *Accounts*; In *Pythometria* or *Gauging*, for the understanding of the *Measures* of all sorts of *Vessels*; In *Geography*, for the knowledge of the situation of *Countreys*, *Iles*, *Cities*, and *Ports*; what *Commodities* they produce, &c. To be expert in *Naval affairs*, for the better avoiding of *Injuries* and *Wrongs*; To have insight in the valuation and worth of *Coyns*, *Weights*, and *Measures* of all *Countreys*, especially in those where he driveth a *Trade*, and not altogether build his Faith upon the honesty of his *Factor* or *correspondent*; the like is to be observed in the *Customs*, *Subsidies*, *Tributes*, *Tolls*, &c. of each *Countrey*, which are payable upon every particular *Commodity* both imported, and exported, with other things, which elsewhere will be more conveniently treated of. But to the design it self.

**T R A F F I C K** is the bartering, bargaining, or exchanging of one man with another, and by giving to one, so much of one *Commodity* or thing, to have of the other so much of the same value of a different *Commodity*, which is effected by number, weight, and measure: By bartering, is meant goods for goods; by bargaining is understood money for goods; and by exchanging, money for money. Yet oftentimes the *Trade* of a *Merchant* is more various, for sometimes he buyes and sells his *Commodities* for part money, part time; sometimes for part goods; and part money payable by *Bill*, or assignation



Thus, may be seen how great the variety of Weights are; The like is also in the Measures, as in London the Yard is used for Silks, Wollen cloth, &c. the Ell for Linnen cloth, &c. and the Goad for Frizes, Cottons, and the like, which in several other Countreys is also observed, onely giving diversity of names to their Measures, as, the Yard, Ell, Goad, Fathom, Cane,

Alne, Brace, Pico, Stick, Palm, Vane, Covado, and so forth; and, because the Merchants found it defective, for the more perfection, they invented the Art of Concave-measures, serving for all liquid and dry Commodities, as for Wines, Oyls, &c. as also for Grains, Rice, and the like.

The ENGLISH FOOT: as it was taken from the Iron-Standard at Guild-hall, London, and compared with the Standards for Measures of several Kingdoms, by Mr. John Greaves Professor of Astronomy in the Univerſity of Oxford.

A Table of the English Foot, compared with the Measures of several Kingdoms.

Such parts as the English foot contains	1000
The Roman foot contains	967
The foot on the Monument of St. Silvas in Rome contains	972
The foot of Villalpandus, deduced from the Congius of Vespasian contains	986
The Greek foot contains	1007
The Persian arsh	3197
The Venetian foot	1162
The Paris foot	1068
The Rhin-land foot, or that of Snel-lins	1033
The greater Turkish Pico at Constantinople	2200

The lesser Pico at Constantinople in proportion to the greater, as 31 to 32.	
The Derah, or Cubit at Cairo in Egypt	1824
The Canna at Naples	6880
The Braccio at Naples	2100
The Braccio at Florence	1913
The Braccio at Sienna for Linnen	1974
The Braccio at Sienna for Wollen	1242
The Genoa Palm	815
The Vara at Almaria, and at Gibraltar in Spain	2760
The Amsterdam Ell	2268
The Antwerp Ell	2283
The Leyden Ell	2260

A Table of the Gold and Silver Weights of divers Kingdoms, as they were taken from their Standards, and compared with the Denarius, by Mr. John Greaves, Professor of Astronomy in the Univerſity of Oxford.

A Table of the Gold and Silver weights of several Kingdoms, and compared with the Denarius.

Such Grains, or Parts of the English Standard for Gold, and Silver, or of the Troy weight, as the Denarius Consularis contains	62
according to the weight of the best Coyas, or according to the weight of the Congius of Vespasian	

Grains

The ancient and modern Roman ounce contains	438
The ancient and modern Roman pound, of 12 ounces to the pound, containeth	5256
The Troy, or English ounce containeth	480

Eccen

The

to bar the best whom to know

and

are of the knowledge of Coins, Weights, and Measures, very useful, and this is that in all their Coins, and differ in respect of valuation, they give a three, between in the where they are, as be- fore or place

valued according to the Met- and Silver, of Copper,

rious, and to the Com- ghed by its, by the Re- hat of 700, us, also in the pound re weighed of Haberd- ight. A- n respect of weighed by Quinials, ighs, Roues, Candils, these also s Quarters, s, Rowle's, wotes make, eye a lesser latter, as 24, and 30, the place, se are red- es, Carats, do contain Thus

<i>Grains</i>	<i>Grains</i>
The <i>Troy</i> , or <i>English pound Standard</i> of <i>Gold and Silver</i> , at 12 ounces to the pound, contains — } 5760	The <i>Sienna ounce</i> contains ——— } 431
The <i>Spanish pound</i> , or <i>Standard for Gold and Silver</i> of 16 ounces at <i>Gibraltar</i> , contains ——— } 7090	The <i>Neapolitane pound</i> , or <i>Standard</i> , for <i>Gold and Silver</i> , consisting of 12 ounces, contains — } 4950
Also here is another <i>pound</i> which contains ——— } 7085	The <i>Neapolitane ounce</i> contains — 412;
The <i>Spanish ounce</i> at <i>Gibraltar</i> , the pound consisting of 7090 grains } 443;	The <i>Genoa pound</i> , or <i>Standard</i> , for <i>Gold and Silver</i> , consisting of 12 ounces, contains — } 4866
The <i>Florence, Leghorn, and Pisa pound</i> , or <i>Standard for Gold and Silver</i> , consisting of 12 ounces, contains ——— } 5286	The <i>Genoa ounce</i> contains ——— 405;
The <i>Florence, Leghorn, and Pisa ounce</i> contains ——— } 440;	The <i>Oke of Constantinople</i> , consisting of 400 <i>Silver drams</i> , contains ——— } 19128
The <i>Paris pound</i> , or <i>Standard for Gold and Silver</i> , consisting of 16 ounces, contains ——— } 7560	The <i>Silver dram</i> , generally used throughout the <i>Grand Seignior's Territories</i> , as also in <i>Persia</i> , and in the <i>Mogalls Countrey</i> , contains ——— } 47:
The <i>Paris ounce</i> contains ——— 472;	The <i>Turkish Sultany</i> , or <i>Egyptian Sheriff</i> (with which the <i>Venetian</i> and <i>Barbary chequine</i> , as also the <i>Norimberg Ducat</i> , within about a grain more or less doth agree) contains ——— } 53:
The <i>Venetian pound</i> , or <i>Standard for Gold and Silver</i> , consisting of 12 ounces, contains ——— } 5528	The <i>Rotolo at Cairo</i> for <i>Gold and Silver</i> consisting of 144 <i>drams</i> , contains ——— } 6886;
The <i>Venetian ounce</i> containeth ——— 460;	The <i>Rotolo at Damascus</i> , consisting of 720 <i>drams</i> for <i>Silk</i> , contains — } 34430;
The <i>Sienna pound</i> , or <i>Standard for Gold and Silver</i> , consisting of 12 ounces, contains ——— } 5178	

Of Exchanges.

*The use and benefit of Exchanges, or Bills of Exchange.*

**E**Xchange of Money is of great antiquity, and is esteemed exceeding commodious, excellently useful and beneficial, as well to Kingdoms and Cities in general, as to Merchants, and others in particular. And as Money was first invented to be made of the best Metals, for the avoiding of chargeable and troublesome carriage and transportation of Commodities from one place to another in way of trade; so was Exchanges of Moneys first invented for the avoiding, as well the danger, as the trouble and charge in the carriage of Moneys from place to place. And by reason that the Standards, Stamps, and Inscriptions of Moneys are found to be various, and different, no Nation making use of anothers Coyns, forced them (for the better performance) to appoint a certain Exchange, by giving value for value, according to the fineness or coarseness of the Coyn, with a certain allowance to the Merchant.

Seeing that Exchanges are of such great use and importance, the Merchant ought to have great insight and knowledge in the Coyns of foreign Countreys, that he may be able to reduce one Coyn into the valuation of another, by raising or abating, according to the goodness or badness of the Metal, that when he hath occasion to draw a Bill of Exchange, upon one of 1000 *l.* here at London, to be paid in France, Holland, or elsewhere, he may know the loss or gain.

The true exchange for Moneys by Bills of Exchange is really grounded upon the valuation, fineness, and weight of the Money, of every Countrey, according to the Par, that is value for value, and on this are the Exchanges of England grounded.

Exchanges are made by Bills, when Money is delivered simply here in England, and Bills received for the same, to have the payment in some other Countrey beyond the Seas, for Goods here bought, or the like, at a certain price agreed upon, the like is observed beyond the Seas, and the Money received here in England.

The

*The meaning of a Bill of Exchange.*

the  
cha  
tog  
the  
Fr  
to  
bei  
Me  
hap  
def  
Eng  
like  
cha  
spor  
debt  
paid  
ter f  
treb  
A  
thers  
Seas  
ney  
him  
same  
with  
the  
their  
paid  
of E  
it cor  
of E  
and fr

Law

*The form of Bills of Exchange.*

A  
hundr  
Shillin  
Pound  
dize  
me C  
Advis

A

On  
ving  
dam,

Th  
for M



The meaning of a Bill of Exchange.

The meaning of a *Bill of Exchange* is thus to be understood: Suppose two *Merchants* have Correspondence and Dealings together, the one here in *England*, and the other in *France*, the Merchant in *France* having bought Goods of a Man, to the value of 500 or 1000 *l.*, the Man being to come to *England*, comes to the Merchant for his Money, who being perhaps not provided, or otherwise the Man desirous to have his Money paid him in *England*, the Merchant upon those, or the like Considerations, draws a *Bill of Exchange* for the said sum upon his Correspondent in *England* (who perhaps is indebted unto him in greater sums) to be paid upon sight, or within such a time after sight, either upon *usance*, or double or treble *usance*, as they agree.

Again, sometimes *Gentlemen*, or others, having occasion to travel beyond Seas, for their conveniency pay their Money to a Merchant here at *London*, desiring him to draw a *Bill of Exchange* for the same, upon his *Faktor*, or some Merchant with whom he hath correspondence, at the Place where the *Gentlemen* do design their Journey, which *Bill* is ordered to be paid as aforesaid. Seeing then that *Bills of Exchange* are of such great use, I think it convenient to set down the form of a *Bill of Exchange* from *London* to *Amsterdam*, and from *Amsterdam* to *London* again.

*Laus Deo Adj. 10 June 1664.*  
In *London* — 600 *l.*  
at 34 *s.* 6 *d.*

The form of a Bill of Exchange.

**A**T *Usance* pay by this my first *Bill of Exchange* unto *A B.* the Sum of Six hundred Pounds Sterling, at Thirty four Shillings and sixpence Flemish, for every Pound Sterling, currant Money in Merchandize, for the value hereof received by me *C D.* and put it to Account, as per Advice.

A Dio &c.

G M.

On the Back-side indorsed, To my loving Friend *W. C.* Merchant at *Amsterdam*, Pa.

This is the form of a *Bill of Exchange* for Money delivered and taken up at *Lon-*

don for *Amsterdam*. The second *Bill* doth alter in the addition of these words only; At *Venice*, not having paid by my first *Bill*; pay by this my second *Bill*; and so in the third; for there are commonly three *Bills* made of the same nature.

*Laus Deo Adj. 20 of August 1664.* In *Amsterdam*,  
— 200 *l.* at 33 *s.* 6 *d.*

**A**T *Usance* pay this my first *Bill of Exchange* unto *W. M.* the Sum of Two hundred pounds of lawful Money of *England*, for the value here by me received of *J. K.* make him good payment, and put it to your Account. God keep you.

Subscribed *W. C.*

On the Back-side indorsed, To my loving Friend, Master *G. M.* Merchant at *London*, Pa.

And this is the form of *Bills of Exchange*: The time of payment may be made upon sight, or within so many days after sight, or upon double or treble *usance*; also you may say, Put it to the Account of such a man: but the best is to refer it to the Letter of Advice, and where the first *Bill* is noted *Pa.*, the second must be 2 *s.*, and the third 3 *s.* Neither is it good to say, I would entreat you, or be pleased to pay this *Bill*, though the *Servant* or *Faktor* draweth a *Bill* upon his *Master*.

And if it shall happen (as oft times it doth) that through default the Money is not paid according to the limited time, or the *Bill* not accepted, then and in such Cases there is a Protestation made by some *Notary*, or the like, upon the *Bill* for the non payment, or non acceptance thereof; and this is esteemed much to the disreputation of the Party so denying the same.

There are abundance of Rules and Orders observed about the acceptance, and non acceptance of *Bills of Exchange*, which in a Book, called *Lex Mercatoria*, are at large handled, to which I refer you.

Protestations upon the non-acceptance of Bills of Exchange.

of

Of Customs, Imposts, and other Duties paid upon Goods.

Customs, Imposts, and other Duties paid upon Goods, are known by the Merchant.

Customs, Imposts, and all other Duties paid upon Goods, are by the Law of Nations, due to the Prince, as his Prerogative, in all Cities, Port-towns, Havens, or Harbours, throughout his Territories, as well upon all Goods and Commodities, exported as imported; And for the better receiving of the said Customs, there are in all Cities and Places where Traffick is maintained, Publick Houses, where Officers do attend for the receiving of the same, as may be seen in the Custom-house at London.

Customs, etc. vary.

And though the duty of Customs is generally paid in all Places, yet the manner of payment is found very different, as in some places they pay after the rate of so much per Cent. in Money, and that very different, for in some places they pay 3 per Cent. as in Turkey; by agreement with our Consul; And in other places 5, 10, 15, 20, 25 per Cent. or more, or less, according to the Orders of the place.

Again, in some places they pay after the rate of so much for every Hundred-weight, and that varying in their Prizes, according to the goodness and worth of the Commodity: also in some places they are very low in some Commodities, and high in others; and in some Places high in all.

Further, They are found to differ in respect of time, for in many Hanse Towns, and free Cities, as Leghorn, and the like, they pay the said Customs (which are but low) within a fect time, whereas others will not be so contented.

Also there is a time to be observed in many Priviledge-places enjoying free Marts and Fairs, as doth Rouen, Frankford, Beaucaire, Mefina, &c. where, at such times, the Customs are so low, that they are not worth regarding.

And lastly, In some places, they receive their Customs in Specie.

Seeing then that the Customs, and other Duties payable upon Goods are so various, the Merchant ought to be very knowing therein, wherein, for his further help, it is necessary to be furnished with a Book, or Books of the Rates of Commodities of the Place, or Places, where he hath Commerce, which Books are to be had in all

places where Traffick is maintained, either in Print, or Manuscript.

And in the payment of these Customs and Imposts, great care, diligence, and exactness is required; delays proving dangerous: for in many places the non-payment renders the Goods forfeited.

The Merchant is required to be diligent in the payment of what Customs or Imposts are due upon Goods.

Also Goods become forfeited several other ways, and that according to the Custom of the place: as in Spain, all Commodities concealed, are onely forfeited, which may be redeemed with some charge, unless they be such as are prohibited. The like is observed in England, Scotland, and Ireland; where there are several Commodities prohibited, as Woll, Leather, Alom, Scarlet-cloth: And lastly, The Coyn, whether Gold or Silver, is strictly forbidden, so that if any is found with an intention to be exported, it is not only forfeited to the King, but also the Party, if found, is lyable to a great Fine.

The Merchant is required to be diligent in the payment of what Customs or Imposts are due upon Goods.

In Germany, and the Low Countreys, as also in Turkey, and most places of Italy, the Goods onely concealed are forfeited, which may be had again, paying composition, which is more or less according to the grosness of the Offence.

In Sweden, Denmark, and Russia, not only the Goods concealed are forfeited, but also all the Commodities of that kinde: The like is observed in all Countreys; Therefore in thinking fraudulently to save a Shilling, do not venture the losing of a Pound.

The Leidge, or and his

Neither is it enough to discharge or pay the Customs, but the fees of the severall Officers must be discharged; as Bills of Entries, Cockets, Certificates, &c. of the Waiters, Searchers, Clerks, Visitors, and such like.

Of Merchants Accounts by Debitor and Creditor.

Accounts are kept after several methods, differing according to the Customs of the Countreys, but yet tending to one and the same conclusion. The method that I shall here observe, shall be that of Debitor and Creditor, first practised by the Italians, which of all other is the best, the exactest, and the most used.

Merchants Accounts, after the Italian way, with Rules for the keeping, the same, and when Books are required, viz.

Now for the keeping of your Accounts after this excellent way, there are two several Books necessarily required, viz. the Journall, and the Leidge: the use of

The Journall, and the Leidge.

of da  
co  
of  
Pr  
to  
pa  
ma  
ju  
sify  
ted  
do  
the  
or  
the  
Par  
mul  
not  
be  
ding  
Book  
ing  
Cred  
diffic  
I hav  
help  
dang  
Four  
be al  
king  
serve  
for th  
towar  
and h  
it self  
before  
taken  
in the  
when  
oppo  
Acco  
his C  
bitor  
ballan  
up, a  
from  
is the  
owe,  
these  
by th  
in the  
Leidge  
gin to  
line fo  
er eve  
end a  
Debit  
tor his  
ing m

of the *Journal*, is to enter down every daies proceed<sup>d</sup> negotiations, according to the meaning and intention of the *Bargain*, with Relation, to the *Prize* or *Prizes*, you are to pay, or are to receive together with the time when payable, with what other conditions are made betwixt both the parties, in a true, just, and perfect manner; and not to falsify any *Parcel*, *Matter*, or *Thing*, to Antedate the *time* or the like; but to set them down plainly, directly, and orderly: also there must be no *Interlinings*, *Erasing*, or *Blottings* in this Book, neither must there be any vacancies left, but every *Parcel* or *things* in every daies proceedings must without intermission follow one another; for a Book otherwise kept, will be of small validity in Law for the deciding of controversies. And in this *Book* you must be careful in the setting down or charging things on *Debitor* or *Creditor*. Which by reason it is something difficult, and of such great importance, I have set down *Rules of Ayde*, by the help of which you may avoid the said danger, and from this Book called the *Journal* is made the *Leidger*, which must be also kept fair without *Blots* or *Erasing*: and in this *Book* you must observe that the left side of the Pages, is, for the *Debitors*, and the right side, or towards the right hand, for the *Creditors*, and here you enter every mans *Account* by it self, ( that is, by leaving some distance before you begin another mans ) being taken from the parcells, as they are found in the *Journal*; by the date thereof, when made, placing on the other side, opposite to the Account of *Debitor*, the Account of *Creditor*, every *Debitor* having his *Creditor*, and every *Creditor* his *Debitor*; so that when you are desirous to ballance your *Accounts*, cast them both up, and the lesser sum being subtracted from the greater, the remainder, ( which is the *Product* ) is the Money which you owe, or is owing unto you. Further, these *Accounts* are found in the *Journal* by the date thereof, as aforesaid; also in the *Journal* the *Leaves* or *Folio* of the *Leidger*, are noted over a line in the Margin for the *Debitor*; and under the said line for the *Creditor*: and so in the *Leidger* every *parcel* or *thing* hath in the latter end a direction to the *Folio*, whereby the *Debitor* shews his *Creditor*, and the *Creditor* his *Debitor*. But some *Merchants* being more curious will keep a *Wast book*,

that is, a *Book* wherein they enter down in a rough manner, what *Commodities* they buy or sell with *Relations* to the *Bargain*, which afterwards at leisure they enter in their *Journal* in an exact method; and this, if occasions will permit, I doe approve of: also there be many *Merchants* that keep a *Cash-book* so called, by reason they enter nothing down in it, but what *Money* ( which they call *Cash* ) they pay or receive, and this may also be useful, as to a more speedy finding out what *Money* they have received or paid, when, to whom, and for what. But to proceed, the use of these *Books*, to Wit the *Journal* and the *Leidger*: being so great, I have thought it convenient to frame an *Account*, as they are kept by divers eminent *Merchants* here in *London*; but first, for the better understanding the same, I have set down divers *Rules of ayde* for the knowing your *Debitors* and *Creditors*.

Rules of Ayde.

ALL *Accounts* for *Merchants* may be comprised under these heads *viz.* *Domestick*, *Forrain*, or *Partable*; and these are divided, and subdivided into several *Heads* and *Branches*.

Note that Dr. stands for Debitor, and Cr. for Creditor. Also note that all Accounts of Parties being in Forrain Parts, as also of Factors, are to be kept with a double Margent, the inward for the Money, and the outward for the place where you reside.

*Domestick Accounts* may be considered, or found to consist of *Inventories*, *Receipts*, *Payments*, *Sales*, *Abatements*, and *Balancing of Accounts*: of which in Order.

Domestick Accounts, and its parts, viz

*Inventory of the ready Money, Goods, Debts, and Voyages* belonging or due unto you, those several *Parties* or *Wares* is the *Dr.* and your *Stock* or *Principal* is *Cr.* Also *Inventory of the Debts* owing by you; your *Principal* or *Stock* is *Dr.* and the several parties to whom you owe the same; is *Cr.*

Inventories

*Receipts of Money for Wares* sold and delivered, the *Money* is *Dr.* the *Wares* so sold and delivered the *Money* being received upon the *Delivery* is *Cr.*

Receipts

*Receipts of Money by Assurance*, of *Goods* Shipped by another, the *Money* is *Dr.* and *Profit* and *Loss*, or the *Account of Assurance*, is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Money by Bill, Bond, Indenture, Account*, or the like, the *Money* is *Dr.* and the *Party* or *Parties* from whom the same was due, is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Money* taken up at *Interest* by *Bond*, the *Money* taken up or received

F f f f

is

The Merchant is required in the Journal to write up all his Imports or Exports as they come in.

It is dangerous to make any Entries, or cancel part of the Goods, and not to deal in published Goods.

The Ledger is not to be kept in the Journal.

A Cash Book is kept by the Merchant.

A Cash Book is kept by the Merchant.

is *Dr.* Also *Profit* and *Loss* for *Interest* thereof, or the *Interest* is *Dr.* and the party that lent the same, for the *Principal* and *Interest* is *Cr.* Also *Receipts of Money for Interest Money*, the *Principal* being continued, the *Money* so Received is *Dr.* and the Account of *Profit* or *Loss*, or *Interest* is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Money* taken up by *Exchange*, the *Money* is *Dr.* and your *Correspondent*, or he to whom the *Bills* are directed is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Money* by *Exchange* remitted from your *Factor*, the *Money* is *Dr.* and the Party to whom the *Bills* were directed, if he hath formerly been charged in Account for the same, is *Cr.* otherwise your *Factor* or *Correspondent* is *Cr.* by a double Margent.

*Receipt of Wares* bought for ready *Money*, the *Wares* so bought and received, is *Dr.* and the *Money* if paid upon the delivery is *Cr.*

*Receipt of Wares* bought for *time*, or for part *Money*, part *Time*, or for part *Money*, part *Time*, and part by another's *Bill*, the several *Wares* so bought, and received are *Dr.* and the Party which vendeth the same is *Cr.* and after the vendor is *Dr.* for the *Money* paid, or *Bills* delivered him as aforesaid.

*Receipts of Wares* bought for part *Money*, and part for another's *Bill*, the *Ware* bought is *Dr.* and the *Money* that is paid is *Cr.* also the party whose *Bill* is delivered for the value thereof is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Wares* in *Barter*, *Wares* for *Wares*, the *Wares* so received is *Dr.* and the *Wares* delivered is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Wares* in *Barter* for part *Money*, part *Wares*, the *Wares* received are *Dr.* and the *Money* for so much as is paid is *Cr.* as also the several *Wares* delivered for the value thereof.

*Receipts of Wares* in *Barter* for part *Money*, part *Wares*, and part *Time*: also *Wares* in *Barter*, for part *Money*, part *Wares*, part by another's *Bill*, and part *Time*, the several *Wares* so bought and received are *Dr.* and the party that vendeth the same is *Cr.* and after he is *Dr.* for the *Money* paid, *Wares* or *Bills* delivered as before.

*Receipts of Wares* from beyond the *Seas* from your *Correspondent* or *Factor*, the several *Goods* received is *Dr.* and your *Correspondent* ( by a double Margent ) is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Bills of Assignment* from a

nother, the *Assignee*, or party Assigned to pay is *Dr.* and the *Assignor* is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Bills by Exchange*; the party to whom the *Bills* are directed, after his acceptance is *Dr.* and the *Factor* or party who remitted the same, with a double Margent is *Cr.*

*PAYMENTS of Money by Bills of Exchange*, charged upon you, the Party, whether your *Factor* or other who under writ the *Bills*, is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.*

*Payments of Money* remitted by *Exchange*; the Party or *Factor* to whom the *Bills* are payable is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.*

*Payments of Money* for *Assurance* of goods shipped; *Profit* and *Loss*, or the account of *Assurance* is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.*

*Payments of Money for Interest Money*, the *Principal* being continued; *Interest*, or *Profit* and *Loss* is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.*

*Payments of Money* owing by you by *Bonds*, *Bill*, *Account*, &c. the Party or Parties to whom the same was due, is *Dr.* also *Wares* bought for *Money*, the *Wares* so bought and received is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.*

*Payments of Money* lent at *Interest* by *Bonds*, the Party or Parties which borrowed the same, for the *Principal* and *Interest* is *Dr.* and the *Money* for the sum paid is *Cr.* as also the Account of *Interest*, for the *Interest* thereof, or *Profit* and *Loss*, is *Cr.*

*Payments of Money* for *Charges* of *Wares* bought, the *Wares* are *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.* also extraordinary charges in the house-hold, as also petty expenses; *Profit* and *Loss* is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.*

*Payments of Money* for charges of *Goods* shipped; the *Voyage* is *Dr.* and the *Money* which is paid is *Cr.*

A *Bill*, or *Bills of Debt* delivered by *Assignment* for money owing you; the party assigned to receive the same is *Dr.* and the party whose *Bill* you delivered is *Cr.*

*SALES of Wares* for *Money*; the *Money* sold is *Dr.* and the *Wares* sold, and delivered is *Cr.*

*Sales of Goods* or *Wares* for *Time*, or for part *Money*, part *Time*: as also for part *Money*, part *Wares*, part *Time*; and part by another's *Bill*; the party that buyeth the *Goods* is *Dr.* and the *Goods* sold and delivered is *Cr.* and for the *Money* received, make the *Money* *Dr.* and the party buyer in the second branch *Cr.* again the

Payments

Abstr.

Bills

the party whose *Bill* you take is *Dr.* and the *Buyer Cr.*

*Sales of Wares* by advice from your *Correspondent*, or *Factor*; your *Factor* is *Dr.* and the *Voyage* or *Voyages* for the *Goods* sold by him is *Cr.*

*Sales of Wares in Barter*, *Wares* for *Wares*; the *Wares* received are *Dr.* and the *Wares* delivered are *Cr.*

*Sales of Wares in Barter*, for part *Money*,<sup>10</sup> and part *Wares*; the *Money* as also the *Wares* received is *Dr.*: and the several *Wares* delivered for the whole sum is *Cr.* also for part *Money*, part *Wares*, part *Time*; or part *Money*, part *Wares*, part another's *Bill*, and part *Time*; the party or parties that buyeth the same is *Dr.* also the party whose *Bill* is taken is *Dr.* for the value: and the *Wares* sold, and delivered for the whole is *Cr.* Also in *Barter of Goods*, for part *Wares*, and part by another's *Bill*, also *Wares* received for the value is *Dr.* as is the party whose *Bill* is accepted for the remainder: and the *Wares* sold and delivered as aforesaid is *Cr.*

In buying of *Wares* or *Goods* the contrary is to be observed.

**ABATEMENTS** upon *Debts* owing by you, the *Party* or *Parties* which make the abatement is *Dr.* and *Profit* and *Loss* is *Cr.* and upon *Debts* due to you, *Profit* and *Loss* is *Dr.*: and the *Party* or *Parties* to whom the abatement was made, is *Cr.*

**Abatement** upon *Goods* sold, the *Goods* sold and delivered are *Dr.*; and the party which buyeth the same is *Cr.* also upon *Goods* bought, the *Party* which sold the *Goods* is *Dr.* and the *Goods* so bought and received is *Cr.*

*Voyage* or *Voyages of Commodities* shipped with *Charges*, the *Voyage*, or *Voyages* for the whole is *Dr.*: and the several *Goods* shipped for their respective values with their charges is *Cr.* also the *Money* for the said charges is *Cr.*

**BALLANCE** of *Money*, the *Ballance* is *Dr.* and the *Money* for the rest of the Account is *Cr.*

*Ballance of Debts* owing by you, the party or parties due to receive the same, is *Dr.*; and *Ballance* is *Cr.* Also *Debts* owing unto you, *Ballance* is *Dr.* and the parties still indebted are *Cr.*

*Ballance of Goods* in quantity, account of *Goods* remaining is *Dr.*: and the *Voyage* or *Goods* unfold is *Cr.*

*Ballance of Goods* if gain, the account of *Voyage*, or *Goods*, are *Dr.*: and *Profit* and *Loss* is *Cr.* But if loss, then the Ac-

count of *Profit* and *Loss* is *Dr.*: and the *Voyage* or *Goods* is *Cr.*

*Ballance of Goods* unfold, *Ballance* is *Dr.* and the account of *goods* remaining is *Cr.*

*Ballance of Profit* and *Loss* the Account is *Dr.*: and *Stock* or *Principal* if *Profit*, is *Cr.* but if loss then contrary.

*Ballance of Stock*; the Account is *Dr.*; and *Ballance* is *Cr.* which is equal, and for conclusion will shew the Estate of the whole Account.

**Forraine Accounts.**

**F**orain Accounts consisteth of Receipts, and Payments of *Goods* or *Money*, and *Sale of Goods*, &c.

*Receipts of Goods* by consignment: the *Goods* received for the Account of *A. B.* or the like, specifying for whose Account, is *Dr.*: and under that title naming the particulars of those *Goods* received without value; and so they are to have no *Cr.* but if valued, then there must be *Dr.* and *Cr.*

*Receipts of Goods* bought for *Money*, at time in *Barter*, &c. make your *Dr.* and *Cr.* as in private Accounts.

*Receipts of Money* taken up at *Interest*; the *Principal* for whose Account the same was borrowed, for the *Interest*, is *Dr.* as also the *Money* for the sum received; and the party lender for the *Principal* and *Interest* is *Cr.*

*Receipts of Money* by *Assignment*, or, upon *Bills of Exchange* remitted unto him, as also for *Goods* sold formerly consigned him; the *Money* in such cases is *Dr.*: and the party that assigned or remitted the same is *Cr.* as is also the *Goods* received for the Account of the *Party* or *Parties* that consigned them.

**PAYMENTS** of *Money* for *Charges* of *Goods* shipped; the *Goods* so shipped is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.* also *Charges* of *Goods* received by consignment from *A. B.* or the like; the said *Goods* is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.* Furthermore *Payments* of *Money* for *Extraordinary Charges*; the Account current of your principal, for whom the same was expended, is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.*

*Payments of Money* by *Bills of Exchange*; charged on you by your *Principal*; the said *Principal* is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.* also *Payments of Money* by *Commission*; the party that gave the *Commission* is *Dr.* and the *Money* is *Cr.*

Payments

ned to  
the  
after  
Factor  
with a  
bills of  
Party,  
under  
y is Cr.  
y Ex-  
om the  
Money is  
of goods  
account  
is Cr.  
Money,  
interest, or  
Money is Cr.  
y you by  
Party or  
is Dr.  
the Wares  
and the  
Interest by  
which bor-  
rowed and In-  
terest for the sum  
of Interest,  
Profit and  
Charges of  
Dr. and the  
charges in  
expenses,  
e Money is  
ges of Goods  
and the Mo-  
delivered by  
you; the  
same is Dr:  
delivered is  
the Money  
delivered is  
Time, or for  
so for part  
; and part  
that buyeth  
ds sold and  
Money re-  
r, and the  
ch Cr. again  
the

Abate-  
ments.  
Ballance.

Forrain  
Accounts  
consisting  
in  
Receipts.

Payments





# The Journal Book.

Fol. 1.		Anno 1664. in London.		£	β	9											
1	CASH, Dr. to Stock, 1768 l. 15 s. 09 d. brought out of my private Estate this day for Traffick-occasions, as by the Agreement between that Leager-Cash and Cash-Book appeareth; the Sum which I make manifest here, is—	1768	15	09													
2	Cloth Rashes, Dr. to Stock 1300 l. for 200 Pieces unfold, which cost me 6 l. 10 s. per Piece—	1300	00	00													
3	House, the white Horse, Dr. to Stock 2340 l. for a Principal, with a Legacy that is to be paid out of the same House, standing in Lombard-street, producing both—	2340	00	00													
4	Ship, the Spaw-neck of London, Dr. to Stock 450 l. for my part thereof, Master under God James Port for this present Voyage to the Canaries; the cost is—	0450	00	00													
5	Allert Allerton, at Lubone, Dr. to Stock 426 l. 4 s. 6 d. due to me, Reaze 681 V 960, as appeareth by my Account sent me, dated the 28th day of November last, proceeding from the sale of several Wares for my use, Exchange at 20 Reaze for 3 d. is---	0426	04	06													
6	Bartel Bartelsson, of Norwich, Dr. to Stock 200 l. for his Bond due the 27th of April next, delivered to me, proceeding from Commodities formerly sold to him—	0200	00	00													
7	Stock, Dr. to Conrade Crispian 77 l. 11 s. 9 d. for my Bill, due the 27th of March, delivered for Goods formerly bought of him, producing—	0077	11	09													
8	Stock, Dr. to David Darling 340 l. for a Legacy due the 26th of June next, out of the House called the white Horse standing in Lombard-street, to be released after 17 years purchase; the chief Sum and Rent produceth—	0340	00	00													
Jan. 5. 1664.																	
9	Couchantile, Dr. to Cash 1570 l. 16 s. for four Barrels poiz 748 li. bought of Thomas Coyster, whose No: weight and price are as followeth:	1570	16	00													
<table border="0" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td style="font-size: 2em;">{</td> <td style="padding-left: 5px;">440 li 212 t. 18</td> <td rowspan="4" style="padding-left: 20px;">} poiz: 804 li. Tare 56. Netto 748 li. at 42 s. each li. my pay- ment is—</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 5px;">537 li 199 t. 14</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 5px;">530 li 198 t. 13</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 5px;">520 li 195 t. 11</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="padding-left: 10px;">804 56</td> <td></td> </tr> </table>		{	440 li 212 t. 18	} poiz: 804 li. Tare 56. Netto 748 li. at 42 s. each li. my pay- ment is—		537 li 199 t. 14		530 li 198 t. 13		520 li 195 t. 11		804 56					
{	440 li 212 t. 18	} poiz: 804 li. Tare 56. Netto 748 li. at 42 s. each li. my pay- ment is—															
	537 li 199 t. 14																
	530 li 198 t. 13																
	520 li 195 t. 11																
	804 56																
10	Evert Evertson, Dr. to Profit and Loss 190 l. for a Legacy due the 24th of June, being now given me out of this House, called the Empiour, standing in Cheap-side: The same he may release at 18 l. yearly, after the rate of 18 years purchase; the chief Sum and Rent is—	0190	00	00													
Jan. 13. 1664.																	
11	Cash, Dr. to Cloth Rashes 128 l. for 16 Pieces, sold to William Panford, at 8 l. perpiece, my Receipt is—	0128	00	00													

G E E E E

Exeter

THE

Fol. 2.		Anno 1664. In London.			
12	Exeter-Wares, Dr. to Francis Frensey 853 l. for 210 peeces, to pay upon demand: the bought particulars are as followeth,	£	β	9	
	30 White Sayes ——— at 76 s. per peece — 114 l.				
	60 Broad Perpetuances — at 78 s. per peece — 234 l.				
	70 Semptrances ——— at 80 s. per peece — 280 l.				
	50 Ditto ————— at 90 s. per peece — 225 l.				
	210 ————— 853	0853	00	00	
13	Ditto Francis, Dr. to House the White horse, for Rent due the 12th of Febr. next being yearly- —————	0060	00	00	
	January the 25. 1664.				
14	Francis Frensey, Dr. to Cloath Rasbes, 321 l. 15 s. for 39 peeces, to be paid upon demand at 8 l. 5 s. per peece, comes to —————	0321	15	00	
15	Cash, Dr. to Profit and Loss, 5 l. 16 s. 8 d. for advance of 700 Dollars exchanged for other Money at 4 s. 7 d. per peece, which cost me but 4 s. 5 d. the difference at 2 d. per peece is —————	0005	16	08	
	February, the 3. 1664.				
16	Cloth Rasbes, Dr. to Comrade Crispian, 1500 l. for 250 peeces, part at six Moneths, the whole at 6 l. per peece amounteth to —————	1500	00	00	
17	Comrade Crispian, Dr. to Cash 500 l. paid him now in part —————	0500	00	00	
	February, 12. 1664.				
18	Francis Frensey, Dr. unto Bartel Bartelson, 200 l. ordered Francis to receive of Bartel —————	0200	00	00	
19	Interest reckoning, Dr. to Cash, 3 l. 6 s. 8 d. for Interest of 200 l. allowed Bartel at 8 l. per cent, paid him in hand for paying 2 Mo: before his time is —————	0003	06	08	
	February, 17. 1664.				
20	Evert Evertson, Dr. to Exeter-Wares, 462 l. 15 s. for 95 peeces sold part on 6 Moneths: the particulars and prices are as followeth —————				
	15 White Sayes ——— at 87 s. per peece is — 065 l. 05 s.				
	30 Broad Perpetuances — at 90 s. per peece is — 135 l. 00 s.				
	50 Semptrances ——— at 105 s. per peece is — 262 l. 10 s.				
	The 95 peeces amounts to ————— 462 l. 15 s.	0462	15	00	
21	David Darling, Dr. to Evert Evertson, 332 l. 10 s. for mine Assignment in part of the Staff, and in full of a Legacy, and Principal, of the first of January, now bought of him by agreement producing —————	0332	10	00	
22	Ditto David, Dr. to Interest reckoning 7 l. 10 s. for allowance of 4 Mo. paid him by agreement before his time, the sum is —————	0007	10	00	
23	Cash, Dr. to Govern Golston 300 l. received of him upon Interest, the sum is —————	0300	00	00	
24	Interest reckoning, Dr. to Govern Golston 6 l. being for three Moneths allowance of the 300 l. taken upon deposits, at 8 l. per cent, is —————	0006	00	00	

Febru.

Fol. 3.

Anno 1664. In London.

February, 21, 1664.

		£	β	9
25	Concheneill Mestica, Dr. to Stock 36 l. 18 s. for six Moneths discount of 959 l. 8 s. at 8 l. per cent. produceth	0036	18	00
26	Stock, Dr. to Concheneill Mestica 959 l. 8 s. for 2 Bar. poyz 369 l. sold to a private friend at six Moneths discount: the particular weight and price is as followeth			
	No. 530 l. 198 ts 13 } paiz. both 393 l. ts 24 l. Netto 369 l.			
	520 l. 195 ts 11 } at 52 s. per l. is	0959	08	00
	393 24 }			

February 27 1664.

27	Bartel Bartleson, Dr. to Stock, 700 l. lent him six Moneths out of my private Estate at 8 l. per cent. which is with Interest	0728	00	00
28	Cash, Dr. to Ship, the Speedwell of London 45 l. 7 s. 6 d. for my part of freight, received of James Port Mister; all charges deducted, the sum is	0045	07	06

March, 4, 1664.

29	Gouert Golsfon, Dr. to Cloth Rasbes 2162 l. 10 s. for 250 peeces sold in truck at 179 s. per peece, on 15 Moneths discount, the sum is	2162	10	00
30	Durances, Dr. to Gouert Golsfon 180 l. for 80 peeces ready money delivered me in part of Barter, at 45 s. per peece, is	0180	00	00
31	Exeter-Wares, Dr. to Gouert Golsfons, 514 l. for 130 peeces ready money delivered me in part of Barter, viz.			
	60 Perpetuances broad — at 78 s. per peece — is 234 l.			
	70 Sempetrances — at 80 s. per peece — is 280 l.	0514	00	00
	514 l.			

32	Cash, Dr. Gouert Golsfon, 1271 l. 18 s. 2 d. received by the assignment of Thomas Coyster to clear his Trucke, the sum is	1271	18	02
33	Cloth Rasbes, Dr. to Gouert Golsfon 196 l. 11 s. 10. for the discount of 2162 l. 10 s. at 8 l. per cent for 15 Moneths, is	0196	11	10
34	Expences general Dr. to Cash, 80 l. Received for my general occasions of my Casher, the sum of	0080	00	00
35	Profit and Loss, Dr. to Cash 10 l. paid my Wife for House-ufe, by my Casher, the sum of	0010	00	00

March, 14, 1664.

36	Profit, and Loss, Dr. to Francis Frensey, 100 l. for one years wages, this day agreed that he shall write my books, the sum of	0100	00	00
37	Francis Frensey, Dr. to expences general, 20 l. for part paid him in hand by me	0020	00	00

March, 20, 1664.

38	Kerfies and Dozens, Dr. to Herman Herbert, 591 l. for 180 peeces Received in Barter at 17 Moneths discount			
	60 Leedes dozens — at 75 s. per peece is — 225 l.			
	60 Kerfies No. A. — at 59 s. per peece is — 177 l.			
	60 Ditto No. B. — at 63 s. per peece is — 189 l.	0591	00	00
	591 l.			

Febru.

Herman

Fol. 4.

Anno 1664. In London.

39	Herman Herberts, Dr. to <i>Conchaneile</i> 481 l. for one Barrel poiz, 185 li. Netto, which I delivered by his order to <i>Gouvert Garban</i> , No: 537 poiz 195 li. tare 14 li. the Netto at 52 s. per li. ready money is	£	β	9
40	Herman Herberts, Dr. to <i>Conrade Christian</i> 49 l. 16 s. 9 d. for mine Assignment delivered him upon Ditto <i>Conrade</i> to clear the Truck, of whom he receiveth	0481	00	00
41	Herman Herberts, Dr. to <i>Kerfies and Dozens</i> , 60 l. 3 s. 3 d. for the discount of 59 l. at 8 l. per cent. for 17 Moneths is	0049	16	09
		0060	03	03
March 26. 1665.				
42	Voyage to <i>Amsterdam</i> , consigned to <i>John Jacobson Vinck</i> , Dr. to <i>Exeter-Wares</i> 514 l. for 130 Pieces, shipt by <i>William Tatum</i> , Master of the <i>Faulcon of London</i> , to be sold for my Account, viz. 70 Sempetrances — at 80 s. — is — — 280 l. 60 Perpetuances — at 78 s. — is — — 234 — — — 514	0514	00	00
43	Ditto Voyage, Dr. to <i>Cash</i> 504 l. for 90 C of <i>English Tinn</i> , being 30 great Pieces, shipt by <i>William Tatum</i> , to the said <i>Jacobson</i> to sell for my Account, my <i>Casbeer's</i> payment at 5 l. 12 s. per cent. is	0504	00	00
March 31. 1665.				
44	Voyage at <i>Hamburg</i> , consigned to <i>John Van Essen</i> , Dr. to <i>David Darling</i> 369 l. for 10 Sails of <i>Pepper</i> poiz 3280 li. shipt by <i>James Snel</i> to the said <i>John</i> , to be sold for my Account, producing at 27 l. upon four Months time per l.	0369	00	00
45	Voyage to <i>Danzick</i> , consigned to <i>Peter Brasenr</i> , Dr. to <i>John Jacobson Vinck</i> at <i>Amsterdam</i> , my Account currant 186 l. for certain Goods, cost 1860 <i>Guilders</i> , as per <i>Envoyce</i> , the same are shipt by <i>Giles Garband</i> , to the said <i>Peter</i> to be sold for my Account, the exchange at 33 s. 4 d. <i>Fs. per l. Sterl.</i>	0186	00	00
April 5. 1665.				
46	Voyage to <i>Amsterdam</i> , Dr. to <i>Cash</i> , 54 l. 3 s. 2 d. for <i>Exeter-Wares</i> , and <i>Tinn</i> , paid by my <i>Casbeer</i> , being	0054	03	02
47	Voyage to <i>Hamburg</i> , Dr. to <i>Expences general</i> 7 l. 4 s. 6 d. for Charges upon the <i>Pepper</i> , paid by my self, being	0007	04	06
April 11. 1665.				
48	<i>Conrade Crispian</i> , Dr. to <i>Interest</i> , reckoning 33 l. 6 s. 8 d. for five Moneths forbearance of 1000 l. made good before it is due, the same at 8 l. per cent. is	0033	06	08
49	Ditto, Dr. to <i>Francis Frensey</i> 1094 l. 1 s. 10 d. for the foot of this Account, by order made good to the said <i>Francis</i> , being	1094	01	10
50	Voyage to <i>Amsterdam</i> , Dr. to <i>Expences general</i> 12 l. 17 s. for <i>Insurance</i> paid by me to <i>William Walker</i> upon the <i>Exeter-Wares</i> , shipt the 26th <i>passado</i> at 50 s. per cent. being	0012	17	00
51	<i>Expences general</i> , Dr. to <i>Cash</i> 70 l. received of my <i>Casbeer</i> for my general occasions	0070	00	00

Profit



*Traffick or Commerce.*

Fol. 5.	Anno 1665. In London.	£	β	9
52	Profit and Loss, Dr. to Expences general 20 l. paid by my Wife for the Houfe use	0020	00	00
April 17. 1665.				
53	Francis Frensey, Dr. to Bartel Bartelson 706 l. 3 s. 2 d. for mine Af- signation, delivered to him upon the said Bartel; the value is	0706	03	02
54	Interest Reckoning, Dr. to Bartel Bartelson 21 l. 16 s. 10 d. for 4 Monet's allowance, paid for me before his time, producing at 8 l. per cent.	0021	16	10
55	Francis Frensey, Dr. to Stock 421 l. 5 s. 4 d. paid him out of my private estate in part, the sum	0421	05	04
April 23. 1665.				
56	Voyage to Hamburgh, Dr. to Kendrick Kempt 11 l. 1 s. 5 d. for Insurance of the Pepper Shipt the 13 day of March last, for which, upon advice of the safe arrival there, he is to have after 3 l. per cent. the sum of	0011	01	05
57	Voyage to Amsterdam, consigned to John Jacobson Vinck, Dr. to Albert Allerton at Lisbon, 425 l. 12 s. 6 d. for 1576. Barrels of Figgs lent by Shipper Tom Tub, to be sold there for my Account, which cost him there with all Charges 68V000 Rease, and are 20 for 3 d.	0425	12	06
58	Profit and Loss, Dr. to Albert Allerton at Lisbon, my Account cur- rant for defects abated 960 Rease to Pedro del Migo upon my Goods sold to him, the same by agreement amounteth to	0000	12	00
May 7. 1665.				
59	Expences general, Dr. to Insurance Reckoning 20 l. received of Go- vers Goffson for my Insurance of 500 l. upon the Canary Wine, shipt by him the 27 of April last, from Amsterdam to Roan in the Delight of Gardam; Michael Mopp Master, my Receipt at 4 l. per cent. is	0020	00	00
60	John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account of Barley, Dr. to Cash, 133 l. 15 s. for Charges, at the Receipt of 365 Quar- ters, Lanrege's measure, received by James Brant, Master of the William and John of London, from Nacor Ninno of Morlois, to sell for the Account of Ditto John; the particulars paid by my Cashier, are as followeth.			
	Bill, Bill-money, and Dungeon Lights	00	03	00
	Custom of 365 Quarters at 6 d. per quarter	09	02	06
	Writers Fees	00	06	09
	Freight, as by the Charty party	96	09	02
	Demurrage of 18 days	09	00	07
	Primage, Pilotage, and other charges	07	05	03
	Porterage up into the Garners, at 6 d. per quart.	09	02	06
	Filling	01	05	00
	Meating and Lassage	01	00	03
		133	15	00

H h h h h

John

β 9  
00 00  
16 09  
03 03  
4 00 00  
04 00 00  
369 00 00  
186 00 00  
054 03 02  
007 04 06  
0033 06 08  
1994 01 10  
0013 17 00  
0070 00 00

Profit

Fol. 6.		Anno 1665. In London.			
2	61	John Facobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account of Treagers Cloth Dr. to Expences general 75 l. 4 s. 8 d. for Charges of 25 Bays, received out of the two Sisters of Hampton, from the said Nicar-Ninno of Marlois, to sell for the Account of Ditto John, the particulars paid by my self, are, as followeth.	£	£	9
		Bill, Bill-money, and Dungeon Lights	00	03	00
		Custom and Impost	60	00	00
		For Wharffage and Carmen	01	03	08
		the Water Fees	00	07	02
		Freight and Primage at 10 s. 10 d. per Bail	13	10	10
			75	04	08
			0075	04	08
6	62	Ditto, his Account Currant, Dr. to Insurance Reckoning 12 l. for the Insurance of 300 l. done by me for him, upon the Angel of London, Thomas Smith Master, from hence to New Found-Land, and Mercellus, and back to London, and so to Amsterdam, for 6 Mo. certain at 4 l. per cent. is	0012	00	00
May 22. 1665.					
7	63	Kersies, in company between Evert Evertson and my self, each; Dr. to David Darling 300 l. for 36 pieces bought of him, and each man to pay his part ready Money, the whole at 8 l. 6 s. 8 d. per piece, is	0300	00	00
6	64	Cash, Dr. to John Facobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account of Barley 180 l. for 180 Quarters, sold to Kendrick Kemps, my Cashiers Receipt at 20 s. each Quarter, is	0180	00	00
2	65	Herman Herberts, Dr. to Ditto John his Account of Treagers Cloth 520 l. for 13 Bays, sold him cont. 104. pieces at 5 l.	0520	00	00
6	66	Ditto, John his Account of Treagers Cloth, Dr. to Herman Herberts, 23 l. 3 s. 8 d. for the Discount of the 520 l. per cent. is	0023	03	08
May 27. 1665.					
4	67	David Darling, Dr. to Evert Evertson, his account by me in company 150 l. for mine Assignment, delivered to him upon Ditto Evert, for the; of 36 Kersies, bought of him for company use being	0150	00	00
2	68	David Darling, Dr. to Cash, 150 l. paid to Barand Brant by my Cashier, upon the Assignment of David Darling, in full of the said company Kersies for my Moyty	0150	00	00
2	69	Cash, Dr. to Herman Herberts, 496 l. 16 s. 04 d. received by my Cashier of Kendrick Kemps, by the Assignment of Ditto Herman in full, of Linnen Cloib, the sum of	0496	16	04
6	70	John Facobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account Currant, Dr. to Cash, 1174 l. 4 s. 6 d. for 2172 l. 15 s. 2 d. F. remitted him for his Account in Bills of Herman Herberts, payable at double usance to Ditto John by Lieven Lewis, Exchange at 37 s. F. for 1 l. sterling; my Cashiers payment to Ditto Herberts, is	1174	04	06
4	71	Expences general, Dr. to Kersies, in company between Evert Evertson, and my self, each; 360 l. for 36 pieces sold to Reynold Ruffe at 10 l. per piece; the Money received by my self, is	0360	00	00

Kenderick

Fol. 7	
2	71
2	73
6	74
6	75
4	76
7	77
7	78
4	79
2	80
7	81
7	82
7	83

Traffick or Commerce.

Fol. 7.		Anno 1665. In London.			
8	72	Kenderick Kemp, Dr. to John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account of Barley 175 l. 17 s. 6 d. for 175 Quarters 7 Bushels. Sold for 20 s. per Quarter, on two Moneths Discount, which is--	£	β	9
			0175	17	06
8	73	Ditto Kemp, Dr. to Ditto John his Account of Treagers Cloth, 630 l. 10 s. for 12 Bays, at 11 Moneths Discount, sold to him containing 97 pieces at 6 l. 10 s. per piece, is--			
			0630	10	00
6	74	John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account of Barley, Dr. to Kenderick Kemp 2 l. 6 s. 4 d. for the Discount of a Mo. of 175 l. 17 s. 6 d. at 8 l. per cent. is			
			0002	06	04
6	75	Ditto, to his Account of Treagers Cloth, Dr. to Ditto Kemp, 43 l. 1 s. 7 d. for 11 Mo. Discount of 630 l. at 8 l. per cent. is			
			0043	01	07
June 3. 1665.					
4	76	Kenderick Kemp, Dr. to Expences general 2 l. 1 s. 5 d. paid to him for Insurance of 20 Bays of Pepper, sent the 31 of March last to John Van Essen at Hamburg, which according to his Letters, are there well arrived: Therefore I pay the Insurance, made the 23 day of April last, is--			
			0011	01	05
7	77	John Van Essen at Hamburg, my Account Currant, Dr. to Voyage to Hamburg, consigned to Ditto John 378 l. 18 s. 11 d. for 3600 Marks Lubecks, at 16 s. Lubeck, each Mark proceeding from the fail of my 10 Bays of Pepper, sent the 31 of March last, sold to Alexander Allertis, which being reduced at 15 s. Lubecks for 20 s. Sterling, is--			
			0378	18	11
7	78	Peter Brasour at Danzick, my Account Currant, Dr. to Voyage to Danzick, consigned to Ditto Peter 381 l. 2 s. 4 d. for 2960 Florins Polish, arising from the full fail of those Goods that were sent unto him the 31 of March. Sold to Leonard Lecker-Beck, which being reduced at 233 Gros for 1 l. Sterling, is--			
			0381	02	04
4	79	Expences general, Dr. to Voyage to Amsterdam, consigned to John Jacobson Vinck, 41 l. for 10 Sempervances lost at Sea, being that William Tatam falling upon the Sand, was enforced somewhat to disburthen his Ship, casting amongst other Goods the above-named pieces, insured me the 11 of April: My Receipt for the same is--			
			0041	00	00
3	80	Profit and Loss, Dr. to Voyage to Amsterdam, 48 l. consigned to Ditto John for 3 pieces of Tinn waiz 9 C. lost at Sea, being cast over-board as before (as per advice) which at 5 l. 12 s. per cent. produceth			
			0048	00	00
June 9. 1665.					
7	81	Kersies Account in company, between Evert Everison and my self, each 1/2 Dr. to Expences general 2 l. 6 s. 8 d. for Charges paid by me upon the said Kersies, as in my Book of Petties in Folio appeareth, are			
			0002	06	08
7	82	Ditto, Dr. to Profit and Loss 7 l. 4 s. for my Provision of 360 l. at 2 l. per cent. is			
			0007	04	00
7	83	Kersies Account by me in company, Dr. to Evert Everison 25 l. 4 s. 8 d. for his 1/2 of the advance upon this Account, being			
			0025	04	08

Ditto

Kenderick



Fol. 9.

Anno 1665. In London.

094	Govert Golfton, Dr. to Peter Braſew at Dantzick, my Accompt Current 374 l. 13 s. 8 d. for 2960 Fiorins Polifh, remitted to me payable here at 10 days after ſight of the Bill by Ditto Govert, the value delivered the 29 of May to Hanns Hoſſer. Exchange at 237 Groſs for each li. Sterling, is	0374	13	08
095	Caſh, Dr. to John Jacobſon Vinck at Amſterdam, my Accompt Current 790 l. 18 s. 2 d. for 8700 Gilders, drawn by me for my Accompt, my Bills delivered unto David Darling, payable to himſelf or Assigns at double ſſance, at 36 s. 8 d. per l. Sterling. My Caſhiers Receipt is	0790	18	02
096	Evert Evertſon his Accompt by me in Company, Dr. to Ditto Evert, his Accompt proper 175 l. 4 s. 8 d. for his Principal and Gains, to wit, for his Principal that he brought in, and the Proceedo there of both made good upon his particular Accompt, being	0175	04	08
097	David Darling, Dr. to Caſhiers 523 l. 16 s. being the Netto of one Barrel, w. 340. poiz 212 Groſs, Tar 18 l. the Netto 54 s. each l. Ready Money produceth	0523	16	00
098	Ditto, Dr. to Voyage to Hamburg, assigned to John Van Eſſen 6 l. 1 s. for Abatement upon Pepper, bought the 31 of March. So that I pay him before the time, enjoyed by Agreement	0006	01	00
June 24. 1665.				
099	Francis Frenſey, Dr. to Govert Golfton 68 l. 13 s. 8 d. for my Assignation, delivered to the ſaid Francis, being	0068	13	08
100	Ditto, Dr. to Kenderick Kempt 249 l. 4 s. 8 d. for my Assignation, delivered to the ſaid Francis, being	0249	04	08
101	Caſh, Dr. to Ditto Kempt 511 l. 14 s. 11 d. Received in full of the ſaid Kempt by my Caſhier, the ſum of	0511	14	11

The end of the Journal Book.



# The Leidger Book.

Fol. 1.

Anno Dom. 1664. In London.

## Cash, is Debitor.

				£	β	9	
1664	1	1 Jan.	To <b>Stock</b> , brought out of my private Estate for Traffick- <i>Cloth Rashes</i> , for 16 pieces sold- <i>Profit and Loss</i> , for advance of 700 Dollars - <i>Goverst Goltson</i> , received of him upon Interest - <i>Ship the Speedwel of London</i> , for my $\frac{1}{2}$ part of Freight- <i>Goverst Goltson</i> , received by his Assignment <i>John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam</i> , his Account of <i>Barley</i> <i>Herman Herberts</i> , received of my Cashier <i>John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam</i> , my Account <i>Curant</i> <i>Kenderick Kemp</i> , received in full-	1	1768	15	9
	-	13 Ditto.		1	128		
	2	25 Jan.		3	5	16	8
	-	17 Febr.		3	300		
	3	27 Ditto.		4	45	7	6
1665	6	4 March.		3	1271	18	2
	6	22 May.		6	180		
	-	27 Ditto.		)	496	16	4
	9	19 June.		6	790	18	2
	-	24 Ditto.		6	511	14	11
				5499	7	6	

## Stock, is Debitor.

1664	1	1 Jan.	To <i>Conrade Cristian</i> , by Bill due the 27 of March - <i>David Darling</i> , for a Legacy due the 26 of June - <i>Conchemel</i> , for two Barrels poiz 396li. Netto <i>Expences general</i> , for the difference thereof <i>Balance</i> , for my clear Estate	2	77	11	9
	-	Ditto.		-	340		
	3	21 Febr.		-	959	8	
1665	29	June.		4	409	16	7
	-	Ditto.		7	7482	4	9
				9269	1	1	

## Cloth Rashes, Debitor.

1664	1	1 Jan.	To <i>Stock</i> , for 200 pieces remaining unfold - <i>Conrade Cristian</i> , for 250 pieces, part on 6 Moneths- <i>Goverst Goltson</i> , for Discount of 2162 li. 10 s. <i>Profit and Loss</i> gained by fail of 365 pieces -	1	1300		
	2	3 Febr.		2	1500		
	3	4 March.		3	196	11	10
1665	29	June.		-	558	3	2
				3554	15		

## House the White Horse, Debitor.

1664	1	1 Jan.	To <i>Stock</i> , for the Principal, with a Legacy <i>Profit and Loss</i> , gained by Rent	1	2340		
1665	29	June.		3	60		
				2400			

Fol. 1.

# The Leidger Book.

Fol. 1.

Anno Dom. 1664. In London.

## Contra Creditor.

			Contra Creditor.						
1664						1664			
1	5	Fan.	}	Concheuil, for 4 Barrels, poiz 748 li. at 42 s. per li-	2	1570	16	—	
2	3	Febr.			Conrade Crispian, paid in part of 250 pieces of Cloth Rashes	—	500	—	—
—	12	Ditto	}	Interest Reckoning, for 2 Moneths Interest of 200 li--	4	30	6	8	
—	3	March.		Expences general, received for my general occasions	—	80	—	—	
—	—	Ditto	}	Profit and Loss, paid my Wife for Houfe use	3	10	—	—	
1665	4	16		March.	Voyage to Amsterdam, for 200 C of English Tinn	5	504	—	—
—	—	—	}	By: Voyage to Amsterdam, for the charges of Exeter Wares and Tinn	—	54	3	2	
—	—	—		Expences general, received of my Cashier	4	70	—	—	
—	5	7	May.	John Jacobson Vinck, his Account of Barley	6	133	15	—	
—	6	27	Ditto.	David Darling, paid unto Barant Brent	2	150	—	—	
—	—	—	}	John Jacobson Vinck, his Accompt currant for 2171 li, 15 s. 2 d. F. remitted	6	1174	4	6	
—	—	—		29	June.	Balance, remaining in my Cashiers hands	7	1249	2
						5499	7	6	

## Contra Creditor.

			Contra Creditor.						
1664						1664			
1	1	Fan.	}	Cash, brought out of my private estate this day	1	1768	15	9	
—	—	Ditto		Cloth Rashes, for 200 pieces remaining unfold	—	1300	—	—	
—	—	Ditto	}	Houfe the White Horse, for the Principal with a Legacy--	—	2340	—	—	
—	—	Ditto		Ship the Speedwel of London, for my 7 part	4	450	—	—	
—	—	Ditto	}	By: Albert Allerson at Luben, due to me 681 V 960 Res--	2	426	4	6	
—	—	Ditto		Bartel Bartelson, for his Bond due the 27 of April next	—	300	—	—	
—	3	21	Febr.	Concheuil, for 6 Moneths discount of 959 li. 8 s	—	36	18	—	
—	—	—	}	Bartel Bartelson, for 700 li. lent him 6 Moneths	—	728	—	—	
1665	5	17		April.	Francis Frensey, paid him out of my private estate	3	421	5	4
—	—	—	29	June.	Profit and Loss gained by Trading	—	1597	17	6
						9269	1	1	

## Contra Creditor.

			Contra Creditor.						
1664						1664			
1	13	Fan.	}	Cash, of William Pansard for 16 pieces sold	1	128	—	—	
—	2	25		Ditto.	Francis Frensey, sold upon demand 39 pieces	3	321	15	—
—	3	24		March.	Goverr Golfson, sold in Truck 250 pieces--	—	2162	10	—
1665	—	—	}	By: Balance for 145 pieces remaining unfold	7	942	10	—	
—	—	—		29	June.	—	3554	15	—

## Contra Creditor.

			Contra Creditor.					
1664						1664		
—	—	—	}	Francis Frensey, for Rent due the 12 of Febr.	3	60	—	—
1665	2	29		June.	By: Balance, for the Principal as it cost	7	2340	—
						2400	—	—

Fol. 1.

Fol. 2.

Fol. 2.

Anno 1664. In London.

*Allert Allerton at Lisbon, Accompt Currant,  
is Debitor.*

1664	1	1	Jan.	To Stock, due to me upon Accompt, Reaz 681 V960	1	£	426	8	9	6
------	---	---	------	---	---	---	-----	---	---	---

*Bartel Bartelson, Debitor.*

1664	1	1	Jan.	} To { Stock, for this Bond, due the 27 of April next	1	200	—	—	—	—
	3	27	Febr.		} { Stock, for 700 l. lent out of my private Estate for 6 Mo	—	728	—	—	—
							928	—	—	—

*Conrade Crispian, Debitor.*

1664	2	3	Febr.	} To { Cash, paid him now in part of 250 pieces of Cloth Rashes	1	500	—	—	—	—
1665	4	11	April.		} { Interest Reckoning, for 5 Mo. forbearance of 1000 l. — Francis Frensey, for the Foot of his Accompt	4	33	6	8	—
			Ditto.			3	1094	1	10	—
						1627	8	6	—	—

*David Darling, Debitor.*

1664	2	17	Febr.	} To { Evert Evertson, for my Assignment	2	332	10	—	—	—
			Ditto.		} { Interest Reckoning, for allowance of 4 Moneths	4	7	10	—	—
165	6	27	May.	} To { Evert Evertson, his Accompt by me in Company		7	150	—	—	—
			Ditto.		} { Cash, paid to Barrem Brent	1	150	—	—	—
			June.	} { Coucheneil, for 1 Barrel poiz 194 li. Netto		2	523	16	—	—
			Ditto.		} { Voyage to Hamburg, for Abatement upon Pepper	5	6	1	—	—
							1169	17	—	—

*Coucheneil, Debitor.*

1664	1	5	Jan.	} To { Cash, for 4 Barrels poiz 748 li. Netto	1	1570	16	—	—	—
			Febr.		} { Stock, for 6 Moneths Discount of 959 l. 8 s.	—	36	18	—	—
1665	3	29	June.	} { Profit and Loss, gained by the fall of 748 li. of Coucheneil		3	356	10	—	—
							1964	4	—	—

*Evert Evertson, Debitor.*

1664	1	5	Jan.	} To { Profit and Loss, for a Legacy due the 24 of June	3	190	—	—	—	—
			Febr.		} { Exeter Wares, for 95 pieces fold, part on 6 Mo. time	4	462	15	—	—
							652	15	—	—

Folio 3.

Fol. 2.

1665 5

1664 2

1665 5

1664 1

1665 2

1664 4

1664 1

1665 4

1664 6

1664 3

1665 4

1665 9

1664 2

1665 9

Fol. 2.

Anno 1664. In London.

Contra Creditor.

				£	β	9
1665	5	23	April. } By { Voyage to Amsterdam, for 1576 Barrels of Figgs 681 Vooo Reaz	5	425	12 6
			Ditto. } { Profit and Loss, for defects of my Goods abated	3		12 6
					426	4 6

Contra Creditor.

1664	2	12	Febr. } By { Francis Frensey, Ordered Francis to receive of. Barle--	3	200	— —
1665	5	17	April. } { Ditto Francis, for mine Assignment	—	706	3 2
			Ditto. } { Interest Reckoning, for 4; Moneths allowance	4	21	16 10
					928	— —

Contra Creditor.

1664	1	1	March. } By { Stock, for my Bill, due the 27 of March next	1	77	11 9
	2	3	Febr. } { Cloth Rashes, for 250 pieces, part on 6 Moneths time	2	1500	— —
	4	20	March. } { Herman Herberts, for mine Assignment	5	49	16 9
					1627	8 6

Contra Creditor.

1664	1	1	Jan. } By { Stock, for a Legacy due the 26 of June next	1	340	— —
1665	4	31	March. } { Voyage to Hamburg, &c. for 10 Bails of Pepper	5	369	— —
	6	22	May. } { Kersies in Company, for 36 pieces bought	7	300	— —
			June. } { Balance, due to me in ready Money	—	160	17 —
					1169	17 —

Contra Creditor.

1664	3	21	Febr. } By { Stock, for 2 Barrels, poiz 369 li. Netto	1	959	8 —
	4	20	March. } { Herman Herberts, for 1 Barrel, poiz 185 li. Netto	5	481	— —
1665	9	19	June. } { David Darling, sold to him 1 Barrel, poiz 194 li	2	523	16 —
					1964	4 —

Contra Creditor.

1664	2	17	Febr. } By { David Darling, for my Assignment	2	332	10 —
1665	9	19	June. } { Ditto Evert, his Accompt by me in Company	7	175	4 8
			Ditto. } { Balance, due to me in ready Money	—	145	— 4
					652	15 —

Kkkkk

Folio 3.

£	β	9
426	4	6
200	—	—
728	—	—
928	—	—
500	—	—
33	6	8
1094	1	10
1627	8	6
332	10	—
7	10	—
150	—	—
150	—	—
523	16	—
6	1	—
1169	17	—
1570	16	—
36	18	—
356	10	—
1964	4	—
190	—	—
462	15	—
652	15	—

Fol. 3.

Anno Dom. 1664. In London.

## Profit and Loss, Debitor.

			£			β			9		
1664	3	4	March.	Cash, paid my Wife for House use	1	10	—	—	—	—	—
		14	Ditto.	Francis Frensey, for 2 years Wages by Agreement	3	100	—	—	—	—	—
1665	5	11	April.	Expences general, paid to my Wife	4	20	—	—	—	—	—
		22	Ditto.	Allert Allerton, for defects abated	2	—	12	—	—	—	—
		7	3	June.	Voyage to Amsterdam, for 3 pieces of Tinn lost	5	48	—	—	—	—
		29	Ditto.	To: My Accompt currant at Amsterdam, lost by the Exchange	6	79	1	10	—	—	—
			Ditto.	Voyage to Hamburg, lost by the sail of Pepper	5	2	6	—	—	—	—
			Ditto.	My Accompt currant at Hamburg, lost by Exchange	7	6	18	11	—	—	—
			Ditto.	My Accompt currant at Dantzick, lost by Exchange	—	6	8	8	—	—	—
			Ditto.	Stock, gained by Trading	1	1597	17	6	—	—	—
						1871	4	11			

## Francis Frensey, Debitor.

1664	2	13	Jan.	House the White Horse, for Rent due	1	60	—	—	—	—	—
		25	Ditto.	Cloth Rashes, for 30 pieces to pay upon demand	—	321	15	—	—	—	—
		12	Febr.	Bartel Bartelsson, ordered Francis to receive of Bartel	2	200	—	—	—	—	—
		3	14	March.	Expences general, for part of Wages paid in hand	4	20	—	—	—	—
1665	5	17	April.	To: Bartel Bartelsson, for mine Assignation	2	706	3	2	—	—	—
			Ditto.	Stock, paid him out of my private Estate	1	421	5	4	—	—	—
		9	24	June.	Govert Golston, for mine Assignation	3	68	13	8	—	—
			Ditto.	Kendrick Kemp, for mine Assignation	6	249	4	8	—	—	—
						2047	1	10			

## Govert Golston, Debitor.

1664	3	4	March.	To: Cloth Rashes, for 250 pieces sold in Truck	1	2162	10	—	—	—	—
1665	9	19	June.	Peter Brasenr at Dantzick, my Accompt currant	7	374	13	8	—	—	—
						2537	3	8			

Folio 3.



Fol. 3.

Anno Dom. 1664. In London.

Contra Creditor.

£	β	9
10	—	—
100	—	—
20	—	—
48	12	—
79	1	10
2	6	—
6	18	11
6	8	8
1597	17	6
1871	4	11
60	—	—
321	15	—
200	—	—
20	—	—
706	3	2
421	5	4
68	13	8
249	4	8
2047	1	10
2162	10	—
374	13	8
2537	3	8

1664				£	β	9
1	5	Fan.	Evert Evertson, for a Legacy, due the 24 of June	2	190	—
2	25	Ditto.	Cash, for advance of 700 Dollars	1	5	16 8
1665	7	9 June.	Kerstes in Company, for my Provision of 360 li, at 2 li. per cent.	7	7	—
—	—	Ditto.	Ditto Kerstes in Company, for my $\frac{1}{2}$ of the advance	—	25	4 8
8	13	Ditto.	John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Accompt of Barley	6	7	2 5
—	—	Ditto.	Ditto John his Accompt of Treagers Cloth, for Provision	—	23	— 2
29	June.	By	Cloth Rashes, gained by the sale of 305 pieces---	1	558	3 2
—	Ditto.		Exeter Wares, gained by the sale of 225 pieces	4	81	5 —
—	Ditto.		Voyage to Amsterdam, consigned to Jo. Jacobson Vinck	5	274	15 10
—	Ditto.		Concheneil, gained by sail of 4 Barrels	2	356	10 —
—	Ditto.		Voyage to Denmark, gained by sail of Goods	5	195	2 4
—	Ditto.		House the White Horse, gained by Rent	1	60	— —
—	Ditto.		Ship, the Speedwell of London, gained by Freight	4	45	7 6
—	Ditto.		Interest Reckoning, gained by the same	—	9	13 2
—	Ditto.		Insurance Reckoning, gained by the same	7	32	— —
					1871	4 11

Contra Creditor.

1664	2	13	Fan.	Exeter Wares, for 210 pieces to pay upon demand	4	853	—
3	14	March.	By	Profit and Loss, by Agreement for 4 years Wages	3	100	—
1665	4	11	April.	Cowrade Crispian, for the Foot of his Accompt	2	1094	1 10
						2047	1 10

Contra Creditor.

1664	2	17	Febr.	Cash, received of him upon Interest	1	300	—
—	—	17	Ditto.	Interest Reckoning, for 3 Moneths allowance	4	6	—
3	4	March.		Durances, for 80 pieces ready Money	5	180	—
—	—	Ditto.	By	Exeter Wares, for 130 pieces ready Money	4	514	—
—	—	Ditto.		Cash, assigned by his Assignation	1	1271	18 2
—	—	Ditto.		Cloth Rashes, for the Discount of 2162 li. 11 s	—	196	11 10
1665	9	24	June.	Francis Frensey, for my Assignation	3	68	13 8
						2537	3 8

Folio 3.

Folio 4.

Fol. 4.

Anno 1664. In London.

## Ship, the Speedwell of London, Debitor.

1664	1	1	Jan.	To	Stock, for my $\frac{1}{4}$ part thereof	1	£	β	9	
1665		29	June.	To	Profit and Loss, gained by Freights	3	450	7	6	
							495	7	6	

## Exeter Wares, Debitor.

1664	2	13	Jan.	To	Francis Frensey, for 210 pieces to pay on demand	3	853	—	—	
		3	March.	To	Govert Golson, for 130 pieces delivered in Barter	—	514	—	—	
1665		29	June.	To	Profit and Loss, gained by the fail of 225 pieces	—	81	5	—	
							1448	5	—	

## Interest Reckoning, Debitor.

1664	2	12	Febr.	To	Cash, for Interest of 200 li. for 2 Moneths, allowed Bartell	1	3	6	8	
		17	Ditto.	To	Govert Golson, for 3 Moneths allowance of 300 li.	3	6	—	—	
		5	April.	To	Bartell Bartelson, for 4 Moneths allowance	2	21	16	10	
1665		29	June.	To	Profit and Loss, gained by the same	3	9	13	2	
							40	16	8	

## Expences General, Debitor.

1664	3	4	March.	To	Cash, received of my Cashier for my general occasions	1	80	—	—	
1665		4	April.	To	Cash, received of my Cashier	—	70	—	—	
		5	May.	To	Insurance Reckoning, received of Govert Golson	7	20	—	—	
		6	Ditto.	To	Kerfies in Company, for 36 pieces sold	—	360	—	—	
		—	June.	To	Voyage to Amsterdam, for 10 Sempetrances lost	5	41	—	—	
							571	—	—	

Folio 4.

Fol. A.

Anno Dom. 1664. In London.

Contra Creditor.

1664	3	27	Febr.	By	Cash, for my $\frac{7}{8}$ part of Freight	1	45	7	6	
1665	2	29	June.		Balance, for my $\frac{7}{8}$ part, which cost	7	450	—	—	
								495	7	6

Contra Creditor.

1664	2	17	Febr.	By	Evert Everison, for 95 pieces, part out 6 Moneths	2	462	15	—	
1665	4	26	March.		Voyage to Amsterdam, for 130 pieces shipt by William Tatum	5	514	—	—	
		29	June.		Balance, for 115 pieces resting unfold	7	471	10	—	
								1448	5	—

Contra Creditor.

1664	2	17	Febr.	By	David Darling, for 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ Moneths all avance	2	7	10	—	
1665	4	11	April.		Conrade Crispian, for 5 Mo. forbearance of 1000 li	—	33	6	8	
								40	16	8

Contra Creditor.

1664	3	14	March.	By	Francis Frensey, paid in part of Wages	3	20	—	—	
1665	4	5	April.		Voyage to Hamburg, for Charges	5	7	4	6	
		11	Ditto.		Voyage to Amsterdam, for Insurance paid by me	—	12	17	—	
		5	Ditto.		Profit and Loss, paid my Wife for House use	3	20	—	—	
		7	May.		John Jacobson Vinck, his Accompt of Treagers Cloth	6	75	4	8	
		7	June.		Kendrick Kemp, paid him for Insurance	—	11	1	5	
		9	Ditto.		Kerries in Company, for Charges paid by me	7	2	6	8	
		13	Ditto.		John Jacobson Vinck, his Accompt of Barley, &c.	6	4	—	4	
		—	Ditto.		Ditto John, his Accompt of Treagers Cloth, &c.	—	8	8	10	
		29	June.		Stock, which I took for my private use	1	409	16	7	
								571	—	—

Folio A.

LIIII

Folio 5.

Fol. 5.

Anno Dom. 1664. In London.

Durances, Debitor.

1664	3	4	March.	To Gouvert Golston, for 80 pieces delivered in Barter—	3	£	180	β	9	1665
------	---	---	--------	--	---	---	-----	---	---	------

Kerfies, and Dozens, Debitor.

1664	3	20	March.	To Herman Herbets, for 180 pieces—	5	591				1664 1665	4
------	---	----	--------	------------------------------------	---	-----	--	--	--	--------------	---

Herman Herbets, Debitor.

1664	4	20	March.	} To {	Conchened, for 1 Barrel, poiz 185 li. Netto—	2	481			1664	3
			Ditto.		Conrade Crispian, for mine Assignment—		49	16	9	1665	6
			Ditto.		Kerfies, and Dozens, for the Discount of 591 l.—	5	60	3	3		
1665	6	22	May.		John Jacobson Vinck, his Account of Treagers Cloth—	6	520				
							1111				

Voyage to Amsterdam, consigned to John Jacobson Vinck, Debitor.

1665	4	26	March.	} To {	Exeter Wares, for 130 pieces, shipt by William Tatam—	4	524			1665	7
			Ditto.		Cash, for 90 C. of English Tinn—	1	504				8
		5	April.		Cash, for Charges of Exeter Wares and Tinn—		54	3	2		
		11	Ditto.		Expences general, for Insurance paid by me—	4	12	17			
		23	Ditto.		Allert Allerton at Lübon, for 1576 Barrels of Figs—	2	425	12	6		
		29	June.		Profit and Loss, gained by this Voyage—	3	274	15	10		
							1785	8	6		

Voyage to Hamburg, consigned to John Van Essen, Debitor.

1665	4	31	March.	} To {	David Darling, for 10 Bays of Pepper—	2	369			1665	7
		5	April.		Expences general, for Charges upon the Pepper—	4	7	4	6		9
		23	Ditto.		Kendrick Kemp, for Insurance of the Pepper—	6	11	1	5		
							387	5	11		

Voyage to Dantzick, consigned to Peter Brasfeur, Debitor.

1665	4	31	March.	} To {	John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, my Account Current—	6	186			1665	7
		29	June.		Profit and Loss, gained by the sale of Goods—	3	195	2	4		
							381	2	4		

Folio 5.

Fol. 5.

Anno Dom. 1664. In London.

Contra Creditor.

1665	29	June.	By Balance, for 80 pieces unfold	7	180	—	9
------	----	-------	----------------------------------	---	-----	---	---

Contra Creditor.

1664	4	20	March.	By Herman Herberts, for the Discount of 591 l.	5	60	3	3
1665	29	June.	By Balance, for 120 Kerseys, and 60 Dozens unfold		7	530	16	9
						591	—	—

Contra Creditor.

1664	3	20	March.	By Kerseys and Dozens, for 180 pieces in Barter	5	591	—	—	
1665	6	22	May.		By John Jacobson Vinck, his Account of Treagers Cloth, for Discount	6	23	3	8
	27	Ditto.	Cash, received by my Cashier of Kendrick Kemp		1	496	16	4	
						1111	—	—	

Contra Creditor.

1665	7	3	June.	By Expences general, for 10 Sempetrances lost	4	41	—	—	
	—	19	Ditto.		By Profit and Loss, for 3 pieces of Tinn poi-	3	48	—	—
	8	Ditto.	By My Accompt Currant, for 10512 Guilders, for sale of my Goods		6	1051	4	—	
	29	Ditto.	By Balance, for several unfold Wares		7	645	4	6	
						1785	8	6	

Contra Creditor.

1665	7	3	June.	By John Van Essen at Hamburg, my Accompt Currant	7	378	18	11	
	9	19	Ditto.		By David Darling, for Abatement upon Pepper	2	6	1	—
	29	Ditto.	By Profit and Loss, by sale of 10 Bayls of Pepper		3	2	6	—	
						387	5	11	

Contra Creditor.

1665	7	3	June.	By Peter Brasew, my Accompt Currant for 2960 Florins	7	381	2	4
------	---	---	-------	--	---	-----	---	---

Folio 6.

£	β	9
180	—	—
591	—	—
481	—	—
49	16	9
60	3	3
520	—	—
1111	—	—

524	—	—
504	—	—
54	3	2
12	17	—
425	12	5
274	15	10
1785	8	6

369	—	—
7	4	6
11	1	5
387	5	11

6	186	—
3	195	2
	381	2

Folio 5.



Fol. 6.

Anno Dom. 1665. In London.

John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, my Account  
Currant, Debitor.

1665	8	19	June.	} To	Voyage to Amsterdam, by sale of my Goods	5	1051	β	9
			Ditto.		{	John Van Essen at Hamburgh, my Account currant for 3600 Marks Lubecks	7	372	—
							1423	4	—

## Kendrick Kemp, Debitor.

1665	7	27	May.	} To	John Jacobson Vinck, his Account of Barley, for 175 Quarters 7 Bushels	6	175	17	6
			Ditto.		{	John Jacobson, his Account of Treager Cloth	—	630	10
		3	June.		Expences general, paid him for Insurance	4	11	1	5
							817	8	11

John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account  
of Barley, Debitor.

1665	5	7	May.	} To	Gash, for Charges, at the Receipt of 365 Quarters	1	133	15	—
		27	Ditto.		{	Kendrick Kemp, for Discount of 175 l. 17 s. 6 d.	6	2	6
		13	June.		Expences general, for after Charges paid by me	4	4	—	4
			Ditto.		Profit and Loss, for my Provision of the same	3	7	2	5
			Ditto.		His Account currant, for the Neat Proceed thereof	6	217	15	11
							365	—	—

John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account  
of Treagers Cloth, Debitor.

1665	6	7	May.	} To	Expences general, for Charges of 25 Bays	4	75	4	8
		22	Ditto.		{	Herman Herberis, for the Discount of 520 l.	5	23	3
		27	Ditto.		Kendrick Kemp, for Discount of 630 l. 10 s.	6	43	1	7
		13	June.		Expences general, for after Charges paid by me	4	8	8	10
			Ditto.		Profit and Loss, for my Provision of the same	3	23	—	2
			Ditto.		His Account currant, for the Neat proceed of his Goods	6	977	11	1
							1150	11	—

John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Account  
Currant, Debitor.

1665	6	7	May.	} To	Insurance Reckoning, for Insurance of 300 l.	7	12	—	—
		27	Ditto.		{	Gash, for 217 l. 15 s. 2 d. Flemish, remitted him	1	1174	4
		13	June.		His Account of Barley for 9 Quarters 1 Bushel under measure	6	9	2	6
							1195	7	—

Folio 6.

Fol.

1665 4 9

1665 5 7 9

1665 6 7 8

1665 6 7

8

Fol. 6.

Anno Dom. 1665. In London.

Contra Creditor.

1665	4	31	March	} By	Voyage to Damrick, consigned to Peter Brasew	5	186	—	—
	9	19	June		Cash, for 8700 Guilders drawn by me, for my Account	1	790	18	3
		29	Ditto		Balance, for 3672 Guilders, due to me	7	367	4	—
			Ditto		Profit and Loss, lost by the Exchange	3	79	1	10
							1423	4	—

Contra Creditor.

1665	5	23	April	} By	Voyage to Hamburg, for Insarance of Pepper	5	11	1	5
	7	27	May		Fo. Jacobson Fische, his Account of Barley, for Discount	6	3	6	4
			Ditto		Ditto John, his Acc <sup>o</sup> for Treasers Cloth, for Discount	—	43	1	7
	9	24	June		Francis Frensch, for mine assignation	3	249	4	8
			Ditto	Cash, received in full	1	511	14	11	
							817	8	11

Contra Creditor.

1665	6	22	May	} By	Cash, for 180 Quarters sold	1	180	—	—
	7	27	Ditto		Kendrick Kemp, for 175 Quarters 7 Bushels sold	6	175	17	6
	8	23	June		His Account current, for 9 Quarters 1 Bushel, under measure	—	9	2	6
							365	—	—

Contra Creditor.

1665	6	22	May	} By	Herman Herberts, for 13 Bays sold to him	5	520	—	—
	7	27	Ditto		Kendrick Kemp, for 12 Bays sold unto him	6	630	10	—
							1150	10	—

Contra Creditor.

	8	13	June	} By	Ditto John, his Account of Barley, for the Neat Proceed	6	217	15	11
			Ditto		Ditto John, his Account of Treasers Cloth, for the Neat Proceed	—	977	11	1
							1195	7	—

L	β	9
1051	4	—
372	—	—
1423	4	—

175	17	6
630	10	—
11	1	5
817	8	11

133	15	—
2	6	4
4	—	4
7	2	5
217	15	11
365	—	—

75	4	8
23	3	8
43	1	7
8	8	10
23	—	2
977	11	1
1150	11	—

12	—	—
1174	4	6
9	2	6
1195	7	—

Folio 6.

M m m m m

Folio 7.

Fol. 7.

Anno Dom. 1665. In London.

## Insurance Reckoning, Debitor.

			℔	β	9
1665	29	June. To Profit and Loss, gained by the same	3	32	—

## Kerfies in Company for Evert Evertson and myself, each; Debitor.

1665	6	22	Mey.	} To	David Darling, for 36 pieces bought	2	300	—	—
	7	9	June.		Expences general, for Charges paid by me	4	2	6	8
	—	—	Ditto.		Profit and Loss, for my Provision or 360 l.	3	7	4	—
	—	—	Ditto.		Evert Evertson, for his half of his advance	7	25	4	8
	8	—	Ditto.		Profit and Loss, for my; of the advance	3	25	4	8
							360	—	—

## Evert Evertson, his Account by me in Company, Debitor.

1665	9	19	June.	To Ditto Evert, his Account proper, for principal and gains	2	175	4	8
------	---	----	-------	---	---	-----	---	---

## John Van Essen at Amsterdam, my Account Currant, Debitor.

1665	7	3	June.	To Voyage to Hamburgh, for 3600 Marks Lubicks	5	378	18	11
------	---	---	-------	---	---	-----	----	----

## Peter Brasewr at Dantzick, my Account Currant, Debitor.

1665	7	3	June.	To Voyage to Dantzick, for 2960 Polish Florins	5	381	2	4
------	---	---	-------	--	---	-----	---	---

## Ballance, Debitor.

1665	29	June.	} To	David Darling, due to me in ready Money	2	160	17	—	
	—	Ditto.		Evert Evertson, due to me in ready Money	—	145	—	4	
	—	Ditto.		My Account currant, at Amsterdam, 3672 Guilders due to me	6	367	4	—	
	—	Ditto.		Cloth Rashes, for 145 pieces unfold	1	942	10	—	
	—	Ditto.		Exeter Wares, for 115 pieces resting unfold	4	471	10	—	
	—	Ditto.		Voyage to Amsterdam, for several unfold Wares	5	645	4	6	
	—	Ditto.		House the White Horse, for Principal as it cost	1	2340	—	—	
	—	Ditto.		Ship, the Speedwell, for my 7, part thereof	4	450	—	—	
	—	Ditto.		Durances, for 80 pieces unfold	5	180	—	—	
	—	Ditto.		Kerfies, for 120 and 60 Dozens	—	530	16	9	
	—	Ditto.		Cash, remaining in my Cashiers hands	1	1249	2	2	
							7482	4	9

Folio 7.

Fol. 7.

Anno Dom. 1665. In London.

Contra Creditor.

1665 5 7 May. } By { Expences general, received of Govern Golffon  
6 --- Ditto. } { John Jacobson Vinck at Amsterdam, his Accompt currant.

ℓ	β	9
4	20	—
6	12	—
	32	—

Contra Creditor.

1665 6 27 May. By Expences general, for 36 pieces fold

ℓ	β	9
4	360	—

Contra Creditor.

1665 6 27 May. } By { David Darling, for my Assignation  
7 9 June. } { Kerfies in Company, for his; of the advance

ℓ	β	9
2	150	—
7	25	4
	175	4

Contra Creditor.

1665 8 19 June. } By { My Accompt Currant at Amsterdam, drawn by my ap-  
29 Ditto. } { pointment 3600 Marks Lubecks-  
{ Profits and Loss, lost by the Exchange

ℓ	β	9
3	372	—
6	6	18
	378	18

Contra Creditor.

1665 9 19 June. } By { Govern Golffon, remitted to me 2960 Polish Florins-  
29 Ditto. } { Profits and Loss, lost by the Exchange

ℓ	β	9
3	374	18
	6	8
	381	2

Contra Creditor.

1665 29 June. By Stock, for my clear Estate

ℓ	β	9
1	7482	4

ℓ	β	9
32	—	—
300	—	—
2	6	8
7	4	8
25	4	8
25	4	8
360	—	—
175	4	8
378	18	11
381	2	4
160	17	—
145	—	4
367	4	—
942	10	—
471	10	—
645	4	6
2340	—	—
450	—	—
180	—	—
530	16	9
1249	2	2
7482	4	9

Folio 7.

of

Of Commodities in general u-  
sed in Merchandize, and of  
the knowledge thereof.

of Com-  
modities in ge-  
neral, whether  
natural or  
artificial.

ALL Commodities that are vended by Merchants, or others, may fitly be deduced into two kinds, viz. Natural, and Artificial: By Natural Commodities may be understood such as the Earth, or Creatures do produce, as Cottons, Wines, Oyles, Fruits, Druggs, Spices, also Gold, Silver, Iron, Lead, Tin, with all other sorts of Metals, likewise Precious Stones, and Gems, with all other things which lie hid in the bowels of the Earth: From Creatures, as Wool, Raw Silk, &c. all which are brought to their purity by the industry of Man. By Artificial Commodities are to be understood such as are onely made by the art and industry of Man, as Linnen and Wallen Cloth, all sorts of Draperies, Fabricks of Silk, Manufactures, and all other Manual devices whatsoever.

of Staple  
and lasting  
or decaying  
and im-  
pairing.

Furthermore these, and the like Commodities, may be also distinguished into two other sorts, to wit, Staple, and lasting Commodities, and decaying, or impairing Commodities. The Staple are those that will endure for ever, without growing worse; and such are Gems, Gold, Silver, and the like: The decaying are such as are subject to corruption, loss of tast, scent, colour, or the like, as Vines, Musk, Oyle, Corn, Fish, Silk, Spices, Fruits, &c.

A Mer-  
chant  
should be  
able to be  
in all com-  
modities.

It is  
best to buy  
them in ad-  
vantage.

Seeing that Commodities are of so different a nature, the Merchant ought to have a great insight and knowledge in them; also the true worth, goodness, and estimation of them is to be considered by him; likewise what are the best seasons to vend, or buy them to advantage; and how to preserve such Commodities as are subject to decay in a good condition.

For the buying of Commodities, he ought to observe the Seasons, as Wines and Fruits, when the Vintage is, they then being plentiful, and so by consequence the cheapest; in brief, as high as you can, always buy in a glut, and sell in a scarcity; to which end it is convenient to have your Factors, or Correspondence resident in those Places where you have Commerce

Furthermore, when it shall happen, that

your Commodities lie upon your hands, sufficient care is to be taken for their preservation; for the which these following Directions will not be altogether unnecessary, viz. for Sugars, Druggs, Spices, Silks, and such like Commodities are best to be kept dry and free from moisture; also on the contrary, Tobacco, Civit, Musk, Verdigrise, and the like, are best to be kept moist, and where no air is; Again, some Commodities are best preserved when kept without air, and in a dry place, as some Wines and Fruits; and there are other Commodities which do differ in respect of the place, some being best when kept in low and close Ware-houses; whereas others are best in high and airy places; all which are to be well observed in the housing, and keeping of your Commodities, will you have a fitting opportunity for the sale thereof: nor is it sufficient to preserve your Commodities sound, and from damage, but there ought to be ways found out for the bettering them, if possibly you can, by adding a greater vigour, strength, life or beauty unto them; And, if it shall happen, that, through an accident, or by damage at Sea, your Commodities take hurt, rather than lose them, a good quantity of the same Commodity, being mixed with a small proportion of the bad, will save all, be they Spices, Druggs, Fruits, or the like, also if Silks, Staffs, &c. have lost their colour, or are stained, they may be dyed into another colour, rather than lose them.

How to  
preserve  
Commodi-  
ties from  
decaying.

How to  
keep  
and  
selling of  
Commodi-  
ties.

How to  
be  
able to  
know  
the  
value  
of  
Com-  
modities.

Again, it is required in a Merchant to have a particular insight in Trades, and more especially in those which are Handicrafts; by which means he is not onely made capable to understand the goodness of Commodities, but also their true value; and for the better understanding the said goodness, I hold it convenient to keep Patterns or Examples of the best, and primest of all Commodities, but especially of those wherein his Trade doth most depend: so that when he hath any occasion to buy any Commodity, by comparing it with the Pattern, the goodness will soon be found out; by which he may judge of the price: but the goodness of the Commodity is no general rule in the buying of Commodities; for gluts and scarcities of Commodities are to be observed, as also the seasons of the year. In Summer, most Commodities being cheapest, now the reasons which induceth me to say they are cheaper in Summer than Winter are these:

A Mer-  
chant ought  
to know  
the true  
value  
of  
Commodi-  
ties, and  
the  
value  
of  
the  
same  
in  
Winter.

Of vend-  
ing  
the  
Com-  
modities  
by  
Brokers.

A Mer-  
chant's  
care  
ought

Fust,





loss, in such a case he is to make satisfaction for the said loss.

6. If he buy Goods according to his order, and that afterwards they happen to be dearer, and he shippeth them privately to another place to gain thereby, contrary to his Order; in such a case the Merchant may, upon proof thereof, recover damages for the same of him.

7. If he be found to sell Goods at an under rate, especially upon some private concerns of his own, upon proof, he is to make satisfaction for the same.

8. If having once received Goods into his possession, and that his House, or Warehouse is broken open by Thieves, and robbed, he is to bear the loss; he is also answerable for the Money he shall in such a case lose.

9. If he selleth Goods to a man that is of a weak condition, if he know it, (though for a dearer rate) and he afterwards fail, the Factor is lyable for the same.

10. If he pay Money to another man, without the Commission of the Merchant, he is to run the hazard, and bear the loss.

11. If he shall make a false, or short entry of Goods at the Custom-house, thinking to gain the Custom thereof, and the Goods to be concealed be found out, and seized, he is to bear the said loss.

12. If he committeth any unlawful act by the transporting of prohibited Goods, or the like; and there happen any loss thereby; in such a case the Merchant is to undergo the same: And these, with several other Rules too tedious to set down, (which by practice will be understood) are to be observed by Factors.

Monopolies, Engrossings, Forestallings, and the like, are in my Judgment altogether unlawful: yet they may be considered two ways, 1, unreasonable, and 2, reasonable or indifferent: unreasonable, are in things necessary for the food and rayment of Man, &c. reasonable or indifferent, as in those things that are esteemed in some respect vanities, as Silks, Satins, Cloath of Gold or Silver, Pearls, Precious Stones, Perfumes, and the like.

### Of the marking of Commodities.

THE reason why Commodities are marked, are chiefly two: First, By

the mark, if of an eminent Merchant, they finde quick sale; and secondly, By the mark, the Factor to whom they are consigned, doth come to the knowledge thereof, as what and whose they are, as by the Bill of Lading, which is signed by the Captain or Master of the Ship, doth also appear; which said Bill is sent by the Merchant to him, wherein are all the Particulars exprest, as to their mark, weight, number, &c. Which said Bill is sent inclosed in a Letter, of which more anon, when I come to treat of Bills of Lading.

### Of Freight of Ships, and Charterparties, and Bills of Lading.

NO Ship should be freighted without a Charterparty, that is, a Covenant betwixt two Parties, viz. the Merchant, or other who shippeth the Goods, and the Master who owneth the Ship, (or is empowered by the Owners) and receiveth them. And in these Charterparties, that is, Bills of Lading, which the Master signeth to the Merchant, the Goods or Commodities, as to their numbers, marks, or the like; as also of whom received, and to whom consigned, must be exprest. Also the Master engageth, to deliver the said Goods in good Condition, and free from damage, or hurt, to the place consigned, according to the Contents of his Charterparty. Likewise, he is bound to keep his Ship firm and sound, from Leakage, or the like, to be furnished with good Tackle, as Sayles, Cables, Cordage, Anchors, Masts, Ship-boat, Guns answerable to its burthen, &c. And lastly, to have a sufficient quantity of able Seamen, who are to be maintained with good wholesome Diet, and all things necessary, at his own charge: so that if it shall happen that the Goods are lost, or come to any damage, through any of these, or the like defaults, then, and in such cases, the damage may be recovered of the said Master.

Of these Bills of Lading there are always three made, but all of one tenour; one of which is inclosed in the Letters written by the same Ship; another of the three, is sent over Land to the Factor, or Correspondent to whom the Goods are consigned; the third Bill remaineth in the custody of the Merchant, who shipped the said Goods, for

Monopolies  
Engrossings,  
Forestallings,  
and the like.

Marking of  
Commodities  
is.

of freight  
of Ships,  
Charterparties,  
and Bills of  
Lading.

The form of  
a Bill of  
Lading.

AB  
m  
N<sup>o</sup> 2.

for a testimony against the Master, if occasion shall so happen by losses, or otherwise, whereby he may be forced to make satisfaction. Also these Bills of Lading which remaineth in the Merchants hands, are of great concernment; for if in case the Goods are insured which come to damage, or are lost, the Insurer will be forced by vertue of the same to make satisfaction to the said Merchant for the said loss; for by the said Bill it will appear, that such and such Goods were shipped in such or such a Ship, by such or such a one, and consigned to such or such a place, to such or such a one.

On the other side, the Merchant is bound by the said Charter-party to the said Master, to pay him for the Freight of the said Goods by him laden, so much per Tunn, Last, Pack, or the like, more or less, as is agreed upon according to the length, or dangerousness of the said Voyage. The Merchant doth likewise contract with the said Master, to pay Pilotage, if in case a Pilot is used for the bringing the said Ship into the Port, or Harbour, which it was consigned unto. Also he doth covenant to pay the said Master, Primage, and Petilod-manidge, for the use of his Cables to discharge the Goods, and to the Mariners to charge and discharge them; which said Charges is not above 12 d. per Tunn lading. And these are the Agreements made betwixt the said Merchant and Master, and by reason that Bills of Lading are of such great use, though they are common to be had, being printed in most Languages, and sold by most Stationers; yet that nothing may be wanting for the completing the same, I have set down the form of one, by which all other Bills of Lading may be made.

The form of a Bill of Lading.

The form of a Bill of Lading.

Shipped by the grace of God, in good order, and well-conditioned by me A. B. in and upon the good Ship, called the Dolphin of London, whereof is Master for this present Voyage C. D. and now riding at Anchor in the River of Thames, and by God's grace bound a Voyage from the City of London, to the City of Seville in Spain, that is to say, one Baile, two Chests, and one Hoggshead, being marked and numbered as in the Margent; and

AB  
N<sup>o</sup> 2.

are to be delivered in like good order, and

well conditioned, at the aforesaid Port of Seville (the danger of the Seas onely excepted) unto Mr. E. F. my Factor, or to his Assigns, he or they paying Freight for the said Goods, at the rate of three Shillings per Hundred, with Primage, and Avarage accustomed. In witness whereof, the Master, or Purzor of the said Ship hath affirmed to three Bills of Lading, all of this tenour and date; the one of which three Bills being accomplished, the other two to stand void. And so God send the good Ship to her desired Port in safety, Amen. Dated in London, the 30th day of November, 1664.

C. D.

And this is the form of a Bill of Lading, which you may alter as to the names of the Merchant, Master, Ship, Voyage, and Goods, as occasion serveth; of which, as I said before, there must be three signed by the said Master.

Of Assurances.

Assurances are either upon Goods outwards bound, inwards bound, or outwards and inwards bound, from Port to Port during the said Voyage, which must be specified in the Policy of Assurance, as also the Goods so shipped and assured, as to their value, with the name of the Ship, and its burthen, together with several other Particulars, according to the Bill of Lading. So that if it shall happen, that the Goods so assured comes to any disaster, by being taken by Pirates, cast away through foulness of weather, also arrests and restrains of Kings or Princes upon the Goods in any Port which the said Ship is bound unto, by Barratie of the Master and Mariners, and of all other losses, perils, or whatever else shall happen as to the loss or damage of the said Goods, or in any part or parcel of them; that then and in such cases, the Assurers are to make satisfaction for the said loss. But if it shall happen, that the said Ship putteth in to any other Port, more than is specified in the policy of Assurance, and thereby receiveth any loss, then the Assurers are quit of, or from the same, except constrained in through foulness of weather, want of provision, or the like necessities.

In consideration of such Assurances, the Merchant doth contract with the Assuror, or Assurers, to pay him, or them, so much

per

per cent. as they shall agree upon, according to the length, difficulty, or dangerousness of the Voyage. But if the Merchant sustaineth any loss, through the default of the Master, then the Assurers are quit, and the Master is lyable for the same.

### The Form of a Policy of Assurance.

The Form  
of a Policy  
of Assurance.

**I**n the Name of God, Amen. I A. B. of London, Merchant, as well in his own Name, as for and in the name and names of all and every other Person and Persons to whom the same doth, may, or shall appertain in part, or in all, doth make assurance, and causeth himself, and them, and every of them to be insured, lost or not lost, from the Port of London to the Port of Seville in Spain, upon any kind of Goods and Merchandize whatsoever, laden or to be laden aboard the good Ship, called the Dolphin of London, burthen three hundred and fifty Tunns, or thereabouts, whereof is Master under God for this present Voyage C. D. or whosoever else shall go for Master in the said Ship, or by whatsoever other name or names the same Ship, or the Master is, or shall be named or called, Beginning the adventure upon the said Goods and Merchandize, from, and immediately following the loading thereof aboard the said Ship at the Port of London, and so shall continue, and endure, untill the said Ship with the said Goods and Merchandize whatsoever shall be arrived at Seville aforesaid, and the same there safely landed: And it shall be lawfull for the said Ship in this Voyage to stop and stay at any Ports or places between London and Seville, without prejudice to this Insurance; the said Goods and Merchandizes by agreement is and shall be valued at five hundred and fifty pounds sterling, without further account to be given for the same. Touching the adventures and perils which we the Assurers are contented to bear, and do take upon us in this Voyage, are of the Seas, Men of War, Fire, Enemies, Pirates, Rovers, Thieves, Fetzozones, Letters of Mart and Counter-mart, Surprizals, Takings at Sea, Restraints and Detainments of all Kings, Princes, and People, of what Nation, Condition, or Quality soever, Arrests, Barratry of the Master, and Mariners, and of all other perills, losses, and misfortunes that have, or shall come to the hurt, damage, or detriment of the said

Goods and Merchandize, or any part thereof, And in case of any loss, or misfortune, it shall be lawful to the Assured, his, or other Executors and Servants, and assigns, to sue, labour, and travel for, in, and about the defence, recovery, and safeguard of the said Goods and Merchandizes, or any part thereof, without prejudice to this Insurance; to the Charges whereof, we the Assurers will contribute each one, according to the rate and quantity of his Summ herein assured. And it is agreed by us the Insurers, that this Writing and Assurance shall be of as much force and effect, as the surest Policy, or Writing of Assurance heretofore made in LOMBARD Street, or now within the Royal Exchange, LONDON. And so we the Assurers are contented, and do hereby promise, and binde our selves each one for his own part, our Heirs, Executors, and Goods, to the Assured, his Executors, Administrators and assigns, for the true performance of the Premises, acknowledging our selves paid the consideration due unto us for this Assurance by A. B. at the rate of fifty Shillings per Hundred pound Sterling. In witness whereof, we the Assurers, have subscribed our Names, and Summs assured in LONDON.

I W. K. am content with this Assurance, for the Summ of Two hundred pounds. London, this 20th of November, 1663.

I H. M. am content with this Assurance, for the Summ of Three hundred pounds. London, this 24th of November, 1663.

There are Assurances made upon Goods homewards bound, as from Seville to London, which then must be so mentioned; also upon Goods outwards, and homewards bound, as from London to Seville, and from Seville to London, which in such cases must be so specified. There are Assurances also made upon the Tackle and Furniture of the Ship, as also upon the Ship it self; likewise upon Annuities, Lives, or the like, Assurances are also made, All which must be mentioned in the Policy of Assurance.

A word or two in way of caution to the Assurers, viz. that they have knowledge of the Master of the Ship, as to his honesty, and

Letters of  
Credit of  
Great repu-  
tation, and  
what they  
are.

Of Bank  
Notes.

and ability, that the *ship* be sound, good, and well provided with able, and experienced *Mariners*, with *Provision*, *Tackle*, *Ammunition*, *Guns*, and other necessaries for the *Voyage*, that they have respect as to the *Goods* insured, whether they be decaying and subject to damage as *Wines*, *Oyls*, *Fruits*, or the like; or last ing as *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Iron*, *Cloths*, &c. that they have regard to the dangerousness of the times and seasons, as *Wars*, *Pirates*, and the *Winter* season; and that they have knowledge in *Geography*, for their better understanding, the distances of places, and the dangerousness of the *Voyage*, as to *Flats*, *Sands*, *Rocks*, and so forth, all which are to be considered, and accordingly agree for the *Assurance*.

Of Letters of Credit, and Blanks signed.

Letters of Credit are had in great reputation, among *Merchants*, and the giver of them will be well satisfied before he makes them; it concerning the credits of them both, for the party to whom it is directed will question his ability and whether he is able to repay it again, before he accepteth it; and the *gover-maker*, or others concerned if he doth not accept it, will judge him weak, and not able to do it. These *Letters of Credit*, are nothing else but the giving Credit to another, as for example; a *Merchant* doth send his *Factor*, *Friend*, or *Servant* to take up money for some occasions, or buy *Commodities*, either beyond the *seas*, or within *Land*, and doth deliver unto him an open letter, directed unto another *Merchant*, requiring him that if his *Factor* or *Friend*, such a one (naming him) the bearer thereof, have occasion to take up *Moneys*, or buy *Commodities* to the value of so much (which must be specified) that he will either procure it him, or pass his credit for the same, by *Bill* or *Bond* for it; and he will repay him the same by *Bill of Exchange*, or give him such satisfaction as he shall require: and the party to whom the letter is directed will (if possibly) perform the same, and so keeps the said letter, which with the writing he taketh of the party, is a sufficient evidence to recover the same, if forced to sue for it.

The signing of Blanks are very dangerous

to the *Merchant* that signeth them, for without his *Factor*, *Friend*, or *Servant* be honest, he may be easily defrauded, for he setteth his name to a blank paper, as if one should Sign and Seal to a blank Bond, and deliver it to another, so that if he pleaseth, he may make him become his *Debtor* for as great a sum as he pleaseth, therefore to be wary, avoid signing to such blanks, though you think your *Factor*, *Friend*, or *Servant*, be never so honest: for the World is deceitful, and who knows how such a thing may tempt him to dishonesty, though against his nature.

Letters of Atorncy, Procurations, Transports, Conveyances, &c. are used among *Merchants*, but by reason they are beyond my intended method, I shall no further touch upon them, supposing that they are as far as is necessary sufficiently known to *Merchants*.

Having thus briefly given you the qualifications of a *Merchant*, together with such things as are necessary to be understood, and practised in the trade of *Merchandize*, as to a mans particular self; In the next place I shall treat of them as they are united, and Incorporated into *Societies*, *Fellowships*, or *Companies*, as those of the *Merchants Adventurers*, *Moscovy Merchants*, *Turkey Merchants*, *East-India Merchants*, *East-land Merchants*, likewise the *Royal Company of Barbary Merchants*, and the *Company of Canary Merchants*.

And the benefit which this Nation receiveth by these said Companies of *Merchants* thus united, without doubt is very great, and that in several respects, as first, the great Trade which is supported by them, which otherwise perhaps would fall to the ground secondly, the great quantities of men that are employed by them, and gain a good living, not only here at home, and at sea, in their *Ships*: but likewise in their *Plantations* and *Factories*. Thirdly, the *Ships* which they build. Fourthly, the many men (that as I may say from nothing) have by their Industry in their employments arrived to fair *Estates*, for which, together with their good *Laws* and *Customs*, and their just dealings (which they strictly observe) with several of the like conveniences too tedious to name, makes them worthy to be memorized to posterity, but a Word or two of each particular Company; and first

OOOO with

Letters of Credit of great reputation, and what they are.

The several Companies of Merchants in England.

The Bank of England.

Of Bonds signed.



with the Company of Merchants, Adventurers.

Company of Merchants Adventurers.

The MERCHANTS ADVENTURERS of England, are of great Antiquity, for I find that in Anno 1296. which was in the Reign of King Edward the first, they obtained priviledges of John the second, Duke of Brabant, &c. to establish themselves, and their trade, under Government in the City of Antwerp for those Countries. And King Edward the third, finding them so settled, and observing the great Trade in Flanders, by the Indrapping of the Englishwools there, did ( when he joyned in league with the Flemings against the King of France ) encourage the English Merchants in those parts to deal with Clothiers of that Nation, to come over into England; and here to erect their Looms and Manufacture, which accordingly was performed, and took such effect, that the said King by the advice of his Parliament, first prohibited the exportation of Wool, next by Priviledges, and Act of Parliament invited Cloth-makers, and Workers, over into England, and at last so prevailed, that he prohibited all Forraign Cloth to be imported into this Realm. Afterwards King Henry the fourth in Anno 1406. taking notice of the services of this Company in the rise, and encrease of the Manufactures of Clothing, and the benefit of the Government of the said Company, did establish the same by Grant under the great Seal, which said Grant hath been confirmed, and enlarged by all his successors except Edward the fifth. And Queen Elizabeth in the sixth year of her Reign, being fallen in breach with Philip the second King of Spain, Lord of the Netherlands, &c. did for the issuing, and vent of the Clothing of this Land, which daily encreased, add under her great Seal all the parts of Germany unto those of the Netherlands, and authorized the said fellowship, to treat with the Princes, Potentates, States and Cities of Germany for a Staple or residence, and Priviledges as they enjoyed in the Netherlands, which so happily succeeded as that the Clothing found ample vent. First, in Emden, then in Hamburg; afterwards in Stoud or Stade, and then again in Hamburg where it continues; and now the said fellowship hath two Marts, the one in Dordrecht for the Netherlands; and the other in Hamburg for all Germany, which last is the head and chief Court of all the said fellowship,

Then Antiquity and Rise.

Cloth first exported from Flanders, into England.

Wool first libred.

The Establishment of Cloth, imported from Flanders into Germany.

residing both in England and beyond the the Seas, and through their Integrity, fair dealings, and excellent Laws, and Customs observed and preserved amongst them, they are of no little splendor in the eyes Men, which said Company is now much enlarged, all new Draperies being therein comprized.

Hamburg the chief City.

The Commodities which this Company exporteth are Cloths drest and dyed of Devonshire, Gloucester, Somerset, Kent, &c. in great quantities, also Lead, Tin, Oyles, Silk, Worsted, and Wollen stockings, Hatts, Silks, Fruits, Spanish wines, &c. for which to the great enriching of the Nation, they import Linnen-cloth, as Cambriques, Hollands, Lawns, Diapers, &c. in great quantities, also Tapestries, Rhenish-wines, Mather, Hopps, Latten, Blades, Soap, wine, Plates, Copper, Brass, Steel, Iron, Quicksilver, Armes, Gunpowder, Flax, Hemp, Allom, Wax, Minerall-Salt, &c.

Commodities exported.

Commodities imported.

The Government of this Company is by their Charters committed to the Major part of the said fellowship, residing beyond the Seas; where annually in the month of June, they elect one Governour of the whole fellowship, with Deputy Governours under him for all their other Residencies and Courts both in those forraign parts, and within England, as at London, York, Hull, Newcastle, &c. together with Assistants, Treasurers, Chaplains, Secretaries, Clerks, and all other Officers convenient, and requisite for the executing their Ordinances, and preserving, and upholding the Government thereof, who keep Courts as often as their occasions require. I should here according to my intended method have incerted the names of those to whose care the management of the affairs of the said Company is committed, as the Governour, Deputy Governours, and Assistants, but by reason of their newe-lection which is to be in the moneth of June, and the not knowing, nor getting knowledge of the names of the present Assistants, ( which are many ) I have contented my self to give you the name of the present Governour, which is the Worshipful Sir Richard Ford Knight, Alderman of London; and their Deputy Governour for London; and Sir Charles Loyd, Baronet.

The Government of the Company.

Their Court of Admiralty.

Their Court of Admiralty.

Their Court of Admiralty.

Rise.

And Priviledges.

This Company of Merchants Adventurers, have by their Charters several Priviledges, and Immunities granted them, as power of making Acts and Ordinances,

Their Priviledges.

Commodities exported, and imported.

Their Priviledges.

so as they are not repugnant to the Law of England) for the good and Government of the said Trade, likewise power to heare and decide causes, and to implead, fine, and punish offenders as they please; to use a common Seal, and bear a Coat of Arms, &c. Their Coat of Arms is as followeth, viz. Barry-nebulee, Argent, and Azure, a cheif quarterly, or, and Gules, in the First and Fourth, two Roses of the Second, in the Second and Third, a Lyon of England, and for their Crest on an Helmet and Wreath of their Colours, a Pegasus, or Flying Horse Argent, charged on each Wing, with three Roses, Gules, Barbed, and seeded proper, and for their supporters two Passes as their Crest, Motto, God be our defence.

The next is the Fellowship of the English Merchants for discovery of New Trades, commonly called the M O S C O V T C O M P A N Y, being first Incorporated in the beginning of the Reign of King Philip, and Queen Mary, upon the discovery of Isles, Lands, Territories, and Signiories by Seas lying Northwards, North-eastwards, and North-westwards from England: and was afterwards confirmed by an Act of Parliament, in the eighth year of the Reign of Queen Elizabeth, and have by their Charter several Immunities and Priviledges granted them, as to raise Armes, for the subduing of Countreys, in the limits aforesaid, and to enter thereon, and set up English Standards; to make Acts and Ordinances for the good of the said Trade, provided they are not contrary to the Laws of England; to punish Offenders, by Fine or Imprisonment; to use a common Seal, and bear a Coat of Arms, &c.

This Company is found very profitable to this Nation, by the Trade they drive into Moscovy and other parts with the said limits by the Commodities they export, and for which they import several rich and good Merchandizes.

The Commodities by them exported from hence are Woolen cloths of all sorts both dyed and drest, Kersies, Cottons, Bayes, Perpetuances, Fustians, and Norwich stuffs, proportionable dyed and drest; Lead, Tinn, Pewter, wrought Allom, and Copper, Thread, and Lace, also much defective Wines, and Fruits, not fit to be spent in this Kingdom, together with most sorts of English Commodities, for which they import Pot-ashes, Tarr, Cordage, Cable-yarne, Tallow, Wax, Red-

hides, Buff-Hides, Cow-hides in the haire, Goat-skins undrest, Cordovants, Tand-hides, Hoggs-brissels, Raw-silke, Corne, Linseed, Spingglass, Slood, Beaver-wool, and Wombs, several sorts of rich Furs, Seal-skins, Ruberbe, Castornm, Agarick, with several other Druggs, Traine-Oyle, Flax, Hemps, courle and fine, Linnen, Caviare, and Salmon, Stock-fish, Cod-fish, Bacon, Pork, Beef, with other Provisions, &c.

This Worshipful Company or Fellowship of Merchants is governed by a Governour, 4. Consuls, and Assistants, consisting of 24, who are annually chosen out of the said Fellowship, on the first of March, which said Governour, Consuls, and Assistants, or the Major part of them, are to mannage the affairs of the Company; which at present is committed to the care of: John Follise, Esq; Governour, Mr. Nicholas Penning, Mr. Benjamin Albyn, Mr. Daniel Edwards, and Mr. Tho. Daryes, Consuls; Mr. Tho. Hancock, Treasurer. Sir James Moysesford, Henry Spursloe Esq; Mr. George Dickons, Mr. Francis Pargiter, Mr. Richard Adams, Mr. Benjamin Glanville, Mr. Richard Broke, Mr. Edward Lewes, Mr. Thomas Woodcocke, Mr. Benjamin Coles, Mr. James Young, Mr. George Midlemore, Mr. Robert Canning, Mr. Charles Carryl, Mr. Edward Vickers, Mr. James Courtney, Mr. Samuel Meverill, Mr. Edward Bell, Mr. William Vickers, Mr. George Grove, Mr. John Porter, Mr. Edmond Davenport, Mr. John Cowper, and Mr. Richard Perry.

The Achievement belonging to this Company, is undee of 6. pieces Azure, and Argent over all, a Ship under saile, proper, having on each saile a Cross Gules, between 3 Besants, on a chief, or, on a Deff, between 2 Roses Gules, a Lyon Passant, or, and for their Crest on an Helmet, and Torce, a Lizards head, crazed proper, gorged with a Crown Gules, and for their supporters, on the Dexter-side a Lizard, and on the sinister an Apres, both proper and Gorged with Crowns Gules, and standing on a hill.

The next Company is the LEVANT, or TURKEY Company of Merchants, which by their discovery, made the first Trade into the Signorie of Venice, and then into the Dominions of the Grand Signiour, and including the Trade, of the East Indies, which as then was undiscovered to us by Sea, their Goods being brought upon Camels, Asi-negoes or the like,

Their Coat of Arms.

Their Seal.

Their Arms.

Rise.

And Priviledges.

Commodities exported, and imported.

Their Priviledges.

The Governour of the Company.

The names of the present Governour, Consuls, and Assistants.

Their Achievement.

The Company of Levant Merchants.

to *Aleppo*, and other parts of *Turkey*, but since through our knowledge in *Martine*, *affairs*, the *East-Indies* are found out by *Sea*, there being a great, Rich, and eminent Company Incorporated, called the *East-India Company*, which doth somewhat eclips the *Trade* or this Noble Company, so that instead of having the *Indian Commodities*, in *Turkey*, we furnish them with the same, better cheap than they can have them, being brought by land, nevertheless this worthy Society or Fellowship of Merchants, doth maintain a great Trade, exporting at least 30000 Broadcloths yearly.

Commodities exported by the East India Company.

The *Commodities* that are exported from hence by them, are *Cloths* both dyed and drist, *Kerseys*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Iron*, *Steel*, *Wire*, *Pewter*, *Furrs*. *Peices* of eight, *Sugar*, *Hydes*, *Elephants teeth*, *Brazill*, also several *Indian Commodities*, as *Spices*, *Callico*, *Logwood*, *Indico*, *Couchantile*, read and white *Lead*, &c. for which they import the *Raw-silks* of *Persia*, *Damascus*, and *Tripoli*, &c. also *Chamblets*, *Grograins*, *Grograin yarn*, *Nohaires* of *Anger*, *Woolis*, *Cottons*, *Cotton-yarn* of *Smyrna* and *Cyprus*, *Galls* of *Mosolo* and *Toecat*; the *Currance* and *Oyles* of *Zant*, *Zeffalonia*, *Morca*, &c. The *Drugs* of *Egypt*, and *Arabia*, also *Turkey Carpets*, *Cordovants*, *Boxwood*, *Rhubarb*, *Wormseed*, *Sena*, *Cumminseed*, together with several rich *Commodities* which we receive in return of ours.

Their Involvement.

This Company of Merchants, was first Incorporated in the Reign of *Queen Elizabeth*, and since confirmed by her Successors, and have several *Immunities* and *Priviledges* granted them; as making of *Laws* and *Orders* for the good Government of the said Fellowship, and having by their *Charter* power of deciding controversies which arise in the said Company, as to their *Trade*, giving of *Oaths* and imposing of *Fines*, or Imprisoning of offenders to their discretion, also the using a *Seal*, and bearing a *Coat of Arms*, &c. And for the better performance of the said Trade, they are governed by a *Governour*, *Deputy Governour*, and *Court of Assistants* consisting of 18, who are annually (in the moneth of *February*) chosen by a general consent, out of the said Company, who meet and keep *Courts*, monethly, weekly, or as their occasions require, acting and doing such things as tendeth to the good of the said Fellowship, and the management of their Trade, as by appoint-

The Government of the Company.

ing, choosing, and sending over of *Consuls*, *Vice-Consuls*, *Factors*, &c. to such places where their *Factories* are kept, as at *Smyrna*, *Aleppo*, *Constantinople*, &c. who are to be answerable to the said Company or Fellowship for what they doe, as acting under them.

The management of the affairs of this worthy Company, is at present committed to the care of the Right Worshipful Sir *Andrew Riccard* Knight, Governour, *John Folliff* Esquire, Deputy Governour, *The Cromfield* Esquire Treasurer, *Mr. Nicholas Penning* Husband, *William Love* Esquire, *John Langley* Esquire, *Henry Sparflow* Esq; *Henry Hunter* Esq; *Mr. John Buckworth*, *Mr. Richard Holworthy*, *Mr. Henry Davy*, *Mr. Giles Davis*, *Mr. Tho. Pilkington*, *Mr. John Prestwood*, *Mr. Benjamin Albyn*, *Mr. Gabriel Roberts*, *Mr. Tho. Vernon*, *Mr. Ric. Spencer*, *Mr. Paul Priault*; *Mr. John Harvey*, *Mr. John Morden*, and *Mr. Daniel Edwards*.

The names of the Governours of the Company.

Commodities imported.

Their Achievement is *Argent*, a *Ship* under sayle, between two *Rocks*, (in the *Nombril point*) all proper, in bafe *Barry-Wavy*, *Argent*, and *Azure*, a *Sea-horse* proper, a chief invested, or,

Their Arms.

The next is the *EAST INDIA COMPANY*, which was first Incorporated in the Reign of *Queen Elizabeth*, and hath since been confirmed, as also several other *Priviledges*, and *Immunities* added to their *Charter*, by all the succeeding *Kings*, so that now they have as ample *Priviledges*, as any *Corporation* or *Company of Merchants* whatsoever. This Company is managed by a *joint stock*, which makes them very *Potent*, *Eminent*, and *Rich*; and is found several ways to be very advantageous to the Kingdom, as in their building of good *Ships*, in the *Employing*, and *maintaining* of thousands, nor only in their *Ships*, but also in their *Plantations* and *Factories*, as *Factors* and *Servants*, to whom they allow good salaries, and according as they are found *Industrious*, and *Ingenious*, they are raised to a higher degree, and accordingly their salaries are augmented, the like may be said of their *Servants* here at home. Again they are found very beneficial to this Nation by the great *Trade* they drive, in the *Exporting* and *Importing* to many and great quantities of rich *Commodities*, having the *Trade* of *India*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*. The *Commodities* which are exported from hence by them, are *peices* of *Eight*, *Dollars*, *Broad-cloths*, *Perpetuan-*

The East India Company.

The ships owned by the Company.

The Government of the Company.

Commodities imported.

The names of the present Governours.

ees, Powder, Elephants-teeth, Lead, Amber, Looking-glasses, Sizars, Knives, Beads, Braçlets, Feathers, Corral, Quick-silver, Virmillion, Alom, Brimsone, &c. for which they Import all sorts of Spices, also Cotton, Tarnè, Calicoes, Piniadoes, of divers sorts, among which some are excellent Tamerinds, Sanders, Spicknard, Bezar-stone, Aloes, Mirrhe, Rhubarbe, Opium, Frankinsence, Casia, Borax, Calomelus, Mirabolans, Green-ginger, Sugars, Sugar-Candy, Camphir, Sandalwood, Beu-iamine, Muske, Siviit, Ambergrece, Rice, Indico, Silks, both raw, and wrought into several Fabricks, Salt-Peters, several sorts of precious stones, Pearls, Mather of Pearle, Gold, Silver, Chrystal, Cornelian-rings, Agats, Lacque, Furrs, and Skins, of wild beasts, Porcelaine, Copper, China-roots, Tea, Sanguis Draconis, Chi-na wares of divers sorts, together with several other Commodities and Druggs, which would be to tedious to set down.

This worthy Company, for the better negotiation of their affairs, are governed by a Governour, Deputy, and Committee consisting of 24, who about the middle of April, annually are elected by the adventurers of the said Company, among which there must be eight new ones chosen from among the Adventurers, the rest to make up the 24, may be again chosen out of the old, as also the Governour, and Deputy, and these accordingly meet at their house, for that purpose situated in Leaden-Hall-Street, and call by the name of the East-India House, monthly, or Weekly as their occasions requireth, and keep Courts for the vending their goods, making of dividends, raising of moneys, for the management of their Plantations, and Factories, also for the viewing of the Accounts of their Presidents, Factors, Servants, &c. who are to be accountable to the said Company for what they doe, and not to act any thing beyond, or contrary to their Commission, especially to their detriment, and for the sending over of Factors, Servants, and the like, as occasions requireth.

The management of the affairs of this noble Company, is at present committed to the care of these worthy persons, whose names are as followeth, viz. Sir William Thomson Governour, John Folliffe Esq; Deputy, George Lord Berkeley, Sir Samuel Barnadiston, Sir Andrew Riccard, Sir Tho. Chamberlaine, Sir George Smith, Sir William Rider, Sir Stephen White, Sir

Francis Clarke, Maurice Thomson, Esq; Tho. Bromfield Esq; John Bathurst Esq; Rowland Winn Esq; Mr. Tho. Kendall, Mr. Christopher Boone, Mr. Peter Vandeput, Mr. Christopher Willoughby, Mr. Tho. Papillon, Mr. John Page, Mr. James Edwards, Mr. John Hobby, Mr. John Mascal, Mr. William Allen, Mr. Tho. Canham, and Mr. Benjamin Albyn.

The Achievement that belongs to this Company or Society is as followeth, viz. Azure, three Ships under saile, Argent on a chiefe, or, as many Roses, Gules, a Pale thereon quarterly, of the first and fourth, charged with a Flower de lis of France, and a Lyon of England, alternatiom, and for their Crest on an Helmet, and wreath a Sphere proper, between two Pennans of St. George, mantled Gules, doubled Argent, and for their Supporters two Sea Lyons the upper part, or, and the lower Argent and for their Motto DEUS FUDICAT.

The next is the EASTLAND COMPANY which was first incorporated in the 21 year of the Reign of Q. Elizabeth, Anno 1579, and since confirmed by K. Charles the second, and enjoying by their Charter ample Priviledges and Immunities, and as large a scope to Traffick in, including the Trade of the Kingdoms, Dominions, Dukedoms, Countries, Cities, and Towns of Norway, Suedland, Poland, and the Territories of the same Kingdoms, as also in Lettow, and Liffland, under the Dominions of the King of Pole, Prussen, also Pomerland, from the River Odera Eastward, and likewise in the Isles of Findland, Eoland, and Berntholine within the Sound, &c. They are a worthy Fellowship, and are found very advantageous to this Kingdom, by the great Trade that is upheld by them, in the transporting of several of our Commodities, and returning great quantities of Rich and Staple Merchandizes.

The Commodities which they export, from hence are Wollen Clothes, Perpetuances, Kerfies, Serges, Norwich Stuffs, Lead, Tinn, Cottons, Pewser, Stockings, Hats, Gloves, together with some Spices of India, and several southerm Commodities, as Sattins, Silkes, &c. for which they import Deales, Malts, Timber, Oares, Clapbord, Balkes, Bomsparres, Camspars, Pipe-staves, Wainscot, and quarters, also Flax, Hempe, Linnen cloth, Fustians, Cordage, Cable yarne, Pitch, Tarr, Yellow, Ppppp Hides,

Their Ar-  
chievements

The East-  
land Com-  
pany.

Their li-  
mits or  
limits to  
Trade in.

Great bene-  
fit by this  
Company.

Commodi-  
ties Ex-  
ported.

Commodi-  
ties Im-  
ported.

Commodi-  
ties import-  
ed.

The Go-  
vernours of  
the Compa-  
ny.

Their Ar-  
chievements.

The East-  
land Com-  
pany.

The bounds  
or limits of  
the Com-  
pany.

Commodi-  
ties import-  
ed.

The names  
of the pro-  
fessors.

insals,  
places  
ryrna,  
are to  
ny or  
cting

of this  
mitted  
ul Sit  
mour,  
mour,  
r. Ni-  
Love  
Henry  
r. John  
by, Mr.  
r. Tho.  
Mr. Ben-  
ys, Mr.  
Ar. Paul  
r. John

a Ship  
(in the  
ic Barry-  
Sea-horse

A COM-  
porated in  
and hath  
several  
oes added  
succeeding  
as ample  
or Com-  
f. This  
ck, which  
nent, and  
ys to be  
om, as in  
n the Im-  
housands,  
o in their  
actors and  
good sal-  
are found  
ey are rai-  
ccordingly  
e like may  
home. A-  
ial to this  
drive, in  
many and  
mmodities,  
Persia, and  
ch are ex-  
peices of  
Perpetuan-  
ces,

The bounds  
or limits of  
the Com-  
pany.

The names  
of the pro-  
fessors.

*Hides, Potashes, Wheat, Rye, Iron, Latin, Copper, Steel, Wyre, Quicksilver, Rich Furrs, Buckskins, Traine Oyle, Sturgeon, Stockfish, Masher, with several other good Commodities.*

The Govern-  
ment of  
the Compa-  
ny.

This worthy Fellowship of Merchants for the Management and negotiation of their affairs are Governed by a Governour, Deputy, and Court of Assistants, consisting of 24 who are annually chosen out of the said Fellowship in the moneth of October, and these meet, and keep Courts, as their occasions require at Founders-Hall, the names of the present are as followeth, viz. Sir, Richard Chiverton Knight Governour, William Brunskill Esq; Deputy. Mr. William Harington Treasurer, William Barker Esq; Edward Smith Esq; Edw. Bilton, Esq; Mr. James Whitehal, Mr. Francis Astry, Mr. Nathaniel Tench, Mr. Edward Lewes, Capt. James Burkin, Mr. John Dogget, Mr. James Young, Mr. Ric. Eccleston, Mr. Benjamin Coles, Mr. Will. Rivet, Mr. Randall Knipe, Mr. Henry Sclater, Mr. Peter Rich, Mr. Henry Hallowell, Mr. George Cooke, Mr. Hugh Upton, Mr. William Nutt, Mr. Caleb Verew, Mr. Anthony Philip, Mr. John Gould, and Mr. John Sharter.

The present  
Governour  
of the Com-  
pany.

Their Ar-  
ms.

The Attchievement that belongeth to this worthy Fellowship, is or, on a point wavy, a Ship under saile, all proper, on a chief Gules, a Lyon Passant gardant of the field, and for their Crest on an Helmet, and Wreath of their Colours, a Eland, or Elk proper, and for their supporters two Bears, Sable; and for their Motto **DISPAIRE NOT.**

The Royal  
Company.

The next is the **ROYAL COMPANY**, which by their Charter granted to them by our Sovereign Lord, King Charles the second, bearing date the 20 of January in the 14 year of his Majesties Reign, they are entituled the Company of **ROYAL ADVENTURERS** of England, trading into **AFRICA**: and by which said Charter they have several Immunities and Priviledges granted them, as power to call Courts; to constitute Laws, (so as they are not repugnant to the Law of England) to punish transgressors either by imprisonment, or fine, to set forth Men of War, to defend their Priviledges, to appoint Governours over all Plantations, Forts, and Factories as at any time here after shall be settled in any of the part of Africa, within the limits of the said Companies Charter, which is from Sally in South Barbary inclusive, to Cape de bonne esperance and

Their Pri-  
viledges,  
and Immu-  
nities.

within which said limits all English ships are prohibited to Trade, except such as are authorized by the said Company; likewise they have full power and authority to raise Armes, traine and muster such Military Forces, as to them shall seem requisite and necessary, and to use and execute Martial Law, for the more security and defence of the same, as need shall require, against any forraign invasion, or domestick insurrection, or rebellion; but the Sovereign Right, Power, and Dominion over all the said Plantations, (to be at any time settled in the parts aforesaid) are alwaies to be reserved to his Majesty, and to his Heires and Successors, furthermore they have the freedom of enjoying all the priviledges in the City of London, as fully as any Company of Merchants, by the Kings Letters, Patents, or his Predecessors at present doe, or may enjoy, with several others too long to re- cite.

This noble Company is also Governed by a Governour, Sub Governour, Deputy Governour, and a Court of Assistants consisting of 36 Members, which are annually (on the 10 of January, chosen out of the said Company, who have made several good Orders, which are strictly observed by them, to whom the whole management of the affairs of the said Company is committed; who keeps Courts as often as his Royall Highness thinks fit to summon them: but the negotiation of their business is left to a Committee of seven, who are chosen out of the said Court, whose transactions are to be reported to the said Court for their approbation and these have their meetings every Morning, or dayly at their house, called the *Affrican house*, situate in Broad-street London; as their occasions requireth, for the better agitating of their business.

The names of the present Governours, and Court of Assistants, are as followeth, viz. His Royall Highness the Duke of Yorke Governour, John Lord Berkley, Sub-Governour, Tho. Gray, Esq; Deputy Governour of the Assistants, His Highness Prince Rupert, George Duke of Buckingham, George Duke of Albemarle, Henry Earl of Peterborough, Henry Earl of St. Albons, Edward Earl of Sandwich, John Earl of Bath, Earl of Lotherdale, John Lord Lucas, Anthony Lord Ashley, Henry Lord Arlington, one of his Majesties Principal Secretaries of State, Charles

The Go-  
vernment of  
the Compa-  
ny.

The present  
Governour  
of the  
Company.

Commodi-  
ties reger-  
ed.

Commodi-  
ties in a  
part.

Good pro-  
by Reger-

Their

Their  
Liste



Charles Lord Fitz Hardin, Sir George Carteret, William Coventry, Esq; Coll. William Legge, Henry Brounker, Esq; Edw. Seymaure, Esq; Sir Allen Appesley, Sir John Colleton, Sir James Modisford, Sir Nicholas Chrispe, Sir Ellis Leighton, Sir Charles Littleton, Sir John Shaw, Sir Andrew Riccard, Sir Ric. Ford, Sir Martin Noel, Sir William Rider, Joseph Williamson, Esq; Matthew Wren, Esq; John Bence Alderman, Capt. George Cook, Mr. John Buckworth, Mr. William Cutler, Mr. Alexander Bence, and Mr. James Cogges.

porters two Blackmores proper with Arrows in their hands, or, headed and feathered Argent; and for their Motto, REGIO FLORE PATROCINIO COMMERCIOQUE REGNUM.

The next and last Company which I shall name, and which is Incorporated, is the CANARY Company, now in its very Infancy directed by the special grace and favour of his most Sacred Majesty, Charles the Second, who being sensible of the great inconveniencies, which accompanies an ill managed, and disorderly Commerce, and in his Princely Wisdom weighing the Interest of his People, hath by his Royal Charter bearing date the 17. of March 1664. Incorporated the traders thither, into one body, and Fellowship, by the name of the Governour, and Company of Merchants trading to the CANARY ISLANDS, to be managed by way of a Joint Stock, and having granted to them, and their successors for ever, as ample and large Priviledges and Immunities, as to any of the other preceeding Companies. The limits or bounds of this worthy Companies peculiar Commerce are all the seven Islands antiently called the Fortunate Isles, and now known by the name of the Canary Islands, viz. Grand Canaria, Tenerife, Palma, Gomera, Hierro, Lanzarote, and Fuerte-Ventura. The Commodities exported thither are chiefly all sorts of English woollen Manufactures, as Bayes, Kerseys, Serges, Perpetuances, Sayes, Norwich Stuffs, and Fustians, also Hatts, Stockings, all manner of Haberdashery-wares, Iron and Tinn wrought, likewise store of poor Jack, Pilchards, Herrings, Beef, Porke, Wheat, and other Graines, also many sorts of Linnen-Cloth, both Germany France, Flanders, and Holland, likewise Pipestaves and Hoopes with several other Commodities, for which they import great quantities of Canary wines, also divers sorts of West-India Commodities, as Virinus Tobacco, Hides, Logwood, Couchantile, Campechiana, Silver, Indico, and what else the said Indies affords,

The Commodities that this noble Company exporteth from England to the parts of Affrica aforesaid, are Iron, Copper, Slesias, Sheets, Sayes, Perpetuances, Cowries, Welch-plains, Manillos, Boyados, Chints, Rombergers, Callicoes, Nicotians, Cloves, Amber, Powder, Muskets, Batteries, of all sorts, Turkey, Carpets, Brandy, Strongwaters, Spirits, Gingshams, Taffeties, Beades of all sorts, Buckhaws, Knives and Sheaths, Swords, Tallow, &c. for which they import from thence to England, Gold, Elephants Teeth, Hides, Maleguita, or Guiny-pepper, Redwood, Ambergreace, with several other good Commodities, besides with great quantities of Negroes, for the supply of his Majestyes American Plantations, to the great advantage of the Inhabitants, as well as to the said Company, and besides the supply of 3000 Negroes yearly to the Spaniards, for the supply of their West-India Trade. And for the better negotiation of their affairs, they have already settled several Factories, as at Gambo, Rio, Nuno, Rio Grande, Sierra-Liona, Serbro, Cestos, Achin, Anta, Comenda, Cape, Corso, Acara, Cormentine, Ardra, Benin, old and new Callabar, &c. and in time through the success of good management without doubt will have many more.

The Seal belonging to this worthy Company is double; on the one side an Elephant supported by two Blackmores, and on the other side the Royal Image of his Majesty enthroned.

And their Atchievement is or, an Elephant sable, a quarter quarterly, France and England, and for their Crest out of a Crown Ducall, an Anchor erected, wreathed about with the Cable, all or, between two wings, expand Argent, each charged with a Cross of England; mantled Gules, doubled Argent; and of their sup-

And although this hopeful Company be but now in its Infancy, its very probable that time will produce as great advantage to the publick good of this Nation (in its proportion) as by any other society whatsoever.

This worthy Society for the better management of their affairs are Governed by a Governour, Deputy-Governour, and Assistance

Commodities exporteth

Commodities imported

Good profits by Negroes

Their Seal

Their Atchievements

The Governour of the Company

Their Priviledges

Their Islands

Commodities imported

Commodities imported

The Governour of the Company

The Governour of the Company

*Assistants* consisting of 12 which are to be chosen annually, by (and out of) a general Court of the *Adventurers*, between the 15 and 25 of *March*. The first and present *Governour* appointed by his Majesty, in his *Royal Charter*, is Sir *Arthur Ingram* Knight, Mr. *John Turner*, Deputy *Governour*, and the 12 *Assistants* are Sir *Tho Bonfoy*, Knight and Alderman of the *City of London*, Mr. *Nicholas Warren*, Mr. *William Bulkly*, Mr. *William Throgmorton*, Mr. *John Page*, Mr. *John Webber*, Mr. *Henry Negus*, Mr. *Robert Bevin*, Mr. *Thomas Warren*, Mr. *Rowland Ingram*, Mr. *William Mafkeline*, and Mr. *William Read*. To whose care the management of the affairs of this society is committed, who for the Negotiation thereof have their meetings usually, or weekly as occasions serve, at their house situate in *Leaden-hall-street London*.

This Company by their said *Charter* have granted them the use of a common *Seal*, with liberty to alter the same at their pleasure. And for their *Atchievement*, they bear as followeth, viz. *Argent St. Georges Cross*, and on a chief *Azure*, a *Lyon of England*, between two bunches of grapes, or, and for their *Crest* on an *Helmet* and *Wreath* of their *Colours*, the *Mountain* called the *Pike Thenerise*, proper, *Mantled Gules*, doubled *Argent*, and for their supporters two *Falcons*.

And these are the several Companies of *Merchants*, that are at this day incorporated into *Societies*, or *Fellowships*: others there are, though not incorporated, yet maintain a very considerable trade and much to the benefit of this Kingdom, as those called the *Spanish*, *French*, *Italian*, and *Dutch Merchants*. The trade to which places, though not prohibited, as are to those places aforesaid, as *Eastland*, *Turkey*, the *East-Indies*, &c. yet is chiefly managed and negotiated by peculiar *Merchants*, which use the said trade, of which a word or two.

The Span  
ish Mer-  
chants and  
their trade.

The *SPANISH MERCHANTS*, or *Merchants* trading into *Spain*, *Portugal*, &c. are found very beneficial to this *Nation*, importing several good *Commodities* as the *Wines* of *Xeres*, *Mallaga*, *Bastard*, *Candado*, and *Alicant*, also *Oyles*, *Olives*, *Sugars*, *Ginger*, *Fruits*, *White Marble*, *Plate*, *Allom*, *Aniseeds*, *Liquor*, *Soda-virilla*, *Soapes*, *Rosin*, &c. for which they export, *Bayes*, *Sayes*, *Serges*, *Perpetuances*, *Cloths* dress and dyed, and all

*English Manufactures*, *Lead*, *Shot*, *Iron*, *Tinn*, *Calve-skins*, *Herrings*, *Pilchers*, *Salmon*, *Poor John*, or *Bacalaw*, &c.

The *FRENCH MERCHANTS*, or *Merchants* trading into *France*, are found to import several good *Commodities*, as *Wines*, *Oyles*, *Almonds*, *Paper*, which is used by us for *Printing*, *Oade*, course and fine *Linnen*, *Tabby*, and other *Silks*, *Canvas*, *Buckrams*, *Salt*, *Cards*, *Glass*, &c. for which they export *English Cloths*, *Bayes*, *Kersies*, *Cottons*, or *Frices*, *Pilchers*, *Herrings*, *New-land Fish*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Galls*, &c.

The *ITALIAN MERCHANTS*, or *Merchants* trading into the parts of *Italy*, as *Leghorne*, *Venice*, *Naples*, *Genoa*, *Sicily*, &c. are very beneficial to this Kingdom, importing divers rich *Commodities*, as *Oyles*, *rich Wines*, *Silk raw*, and wrought into several *Fabrics*, as *Taffeties*, *Sattins*, *Velvets*, *Plushes*, *Damasks*, &c. also *Cloth of Gold* and *Silver*, *Grogams*, *Fustians*, *Alome*, *Aniseeds*, *Rice*, *Almonds*, *Saffron*, *Brimstone*, *Venice Gold* and *Silver*, *Venice-treacle*, *Quicksilver*, *Argall*, *Looking*, and *Drinking glasses*, *Anchor-voce*, *Marble*, &c. and the *Commodities* which are exported by them are *English Cloths*, *Bayes*, *Sayes*, *Serges*, *Perpetuances*, *Kersies*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Pewter*, red and white *Herrings*, *Pilchers*, *Pickled Salmon*, *New-land-fish*, *Calve-skins*, *Russia hides*, *Tallow*, *Tobacco*, &c. together with the *Druggs* and *Spices* of *India*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*.

The *DUTCH MERCHANTS*, or *Merchants* trading into the *Low Countries*, *Holland*, *Flanders*, &c. are likewise found to import several good *Commodities*, as *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Tapestries*, excellent *Pictures*, *Tape*, *Salt-peter*, *Quick-silver*, *Rhenish Wines*, *Furs*, *Corn*, with several other *Merchandizes*, which are the product of other *Countries*, which by reason of the great trade which the *Dutch* drive to all the known parts of the world, are there found, and had at cheap rates, and the *Commodities* which they export are *Woollen-Cloths*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Sheep*, and *Cow skins*, with all other *English Commodities*, or *Manufactures*.

Likewise besides these *Merchants* there are others which drive a considerable trade, and much to the good and benefit of the *Nation*, and such are those who drive a trade to the *English Plantations*, as *BARBADOS*, *VIRGINIA*, *NEW-ENGLAND*, *JAMAICA*, &c. in their exporting not only of all *English Commodities*,

The French  
Merchants  
and their  
trade.

The Italian  
Merchants  
and their  
trade.

The Dutch  
Mer-  
chants  
and their  
trade.

Barbados,  
Virginia,  
New-Eng-  
land, &c.  
Merchants  
and their  
trade.

Barbados,  
Virginia,  
New-Eng-  
land, &c.  
Merchants  
and their  
Trade.

Lowland  
Countries.

The French  
Company  
of  
Lorraine,  
Holland,  
and  
other  
of  
France.

ad, Shot, Iron,  
Pilchers, S-sh  
ow, &c.

CHANTS, or  
nce, are found  
Commodities, as  
Paper, which is  
ade, course and  
er Silks, Can-  
ds, Glass, &c.  
English Cloths,  
rizes, Pilchers,  
Lead, Tinn,

The French  
Merchants  
and their  
trade.

Barbadoes,  
Virginia,  
New-Eng-  
land, &c.  
Merchants  
and their  
Trade.

CHANTS, or  
parts of Italy,  
les, Genoa, Sil-  
al to this King-  
Commodities,  
ilk raw, and  
ho, Taffeties  
Damasks, &c.  
ver, Grograms,  
Rice, Almonds,  
Gold and Silver,  
Argall, Looking,  
ovocce, Marble,  
which are ex-  
Cloths, Bayes,  
Kerfies, Lead,  
white Herrings,  
New-land-fish,  
Tallow, To-  
the Drugs and  
Arabia.

The Italian  
Merchants  
and their  
trade.

CHANTS, The Dutch  
Merchants  
and their  
trade.  
the Low Coun-  
&c. are like-  
ral good Com-  
le, Tapestries,  
p-peter, Quick-  
s, Corn, with  
s, which are  
ys, which by  
ich the Dutch  
of the world,  
e cheap rates,  
they export  
Tinn, Sheep,  
ther English  
ss.

Holland-  
Traders.

Merchants there  
considerable  
and benefit  
those who  
Plantations.  
IA, NEW-  
&c. in their  
lish Commo-  
dities,

The several  
Companies  
of London  
Merchants  
and Strangers  
of Statlitch.

dities, and Manufactures, but also those  
of other Nations, which for the most  
part they are here provided with, and  
that in great quantities, by reason of the  
Kings prohibiting (as his subjects) these  
Commerce with other Nations.

The Commodities exported to these  
Plantations, are, all sorts of Stuffs, all  
Fabricks of Silks, Cloth, Hats, Stockings,  
Shoes, Linnen both fine and course, and  
indeed all sorts of Apparel: Likewise  
all sorts of Household-stuff, and utensils  
of Iron, &c. as well for their Plantations,  
as otherwise; also Provision, as  
Flower, Bisket, salted Beefe, &c. also  
Coppers, Leather, all sorts of Armes and  
Ammunitions, Horses, &c. And in a  
word, all Commodities that are necessary  
and useful either for the Back or Belly,  
are here vendible. And it is obser-  
ved, that the better the Commodities are  
of any sort, (especially at Barbadoes)  
the sooner and better they are vend-  
ed.

And for these, and the like Commodi-  
ties, they import from the said Plantations,  
Sugars, Indico, Cotton-Wool, Gin-  
ger, Tobacco, &c. and in such great plenty  
(being more then this Kingdome can  
spend) that they are again transported  
to other Nations, to our great enrich-  
ment.

Again, there are another sort  
of Merchants, which may be termed  
HOMELAND-TRADERS, and such  
are those who drive a trade to Scotland  
and Ireland; but this trade being less  
considerable, and sufficiently known, I  
shall pass it over.

This having in briefe surveyed the  
trade of this Nation, (or rather City of  
London) and given an account of the  
Commodities exported and imported by  
every Company or Society, and degree  
or sort of Merchants, as well those that  
are managed by way of joyns stock, and  
common, as peculiar and private. In  
the next place, and to conclude, I shall  
in brief treat of the several Companies  
of London, and in order, according to  
their precedencies, (for which, as to a  
more ample Account, see Stow his Sur-  
vey of London) as being stems and  
branches of Traffique and Commerce,  
and who by their Charters have several  
immunities and priviledges granted them,  
as the bearing of Armes, using of a  
Seale, keeping of Courts for the Nego-  
tiation of their Affaires, making of All

and Ordinances, so they are not repug-  
nant to the Laws of the Nation, gi-  
ving of Oathes, punishing such of their  
Fraternity as doe, or att any thing contra-  
ry to the Ordinances and Customs of the  
said Companies, by amercement, or Cor-  
poral punishment, according to the ha-  
nousness of the offence, &c. And the  
management of the Affaires of these  
Companies are committed to the care  
and Government of a Master, Wardens,  
and Court of Assisance, which said Ma-  
ster and Wardens are annually elected our  
of those of the Court of Assisance:  
And first with the Company of Mer-  
cers, and so in order.

1. The Company of MERCERS (be-  
ing the primier Company of the Ho-  
nourable City of London) was Incorporated  
into a Society or Brotherhood in  
the 17th year of the Reign of King Ri-  
chard the Second, and hath large immuni-  
ties and priviledges granted them.

2. The Company of the GROCERS,  
in former times called the Peppercers, first  
incorporated by the name of Grocers, in  
the 20th of King Edward the Third, An-  
no Dom. 1345.

3. The Company of DRAPERS, in-  
corporated in the 17th year of King  
Henry the Sixth.

This worthy Company is not a little  
dignified by having Henry Fitz Alwin  
Knight, Noble by Birth, a brother of  
this Company, who was the first Lord  
Major of the Honourable City of Lon-  
don, in which dignity he continued 24  
years; he dyed in Anno 1212, being  
aged 72 yeares.

4. The Company of FISHMONGERS,  
at first two Companies, to wit, the Stock-  
fishmongers, and the Salt-fishmongers; but  
in the 28th year of King Henry the  
Eighth they were united to one.

5. The Company of GOLDSMITHS,  
incorporated and confirmed in the 16th  
year of King Richard the second.

6. The Company of SKINNERS,  
incorporated in the first year of King  
Edward the third, and made a brother-  
hood in the 18th of King Richard the  
second.

This Company hath been highly en-  
nobled by having 6 Kings, 5 Queens,  
1 Prince, 9 Dukes, 2 Earles, and 1 Lord,  
of the freedom of the worthy Society.

7. The Company of MERCHANT-  
TAYLORS, incorporated in the 17th  
year of King Henry the seventh.

Q9999 This

This worthy Company is not a little splendid, by having 8 Kings, 11 Dukes, 30 Earles, and 44 Lords, which were members of their Company.

8. The Company of HABERDASHERS, Incorporated a Brotherhood of St. Katherine, in the 26th of King Henry the Sixth, and were again confirmed in the 17th of King Henry the Seventh, and named *Mitcheant-Haberdashers*.

9. The Company of SALTERS were first Incorporated in the year of King

10. The Company of the IRON-MONGERS, Incorporated in the third of King Edward the Fourth.

11. The Company of VINTNERS, or VINTONNERS, Incorporated in the Reign of King Edward the Third by the name of *Vine-Tonnors*, and confirmed by King Henry the Sixth, in the 15th of his Reign.

12. The Company of the CLOTH-WORKERS, Incorporated in the 36 year of King James the First.

13. The Company of the DIERS, Incorporated in the 49th of King Henry the Sixth.

14. The Company of the BREWERS, Incorporated in the Sixth of King Henry the Sixth, and again confirmed in the second of Queen Elizabeth.

15. The Company of the LEATHER-SELLERS, Incorporated in the sixth of King Richard the Second.

16. The Company of the PEWTERERS, Incorporated in the 30th of King Edward the Fourth.

17. The Company of BARBER-CHIRURGIANS, first Incorporated in the Reign of King Edward the Fourth, and since confirmed by succeeding Kings.

18. The Company of the ARMORERS, incorporated in the beginning of the Reign of King Henry the Sixth.

19. The Company of the WHITE-BAKERS, incorporated in the 11th of Queen Elizabeth.

20. The Company of the WAX-CHANDLERS, incorporated in the second of King Richard the Third.

21. The Company of the TALLOW-CHANDLERS, Incorporated in the second of King Edward the Fourth.

22. The Company of the CUTLERS, incorporated in the beginning of King Henry the Fifth.

23. The Company of the GIRDERS, incorporated in the 17th of King Henry the Sixth.

24. The Company of the BUTCHERS, incorporated in the third of King James.

25. The Company of SADLERS, incorporate in the Reign of Edward the First.

26. The Company of CARPENTERS, incorporated in the 17th of King Edward the Fourth.

27. The Company of CORDWAINERS, or SHOO-MAKERS, incorporated in the 17th of King Henry the Sixth.

28. The Company of PAINTERS, or PAINTERS-STAINERS, incorporated in the 23th of Queen Elizabeth.

29. The Company of CURRIERS, incorporated in the third of King James.

30. The Company of MASONS, incorporated in the of King.

31. The Company of PLUMBERS incorporated in the ninth of King James.

32. The Company of the INHOLDERS, incorporated in the sixth of King Henry the Eighth.

33. The Company of FOUNDERS, incorporated in the 12th of King James.

34. The Company of EMBROIDERERS, incorporated in the fourth of Queen Elizabeth.

35. The Company of POULTERERS, incorporated in the 19th of King Henry the Seventh.

36. The Company of the COOKES, incorporated in the 11th of King Edward the Fourth.

37. The Company of COOPERS, incorporated in the 16th of King Henry the Seventh.

38. The Company of BRICKLAYERS and TYLERS, incorporated in the 10th of Queen Elizabeth.

39. The Company of BOWYERS, though of great antiquity, yet were not incorporated till the 11th of King James.

40. The Company of FLETCHERS, once a part of the *Bowyers*, but now a Company of themselves.

41. The Company of BLACKSMITHS, incorporated in the 20th of Queen Elizabeth.

42. The Company of JOYNNERS, incorporated





The TABLE OF CONTENTS of TRAFFICK,  
OF COMMERCE.

	Folio
<b>W</b> hat Traffick is	15
Of bargaining, and Bartering of Commodities	16
Of Coynes, Weights and Measures	16
The English Foot compared with the Standards for Measures of several Kingdomes	17
A Table of the Gold and Silver Weights of divers Kingdomes, taken from their Standards, and compared with the Denarius	17
Of Exchanges of Money; and formes of Bills of Exchange	18, 19
Of Customes, Imposts, and other Duties paid upon Goods	20
Of Merchants Accounts by Debitor, and Creditor	20
Rules of Ayde	21
Foreign Accounts	23
Journal Book	25
Leidger Book	34
Of Commodities in general used in Merchandize, and of the knowledge thereof	40
Of Servants and Factors	41
Rules to be observed by Factors	41
Of Marking of Commodities	42
Of Freightings of Ships, Charte-parties, and Bills of Lading	42
The forme of a Bill of Lading	43
Of Assurances	43
The forme of a Policy of Assurance	44
Of Letters of Credit, and Blankes Signed	45
The Company of Merchant Adventurers, their Trade, &c.	46
The Company of the Moscovy Merchants, their Trade, &c.	47
The Company of the Levant, or Tunzey-Merchants, their Trade, &c.	47
The Company of the East-India Merchants, their Trade, &c.	48
The Company of the East-Land Merchant, their Trade, &c.	49
The Royal Company, or Royal Adventurers, their Trade, &c.	50
The Canary Company, their trade, &c.	51
The Spanish, French, Italian, and Dutch-Merchant, their trades, &c.	52
The Barbadoes, Virginia, New-England, Jamaica, &c. Merchants, their trades, &c.	52
The severall Companies of London	53

F I N I S.



FICK,

Folio

15

16

16

asures of several

17

their Standards,

17

18, 19

20

20

21

23

25

34

thereof

45

41

41

42

42

43

43

44

45

46

47

47

48

49

50

51

52

52

53

rades, &c.

